UBC CHEM 154: CHEMISTRY FOR ENGINEERINGEDIT



Chris Addison
University of British Columbia

LibreTexts™

UBC CHEM 154: Chemistry for Engineering

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden borne from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and were supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

The LibreTexts name, logo, and book covers are trademarked by LibreTexts, Inc. (a 501(c)(3) not-for-profit organization) and protected against unauthorized use.

This text was compiled on 10/15/2026

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: High School Review

1.1: The Nuclear Atom

1.2: Chemical Elements

1.3: Atomic Mass

2: The Periodic Table and Atomic Structure

2.1: The Bohr Atom

2.2: Multielectron Atoms

2.3: Electron Configurations

2.4: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table

2.5: Classifying the Elements: The Periodic Law and the Periodic Table

2.6: Sizes of Atoms and Ions

2.7: Ionization Energy

2.8: Electron Affinity

2.9: Periodic Properties of the Elements

3: Chemical Bonding and Molecular Structure

3.1: Covalent Bonding: An Introduction

3.2: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electrostatic Potential Maps

3.3: Bond Energies

3.4: Bond Order and Bond Lengths

3.5: Lewis Theory: An Overview

3.6: Writing Lewis Structures

3.7: Exceptions to the Octet Rule

3.8: Resonance

3.9: Shapes of Molecules

4: Intermolecular Interactions and Phases of Matter

4.1: Intermolecular Forces

4.2: Phase Diagrams

4.3: Some Properties of Liquids

4.4: Phase Diagrams

5: Polymers

5.1: Drawing Chemical Structures

5.2: Polymer Fundamentals

5.3: Writing Formulas for Polymers

5.4: Condensation Polymers

5.5: Condensation Polymers

5.6: Addition Polymers
5.7: Addition Polymers
5.8: The Polymerization of Ethene
5.9: Properties of Polymers
5.10: Cross-Linking

6: Gases

6.1: Properties of Gases: Gas Pressure
6.2: The Simple Gas Laws
6.3: Combining the Gas Laws: The Ideal Gas Equation and the General Gas Equation
6.4: Mixtures of Gases
6.5: Kinetic-Molecular Theory of Gases
6.6: Non-ideal (Real) Gases
6.7: Applications of the Ideal Gas Equation
6.8: Gases in Chemical Reactions

7: Energy and Chemistry

7.1: Getting Started: Some Terminology
7.2: Heat
7.3: Heats of Reactions and Calorimetry
7.4: Work
7.5: The First Law of Thermodynamics
7.6: Heats of Reactions - ΔU and ΔH
7.7: Indirect Determination of ΔH - Hess's Law
7.8: Standard Enthalpies of Formation
7.9: Fuels as Sources of Energy

8: Entropy and the Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics

8.1: The Concept of Entropy
8.2: Spontaneity: The Meaning of Spontaneous Change
8.3: Criteria for Spontaneous Change: The Second Law of Thermodynamics
8.4: Evaluating Entropy and Entropy Changes
8.5: Standard Gibbs Energy Change, ΔG°

9: Chemical Equilibrium

9.1: Dynamic Equilibrium
9.2: The Equilibrium Constant Expression
9.3: The Reaction Quotient, Q: Predicting The Direction of Net Change
9.4: Gibbs Energy Change and Equilibrium
9.5: ΔG° and K as Functions of Temperature
9.6: Coupled Reactions
9.7: Solubility Product Constant, Ksp
9.8: Relationship Between Solubility and Ksp

9.9: Common-Ion Effect in Solubility Equilibria

10: Chemical Kinetics

10.1: The Rate of a Chemical Reaction

10.2: Measuring Reaction Rates

10.3: Effect of Concentration on Reaction Rates: The Rate Law

10.4: Zero-Order Reactions

10.5: First-Order Reactions

10.6: Second-Order Reactions

10.7: Reaction Kinetics: A Summary

10.8: Theoretical Models for Chemical Kinetics

10.9: The Effect of Temperature on Reaction Rates

10.10: Reaction Mechanisms

10.11: Catalysis

11: Electrochemistry

11.1: Electrode Potentials and their Measurement

11.2: Standard Electrode Potentials

11.3: Ecell, ΔG, and K

11.4: Ecell as a Function of Concentrations

11.5: Electrolysis: Causing Nonspontaneous Reactions to Occur

11.6: Industrial Electrolysis Processes

11.7: Batteries: Producing Electricity Through Chemical Reactions

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

This page titled UBC CHEM 154: Chemistry for Engineering is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

Licensing

A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in ***Back Matter/Detailed Licensing***.

This page titled Licensing is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1: HIGH SCHOOL REVIEW



- Topic hierarchy

1.1: The Nuclear Atom
1.2: Chemical Elements
1.3: Atomic Mass

This page titled 1: High School Review is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.1: The Nuclear Atom

Learning Objectives

- To become familiar with the components and structure of the atom.

Dissecting the Atom

Once scientists concluded that all matter contains negatively charged electrons, it became clear that atoms, which are electrically neutral, must also contain positive charges to balance the negative ones. Thomson proposed that the electrons were embedded in a uniform sphere that contained both the positive charge and most of the mass of the atom, much like raisins in plum pudding or chocolate chips in a cookie (Figure 1.1.1).

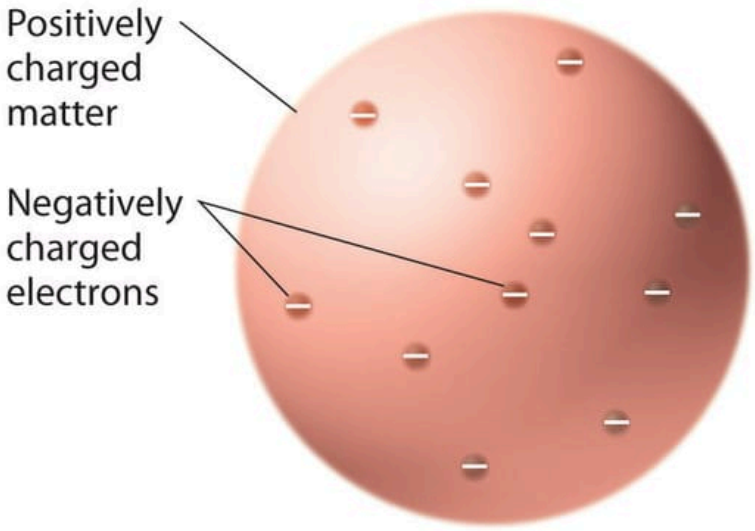


Figure 1.1.1: Thomson's Plum Pudding or Chocolate Chip Cookie Model of the Atom. In this model, the electrons are embedded in a uniform sphere of positive charge.

In a single famous experiment, however, Rutherford showed unambiguously that Thomson's model of the atom was incorrect. Rutherford aimed a stream of α particles at a very thin gold foil target (part (a) in Figure 1.1.2) and examined how the α particles were scattered by the foil. Gold was chosen because it could be easily hammered into extremely thin sheets, minimizing the number of atoms in the target. If Thomson's model of the atom were correct, the positively-charged α particles should crash through the uniformly distributed mass of the gold target like cannonballs through the side of a wooden house. They might be moving a little slower when they emerged, but they should pass essentially straight through the target (part (b) in Figure 1.1.2). To Rutherford's amazement, a small fraction of the α particles were deflected at large angles, and some were reflected directly back at the source (part (c) in Figure 1.1.2). According to Rutherford, "It was almost as incredible as if you fired a 15-inch shell at a piece of tissue paper and it came back and hit you."

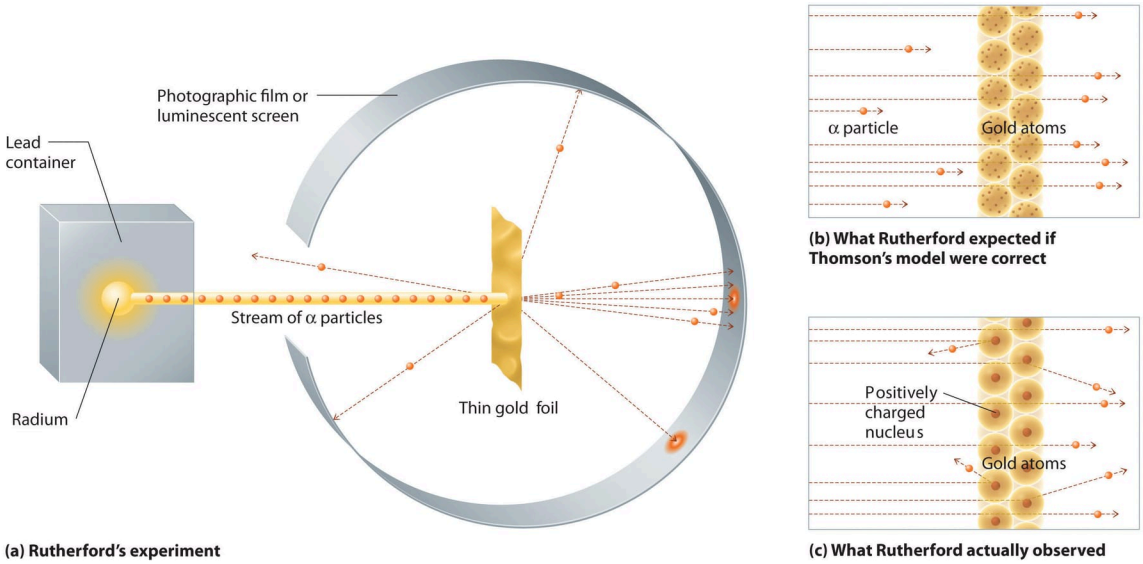


Figure 1.1.2: A Summary of Rutherford's Experiments. (a) A representation of the apparatus Rutherford used to detect deflections in a stream of α particles aimed at a thin gold foil target. The particles were produced by a sample of radium. (b) If Thomson's model of the atom were correct, the α particles should have passed straight through the gold foil. (c) However, a small number of α particles were deflected in various directions, including right back at the source. This could be true only if the positive charge were much more massive than the α particle. It suggested that the mass of the gold atom is concentrated in a very small region of space, which he called the nucleus.

Rutherford's results were not consistent with a model in which the mass and positive charge are distributed uniformly throughout the volume of an atom. Instead, they strongly suggested that both the mass and positive charge are concentrated in a tiny fraction of the volume of an atom, which Rutherford called the nucleus. It made sense that a small fraction of the α particles collided with the dense, positively charged nuclei in either a glancing fashion, resulting in large deflections, or almost head-on, causing them to be reflected straight back at the source.

Although Rutherford could not explain why repulsions between the positive charges in nuclei that contained more than one positive charge did not cause the nucleus to disintegrate, he reasoned that repulsions between negatively charged electrons would cause the electrons to be uniformly distributed throughout the atom's volume.Today it is known that strong nuclear forces, which are much stronger than electrostatic interactions, hold the protons and the neutrons together in the nucleus. For this and other insights, Rutherford was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1908. Unfortunately, Rutherford would have preferred to receive the Nobel Prize in Physics because he considered physics superior to chemistry. In his opinion, "All science is either physics or stamp collecting."

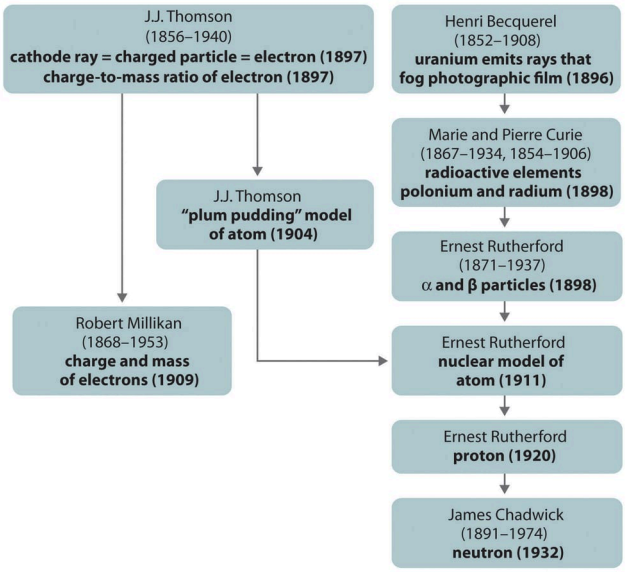


Figure 1.1.3: A Summary of the Historical Development of Models of the Components and Structure of the Atom. The dates in parentheses are the years in which the key experiments were performed.

The historical development of the different models of the atom's structure is summarized in Figure 1.1.3. Rutherford established that the nucleus of the hydrogen atom was a positively charged particle, for which he coined the name proton in 1920. He also suggested that the nuclei of elements other than hydrogen must contain electrically neutral particles with approximately the same mass as the proton. The neutron, however, was not discovered until 1932, when James Chadwick (1891–1974, a student of Rutherford; Nobel Prize in Physics, 1935) discovered it. As a result of Rutherford's work, it became clear that an α particle contains two protons and neutrons, and is therefore the nucleus of a helium atom.

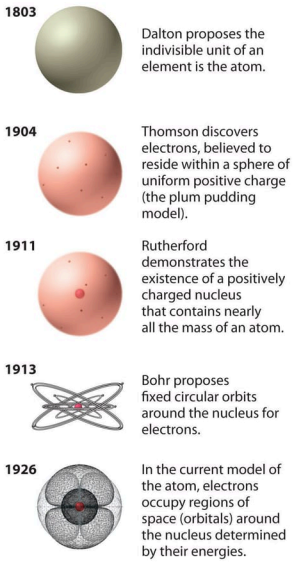


Figure 1.1.4: The Evolution of Atomic Theory, as Illustrated by Models of the Oxygen Atom. Bohr's model and the current model are described in Chapter 6, "The Structure of Atoms."

Rutherford's model of the atom is essentially the same as the modern model, except that it is now known that electrons are not uniformly distributed throughout an atom's volume. Instead, they are distributed according to a set of principles described by Quantum Mechanics. Figure 1.1.4 shows how the model of the atom has evolved over time from the indivisible unit of Dalton to the modern view taught today.

The Nuclear Atom

The precise physical nature of atoms finally emerged from a series of elegant experiments carried out between 1895 and 1915. The most notable of these achievements was Ernest Rutherford's famous 1911 alpha-ray scattering experiment, which established that

- Almost all of the *mass* of an atom is contained within a tiny (and therefore extremely dense) *nucleus* which carries a positive electric charge whose value identifies each element and is known as the *atomic number* of the element.
- Almost all of the *volume* of an atom consists of empty space in which electrons, the fundamental carriers of negative electric charge, reside. The extremely small mass of the electron (1/1840 the mass of the hydrogen nucleus) causes it to behave as a quantum particle, which means that its location at any moment cannot be specified; the best we can do is describe its behavior in terms of the probability of its manifesting itself at any point in space. It is common (but somewhat misleading) to describe the volume of space in which the electrons of an atom have a significant probability of being found as the *electron cloud*. The latter has no definite outer boundary, so neither does the atom. The radius of an atom must be defined arbitrarily, such as the boundary in which the electron can be found with 95% probability. Atomic radii are typically 30-300 pm.

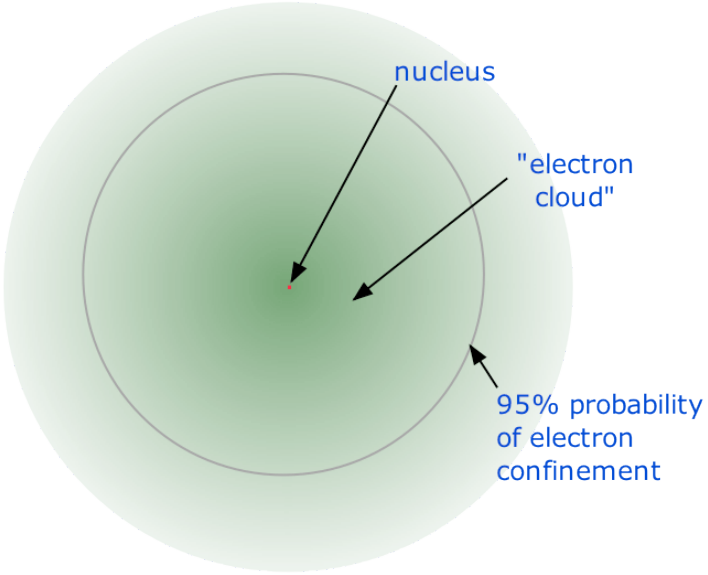


Figure 1.1.5: The structure of the nuclear atom with a central nucleus and surrounding electrons.

The nucleus is itself composed of two kinds of particles. *Protons* are the carriers of positive electric charge in the nucleus; the proton charge is exactly the same as the electron charge, but of opposite sign. This means that in any [electrically neutral] atom, the number of protons in the nucleus (often referred to as the *nuclear charge*) is balanced by the *same* number of electrons outside the nucleus.

The other nuclear particle is the *neutron*. As its name implies, this particle carries no electrical charge. Its mass is almost the same as that of the proton. Most nuclei contain roughly equal numbers of neutrons and protons, so we can say that these two particles together account for almost all the mass of the atom.

Note

Because the electrons of an atom are in contact with the outside world, it is possible for one or more electrons to be lost, or some new ones to be added. The resulting electrically-charged atom is called an *ion*.

Atoms consist of electrons, protons, and neutrons. This is an oversimplification that ignores the other subatomic particles that have been discovered, but it is sufficient for discussion of chemical principles. Some properties of these subatomic particles are summarized in Table 1.1.1 which illustrates three important points:

1. Electrons and protons have electrical charges that are identical in magnitude but opposite in sign. Relative charges of –1 and +1 are assigned to the electron and proton, respectively.

2. Neutrons have approximately the same mass as protons but no charge. They are electrically neutral.
3. The mass of a proton or a neutron is about 1836 times greater than the mass of an electron. Protons and neutrons constitute the bulk of the mass of atoms.

The discovery of the electron and the proton was crucial to the development of the modern model of the atom and provides an excellent case study in the application of the scientific method. In fact, the elucidation of the atom's structure is one of the greatest detective stories in the history of science.

Table 1.1.1*: Properties of Subatomic Particles**

Particle	Mass (g)	Atomic Mass (amu)	Electrical Charge (coulombs)	Relative Charge
electron	9.109×10^{-28}	0.0005486	−1.602 × 10−19	−1
neutron	1.675×10^{-24}	1.008665	0	0
proton	1.673×10^{-24}	1.007276	+1.602 × 10−19	+1
*** For a review of using scientific notation and units of measurement, see Essential Skills 1 (Section 1.9).**				

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Nuclear Atom: https://youtu.be/eqoyZuv1tWA

Summary

- The atom consists of discrete particles that govern its chemical and physical behavior.

Atoms, the smallest particles of an element that exhibit the properties of that element, consist of negatively charged electrons around a central nucleus composed of more massive positively charged protons and electrically neutral neutrons. Radioactivity is the emission of energetic particles and rays (radiation) by some substances. Three important kinds of radiation are α particles (helium nuclei), β particles (electrons traveling at high speed), and γ rays (similar to x-rays but higher in energy).

Conceptual Problems

1. Describe the experiment that provided evidence that the proton is positively charged.
2. What observation led Rutherford to propose the existence of the neutron?
3. What is the difference between Rutherford's model of the atom and the model chemists use today?
4. If cathode rays are not deflected when they pass through a region of space, what does this imply about the presence or absence of a magnetic field perpendicular to the path of the rays in that region?
5. Describe the outcome that would be expected from Rutherford's experiment if the charge on α particles had remained the same but the nucleus were negatively charged. If the nucleus were neutral, what would have been the outcome?
6. Describe the differences between an α particle, a β particle, and a γ ray. Which has the greatest ability to penetrate matter?

Problems

Please be sure you are familiar with the topics discussed in Essential Skills 1 (Section 1.9) before proceeding to the Numerical Problems.

1. Using the data in Table 1.3 and the periodic table (see Chapter 32), calculate the percentage of the mass of a silicon atom

that is due to

a. electrons.

b. protons.

2. Using the data in Table 1.3 and the periodic table (see Chapter 32), calculate the percentage of the mass of a helium atom that is due to

a. electrons.

b. protons.

3. The radius of an atom is approximately 10^4 times larger than the radius of its nucleus. If the radius of the nucleus were 1.0 cm, what would be the radius of the atom in centimeters? in miles?
4. The total charge on an oil drop was found to be 3.84×10^{-18} coulombs. What is the total number of electrons contained in the drop?

This page titled 1.1: The Nuclear Atom is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 2.3: The Nuclear Atom is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.2: Chemical Elements

Learning Objectives

- To know the meaning of isotopes and atomic masses.

To date, about 115 different elements have been discovered; by definition, each is chemically unique. To understand why they are unique, you need to understand the structure of the atom (the fundamental, individual particle of an element) and the characteristics of its components. In most cases, the symbols for the elements are derived directly from each element's name, such as C for carbon, U for uranium, Ca for calcium, and Po for polonium. Elements have also been named for their properties [such as radium (Ra) for its radioactivity], for the native country of the scientist(s) who discovered them [polonium (Po) for Poland], for eminent scientists [curium (Cm) for the Curies], for gods and goddesses [selenium (Se) for the Greek goddess of the moon, Selene], and for other poetic or historical reasons. Some of the symbols used for elements that have been known since antiquity are derived from historical names that are no longer in use; only the symbols remain to indicate their origin. Examples are Fe for iron, from the Latin *ferrum*; Na for sodium, from the Latin *natrium*; and W for tungsten, from the German *wolfram*. Examples are in Table 1.2.1.

Table 1.2.1: Element Symbols Based on Names No Longer in Use

Element	Symbol	Derivation	Meaning
antimony	Sb	stibium	Latin for "mark"
copper	Cu	cuprum	from Cyprium, Latin name for the island of Cyprus, the major source of copper ore in the Roman Empire
gold	Au	aurum	Latin for "gold"
iron	Fe	ferrum	Latin for "iron"
lead	Pb	plumbum	Latin for "heavy"
mercury	Hg	hydrargyrum	Latin for "liquid silver"
potassium	K	kalium	from the Arabic al-qili, "alkali"
silver	Ag	argentum	Latin for "silver"
sodium	Na	natrium	Latin for "sodium"
tin	Sn	stannum	Latin for "tin"
tungsten	W	wolfram	German for "wolf stone" because it interfered with the smelting of tin and was thought to devour the tin

Atomic Number (Z)

What single parameter uniquely characterizes the atom of a given element? It is not the atom's relative mass, as we will see in the section on isotopes below. It is, rather, the number of protons in the nucleus, which we call the *atomic number* and denote by the symbol *Z*. Each proton carries an electric charge of +1, so the atomic number also specifies the electric charge of the nucleus. In the neutral atom, the *Z protons* within the nucleus are balanced by *Z electrons* outside it.

Henry Moseley

Atomic numbers were first worked out in 1913 by Henry Moseley, a young member of Rutherford's research group in Manchester. Moseley searched for a measurable property of each element that increases linearly with atomic number. He found this in a class of X-rays emitted by an element when it is bombarded with electrons. The frequencies of these X-rays

are unique to each element, and they increase uniformly in successive elements. Moseley found that the square roots of these frequencies give a straight line when plotted against Z; this enabled him to sort the elements in order of increasing atomic number.



You can think of the atomic number as a kind of serial number of an element, commencing at 1 for hydrogen and increasing by one for each successive element. The chemical name of the element and its symbol are uniquely tied to the atomic number; thus the symbol "Sr" stands for strontium, whose atoms all have Z = 38.

Mass number (A)

This is just the sum of the numbers of protons and neutrons in the nucleus. It is sometimes represented by the symbol A, so

$$A = Z + N \tag{1.2.1}$$

in which Z is the atomic number and N is the *neutron number*.

Nuclides and their Symbols

The term *nuclide* simply refers to any particular kind of nucleus. For example, a nucleus of atomic number 7 is a nuclide of nitrogen. Any nuclide is characterized by the pair of numbers (Z ,A). The element symbol depends on Z alone, so the symbol ^{26}Mg is used to specify the mass-26 nuclide of manganese, whose name implies Z=12. A more explicit way of denoting a particular kind of nucleus is to add the atomic number as a subscript. Of course, this is somewhat redundant, since the symbol Mg **always** implies Z=12, but it is sometimes a convenience when discussing several nuclides.

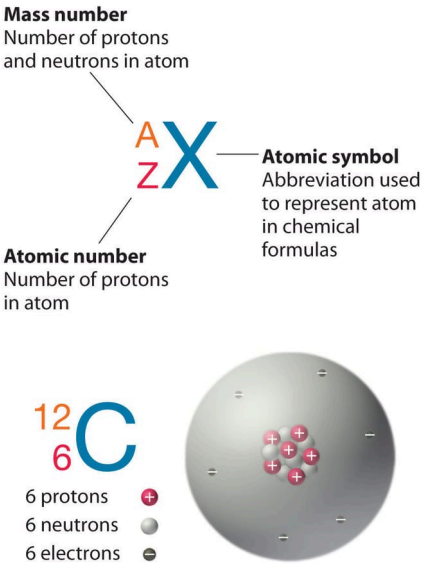


Figure 1.2.2: Formalism used for identifying specific nuclide (any particular kind of nucleus)

The element carbon (C) has an atomic number of 6, which means that all neutral carbon atoms contain 6 protons and 6 electrons. In a typical sample of carbon-containing material, 98.89% of the carbon atoms also contain 6 neutrons, so each has a mass number of 12. An isotope of any element can be uniquely represented as ${}^{A}_{Z}X$, where X is the atomic symbol of the element. The isotope of carbon that has 6 neutrons is therefore ${}^{12}_{6}C$. The subscript indicating the atomic number is actually **redundant** because the atomic symbol already uniquely specifies Z. Consequently, ${}^{12}_{6}C$ is more often written as ^{12}C, which is read as "carbon-12." Nevertheless, the value of Z is commonly included in the notation for nuclear reactions because these reactions involve changes in Z.

Isotopes

Recall that the nuclei of most atoms contain neutrons as well as protons. Unlike protons, the number of neutrons is not absolutely fixed for most elements. Atoms that have the same number of protons, and hence the same atomic number, but different numbers of neutrons are called isotopes. All isotopes of an element have the same number of protons and electrons, which means they exhibit the same chemistry. The isotopes of an element differ only in their atomic mass, which is given by the mass number (A), the sum of the numbers of protons and neutrons.

Two nuclides having the **same** atomic number but different mass numbers are known as *isotopes*. Most elements occur in nature as mixtures of isotopes, but twenty-three of them (including beryllium and fluorine, shown in the table) are monoisotopic. For example, there are three *natural isotopes* of magnesium: ^{24}Mg (79% of all Mg atoms), ^{25}Mg (10%), and ^{26}Mg (11%); all three are present in all compounds of magnesium in about these same proportions.

	Z	mass numbers
H	1	1 2 3
He	2	3 4
Li	3	6 7
Be	4	9
B	5	10 11
C	6	12 13 14
N	7	14 15
O	8	16 17 18
F	9	19
Ne	10	20 21 22

Approximately 290 isotopes occur in nature. The two heavy isotopes of hydrogen are especially important— so much so that they have names and symbols of their own:

$$\underset{\text{protium}}{{}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}} \tag{1.2.2}$$

$$\underset{\text{deuterium}}{{}^{2}_{1}\mathrm{H} \equiv \mathrm{D}} \tag{1.2.3}$$

$$\underset{\text{tritium}}{{}^{2}_{1}\mathrm{H} \equiv \mathrm{T}} \tag{1.2.4}$$

Deuterium accounts for only about 15 out of every one million atoms of hydrogen. Tritium, which is radioactive, is even less abundant. All the tritium on the earth is a by-product of the decay of other radioactive elements.

For carbon, in addition to ${}^{12}C$, a typical sample of carbon contains 1.11% ${}^{13}_{6}C$ (^{13}C), with 7 neutrons and 6 protons, and a trace of ${}^{14}_{6}C$ (^{14}C), with 8 neutrons and 6 protons. The nucleus of ^{14}C is not stable, however, but undergoes a slow radioactive decay that is the basis of the carbon-14 dating technique used in archeology. Many elements other than carbon have more than one stable isotope; tin, for example, has 10 isotopes. The properties of some common isotopes are in Table 1.2.2.

Table 1.2.2: Properties of Selected Isotopes

Element	Symbol	Atomic Mass (amu)	Isotope Mass Number	Isotope Masses (amu)	Percent Abundances (%)
hydrogen	H	1.0079	1	1.007825	99.9855
			2	2.014102	0.0115
boron	B	10.81	10	10.012937	19.91
			11	11.009305	80.09
carbon	C	12.011	12	12 (defined)	99.89
			13	13.003355	1.11
oxygen	O	15.9994	16	15.994915	99.757
			17	16.999132	0.0378
			18	17.999161	0.205
iron	Fe	55.845	54	53.939611	5.82
			56	55.934938	91.66
			57	56.935394	2.19
			58	57.933276	0.33
uranium	U	238.03	234	234.040952	0.0054
			235	235.043930	0.7204
			238	238.050788	99.274

Sources of isotope data: G. Audi et al., Nuclear Physics A 729 (2003): 337–676; J. C. Kotz and K. F. Purcell, Chemistry and Chemical Reactivity, 2nd ed., 1991.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

How Elements Are Represented on the Periodic Table: https://youtu.be/ik6ZsaSyISo

Example 1.2.1

An element with three stable isotopes has 82 protons. The separate isotopes contain 124, 125, and 126 neutrons. Identify the element and write symbols for the isotopes.

Given: number of protons and neutrons

Asked for: element and atomic symbol

Strategy:

A. Refer to the periodic table and use the number of protons to identify the element.
B. Calculate the mass number of each isotope by adding together the numbers of protons and neutrons.
C. Give the symbol of each isotope with the mass number as the superscript and the number of protons as the subscript, both written to the left of the symbol of the element.

Solution:

A The element with 82 protons (atomic number of 82) is lead: Pb.

B For the first isotope, A = 82 protons + 124 neutrons = 206. Similarly, A = 82 + 125 = 207 and A = 82 + 126 = 208 for the second and third isotopes, respectively. The symbols for these isotopes are ${}^{206}_{82}Pb$, ${}^{207}_{82}Pb$, and ${}^{208}_{82}Pb$, which are usually abbreviated as ${}^{206}Pb$, ${}^{207}Pb$, and ${}^{208}Pb$.

Exercise 1.2.1

Identify the element with 35 protons and write the symbols for its isotopes with 44 and 46 neutrons.

Answer: ${}^{79}_{35}\mathrm{Br}$ and ${}^{81}_{35}\mathrm{Br}$ or, more commonly, ${}^{79}\mathrm{Br}$ and ${}^{81}\mathrm{Br}$.

Summary

- The atom consists of discrete particles that govern its chemical and physical behavior.Contributors

Each atom of an element contains the same number of protons, which is the **atomic number** (*Z*). Neutral atoms have the same number of electrons and protons. Atoms of an element that contain different numbers of neutrons are called **isotopes**. Each isotope of a given element has the same atomic number but a different **mass number** (*A*), which is the sum of the numbers of protons and neutrons. The relative masses of atoms are reported using the **atomic mass unit** (**amu**), which is defined as one-twelfth of the mass of one atom of carbon-12, with 6 protons, 6 neutrons, and 6 electrons.

This page titled 1.2: Chemical Elements is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 2.4: Chemical Elements is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.3: Atomic Mass

Learning Objectives

- to know the meaning of isotopes and atomic masses.

Atomic and Molecular Weights

The subscripts in chemical formulas, and the coefficients in chemical equations represent *exact* quantities. H_2O, for example, indicates that a water molecule comprises exactly **two** atoms of hydrogen and **one** atom of oxygen. The following equation:

$$C_3H_8\,(g) + 5\,O_2\,(g) \;\rightarrow 3\,CO_2\,(g) + 4\,H_2O\,(l) \tag{1.3.1}$$

not only tells us that propane reacts with oxygen to produce carbon dioxide and water, but that ***1*** molecule of propane reacts with ***5*** molecules of oxygen to produce ***3*** molecules of carbon dioxide and ***4*** molecules of water. Since counting individual atoms or molecules is a little difficult, quantitative aspects of chemistry rely on knowing the *masses* of the compounds involved.

Atoms of different elements have different masses. Early work on the separation of water into its constituent elements (hydrogen and oxygen) indicated that 100 grams of water contained 11.1 grams of hydrogen and 88.9 grams of oxygen:

$$100 \text{ grams Water} \rightarrow 11.1 \text{ grams Hydrogen} + 88.9 \text{ grams Oxygen} \tag{1.3.2}$$

Later, scientists discovered that water was composed of ***two atoms*** of hydrogen ***for each atom*** of oxygen. Therefore, in the above analysis, *in the 11.1 grams of hydrogen there were twice as many atoms as in the 88.9 grams of oxygen*. Therefore, an oxygen atom must weigh about 16 times as much as a hydrogen atom:

$$\frac{\dfrac{88.9\ g\ Oxygen}{1\ atom}}{\dfrac{111\ g\ Hydrogen}{2\ atoms}} = 16 \tag{1.3.3}$$

Hydrogen, the lightest element, was assigned a relative mass of '1', and the other elements were assigned 'atomic masses' relative to this value for hydrogen. Thus, oxygen was assigned an atomic mass of 16. We now know that a **hydrogen** atom has a mass of **1.6735 x 10^{-24}** grams, and that the **oxygen** atom has a mass of **2.6561 X 10^{-23}** grams. As we saw earlier, it is convenient to use a reference unit when dealing with such small numbers: the **atomic mass unit**. The atomic mass unit (***amu***) was not standardized against hydrogen, but rather, against the ^{12}C isotope of **carbon** (***amu* = 12**).

Thus, the mass of the **hydrogen atom** (^{1}H) is 1.0080 *amu*, and the mass of **an oxygen atom** (^{16}O) is 15.995 *amu*. Once the masses of atoms were determined, the ***amu*** could be assigned an actual value:

1 ***amu*** = 1.66054 x 10^{-24} **grams** conversely: 1 **gram** = 6.02214 x 10^{23} ***amu***

Average Atomic Mass

Although the masses of the electron, the proton, and the neutron are known to a high degree of precision (Table 2.3.1), the mass of any given atom is not simply the sum of the masses of its electrons, protons, and neutrons. For example, the ratio of the masses of ^{1}H (hydrogen) and ^{2}H (deuterium) is actually 0.500384, rather than 0.49979 as predicted from the numbers of neutrons and protons present. Although the difference in mass is small, it is extremely important because it is the source of the huge amounts of energy released in nuclear reactions.

Because atoms are much too small to measure individually and do not have charges, there is no convenient way to accurately measure absolute atomic masses. Scientists can measure relative atomic masses very accurately, however, using an instrument called a mass spectrometer. The technique is conceptually similar to the one Thomson used to determine the mass-to-charge

ratio of the electron. First, electrons are removed from or added to atoms or molecules, thus producing charged particles called ions. When an electric field is applied, the ions are accelerated into a separate chamber where they are deflected from their initial trajectory by a magnetic field, like the electrons in Thomson's experiment. The extent of the deflection depends on the mass-to-charge ratio of the ion. By measuring the relative deflection of ions that have the same charge, scientists can determine their relative masses (Figure 1.3.1). Thus it is not possible to calculate absolute atomic masses accurately by simply adding together the masses of the electrons, the protons, and the neutrons, and absolute atomic masses cannot be measured, but relative masses can be measured very accurately. It is actually rather common in chemistry to encounter a quantity whose magnitude can be measured only relative to some other quantity, rather than absolutely. We will encounter many other examples later in this text. In such cases, chemists usually define a standard by arbitrarily assigning a numerical value to one of the quantities, which allows them to calculate numerical values for the rest.

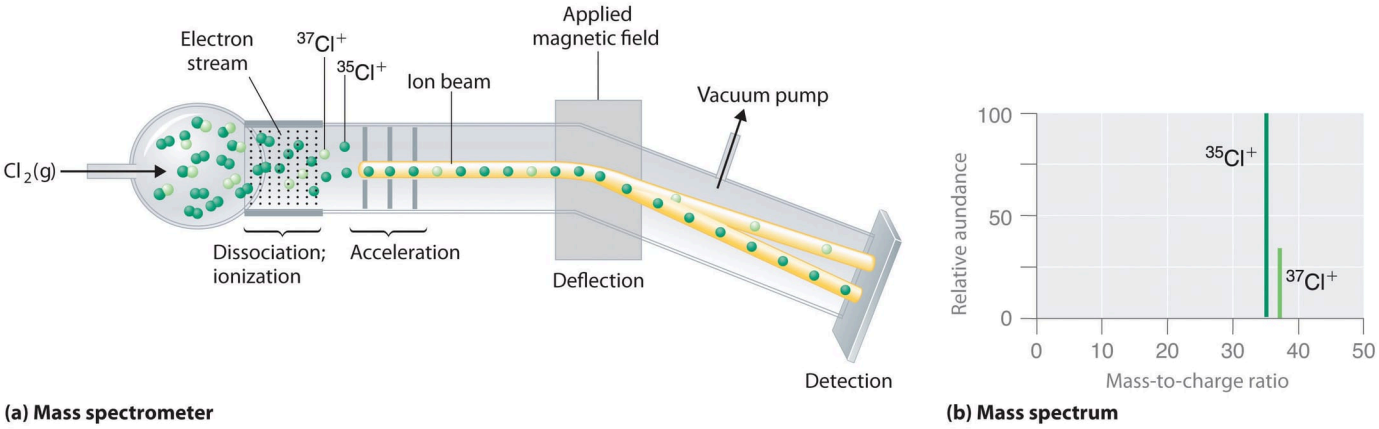


Figure 1.3.1: Determining Relative Atomic Masses Using a Mass Spectrometer. Chlorine consists of two isotopes, ^{35}Cl and ^{37}Cl, in approximately a 3:1 ratio. (a) When a sample of elemental chlorine is injected into the mass spectrometer, electrical energy is used to dissociate the Cl_2 molecules into chlorine atoms and convert the chlorine atoms to Cl^+ ions. The ions are then accelerated into a magnetic field. The extent to which the ions are deflected by the magnetic field depends on their relative mass-to-charge ratios. Note that the lighter $^{35}Cl^+$ ions are deflected more than the heavier $^{37}Cl^+$ ions. By measuring the relative deflections of the ions, chemists can determine their mass-to-charge ratios and thus their masses. (b) Each peak in the mass spectrum corresponds to an ion with a particular mass-to-charge ratio. The abundance of the two isotopes can be determined from the heights of the peaks.

The arbitrary standard that has been established for describing atomic mass is the atomic mass unit (amu or u), defined as one-twelfth of the mass of one atom of ^{12}C. Because the masses of all other atoms are calculated relative to the ^{12}C standard, ^{12}C is the only atom listed in Table 2.3.2 whose exact atomic mass is equal to the mass number. Experiments have shown that 1 amu = 1.66×10^{-24} g.

Mass spectrometric experiments give a value of 0.167842 for the ratio of the mass of ^{2}H to the mass of ^{12}C, so the **absolute mass** of ^{2}H is

$$\frac{\text{mass of } ^{2}\text{H}}{\text{mass of } ^{12}\text{C}} \times \text{mass of } ^{12}\text{C} = 0.167842 \times 12 \text{ amu} = 2.104104 \text{ amu} \tag{1.3.4}$$

The masses of the other elements are determined in a similar way.

The periodic table lists the atomic masses of all the elements. Comparing these values with those given for some of the isotopes in Table 2.3.2 reveals that the atomic masses given in the periodic table never correspond exactly to those of any of the isotopes. Because most elements exist as mixtures of several stable isotopes, the atomic mass of an element is defined as the weighted average of the masses of the isotopes. For example, naturally occurring carbon is largely a mixture of two isotopes: 98.89% ^{12}C (mass = 12 amu by definition) and 1.11% ^{13}C (mass = 13.003355 amu). The percent abundance of ^{14}C is so low that it can be ignored in this calculation. The average atomic mass of carbon is then calculated as follows:

$$(0.9889 \times 12 \text{ amu}) + (0.0111 \times 13.003355 \text{ amu}) = 12.01 \text{ amu} \tag{1.3.5}$$

Carbon is predominantly ^{12}C, so its average atomic mass should be close to 12 amu, which is in agreement with this calculation.

The value of 12.01 is shown under the symbol for C in the periodic table, although without the abbreviation amu, which is customarily omitted. Thus the tabulated atomic mass of carbon or any other element is the weighted average of the masses of the naturally occurring isotopes.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Finding the Averaged Atomic Weight of an Element: https://youtu.be/bmP6Gr9zJiQ

Example 1.3.1: Bromine

Naturally occurring bromine consists of the two isotopes listed in the following table:

Isotope	Exact Mass (amu)	Percent Abundance (%)
^{79}Br	78.9183	50.69
^{81}Br	80.9163	49.31

Calculate the atomic mass of bromine.

Given: exact mass and percent abundance

Asked for: atomic mass

Strategy:

A. Convert the percent abundances to decimal form to obtain the mass fraction of each isotope.
B. Multiply the exact mass of each isotope by its corresponding mass fraction (percent abundance ÷ 100) to obtain its weighted mass.
C. Add together the weighted masses to obtain the atomic mass of the element.
D. Check to make sure that your answer makes sense.

Solution:

A The atomic mass is the weighted average of the masses of the isotopes. In general, we can write

atomic mass of element = [(mass of isotope 1 in amu) (mass fraction of isotope 1)] + [(mass of isotope 2) (mass fraction of isotope 2)] + ...

Bromine has only two isotopes. Converting the percent abundances to mass fractions gives

$$^{79}\text{Br}: \frac{50.69}{100} = 0.5069 \tag{1.3.6}$$

$$^{81}\text{Br}: \frac{49.31}{100} = 0.4931 \tag{1.3.7}$$

B Multiplying the exact mass of each isotope by the corresponding mass fraction gives the isotope's weighted mass:

$$^{79}\text{Br}: 79.9183 \ \ amu \times 0.5069 = 40.00 \ \ amu$$

$$^{81}\text{Br} : 80.9163\ \ amu \times 0.4931 = 39.90\ \ amu$$

C The sum of the weighted masses is the atomic mass of bromine is

40.00 amu + 39.90 amu = 79.90 amu

D This value is about halfway between the masses of the two isotopes, which is expected because the percent abundance of each is approximately 50%.

Exercise 1.3.1

Magnesium has the three isotopes listed in the following table:

Isotope	Exact Mass (amu)	Percent Abundance (%)
^{24}Mg	23.98504	78.70
^{25}Mg	24.98584	10.13
^{26}Mg	25.98259	11.17

Use these data to calculate the atomic mass of magnesium.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

The mass of an atom is a weighted average that is largely determined by the number of its protons and neutrons, whereas the number of protons and electrons determines its charge. Each atom of an element contains the same number of protons, known as the atomic number (Z). Neutral atoms have the same number of electrons and protons. Atoms of an element that contain different numbers of neutrons are called isotopes. Each isotope of a given element has the same atomic number but a different mass number (A), which is the sum of the numbers of protons and neutrons. The relative masses of atoms are reported using the atomic mass unit (amu), which is defined as one-twelfth of the mass of one atom of carbon-12, with 6 protons, 6 neutrons, and 6 electrons. The atomic mass of an element is the weighted average of the masses of the naturally occurring isotopes. When one or more electrons are added to or removed from an atom or molecule, a charged particle called an ion is produced, whose charge is indicated by a superscript after the symbol.

Answers

Exercise 1.3.1

24.31 amu

This page titled 1.3: Atomic Mass is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 2.5: Atomic Mass is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

2: THE PERIODIC TABLE AND ATOMIC STRUCTURE

Petrucci: *General Chemistry*
Principles and Modern Applications

I II III IV V VI VII VIII IX X XI XII XIII XIV XV XVI XVII XVIII XIX XX
XXI XXII XXIII XXIV XXV XXVI XXVII XXVIII

Template:HideTOC

In this chapter, we describe how electrons are arranged in atoms and how the spatial arrangements of electrons are related to their energies. We also explain how knowing the arrangement of electrons in an atom enables chemists to predict and explain the chemistry of an element. As you study the material presented in this chapter, you will discover how the shape of the periodic table reflects the electronic arrangements of elements. In this and subsequent chapters, we build on this information to explain why certain chemical changes occur and others do not. After reading this chapter, you will know enough about the theory of the electronic structure of atoms to explain what causes the characteristic colors of neon signs, how laser beams are created, and why gemstones and fireworks have such brilliant colors. In later chapters, we will develop the concepts introduced here to explain why the only compound formed by sodium and chlorine is NaCl, an ionic compound, whereas neon and argon do not form any stable compounds, and why carbon and hydrogen combine to form an almost endless array of covalent compounds, such as CH_4, C_2H_2, C_2H_4, and C_2H_6. You will discover that knowing how to use the periodic table is the single most important skill you can acquire to understand the incredible chemical diversity of the elements.

- Topic hierarchy

2.1: The Bohr Atom
2.2: Multielectron Atoms
2.3: Electron Configurations
2.4: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table
2.5: Classifying the Elements: The Periodic Law and the Periodic Table
2.6: Sizes of Atoms and Ions
2.7: Ionization Energy
2.8: Electron Affinity
2.9: Periodic Properties of the Elements

This page titled 2: The Periodic Table and Atomic Structure is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

2.1: The Bohr Atom

Learning Objectives

- To know the relationship between atomic spectra and the electronic structure of atoms.

In 1913, a Danish physicist, Niels Bohr (1885–1962; Nobel Prize in Physics, 1922), proposed a theoretical model for the hydrogen atom that explained its emission spectrum. Bohr's model required only one assumption: *The electron moves around the nucleus in circular orbits that can have only certain allowed radii.* Rutherford's earlier model of the atom had also assumed that electrons moved in circular orbits around the nucleus and that the atom was held together by the electrostatic attraction between the positively charged nucleus and the negatively charged electron. Although we now know that the assumption of circular orbits was incorrect, Bohr's insight was to propose that *the electron could occupy only certain regions of space*.

Using classical physics, Niels Bohr showed that the energy of an electron in a particular orbit is given by

$$E_n = \frac{-ehc}{n^2} \tag{2.1.1}$$

where e is the Rydberg constant, *h* is Planck's constant, *c* is the speed of light, and *n* is a positive integer corresponding to the number assigned to the orbit, with *n* = 1 corresponding to the orbit closest to the nucleus. In this model *n* = ∞ corresponds to the level where the energy holding the electron and the nucleus together is zero. In that level, the electron is unbound from the nucleus and the atom has been separated into a negatively charged (the electron) and a positively charged (the nucleus) ion. In this state the radius of the orbit is also infinite. The atom has been ionized.

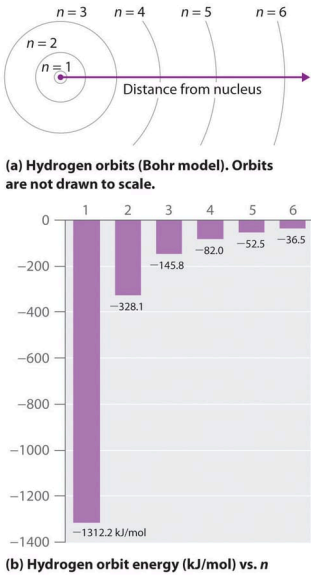
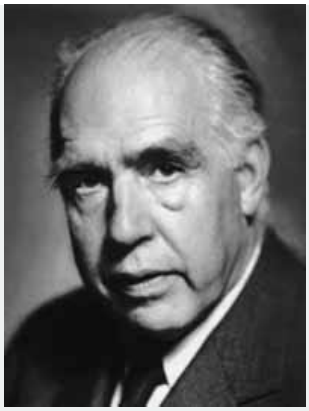


Figure 2.1.2 The Bohr Model of the Hydrogen Atom (a) The distance of the orbit from the nucleus increases with increasing *n*. (b) The energy of the orbit becomes increasingly less negative with increasing *n*.

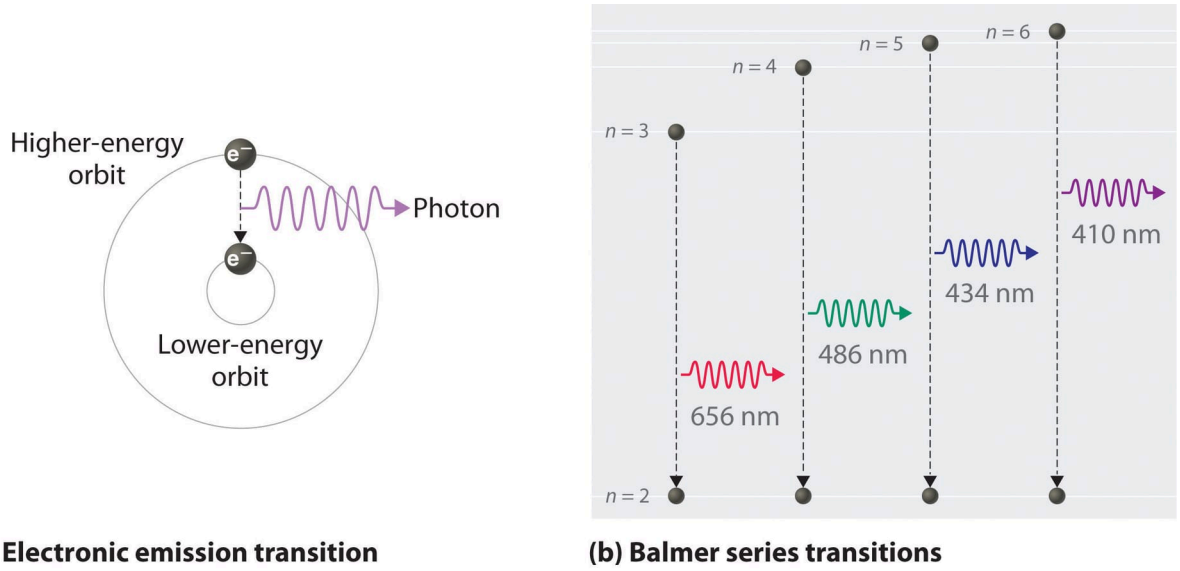
Niels Bohr (1885–1962)

During the Nazi occupation of Denmark in World War II, Bohr escaped to the United States, where he became associated with the Atomic Energy Project.



In his final years, he devoted himself to the peaceful application of atomic physics and to resolving political problems arising from the development of atomic weapons.

As n decreases, the energy holding the electron and the nucleus together becomes increasingly negative, the radius of the orbit shrinks and more energy is needed to ionize the atom. The orbit with n = 1 is the lowest lying and most tightly bound. The negative sign in Equation 2.1.3 indicates that the electron-nucleus pair is more tightly bound when they are near each other than when they are far apart. Because a hydrogen atom with its one electron in this orbit has the lowest possible energy, this is the ground state (the most stable arrangement of electrons for an element or a compound), the most stable arrangement for a hydrogen atom. As n increases, the radius of the orbit increases; the electron is farther from the proton, which results in a less stable arrangement with higher potential energy (Figure 2.10). A hydrogen atom with an electron in an orbit with n > 1 is therefore in an excited state. Any arrangement of electrons that is higher in energy than the ground state.: its energy is higher than the energy of the ground state. When an atom in an excited state undergoes a transition to the ground state in a process called decay, it loses energy by emitting a photon whose energy corresponds to the difference in energy between the two states (Figure 2.1.1).



(a) Electronic emission transition **(b) Balmer series transitions**

Figure 2.1.3: The Emission of Light by a Hydrogen Atom in an Excited State. (a) Light is emitted when the electron undergoes a transition from an orbit with a higher value of *n* (at a higher energy) to an orbit with a lower value of *n* (at lower energy). (b) The Balmer series of emission lines is due to transitions from orbits with *n* ≥ 3 to the orbit with *n* = 2. The differences in energy between these levels corresponds to light in the visible portion of the electromagnetic spectrum.

So the difference in energy (Δ*E*) between any two orbits or energy levels is given by $\Delta E = E_{n_1} - E_{n_2}$ where n_1 is the final orbit and n_2 the initial orbit. Substituting from Bohr's equation (Equation 2.1.3) for each energy value gives

$$\Delta E = E_{final} - E_{initial} = -\frac{ehc}{n_2^2} - \left(-\frac{ehc}{n_1^2}\right) = -ehc\left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2}\right) \tag{2.1.2}$$

If $n_2 > n_1$, the transition is from a higher energy state (larger-radius orbit) to a lower energy state (smaller-radius orbit), as shown by the dashed arrow in part (a) in Figure 2.1.3. Substituting hc/λ for ΔE gives

$$\Delta E = \frac{hc}{\lambda} = -ehc\left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2}\right) \tag{2.1.3}$$

Canceling hc on both sides gives

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = -e\left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2}\right) \tag{2.1.4}$$

Except for the negative sign, this is the same equation that Rydberg obtained experimentally. The negative sign in Equation 2.1.5 and Equation 2.1.6 indicates that energy is released as the electron moves from orbit n_2 to orbit n_1 because orbit n_2 is at a higher energy than orbit n_1. Bohr calculated the value of e from fundamental constants such as the charge and mass of the electron and Planck's constant and obtained a value of 1.0974 × 10^7 m^{-1}, the same number Rydberg had obtained by analyzing the emission spectra.

We can now understand the physical basis for the Balmer series of lines in the emission spectrum of hydrogen (part (b) in Figure 2.9). As shown in part (b) in Figure 2.1.3, the lines in this series correspond to transitions from higher-energy orbits (n > 2) to the second orbit (n = 2). Thus the hydrogen atoms in the sample have absorbed energy from the electrical discharge and decayed from a higher-energy excited state (n > 2) to a lower-energy state (n = 2) by emitting a photon of electromagnetic radiation whose energy corresponds exactly to the difference in energy between the two states (part (a) in Figure 2.1.3). The n = 3 to n = 2 transition gives rise to the line at 656 nm (red), the n = 4 to n = 2 transition to the line at 486 nm (green), the n = 5 to n = 2 transition to the line at 434 nm (blue), and the n = 6 to n = 2 transition to the line at 410 nm (violet). Because a sample of hydrogen contains a large number of atoms, the intensity of the various lines in a line spectrum depends on the number of atoms in each excited state. At the temperature in the gas discharge tube, more atoms are in the n = 3 than the n ≥ 4 levels. Consequently, the n = 3 to n = 2 transition is the most intense line, producing the characteristic red color of a hydrogen discharge (part (a) in Figure 2.1.1). Other families of lines are produced by transitions from excited states with n > 1 to the orbit with n = 1 or to orbits with n ≥ 3. These transitions are shown schematically in Figure 2.1.4

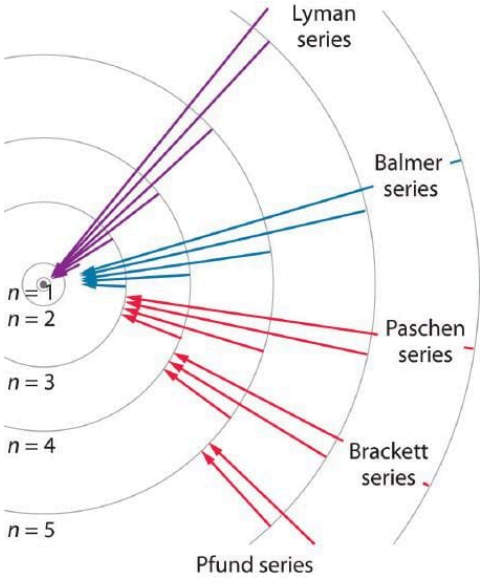


Figure 2.1.4: Electron Transitions Responsible for the Various Series of Lines Observed in the Emission Spectrum of Hydrogen. The Lyman series of lines is due to transitions from higher-energy orbits to the lowest-energy orbit (n = 1); these transitions release a great deal of energy, corresponding to radiation in the ultraviolet portion of the electromagnetic spectrum. The Paschen, Brackett, and Pfund series of lines are due to transitions from higher-energy orbits to orbits with n = 3, 4, and 5, respectively; these transitions release substantially less energy, corresponding to infrared radiation. (Orbits are not drawn to scale.)

In contemporary applications, electron transitions are used in timekeeping that needs to be exact. Telecommunications systems, such as cell phones, depend on timing signals that are accurate to within a millionth of a second per day, as are the devices that control the US power grid. Global positioning system (GPS) signals must be accurate to within a billionth of a second per day,

which is equivalent to gaining or losing no more than one second in 1,400,000 years. Quantifying time requires finding an event with an interval that repeats on a regular basis. To achieve the accuracy required for modern purposes, physicists have turned to the atom. The current standard used to calibrate clocks is the cesium atom. Supercooled cesium atoms are placed in a vacuum chamber and bombarded with microwaves whose frequencies are carefully controlled. When the frequency is exactly right, the atoms absorb enough energy to undergo an electronic transition to a higher-energy state. Decay to a lower-energy state emits radiation. The microwave frequency is continually adjusted, serving as the clock's pendulum. In 1967, the second was defined as the duration of 9,192,631,770 oscillations of the resonant frequency of a cesium atom, called the *cesium clock*. Research is currently under way to develop the next generation of atomic clocks that promise to be even more accurate. Such devices would allow scientists to monitor vanishingly faint electromagnetic signals produced by nerve pathways in the brain and geologists to measure variations in gravitational fields, which cause fluctuations in time, that would aid in the discovery of oil or minerals.

Example 2.1.1: The Lyman Series

The so-called Lyman series of lines in the emission spectrum of hydrogen corresponds to transitions from various excited states to the n = 1 orbit. Calculate the wavelength of the lowest-energy line in the Lyman series to three significant figures. In what region of the electromagnetic spectrum does it occur?

Given: lowest-energy orbit in the Lyman series

Asked for: wavelength of the lowest-energy Lyman line and corresponding region of the spectrum

Strategy:

A. Substitute the appropriate values into Equation 2.1.2 (the Rydberg equation) and solve for λ.
B. Use Figure 2.1.1 to locate the region of the electromagnetic spectrum corresponding to the calculated wavelength.

Solution:

We can use the Rydberg equation to calculate the wavelength:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = -e\left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2}\right) \tag{2.1.5}$$

A For the Lyman series, n_1 = 1. The lowest-energy line is due to a transition from the n = 2 to n = 1 orbit because they are the closest in energy.

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = -e\left(\frac{1}{n_2^2} - \frac{1}{n_1^2}\right) = 1.097 \times m^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{1} - \frac{1}{4}\right) = 8.228 \times 10^6\ m^{-1} \tag{2.1.6}$$

It turns out that spectroscopists (the people who study spectroscopy) use cm^{-1} rather than m^{-1} as a common unit. Wavelength is inversely proportional to energy but frequency is directly proportional as shown by Planck's formula, E=hu.

Spectroscopists often talk about energy and frequency as equivalent. The cm^{-1} unit is particularly convenient. The infrared range is roughly 200 - 5,000 cm^{-1}, the visible from 11,000 to 25.000 cm^{-1} and the UV between 25,000 and 100,000 cm^{-1}. The units of cm^{-1} are called wavenumbers, although people often verbalize it as inverse centimeters. We can convert the answer in part A to cm^{-1}.

$$\varpi = \frac{1}{\lambda} = 8.228 \times 10^6\ \cancel{m}^{-1}\left(\frac{\cancel{m}}{100\ cm}\right) = 82,280\ cm^{-1} \tag{2.1.7}$$

and

$$\lambda = 1.215 \times 10^{-7}\ m = 122\ nm \tag{2.1.8}$$

This emission line is called Lyman alpha. It is the strongest atomic emission line from the sun and drives the chemistry of the upper atmosphere of all the planets producing ions by stripping electrons from atoms and molecules. It is completely absorbed by oxygen in the upper stratosphere, dissociating O_2 molecules to O atoms which react with other O_2 molecules to form stratospheric ozone

B This wavelength is in the ultraviolet region of the spectrum.

Exercise 2.1.1: The Pfund Series

The Pfund series of lines in the emission spectrum of hydrogen corresponds to transitions from higher excited states to the $n = 5$ orbit. Calculate the wavelength of the *second* line in the Pfund series to three significant figures. In which region of the spectrum does it lie?

Answer: 4.65×10^3 nm; infrared

Bohr's model of the hydrogen atom gave an exact explanation for its observed emission spectrum. The following are his key contributions to our understanding of atomic structure:

- Electrons can occupy only certain regions of space, called *orbits*.
- Orbits closer to the nucleus are lower in energy.
- Electrons can move from one orbit to another by absorbing or emitting energy, giving rise to characteristic spectra.

Unfortunately, Bohr could not explain *why* the electron should be restricted to particular orbits. Also, despite a great deal of tinkering, such as assuming that orbits could be ellipses rather than circles, his model could not quantitatively explain the emission spectra of any element other than hydrogen (Figure 2.1.5). In fact, Bohr's model worked only for species that contained just one electron: H, He^+, Li^{2+}, and so forth. Scientists needed a fundamental change in their way of thinking about the electronic structure of atoms to advance beyond the Bohr model.

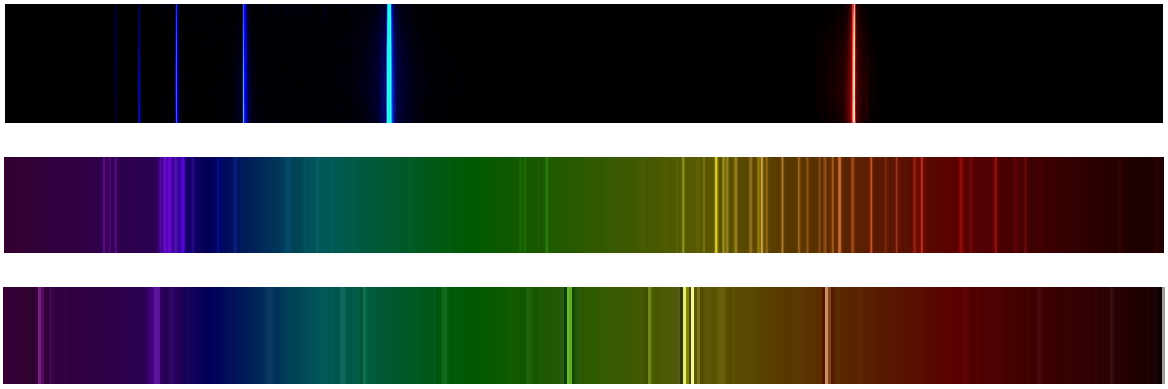


Figure 2.1.5: The Emission Spectra of Elements Compared with Hydrogen. These images show (a) hydrogen gas, which is atomized to hydrogen atoms in the discharge tube; (b) neon; and (c) mercury. The strongest lines in the hydrogen spectrum are in the far UV Lyman series starting at 124 nm and below. The strongest lines in the mercury spectrum are at 181 and 254 nm, also in the UV. These are not shown.

Thus far we have explicitly considered only the emission of light by atoms in excited states, which produces an emission spectrum (a spectrum produced by the emission of light by atoms in excited states). The converse, absorption of light by ground-state atoms to produce an excited state, can also occur, producing an absorption spectrum (a spectrum produced by the absorption of light by ground-state atoms). Because each element has characteristic emission and absorption spectra, scientists can use such spectra to analyze the composition of matter.

When an atom emits light, it decays to a lower energy state; when an atom absorbs light, it is excited to a higher energy state.

The Energy States of the Hydrogen Atom

If white light is passed through a sample of hydrogen, hydrogen atoms absorb energy as an electron is excited to higher energy levels (orbits with $n \geq 2$). If the light that emerges is passed through a prism, it forms a continuous spectrum with *black* lines (corresponding to no light passing through the sample) at 656, 468, 434, and 410 nm. These wavelengths correspond to the $n = 2$ to $n = 3$, $n = 2$ to $n = 4$, $n = 2$ to $n = 5$, and $n = 2$ to $n = 6$ transitions. Any given element therefore has both a characteristic emission spectrum and a characteristic absorption spectrum, which are essentially complementary images.

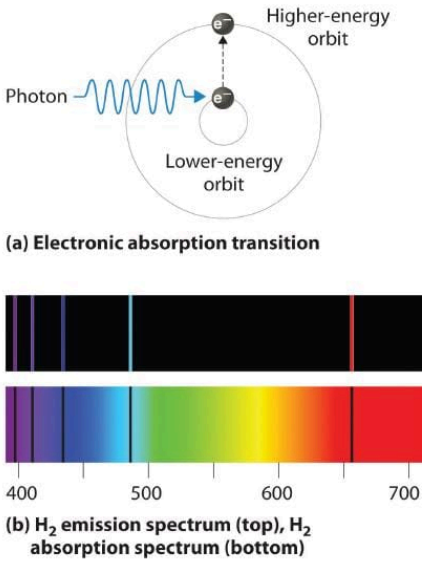


Figure 2.1.6: Absorption and Emission Spectra. Absorption of light by a hydrogen atom. (a) When a hydrogen atom absorbs a photon of light, an electron is excited to an orbit that has a higher energy and larger value of n. (b) Images of the emission and absorption spectra of hydrogen are shown here.

Emission and absorption spectra form the basis of *spectroscopy*, which uses spectra to provide information about the structure and the composition of a substance or an object. In particular, astronomers use emission and absorption spectra to determine the composition of stars and interstellar matter. As an example, consider the spectrum of sunlight shown in Figure 2.1.7 Because the sun is very hot, the light it emits is in the form of a continuous emission spectrum. Superimposed on it, however, is a series of dark lines due primarily to the absorption of specific frequencies of light by cooler atoms in the outer atmosphere of the sun. By comparing these lines with the spectra of elements measured on Earth, we now know that the sun contains large amounts of hydrogen, iron, and carbon, along with smaller amounts of other elements. During the solar eclipse of 1868, the French astronomer Pierre Janssen (1824–1907) observed a set of lines that did not match those of any known element. He suggested that they were due to the presence of a new element, which he named *helium*, from the Greek *helios*, meaning “sun.” Helium was finally discovered in uranium ores on Earth in 1895. Alpha particles are helium nuclei. Alpha particles emitted by the radioactive uranium, pick up electrons from the rocks to form helium atoms.

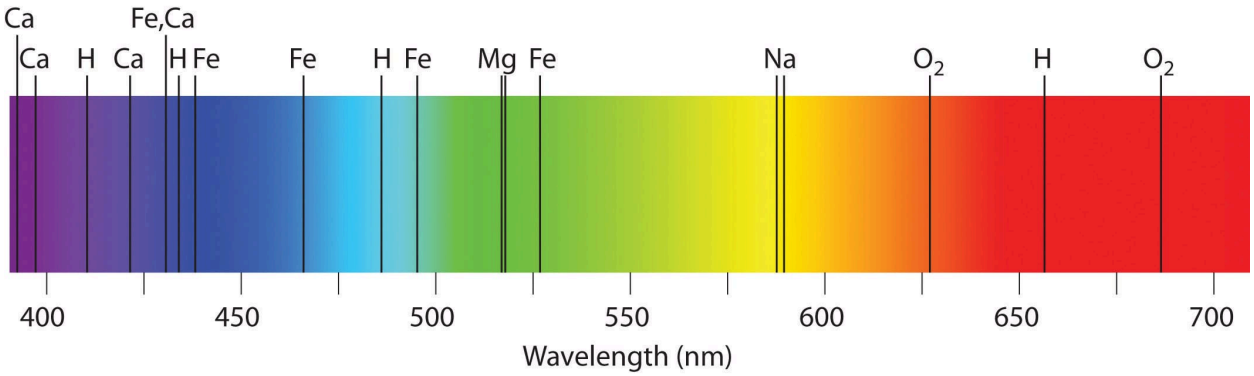


Figure 2.1.7: The Visible Spectrum of Sunlight. The characteristic dark lines are mostly due to the absorption of light by elements that are present in the cooler outer part of the sun's atmosphere; specific elements are indicated by the labels. The lines at 628 and 687 nm, however, are due to the absorption of light by oxygen molecules in Earth's atmosphere.

The familiar red color of "neon" signs used in advertising is due to the emission spectrum of neon shown in part (b) in Figure 2.1.5. Similarly, the blue and yellow colors of certain street lights are caused, respectively, by mercury and sodium discharges. In all these cases, an electrical discharge excites neutral atoms to a higher energy state, and light is emitted when the atoms decay to the ground state. In the case of mercury, most of the emission lines are below 450 nm, which produces a blue light (part (c) in Figure 2.1.5). In the case of sodium, the most intense emission lines are at 589 nm, which produces an intense yellow light.

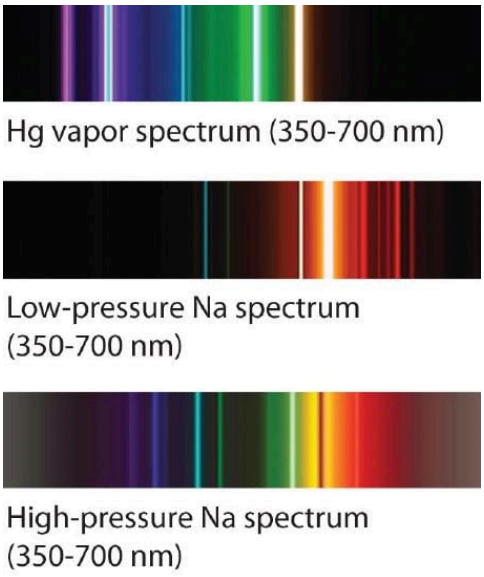


Figure 2.1.8: The emission spectra of sodium and mercury. Sodium and mercury spectra. Many street lights use bulbs that contain sodium or mercury vapor. Due to the very different emission spectra of these elements, they emit light of different colors. The lines in the sodium lamp are broadened by collisions. The dark line in the center of the high pressure sodium lamp where the low pressure lamp is strongest is cause by absorption of light in the cooler outer part of the lamp.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Bohr Atom: https://youtu.be/GuFQEOzFOgA

The Chemistry of Fireworks

The colors of fireworks are also due to atomic emission spectra. As shown in part (a) in Figure 2.1.9, a typical shell used in a fireworks display contains gunpowder to propel the shell into the air and a fuse to initiate a variety of reactions that produce heat and small explosions. Thermal energy excites the atoms to higher energy states; as they decay to lower energy states, the atoms emit light that gives the familiar colors.



Figure 2.1.9 :The Chemistry of Fireworks *(a) In the "multibreak" shell used for fireworks, the chambers contain mixtures of fuels and oxidizers plus compounds for special effects ("stars") connected by time-delay fuses so that the chambers explode in stages. (b) The finale of a fireworks display usually consists of many shells fired simultaneously to give a dazzling multicolor display. The labels indicate the substances that are responsible for the colors of some of the fireworks shown.*

When oxidant/reductant mixtures listed in Table 2.1.1 are ignited, a flash of white or yellow light is produced along with a loud bang. Achieving the colors shown in part (b) in Figure 2.1.9 requires adding a small amount of a substance that has an emission spectrum in the desired portion of the visible spectrum. For example, sodium is used for yellow because of its 589 nm emission lines. The intense yellow color of sodium would mask most other colors, so potassium and ammonium salts, rather than sodium salts, are usually used as oxidants to produce other colors, which explains the preponderance of such salts in Table 2.1.1 . Strontium salts, which are also used in highway flares, emit red light, whereas barium gives a green color. Blue is one of the most difficult colors to achieve. Copper(II) salts emit a pale blue light, but copper is dangerous to use because it forms highly unstable explosive compounds with anions such as chlorate. As you might guess, preparing fireworks with the desired properties is a complex, challenging, and potentially hazardous process. If you have the time here is a NOVA program about how fireworks are made.

*Table 2.1.1: Common Chemicals Used in the Manufacture of Fireworks**

Oxidizers	Fuels (reductants)	Special effects
ammonium perchlorate	aluminum	*blue flame*: copper carbonate, copper sulfate, or copper oxide
barium chlorate	antimony sulfide	*red flame*: strontium nitrate or strontium carbonate
barium nitrate	charcoal	*white flame*: magnesium or aluminum
potassium chlorate	magnesium	*yellow flame*: sodium oxalate or cryolite (Na_3AlF_6)
potassium nitrate	sulfur	*green flame*: barium nitrate or barium chlorate
potassium perchlorate	titanium	*white smoke*: potassium nitrate plus sulfur
strontium nitrate		*colored smoke*: potassium chlorate and sulfur, plus organic dye
***Almost any combination of an oxidizer and a fuel may be used along with the compounds needed to produce a desired special effect.**		

Oxidizers	Fuels (reductants)	Special effects
		whistling noise: potassium benzoate or sodium salicylate
		white sparks: aluminum, magnesium, or titanium
		gold sparks: iron fillings or charcoal
***Almost any combination of an oxidizer and a fuel may be used along with the compounds needed to produce a desired special effect.**		

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

There is an intimate connection between the atomic structure of an atom and its spectral characteristics. Atoms of individual elements emit light at only specific wavelengths, producing a **line spectrum** rather than the continuous spectrum of all wavelengths produced by a hot object. Niels Bohr explained the line spectrum of the hydrogen atom by assuming that the electron moved in circular orbits and that orbits with only certain radii were allowed. Lines in the spectrum were due to transitions in which an electron moved from a higher-energy orbit with a larger radius to a lower-energy orbit with smaller radius. The orbit closest to the nucleus represented the **ground state** of the atom and was most stable; orbits farther away were higher-energy **excited states**. Transitions from an excited state to a lower-energy state resulted in the emission of light with only a limited number of wavelengths. Bohr's model could not, however, explain the spectra of atoms heavier than hydrogen.

Contributors and Attributions

Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

This page titled 2.1: The Bohr Atom is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 8.4: The Bohr Atom is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

2.2: Multielectron Atoms

Learning Objectives

- To understand the basics of adding electrons to atomic orbitals
- To understand the basics of the Aufbau principle

The electron configuration of an element is the arrangement of its electrons in its atomic orbitals. By knowing the electron configuration of an element, we can predict and explain a great deal of its chemistry.

The Aufbau Principle

We construct the periodic table by following the aufbau principle (from German, meaning "building up"). First we determine the number of electrons in the atom; then we add electrons one at a time to the lowest-energy orbital available *without violating the Pauli principle*. We use the orbital energy diagram of Figure 6.29, recognizing that each orbital can hold two electrons, one with spin up ↑, corresponding to $m_S = +½$, which is arbitrarily written first, and one with spin down ↓, corresponding to $m_S = –½$. A filled orbital is indicated by ↑↓, in which the electron spins are said to be *paired*. Here is a schematic orbital diagram for a hydrogen atom in its ground state:

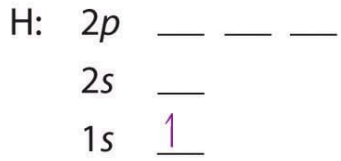
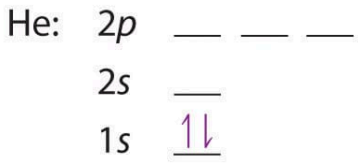


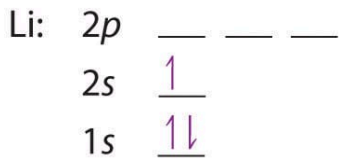
Figure 6.29"), and the electron configuration is written as $1s^1$ and read as "one-s-one."

A neutral helium atom, with an atomic number of 2 ($Z = 2$), has two electrons. We place one electron in the orbital that is lowest in energy, the 1s orbital. From the Pauli exclusion principle, we know that an orbital can contain two electrons with opposite spin, so we place the second electron in the same orbital as the first but pointing down, so that the electrons are paired. The orbital diagram for the helium atom is therefore



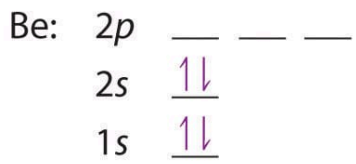
written as $1s^2$, where the superscript 2 implies the pairing of spins. Otherwise, our configuration would violate the Pauli principle.

The next element is lithium, with $Z = 3$ and three electrons in the neutral atom. We know that the 1s orbital can hold two of the electrons with their spins paired. Figure 6.29 tells us that the next lowest energy orbital is 2s, so the orbital diagram for lithium is

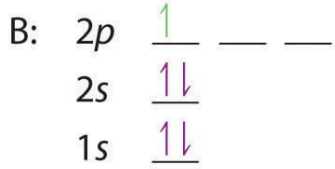


This electron configuration is written as $1s^2 2s^1$.

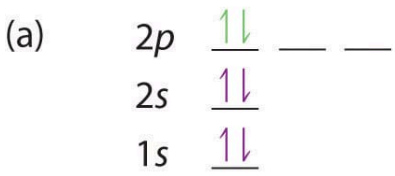
The next element is beryllium, with $Z = 4$ and four electrons. We fill both the 1s and 2s orbitals to achieve a $1s^2 2s^2$ electron configuration:

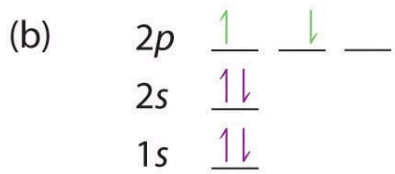


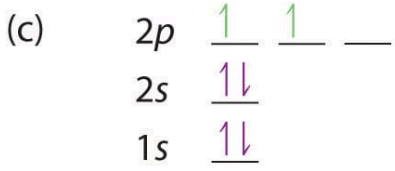
When we reach boron, with $Z = 5$ and five electrons, we must place the fifth electron in one of the 2*p* orbitals. Because all three 2*p* orbitals are degenerate, it doesn't matter which one we select. The electron configuration of boron is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^1$:



At carbon, with $Z = 6$ and six electrons, we are faced with a choice. Should the sixth electron be placed in the same 2*p* orbital that already has an electron, or should it go in one of the empty 2*p* orbitals? If it goes in an empty 2*p* orbital, will the sixth electron have its spin aligned with or be opposite to the spin of the fifth? In short, which of the following three orbital diagrams is correct for carbon, remembering that the 2*p* orbitals are degenerate?

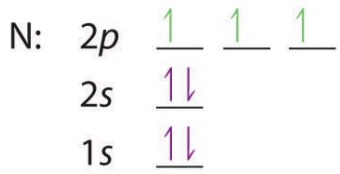






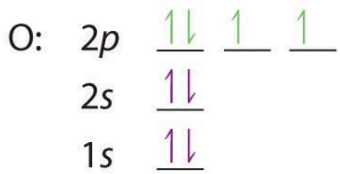
Because of electron-electron repulsions, it is more favorable energetically for an electron to be in an unoccupied orbital than in one that is already occupied; hence we can eliminate choice a. Similarly, experiments have shown that choice b is slightly higher in energy (less stable) than choice c because electrons in degenerate orbitals prefer to line up with their spins parallel; thus, we can eliminate choice b. Choice c illustrates Hund's rule (named after the German physicist Friedrich H. Hund, 1896–1997), which today says that the lowest-energy electron configuration for an atom is the one that has the maximum number of electrons with parallel spins in degenerate orbitals. By Hund's rule, the electron configuration of carbon, which is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$, is understood to correspond to the orbital diagram shown in c. Experimentally, it is found that the ground state of a neutral carbon atom does indeed contain two unpaired electrons.

When we get to nitrogen (Z = 7, with seven electrons), Hund's rule tells us that the lowest-energy arrangement is

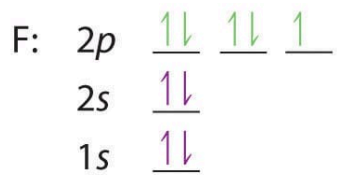


with three unpaired electrons. The electron configuration of nitrogen is thus $1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$.

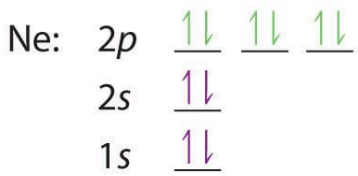
At oxygen, with Z = 8 and eight electrons, we have no choice. One electron must be paired with another in one of the 2*p* orbitals, which gives us two unpaired electrons and a $1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$ electron configuration. Because all the 2*p* orbitals are degenerate, it doesn't matter which one has the pair of electrons.



Similarly, fluorine has the electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^5$:



When we reach neon, with Z = 10, we have filled the 2*p* subshell, giving a $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$ electron configuration:



Notice that for neon, as for helium, all the orbitals through the 2*p* level are completely filled. This fact is very important in dictating both the chemical reactivity and the bonding of helium and neon, as you will see.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Electron Configuration of Atoms: https://youtu.be/LlY-O3-bfnk

Valence Electrons

As we continue through the periodic table in this way, writing the electron configurations of larger and larger atoms, it becomes tedious to keep copying the configurations of the filled inner subshells. In practice, chemists simplify the notation by using a bracketed noble gas symbol to represent the configuration of the noble gas from the preceding row because all the orbitals in a noble gas are filled. For example, [Ne] represents the $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$ electron configuration of neon (Z = 10), so the electron configuration of sodium, with Z = 11, which is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1$, is written as [Ne]$3s^1$:

Neon	Z = 10	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$
Sodium	Z = 11	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 \mathbf{3}s^1$ = [Ne]$\mathbf{3}s^1$

Because electrons in filled inner orbitals are closer to the nucleus and more tightly bound to it, they are rarely involved in chemical reactions. This means that the chemistry of an atom depends mostly on the electrons in its outermost shell, which are called the valence electrons. The simplified notation allows us to see the valence-electron configuration more easily. Using this notation to compare the electron configurations of sodium and lithium, we have:

Sodium	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1$ = [Ne]$3s^1$
Lithium	$1s^2 2s^1$ = [He]$2s^1$

It is readily apparent that both sodium and lithium have one *s* electron in their valence shell. We would therefore predict that sodium and lithium have very similar chemistry, which is indeed the case.

As we continue to build the eight elements of period 3, the 3*s* and 3*p* orbitals are filled, one electron at a time. This row concludes with the noble gas argon, which has the electron configuration [Ne]$3s^2 3p^6$, corresponding to a filled valence shell.

Example 2.2.2

Draw an orbital diagram and use it to derive the electron configuration of phosphorus, Z = 15. What is its valence electron configuration?

Given: atomic number

Asked for: orbital diagram and valence electron configuration for phosphorus

Strategy:

A. Locate the nearest noble gas preceding phosphorus in the periodic table. Then subtract its number of electrons from those in phosphorus to obtain the number of valence electrons in phosphorus.
B. Referring to Figure 6.29, draw an orbital diagram to represent those valence orbitals. Following Hund's rule, place the valence electrons in the available orbitals, beginning with the orbital that is lowest in energy. Write the electron configuration from your orbital diagram.
C. Ignore the inner orbitals (those that correspond to the electron configuration of the nearest noble gas) and write the valence electron configuration for phosphorus.

Solution:

A Because phosphorus is in the third row of the periodic table, we know that it has a [Ne] closed shell with 10 electrons. We begin by subtracting 10 electrons from the 15 in phosphorus.

B The additional five electrons are placed in the next available orbitals, which Figure 6.29 tells us are the 3*s* and 3*p* orbitals:

P: [Ne] 3*p* ___ ___ ___
3*s* ___

Because the 3s orbital is lower in energy than the 3*p* orbitals, we fill it first:

P: [Ne] 3*p* ___ ___ ___
3*s* ↑↓

Hund's rule tells us that the remaining three electrons will occupy the degenerate 3*p* orbitals separately but with their spins aligned:

P: [Ne] 3*p* 1 1 1
3*s* ↑↓

The electron configuration is [Ne]$3s^2 3p^3$.

C We obtain the valence electron configuration by ignoring the inner orbitals, which for phosphorus means that we ignore the [Ne] closed shell. This gives a valence-electron configuration of $3s^2 3p^3$.

Exercise 2.2.2

Draw an orbital diagram and use it to derive the electron configuration of chlorine, Z = 17. What is its valence electron configuration?

Answer: [Ne]$3s^2 3p^5$; $3s^2 3p^5$

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Definition of Valence Electrons: https://youtu.be/_ldxOYwM2VM

The general order in which orbitals are filled is depicted in Figure 2.2.1. Subshells corresponding to each value of n are written from left to right on successive horizontal lines, where each row represents a row in the periodic table. The order in which the orbitals are filled is indicated by the diagonal lines running from the upper right to the lower left. Accordingly, the 4s orbital is filled prior to the 3*d* orbital because of shielding and penetration effects. Consequently, the electron configuration of potassium, which begins the fourth period, is [Ar]$4s^1$, and the configuration of calcium is [Ar]$4s^2$. Five 3*d* orbitals are filled by the next 10 elements, the transition metals, followed by three 4*p* orbitals. Notice that the last member of this row is the noble gas krypton (Z = 36), [Ar]$4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6$ = [Kr], which has filled 4s, 3*d*, and 4*p* orbitals. The fifth row of the periodic table is essentially the same as the fourth, except that the 5s, 4*d*, and 5*p* orbitals are filled sequentially.

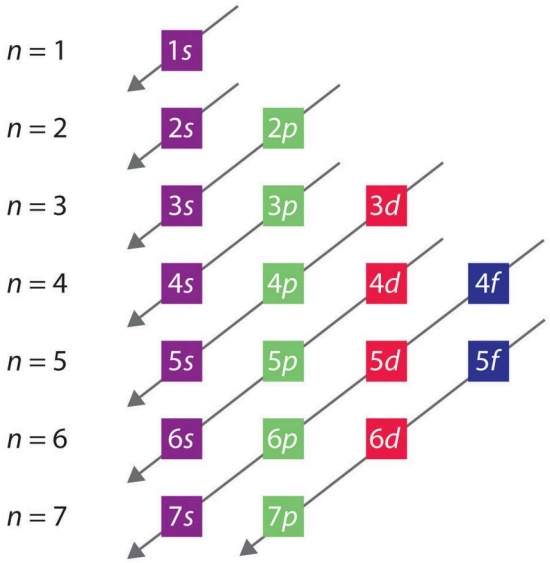


Figure 2.2.1 Predicting the Order in Which Orbitals Are Filled in Multielectron Atoms. If you write the subshells for each value of the principal quantum number on successive lines, the observed order in which they are filled is indicated by a series of diagonal lines running from the upper right to the lower left.

The sixth row of the periodic table will be different from the preceding two because the 4*f* orbitals, which can hold 14 electrons, are filled between the 6*s* and the 5*d* orbitals. The elements that contain 4*f* orbitals in their valence shell are the lanthanides. When the 6*p* orbitals are finally filled, we have reached the next (and last known) noble gas, radon (Z = 86), [Xe]$6s^2 4f^{14} 5d^{10} 6p^6$ = [Rn]. In the last row, the 5*f* orbitals are filled between the 7*s* and the 6*d* orbitals, which gives the 14 actinide elements. Because the large number of protons makes their nuclei unstable, all the actinides are radioactive.

Example 2.2.3

Write the electron configuration of mercury (Z = 80), showing all the inner orbitals.

Given: atomic number

Asked for: complete electron configuration

Strategy:

Using the orbital diagram in Figure 2.2.1 and the periodic table as a guide, fill the orbitals until all 80 electrons have been placed.

Solution:

By placing the electrons in orbitals following the order shown in Figure 2.2.1 and using the periodic table as a guide, we obtain

$1s^2$	row 1	2 electrons
$2s^2 2p^6$	row 2	8 electrons
$3s^2 3p^6$	row 3	8 electrons
$4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6$	row 4	18 electrons
$5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6$	row 5	18 electrons
	row 1–5	54 electrons

After filling the first five rows, we still have 80 – 54 = 26 more electrons to accommodate. According to Figure 2.2.2, we need to fill the 6s (2 electrons), 4*f* (14 electrons), and 5*d* (10 electrons) orbitals. The result is mercury's electron configuration:

$$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6 6s^2 4f^{14} 5d^{10} = Hg = [Xe]6s^2 4f^{14} 5d^{10}$$

with a filled 5*d* subshell, a $6s^2 4f^{14} 5d^{10}$ valence shell configuration, and a total of 80 electrons. (You should always check to be sure that the total number of electrons equals the atomic number.)

Exercise 2.2.3

Although element 114 is not stable enough to occur in nature, two isotopes of element 114 were created for the first time in a nuclear reactor in 1999 by a team of Russian and American scientists. Write the complete electron configuration for element 114.

Answer: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6 6s^2 4f^{14} 5d^{10} 6p^6 7s^2 5f^{14} 6d^{10} 7p^2$

The electron configurations of the elements are presented in Figure 2.2.3, which lists the orbitals in the order in which they are filled. In several cases, the ground state electron configurations are different from those predicted by Figure 2.2.1. Some of these anomalies occur as the 3*d* orbitals are filled. For example, the observed ground state electron configuration of chromium is $[Ar]4s^1 3d^5$ rather than the predicted $[Ar]4s^2 3d^4$. Similarly, the observed electron configuration of copper is $[Ar]4s^1 3d^{10}$ instead of $[Ar]s^2 3d^9$. The actual electron configuration may be rationalized in terms of an added stability associated with a half-filled (ns^1, np^3, nd^5, nf^7) or filled (ns^2, np^6, nd^{10}, nf^{14}) subshell. Given the small differences between higher energy levels, this added stability is enough to shift an electron from one orbital to another. In heavier elements, other more complex effects can also be important, leading to some of the additional anomalies indicated in Figure 2.2.3. For example, cerium has an electron configuration of $[Xe]6s^2 4f^1 5d^1$, which is impossible to rationalize in simple terms. In most cases, however, these apparent anomalies do not have important chemical consequences.

Note

Additional stability is associated with half-filled or filled subshells.

Summary

Based on the Pauli principle and a knowledge of orbital energies obtained using hydrogen-like orbitals, it is possible to construct the periodic table by filling up the available orbitals beginning with the lowest-energy orbitals (the **aufbau principle**), which gives rise to a particular arrangement of electrons for each element (its **electron configuration**). **Hund's rule** says that the lowest-energy arrangement of electrons is the one that places them in degenerate orbitals with their spins parallel. For chemical purposes, the most important electrons are those in the outermost principal shell, the **valence electrons**.

This page titled 2.2: Multielectron Atoms is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 8.10: Multielectron Atoms is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

2.3: Electron Configurations

This page titled 2.3: Electron Configurations is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

2.4: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table

This page titled 2.4: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

2.5: Classifying the Elements: The Periodic Law and the Periodic Table

Learning Objectives

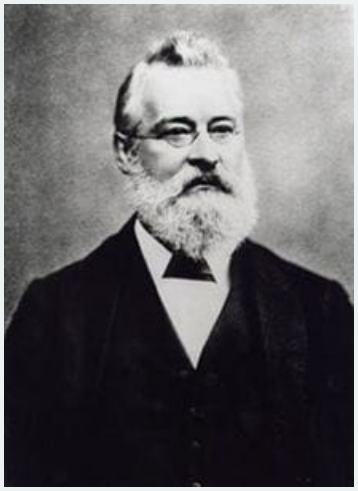
- To become familiar with the history of the periodic table.

The modern periodic table has evolved through a long history of attempts by chemists to arrange the elements according to their properties as an aid in predicting chemical behavior. One of the first to suggest such an arrangement was the German chemist Johannes Dobereiner (1780–1849), who noticed that many of the known elements could be grouped in triads (a set of three elements that have similar properties)—for example, chlorine, bromine, and iodine; or copper, silver, and gold. Dobereiner proposed that all elements could be grouped in such triads, but subsequent attempts to expand his concept were unsuccessful. We now know that portions of the periodic table—the *d* block in particular—contain triads of elements with substantial similarities. The middle three members of most of the other columns, such as sulfur, selenium, and tellurium in group 16 or aluminum, gallium, and indium in group 13, also have remarkably similar chemistry.

By the mid-19th century, the atomic masses of many of the elements had been determined. The English chemist John Newlands (1838–1898), hypothesizing that the chemistry of the elements might be related to their masses, arranged the known elements in order of increasing atomic mass and discovered that every seventh element had similar properties (Figure $2.5.1$). (The noble gases were still unknown.) Newlands therefore suggested that the elements could be classified into octaves A group of seven elements, corresponding to the horizontal rows in the main group elements (not counting the noble gases, which were unknown at the time)., corresponding to the *horizontal* rows in the main group elements. Unfortunately, Newlands's "law of octaves" did not seem to work for elements heavier than calcium, and his idea was publicly ridiculed. At one scientific meeting, Newlands was asked why he didn't arrange the elements in alphabetical order instead of by atomic mass, since that would make just as much sense! Actually, Newlands was on the right track—with only a few exceptions, atomic mass does increase with atomic number, and similar properties occur every time a set of ns^2np^6 subshells is filled. Despite the fact that Newlands's table had no logical place for the *d*-block elements, he was honored for his idea by the Royal Society of London in 1887.

Note: John Newlands (1838–1898)

John Alexander Reina Newlands was an English chemist who worked on the development of the periodic table. He noticed that elemental properties repeated every seventh (or multiple of seven) element, as musical notes repeat every eighth note.



No.	No.	No.	No.	No.	No.	No.	No.
H 1	F 8	Cl 15	Co & Ni 22	Br 29	Pd 36	I 42	Pt & Ir 50
Li 2	Na 9	K 16	Cu 23	Rb 30	Ag 37	Cs 44	Tl 51
G 3	Mg 10	Ca 17	Zn 25	Sr 31	Bd [sic-Cd] 38	Ba & V 45	Pb 54
Bo 4	Al 11	Cr 19	Y 24	Ce & La 33	U 40	Ta 46	Th 56
C 5	Si 12	Ti 18	In 26	Zr 32	Sn 39	W 47	Hg 52
N 6	**P 13**	Mn 20	**As 27**	Di & Mo 34	**Sb 41**	Nb 48	**Bi 55**
O 7	S 14	Fe 21	Se 28	Ro & Ru 35	Te 43	Au 49	Os 51

NOTE. Where two elements happen to have the same equivalent, both are designated by the same number.

Figure 2.5.1: The Arrangement of the Elements into Octaves as Proposed by Newlands. The table shown here accompanied a letter from a 27-year-old Newlands to the editor of the journal *Chemical News* in which he wrote: "If the elements are arranged in the order of their equivalents, with a few slight transpositions, as in the accompanying table, it will be observed that elements belonging to the same group usually appear on the same horizontal line. It will also be seen that the numbers of analogous elements generally differ either by 7 or by some multiple of seven; in other words, members of the same group stand to each other in the same relation as the extremities of one or more octaves in music. Thus, in the nitrogen group, between nitrogen and phosphorus there are 7 elements; between phosphorus and arsenic, 14; between arsenic and antimony, 14; and lastly, between antimony and bismuth, 14 also. This peculiar relationship I propose to provisionally term the *Law of Octaves*. I am, &c. John A. R. Newlands, F.C.S. Laboratory, 19, Great St. Helen's, E.C., August 8, 1865."

The periodic table achieved its modern form through the work of the German chemist Julius Lothar Meyer (1830–1895) and the Russian chemist Dimitri Mendeleev (1834–1907), both of whom focused on the relationships between atomic mass and various physical and chemical properties. In 1869, they independently proposed essentially identical arrangements of the elements. Meyer aligned the elements in his table according to periodic variations in simple atomic properties, such as "atomic volume" (Figure 2.5.2), which he obtained by dividing the atomic mass (molar mass) in grams per mole by the density (ρ) of the element in grams per cubic centimeter. This property is equivalent to what is today defined as molar volume, the molar mass of an element divided by its density, (measured in cubic centimeters per mole):

$$\frac{molar\ mass\ \left(\not{g}/mol\right)}{density\ \left(\not{g}/cm^3\right)} = molar\ volume\ \left(cm^3/mol\right) \tag{2.5.1}$$

As shown in Figure 2.5.2, the alkali metals have the highest molar volumes of the solid elements. In Meyer's plot of atomic volume versus atomic mass, the nonmetals occur on the rising portion of the graph, and metals occur at the peaks, in the valleys, and on the downslopes.

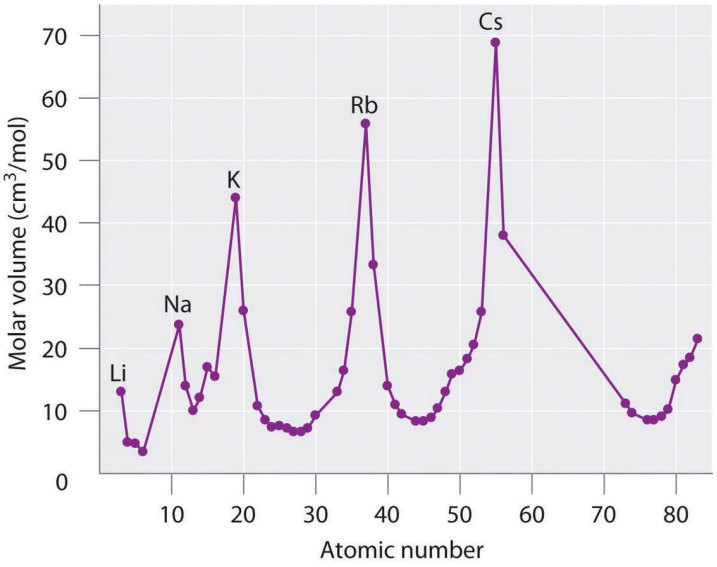
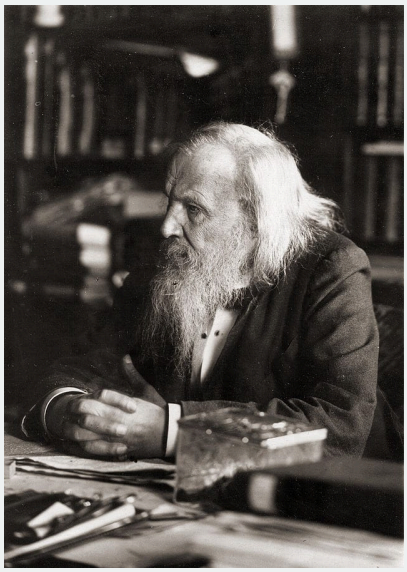


Figure 2.5.2: Variation of Atomic Volume with Atomic Number, Adapted from Meyer's Plot of 1870. *Note the periodic increase and decrease in atomic volume. Because the noble gases had not yet been discovered at the time this graph was formulated, the peaks correspond to the alkali metals (group 1).*

Note: Dimitri Mendeleev (1834–1907)

When his family's glass factory was destroyed by fire, Mendeleev moved to St. Petersburg, Russia, to study science. He became ill and was not expected to recover, but he finished his PhD with the help of his professors and fellow students.



In addition to the periodic table, another of Mendeleev's contributions to science was an outstanding textbook, *The Principles of Chemistry*, which was used for many years.

Mendeleev's Periodic Table

Mendeleev, who first published his periodic table in 1869 (Figure 2.5.3), is usually credited with the origin of the modern periodic table. The key difference between his arrangement of the elements and that of Meyer and others is that Mendeleev did not assume that all the elements had been discovered (actually, only about two-thirds of the naturally occurring elements were known at the time). Instead, he deliberately left blanks in his table at atomic masses 44, 68, 72, and 100, in the expectation that elements

with those atomic masses would be discovered. Those blanks correspond to the elements we now know as scandium, gallium, germanium, and technetium.

Reihen	Gruppe I. — R^2O	Gruppe II. — RO	Gruppe III. — R^2O^3	Gruppe IV. RH^4 RO^2	Gruppe V. RH^3 R^2O^5	Gruppe VI. RH^2 RO^3	Gruppe VII. RH R^2O^7	Gruppe VIII. — RO^4
1	H=1							
2	Li=7	Be=9,4	B=11	C=12	N=14	O=16	F=19	
3	Na=23	Mg=24	Al=27,3	Si=28	P=31	S=32	Cl=35,5	
4	K=39	Ca=40	— =44	Ti=48	V=51	Cr=52	Mn=55	Fe=56, Co=59, Ni=59, Cu=63.
5	(Cu=63)	Zn=65	— =68	— =72	As=75	Se=78	Br=80	
6	Rb=85	Sr=87	?Yt=88	Zr=90	Nb=94	Mo=96	— =100	Ru=104, Rh=104, Pd=106, Ag=108.
7	(Ag=108)	Cd=112	In=113	Sn=118	Sb=122	Te=125	J=127	
8	Cs=133	Ba=137	?Di=138	?Ce= 40	—	—	—	— — — —
9	(—)	—	—	—	—	—	—	
10	—	—	?Er=178	?La=180	Ta=182	W=184	—	Os=195, Ir=197, Pt=198, Au=199.
11	(Au=199)	Hg=200	Tl=204	Pb=207	Bi=208	—	—	
12	—	—	—	Th=231	—	U=240	—	— — — —

Figure 2.5.3: Mendeleev's Periodic Table, as Published in the German Journal *Annalen der Chemie und Pharmacie* in 1872. The column headings "Reihen" and "Gruppe" are German for "row" and "group." Formulas indicate the type of compounds formed by each group, with "R" standing for "any element" and superscripts used where we now use subscripts. Atomic masses are shown after equal signs and increase across each row from left to right.

The groups in Mendeleev's table are determined by how many oxygen or hydrogen atoms are needed to form compounds with each element. For example, in Group I, two atoms of hydrogen, lithium, Li, sodium, Na, and potassium form compounds with one atom of oxygen. In Group VII, one atom of fluorine, F, chlorine, Cl, and bromine, Br, react with one atom of hydrogen. Notice how this approach has trouble with the transition metals. Until roughly 1960, a rectangular table developed from Mendeleev's table and based on reactivity was standard at the front of chemistry lecture halls.

The most convincing evidence in support of Mendeleev's arrangement of the elements was the discovery of two previously unknown elements whose properties closely corresponded with his predictions (Table 2.5.1). Two of the blanks Mendeleev had left in his original table were below aluminum and silicon, awaiting the discovery of two as-yet-unknown elements, *eka*-aluminum and *eka*-silicon (from the Sanskrit *eka*, meaning "one," as in "one beyond aluminum"). The observed properties of gallium and germanium matched those of *eka*-aluminum and *eka*-silicon so well that once they were discovered, Mendeleev's periodic table rapidly gained acceptance.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video 2.5.1*: The genius of Mendeleev's periodic table.*

When the chemical properties of an element suggested that it might have been assigned the wrong place in earlier tables, Mendeleev carefully reexamined its atomic mass. He discovered, for example, that the atomic masses previously reported for beryllium, indium, and uranium were incorrect. The atomic mass of indium had originally been reported as 75.6, based on an assumed stoichiometry of InO for its oxide. If this atomic mass were correct, then indium would have to be placed in the middle of the nonmetals, between arsenic (atomic mass 75) and selenium (atomic mass 78). Because elemental indium is a silvery-white *metal*, however, Mendeleev postulated that the stoichiometry of its oxide was really In_2O_3 rather than InO. This would mean that

indium's atomic mass was actually 113, placing the element between two other metals, cadmium and tin.

Table 2.5.1: Comparison of the Properties Predicted by Mendeleev in 1869 for eka-Aluminum and eka-Silicon with the Properties of Gallium (Discovered in 1875) and Germanium (Discovered in 1886)

Property	*eka*-Aluminum (predicted)	Gallium (observed)	*eka*-Silicon (predicted)	Germanium (observed)
atomic mass	68	69.723	72	72.64
element	metal	metal	dirty-gray metal	gray-white metal
	low mp*	mp = 29.8°C	high mp	mp = 938°C
	ρ = 5.9 g/cm^3	ρ = 5.91 g/cm^3	ρ = 5.5 g/cm^3	ρ = 5.323 g/cm^3
oxide	E_2O_3	Ga_2O_3	EO_2	GeO_2
	ρ = 5.5 g/cm^3	ρ = 6.0 g/cm^3	ρ = 4.7 g/cm^3	ρ = 4.25 g/cm^3
chloride	ECl_3	$GaCl_3$	ECl_4	$GeCl_4$
	volatile	mp = 78°C bp* = 201°C	bp < 100°C	bp = 87°C
***mp = melting point; bp = boiling point.**				

One group of elements that absent from Mendeleev's table is the noble gases, all of which were discovered more than 20 years later, between 1894 and 1898, by Sir William Ramsay (1852–1916; Nobel Prize in Chemistry 1904). Initially, Ramsay did not know where to place these elements in the periodic table. Argon, the first to be discovered, had an atomic mass of 40. This was greater than chlorine's and comparable to that of potassium, so Ramsay, using the same kind of reasoning as Mendeleev, decided to place the noble gases between the halogens and the alkali metals.

The Role of the Atomic Number in the Periodic Table

Despite its usefulness, Mendeleev's periodic table was based entirely on empirical observation supported by very little understanding. It was not until 1913, when a young British physicist, H. G. J. Moseley (1887–1915), while analyzing the frequencies of x-rays emitted by the elements, discovered that the underlying foundation of the order of the elements was by the *atomic number*, not the atomic mass. Moseley hypothesized that the placement of each element in his series corresponded to its atomic number *Z*, which is the number of positive charges (protons) in its nucleus. Argon, for example, although having an atomic mass greater than that of potassium (39.9 amu versus 39.1 amu, respectively), was placed *before* potassium in the periodic table. While analyzing the frequencies of the emitted x-rays, Moseley noticed that the atomic number of argon is 18, whereas that of potassium is 19, which indicated that they were indeed placed correctly. Moseley also noticed three gaps in his table of x-ray frequencies, so he predicted the existence of three unknown elements: technetium (Z = 43), discovered in 1937; promethium (Z = 61), discovered in 1945; and rhenium (Z = 75), discovered in 1925.

Note: H. G. J. Moseley (1887–1915)

Moseley left his research work at the University of Oxford to join the British army as a telecommunications officer during World War I. He was killed during the Battle of Gallipoli in Turkey.



Example 2.5.1

Before its discovery in 1999, some theoreticians believed that an element with a Z of 114 existed in nature. Use Mendeleev's reasoning to name element 114 as *eka*-_____; then identify the known element whose chemistry you predict would be most similar to that of element 114.

Given: atomic number

Asked for: name using prefix *eka*-

Strategy:

A. Using the periodic table locate the n = 7 row. Identify the location of the unknown element with Z = 114; then identify the known element that is directly above this location.
B. Name the unknown element by using the prefix *eka*- before the name of the known element.

Solution:

A The n = 7 row can be filled in by assuming the existence of elements with atomic numbers greater than 112, which is underneath mercury (Hg). Counting three boxes to the right gives element 114, which lies directly below lead (Pb). **B** If Mendeleev were alive today, he would call element 114 *eka*-lead.

Exercise 2.5.1

Use Mendeleev's reasoning to name element 112 as *eka*-_____; then identify the known element whose chemistry you predict would be most similar to that of element 112.

Answer: *eka*-mercury

Summary

- The elements in the periodic table are arranged according to their properties, and the periodic table serves as an aid in predicting chemical behavior.

The periodic table arranges the elements according to their electron configurations, such that elements in the same column have the same valence electron configurations. Periodic variations in size and chemical properties are important factors in dictating the types of chemical reactions the elements undergo and the kinds of chemical compounds they form. The modern periodic table was based on empirical correlations of properties such as atomic mass; early models using limited data noted the existence of **triads** and **octaves** of elements with similar properties. The periodic table achieved its current form through the work of Dimitri

Mendeleev and Julius Lothar Meyer, who both focused on the relationship between atomic mass and chemical properties. Meyer arranged the elements by their atomic volume, which today is equivalent to the **molar volume**, defined as molar mass divided by molar density. The correlation with the electronic structure of atoms was made when H. G. J. Moseley showed that the periodic arrangement of the elements was determined by atomic number, not atomic mass.

Contributors and Attributions

Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

This page titled 2.5: Classifying the Elements: The Periodic Law and the Periodic Table is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 9.1: Classifying the Elements: The Periodic Law and the Periodic Table is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

2.6: Sizes of Atoms and Ions

Learning Objectives

- To understand periodic trends in atomic radii.
- To predict relative ionic sizes within an isoelectronic series.

Although some people fall into the trap of visualizing atoms and ions as small, hard spheres similar to miniature table-tennis balls or marbles, the quantum mechanical model tells us that their shapes and boundaries are much less definite than those images suggest. As a result, atoms and ions cannot be said to have exact sizes. In this section, we discuss how atomic and ion "sizes" are defined and obtained.

Atomic Radii

Recall that the probability of finding an electron in the various available orbitals falls off slowly as the distance from the nucleus increases. This point is illustrated in Figure 2.6.1 which shows a plot of total electron density for all occupied orbitals for three noble gases as a function of their distance from the nucleus. Electron density diminishes gradually with increasing distance, which makes it impossible to draw a sharp line marking the boundary of an atom.

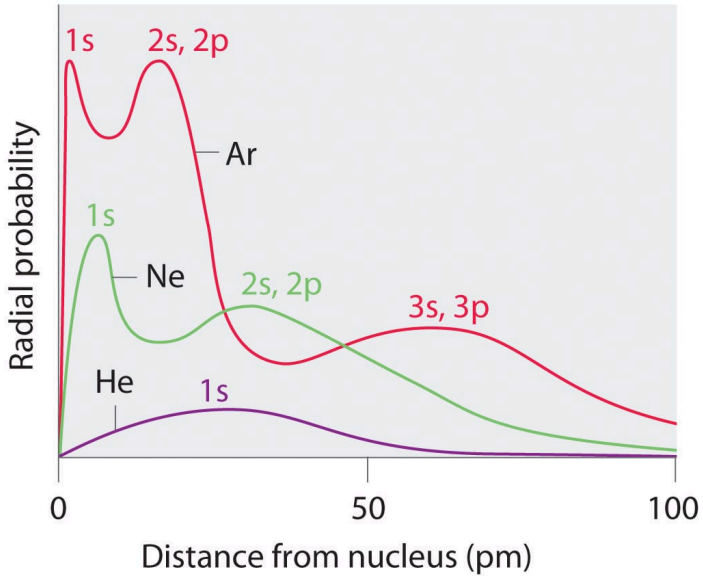


Figure 2.6.1: Plots of Radial Probability as a Function of Distance from the Nucleus for He, Ne, and Ar. In He, the 1s electrons have a maximum radial probability at ≈30 pm from the nucleus. In Ne, the 1s electrons have a maximum at ≈8 pm, and the 2s and 2*p* electrons combine to form another maximum at ≈35 pm (the $n = 2$ shell). In Ar, the 1s electrons have a maximum at ≈2 pm, the 2s and 2*p* electrons combine to form a maximum at ≈18 pm, and the 3s and 3*p* electrons combine to form a maximum at ≈70 pm.

Figure 2.6.1 also shows that there are distinct peaks in the total electron density at particular distances and that these peaks occur at different distances from the nucleus for each element. Each peak in a given plot corresponds to the electron density in a given principal shell. Because helium has only one filled shell ($n = 1$), it shows only a single peak. In contrast, neon, with filled $n = 1$ and 2 principal shells, has two peaks. Argon, with filled $n = 1$, 2, and 3 principal shells, has three peaks. The peak for the filled $n = 1$ shell occurs at successively shorter distances for neon ($Z = 10$) and argon ($Z = 18$) because, with a greater number of protons, their nuclei are more positively charged than that of helium. Because the $1s^2$ shell is closest to the nucleus, its electrons are very poorly shielded by electrons in filled shells with larger values of n. Consequently, the two electrons in the $n = 1$ shell experience nearly the full nuclear charge, resulting in a strong electrostatic interaction between the electrons and the nucleus. The energy of the $n = 1$ shell also decreases tremendously (the filled 1s orbital becomes more stable) as the nuclear charge increases. For similar reasons, the filled $n = 2$ shell in argon is located closer to the nucleus and has a lower energy than the $n = 2$ shell in neon.

Figure 2.6.1 illustrates the difficulty of measuring the dimensions of an individual atom. Because distances between the nuclei in pairs of covalently bonded atoms can be measured quite precisely, however, chemists use these distances as a basis for describing the approximate sizes of atoms. For example, the internuclear distance in the diatomic Cl_2 molecule is known to be 198 pm. We assign half of this distance to each chlorine atom, giving chlorine a covalent atomic radius (r_{cov}), which is half the distance between the nuclei of two like atoms joined by a covalent bond in the same molecule, of 99 pm or 0.99 Å (part (a) in Figure 2.6.2). Atomic radii are often measured in angstroms (Å), a non-SI unit: 1 Å = 1×10^{-10} m = 100 pm.

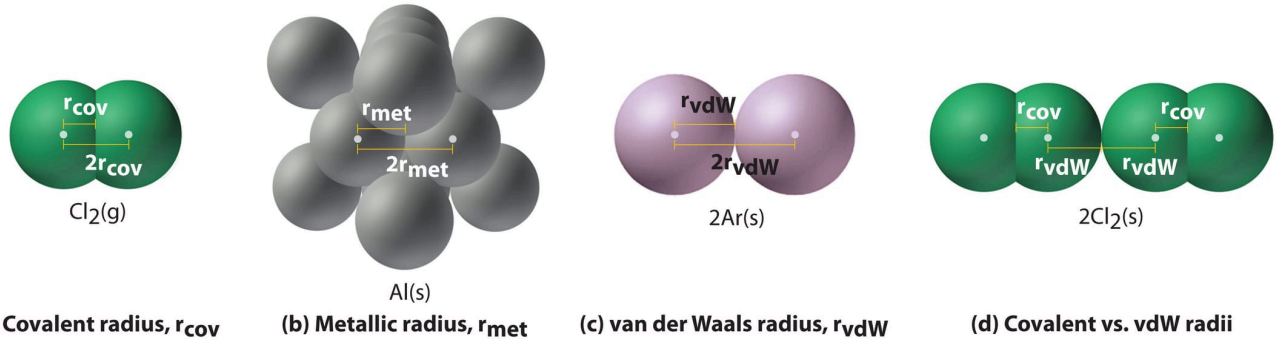


Figure 2.6.2: Definitions of the Atomic Radius. (a) The covalent atomic radius, r_{cov}, is half the distance between the nuclei of two like atoms joined by a covalent bond in the same molecule, such as Cl_2. (b) The metallic atomic radius, r_{met}, is half the distance between the nuclei of two adjacent atoms in a pure solid metal, such as aluminum. (c) The van der Waals atomic radius, r_{vdW}, is half the distance between the nuclei of two like atoms, such as argon, that are closely packed but not bonded. (d) This is a depiction of covalent versus van der Waals radii of chlorine. The covalent radius of Cl_2 is the distance between the two chlorine atoms in a single molecule of Cl_2. The van der Waals radius is the distance between chlorine nuclei in two different but touching Cl_2 molecules. Which do you think is larger? Why?

In a similar approach, we can use the lengths of carbon–carbon single bonds in organic compounds, which are remarkably uniform at 154 pm, to assign a value of 77 pm as the covalent atomic radius for carbon. If these values do indeed reflect the actual sizes of the atoms, then we should be able to predict the lengths of covalent bonds formed between different elements by adding them. For example, we would predict a carbon–chlorine distance of 77 pm + 99 pm = 176 pm for a C–Cl bond, which is very close to the average value observed in many organochlorine compounds.A similar approach for measuring the size of ions is discussed later in this section.

Covalent atomic radii can be determined for most of the nonmetals, but how do chemists obtain atomic radii for elements that do not form covalent bonds? For these elements, a variety of other methods have been developed. With a metal, for example, the metallic atomic radius (r_{met}) is defined as half the distance between the nuclei of two adjacent metal atoms (part (b) in Figure 2.6.2). For elements such as the noble gases, most of which form no stable compounds, we can use what is called the van der Waals atomic radius (r_{vdW}), which is half the internuclear distance between two nonbonded atoms in the solid (part (c) in Figure 2.6.2). This is somewhat difficult for helium which does not form a solid at any temperature. An atom such as chlorine has both a covalent radius (the distance between the two atoms in a Cl_2 molecule) and a van der Waals radius (the distance between two Cl atoms in different molecules in, for example, $Cl_{2(s)}$ at low temperatures). These radii are generally not the same (part (d) in Figure 2.6.2).

Periodic Trends in Atomic Radii

Because it is impossible to measure the sizes of both metallic and nonmetallic elements using any one method, chemists have developed a self-consistent way of calculating atomic radii using the quantum mechanical functions. Although the radii values obtained by such calculations are not identical to any of the experimentally measured sets of values, they do provide a way to compare the intrinsic sizes of all the elements and clearly show that atomic size varies in a periodic fashion (Figure 2.6.3).

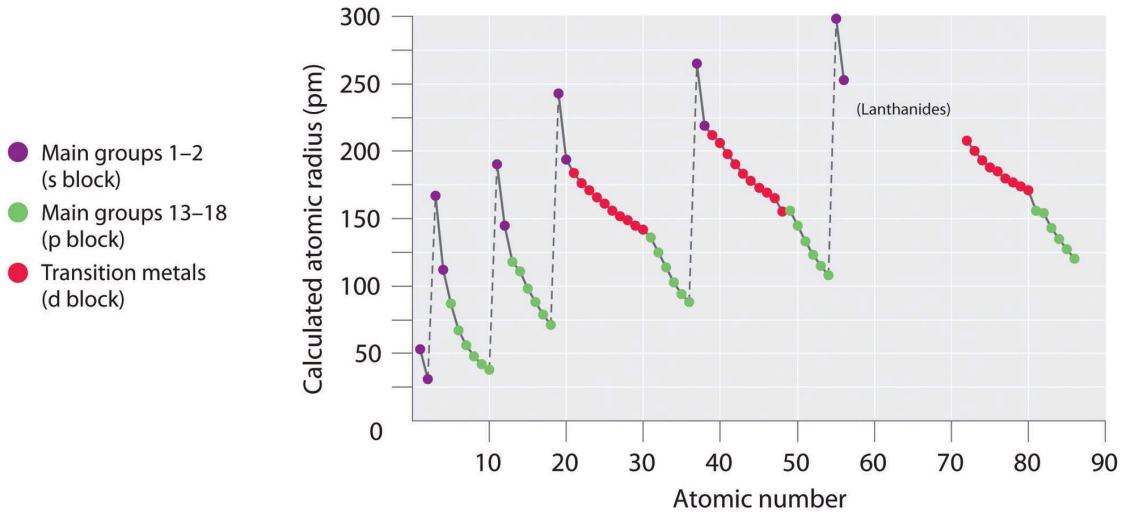


Figure 2.6.3: A Plot of Periodic Variation of Atomic Radius with Atomic Number for the First Six Rows of the Periodic Table.

In the periodic table, atomic radii decrease from left to right across a row and increase from top to bottom down a column. Because of these two trends, the largest atoms are found in the lower left corner of the periodic table, and the smallest are found in the upper right corner (Figure 2.6.4).

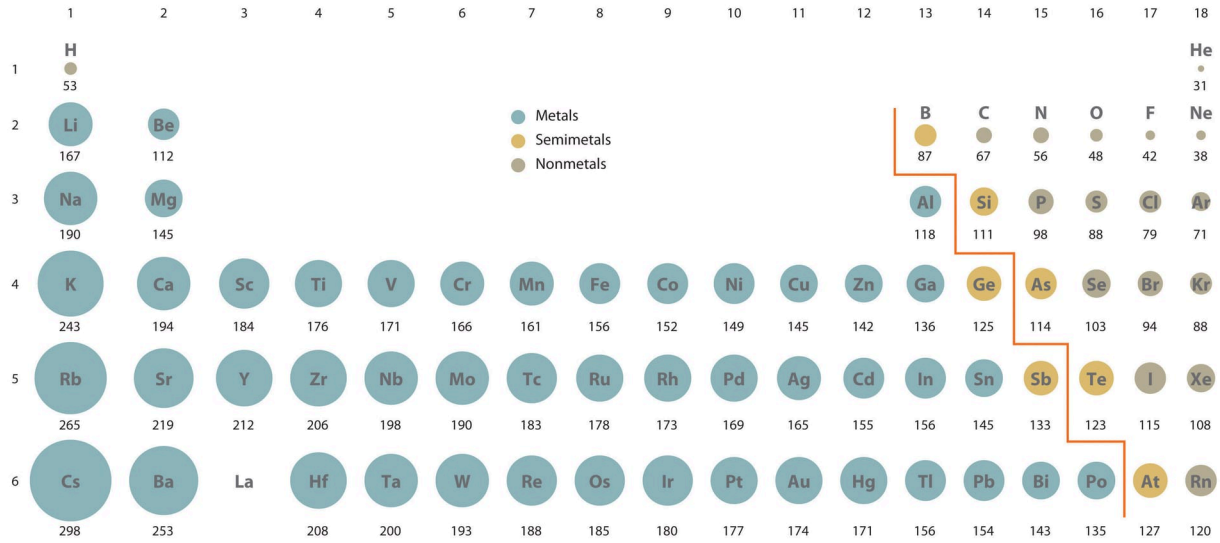


Figure 2.6.4 *Calculated Atomic Radii (in Picometers) of the s-, p-, and d-Block Elements. The sizes of the circles illustrate the relative sizes of the atoms. The calculated values are based on quantum mechanical wave functions. Source: http://www.webelements.com. Web Elements is an excellent on line source for looking up atomic properties.*

Note

Atomic radii decrease from left to right across a row and increase from top to bottom down a column.

Trends in atomic size result from differences in the **effective nuclear charges (Z_{eff})** experienced by electrons in the outermost orbitals of the elements. For all elements except H, the effective nuclear charge is always *less* than the actual nuclear charge because of shielding effects. The greater the effective nuclear charge, the more strongly the outermost electrons are attracted to the nucleus and the smaller the atomic radius.

The atoms in the second row of the periodic table (Li through Ne) illustrate the effect of electron shielding. All have a filled $1s^2$ inner shell, but as we go from left to right across the row, the nuclear charge increases from +3 to +10. Although electrons are

being added to the 2*s* and 2*p* orbitals, *electrons in the same principal shell are not very effective at shielding one another from the nuclear charge*. Thus the single 2*s* electron in lithium experiences an effective nuclear charge of approximately +1 because the electrons in the filled $1s^2$ shell effectively neutralize two of the three positive charges in the nucleus. (More detailed calculations give a value of Z_{eff} = +1.26 for Li.) In contrast, the two 2*s* electrons in beryllium do not shield each other very well, although the filled $1s^2$ shell effectively neutralizes two of the four positive charges in the nucleus. This means that the effective nuclear charge experienced by the 2*s* electrons in beryllium is between +1 and +2 (the calculated value is +1.66). Consequently, beryllium is significantly smaller than lithium. Similarly, as we proceed across the row, the increasing nuclear charge is not effectively neutralized by the electrons being added to the 2*s* and 2*p* orbitals. The result is a steady increase in the effective nuclear charge and a steady decrease in atomic size.

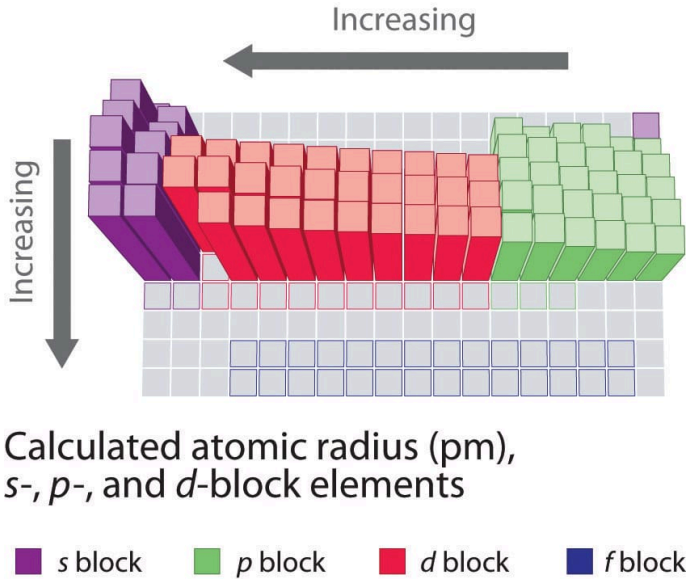


Figure 2.6.5: *The Atomic Radius of the Elements. The atomic radius of the elements increases as we go from right to left across a period and as we go down the periods in a group.*

The increase in atomic size going down a column is also due to electron shielding, but the situation is more complex because the principal quantum number *n* is not constant. As we saw in Chapter 2, the size of the orbitals increases as *n* increases, *provided the nuclear charge remains the same*. In group 1, for example, the size of the atoms increases substantially going down the column. It may at first seem reasonable to attribute this effect to the successive addition of electrons to *ns* orbitals with increasing values of *n*. However, it is important to remember that the radius of an orbital depends dramatically on the nuclear charge. As we go down the column of the group 1 elements, the principal quantum number *n* increases from 2 to 6, but the nuclear charge increases from +3 to +55!

As a consequence the radii of the **lower electron orbitals** in Cesium are much smaller than those in lithium and the electrons in those orbitals experience a much larger force of attraction to the nucleus. That force depends on the effective nuclear charge experienced by the the inner electrons. If the outermost electrons in cesium experienced the full nuclear charge of +55, a cesium atom would be very small indeed. In fact, the effective nuclear charge felt by the outermost electrons in cesium is much less than expected (6 rather than 55). This means that cesium, with a $6s^1$ valence electron configuration, is much larger than lithium, with a $2s^1$ valence electron configuration. The effective nuclear charge changes relatively little for electrons in the outermost, or valence shell, from lithium to cesium because *electrons in filled inner shells are highly effective at shielding electrons in outer shells from the nuclear charge*. Even though cesium has a nuclear charge of +55, it has 54 electrons in its filled $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6$ shells, abbreviated as $[Xe]5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6$, which effectively neutralize most of the 55 positive charges in the nucleus. The same dynamic is responsible for the steady increase in size observed as we go down the other columns of the periodic table. Irregularities can usually be explained by variations in effective nuclear charge.

Note

Electrons in the same principal shell are not very effective at shielding one another from the nuclear charge, whereas electrons in filled inner shells are highly effective at shielding electrons in outer shells from the nuclear charge.

Example 2.6.1

On the basis of their positions in the periodic table, arrange these elements in order of increasing atomic radius: aluminum, carbon, and silicon.

Given: three elements

Asked for: arrange in order of increasing atomic radius

Strategy:

A. Identify the location of the elements in the periodic table. Determine the relative sizes of elements located in the same column from their principal quantum number *n*. Then determine the order of elements in the same row from their effective nuclear charges. If the elements are not in the same column or row, use pairwise comparisons.
B. List the elements in order of increasing atomic radius.

Solution:

A These elements are not all in the same column or row, so we must use pairwise comparisons. Carbon and silicon are both in group 14 with carbon lying above, so carbon is smaller than silicon (C < Si). Aluminum and silicon are both in the third row with aluminum lying to the left, so silicon is smaller than aluminum (Si < Al) because its effective nuclear charge is greater. **B** Combining the two inequalities gives the overall order: C < Si < Al.

Exercise 2.6.1

On the basis of their positions in the periodic table, arrange these elements in order of increasing size: oxygen, phosphorus, potassium, and sulfur.

Answer: O < S < P < K

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Atomic Radius: https://youtu.be/ZYKB8SNrGVY

Ionic Radii and Isoelectronic Series

An ion is formed when either one or more electrons are removed from a neutral atom (cations) to form a positive ion or when additional electrons attach themselves to neutral atoms (anions) to form a negative one. The designations cation or anion come from the early experiments with electricity which found that positively charged particles were attracted to the negative pole of a battery, the cathode, while negatively charged ones were attracted to the positive pole, the anode.

Ionic compounds consist of regular repeating arrays of alternating positively charged cations and negatively charges anions. Although it is not possible to measure an ionic radius directly for the same reason it is not possible to directly measure an atom's radius, it *is* possible to measure the distance between the nuclei of a cation and an adjacent anion in an ionic compound to determine the ionic radius (the radius of a cation or anion) of one or both. As illustrated in Figure 2.6.6, the internuclear distance corresponds to the *sum* of the radii of the cation and anion. A variety of methods have been developed to divide the experimentally measured distance proportionally between the smaller cation and larger anion. These methods produce sets of

ionic radii that are internally consistent from one ionic compound to another, although each method gives slightly different values. For example, the radius of the Na^+ ion is essentially the same in NaCl and Na_2S, as long as the same method is used to measure it. Thus despite minor differences due to methodology, certain trends can be observed.

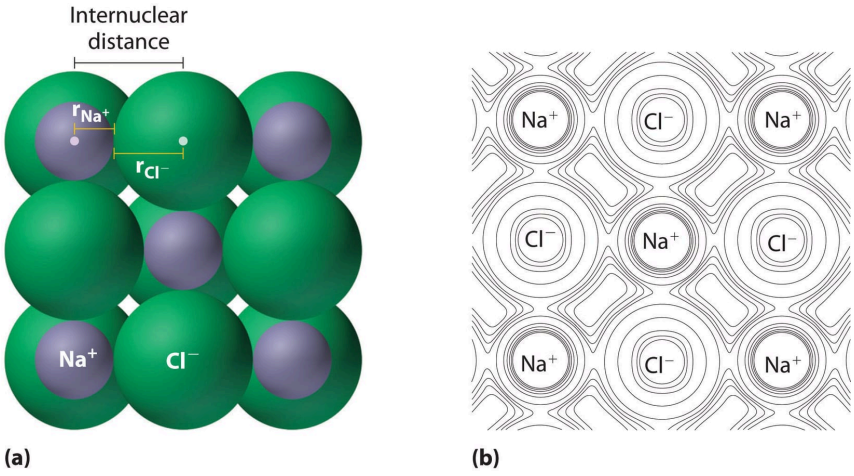


Figure 2.6.6: Definition of Ionic Radius. (a) The internuclear distance is apportioned between adjacent cations (positively charged ions) and anions (negatively charged ions) in the ionic structure, as shown here for Na^+ and Cl^- in sodium chloride. (b) This depiction of electron density contours for a single plane of atoms in the NaCl structure shows how the lines connect points of equal electron density. Note the relative sizes of the electron density contour lines around Cl^- and Na^+.

A comparison of ionic radii with atomic radii (Figure 2.6.7) *cation, having lost an electron, is always smaller than its parent neutral atom, and an anion, having gained an electron, is always larger than the parent neutral atom*. When one or more electrons is removed from a neutral atom, two things happen: (1) repulsions between electrons in the same principal shell decrease because fewer electrons are present, and (2) the effective nuclear charge felt by the remaining electrons increases because there are fewer electrons to shield one another from the nucleus. Consequently, the size of the region of space occupied by electrons decreases (compare Li at 167 pm with Li^+ at 76 pm). If different numbers of electrons can be removed to produce ions with different charges, the ion with the greatest positive charge is the smallest (compare Fe^{2+} at 78 pm with Fe^{3+} at 64.5 pm). Conversely, adding one or more electrons to a neutral atom causes electron–electron repulsions to increase and the effective nuclear charge to decrease, so the size of the probability region increases (compare F at 42 pm with F^- at 133 pm).

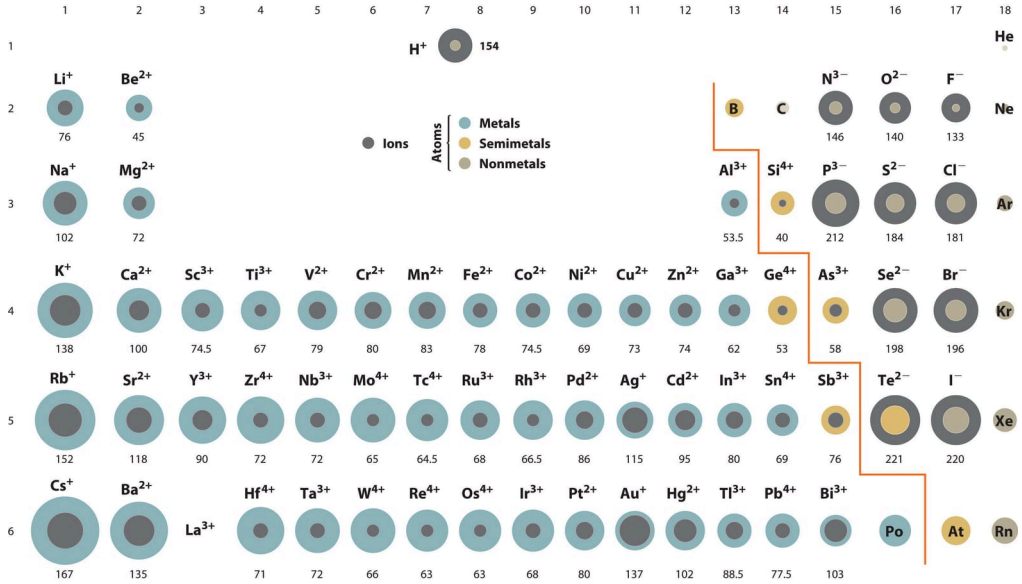


Figure 3.7. Source: Ionic radius data from R. D. Shannon, “Revised effective ionic radii and systematic studies of interatomic distances in halides and chalcogenides,” *Acta Crystallographica* 32, no. 5 (1976): 751–767.

Note

Cations are **always** smaller than the neutral atom, and anions are **always** larger.

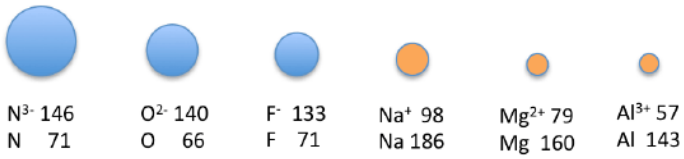
Because most elements form either a cation or an anion but not both, there are few opportunities to compare the sizes of a cation and an anion derived from the same neutral atom. A few compounds of sodium, however, contain the Na^- ion, allowing comparison of its size with that of the far more familiar Na^+ ion, which is found in *many* compounds. The radius of sodium in each of its three known oxidation states is given in Table 2.6.1. All three species have a nuclear charge of +11, but they contain 10 (Na^+), 11 (Na^0), and 12 (Na^-) electrons. The Na^+ ion is significantly smaller than the neutral Na atom because the $3s^1$ electron has been removed to give a closed shell with $n = 2$. The Na^- ion is larger than the parent Na atom because the additional electron produces a $3s^2$ valence electron configuration, while the nuclear charge remains the same.

Table 2.6.1: Experimentally Measured Values for the Radius of Sodium in Its Three Known Oxidation States

	Na^+	Na^0	Na^-
Electron Configuration	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1$	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2$
Radius (pm)	102	154*	202†
***The metallic radius measured for Na(s).**			
†Source: M. J. Wagner and J. L. Dye, "Alkalides, Electrides, and Expanded Metals," Annual Review of Materials Science 23 (1993): 225–253.			

Ionic radii follow the same vertical trend as atomic radii; that is, for ions with the same charge, the ionic radius increases going down a column. The reason is the same as for atomic radii: shielding by filled inner shells produces little change in the effective nuclear charge felt by the outermost electrons. Again, principal shells with larger values of n lie at successively greater distances from the nucleus.

Because elements in different columns tend to form ions with different charges, it is not possible to compare ions of the same charge across a row of the periodic table. Instead, elements that are next to each other tend to form ions with the same number of electrons but with different overall charges because of their different atomic numbers. Such a set of species is known as an isoelectronic series. For example, the isoelectronic series of species with the neon closed-shell configuration ($1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$) is shown in Table 7.3



The sizes of the ions in this series decrease smoothly from N^{3-} to Al^{3+}. All six of the ions contain 10 electrons in the 1s, 2s, and 2p orbitals, but the nuclear charge varies from +7 (N) to +13 (Al). As the positive charge of the nucleus increases while the number of electrons remains the same, there is a greater electrostatic attraction between the electrons and the nucleus, which causes a decrease in radius. Consequently, the ion with the greatest nuclear charge (Al^{3+}) is the smallest, and the ion with the smallest nuclear charge (N^{3-}) is the largest. The neon atom in this isoelectronic series is not listed in Table 2.6.3, because neon forms no covalent or ionic compounds and hence its radius is difficult to measure.

Table 9.3.3 Radius of Ions with the Neon Closed-Shell Electron Configuration. Source: R. D. Shannon, "Revised effective ionic radii and systematic studies of interatomic distances in halides and chalcogenides," Acta Crystallographica 32, no. 5 (1976): 751–767.

Ion	Radius (pm)	Atomic Number
N^{3-}	146	7

O^{2-}	140	8
F^-	133	9
Na^+	98	11
Mg^{2+}	79	12
Al^{3+}	57	13

Example 2.6.2

Based on their positions in the periodic table, arrange these ions in order of increasing radius: Cl^-, K^+, S^{2-}, and Se^{2-}.

Given: four ions

Asked for: order by increasing radius

Strategy:

A. Determine which ions form an isoelectronic series. Of those ions, predict their relative sizes based on their nuclear charges. For ions that do not form an isoelectronic series, locate their positions in the periodic table.
B. Determine the relative sizes of the ions based on their principal quantum numbers *n* and their locations within a row.

Solution:

A We see that S and Cl are at the right of the third row, while K and Se are at the far left and right ends of the fourth row, respectively. K^+, Cl^-, and S^{2-} form an isoelectronic series with the [Ar] closed-shell electron configuration; that is, all three ions contain 18 electrons but have different nuclear charges. Because K^+ has the greatest nuclear charge (Z = 19), its radius is smallest, and S^{2-} with Z = 16 has the largest radius. Because selenium is directly below sulfur, we expect the Se^{2-} ion to be even larger than S^{2-}. **B** The order must therefore be $K^+ < Cl^- < S^{2-} < Se^{2-}$.

Exercise 2.6.2

Based on their positions in the periodic table, arrange these ions in order of increasing size: Br^-, Ca^{2+}, Rb^+, and Sr^{2+}.

Answer: $Ca^{2+} < Sr^{2+} < Rb^+ < Br^-$

Summary

- Ionic radii share the same vertical trend as atomic radii, but the horizontal trends differ due to differences in ionic charges.

A variety of methods have been established to measure the size of a single atom or ion. The **covalent atomic radius (r_{cov})** is half the internuclear distance in a molecule with two identical atoms bonded to each other, whereas the **metallic atomic radius (r_{met})** is defined as half the distance between the nuclei of two adjacent atoms in a metallic element. The **van der Waals radius (r_{vdW})** of an element is half the internuclear distance between two nonbonded atoms in a solid. Atomic radii decrease from left to right across a row because of the increase in effective nuclear charge due to poor electron screening by other electrons in the same principal shell. Moreover, atomic radii increase from top to bottom down a column because the effective nuclear charge remains relatively constant as the principal quantum number increases. The **ionic radii** of cations and anions are always smaller or larger, respectively, than the parent atom due to changes in electron–electron repulsions, and the trends in ionic radius parallel those in atomic size. A comparison of the dimensions of atoms or ions that have the same number of electrons but different nuclear charges, called an **isoelectronic series**, shows a clear correlation between increasing nuclear charge and decreasing size.

Contributors and Attributions

Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

This page titled 2.6: Sizes of Atoms and Ions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 9.3: Sizes of Atoms and Ions is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

2.7: Ionization Energy

Learning Objectives

- To correlate ionization energies with the chemistry of the elements

We have seen that when elements react, they often gain or lose enough electrons to achieve the valence electron configuration of the nearest noble gas. In this section, we develop a more quantitative approach to predicting such reactions by examining periodic trends in the energy changes that accompany ion formation.

Ionization Energies

Because atoms do not spontaneously lose electrons, energy is required to remove an electron from an atom to form a cation. Chemists define the ionization energy (I) of an element as the amount of energy needed to remove an electron from the gaseous atom E in its ground state. I is therefore the energy required for the reaction

$$E_{(g)} \rightarrow E^+_{(g)} + e^- \qquad \text{energy required=I} \tag{2.7.1}$$

Because an input of energy is required, the ionization energy is always positive ($I > 0$) for the reaction as written in Equation 9.4.1. Larger values of I mean that the electron is more tightly bound to the atom and harder to remove. Typical units for ionization energies are kilojoules/mole (kJ/mol) or electron volts (eV):

$$1\ eV/atom = 96.49\ kJ/mol \tag{2.7.2}$$

If an atom possesses more than one electron, the amount of energy needed to remove successive electrons increases steadily. We can define a first ionization energy (I_1), a second ionization energy (I_2), and in general an nth ionization energy (I_n) according to the following reactions:

$$E_{(g)} \rightarrow E^+_{(g)} + e^- \qquad I_1 = \text{1st ionization energy} \tag{2.7.3}$$

$$E_{(g)} \rightarrow E^+_{(g)} + e^- \qquad I_2 = \text{2nd ionization energy} \tag{2.7.4}$$

$$E^+_{(g)} \rightarrow E^{2+}_{(g)} + e^- \qquad I_3 = \text{3rd ionization energy} \tag{2.7.5}$$

Values for the ionization energies of Li and Be listed in Table 2.7.1 show that successive ionization energies for an element increase steadily; that is, it takes more energy to remove the second electron from an atom than the first, and so forth. There are two reasons for this trend. First, the second electron is being removed from a positively charged species rather than a neutral one, so in accordance with Coulomb's law, more energy is required. Second, removing the first electron reduces the repulsive forces among the remaining electrons, so the attraction of the remaining electrons to the nucleus is stronger.

Note

Successive ionization energies for an element **increase** steadily.

Table 2.7.1: Ionization Energies (in kJ/mol) for Removing Successive Electrons from Li and Be. Source: Data from CRC Handbook of

Reaction	Electronic Transition	I
$Li_{(g)} \rightarrow Li^+_{(g)} + e^-$	$1s^2 2s^1 \rightarrow 1s^2$	I_1 = 520.2

Reaction	Electronic Transition	I
$Li^+_{(g)} \rightarrow Li^{2+}_{(g)} + e^-$	$1s^2 \rightarrow 1s^1$	I_2 = 7298.2
$Li^{2+}_{(g)} \rightarrow Li^{3+}_{(g)} + e^-$	$1s^1 \rightarrow 1s^0$	I_3 = 11,815.0

The most important consequence of the values listed in Table 2.7.1 is that the chemistry of Li is dominated by the Li^+ ion, while the chemistry of Be is dominated by the +2 oxidation state. The energy required to remove the *second* electron from Li

$$Li^+_{(g)} \rightarrow Li^{2+}_{(g)} + e^- \tag{2.7.8}$$

is more than 10 times greater than the energy needed to remove the first electron. Similarly, the energy required to remove the *third* electron from Be

$$Be^{2+}_{(g)} \rightarrow Be^{3+}_{(g)} + e^- \tag{2.7.9}$$

is about 15 times greater than the energy needed to remove the first electron and around 8 times greater than the energy required to remove the second electron. Both Li^+ and Be^{2+} have $1s^2$ closed-shell configurations, and much more energy is required to remove an electron from the $1s^2$ core than from the 2*s* valence orbital of the same element. The chemical consequences are enormous: lithium (and all the alkali metals) forms compounds with the 1+ ion but not the 2+ or 3+ ions. Similarly, beryllium (and all the alkaline earth metals) forms compounds with the 2+ ion but not the 3+ or 4+ ions. *The energy required to remove electrons from a filled core is prohibitively large and simply cannot be achieved in normal chemical reactions.*

Note

The energy required to remove electrons from a filled core is prohibitively large under normal reaction conditions.

Ionization Energies of *s*- and *p*-Block Elements

Ionization energies of the elements in the third row of the periodic table exhibit the same pattern as those of Li and Be (Table 2.7.2): successive ionization energies increase steadily as electrons are removed from the valence orbitals (3*s* or 3*p*, in this case), followed by an especially large increase in ionization energy when electrons are removed from filled core levels as indicated by the bold diagonal line in Table 2.7.2. Thus in the third row of the periodic table, the largest increase in ionization energy corresponds to removing the fourth electron from Al, the fifth electron from Si, and so forth—that is, removing an electron from an ion that has the valence electron configuration of the preceding noble gas. This pattern explains why the chemistry of the elements normally involves only valence electrons. Too much energy is required to either remove or share the inner electrons.

Table 2.7.2: Successive Ionization Energies (in kJ/mol) for the Elements in the Third Row of the Periodic Table.Source: Data from CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics (2004).

Element	I_1	I_2	I_3	I_4	I_5	I_6	I_7
Na	495.8	**4562.4***	—	—	—	—	—
Mg	737.7	1450.7	**7732.7**	—	—	—	—
Al	579.4.4	1816.7	2744.8	**11,579.4.4**	—	—	—
***Inner-shell electron**							

Element	I_1	I_2	I_3	I_4	I_5	I_6	I_7
Si	786.5	1577.1	3231.6	4355.5	**16,090.6**	—	—
P	1011.8	1909.4.4	2914.1	4963.6	6274.0	**21,269.4.3**	—
S	999.6	2251.8	3357	4556.2	7004.3	8495.8	**27,109.4.3**
Cl	1251.2	2297.7	3822	5158.6	6540	9362	11,018.2
Ar	1520.6	2665.9	3931	5771	7238	8781.0	11,995.3
***Inner-shell electron**							

Example 2.7.1: Highest Fourth Ionization Energy

From their locations in the periodic table, predict which of these elements has the highest fourth ionization energy: B, C, or N.

Given: three elements

Asked for: element with highest fourth ionization energy

Strategy:

a. List the electron configuration of each element.
b. Determine whether electrons are being removed from a filled or partially filled valence shell. Predict which element has the highest fourth ionization energy, recognizing that the highest energy corresponds to the removal of electrons from a filled electron core.

Solution:

A These elements all lie in the second row of the periodic table and have the following electron configurations:

- B: [He]$2s^2 2p^1$
- C: [He]$2s^2 2p^2$
- N: [He]$2s^2 2p^3$

B The fourth ionization energy of an element (I_4) is defined as the energy required to remove the fourth electron:

$$E_{(g)}^{3+} \rightarrow E_{(g)}^{4+} + e^- \tag{2.7.10}$$

Because carbon and nitrogen have four and five valence electrons, respectively, their fourth ionization energies correspond to removing an electron from a partially filled valence shell. The fourth ionization energy for boron, however, corresponds to removing an electron from the filled $1s^2$ subshell. This should require much more energy. The actual values are as follows: B, 25,026 kJ/mol; C, 6223 kJ/mol; and N, 7475 kJ/mol.

Exercise 2.7.1: Lowest Second Ionization Energy

From their locations in the periodic table, predict which of these elements has the lowest second ionization energy: Sr, Rb, or Ar.

Answer: Sr

The first column of data in Table 2.7.2 shows that first ionization energies tend to increase across the third row of the periodic table. This is because the valence electrons do not screen each other very well, allowing the effective nuclear charge to increase steadily across the row. The valence electrons are therefore attracted more strongly to the nucleus, so atomic sizes decrease and ionization energies increase. These effects represent two sides of the same coin: stronger electrostatic interactions between the

electrons and the nucleus further increase the energy required to remove the electrons.

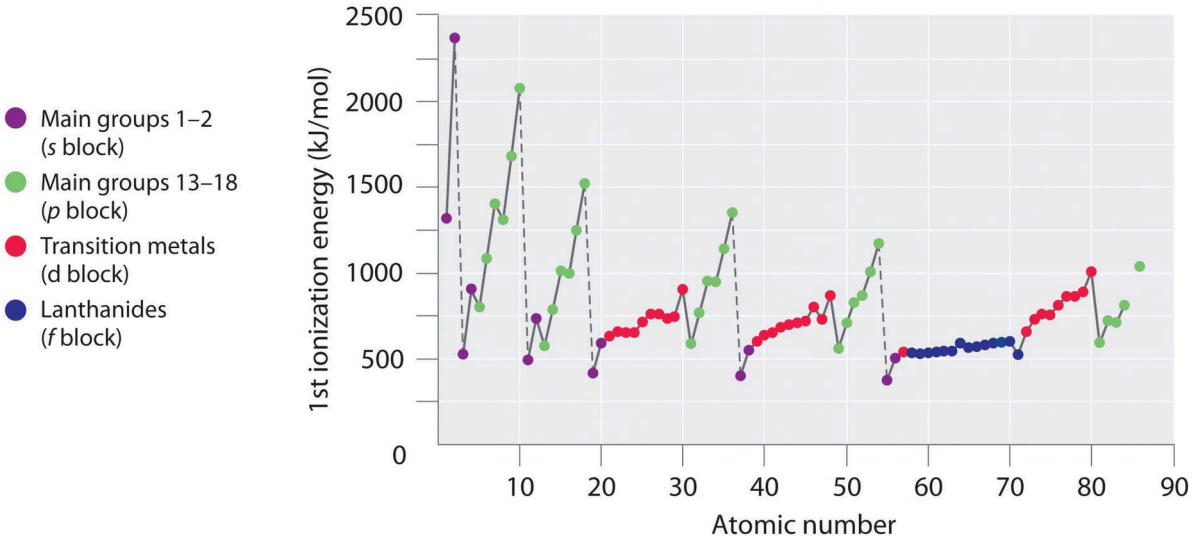


Figure 2.7.1: A Plot of Periodic Variation of First Ionization Energy with Atomic Number for the First Six Rows of the Periodic Table. There is a decrease in ionization energy within a group (most easily seen here for groups 1 and 18).

However, the first ionization energy decreases at Al ([Ne]$3s^2 3p^1$) and at S ([Ne]$3s^2 3p^4$). The electrons in aluminum's filled $3s^2$ subshell are better at screening the $3p^1$ electron than they are at screening each other from the nuclear charge, so the s electrons penetrate closer to the nucleus than the *p* electron does. The decrease at S occurs because the two electrons in the same *p* orbital repel each other. This makes the S atom slightly less stable than would otherwise be expected, as is true of all the group 16 elements.

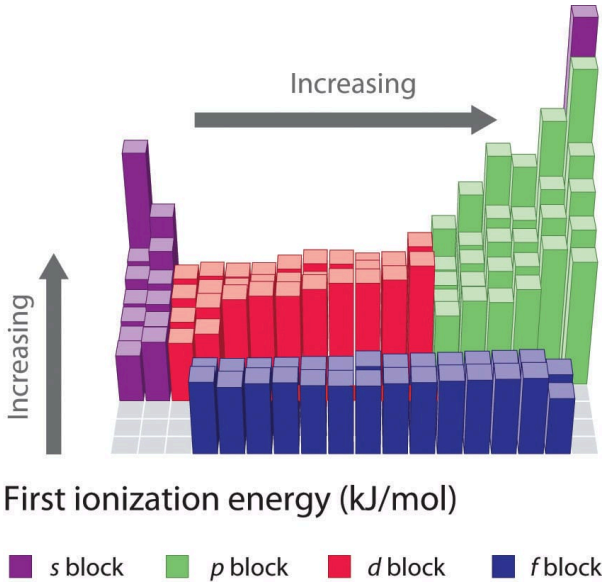


Figure* 2.7.2: *First Ionization Energies of the s-, p-, d-, and f-Block Elements

The first ionization energies of the elements in the first six rows of the periodic table are plotted in Figure 2.7.1 and are presented numerically and graphically in Figure 2.7.2. These figures illustrate three important trends:

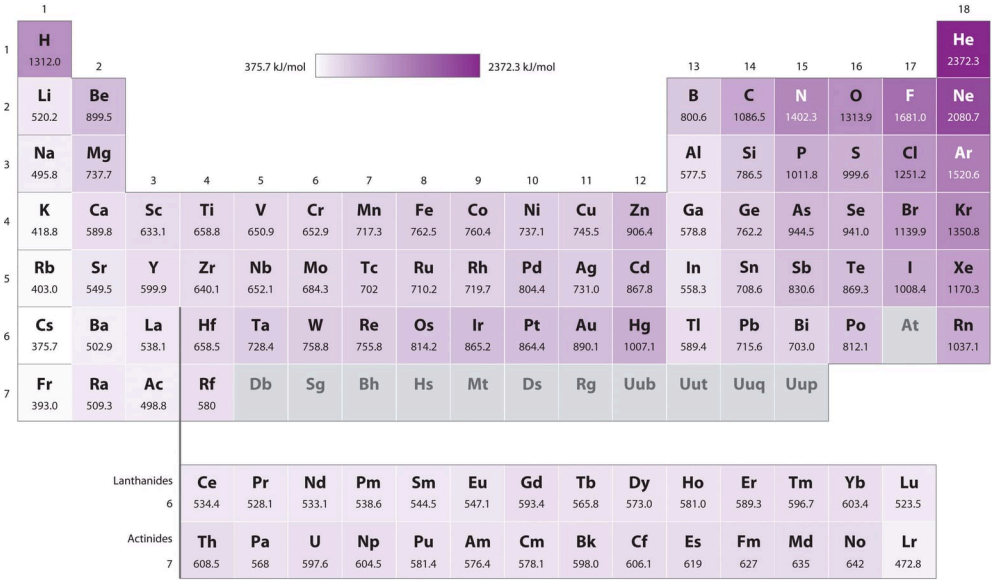
1. The changes seen in the second (Li to Ne), fourth (K to Kr), fifth (Rb to Xe), and sixth (Cs to Rn) rows of the s and *p* blocks follow a pattern similar to the pattern described for the third row of the periodic table. The transition metals are included in the fourth, fifth, and sixth rows, however, and the lanthanides are included in the sixth row. The first ionization energies of

the transition metals are somewhat similar to one another, as are those of the lanthanides. Ionization energies increase from left to right across each row, with discrepancies occurring at ns^2np^1 (group 13), ns^2np^4 (group 16), and $ns^2(n-1)d^{10}$ (group 12) electron configurations.

2. First ionization energies generally decrease down a column. Although the principal quantum number n increases down a column, filled inner shells are effective at screening the valence electrons, so there is a relatively small increase in the effective nuclear charge. Consequently, the atoms become larger as they acquire electrons. Valence electrons that are farther from the nucleus are less tightly bound, making them easier to remove, which causes ionization energies to decrease. *A larger radius corresponds to a lower ionization energy.*
3. Because of the first two trends, the elements that form positive ions most easily (have the lowest ionization energies) lie in the lower left corner of the periodic table, whereas those that are hardest to ionize lie in the upper right corner of the periodic table. Consequently, ionization energies generally increase diagonally from lower left (Cs) to upper right (He).

Note

Generally, I_1 increases diagonally from the lower left of the periodic table to the upper right.



The darkness of the shading inside the cells of the table indicates the relative magnitudes of the ionization energies. Elements in gray have undetermined first ionization energies. Source: Data from CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics (2004).

Gallium (Ga), which is the first element following the first row of transition metals, has the following electron configuration: $[Ar]4s^23d^{10}4p^1$. Its first ionization energy is significantly lower than that of the immediately preceding element, zinc, because the filled $3d^{10}$ subshell of gallium lies inside the 4*p* subshell, screening the single 4*p* electron from the nucleus. Experiments have revealed something of even greater interest: the second and third electrons that are removed when gallium is ionized come from the $4s^2$ orbital, *not* the $3d^{10}$ subshell. The chemistry of gallium is dominated by the resulting Ga^{3+} ion, with its $[Ar]3d^{10}$ electron configuration. This and similar electron configurations are particularly stable and are often encountered in the heavier *p*-block elements. They are sometimes referred to as pseudo noble gas configurations. In fact, for elements that exhibit these configurations, *no chemical compounds are known in which electrons are removed from the $(n-1)d^{10}$ filled subshell.*

Ionization Energies of Transition Metals & Lanthanides

As we noted, the first ionization energies of the transition metals and the lanthanides change very little across each row. Differences in their second and third ionization energies are also rather small, in sharp contrast to the pattern seen with the *s*- and *p*-block elements. The reason for these similarities is that the transition metals and the lanthanides form cations by losing the *ns* electrons before the $(n-1)d$ or $(n-2)f$ electrons, respectively. This means that transition metal cations have $(n-1)d^n$

valence electron configurations, and lanthanide cations have $(n - 2)f^n$ valence electron configurations. Because the $(n - 1)d$ and $(n - 2)f$ shells are closer to the nucleus than the ns shell, the $(n - 1)d$ and $(n - 2)f$ electrons screen the ns electrons quite effectively, reducing the effective nuclear charge felt by the ns electrons. As Z increases, the increasing positive charge is largely canceled by the electrons added to the $(n - 1)d$ or $(n - 2)f$ orbitals.

That the ns electrons are removed before the $(n - 1)d$ or $(n - 2)f$ electrons may surprise you because the orbitals were filled in the reverse order. In fact, the ns, the $(n - 1)d$, and the $(n - 2)f$ orbitals are so close to one another in energy, and interpenetrate one another so extensively, that very small changes in the effective nuclear charge can change the order of their energy levels. As the d orbitals are filled, the effective nuclear charge causes the $3d$ orbitals to be slightly lower in energy than the $4s$ orbitals. The $[Ar]3d^2$ electron configuration of Ti^{2+} tells us that the $4s$ electrons of titanium are lost before the $3d$ electrons; this is confirmed by experiment. A similar pattern is seen with the lanthanides, producing cations with an $(n - 2)f^n$ valence electron configuration.

Because their first, second, and third ionization energies change so little across a row, these elements have important *horizontal* similarities in chemical properties in addition to the expected vertical similarities. For example, all the first-row transition metals except scandium form stable compounds as M^{2+} ions, whereas the lanthanides primarily form compounds in which they exist as M^{3+} ions.

Example 2.7.2: Lowest First Ionization Energy

Use their locations in the periodic table to predict which element has the lowest first ionization energy: Ca, K, Mg, Na, Rb, or Sr.

Given: six elements

Asked for: element with lowest first ionization energy

Strategy:

Locate the elements in the periodic table. Based on trends in ionization energies across a row and down a column, identify the element with the lowest first ionization energy.

Solution:

These six elements form a rectangle in the two far-left columns of the periodic table. Because we know that ionization energies increase from left to right in a row and from bottom to top of a column, we can predict that the element at the bottom left of the rectangle will have the lowest first ionization energy: Rb.

Exercise 2.7.2: Highest First Ionization Energy

Use their locations in the periodic table to predict which element has the highest first ionization energy: As, Bi, Ge, Pb, Sb, or Sn.

Answer: As

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Ionization Energy: https://youtu.be/k7j-u02ifzo

Summary

- Generally, the first ionization energy and electronegativity values increase diagonally from the lower left of the periodic table to the upper right, and electron affinities become more negative across a row.

The tendency of an element to lose is one of the most important factors in determining the kind of compounds it forms. Periodic behavior is most evident for **ionization energy (I)**, the energy required to remove an electron from a gaseous atom. The energy required to remove successive electrons from an atom increases steadily, with a substantial increase occurring with the removal of an electron from a filled inner shell. Consequently, only valence electrons can be removed in chemical reactions, leaving the filled inner shell intact. Ionization energies explain the common oxidation states observed for the elements. Ionization energies increase diagonally from the lower left of the periodic table to the upper right. Minor deviations from this trend can be explained in terms of particularly stable electronic configurations, called **pseudo noble gas configurations**, in either the parent atom or the resulting ion.

This page titled 2.7: Ionization Energy is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 9.4: Ionization Energy is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

2.8: Electron Affinity

Learning Objectives

- To master the concept of electron affinity as a measure of the energy required to adding an electron to an atom or ion.
- To recognize the inverse relationship of ionization energies and electron affinities

The electron affinity (EA) of an element E is defined as the energy change that occurs when an electron is added to a gaseous atom:

$$E_{(g)} + e^- \rightarrow E^-_{(g)} \qquad \text{energy change}{=}EA \tag{2.8.1}$$

Unlike ionization energies, which are always positive for a neutral atom because energy is required to remove an electron, electron affinities can be negative (energy is released when an electron is added), positive (energy must be added to the system to produce an anion), or zero (the process is energetically neutral). This sign convention is consistent with a negative value corresponded to the energy change for an exothermic process, which is one in which heat is released.

The chlorine atom has the most negative electron affinity of any element, which means that more energy is released when an electron is added to a gaseous chlorine atom than to an atom of any other element:

$$Cl_{(g)} + e^- \rightarrow Cl^-_{(g)} \qquad EA = -346\ kJ/mol \tag{2.8.2}$$

In contrast, beryllium does not form a stable anion, so its effective electron affinity is

$$Be_{(g)} + e^- \rightarrow Be^-_{(g)} \qquad EA \geq 0 \tag{2.8.3}$$

Nitrogen is unique in that it has an electron affinity of approximately zero. Adding an electron neither releases nor requires a significant amount of energy:

$$N_{(g)} + e^- \rightarrow N^-_{(g)} \qquad EA \approx 0 \tag{2.8.4}$$

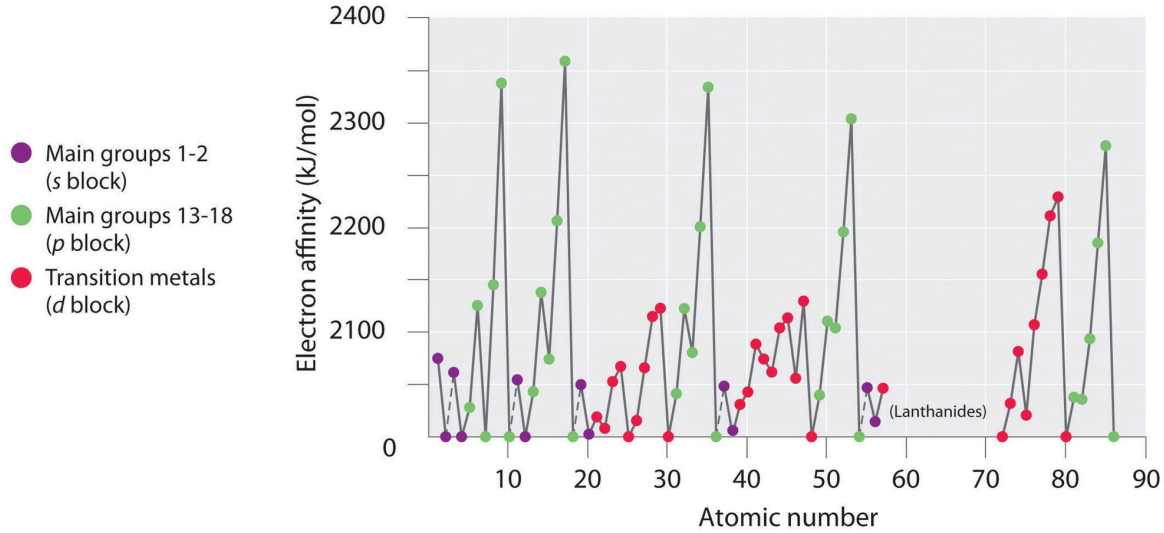


Figure 2.8.1: A Plot of Periodic Variation of Electron Affinity with Atomic Number for the First Six Rows of the Periodic Table

Note

Generally, electron affinities become more negative across a row of the periodic table.

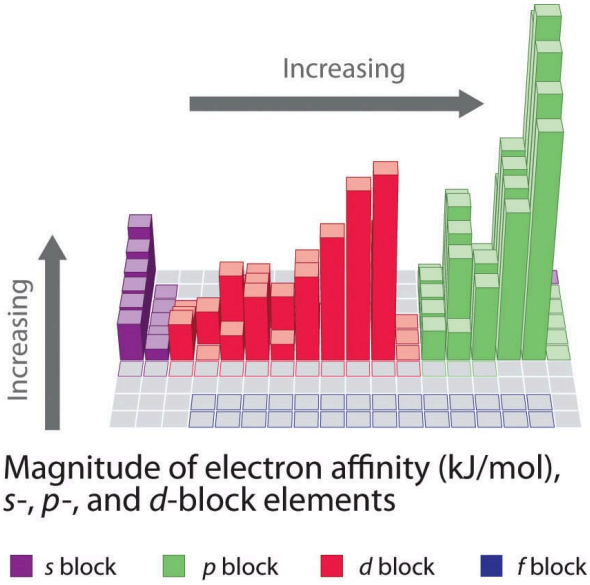
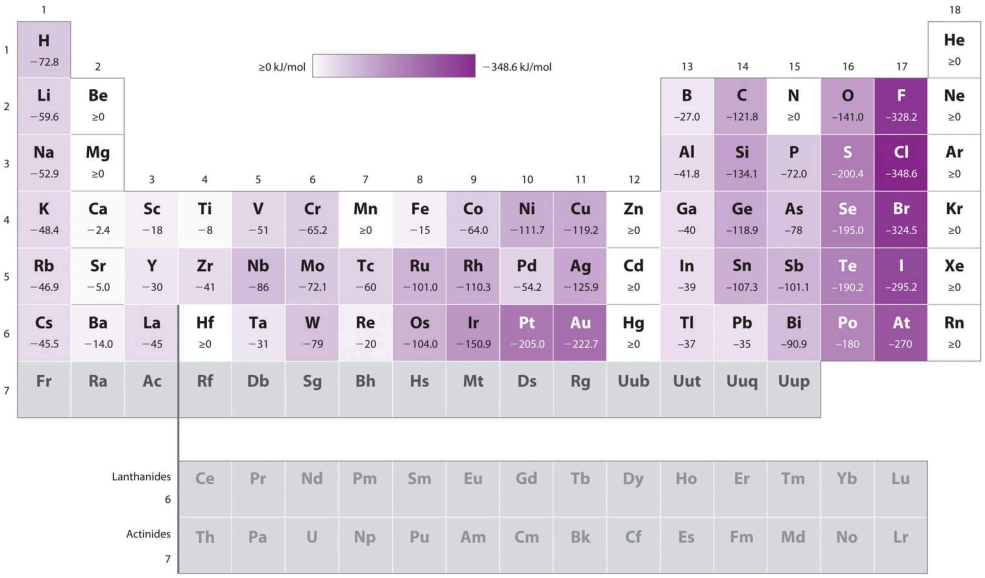


Figure 2.8.2 Electron Affinities (in kJ/mol) of the s-, *p*-, and *d*-Block Elements.

In general, electron affinities of the main-group elements become less negative as we proceed down a column. This is because as *n* increases, the extra electrons enter orbitals that are increasingly far from the nucleus. Atoms with the largest radii, which have the lowest ionization energies (affinity for their own valence electrons), also have the lowest affinity for an added electron. There are, however, two major exceptions to this trend:

1. The electron affinities of elements B through F in the second row of the periodic table are *less* negative than those of the elements immediately below them in the third row. Apparently, the increased electron–electron repulsions experienced by electrons confined to the relatively small 2*p* orbitals overcome the increased electron–nucleus attraction at short nuclear distances. Fluorine, therefore, has a lower affinity for an added electron than does chlorine. Consequently, the elements of the *third* row ($n = 3$) have the most negative electron affinities. Farther down a column, the attraction for an added electron decreases because the electron is entering an orbital more distant from the nucleus. Electron–electron repulsions also decrease because the valence electrons occupy a greater volume of space. These effects tend to cancel one another, so the changes in electron affinity within a family are much smaller than the changes in ionization energy.
2. The electron affinities of the alkaline earth metals become more negative from Be to Ba. The energy separation between the filled ns^2 and the empty *np* subshells decreases with increasing *n*, so that formation of an anion from the heavier elements becomes energetically more favorable.



There are many more exceptions to the trends across rows and down columns than with first ionization energies. Elements that do not form stable ions, such as the noble gases, are assigned an effective electron affinity that is greater than or equal to zero. Elements for which no data are available are shown in gray. Source: Data from Journal of Physical and Chemical Reference Data 28, no. 6 (1999).

Note

In general, electron affinities become more negative across a row and less negative down a column.

The equations for second and higher electron affinities are analogous to those for second and higher ionization energies:

$$E_{(g)} + e^- \rightarrow E^-_{(g)} \qquad \text{energy change}=EA_1 \tag{2.8.5}$$

$$E^-_{(g)} + e^- \rightarrow E^{2-}_{(g)} \qquad \text{energy change}=EA_2 \tag{2.8.6}$$

As we have seen, the first electron affinity can be greater than or equal to zero or negative, depending on the electron configuration of the atom. In contrast, the second electron affinity is *always* positive because the increased electron–electron repulsions in a dianion are far greater than the attraction of the nucleus for the extra electrons. For example, the first electron affinity of oxygen is –141 kJ/mol, but the second electron affinity is +744 kJ/mol:

$$O_{(g)} + e^- \rightarrow O^-_{(g)} \qquad EA_1 = -141\ kJ/mol \tag{2.8.7}$$

$$O^-_{(g)} + e^- \rightarrow O^{2-}_{(g)} \qquad EA_2 = +744\ kJ/mol \tag{2.8.8}$$

Thus the formation of a gaseous oxide (O^{2-}) ion is energetically quite *unfavorable* (estimated by adding both steps):

$$O_{(g)} + 2e^- \rightarrow O^{2-}_{(g)} \qquad EA = +603\ kJ/mol \tag{2.8.9}$$

Similarly, the formation of all common dianions (such as S^{2-}) or trianions (such as P^{3-}) is energetically unfavorable in the gas phase.

Note

While first electron affinities can be negative, positive, or zero, second electron affinities are always positive.

If energy is required to form both positively charged ions and monatomic polyanions, why do ionic compounds such as MgO, Na_2S, and Na_3P form at all? The key factor in the formation of stable ionic compounds is the favorable electrostatic interactions between the cations and the anions *in the crystalline salt*.

Example 2.8.1: Contrasting Electron Affinities of Sb, Se, and Te

Based on their positions in the periodic table, which of Sb, Se, or Te would you predict to have the most negative electron affinity?

Given: three elements

Asked for: element with most negative electron affinity

Strategy:

A. Locate the elements in the periodic table. Use the trends in electron affinities going down a column for elements in the same group. Similarly, use the trends in electron affinities from left to right for elements in the same row.
B. Place the elements in order, listing the element with the most negative electron affinity first.

Solution:

A We know that electron affinities become less negative going down a column (except for the anomalously low electron affinities of the elements of the second row), so we can predict that the electron affinity of Se is more negative than that of Te. We also know that electron affinities become more negative from left to right across a row, and that the group 15 elements tend to have values that are less negative than expected. Because Sb is located to the left of Te and belongs to group 15, we predict that the electron affinity of Te is more negative than that of Sb. The overall order is Se < Te < Sb, so Se has the most negative electron affinity among the three elements.

Exercise 2.8.1: Contrasting Electron Affinities of Rb, Sr, and Xe

Based on their positions in the periodic table, which of Rb, Sr, or Xe would you predict to most likely form a gaseous anion?

Answer: Rb

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Electron Affinity: https://youtu.be/M5MsRM2Xtds

Summary

The **electron affinity** (*EA*) of an element is the energy change that occurs when an electron is added to a gaseous atom to give an anion. In general, elements with the most negative electron affinities (the highest affinity for an added electron) are those with the smallest size and highest ionization energies and are located in the upper right corner of the periodic table.

This page titled 2.8: Electron Affinity is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 9.5: Electron Affinity is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

2.9: Periodic Properties of the Elements

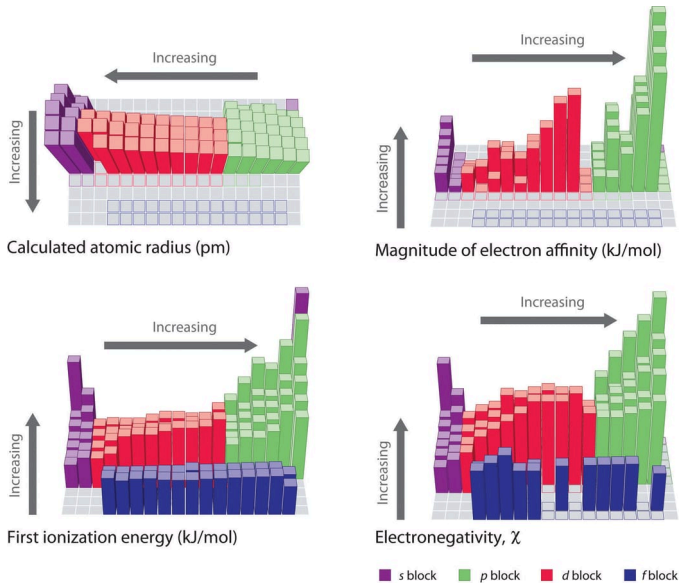


Figure 2.9.1 Summary of Major Periodic Trends. The general trends for the first ionization energy, electron affinity, and electronegativity are opposite to the general trend for covalent atomic radius.

This page titled 2.9: Periodic Properties of the Elements is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

3: CHEMICAL BONDING AND MOLECULAR STRUCTURE

Petrucci: ***General Chemistry***
Principles and Modern Applications

Template:HideTOC

We defined a chemical bond as the force that holds atoms together in a chemical compound. We also introduced two idealized types of bonding: **covalent bonding**, in which electrons are shared between atoms in a molecule or polyatomic ion, and **ionic bonding**, in which positively and negatively charged ions are held together by electrostatic forces. The concepts of covalent and ionic bonding were developed to explain the properties of different kinds of chemical substances.

- Topic hierarchy

3.1: Covalent Bonding: An Introduction
3.2: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electrostatic Potential Maps
3.3: Bond Energies
3.4: Bond Order and Bond Lengths
3.5: Lewis Theory: An Overview
3.6: Writing Lewis Structures
3.7: Exceptions to the Octet Rule
3.8: Resonance
3.9: Shapes of Molecules

This page titled 3: Chemical Bonding and Molecular Structure is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

3.1: Covalent Bonding: An Introduction

Learning Objectives

- To understand the relationship between bond order, bond length, and bond energy.

In proposing his theory that octets can be completed by two atoms sharing electron pairs, Lewis provided scientists with the first description of covalent bonding. In this section, we expand on this and describe some of the properties of covalent bonds. The general properties of Ionic substances are:

- usually brittle
- high melting point
- organized into an ordered lattice of atoms, which can be cleaved along a smooth line

However, the vast majority of chemical substances are ***not ionic*** in nature. G.N. Lewis reasoned that an atom might attain a noble gas electron configuration by ***sharing*** electrons

Note

A chemical bond formed by sharing a pair of electrons is called a covalent bond

We begin our discussion of the relationship between structure and bonding in covalent compounds by describing the interaction between two identical neutral atoms—for example, the H_2 molecule, which contains a purely covalent bond. Each hydrogen atom in H_2 contains one electron and one proton, with the electron attracted to the proton by electrostatic forces. As the two hydrogen atoms are brought together, additional interactions must be considered (Figure 3.1.1):

- The electrons in the two atoms repel each other because they have the same charge ($E > 0$).
- Similarly, the protons in adjacent atoms repel each other ($E > 0$).
- The electron in one atom is attracted to the oppositely charged proton in the other atom and vice versa ($E < 0$). Recall that it is impossible to specify precisely the position of the electron in either hydrogen atom. Hence the quantum mechanical probability distributions must be used.

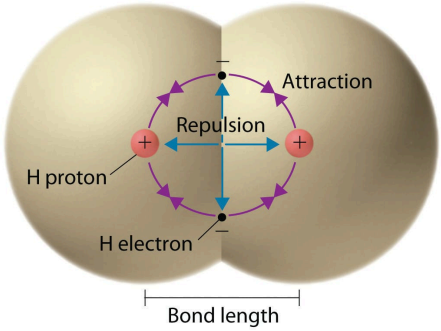


Figure 3.1.1: Attractive and Repulsive Interactions between Electrons and Nuclei in the Hydrogen Molecule. Electron–electron and proton–proton interactions are repulsive; electron–proton interactions are attractive. At the observed bond distance, the repulsive and attractive interactions are balanced.

A plot of the potential energy of the system as a function of the internuclear distance (Figure 3.1.2) shows that the system becomes more stable (the energy of the system decreases) as two hydrogen atoms move toward each other from $r = \infty$, until the energy reaches a minimum at $r = r_0$ (the observed internuclear distance in H_2 is 74 pm). Thus at intermediate distances, proton–electron attractive interactions dominate, but as the distance becomes very short, electron–electron and proton–proton repulsive interactions cause the energy of the system to increase rapidly. Notice the similarity between Figure 3.1.2 and Figure 8.1, which described a system containing two oppositely charged *ions*. The shapes of the energy versus distance curves in the

two figures are similar because they both result from attractive and repulsive forces between charged entities.

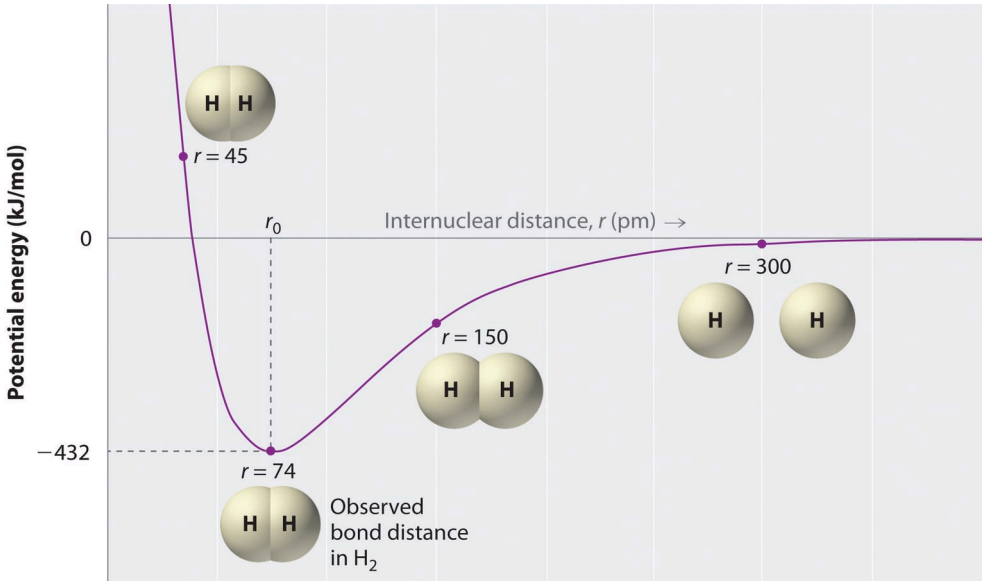


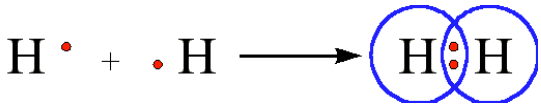
Figure 3.1.2: A Plot of Potential Energy versus Internuclear Distance for the Interaction between Two Gaseous Hydrogen Atoms.

At long distances, both attractive and repulsive interactions are small. As the distance between the atoms decreases, the attractive electron–proton interactions dominate, and the energy of the system decreases. At the observed bond distance, the repulsive electron–electron and proton–proton interactions just balance the attractive interactions, preventing a further decrease in the internuclear distance. At very short internuclear distances, the repulsive interactions dominate, making the system less stable than the isolated atoms.

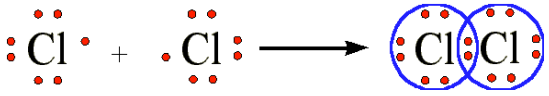
Lewis Structures

Lewis structures (also known as Lewis dot diagrams, electron dot diagrams, Lewis dot formulas, Lewis dot structures, and electron dot structures) are diagrams that show the bonding between atoms of a molecule and the lone pairs of electrons that may exist in the molecule. Lewis structures show each atom and its position in the structure of the molecule using its chemical symbol. Lines are drawn between atoms that are bonded to one another (pairs of dots can be used instead of lines). Excess electrons that form lone pairs are represented as pairs of dots, and are placed next to the atoms.

The diatomic hydrogen molecule (H_2) is the simplest model of a covalent bond, and is represented in Lewis structures as:



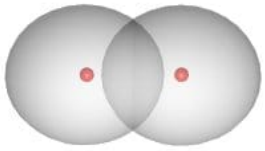
The ***shared pair*** of electrons provides ***each*** hydrogen atom with two electrons in its valence shell (the 1s) orbital. In a sense, each hydrogen atoms has the electron configuration of the noble gas helium (the octet rule). When two chlorine atoms covalently bond to form Cl_2, the following sharing of electrons occurs:



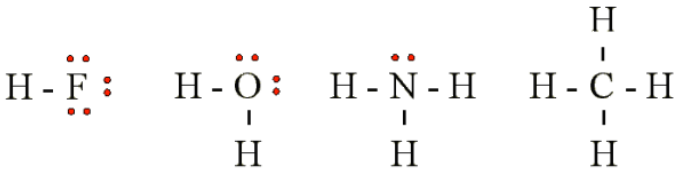
Each chlorine atom shared the bonding pair of electrons and achieves the electron configuration of the noble gas argon. In Lewis structures the bonding pair of electrons is usually displayed as a line, and the unshared electrons as dots:



The shared electrons are not located in a fixed position between the nuclei. In the case of the H_2 compound, the electron density is concentrated between the two nuclei:



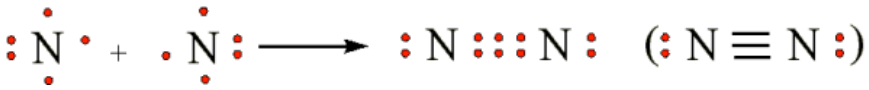
The two atoms are bound into the H_2 molecule mainly due to the attraction of the positively charged nuclei for the negatively charged electron cloud located between them. Examples of hydride compounds of the above elements (covalent bonds with hydrogen:



Multiple bonds

The sharing of a pair of electrons represents a single covalent bond, usually just referred to as a ***single bond***. However, in many molecules atoms attain complete octets by sharing more than one pair of electrons between them:

- Two electron pairs shared a ***double bond***
- Three electron pairs shared a ***triple bond***



Because each nitrogen contains 5 valence electrons, they need to share 3 pairs to each achieve a valence octet. N_2 is fairly inert, due to the strong triple bond between the two nitrogen atoms and the N - N bond distance in N_2 is 1.10 Å (fairly short). From a study of various Nitrogen containing compounds bond distance as a function of bond type can be summarized as follows:

- $\mathrm{N{-}N}$: 1.47Å
- $\mathrm{N{=}N}$: 1.24Å
- $\mathrm{N:{=}N}$:1.10Å

For the nonmetals (and the 's' block metals) the number of valence electrons is equal to the group number:

Element	Group	Valence electrons	Bonds needed to form valence octet
F	17	7	1
O	16	6	2
N	15	5	3

C	14	4	4

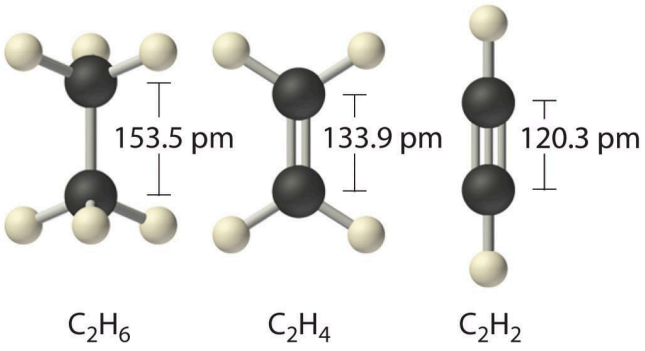
YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Lewis Structure of Molecules: https://youtu.be/xWiFCqA9Ur0

Thus, the Lewis bonds successfully describe the covalent interactions between various nonmetal elements. When we draw Lewis structures, we place one, two, or three pairs of electrons between adjacent atoms. In the Lewis bonding model, the number of electron pairs that hold two atoms together is called the bond order. For a single bond, such as the C–C bond in $H_3C–CH_3$, the bond order is one. For a double bond (such as $H_2C=CH_2$), the bond order is two. For a triple bond, such as HC≡CH, the bond order is three.



When analogous bonds in similar compounds are compared, bond length decreases as bond order increases. The bond length data in Table 3.1.1, for example, show that the C–C distance in $H_3C–CH_3$ (153.5 pm) is longer than the distance in $H_2C=CH_2$ (133.9 pm), which in turn is longer than that in HC≡CH (120.3 pm). Additionally, as noted in Section 8.5, molecules or ions whose bonding must be described using resonance structures usually have bond distances that are intermediate between those of single and double bonds, as we demonstrated with the C–C distances in benzene. The relationship between bond length and bond order is not linear, however. A double bond is not half as long as a single bond, and the length of a C=C bond is not the average of the lengths of C≡C and C–C bonds. Nevertheless, as bond orders increase, bond lengths generally decrease.

Table 3.1.1: Bond Lengths and Bond Dissociation Energies for Bonds with Different Bond Orders in Selected Gas-Phase Molecules at 298 K

Compound	Bond Order	Bond Length (pm)	Bond Dissociation Energy (kJ/mol)	Compound	Bond Order	Bond Length (pm)	Bond Dissociation Energy (kJ/mol)
$H_3C–CH_3$	1	153.5	376	$H_3C–NH_2$	1	147.1	331
$H_2C=CH_2$	2	133.9	728	$H_2C=NH$	2	127.3	644
HC≡CH	3	120.3	965	HC≡N	3	115.3	937
$H_2N–NH_2$	1	144.9	275.3	$H_3C–OH$	1	142.5	377
HN=NH	2	125.2	456	$H_2C=O$	2	120.8	732

Compound	Bond Order	Bond Length (pm)	Bond Dissociation Energy (kJ/mol)	Compound	Bond Order	Bond Length (pm)	Bond Dissociation Energy (kJ/mol)
N≡N	3	109.8	945.3	O=C=O	2	116.0	799
HO–OH	1	147.5	213	C≡O	3	112.8	1076.5
O=O	2	120.7	498.4				

Sources: Data from *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics* (2004); *Lange's Handbook of Chemistry* (2005); http://cccbdb.nist.gov.

Note

As a general rule, the distance between bonded atoms decreases as the number of shared electron pairs increases

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Bond Lengths: https://youtu.be/9xn04FNkq9I

The Relationship between Bond Order & Bond Energy

As shown in Table 3.1.1, triple bonds between like atoms are shorter than double bonds, and because more energy is required to completely break all three bonds than to completely break two, a triple bond is also stronger than a double bond. Similarly, double bonds between like atoms are stronger and shorter than single bonds. Bonds of the same order between *different* atoms show a wide range of bond energies, however.

Table 3.1.2: Average Bond Energies (kJ/mol) for Commonly Encountered Bonds at 273 K

Single Bonds										Multiple Bonds	
H–H	432	C–C	346	N–N	≈167	O–O	≈142	F–F	155	C=C	602
H–C	411	C–Si	318	N–O	201	O–F	190	F–Cl	249	C≡C	835
H–Si	318	C–N	305	N–F	283	O–Cl	218	F–Br	249	C=N	615
H–N	386	C–O	358	N–Cl	313	O–Br	201	F–I	278	C≡N	887
H–P	≈322	C–S	272	N–Br	243	O–I	201	Cl–Cl	240	C=O	749
H–O	459	C–F	485	P–P	201	S–S	226	Cl–Br	216	C≡O	1072
H–S	363	C–Cl	327			S–F	284	Cl–I	208	N=N	418
H–F	565	C–Br	285			S–Cl	255	Br–Br	190	N≡N	942
H–Cl	428	C–I	213			S–Br	218	Br–I	175	N=O	607
H–Br	362	Si–Si	222					I–I	149	O=O	494
H–I	295	Si–O	452							S=O	532

Single Bonds	Multiple Bonds

Source: Data from J. E. Huheey, E. A. Keiter, and R. L. Keiter, *Inorganic Chemistry*, 4th ed. (1993).

Table 3.1.2 lists the average values for some commonly encountered bonds. Although the values shown vary widely, we can observe four trends:

1. Bonds between hydrogen and atoms in the same column of the periodic table decrease in strength as we go down the column. Thus an H–F bond is stronger than an H–I bond, H–C is stronger than H–Si, H–N is stronger than H–P, H–O is stronger than H–S, and so forth. The reason for this is that the region of space in which electrons are shared between two atoms becomes proportionally smaller as one of the atoms becomes larger (part (a) in Figure 3.1.1).
2. Bonds between like atoms usually become *weaker* as we go down a column (important exceptions are noted later). For example, the C–C single bond is stronger than the Si–Si single bond, which is stronger than the Ge–Ge bond, and so forth. As two bonded atoms become larger, the region between them occupied by bonding electrons becomes *proportionally* smaller, as illustrated in part (b) in Figure 3.1.1. Noteworthy exceptions are single bonds between the period 2 atoms of groups 15, 16, and 17 (i.e., N, O, F), which are unusually weak compared with single bonds between their larger congeners. It is likely that the N–N, O–O, and F–F single bonds are weaker than might be expected due to strong repulsive interactions between lone pairs of electrons on *adjacent* atoms. The trend in bond energies for the halogens is therefore\[\ce{Cl\bond{-}Cl > Br\bond{-}Br > F\bond{-}F > I–I}\] Similar effects are also seen for the O–O versus S–S and for N–N versus P–P single bonds.

Note

Bonds between hydrogen and atoms in a given column in the periodic table are weaker down the column; bonds between like atoms usually become weaker down a column.

3. Because elements in periods 3 and 4 rarely form multiple bonds with themselves, their multiple bond energies are not accurately known. Nonetheless, they are presumed to be significantly weaker than multiple bonds between lighter atoms of the same families. Compounds containing an Si=Si double bond, for example, have only recently been prepared, whereas compounds containing C=C double bonds are one of the best-studied and most important classes of organic compounds.
4. Multiple bonds between carbon, oxygen, or nitrogen and a period 3 element such as phosphorus or sulfur tend to be unusually strong. In fact, multiple bonds of this type dominate the chemistry of the period 3 elements of groups 15 and 16. Multiple bonds to phosphorus or sulfur occur as a result of *d*-orbital interactions, e..g, for the SO_4^{2-} ion. In contrast, silicon in group 14 has little tendency to form discrete silicon–oxygen double bonds. Consequently, SiO_2 has a three-dimensional network structure in which each silicon atom forms four Si–O single bonds, which makes the physical and chemical properties of SiO_2 very different from those of CO_2.

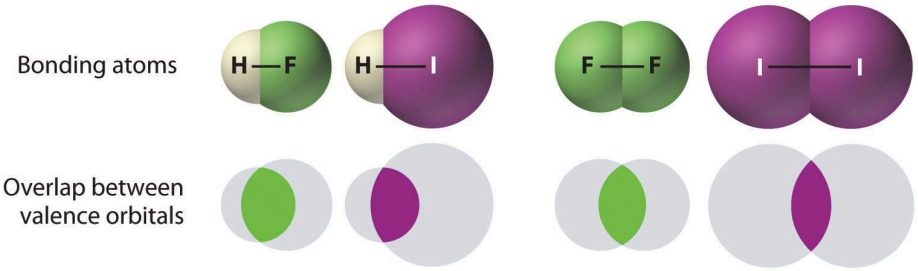


Figure 3.1.1 The Strength of Covalent Bonds Depends on the Overlap between the Valence Orbitals of the Bonded Atoms. The relative sizes of the region of space in which electrons are shared between (a) a hydrogen atom and lighter (smaller) vs. heavier (larger) atoms in the same periodic group; and (b) two lighter versus two heavier atoms in the same group. Although the absolute amount of shared space increases in both cases on going from a light to a heavy atom, the amount of space *relative to the size of the bonded atom* decreases; that is, the *percentage* of total orbital volume decreases with increasing size. Hence the strength of the bond decreases.

Note

Bond strengths increase as bond order **increases**, while bond distances **decrease**.

The Relationship between Molecular Structure and Bond Energy

Bond energy is defined as the energy required to break a particular bond in a molecule in the gas phase. Its value depends on not only the identity of the bonded atoms but also their environment. Thus the bond energy of a C–H single bond is *not* the same in all organic compounds. For example, the energy required to break a C–H bond in methane varies by as much as 25% depending on how many other bonds in the molecule have already been broken (Table 3.1.3); that is, the C–H bond energy depends on its molecular environment. Except for diatomic molecules, the bond energies listed in Table 3.1.2 are *average* values for all bonds of a given type in a range of molecules. Even so, they are not likely to differ from the actual value of a given bond by more than about 10%.

Table 3.1.3: Energies for the Dissociation of Successive C–H Bonds in Methane

Reaction	*D* (kJ/mol)
$CH_4(g) \rightarrow CH_3(g) + H(g)$	439
$CH_3(g) \rightarrow CH_2(g) + H(g)$	462
$CH_2(g) \rightarrow CH(g) + H(g)$	424
$CH(g) \rightarrow C(g) + H(g)$	338
Source: Data from *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics* (2004).	

We can estimate the enthalpy change for a chemical reaction by adding together the average energies of the bonds broken in the reactants and the average energies of the bonds formed in the products and then calculating the difference between the two. If the bonds formed in the products are stronger than those broken in the reactants, then energy will be released in the reaction ($\Delta H_{rxn} < 0$):

$$\Delta H_{rxn} \approx \sum (\text{bond energies of bonds broken}) - \sum (\text{bond energies of bonds formed}) \tag{3.1.1}$$

The ≈ sign is used because we are adding together *average* bond energies; hence this approach does not give exact values for ΔH_{rxn}.

Let's consider the reaction of 1 mol of *n*-heptane (C_7H_{16}) with oxygen gas to give carbon dioxide and water. This is one reaction that occurs during the combustion of gasoline:

$$CH_3(CH_2)_5CH_{3(l)} + 11O_{2(g)} \rightarrow 7CO_{2(g)} + 8H_2O_{(g)} \tag{3.1.2}$$

In this reaction, 6 C–C bonds, 16 C–H bonds, and 11 O=O bonds are broken per mole of *n*-heptane, while 14 C=O bonds (two for each CO_2) and 16 O–H bonds (two for each H_2O) are formed. The energy changes can be tabulated as follows:

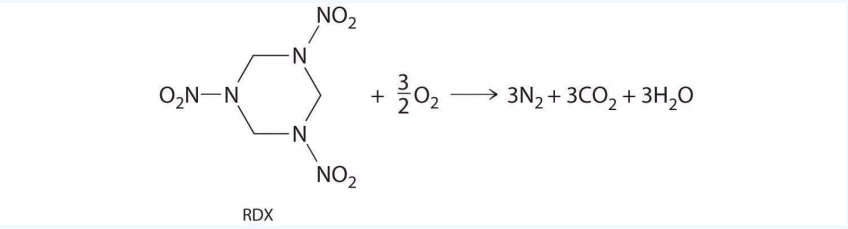
Bonds Broken (kJ/mol)		Bonds Formed (kJ/mol)	
6 C–C	346 × 6 = 2076	14 C=O	799 × 14 = 11,186
16 C–H	411 × 16 = 6576	16 O–H	459 × 16 = 7344
11 O=O	494 × 11 = 5434		**Total** = 18,530
	Total = 14,086		

The bonds in the products are stronger than the bonds in the reactants by about 4444 kJ/mol. This means that ΔH_{rxn} is approximately –4444 kJ/mol, and the reaction is highly exothermic (which is not too surprising for a combustion reaction).

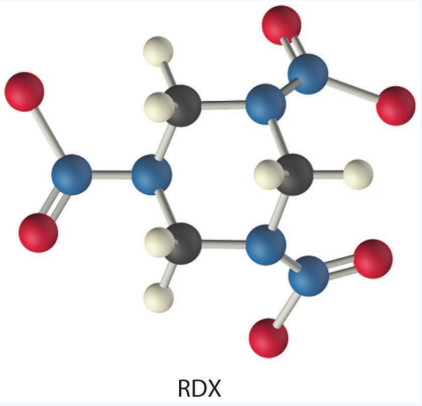
If we compare this approximation with the value obtained from measured ΔH_f° values ($\Delta H_{rxn} = -481 \ \ 7kJ/mol$), we find a discrepancy of only about 8%, less than the 10% typically encountered. Chemists find this method useful for calculating approximate enthalpies of reaction for molecules whose actual ΔH_f° values are unknown. These approximations can be important for predicting whether a reaction is **exothermic** or **endothermic**—and to what degree.

Example 3.1.1

The compound RDX (Research Development Explosive) is a more powerful explosive than dynamite and is used by the military. When detonated, it produces gaseous products and heat according to the following reaction. Use the approximate bond energies in Table 3.1.2 to estimate the ΔH_{rxn} per mole of RDX.



RDX



RDX

Given: chemical reaction, structure of reactant, and Table 3.1.2.

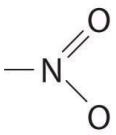
Asked for: ΔH_{rxn} per mole

Strategy:

A. List the types of bonds broken in RDX, along with the bond energy required to break each type. Multiply the number of each type by the energy required to break one bond of that type and then add together the energies. Repeat this procedure for the bonds formed in the reaction.
B. Use Equation 8.3.1 to calculate the amount of energy consumed or released in the reaction (ΔH_{rxn}).

Solution:

We must add together the energies of the bonds in the reactants and compare that quantity with the sum of the energies of the bonds in the products. A nitro group (–NO_2) can be viewed as having one N–O single bond and one N=O double bond, as follows:



In fact, however, both N–O distances are usually the same because of the presence of two equivalent resonance structures.

A We can organize our data by constructing a table:

Bonds Broken (kJ/mol)		Bonds Broken (kJ/mol)	
6 C–H	411 × 6 = 2466	6 C=O	799 × 6 = 4794
3 N–N	167 × 3 = 501	6 O–H	459 × 6 = 2754
3 N–O	201 × 3 = 603		**Total** = 10,374
3 N=O	607 × 3 = 1821		
1.5 O=O	494 × 1.5 = 741		
	Total = 7962		

B From Equation 8.3.1, we have

$$\Delta H_{rxn} \approx \sum (\text{bond energies of bonds broken}) - \sum (\text{bond energies of bonds formed}) \tag{3.1.3}$$

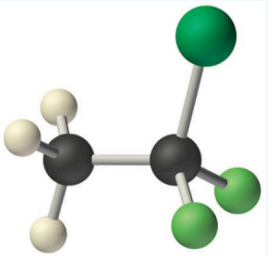
$$= 7962\ kJ/mol - 10,374\ kJ/mol \tag{3.1.4}$$

\[=–2412 \;kJ/mol]

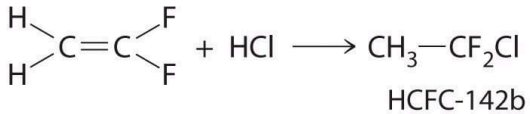
Thus this reaction is also highly exothermic.

Exercise 3.1.1

The molecule HCFC-142b, a hydrochlorofluorocarbon used in place of chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) such as the Freons, can be prepared by adding HCl to 1,1-difluoroethylene:



HCFC-142b



HCFC-142b

Use tabulated bond energies to calculate ΔH_{rxn}.

Answer: –54 kJ/mol

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Bond Energies: https://youtu.be/Prc6fbLXi5M

Summary

- The strength of a covalent bond depends on the overlap between the valence orbitals of the bonded atoms.

Formal charge on an atom:

Label '8.3.1' multiply defined

Bond order is the number of electron pairs that hold two atoms together. Single bonds have a bond order of one, and multiple bonds with bond orders of two (a double bond) and three (a triple bond) are quite common. In closely related compounds with bonds between the same kinds of atoms, the bond with the highest bond order is both the shortest and the strongest. In bonds with the same bond order between different atoms, trends are observed that, with few exceptions, result in the strongest single bonds being formed between the smallest atoms. Tabulated values of average bond energies can be used to calculate the enthalpy change of many chemical reactions. If the bonds in the products are stronger than those in the reactants, the reaction is exothermic and vice versa.

Contributors and Attributions

- Mike Blaber (Florida State University)
- Wikipedia

This page titled 3.1: Covalent Bonding: An Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 10.2: Covalent Bonding: An Introduction is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

3.2: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electrostatic Potential Maps

Learning Objectives

- To define electronegativity and bond polarity
- To calculate the percent ionic character of a covalent polar bond

The electron pairs shared between two atoms ***are not necessarily shared equally.*** For example, while the shared electron pairs is shared equally in the covalent bond in Cl_2, in $NaCl$ the 3s electron is stripped from the Na atom and is incorporated into the electronic structure of the Cl atom - and the compound is most accurately described as consisting of individual Na^+ and Cl^- ions (ionic bonding). For most covalent substances, their bond character falls **between** these two extremes. We demonstrated below, the **bond polarity** is a useful concept for describing the sharing of electrons between atoms within a covalent bond:

- A ***nonpolar covalent bond*** is one in which the electrons are shared *equally* between two atoms.
- A ***polar covalent bond*** is one in which ***one atom has a greater attraction for the electrons than the other atom***. If this relative attraction is great enough, then the bond is an ***ionic bond.***

Electronegativity

The elements with the highest ionization energies are generally those with the most negative electron affinities, which are located toward the upper right corner of the periodic table (compare Figure $3.2.2$ and Figure $3.2.2$). Conversely, the elements with the lowest ionization energies are generally those with the least negative electron affinities and are located in the lower left corner of the periodic table.

Because the tendency of an element to gain or lose electrons is so important in determining its chemistry, various methods have been developed to quantitatively describe this tendency. The most important method uses a measurement called electronegativity (represented by the Greek letter *chi*, χ, pronounced “ky” as in “sky”), defined as the *relative* ability of an atom to attract electrons to itself *in a chemical compound*. Elements with high electronegativities tend to acquire electrons in chemical reactions and are found in the upper right corner of the periodic table. Elements with low electronegativities tend to lose electrons in chemical reactions and are found in the lower left corner of the periodic table.

Unlike ionization energy or electron affinity, the electronegativity of an atom is not a simple, fixed property that can be directly measured in a single experiment. In fact, an atom’s electronegativity should depend to some extent on its chemical environment because the properties of an atom are influenced by its neighbors in a chemical compound. Nevertheless, when different methods for measuring the electronegativity of an atom are compared, they all tend to assign similar relative values to a given element. For example, all scales predict that fluorine has the highest electronegativity and cesium the lowest of the stable elements, which suggests that all the methods are measuring the same fundamental property.

Note

Electronegativity is defined as the ability of an atom in a particular molecule to attract electrons to itself. The **greater** the value, the **greater** the attractiveness for electrons.

Electronegativity is a function of: (1) the atom's ***ionization energy*** (how strongly the atom holds on to its own electrons) and (2) the atom's ***electron affinity*** (how strongly the atom attracts other electrons). Both of these are properties of the *isolated* atom. An element that is will be *highly electronegative* has:

- a large (negative) electron affinity
- a high ionization energy (always endothermic, or positive for neutral atoms)

and will

- attract electrons from other atoms
- resist having its own electrons attracted away.

The Pauling Electronegativity Scale

The original electronegativity scale, developed in the 1930s by Linus Pauling (1901– 1994) was based on measurements of the strengths of covalent bonds between different elements. Pauling arbitrarily set the electronegativity of fluorine at 4.0 (although today it has been refined to 3.98), thereby creating a scale in which all elements have values between 0 and 4.0.

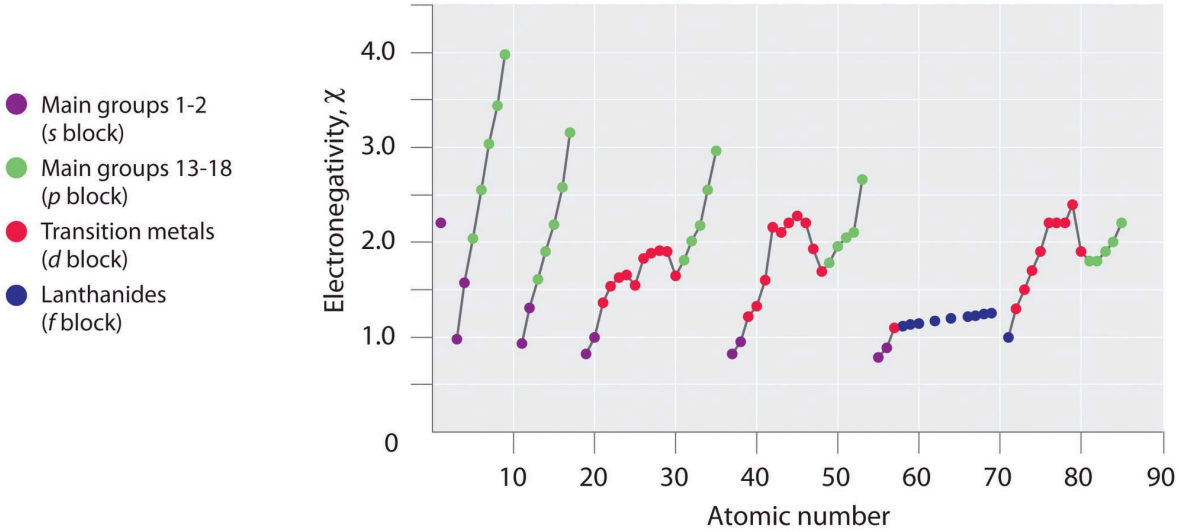


Figure 3.2.1: A Plot of Periodic Variation of Electronegativity with Atomic Number for the First Six Rows of the Periodic Table

Periodic variations in Pauling's electronegativity values are illustrated in Figure 3.2.1 and Figure 3.2.2. If we ignore the inert gases and elements for which no stable isotopes are known, we see that fluorine ($\chi = 3.98$) is the most electronegative element and cesium is the least electronegative nonradioactive element ($\chi = 0.79$). Because electronegativities generally increase diagonally from the lower left to the upper right of the periodic table, elements lying on diagonal lines running from upper left to lower right tend to have comparable values (e.g., O and Cl and N, S, and Br).

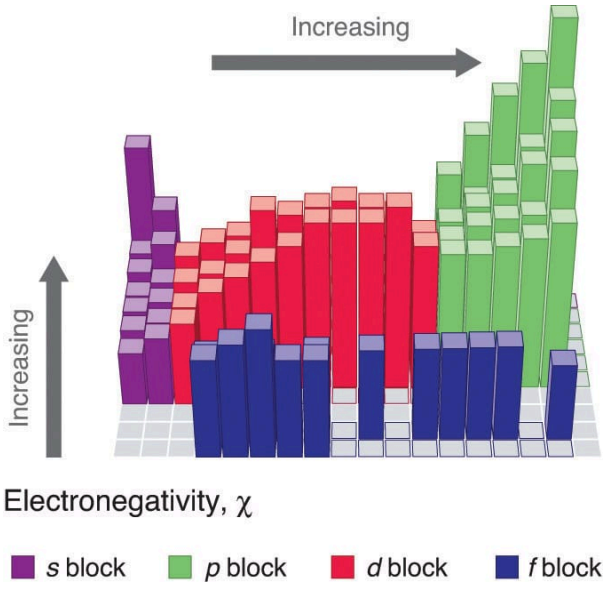
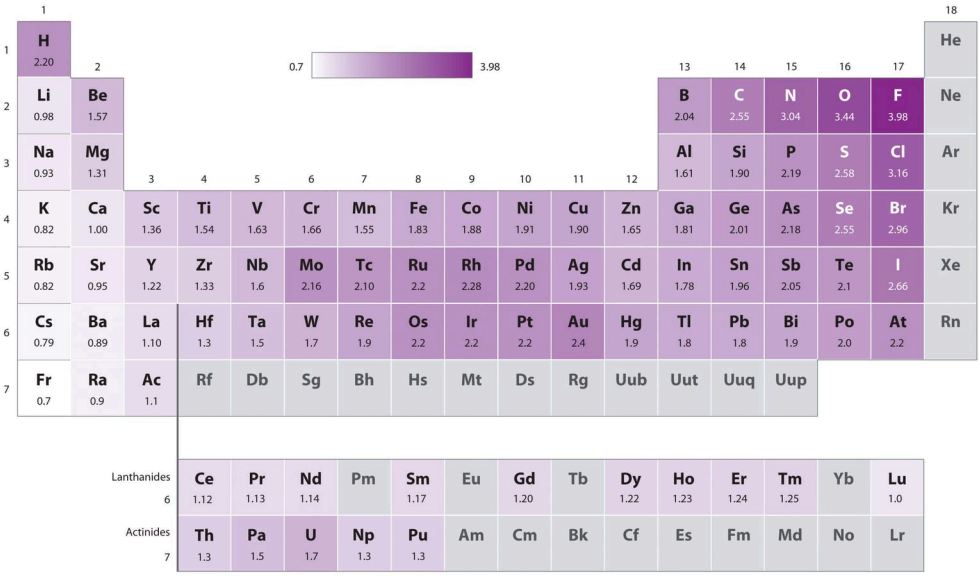


Figure 3.2.2***:*** *Pauling Electronegativity Values of the s-, p-, d-, and f-Block Elements. Values for most of the actinides are approximate. Elements for which no data are available are shown in gray. Source: Data from L. Pauling, The Nature of the Chemical Bond, 3rd ed. (1960).*

Linus Pauling (1901-1994)

Pauling won two Nobel Prizes, one for chemistry in 1954 and one for peace in 1962. When he was nine, Pauling's father died, and his mother tried to convince him to quit school to support the family. He did not quit school but was denied a high school degree because of his refusal to take a civics class.



Pauling's method is limited by the fact that many elements do not form stable covalent compounds with other elements; hence their electronegativities cannot be measured by his method. Other definitions have since been developed that address this problem (e.g., the Mulliken electronegativity scale).

Electronegativity Differences between Metals and Nonmetals

An element's electronegativity provides us with a single value that we can use to characterize the chemistry of an element. Elements with a high electronegativity ($\chi \geq 2.2$) have very negative affinities and large ionization potentials, so they are generally nonmetals and electrical insulators that tend to gain electrons in chemical reactions (i.e., they are *oxidants*). In contrast, elements with a low electronegativity ($\chi \leq 1.8$) have electron affinities that have either positive or small negative values and small ionization potentials, so they are generally metals and good electrical conductors that tend to lose their valence electrons in chemical reactions (i.e., they are *reductants*). In between the metals and nonmetals, along the heavy diagonal line running from B to At is a group of elements with intermediate electronegativities ($\chi \sim 2.0$). These are the **semimetals** (or metalloids), elements that have some of the chemical properties of both nonmetals and metals. The distinction between metals and nonmetals is one of the most fundamental we can make in categorizing the elements and predicting their chemical behavior. Figure $3.2.3$ shows the strong correlation between electronegativity values, metallic versus nonmetallic character, and location in the periodic table.

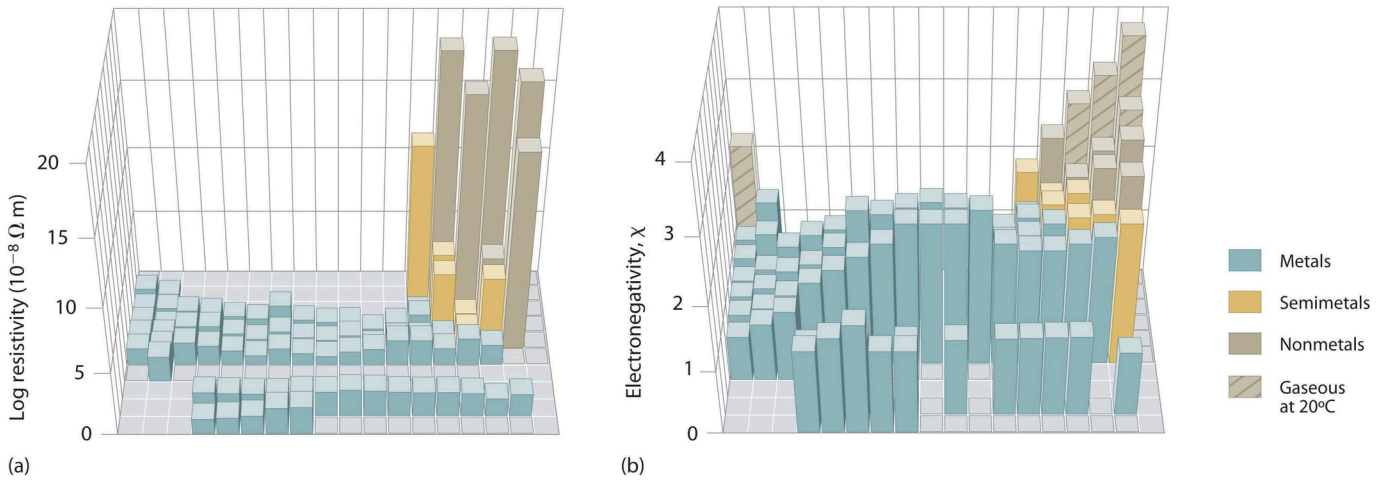


Figure 3.2.3: Three-Dimensional Plots Demonstrating the Relationship between Electronegativity and the Metallic/Nonmetallic Character of the Elements. (a) A plot of electrical resistivity (measured resistivity to electron flow) at or near room temperature shows that substances with high resistivity (little to no measured electron flow) are electrical insulators, whereas substances with low resistivity (high measured electron flow) are metals. (b) A plot of Pauling electronegativities for a like set of elements shows that high electronegativity values (≥ about 2.2) correlate with high electrical resistivities (insulators). Low electronegativity values (≤ about 2.2) correlate with low resistivities (metals). Because electrical resistivity is typically measured only for solids and liquids, the gaseous elements do not appear in part (a).

Note

Electronegativity values *increase* from lower left to upper right in the periodic table.

The rules for assigning oxidation states are based on the relative electronegativities of the elements; the more electronegative element in a binary compound is assigned a negative oxidation state. As we shall see, electronegativity values are also used to predict bond energies, bond polarities, and the kinds of reactions that compounds undergo.

Example 3.2.1

On the basis of their positions in the periodic table, arrange Cl, Se, Si, and Sr in order of increasing electronegativity and classify each as a metal, a nonmetal, or a semimetal.

Given: four elements

Asked for: order by increasing electronegativity and classification

<p">**Strategy:**

A. Locate the elements in the periodic table. From their diagonal positions from lower left to upper right, predict their relative electronegativities.
B. Arrange the elements in order of increasing electronegativity.
C. Classify each element as a metal, a nonmetal, or a semimetal according to its location about the diagonal belt of semimetals running from B to At.

Solution:

A Electronegativity increases from lower left to upper right in the periodic table (Figure 3.2.2). Because Sr lies far to the left of the other elements given, we can predict that it will have the lowest electronegativity. Because Cl lies above and to the right of Se, we can predict that $\chi_{Cl} > \chi_{Se}$. Because Si is located farther from the upper right corner than Se or Cl, its electronegativity should be lower than those of Se and Cl but greater than that of Sr. **B** The overall order is therefore $\chi_{Sr} < \chi_{Si} < \chi_{Se} < \chi_{Cl}$.

C To classify the elements, we note that Sr lies well to the left of the diagonal belt of semimetals running from B to At; while Se and Cl lie to the right and Si lies in the middle. We can predict that Sr is a metal, Si is a semimetal, and Se and Cl are nonmetals.

Exercise 3.2.1

On the basis of their positions in the periodic table, arrange Ge, N, O, Rb, and Zr in order of increasing electronegativity and classify each as a metal, a nonmetal, or a semimetal.

Answer: Rb < Zr < Ge < N < O; metals (Rb, Zr); semimetal (Ge); nonmetal (N, O)

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Electronegativity: https://youtu.be/3Pe0iShCdhM

Percent Ionic Character of a Covalent polar bond

The two idealized extremes of chemical bonding: (1) ionic bonding—in which one or more electrons are transferred completely from one atom to another, and the resulting ions are held together by purely electrostatic forces—and (2) covalent bonding, in which electrons are shared equally between two atoms. Most compounds, however, have polar covalent bonds, which means that electrons are shared unequally between the bonded atoms. Figure 3.2.4 compares the electron distribution in a polar covalent bond with those in an ideally covalent and an ideally ionic bond. Recall that a lowercase Greek delta (δ) is used to indicate that a bonded atom possesses a partial positive charge, indicated by δ^+, or a partial negative charge, indicated by δ^-, and a bond between two atoms that possess partial charges is a polar bond.

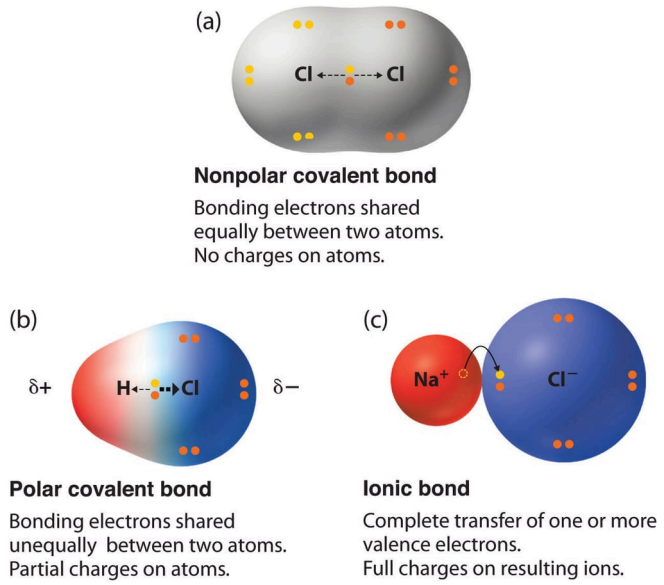


Figure 3.2.4: The Electron Distribution in a Nonpolar Covalent Bond, a Polar Covalent Bond, and an Ionic Bond Using Lewis Electron Structures. In a purely covalent bond (a), the bonding electrons are shared equally between the atoms. In a purely ionic bond (c), an electron has been transferred completely from one atom to the other. A polar covalent bond (b) is intermediate between the two extremes: the bonding electrons are shared unequally between the two atoms, and the electron distribution is asymmetrical with the electron density being greater around the more electronegative atom. Electron-rich (negatively charged) regions are shown in blue; electron-poor (positively charged) regions are shown in red.

Bond Polarity

The polarity of a bond—the extent to which it is polar—is determined largely by the relative electronegativities of the bonded atoms. Electronegativity (χ) was defined as the ability of an atom in a molecule or an ion to attract electrons to itself. Thus there is a direct correlation between electronegativity and bond polarity. A bond is *nonpolar* if the bonded atoms have equal electronegativities. If the electronegativities of the bonded atoms are not equal, however, the bond is *polarized* toward the more electronegative atom. A bond in which the electronegativity of B (χ_B) is greater than the electronegativity of A (χ_A), for example, is indicated with the partial negative charge on the more electronegative atom:

$$\underset{\delta^+}{A} - \underset{\delta^-}{B} \qquad \begin{matrix} less\ electronegative \\ \\ more\ electronegative \end{matrix}$$

One way of estimating the ionic character of a bond—that is, the magnitude of the charge separation in a polar covalent bond—is to calculate the difference in electronegativity between the two atoms: $\Delta\chi = \chi_B - \chi_A$.

To predict the polarity of the bonds in Cl_2, HCl, and NaCl, for example, we look at the electronegativities of the relevant atoms: $\chi_{Cl} = 3.16$, $\chi_H = 2.20$, and $\chi_{Na} = 0.93$ (see Figure 3.2.2). Cl_2 must be nonpolar because the electronegativity difference ($\Delta\chi$) is zero; hence the two chlorine atoms share the bonding electrons equally. In NaCl, $\Delta\chi$ is 2.23. This high value is typical of an ionic compound ($\Delta\chi \geq \approx 1.5$) and means that the valence electron of sodium has been completely transferred to chlorine to form Na^+ and Cl^- ions. In HCl, however, $\Delta\chi$ is only 0.96. The bonding electrons are more strongly attracted to the more electronegative chlorine atom, and so the charge distribution is

$$\overset{\delta^+}{H} - \overset{\delta^-}{Cl}$$

Remember that electronegativities are difficult to measure precisely and different definitions produce slightly different numbers. In practice, the polarity of a bond is usually estimated rather than calculated.

Note

Bond polarity and ionic character increase with an increasing difference in electronegativity.

As with bond energies, the electronegativity of an atom depends to some extent on its chemical environment. It is therefore unlikely that the reported electronegativities of a chlorine atom in NaCl, Cl_2, ClF_5, and $HClO_4$ would be exactly the same.

Dipole Moments as a Measure of Bond Polarity

The asymmetrical charge distribution in a polar substance such as HCl produces a **dipole moment** where Qr in meters (m). is abbreviated by the Greek letter mu (μ). The dipole moment is defined as the product of the partial charge Q on the bonded atoms and the distance *r* between the partial charges:

$$\mu = Qr \tag{3.2.1}$$

where Q is measured in coulombs (C) and *r* in meters. The unit for dipole moments is the debye (D):

$$1\ D = 3.3356 \times 10^{-30}\ C \cdot \cdot m \tag{3.2.2}$$

When a molecule with a dipole moment is placed in an electric field, it tends to orient itself with the electric field because of its asymmetrical charge distribution (Figure 3.2.2).

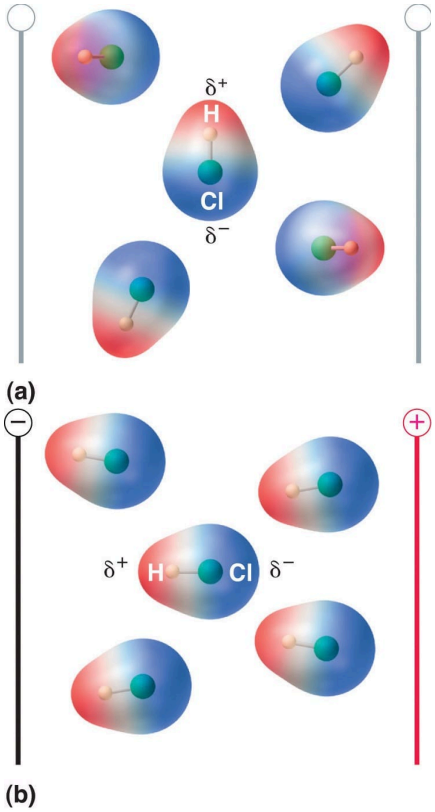


Figure 3.2.5: Molecules That Possess a Dipole Moment Partially Align Themselves with an Applied Electric Field In the absence of a field (a), the HCl molecules are randomly oriented. When an electric field is applied (b), the molecules tend to align themselves with the field, such that the positive end of the molecular dipole points toward the negative terminal and vice versa.

We can measure the partial charges on the atoms in a molecule such as HCl using Equation 10.3.2 If the bonding in HCl were purely ionic, an electron would be transferred from H to Cl, so there would be a full +1 charge on the H atom and a full –1 charge on the Cl atom. The dipole moment of HCl is 1.109 D, as determined by measuring the extent of its alignment in an electric field, and the reported gas-phase H–Cl distance is 127.5 pm. Hence the charge on each atom is

$$Q = \frac{\mu}{r} = 1.109 \cancel{D} \left(\frac{3.3356 \times 10^{-30}\ C \cdot \cancel{m}}{1\ \cancel{D}} \right) \left(\frac{1}{127.8\ \cancel{pm}} \right) \left(\frac{1\ \cancel{pm}}{10^{-12}\ \cancel{m}} \right) = 2.901 \times 10^{-20}\ C \tag{3.2.3}$$

By dividing this calculated value by the charge on a single electron (1.6022 × 10^{-19} C), we find that the electron distribution in HCl is asymmetric and that effectively it appears that there is a net negative charge on the Cl of about –0.18, effectively corresponding to about 0.18 e^-. This certainly does not mean that there is a fraction of an electron on the Cl atom, but that the distribution of electron probability favors the Cl atom side of the molecule by about this amount.

$$\frac{2.901 \times 10^{-20}\ \cancel{C}}{1.6022 \times 10^{-19}\ \cancel{C}} = 0.1811\ e^- \tag{3.2.4}$$

To form a neutral compound, the charge on the H atom must be equal but opposite. Thus the measured dipole moment of HCl indicates that the H–Cl bond has approximately 18% ionic character (0.1811 × 100), or 82% covalent character. Instead of writing HCl as

$$\overset{\delta^+}{H} \quad - \quad \overset{\delta^-}{Cl}$$

we can therefore indicate the charge separation quantitatively as

$$\overset{0.18\delta^+}{H} \quad - \quad \overset{0.18\delta^-}{Cl}$$

Our calculated results are in agreement with the electronegativity difference between hydrogen and chlorine (χ_H = 2.20; χ_{Cl} = 3.16, $\chi_{Cl} - \chi_H$ = 0.96), a value well within the range for polar covalent bonds. We indicate the dipole moment by writing an arrow above the molecule.Mathematically, dipole moments are vectors, and they possess both a magnitude and a direction. The dipole moment of a molecule is the vector sum of the dipoles of the individual bonds. In HCl, for example, the dipole moment is indicated as follows:



The arrow shows the direction of electron flow by pointing toward the more electronegative atom.

The charge on the atoms of many substances in the gas phase can be calculated using measured dipole moments and bond distances. Figure 3.2.6 shows a plot of the percent ionic character versus the difference in electronegativity of the bonded atoms for several substances. According to the graph, the bonding in species such as NaCl(g) and CsF(g) is substantially less than 100% ionic in character. As the gas condenses into a solid, however, dipole–dipole interactions between polarized species increase the charge separations. In the crystal, therefore, an electron is transferred from the metal to the nonmetal, and these substances behave like classic ionic compounds. The data in Figure 3.2.6 show that diatomic species with an electronegativity difference of less than 1.5 are less than 50% ionic in character, which is consistent with our earlier description of these species as containing polar covalent bonds. The use of dipole moments to determine the ionic character of a polar bond is illustrated in Example 11.

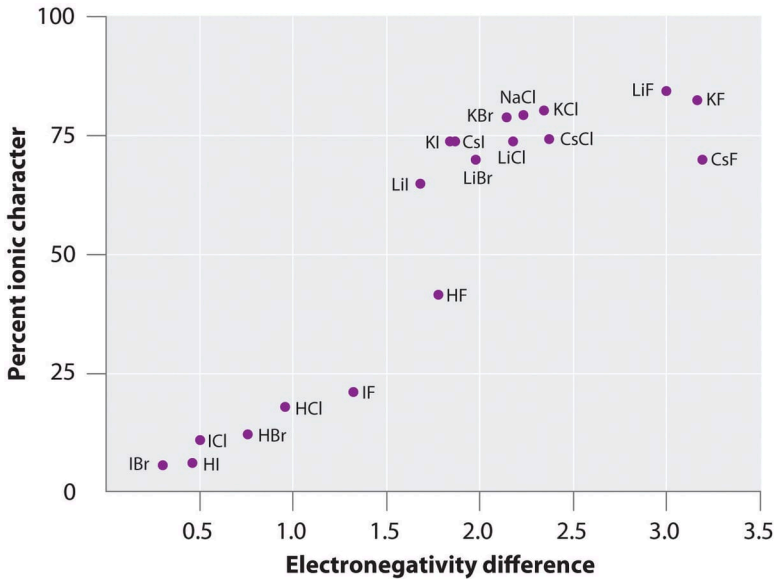


Figure 3.2.6: A Plot of the Percent Ionic Character of a Bond as Determined from Measured Dipole Moments versus the Difference in Electronegativity of the Bonded Atoms.In the gas phase, even CsF, which has the largest possible difference in electronegativity between atoms, is not 100% ionic. Solid CsF, however, is best viewed as 100% ionic because of the additional electrostatic interactions in the lattice.

Example 3.2.2

In the gas phase, NaCl has a dipole moment of 9.001 D and an Na–Cl distance of 236.1 pm. Calculate the percent ionic character in NaCl.

Given: chemical species, dipole moment, and internuclear distance

Asked for: percent ionic character

Strategy:

A Compute the charge on each atom using the information given and Equation 10.3.2.

B Find the percent ionic character from the ratio of the actual charge to the charge of a single electron.

Solution:

A The charge on each atom is given by

$$Q = \frac{\mu}{r} = 9.001 \cancel{D} \left(\frac{3.3356 \times 10^{-30}\ C \cdot \cancel{m}}{1\ \cancel{D}} \right) \left(\frac{1}{236.1\ \cancel{pm}} \right) \left(\frac{1\ \cancel{pm}}{10^{-12}\ \cancel{m}} \right) = 1.272 \times 10^{-19}\ C \tag{3.2.5}$$

Thus NaCl behaves as if it had charges of 1.272×10^{-19} C on each atom separated by 236.1 pm.

B The percent ionic character is given by the ratio of the actual charge to the charge of a single electron (the charge expected for the complete transfer of one electron):

$$\%\ ionic\ character = \left(\frac{1.272 \times 10^{-19}\ \cancel{C}}{1.6022 \times 10^{-19}\ \cancel{C}} \right) (100) = 79.39\% \simeq 79\% \tag{3.2.6}$$

Exercise 3.2.2

In the gas phase, silver chloride (AgCl) has a dipole moment of 6.08 D and an Ag–Cl distance of 228.1 pm. What is the percent ionic character in silver chloride?

Answer: 55.5%

YouTube Video

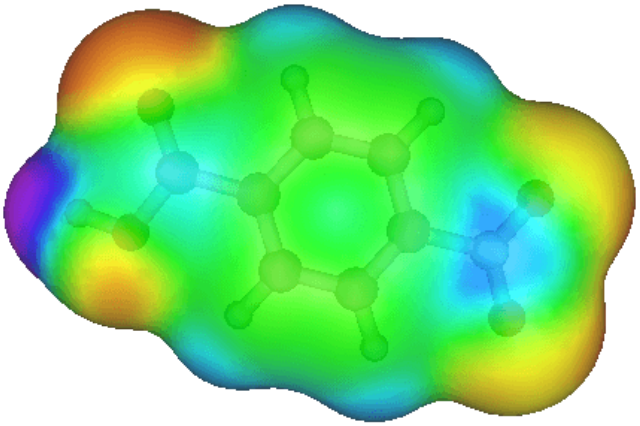
This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Dipole Intermolecular Force: https://youtu.be/ACq_95SIBck

Electrostatic Potential Maps

Electrostatic potential maps convey information about the charge distribution of a molecule because of the properties of the nucleus and nature of electrostatic potential energy. A region of higher than average electrostatic potential energy indicates the presence of a stronger positive charge or a weaker negative charger. Given the positive charge of the nuclei, the higher potential energy value indicates the absence of negative charges (less screening of the nuclei), which would mean that there are fewer electrons in this region. The converse is also true with a low electrostatic potential indicateing an abundance of electrons. This property of electrostatic potentials can be extrapolated to molecules as well.



Note: Constructing a Electrostatic Potential Map

The first step involved in creating an electrostatic potential map is collecting a very specific type of data: electrostatic potential energy. An advanced computer program calculates the electrostatic potential energy at a set distance from the nuclei of the molecule. Electrostatic potential energy is fundamentally a measure of the strength of the nearby charges, nuclei and electrons, at a particular position. To accurately analyze the charge distribution of a molecule, a very large quantity of electrostatic potential energy values must be calculated. The best way to convey this data is to visually represent it, as in an electrostatic potential map. A computer program then imposes the calculated data onto an electron density model of

the molecule. To make the electrostatic potential energy data easy to interpret, a color spectrum, with red as the lowest electrostatic potential energy value and blue as the highest, is employed to convey the varying intensities of the electrostatic potential energy values.

The most important thing to consider when analyzing an electrostatic potential map is the charge distribution. The relative distributions of electrons will allow you to deduce everything you need to know from these maps. Recall the relationship between electrostatic potential and charge distribution. Areas of low potential, red, are characterized by an abundance of electrons. Areas of high potential, blue, are characterized by a relative absence of electrons. Oxygen has a higher electronegativity value than sulfur (Table A2), hence. oxygen atoms would have a higher electron density around them than sulfur atoms. Thus the spherical region that corresponds to an oxygen atom would have a red portion on it. Now note that there are two oxygen atoms in sulfur dioxide (Figure 3.2.7). There are two sphere shaped objects that have red regions. These areas correspond to the location of the oxygen atoms. The blue tainted sphere at the top corresponds to the location of the sulfur atom.

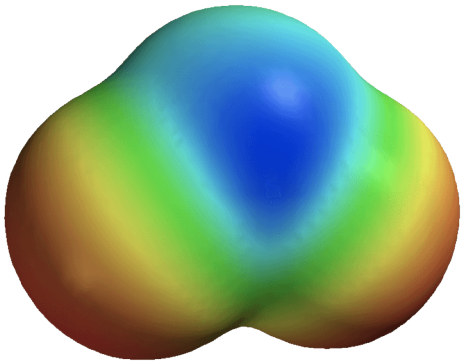


Figure 3.2.7. The electrostatic diagram of Sulfur Dioxide (SO_2). Which parts of this diagram correlate to the respective atomic components? Red indicates the lowest electrostatic potential energy, and blue indicates the highest electrostatic potential energy. Intermediary colors represent intermediary electrostatic potentials.

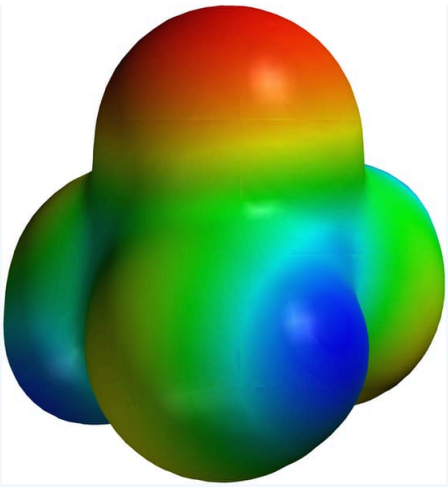
Note

A high electrostatic potential indicates the relative **absence** of electrons and a low electrostatic potential indicates an **abundance** of electrons

Electrostatic potential maps can also be used to determine the nature of the molecules chemical bond. Consider SO_2 in Figure 3.2.7, there is a great deal of intermediary potential energy, the non red or blue regions, in this diagram. This indicates that the electronegativity difference is not very great. In a molecule with a great electronegativity difference, charge is very polarized, and there are significant differences in electron density in different regions of the molecule. This great electronegativity difference leads to regions that are almost entirely red and almost entirely blue. Greater regions of intermediary potential, yellow and green, and smaller or no regions of extreme potential, red and blue, are key indicators of a smaller electronegativity difference. Note that the electronegativity difference is a key determinant in the nature of a chemical bond.

Example 3.2.3

The following electrostatic potential map of phosphoric acid $\backslash \mathrm{H}_3PO_4$. What regions correspond to atoms of oxygen, hydrogen, and phosphorous respectively?



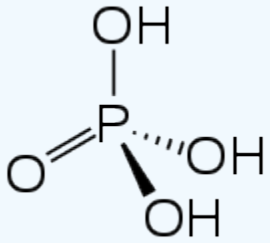
Solution

You do not need to know the molecular structure to answer this question. You do need to know the relative electronegative values of these atoms (Table A4).

- Oxygen has the greatest electronegative value,
- Phosphorous the second most, and
- Hydrogen has the smallest electronegative value.

Simply by knowing this, you can deduce that oxygen would be affiliated with the red region or redish regions of the diagram, and hydrogen would be affiliated with the blue region. Phosphorous would fall in between these two extremes, in the green region.

Here is the molecular diagram of phosphoric acid:



Summary

- Bond polarity and ionic character increase with an increasing difference in electronegativity.

Dipole moment

Label '10.3.2' multiply defined

The **electronegativity (χ)** of an element is the relative ability of an atom to attract electrons to itself in a chemical compound and increases diagonally from the lower left of the periodic table to the upper right. The Pauling electronegativity scale is based on measurements of the strengths of covalent bonds between different atoms, whereas the Mulliken electronegativity of an element is the average of its first ionization energy and the absolute value of its electron affinity. Elements with a high electronegativity are generally nonmetals and electrical insulators and tend to behave as oxidants in chemical reactions. Conversely, elements with a low electronegativity are generally metals and good electrical conductors and tend to behave as reductants in chemical reactions.

Compounds with **polar covalent bonds** have electrons that are shared unequally between the bonded atoms. The polarity of such a bond is determined largely by the relative electronegativites of the bonded atoms. The asymmetrical charge distribution in a polar substance produces a **dipole moment**, which is the product of the partial charges on the bonded atoms and the distance between them.

This page titled 3.2: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electrostatic Potential Maps is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 10.3: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electrostatic Potential Maps is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

3.3: Bond Energies

Learning Objectives

- The define Bond-dissociation energy (bond energy)
- To correlate bond strength with bond length
- To define and used *average bond energies*

In proposing his theory that octets can be completed by two atoms sharing electron pairs, Lewis provided scientists with the first description of covalent bonding. In this section, we expand on this and describe some of the properties of covalent bonds. The stability of a molecule is a function of the strength of the covalent bonds holding the atoms together.

The Relationship between Bond Order and Bond Energy

Triple bonds between like atoms are shorter than double bonds, and because more energy is required to completely break all three bonds than to completely break two, a triple bond is also stronger than a double bond. Similarly, double bonds between like atoms are stronger and shorter than single bonds. Bonds of the same order between *different* atoms show a wide range of bond energies, however. Table 3.3.1 lists the average values for some commonly encountered bonds. Although the values shown vary widely, we can observe four trends:

Table 3.3.1: Average Bond Energies (kJ/mol) for Commonly Encountered Bonds at 273 K

Single Bonds										Multiple Bonds	
H–H	432	C–C	346	N–N	≈167	O–O	≈142	F–F	155	C=C	602
H–C	411	C–Si	318	N–O	201	O–F	190	F–Cl	249	C≡C	835
H–Si	318	C–N	305	N–F	283	O–Cl	218	F–Br	249	C=N	615
H–N	386	C–O	358	N–Cl	313	O–Br	201	F–I	278	C≡N	887
H–P	≈322	C–S	272	N–Br	243	O–I	201	Cl–Cl	240	C=O	749
H–O	459	C–F	485	P–P	201	S–S	226	Cl–Br	216	C≡O	1072
H–S	363	C–Cl	327			S–F	284	Cl–I	208	N=N	418
H–F	565	C–Br	285			S–Cl	255	Br–Br	190	N≡N	942
H–Cl	428	C–I	213			S–Br	218	Br–I	175	N=O	607
H–Br	362	Si–Si	222					I–I	149	O=O	494
H–I	295	Si–O	452							S=O	532

Source: Data from J. E. Huheey, E. A. Keiter, and R. L. Keiter, Inorganic Chemistry, 4th ed. (1993).

1. Bonds between hydrogen and atoms in the same column of the periodic table decrease in strength as we go down the column. Thus an H–F bond is stronger than an H–I bond, H–C is stronger than H–Si, H–N is stronger than H–P, H–O is stronger than H–S, and so forth. The reason for this is that the region of space in which electrons are shared between two atoms becomes proportionally smaller as one of the atoms becomes larger (part (a) in Figure 8.11).
2. Bonds between like atoms usually become *weaker* as we go down a column (important exceptions are noted later). For example, the C–C single bond is stronger than the Si–Si single bond, which is stronger than the Ge–Ge bond, and so forth. As two bonded atoms become larger, the region between them occupied by bonding electrons becomes *proportionally* smaller, as illustrated in part (b) in Figure 8.11. Noteworthy exceptions are single bonds between the period 2 atoms of groups 15, 16, and 17 (i.e., N, O, F), which are unusually weak compared with single bonds between their larger congeners. It is likely that the N–N, O–O, and F–F single bonds are weaker than might be expected due to strong repulsive interactions between lone pairs of electrons on *adjacent* atoms. The trend in bond energies for the halogens is therefore

$$\mathrm{Cl{-}Cl > Br{-}Br > F{-}F > I{-}I}$$

Similar effects are also seen for the O–O versus S–S and for N–N versus P–P single bonds.

> Bonds between hydrogen and atoms in a given column in the periodic table are weaker down the column; bonds between like atoms usually become weaker down a column.

3. Because elements in periods 3 and 4 rarely form multiple bonds with themselves, their multiple bond energies are not accurately known. Nonetheless, they are presumed to be significantly weaker than multiple bonds between lighter atoms of the same families. Compounds containing an Si=Si double bond, for example, have only recently been prepared, whereas compounds containing C=C double bonds are one of the best-studied and most important classes of organic compounds.

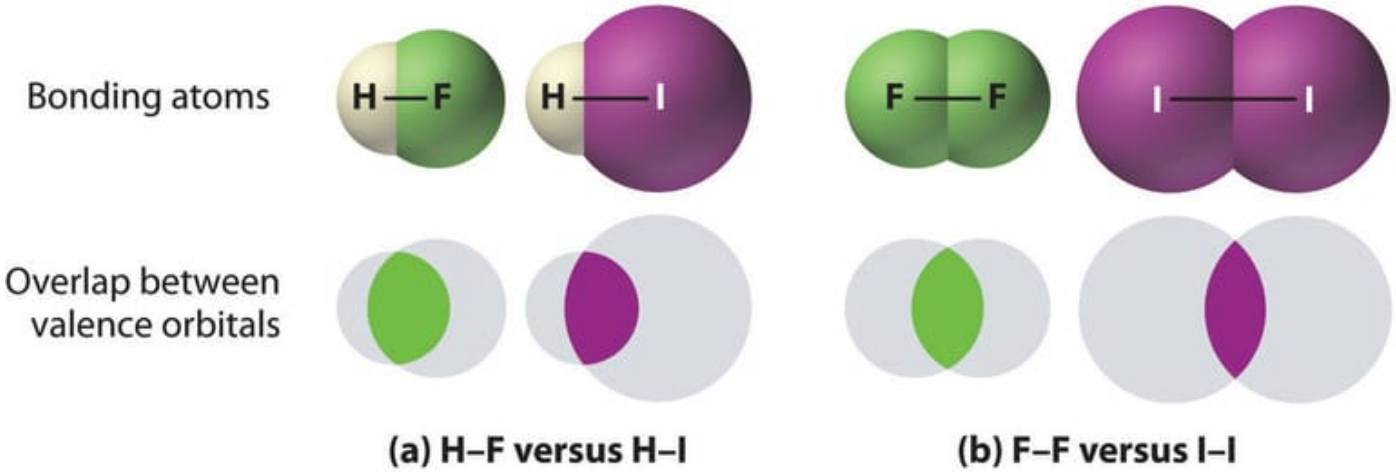


Figure 3.3.1: The Strength of Covalent Bonds Depends on the Overlap between the Valence Orbitals of the Bonded Atoms. The relative sizes of the region of space in which electrons are shared between (a) a hydrogen atom and lighter (smaller) vs. heavier (larger) atoms in the same periodic group; and (b) two lighter versus two heavier atoms in the same group. Although the absolute amount of shared space increases in both cases on going from a light to a heavy atom, the amount of space *relative to the size of the bonded atom* decreases; that is, the *percentage* of total orbital volume decreases with increasing size. Hence the strength of the bond decreases.

4. Multiple bonds between carbon, oxygen, or nitrogen and a period 3 element such as phosphorus or sulfur tend to be unusually strong. In fact, multiple bonds of this type dominate the chemistry of the period 3 elements of groups 15 and 16. Multiple bonds to phosphorus or sulfur occur as a result of *d*-orbital interactions, as we discussed for the SO_4^{2-} ion in Section 8.6. In contrast, silicon in group 14 has little tendency to form discrete silicon–oxygen double bonds. Consequently, SiO_2 has a three-dimensional network structure in which each silicon atom forms four Si–O single bonds, which makes the physical and chemical properties of SiO_2 very different from those of CO_2.

Bond strengths increase as bond order **increases**, while bond distances **decrease**.

The Relationship between Molecular Structure and Bond Energy

Bond energy is defined as the energy required to break a particular bond in a molecule in the gas phase. Its value depends on not only the identity of the bonded atoms but also their environment. Thus the bond energy of a C–H single bond is *not* the same in all organic compounds. For example, the energy required to break a C–H bond in methane varies by as much as 25% depending on how many other bonds in the molecule have already been broken (Table 3.3.2); that is, the C–H bond energy depends on its molecular environment. Except for diatomic molecules, the bond energies listed in Table 3.3.1 are *average* values for all bonds of a given type in a range of molecules. Even so, they are not likely to differ from the actual value of a given bond by more than about 10%.

Table 3.3.2: Energies for the Dissociation of Successive C–H Bonds in Methane. Source: Data from CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics (2004).

Reaction	D (kJ/mol)
$CH_4(g) \rightarrow CH_3(g) + H(g)$	439

Reaction	D (kJ/mol)
$CH_3(g) \rightarrow CH_2(g) + H(g)$	462
$CH_2(g) \rightarrow CH(g) + H(g)$	424
$CH(g) \rightarrow C(g) + H(g)$	338

We can estimate the enthalpy change for a chemical reaction by adding together the average energies of the bonds broken in the reactants and the average energies of the bonds formed in the products and then calculating the difference between the two. If the bonds formed in the products are stronger than those broken in the reactants, then energy will be released in the reaction ($\Delta H_{rxn} < 0$):

$$\Delta H_{rxn} \approx \sum (\text{bond energies of bonds broken}) - \sum (\text{bond energies of bonds formed}) \tag{3.3.1}$$

The ≈ sign is used because we are adding together *average* bond energies; hence this approach does not give exact values for ΔH_{rxn}.

Let's consider the reaction of 1 mol of *n*-heptane (C_7H_{16}) with oxygen gas to give carbon dioxide and water. This is one reaction that occurs during the combustion of gasoline:

$$\mathrm{CH_3(CH_2)_5CH_3\,(l) + 11\,O_2\,(g)\ \rightarrow 7\,CO_2\,(g) + 8\,H_2O\,(g)} \tag{3.3.2}$$

In this reaction, 6 C–C bonds, 16 C–H bonds, and 11 O=O bonds are broken per mole of *n*-heptane, while 14 C=O bonds (two for each CO_2) and 16 O–H bonds (two for each H_2O) are formed. The energy changes can be tabulated as follows:

Binds Broken (kJ/mol) and Bonds Formed (kJ/mol)

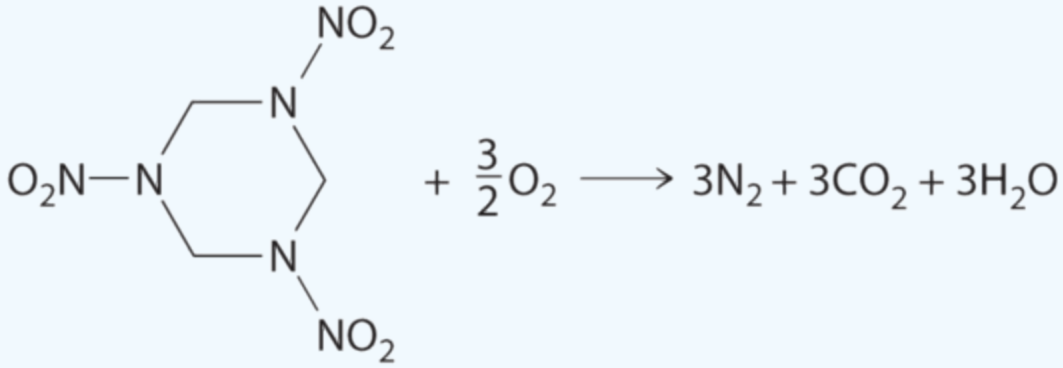
Bonds Broken (kJ/mol)		Bonds Formed (kJ/mol)	
6 C–C	346 × 6 = 2076	14 C=O	799 × 14 = 11,186
16 C–H	411 × 16 = 6576	16 O–H	459 × 16 = 7344
11 O=O	494 × 11 = 5434		**Total** = 18,530
	Total = 14,086		

The bonds in the products are stronger than the bonds in the reactants by about 4444 kJ/mol. This means that ΔH_{rxn} is approximately –4444 kJ/mol, and the reaction is highly exothermic (which is not too surprising for a combustion reaction).

If we compare this approximation with the value obtained from measured ΔH_f^o values ($\Delta H_{rxn} = -4817\ kJ/mol$), we find a discrepancy of only about 8%, less than the 10% typically encountered. Chemists find this method useful for calculating approximate enthalpies of reaction for molecules whose actual ΔH_f^o values are unknown. These approximations can be important for predicting whether a reaction is **exothermic** or **endothermic**—and to what degree.

Example 3.3.1: Explosives

The compound RDX (Research Development Explosive) is a more powerful explosive than dynamite and is used by the military. When detonated, it produces gaseous products and heat according to the following reaction. Use the approximate bond energies in Table 3.3.1 to estimate the ΔH_{rxn} per mole of RDX.



RDX

Given: chemical reaction, structure of reactant, and Table 3.3.1.

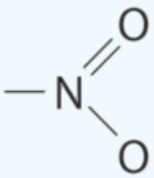
Asked for: ΔH_{rxn} per mole

Strategy:

A. List the types of bonds broken in RDX, along with the bond energy required to break each type. Multiply the number of each type by the energy required to break one bond of that type and then add together the energies. Repeat this procedure for the bonds formed in the reaction.
B. Use Equation 3.3.1 to calculate the amount of energy consumed or released in the reaction (ΔH_{rxn}).

Solution:

We must add together the energies of the bonds in the reactants and compare that quantity with the sum of the energies of the bonds in the products. A nitro group (–NO_2) can be viewed as having one N–O single bond and one N=O double bond, as follows:



In fact, however, both N–O distances are usually the same because of the presence of two equivalent resonance structures.

A We can organize our data by constructing a table:

Bonds Broken (kJ/mol)

Bonds Broken (kJ/mol)		Bonds Broken (kJ/mol)	
6 C–H	411 × 6 = 2466	6 C=O	799 × 6 = 4794
3 N–N	167 × 3 = 501	6 O–H	459 × 6 = 2754
3 N–O	201 × 3 = 603		**Total** = 10,374
3 N=O	607 × 3 = 1821		
1.5 O=O	494 × 1.5 = 741		
	Total = 7962		

B From Equation 3.3.1, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H_{rxn} &\approx \sum(\text{bond energies of bonds broken}) - \sum(\text{bond energies of bonds formed}) \\ &= 7962\ kJ/mol - 10,374\ kJ/mol \\ &= -2412\ kJ/mol\end{aligned}$$

Thus this reaction is also highly exothermic

Exercise 3.3.1: Freon

The molecule HCFC-142b is a hydrochlorofluorocarbon that is used in place of chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) such as the Freons and can be prepared by adding HCl to 1,1-difluoroethylene:

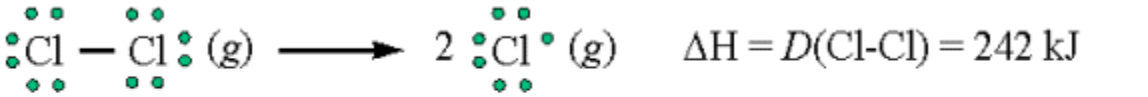
1,1-difluoroethylene reacts with <span class=HCL to produce CH3Cf2Cl and HCFC142b." data-cke-saved-src="/@api/deki/files/129585/imageedit_31_2777381278.png" src="/@api/deki/files/129585/imageedit_31_2777381278.png" data-quail-id="371">

Use tabulated bond energies to calculate ΔH_{rxn}.

Answer available at the end of this section.

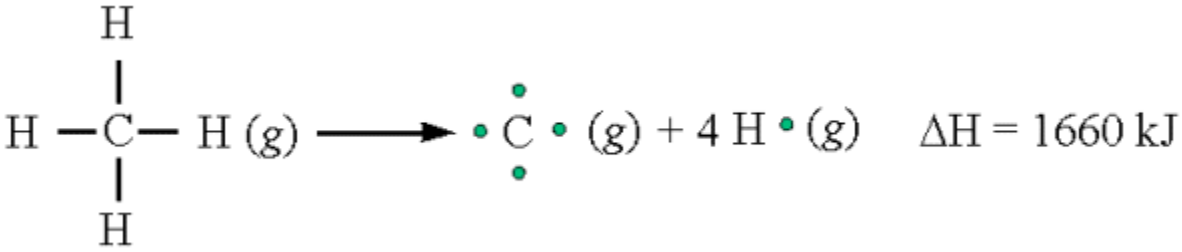
Bond Dissociation Energy

Bond Dissociation Energy (also referred to as Bond energy) is the enthalpy change (ΔH, heat input) required to break a bond (in 1 mole of a gaseous substance)



where "D(Cl-Cl)" represents the bond dissociation energy for the Cl-Cl bond

What about when we have a compound which is not a diatomic molecule? Consider the dissociation of ***methane***:



There are four equivalent C-H bonds, thus we can that the dissociation energy for a single C-H bond would be:

$$\begin{aligned}D(C-H) &= (1660/4)\ kJ/mol \\ &= 415\ kJ/mol\end{aligned}$$

The bond energy for a given bond is influenced by the rest of the molecule. However, this is a relatively small effect (suggesting that bonding electrons are localized between the bonding atoms). Thus, the bond energy for most bonds varies little from the average bonding energy for that type of bond

Bond energy is always a *positive* value - it takes energy to break a covalent bond (conversely energy is released during bond formation)

Table 3.3.4: Average bond energies:

Bond	(kJ/mol)
C-F	485
C-Cl	328
C-Br	276
C-I	240
C-C	348
C-N	293
C-O	358
C-F	485
C-C	348
C=C	614
C≡C	839

The more stable a molecule (i.e. the stronger the bonds) the less likely the molecule is to undergo a chemical reaction.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

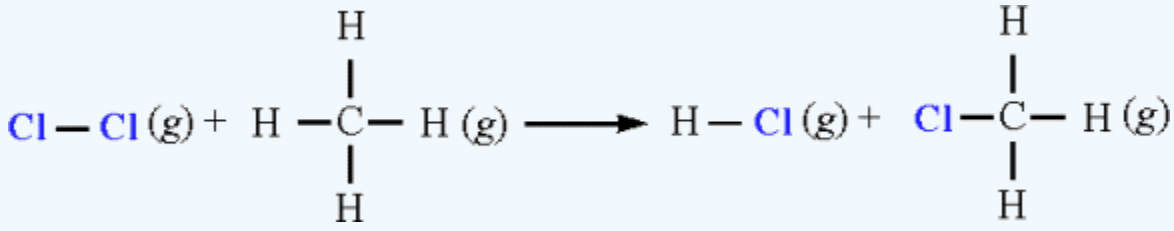
Bond Energies and the Enthalpy of Reactions

If we know which bonds are broken and which bonds are made during a chemical reaction, we can estimate the enthalpy change of the reaction (ΔH_{rxn}) even if we do not know the enthalpies of formation ((ΔH_f^o)for the reactants and products:

$$\Delta H = \sum \text{bond energies of broken bonds} - \sum \text{bond energies of formed bonds} \tag{3.3.3}$$

Example 3.3.2: Chlorination of Methane

What is the enthalpy of reaction between 1 mol of chlorine and 1 mol methane?



Solution

We use Equation 3.3.3, which requires tabulating bonds broken and formed.

- **Bonds broken**: 1 mol of Cl-Cl bonds, 1 mol of C-H bonds
- **Bonds formed**: 1 mol of H-Cl bonds, 1 mol of C-Cl bonds

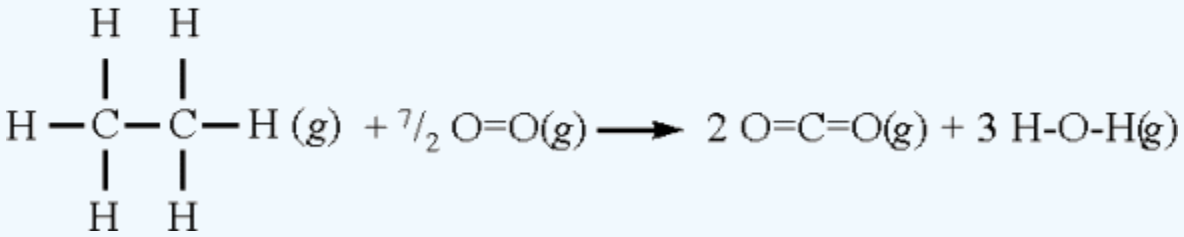
$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H &= [D(Cl-Cl)+D(C-H)]-[D(H-Cl)+D(C-Cl)]\\ &= [242kJ+413kJ]-[431kJ+328kJ]\\ &= -104\,kJ\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the reaction is **exothermic** (because the bonds in the products are stronger than the bonds in the reactants)

Example 3.3.3: Combustion of Ethane

What is the enthalpy of reaction for the combustion of 1 mol of ethane?

$$C_2H_6(g) + {}^7/_2O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2CO_2(g) + 3H_2O(g)$$



Solution

We use Equation 3.3.3, which requires tabulating bonds broken and formed.

- **bonds broken**: 6 moles C-H bonds, 1 mol C-C bonds, $^7/_2$ moles of O=O bonds
- **bonds formed**: 4 moles C=O bonds, 6 moles O-H bonds

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H &= [(6\times 413)+(348)+(\frac{7}{2}\times 495)]-[(4\times 799)+(6\times 463)]\\ &= 4558-5974\\ &= -1416\,kJ\end{aligned}$$

Therefor the reaction is exothermic.

Table 3.3.5: Bond strength and bond length

Bond	Bond Energy (kJ/mol)	Bond Length (Å)
C-C	348	1.54
C=C	614	1.34
C≡C	839	1.

As the number of bonds between two atoms increases, the bond grows shorter and stronger

SummaryEdit section

Bond order is the number of electron pairs that hold two atoms together. Single bonds have a bond order of one, and multiple bonds with bond orders of two (a double bond) and three (a triple bond) are quite common. In closely related compounds

with bonds between the same kinds of atoms, the bond with the highest bond order is both the shortest and the strongest. In bonds with the same bond order between different atoms, trends are observed that, with few exceptions, result in the strongest single bonds being formed between the smallest atoms. Tabulated values of average bond energies can be used to calculate the enthalpy change of many chemical reactions. If the bonds in the products are stronger than those in the reactants, the reaction is exothermic and vice versa.

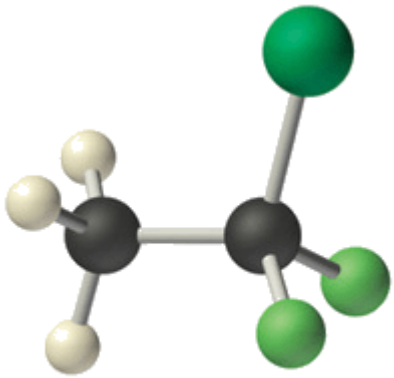
The breakage and formation of bonds is similar to a relationship: you can either get married or divorced and it is more favorable to be married.

- Energy is always **released** to make bonds, which is why the enthalpy change for breaking bonds is always **positive**.
- Energy is always **required** to break bonds. Atoms are much happier when they are "married" and release energy because it is easier and more stable to be in a relationship (e.g., to generate *octet electronic configurations*). The enthalpy change is always **negative** because the system is releasing energy when forming bond.

Answers

Exercise 3.3.1**: Freon**

–54 kJ/mol



HCFC-142b

This page titled 3.3: Bond Energies is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 8.8: Strength of Covalent Bonds is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

3.4: Bond Order and Bond Lengths

Bond order is the number of chemical bonds between a pair of atoms and indicates the stability of a bond. For example, in diatomic nitrogen, N≡N, the bond order is 3; in acetylene, H–C≡C–H, the carbon-carbon bond order is also 3, and the C–H bond order is 1. Bond order and bond length indicate the type and strength of covalent bonds between atoms. Bond order and length are inversely proportional to each other: when bond order is increased, bond length is decreased.

Introduction

Chemistry deals with the way in which subatomic particles bond together to form atoms. Chemistry also focuses on the way in which atoms bond together to form molecules. In the atomic structure, electrons surround the atomic nucleus in regions called orbitals. Each orbital shell can hold a certain number of electrons. When the nearest orbital shell is full, new electrons start to gather in the next orbital shell out from the nucleus, and continue until that shell is also full. The collection of electrons continues in ever widening orbital shells as larger atoms have more electrons than smaller atoms. When two atoms bond to form a molecule, their electrons bond them together by mixing into openings in each others' orbital shells. As with the collection of electrons by the atom, the formation of bonds by the molecule starts at the nearest available orbital shell opening and expand outward.

Bond Order

Bond order is the number of bonding pairs of electrons between two atoms. In a covalent bond between two atoms, a single bond has a bond order of one, a double bond has a bond order of two, a triple bond has a bond order of three, and so on. To determine the bond order between two covalently bonded atoms, follow these steps:

1. Draw the Lewis structure.
2. Determine the type of bonds between the two atoms.
    - 0: No bond
    - 1: Single bond
    - 2: double bond
    - 3: triple bond

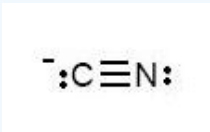
If the bond order is zero, the molecule cannot form. The higher bond orders indicate greater stability for the new molecule. In molecules that have resonance bonding, the bond order does not need to be an integer.

Example 3.4.1: CN^-

Determine the bond order for cyanide, CN^-.

Solution

1) Draw the Lewis structure.



2) Determine the type of bond between the two atoms.

Because there are 3 dashes, the bond is a triple bond. A triple bond corresponds to a bond order of 3.

Example 3.4.2: H_2

Determine the bond order for hydrogen gas, H_2.

Solution

1) Draw the Lewis structure.

H:H

2) Determine the type of bond between the two atoms.

There is only one pair of shared electrons (or dash), indicating is a single bond, with a bond order of 1.

Polyatomic molecules

If there are more than two atoms in the molecule, follow these steps to determine the bond order:

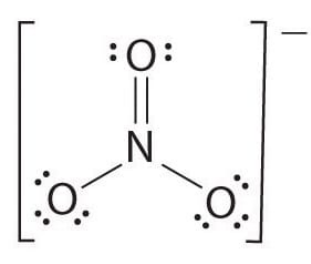
1. Draw the Lewis structure.
2. Count the total number of bonds.
3. Count the number of bond groups between individual atoms.
4. Divide the number of bonds between atoms by the total number of bond groups in the molecule.

Example 3.4.3: NO_3^-

Determine the bond order for nitrate, NO_3^-.

Solution

1) Draw the Lewis structure.



2) Count the total number of bonds.

4

The total number of bonds is 4.

3) Count the number of bond groups between individual atoms.

3

The number of bond groups between individual atoms is 3.

4) Divide the number of bonds between individual atoms by the total number of bonds.

$$\frac{4}{3} = 1.33 \tag{3.4.1}$$

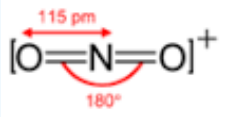
The bond order is 1.33

Example 3.4.4: NO_2^+

Determine the bond order for nitronium ion: NO_2^+.

Solution

1) Draw the Lewis Structure.



2) Count the total number of bonds.

4

The total number of bonds is 4.

3) Count the number of bond groups between individual atoms.

2

The number of bond groups between atoms is 2.

4) Divide the bond groups between individual atoms by the total number of bonds.

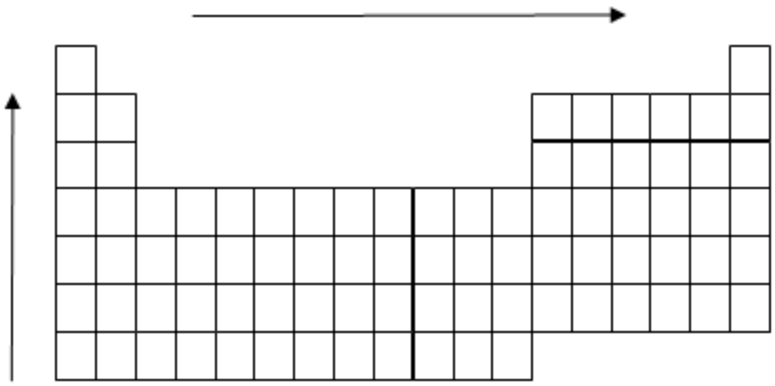
$$\frac{4}{2} = 2 \tag{3.4.2}$$

The bond order is 2.

A high bond order indicates more attraction between electrons. A higher bond order also means that the atoms are held together more tightly. With a lower bond order, there is less attraction between electrons and this causes the atoms to be held together more loosely. Bond order also indicates the stability of the bond. The higher the bond order, the more electrons holding the atoms together, and therefore the greater the stability.

Trends in the Periodic Table

Bond order increases across a period and decreases down a group.



Bond Length

Bond length is defined as the distance between the centers of two covalently bonded atoms. The length of the bond is determined by the number of bonded electrons (the bond order). The higher the bond order, the stronger the pull between the two atoms and the shorter the bond length. Generally, the length of the bond between two atoms is approximately the sum of the covalent radii of the two atoms. Bond length is reported in picometers. Therefore, bond length increases in the following order: triple bond < double bond < single bond.

To find the bond length, follow these steps:

1. Draw the Lewis structure.
2. Look up the chart below for the radii for the corresponding bond.
3. Find the sum of the two radii.

4

Determine the carbon-to-chlorine bond length in CCl_4.

Solution

Using Table A3, a C single bond has a length of 75 picometers and that a Cl single bond has a length of 99 picometers. When added together, the bond length of a C-Cl bond is approximately 174 picometers.

2

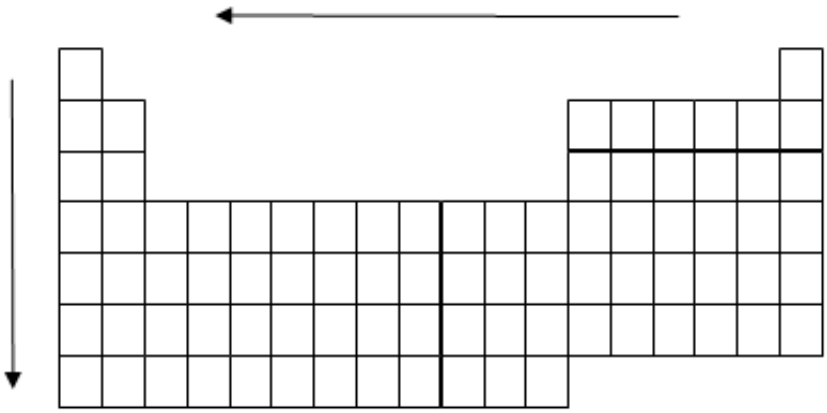
Determine the carbon-oxygen bond length in CO_2.

Solution

Using Table A3, we see that a C double bond has a length of 67 picometers and that an O double bond has a length of 57 picometers. When added together, the bond length of a C=O bond is approximately 124 picometers.

Trends in the Periodic Table

Because the bond length is proportional to the atomic radius, the bond length trends in the periodic table follow the same trends as atomic radii: bond length decreases across a period and increases down a group.

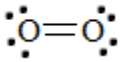


Problems

1. What is the bond order of O_2?
2. What is the bond order of NO_3^-?
3. What is the carbon-nitrogen bond length in HCN?
4. Is the carbon-to-oxygen bond length greater in CO_2 or CO?
5. What is the nitrogen-fluoride bond length in NF_3?

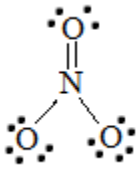
Solutions

1. First, write the Lewis structure for O_2.



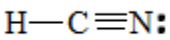
There is a double bond between the two oxygen atoms; therefore, the bond order of the molecule is 2.

2. The Lewis structure for NO_3^- is given below:



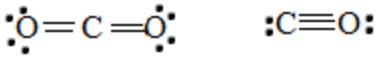
To find the bond order of this molecule, take the average of the bond orders. N=O has a bond order of two, and both N-O bonds have a bond order of one. Adding these together and dividing by the number of bonds (3) reveals that the bond order of nitrate is 1.33.

3. To find the carbon-nitrogen bond length in HCN, draw the Lewis structure of HCN.



The bond between carbon and nitrogen is a triple bond, and a triple bond between carbon and nitrogen has a bond length of approximately 60 + 54 =114 pm.

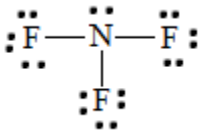
4. From the Lewis structures for CO_2 and CO, there is a double bond between the carbon and oxygen in CO_2 and a triple bond between the carbon and oxygen in CO.



Referring to the table above, a double bond between carbon and oxygen has a bond length of approximately 67 + 57 = 124 pm and a triple bond between carbon and oxygen has a bond length of approximately 60 + 53 =113 pm. Therefore, the bond length is greater in CO_2.

Another method makes use of the fact that the more electron bonds between the atoms, the tighter the electrons are pulling the atoms together. Therefore, the bond length is greater in CO_2.

5. To find the nitrogen-to-fluorine bond length in NF_3, draw the Lewis structure.



The bond between fluorine and nitrogen is a single bond. From the table above, a single bond between fluorine and nitrogen has a bond length of approximately 64 + 71 =135 pm.

References

1. Campbell, Neil A., Brad Williamson, and Robin J. Heyden. Biology: Exploring Life. Boston, Massachusetts: Pearson Prentice Hall, 2006.
2. Petrucci, Ralph H., Harwood, William S., Herring, F. G., and Madura Jeffrey D. General Chemistry: Principles & Modern Applications. 9th Ed. New Jersey: Pearson Education, Inc., 2007. Print.
3. Cordero, Beatriz, Verónica Gómez, Ana E. Platero-Prats, Marc Revés, Jorge Echeverría, Eduard Cremades, Flavia Barragán and Santiago Alvarez. Dalton's Transactions." Covalent radii revisited 2008:
4. Pekka Pyykkö and Michiko Atsumi, Chem. Eur. J. Molecular Double-Bond Covalent Radii for Elements Li–E112 2009

Contributors and Attributions

- Wikihow.com
- Anonymous

This page titled 3.4: Bond Order and Bond Lengths is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- Bond Order and Lengths is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

3.5: Lewis Theory: An Overview

Learning Objectives

- To use Lewis electron dot symbols to predict the number of bonds an element will form.

Why are some substances chemically bonded molecules and others are an association of ions? The answer to this question depends upon the electronic structures of the atoms and nature of the chemical forces within the compounds. Although there are no sharply defined boundaries, chemical bonds are typically classified into three main types: ionic bonds, covalent bonds, and metallic bonds. In this chapter, each type of bond wil be discussed and the general properties found in typical substances in which the bond type occurs

1. Ionic bonds results from ***electrostatic forces that exist between ions of opposite charge***. These bonds typically involves a metal with a nonmetal
2. Covalent bonds ***result from the sharing of electrons between two atoms***. The bonds typically involves one nonmetallic element with another
3. Metallic bonds These bonds are found in solid metals (copper, iron, aluminum) with each metal bonded to several neighboring groups and bonding electrons free to move throughout the 3-dimensional structure.

Each bond classification is discussed in detail in subsequent sections of the chapter. Let's look at the preferred arrangements of electrons in atoms when they form chemical compounds.

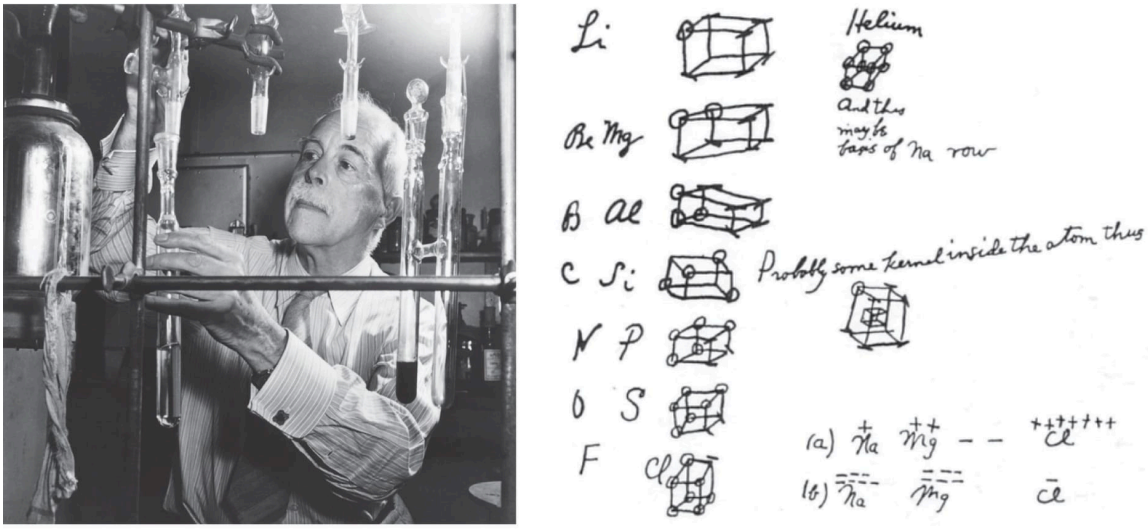


Figure 3.5.1: G. N. Lewis and the Octet Rule. (a) Lewis is working in the laboratory. (b) In Lewis's original sketch for the octet rule, he initially placed the electrons at the corners of a cube rather than placing them as we do now.

Lewis Symbols

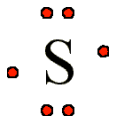
At the beginning of the 20th century, the American chemist G. N. Lewis (1875–1946) devised a system of symbols—now called *Lewis electron dot symbols* (often shortened to *Lewis dot symbols*) that can be used for predicting the number of bonds formed by most elements in their compounds. Each Lewis dot symbol consists of the chemical symbol for an element surrounded by dots that represent its valence electrons.

Note

Lewis Dot symbols:

- convenient representation of valence electrons
- allows you to keep track of valence electrons during bond formation
- consists of the chemical symbol for the element plus a dot for each valence electron

To write an element's Lewis dot symbol, we place dots representing its valence electrons, one at a time, around the element's chemical symbol. Up to four dots are placed above, below, to the left, and to the right of the symbol (in any order, as long as elements with four or fewer valence electrons have no more than one dot in each position). The next dots, for elements with more than four valence electrons, are again distributed one at a time, each paired with one of the first four. For example, the electron configuration for atomic sulfur is $[Ne]3s^2 3p^4$, thus there are ***six*** valence electrons. Its Lewis symbol would therefore be:



Fluorine, for example, with the electron configuration $[He]2s^2 2p^5$, has seven valence electrons, so its Lewis dot symbol is constructed as follows:



Figure 3.5.2.

Lewis used the unpaired dots to predict the number of bonds that an element will form in a compound. Consider the symbol for nitrogen in Figure 3.5.2. The Lewis dot symbol explains why nitrogen, with three unpaired valence electrons, tends to form compounds in which it shares the unpaired electrons to form three bonds. Boron, which also has three unpaired valence electrons in its Lewis dot symbol, also tends to form compounds with three bonds, whereas carbon, with four unpaired valence electrons in its Lewis dot symbol, tends to share all of its unpaired valence electrons by forming compounds in which it has four bonds.

Element	Electron config.	Electron dot symbol
Li	$[He]2s^1$	
Be	$[He]2s^2$	
B	$[He]2s^2 2p^1$	
C	$[He]2s^2 2p^2$	
N	$[He]2s^2 2p^3$	
O	$[He]2s^2 2p^4$	
F	$[He]2s^2 2p^5$	
Ne	$[He]2s^2 2p^6$	

Figure 3.5.2: Lewis Dot Symbols for the Elements in Period 2

The Octet Rule

In 1904, Richard Abegg formulated what is now known as *Abegg's rule*, which states that the difference between the maximum positive and negative valences of an element is frequently eight. This rule was used later in 1916 when Gilbert N. Lewis formulated the "octet rule" in his cubical atom theory.

The **octet rule** refers to the tendency of atoms to prefer to have eight electrons in the *valence shell*. When atoms have fewer than eight electrons, they tend to react and form more stable compounds. Atoms will react to get in the most stable state possible. A complete octet is very stable because all orbitals will be full. Atoms with greater stability have less energy, so a reaction that increases the stability of the atoms will release energy in the form of heat or light ;reactions that decrease stability must absorb energy, getting colder.

When discussing the octet rule, we do not consider *d* or *f* electrons. Only the s and p electrons are involved in the octet rule, making it a useful rule for the *main group elements* (elements not in the transition metal or inner-transition metal blocks); an octet in these atoms corresponds to an electron configurations ending with s^2p^6.

Octet Rule

A stable arrangement is attended when the atom is surrounded by eight electrons. This octet can be made up by own electrons and some electrons which are shared. Thus, an atom continues to form bonds until an octet of electrons is made. This is known as octet rule by Lewis.

1. Normally two electrons pairs up and forms a bond, e.g., H_2
2. For most atoms there will be a maximum of eight electrons in the valence shell (octet structure), e.g., CH_4

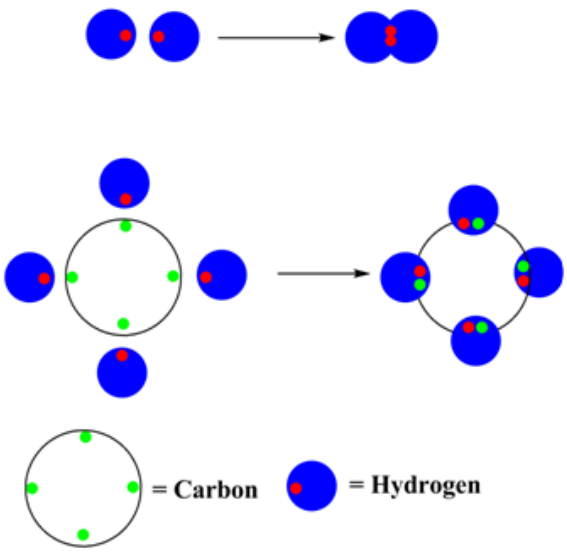


Figure 1: Bonding in H_2 and methane (CH_4)

The other tendency of atoms is to maintain a neutral charge. Only the noble gases (the elements on the right-most column of the periodic table) have zero charge with filled valence octets. All of the other elements have a charge when they have eight electrons all to themselves. The result of these two guiding principles is the explanation for much of the reactivity and bonding that is observed within atoms: atoms seek to share electrons in a way that minimizes charge while fulfilling an octet in the valence shell.

Note

The noble gases rarely form compounds. They have the most stable configuration (full octet, no charge), so they have no reason to react and change their configuration. All other elements attempt to gain, lose, or share electrons to achieve a noble gas configuration.

Example 1: Salt

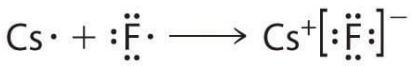
The formula for table salt is NaCl. It is the result of Na^+ ions and Cl^- ions bonding together. If sodium metal and chlorine gas mix under the right conditions, they will form salt. The sodium loses an electron, and the chlorine gains that electron. In the process, a great amount of light and heat is released. The resulting salt is mostly unreactive — it is stable. It will not undergo any explosive reactions, unlike the sodium and chlorine that it is made of. Why?

Solution

Referring to the octet rule, atoms attempt to get a noble gas electron configuration, which is eight valence electrons. Sodium has one valence electron, so giving it up would result in the same electron configuration as neon. Chlorine has seven valence electrons, so if it takes one it will have eight (an octet). Chlorine has the electron configuration of argon when it gains an electron.

The octet rule could have been satisfied if chlorine gave up all seven of its valence electrons and sodium took them. In that case, both would have the electron configurations of noble gasses, with a full valence shell. However, their charges would be much higher. It would be Na^{7-} and Cl^{7+}, which is much less stable than Na^+ and Cl^-. Atoms are more stable when they have no charge, or a small charge.

Lewis dot symbols can also be used to represent the ions in ionic compounds. The reaction of cesium with fluorine, for example, to produce the ionic compound CsF can be written as follows:



No dots are shown on Cs^+ in the product because cesium has lost its single valence electron to fluorine. The transfer of this electron produces the Cs^+ ion, which has the valence electron configuration of Xe, and the F^- ion, which has a total of eight valence electrons (an octet) and the Ne electron configuration. This description is consistent with the statement that among the main group elements, ions in simple binary ionic compounds generally have the electron configurations of the nearest noble gas. The charge of each ion is written in the product, and the anion and its electrons are enclosed in brackets. This notation emphasizes that the ions are associated electrostatically; no electrons are shared between the two elements.

Note

Atoms often gain, lose, or share electrons to achieve the same number of electrons as the noble gas closest to them in the periodic table.

As you might expect for such a qualitative approach to bonding, there are exceptions to the octet rule, which we describe elsewhere. These include molecules in which one or more atoms contain fewer or more than eight electrons.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Lewis Theory of Bonding: https://youtu.be/TZ6C5_k-SPs

Summary

- Lewis dot symbols can be used to predict the number of bonds formed by most elements in their compounds.

One convenient way to predict the number and basic arrangement of bonds in compounds is by using **Lewis electron dot symbols**, which consist of the chemical symbol for an element surrounded by dots that represent its valence electrons, grouped into pairs often placed above, below, and to the left and right of the symbol. The structures reflect the fact that the elements in period 2 and beyond tend to gain, lose, or share electrons to reach a total of eight valence electrons in their compounds, the so-called **octet rule**. Hydrogen, with only two valence electrons, does not obey the octet rule.

Contributors and Attributions

Mike Blaber (Florida State University)

- Wikipedia
- National Programme on Technology Enhanced Learning (India)

This page titled 3.5: Lewis Theory: An Overview is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 10.1: Lewis Theory: An Overview is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

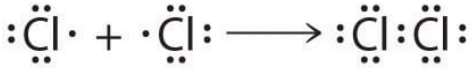
3.6: Writing Lewis Structures

Learning Objectives

- To use Lewis dot symbols to explain the stoichiometry of a compound

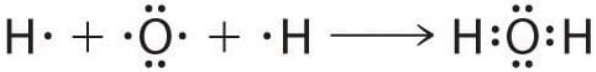
Using Lewis Dot Symbols to Describe Covalent Bonding

The valence electron configurations of the constituent atoms of a covalent compound are important factors in determining its structure, stoichiometry, and properties. For example, chlorine, with seven valence electrons, is one electron short of an octet. If two chlorine atoms share their unpaired electrons by making a covalent bond and forming Cl_2, they can each complete their valence shell:



Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond. Examples of this type of bonding are presented in Section 8.6 when we discuss atoms with less than an octet of electrons.

We can illustrate the formation of a water molecule from two hydrogen atoms and an oxygen atom using Lewis dot symbols:



The structure on the right is the *Lewis electron structure*, or *Lewis structure*, for H_2O. With two bonding pairs and two lone pairs, the oxygen atom has now completed its octet. Moreover, by sharing a bonding pair with oxygen, each hydrogen atom now has a full valence shell of two electrons. Chemists usually indicate a bonding pair by a single line, as shown here for our two examples:



The following procedure can be used to construct Lewis electron structures for more complex molecules and ions:

1. **Arrange the atoms to show specific connections.** When there is a central atom, it is usually the least electronegative element in the compound. Chemists usually list this central atom first in the chemical formula (as in CCl_4 and CO_3^{2-}, which both have C as the central atom), which is another clue to the compound's structure. Hydrogen and the halogens are almost always connected to only one other atom, so they are usually *terminal* rather than central.
2. **Determine the total number of valence electrons in the molecule or ion.** Add together the valence electrons from each atom. (Recall that the number of valence electrons is indicated by the position of the element in the periodic table.) If the species is a polyatomic ion, remember to add or subtract the number of electrons necessary to give the total charge on the ion. For CO_3^{2-}, for example, we add two electrons to the total because of the –2 charge.
3. **Place a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of adjacent atoms to give a single bond.** In H_2O, for example, there is a bonding pair of electrons between oxygen and each hydrogen.
4. **Beginning with the terminal atoms, add enough electrons to each atom to give each atom an octet (two for hydrogen).** These electrons will usually be lone pairs.
5. **If any electrons are left over, place them on the central atom.** We will explain later that some atoms are able to accommodate more than eight electrons.
6. **If the central atom has fewer electrons than an octet, use lone pairs from terminal atoms to form multiple (double**

or triple) bonds to the central atom to achieve an octet. This will not change the number of electrons on the terminal atoms.

Now let's apply this procedure to some particular compounds, beginning with one we have already discussed.

Note

The central atom is usually the least electronegative element in the molecule or ion; hydrogen and the halogens are usually terminal.

The H_2O Molecule

1. Because H atoms are almost always terminal, the arrangement within the molecule must be HOH.
2. Each H atom (group 1) has 1 valence electron, and the O atom (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, for a total of 8 valence electrons.
3. Placing one bonding pair of electrons between the O atom and each H atom gives H:O:H, with 4 electrons left over.
4. Each H atom has a full valence shell of 2 electrons.
5. Adding the remaining 4 electrons to the oxygen (as two lone pairs) gives the following structure:



This is the Lewis structure we drew earlier. Because it gives oxygen an octet and each hydrogen two electrons, we do not need to use step 6.

The OCl^- Ion

1. With only two atoms in the molecule, there is no central atom.
2. Oxygen (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, and chlorine (group 17) has 7 valence electrons; we must add one more for the negative charge on the ion, giving a total of 14 valence electrons.
3. Placing a bonding pair of electrons between O and Cl gives O:Cl, with 12 electrons left over.
4. If we place six electrons (as three lone pairs) on each atom, we obtain the following structure:



Each atom now has an octet of electrons, so steps 5 and 6 are not needed. The Lewis electron structure is drawn within brackets as is customary for an ion, with the overall charge indicated outside the brackets, and the bonding pair of electrons is indicated by a solid line. OCl^- is the hypochlorite ion, the active ingredient in chlorine laundry bleach and swimming pool disinfectant.

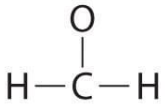
The CH_2O Molecule

1. Because carbon is less electronegative than oxygen and hydrogen is normally terminal, C must be the central atom. One possible arrangement is as follows:



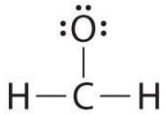
2. Each hydrogen atom (group 1) has one valence electron, carbon (group 14) has 4 valence electrons, and oxygen (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, for a total of [(2)(1) + 4 + 6] = 12 valence electrons.

3. Placing a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of bonded atoms gives the following:



Six electrons are used, and 6 are left over.

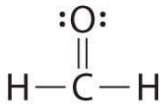
4. Adding all 6 remaining electrons to oxygen (as three lone pairs) gives the following:



Although oxygen now has an octet and each hydrogen has 2 electrons, carbon has only 6 electrons.

5. There are no electrons left to place on the central atom.

6. To give carbon an octet of electrons, we use one of the lone pairs of electrons on oxygen to form a carbon–oxygen double bond:



Both the oxygen and the carbon now have an octet of electrons, so this is an acceptable Lewis electron structure. The O has two bonding pairs and two lone pairs, and C has four bonding pairs. This is the structure of formaldehyde, which is used in embalming fluid. An alternative structure can be drawn with one H bonded to O. *Formal charges*, discussed later in this section, suggest that such a structure is less stable than that shown previously.

Example 3.6.1

Write the Lewis electron structure for each species.

1. NCl_3
2. S_2^{2-}
3. NOCl

Given: chemical species

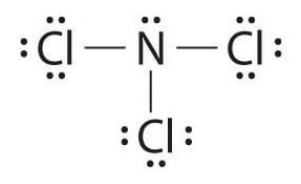
Asked for: Lewis electron structures

Strategy:

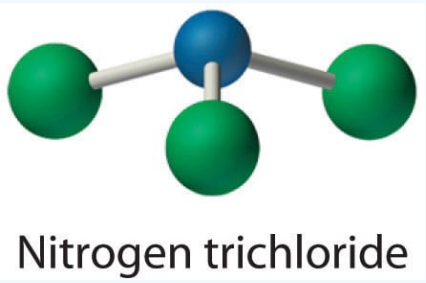
Use the six-step procedure to write the Lewis electron structure for each species.

Solution:

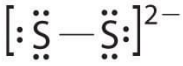
1. Nitrogen is less electronegative than chlorine, and halogen atoms are usually terminal, so nitrogen is the central atom. The nitrogen atom (group 15) has 5 valence electrons and each chlorine atom (group 17) has 7 valence electrons, for a total of 26 valence electrons. Using 2 electrons for each N–Cl bond and adding three lone pairs to each Cl account for (3 × 2) + (3 × 2 × 3) = 24 electrons. Rule 5 leads us to place the remaining 2 electrons on the central N:



Nitrogen trichloride is an unstable oily liquid once used to bleach flour; this use is now prohibited in the United States.



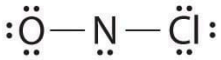
2. In a diatomic molecule or ion, we do not need to worry about a central atom. Each sulfur atom (group 16) contains 6 valence electrons, and we need to add 2 electrons for the –2 charge, giving a total of 14 valence electrons. Using 2 electrons for the S–S bond, we arrange the remaining 12 electrons as three lone pairs on each sulfur, giving each S atom an octet of electrons:



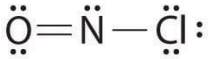
3. Because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen or chlorine, it is the central atom. The N atom (group 15) has 5 valence electrons, the O atom (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, and the Cl atom (group 17) has 7 valence electrons, giving a total of 18 valence electrons. Placing one bonding pair of electrons between each pair of bonded atoms uses 4 electrons and gives the following:



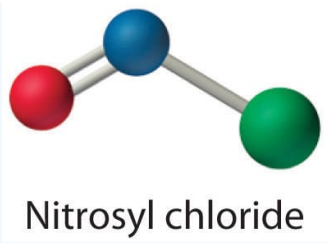
Adding three lone pairs each to oxygen and to chlorine uses 12 more electrons, leaving 2 electrons to place as a lone pair on nitrogen:



Because this Lewis structure has only 6 electrons around the central nitrogen, a lone pair of electrons on a terminal atom must be used to form a bonding pair. We could use a lone pair on either O or Cl. Because we have seen many structures in which O forms a double bond but none with a double bond to Cl, it is reasonable to select a lone pair from O to give the following:



All atoms now have octet configurations. This is the Lewis electron structure of nitrosyl chloride, a highly corrosive, reddish-orange gas.

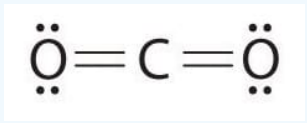


Exercise 3.6.1

Write Lewis electron structures for CO_2 and SCl_2, a vile-smelling, unstable red liquid that is used in the manufacture of rubber.

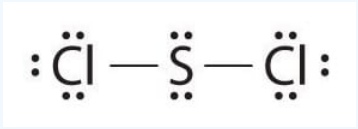
Answer

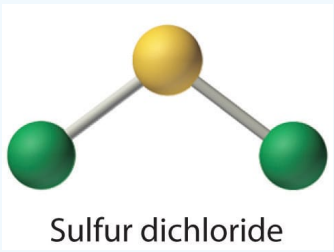
1.





2.





YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

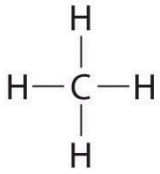
View this YouTube Video online

Lewis Structure of Molecules: https://youtu.be/xWiFCqA9Ur0

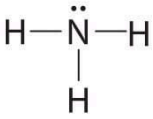
Using Lewis Electron Structures to Explain Stoichiometry

Lewis dot symbols provide a simple rationalization of why elements form compounds with the observed stoichiometries. In the Lewis model, the number of bonds formed by an element in a neutral compound is the same as the number of unpaired electrons it must share with other atoms to complete its octet of electrons. For the elements of Group 17 (the halogens), this number is

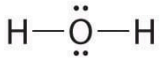
one; for the elements of Group 16 (the chalcogens), it is two; for Group 15 elements, three; and for Group 14 elements four. These requirements are illustrated by the following Lewis structures for the hydrides of the lightest members of each group:



Group 14



Group 15

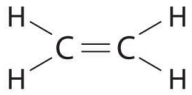


Group 16



Group 17

Elements may form multiple bonds to complete an octet. In ethylene, for example, each carbon contributes two electrons to the double bond, giving each carbon an octet (two electrons/bond × four bonds = eight electrons). Neutral structures with fewer or more bonds exist, but they are unusual and violate the octet rule.



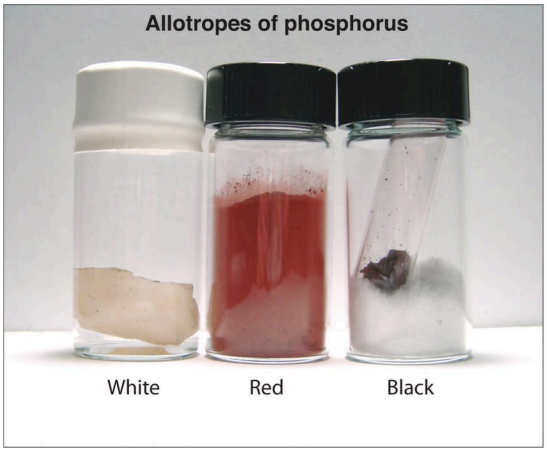
Ethylene

Allotropes of an element can have very different physical and chemical properties because of different three-dimensional arrangements of the atoms; the number of bonds formed by the component atoms, however, is always the same. As noted at the beginning of the chapter, diamond is a hard, transparent solid; graphite is a soft, black solid; and the fullerenes have open cage structures. Despite these differences, the carbon atoms in all three allotropes form four bonds, in accordance with the octet rule.

Note

Lewis structures explain why the elements of groups 14–17 form neutral compounds with four, three, two, and one bonded atom(s), respectively.

Elemental phosphorus also exists in three forms: white phosphorus, a toxic, waxy substance that initially glows and then spontaneously ignites on contact with air; red phosphorus, an amorphous substance that is used commercially in safety matches, fireworks, and smoke bombs; and black phosphorus, an unreactive crystalline solid with a texture similar to graphite (Figure 3.6.3). Nonetheless, the phosphorus atoms in all three forms obey the octet rule and form three bonds per phosphorus atom.

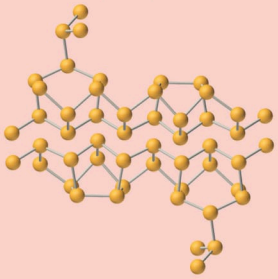


White phosphorus



Volatile waxy white solid. Dangerously reactive in air: glows with a white light and spontaneously bursts into flame.
Melting point: 44.2°C

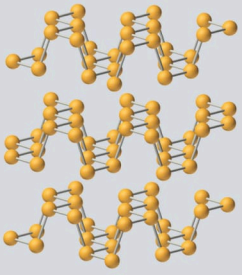
Red phosphorus



Red powder. Nonreactive with air at 25°C.

Melting point: 590°C

Black phosphorus



Black crystalline solid. Nonreactive with air at 25°C.
Melting point: 610°C

Figure 3.6.3*: The Three Allotropes of Phosphorus: White, Red, and Black. ll three forms contain only phosphorus atoms, but they differ in the arrangement and connectivity of their atoms. White phosphorus contains P_4 tetrahedra, red phosphorus is a network of linked P_8 and P_9 units, and black phosphorus forms sheets of six-membered rings. As a result, their physical and chemical properties differ dramatically.*

Formal Charges

It is sometimes possible to write more than one Lewis structure for a substance that does not violate the octet rule, as we saw for CH_2O, but not every Lewis structure may be equally reasonable. In these situations, we can choose the most stable Lewis structure by considering the formal charge on the atoms, which is the difference between the number of valence electrons in the free atom and the number assigned to it in the Lewis electron structure. The formal charge is a way of computing the charge distribution within a Lewis structure; the sum of the formal charges on the atoms within a molecule or an ion must equal the overall charge on the molecule or ion. A formal charge does *not* represent a true charge on an atom in a covalent bond but is simply used to predict the most likely structure when a compound has more than one valid Lewis structure.

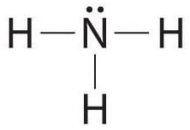
To calculate formal charges, we assign electrons in the molecule to individual atoms according to these rules:

- Nonbonding electrons are assigned to the atom on which they are located.
- Bonding electrons are divided equally between the bonded atoms.

For each atom, we then compute a formal charge:

$$formal\ charge = \underset{(free\ atom)}{valence\ e^-} - \underset{(atom\ in\ Lewis\ structure)}{\left(non-bonding\ e^- + \frac{bonding\ e^-}{2}\right)} \text{ (atom in Lewis structure)}$$

To illustrate this method, let's calculate the formal charge on the atoms in ammonia (NH_3) whose Lewis electron structure is as follows:



Ammonia

A neutral nitrogen atom has five valence electrons (it is in group 15). From its Lewis electron structure, the nitrogen atom in ammonia has one lone pair and shares three bonding pairs with hydrogen atoms, so nitrogen itself is assigned a total of five electrons [2 nonbonding e^- + (6 bonding e^-/2)]. Substituting into Equation 8.5.2, we obtain

$$formal\ charge\,(N) = 5\ valence\ e^- - \left(2\ non-bonding\ e^- + \frac{6\ bonding\ e^-}{2}\right) = 0 \tag{3.6.1}$$

A neutral hydrogen atom has one valence electron. Each hydrogen atom in the molecule shares one pair of bonding electrons and is therefore assigned one electron [0 nonbonding e^- + (2 bonding e^-/2)]. Using Equation 8.5.2 to calculate the formal charge on hydrogen, we obtain

$$formal\ charge\,(H) = 1\ valence\ e^- - \left(0\ non-bonding\ e^- + \frac{2\ bonding\ e^-}{2}\right) = 0 \tag{3.6.2}$$

The hydrogen atoms in ammonia have the same number of electrons as neutral hydrogen atoms, and so their formal charge is also zero. Adding together the formal charges should give us the overall charge on the molecule or ion. In this example, the nitrogen and each hydrogen has a formal charge of zero. When summed the overall charge is zero, which is consistent with the overall charge on the NH_3 molecule.

Note

An atom, molecule, or ion has a formal charge of zero if it has the number of bonds that is typical for that species.

Typically, the structure with the most charges on the atoms closest to zero is the more stable Lewis structure. In cases where there are positive or negative formal charges on various atoms, stable structures generally have negative formal charges on the more electronegative atoms and positive formal charges on the less electronegative atoms. The next example further demonstrates how to calculate formal charges.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Lewis Structure of Charged Molecules: https://youtu.be/pTkziPtvMYU

Example 3.6.2

Calculate the formal charges on each atom in the NH_4^+ ion.

Given: chemical species

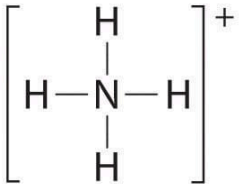
Asked for: formal charges

Strategy:

Identify the number of valence electrons in each atom in the NH_4^+ ion. Use the Lewis electron structure of NH_4^+ to identify the number of bonding and nonbonding electrons associated with each atom and then use Equation 8.5.2 to calculate the formal charge on each atom.

Solution:

The Lewis electron structure for the NH_4^+ ion is as follows:



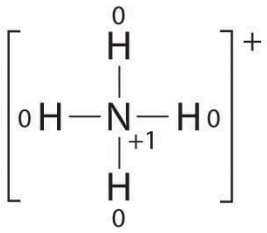
The nitrogen atom shares four bonding pairs of electrons, and a neutral nitrogen atom has five valence electrons. Using Equation 8.5.1, the formal charge on the nitrogen atom is therefore

$$formal\ charge\,(N) = 5 - \left(0 + \frac{8}{2}\right) = 0 \tag{3.6.3}$$

Each hydrogen atom in has one bonding pair. The formal charge on each hydrogen atom is therefore

$$formal\ charge\,(H) = 1 - \left(0 + \frac{2}{2}\right) = 0 \tag{3.6.4}$$

The formal charges on the atoms in the NH_4^+ ion are thus

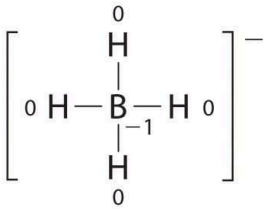


Adding together the formal charges on the atoms should give us the total charge on the molecule or ion. In this case, the sum of the formal charges is 0 + 1 + 0 + 0 + 0 = +1.

Exercise 3.6.2

Write the formal charges on all atoms in BH_4^-.

Answer



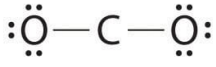
If an atom in a molecule or ion has the number of bonds that is typical for that atom (e.g., four bonds for carbon), its formal charge is zero.

Using Formal Charges to Distinguish Viable Lewis Structures

As an example of how formal charges can be used to determine the most stable Lewis structure for a substance, we can compare two possible structures for CO_2. Both structures conform to the rules for Lewis electron structures.

CO_2

1. C is less electronegative than O, so it is the central atom.
2. C has 4 valence electrons and each O has 6 valence electrons, for a total of 16 valence electrons.
3. Placing one electron pair between the C and each O gives O–C–O, with 12 electrons left over.
4. Dividing the remaining electrons between the O atoms gives three lone pairs on each atom:



This structure has an octet of electrons around each O atom but only 4 electrons around the C atom.

5. No electrons are left for the central atom.
6. To give the carbon atom an octet of electrons, we can convert two of the lone pairs on the oxygen atoms to bonding electron

pairs. There are, however, two ways to do this. We can either take one electron pair from each oxygen to form a symmetrical structure or take both electron pairs from a single oxygen atom to give an asymmetrical structure:



Both Lewis electron structures give all three atoms an octet. How do we decide between these two possibilities? The formal charges for the two Lewis electron structures of CO_2 are as follows:



Both Lewis structures have a net formal charge of zero, but the structure on the right has a +1 charge on the more electronegative atom (O). Thus the symmetrical Lewis structure on the left is predicted to be more stable, and it is, in fact, the structure observed experimentally. Remember, though, that formal charges do *not* represent the actual charges on atoms in a molecule or ion. They are used simply as a bookkeeping method for predicting the most stable Lewis structure for a compound.

Note

The Lewis structure with the set of formal charges closest to zero is usually the most stable.

Example 3.6.3: The Thiocyanate Ion

The thiocyanate ion (SCN^-), which is used in printing and as a corrosion inhibitor against acidic gases, has at least two possible Lewis electron structures. Draw two possible structures, assign formal charges on all atoms in both, and decide which is the preferred arrangement of electrons.

Given: chemical species

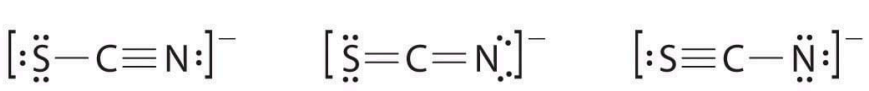
Asked for: Lewis electron structures, formal charges, and preferred arrangement

Strategy:

A. Use the step-by-step procedure to write two plausible Lewis electron structures for SCN^-.
B. Calculate the formal charge on each atom using Equation 8.5.1.
C. Predict which structure is preferred based on the formal charge on each atom and its electronegativity relative to the other atoms present.

Solution:

A Possible Lewis structures for the SCN^- ion are as follows:



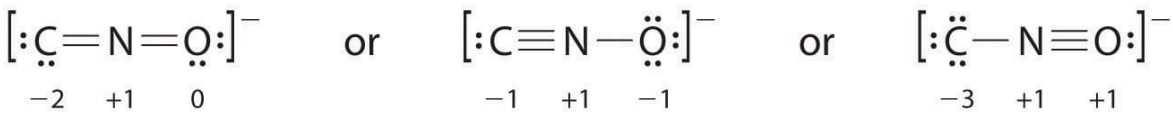
B We must calculate the formal charges on each atom to identify the more stable structure. If we begin with carbon, we notice that the carbon atom in each of these structures shares four bonding pairs, the number of bonds typical for carbon, so it has a formal charge of zero. Continuing with sulfur, we observe that in (a) the sulfur atom shares one bonding pair and has three lone pairs and has a total of six valence electrons. The formal charge on the sulfur atom is therefore $6-\left(6+\frac{2}{2}\right)=-1.5$ $-\left(4+\frac{4}{2}\right)=-1$ In (c), nitrogen has a formal charge of –2.

C Which structure is preferred? Structure (b) is preferred because the negative charge is on the more electronegative atom (N), and it has lower formal charges on each atom as compared to structure (c): 0, –1 versus +1, –2.

Exercise 3.6.3: The Fulminate Ion

Salts containing the fulminate ion (CNO^-) are used in explosive detonators. Draw three Lewis electron structures for CNO^- and use formal charges to predict which is more stable. (Note: N is the central atom.)

Answer



The second structure is predicted to be more stable.

Summary

- Lewis dot symbols provide a simple rationalization of why elements form compounds with the observed stoichiometries.

A plot of the overall energy of a covalent bond as a function of internuclear distance is identical to a plot of an ionic pair because both result from attractive and repulsive forces between charged entities. In Lewis electron structures, we encounter **bonding pairs**, which are shared by two atoms, and **lone pairs**, which are not shared between atoms. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a **coordinate covalent bond**. Lewis structures are an attempt to rationalize why certain stoichiometries are commonly observed for the elements of particular families. Neutral compounds of group 14 elements typically contain four bonds around each atom (a double bond counts as two, a triple bond as three), whereas neutral compounds of group 15 elements typically contain three bonds. In cases where it is possible to write more than one Lewis electron structure with octets around all the nonhydrogen atoms of a compound, the **formal charge** on each atom in alternative structures must be considered to decide which of the valid structures can be excluded and which is the most reasonable. The formal charge is the difference between the number of valence electrons of the free atom and the number of electrons assigned to it in the compound, where bonding electrons are divided equally between the bonded atoms. The Lewis structure with the lowest formal charges on the atoms is almost always the most stable one.

Contributors and Attributions

Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

This page titled 3.6: Writing Lewis Structures is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 10.4: Writing Lewis Structures is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

3.7: Exceptions to the Octet Rule

Learning Objectives

- To assign a Lewis dot symbol to elements not having an octet of electrons in their compounds.

Three cases can be constructed that do not follow the octet rule, and as such, they are known as the exceptions to the octet rule. Following the Octet Rule for Lewis Dot Structures leads to the most accurate depictions of stable molecular and atomic structures and because of this we always want to use the octet rule when drawing Lewis Dot Structures. However, it is hard to imagine that one rule could be followed by all molecules. There is always an exception, and in this case, three exceptions:

1. When there are an odd number of valence electrons
2. When there are too few valence electrons
3. When there are too many valence electrons

Exception 1: Species with Odd Numbers of Electrons

The first exception to the Octet Rule is when there are an odd number of valence electrons. An example of this would be Nitrogen (II) Oxide (NO ,refer to figure one). Nitrogen has 5 valence electrons while Oxygen has 6. The total would be 11 valence electrons to be used. The Octet Rule for this molecule is fulfilled in the above example, however that is with 10 valence electrons. The last one does not know where to go. The lone electron is called an unpaired electron. But where should the unpaired electron go? The unpaired electron is usually placed in the Lewis Dot Structure so that each element in the structure will have the *lowest* formal charge possible. The formal charge is *the perceived charge on an individual atom in a molecule when atoms do not contribute equal numbers of electrons to the bonds they participate in*.

No formal charge at all is the most ideal situation. An example of a stable molecule with an odd number of valence electrons would be nitrogen monoxide. Nitrogen monoxide has 11 valence electrons. If you need more information about formal charges, see Lewis Structures. If we were to imagine nitrogen monoxide had ten valence electrons we would come up with the Lewis Structure (Figure 3.7.1):

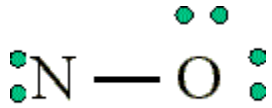


Figure 3.7.1: This is if Nitrogen monoxide has only ten valence electrons, which it does not.

Let's look at the formal charges of Figure 3.7.2 based on this Lewis structure. Nitrogen normally has five valence electrons. In Figure 3.7.1, it has two lone pair electrons and it participates in two bonds (a double bond) with oxygen. This results in nitrogen having a formal charge of +1. Oxygen normally has six valence electrons. In Figure 3.7.1, oxygen has four lone pair electrons and it participates in two bonds with nitrogen. Oxygen therefore has a formal charge of 0. The overall molecule here has a formal charge of +1 (+1 for nitrogen, 0 for oxygen. +1 + 0 = +1). However, if we add the eleventh electron to nitrogen (because we want the molecule to have the *lowest* total formal charge), it will bring both the nitrogen and the molecule's overall charges to zero, the most ideal formal charge situation. That is exactly what is done to get the correct Lewis structure for nitrogen monoxide (Figure 3.7.2):

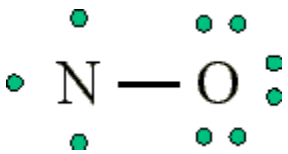


Figure 3.7.2: The proper Lewis structure for NO molecule

Free Radicals

There are actually very few stable molecules with odd numbers of electrons that exist, since that unpaired electron is willing to react with other unpaired electrons. Most odd electron species are highly reactive, which we call Free Radicals. Because of their instability, free radicals bond to atoms in which they can take an electron from in order to become stable, making them very chemically reactive. Radicals are found as both reactants and products, but generally react to form more stable molecules as soon as they can. In order to emphasize the existence of the unpaired electron, radicals are denoted with a dot in front of their chemical symbol as with $\cdot OH$, the hydroxyl radical. An example of a radical you may by familiar with already is the gaseous chlorine atom, denoted $\cdot Cl$. Interestingly, odd Number of Valence Electrons will result in the molecule being paramagnetic.

Exception 2: Incomplete Octets

The second exception to the Octet Rule is when there are too few valence electrons that results in an incomplete Octet. There are even more occasions where the octet rule does not give the most correct depiction of a molecule or ion. This is also the case with incomplete octets. Species with incomplete octets are pretty rare and generally are only found in some beryllium, aluminum, and boron compounds including the boron hydrides. Let's take a look at one such hydride, BH_3 (Borane).

If one was to make a Lewis structure for BH_3 following the basic strategies for drawing Lewis structures, one would probably come up with this structure (Figure 3.7.3):

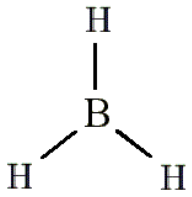


Figure 3.7.3

The problem with this structure is that boron has an incomplete octet; it only has six electrons around it. Hydrogen atoms can naturally only have only 2 electrons in their outermost shell (their version of an octet), and as such there are no spare electrons to form a double bond with boron. One might surmise that the failure of this structure to form complete octets must mean that this bond should be ionic instead of covalent. However, boron has an electronegativity that is very similar to hydrogen, meaning there is likely very little ionic character in the hydrogen to boron bonds, and as such this Lewis structure, though it does not fulfill the octet rule, is likely the best structure possible for depicting BH_3 with Lewis theory. One of the things that may account for BH_3's incomplete octet is that it is commonly a transitory species, formed temporarily in reactions that involve multiple steps.

Let's take a look at another incomplete octet situation dealing with boron, BF_3 (Boron trifluorine). Like with BH_3, the initial drawing of a Lewis structure of BF_3 will form a structure where boron has only six electrons around it (Figure 3.7.4).

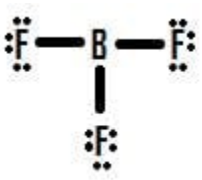


Figure 3.7.4

If you look Figure 3.7.4, you can see that the fluorine atoms possess extra lone pairs that they can use to make additional bonds with boron, and you might think that all you have to do is make one lone pair into a bond and the structure will be correct. If we add one double bond between boron and one of the fluorines we get the following Lewis Structure (Figure 3.7.5):

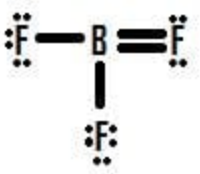


Figure 3.7.5

Each fluorine has eight electrons, and the boron atom has eight as well! Each atom has a perfect octet, right? Not so fast. We must examine the formal charges of this structure. The fluorine that shares a double bond with boron has six electrons around it (four from its two lone pairs of electrons and one each from its two bonds with boron). This is one less electron than the number of valence electrons it would have naturally (Group Seven elements have seven valence electrons), so it has a formal charge of +1. The two flourines that share single bonds with boron have seven electrons around them (six from their three lone pairs and one from their single bonds with boron). This is the same amount as the number of valence electrons they would have on their own, so they both have a formal charge of zero. Finally, boron has four electrons around it (one from each of its four bonds shared with fluorine). This is one more electron than the number of valence electrons that boron would have on its own, and as such boron has a formal charge of -1.

This structure is supported by the fact that the experimentally determined bond length of the boron to fluorine bonds in BF_3 is less than what would be typical for a single bond (see Bond Order and Lengths). However, this structure contradicts one of the major rules of formal charges: Negative formal charges are supposed to be found on the more electronegative atom(s) in a bond, but in the structure depicted in Figure 3.7.5, a *positive* formal charge is found on fluorine, which not only is the most electronegative element in the structure, but the most electronegative element in the entire periodic table ($\chi = 4.0$). Boron on the other hand, with the much lower electronegativity of 2.0, has the negative formal charge in this structure. This formal charge-electronegativity disagreement makes this double-bonded structure impossible.

However the large electronegativity difference here, as opposed to in BH_3, signifies significant polar bonds between boron and fluorine, which means there is a high ionic character to this molecule. This suggests the possibility of a semi-ionic structure such as seen in Figure 3.7.6:

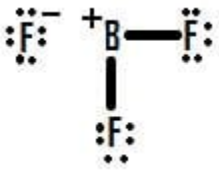


Figure 3.7.6

None of these three structures is the "correct" structure in this instance. The most "correct" structure is most likely a resonance of all three structures: the one with the incomplete octet (Figure 3.7.4), the one with the double bond (Figure 3.7.5), and the one with the ionic bond (Figure 3.7.6). The most contributing structure is probably the incomplete octet structure (due to Figure 3.7.5 being basically impossible and Figure 3.7.6 not matching up with the behavior and properties of BF_3). As you can see even when other possibilities exist, incomplete octets may best portray a molecular structure.

As a side note, it is important to note that BF_3 frequently bonds with a F^- ion in order to form BF_4^- rather than staying as BF_3. This structure completes boron's octet and it is more common in nature. This exemplifies the fact that incomplete octets are rare, and other configurations are typically more favorable, including bonding with additional ions as in the case of BF_3 .

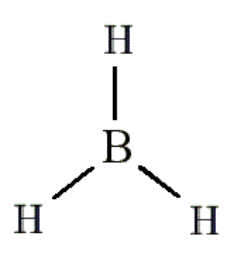
Example 3.7.1: NF_3

Draw the Lewis structure for boron trifluoride (BF_3).

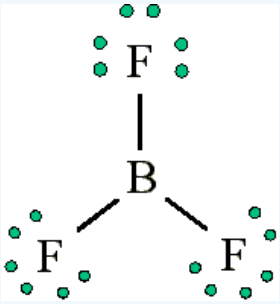
Solution

1. Add electrons (3*7) + 3 = **24**

2. Draw connectivities:



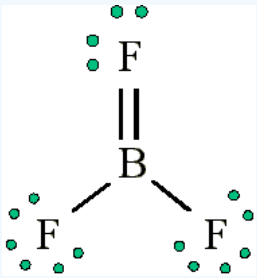
3. Add octets to outer atoms:



4. Add extra electrons (24-24=0) to central atom:

5. Does central electron have octet?

- NO. It has 6 electrons
- Add a multiple bond (double bond) to see if central atom can achieve an octet:

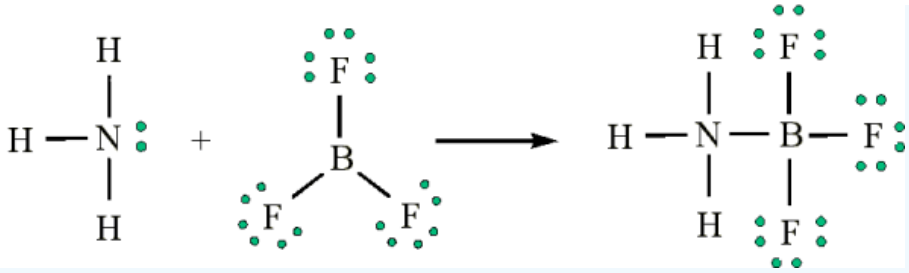


6. The central Boron now has an octet (there would be three resonance Lewis structures)

However...

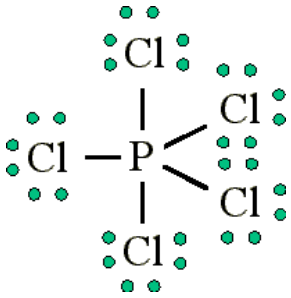
- In this structure with a double bond the fluorine atom is sharing extra electrons with the boron.
- The fluorine would have a '+' partial charge, and the boron a '-' partial charge, this is inconsistent with the electronegativities of fluorine and boron.
- Thus, ***the structure of BF_3, with single bonds, and 6 valence electrons around the central boron is the most likely structure***

BF_3 reacts strongly with compounds which have an unshared pair of electrons which can be used to form a bond with the boron:



Exception 3: Expanded Valence Shells

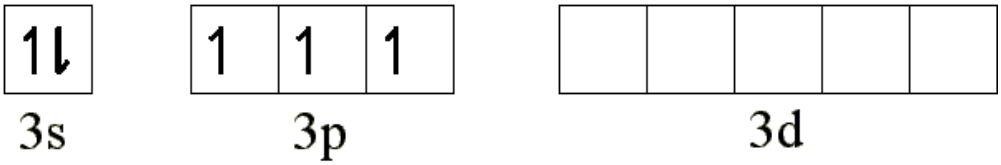
More common than incomplete octets are expanded octets where the central atom in a Lewis structure has more than eight electrons in its valence shell. In expanded octets, the central atom can have ten electrons, or even twelve. *Molecules with expanded octets involve highly electronegative terminal atoms, and a nonmetal central atom found in the third period or below*, which those terminal atoms bond to. For example, PCl_5 is a legitimate compound (whereas NCl_5) is not:



Note

Expanded valence shells are observed **only** for elements in period 3 (i.e. n=3) and beyond

The 'octet' rule is based upon available ns and n*p* orbitals for valence electrons (2 electrons in the *s* orbitals, and 6 in the *p* orbitals). Beginning with the n=3 principle quantum number, the d orbitals become available (*l*=2). The orbital diagram for the valence shell of phosphorous is:



Hence, the third period elements occasionally exceed the octet rule by using their empty d orbitals to accommodate additional electrons. Size is also an important consideration:

- The larger the central atom, the larger the number of electrons which can surround it
- Expanded valence shells occur most often when the central atom is bonded to small electronegative atoms, such as F, Cl and O.

There is currently much scientific exploration and inquiry into the reason why expanded valence shells are found. The top area of interest is figuring out where the extra pair(s) of electrons are found. Many chemists think that there is not a very large energy difference between the 3p and 3d orbitals, and as such it is plausible for extra electrons to easily fill the 3d orbital when an expanded octet is more favorable than having a complete octet. This matter is still under hot debate, however and there is even debate as to what makes an expanded octet more favorable than a configuration that follows the octet rule.

One of the situations where expanded octet structures are treated as more favorable than Lewis structures that follow the octet rule is when the formal charges in the expanded octet structure are smaller than in a structure that adheres to the octet rule, or when there are less formal charges in the expanded octet than in the structure a structure that adheres to the octet rule.

Example 3.7.2: The SO_4^{-2} ion

Such is the case for the sulfate ion, SO_4^{-2}. A strict adherence to the octet rule forms the following Lewis structure:

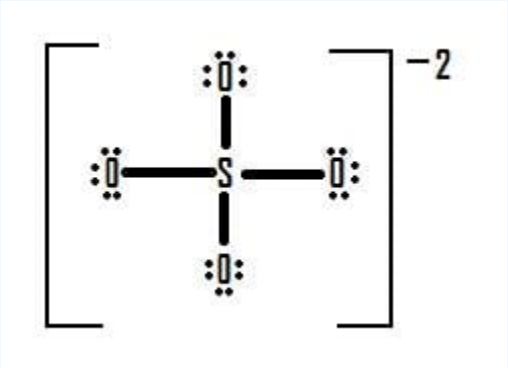


Figure 3.7.12

If we look at the formal charges on this molecule, we can see that all of the oxygen atoms have seven electrons around them (six from the three lone pairs and one from the bond with sulfur). This is one more electron than the number of valence electrons then they would have normally, and as such each of the oxygens in this structure has a formal charge of -1. Sulfur has four electrons around it in this structure (one from each of its four bonds) which is two electrons more than the number of valence electrons it would have normally, and as such it carries a formal charge of +2.

If instead we made a structure for the sulfate ion with an expanded octet, it would look like this:

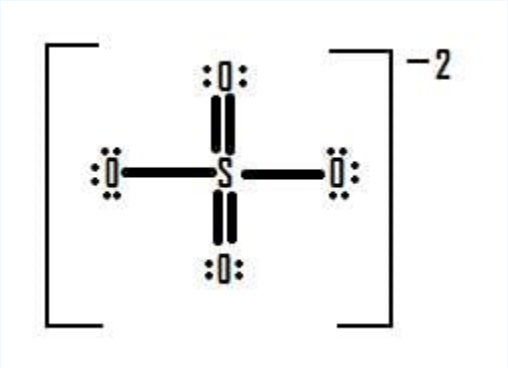


Figure 3.7.13

Looking at the formal charges for this structure, the sulfur ion has six electrons around it (one from each of its bonds). This is the same amount as the number of valence electrons it would have naturally. This leaves sulfur with a formal charge of zero. The two oxygens that have double bonds to sulfur have six electrons each around them (four from the two lone pairs and one each from the two bonds with sulfur). This is the same amount of electrons as the number of valence electrons that oxygen atoms have on their own, and as such both of these oxygen atoms have a formal charge of zero. The two oxygens with the single bonds to sulfur have seven electrons around them in this structure (six from the three lone pairs and one from the bond to sulfur). That is one electron more than the number of valence electrons that oxygen would have on its own, and as such those two oxygens carry a formal charge of -1. Remember that with formal charges, the goal is to keep the formal charges (or the difference between the formal charges of each atom) as small as possible. The number of and values of the formal charges on this structure (-1 and 0 (difference of 1) in Figure 3.7.12, as opposed to +2 and -1 (difference of 3) in Figure 3.7.12) is significantly lower than on the structure that follows the octet rule, and as such an expanded octet is plausible, and even preferred to a normal octet, in this case.

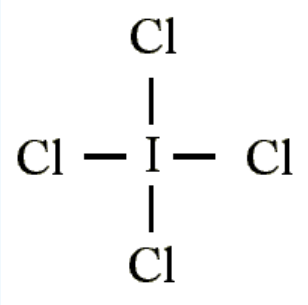
Example 3.7.3: The ICl_4^- Ion

Draw the Lewis structure for ICl_4^- ion.

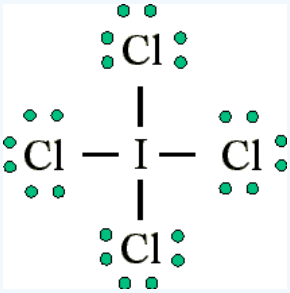
Solution

1. Count up the valence electrons: 7+(4*7)+1 = **36** electrons

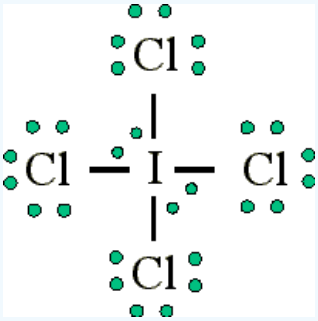
2. Draw the connectivities:



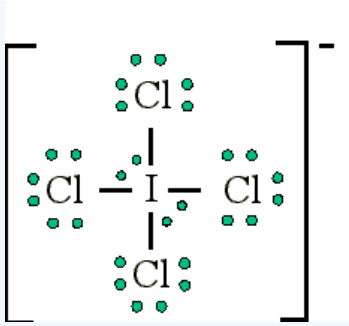
3. Add octet of electrons to outer atoms:



4. Add extra electrons (36-32=**4**) to central atom:



5. The ICl_4^- ion thus has 12 valence electrons around the central Iodine (in the 5*d* orbitals)



Expanded Lewis structures are also plausible depictions of molecules when experimentally determined bond lengths suggest partial double bond characters even when single bonds would already fully fill the octet of the central atom. Despite the cases for expanded octets, as mentioned for incomplete octets, it is important to keep in mind that, in general, the octet rule applies.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Expanded Valence Shell Bonding: https://youtu.be/Y4fBdOJBSHI

Outside links

- http://www.saskschools.ca/curr_content/chem20/covmolec/exceptns.html
- student.ccbcmd.edu/~cyau1/121...ctetSp2006.pdf
- http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KEQw9uQ8fUU
- www.rice.edu/~jenky/sports/antiox.html

References

1. Petrucci, Ralph H.; Harwood, William S.; Herring, F. G.; Madura, Jeffrey D. General Chemistry: Principles & Modern Applications. 9th Ed. New Jersey. Pearson Education, Inc. 2007.
2. Moore, John W.; Stanitski, Conrad L.; Jurs, Peter C. Chemistry; The Molecular Science. 2nd Ed. 2004.

Contributors and Attributions

- Mike Blaber (Florida State University)

This page titled 3.7: Exceptions to the Octet Rule is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 10.6: Exceptions to the Octet Rule is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

3.8: Resonance

Learning Objectives

- To understand the concept of resonance.

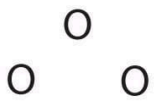
Resonance structures are a set of two or more Lewis Structures that collectively describe the electronic bonding a single polyatomic species including fractional bonds and fractional charges. Resonance structure are capable of describing delocalized electrons that cannot be expressed by a single Lewis formula with an integer number of covalent bonds.

When one Lewis Structure is not enough

Sometimes, even when formal charges are considered, the bonding in some molecules or ions cannot be described by a single Lewis structure. Resonance is a way of describing delocalized electrons within certain molecules or polyatomic ions where the bonding cannot be expressed by a single Lewis formula. A molecule or ion with such delocalized electrons is represented by several contributing structures (also called resonance structures or canonical forms). Such is the case for ozone (O_3), an allotrope of oxygen with a V-shaped structure and an O–O–O angle of 117.5°.

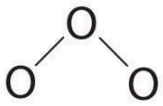
Ozone (O_3)

1. We know that ozone has a V-shaped structure, so one O atom is central:



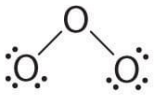
2. Each O atom has 6 valence electrons, for a total of 18 valence electrons.

3. Assigning one bonding pair of electrons to each oxygen–oxygen bond gives



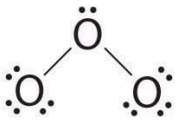
with 14 electrons left over.

4. If we place three lone pairs of electrons on each terminal oxygen, we obtain



and have 2 electrons left over.

5. At this point, both terminal oxygen atoms have octets of electrons. We therefore place the last 2 electrons on the central atom:

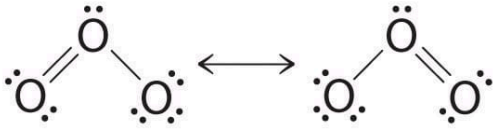


6. The central oxygen has only 6 electrons. We must convert one lone pair on a terminal oxygen atom to a bonding pair of electrons—but which one? Depending on which one we choose, we obtain either



Which is correct? In fact, neither is correct. Both predict one O–O single bond and one O=O double bond. As you will learn, if the bonds were of different types (one single and one double, for example), they would have different lengths. It turns out, however, that both O–O bond distances are identical, 127.2 pm, which is shorter than a typical O–O single bond (148 pm) and longer than the O=O double bond in O_2 (120.7 pm).

Equivalent Lewis dot structures, such as those of ozone, are called resonance structures. The position of the *atoms* is the same in the various resonance structures of a compound, but the position of the *electrons* is different. Double-headed arrows link the different resonance structures of a compound:



The double-headed arrow indicates that the actual electronic structure is an *average* of those shown, not that the molecule oscillates between the two structures.

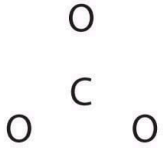
Note

When it is possible to write more than one equivalent resonance structure for a molecule or ion, the actual structure is the *average* of the resonance structures.

The Carbonate (CO_3^{2-}) Ion

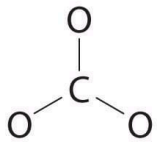
Like ozone, the electronic structure of the carbonate ion cannot be described by a single Lewis electron structure. Unlike O_3, though, the actual structure of CO_3^{2-} is an average of *three* resonance structures.

1. Because carbon is the least electronegative element, we place it in the central position:

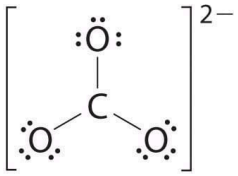


2. Carbon has 4 valence electrons, each oxygen has 6 valence electrons, and there are 2 more for the –2 charge. This gives 4 + (3 × 6) + 2 = 24 valence electrons.

3. Six electrons are used to form three bonding pairs between the oxygen atoms and the carbon:

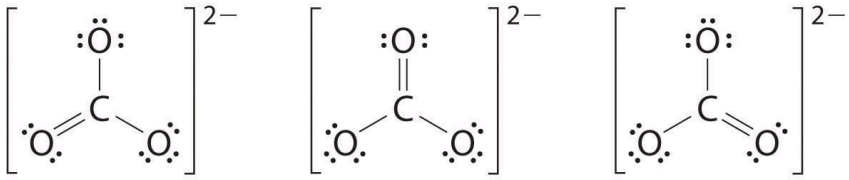


4. We divide the remaining 18 electrons equally among the three oxygen atoms by placing three lone pairs on each and indicating the –2 charge:

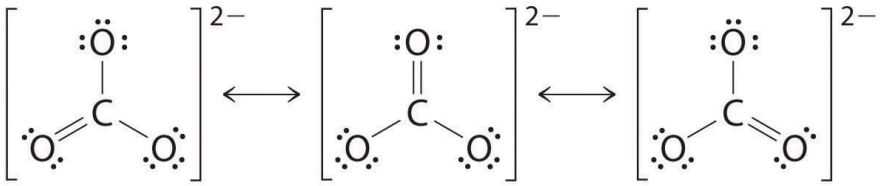


5. No electrons are left for the central atom.

6. At this point, the carbon atom has only 6 valence electrons, so we must take one lone pair from an oxygen and use it to form a carbon–oxygen double bond. In this case, however, there are *three* possible choices:



As with ozone, none of these structures describes the bonding exactly. Each predicts one carbon–oxygen double bond and two carbon–oxygen single bonds, but experimentally all C–O bond lengths are identical. We can write resonance structures (in this case, three of them) for the carbonate ion:

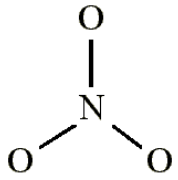


The actual structure is an average of these three resonance structures.

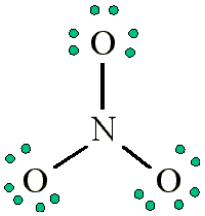
The Nitrate (NO_3^-) ion

1. Count up the valence electrons: (1*5) + (3*6) + 1(ion) = **24** electrons

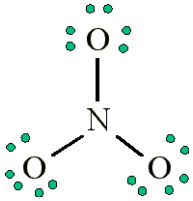
2. Draw the bond connectivities:



3. Add octet electrons to the atoms bonded to the center atom:

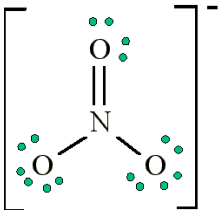


4. Place any leftover electrons (24-24 = **0**) on the center atom:



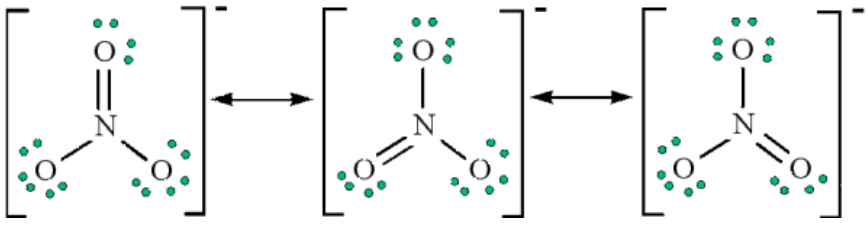
5. Does the central atom have an octet?

- **NO**, it has 6 electrons
- Add a multiple bond (first try a double bond) to see if the central atom can achieve an octet:



6. Does the central atom have an octet?

- YES
- Are there possible resonance structures? YES



Note: We would expect that the bond lengths in the NO_3^- ion to be somewhat shorter than a single bond

Example 3.8.1: Benzene

Benzene is a common organic solvent that was previously used in gasoline; it is no longer used for this purpose, however, because it is now known to be a carcinogen. The benzene molecule (C_6H_6) consists of a regular hexagon of carbon atoms, each of which is also bonded to a hydrogen atom. Use resonance structures to describe the bonding in benzene.

Given: molecular formula and molecular geometry

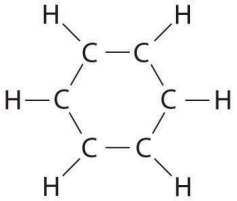
Asked for: resonance structures

Strategy:

A. Draw a structure for benzene illustrating the bonded atoms. Then calculate the number of valence electrons used in this drawing.
B. Subtract this number from the total number of valence electrons in benzene and then locate the remaining electrons such that each atom in the structure reaches an octet.
C. Draw the resonance structures for benzene.

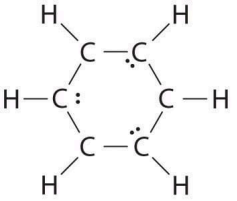
Solution:

A Each hydrogen atom contributes 1 valence electron, and each carbon atom contributes 4 valence electrons, for a total of (6 × 1) + (6 × 4) = 30 valence electrons. If we place a single bonding electron pair between each pair of carbon atoms and between each carbon and a hydrogen atom, we obtain the following:



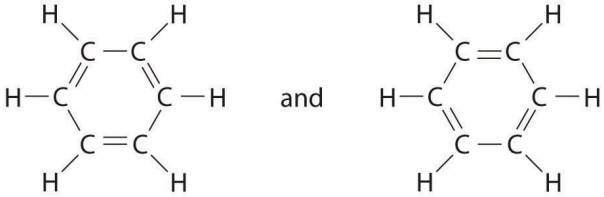
Each carbon atom in this structure has only 6 electrons and has a formal charge of +1, but we have used only 24 of the 30 valence electrons.

B If the 6 remaining electrons are uniformly distributed pairwise on alternate carbon atoms, we obtain the following:

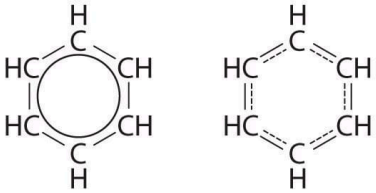


Three carbon atoms now have an octet configuration and a formal charge of –1, while three carbon atoms have only 6 electrons and a formal charge of +1. We can convert each lone pair to a bonding electron pair, which gives each atom an octet of electrons and a formal charge of 0, by making three C=C double bonds.

C There are, however, two ways to do this:



Each structure has alternating double and single bonds, but experimentation shows that each carbon–carbon bond in benzene is identical, with bond lengths (139.9 pm) intermediate between those typically found for a C–C single bond (154 pm) and a C=C double bond (134 pm). We can describe the bonding in benzene using the two resonance structures, but the actual electronic structure is an average of the two. The existence of multiple resonance structures for aromatic hydrocarbons like benzene is often indicated by drawing either a circle or dashed lines inside the hexagon:

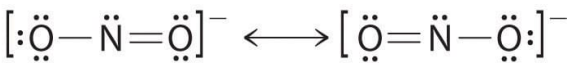


Benzene

Exercise 3.8.1: Nitrate Ion

The sodium salt of nitrite is used to relieve muscle spasms. Draw two resonance structures for the nitrite ion (NO_2^-).

Answer



Resonance structures are particularly common in oxoanions of the *p*-block elements, such as sulfate and phosphate, and in aromatic hydrocarbons, such as benzene and naphthalene.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Resonance Structures: https://youtu.be/aSP0D72MKe4

Summary

Some molecules have two or more chemically equivalent Lewis electron structures, called resonance structures. Resonance is a mental exercise and method within the Valence Bond Theory of bonding that describes the delocalization of electrons within molecules. These structures are written with a **double-headed arrow** between them, indicating that none of the Lewis structures accurately describes the bonding but that the actual structure is an average of the individual resonance structures. Resonance structures are used when one Lewis structure for a single molecule cannot fully describe the bonding that takes place between neighboring atoms relative to the empirical data for the actual bond lengths between those atoms. The net sum of valid resonance structures is defined as a resonance hybrid, which represents the overall delocalization of electrons within the molecule. A molecule that has several resonance structures is more stable than one with fewer. Some resonance structures are more favorable than others.

This page titled 3.8: Resonance is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 10.5: Resonance is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

3.9: Shapes of Molecules

Learning Objectives

- To use the VSEPR model to predict molecular geometries.
- To predict whether a molecule has a dipole moment.

The Lewis electron-pair approach can be used to predict the number and types of bonds between the atoms in a substance, and it indicates which atoms have lone pairs of electrons. This approach gives no information about the actual arrangement of atoms in space, however. We continue our discussion of structure and bonding by introducing the **valence-shell electron-pair repulsion** (VSEPR) model (pronounced "vesper"), which can be used to predict the shapes of many molecules and polyatomic ions. Keep in mind, however, that the VSEPR model, like any model, is a limited representation of reality; the model provides no information about bond lengths or the presence of multiple bonds.

The VSEPR Model

The VSEPR model can predict the structure of nearly any molecule or polyatomic ion in which the central atom is a nonmetal, as well as the structures of many molecules and polyatomic ions with a central metal atom. The premise of the VSEPR theory is that electron pairs located in bonds and lone pairs repel each other and will therefore adopt the geometry that places electron pairs as far apart from each other as possible. This theory is very simplistic and does not account for the subtleties of orbital interactions that influence molecular shapes; however, the simple VSEPR counting procedure accurately predicts the three-dimensional structures of a large number of compounds, which cannot be predicted using the Lewis electron-pair approach.

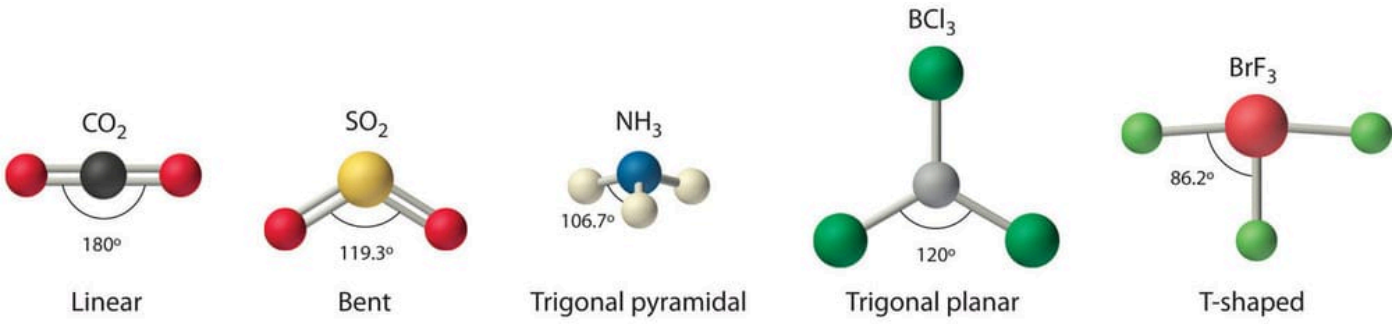


Figure 3.9.1: Common Structures for Molecules and Polyatomic Ions That Consist of a Central Atom Bonded to Two or Three Other Atoms. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

We can use the VSEPR model to predict the geometry of most polyatomic molecules and ions by focusing only on the number of electron pairs around the *central atom*, ignoring all other valence electrons present. According to this model, valence electrons in the Lewis structure form *groups*, which may consist of a single bond, a double bond, a triple bond, a lone pair of electrons, or even a single unpaired electron, which in the VSEPR model is counted as a lone pair. Because electrons repel each other electrostatically, the most stable arrangement of electron groups (i.e., the one with the lowest energy) is the one that minimizes repulsions. Groups are positioned around the central atom in a way that produces the molecular structure with the lowest energy, as illustrated in Figures 3.9.1 and 3.9.2.

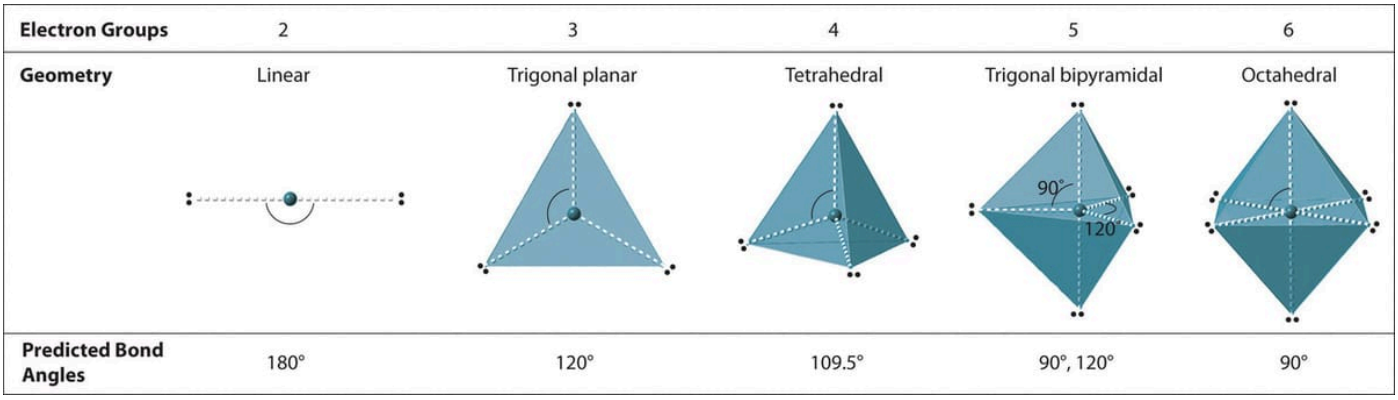


Figure 3.9.2: Electron Geometries for Species with Two to Six Electron Groups. Groups are placed around the central atom in a way that produces a molecular structure with the lowest energy, that is, the one that minimizes repulsions. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

In the VSEPR model, the molecule or polyatomic ion is given an AX_mE_n designation, where A is the central atom, X is a bonded atom, E is a nonbonding valence electron group (usually a lone pair of electrons), and *m* and *n* are integers. Each group around the central atom is designated as a bonding pair (BP) or lone (nonbonding) pair (LP). From the BP and LP interactions we can predict both the relative positions of the atoms and the angles between the bonds, called the bond angles. Using this information, we can describe the molecular geometry, the arrangement of the *bonded atoms* in a molecule or polyatomic ion.

VESPR Produce to predict Molecular geometry

This VESPR procedure is summarized as follows:

1. Draw the Lewis electron structure of the molecule or polyatomic ion.
2. Determine the electron group arrangement around the central atom that minimizes repulsions.
3. Assign an AX_mE_n designation; then identify the LP–LP, LP–BP, or BP–BP interactions and predict deviations from ideal bond angles.
4. Describe the molecular geometry.

We will illustrate the use of this procedure with several examples, beginning with atoms with two electron groups. In our discussion we will refer to Figure 3.9.2 and Figure 3.9.3, which summarize the common molecular geometries and idealized bond angles of molecules and ions with two to six electron groups.

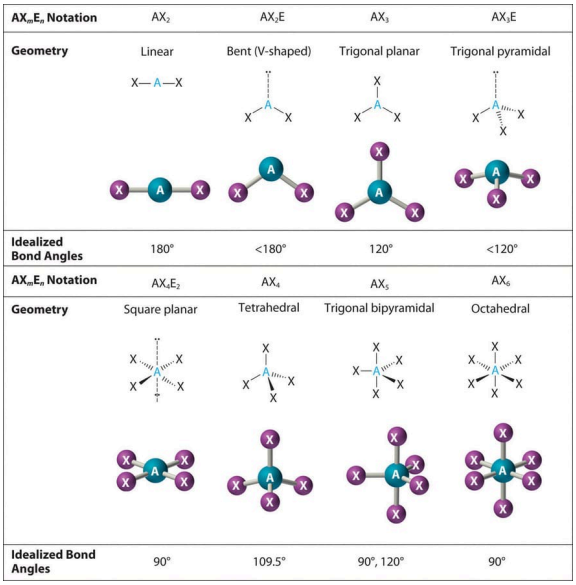


Figure 3.9.3: Common Molecular Geometries for Species with Two to Six Electron Groups. Lone pairs are shown using a dashed line. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

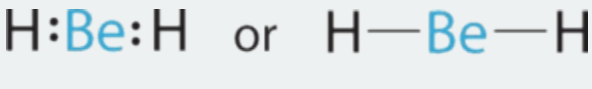
Linear, bent, trigonal planar, trigonal pyramidal, square planar, tetrahedral, trigonal bipyramidal, octahedral.

Two Electron Groups

Our first example is a molecule with two bonded atoms and no lone pairs of electrons, BeH_2.

AX_2 Molecules: BeH_2

1. The central atom, beryllium, contributes two valence electrons, and each hydrogen atom contributes one. The Lewis electron structure is



Lewis structure

Figure 3.9.2 that the arrangement that minimizes repulsions places the groups 180° apart. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

3. Both groups around the central atom are bonding pairs (BP). Thus BeH_2 is designated as AX_2.

4. From Figure 3.9.3 we see that with two bonding pairs, the molecular geometry that minimizes repulsions in BeH_2 is *linear*.

AX_2 Molecules: CO_2

1. The central atom, carbon, contributes four valence electrons, and each oxygen atom contributes six. The Lewis electron structure is



2. The carbon atom forms two double bonds. Each double bond is a group, so there are two electron groups around the central atom. Like BeH_2, the arrangement that minimizes repulsions places the groups 180° apart.

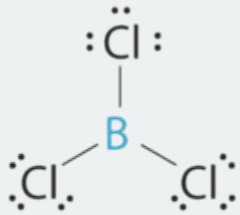
3. Once again, both groups around the central atom are bonding pairs (BP), so CO_2 is designated as AX_2.

4. VSEPR only recognizes groups around the *central* atom. Thus the lone pairs on the oxygen atoms do not influence the molecular geometry. With two bonding pairs on the central atom and no lone pairs, the molecular geometry of CO_2 is linear (Figure 3.9.3). The structure of CO_2 is shown in Figure 3.9.1.

Three Electron Groups

AX_3 Molecules: BCl_3

1. The central atom, boron, contributes three valence electrons, and each chlorine atom contributes seven valence electrons. The Lewis electron structure is



Lewis structure

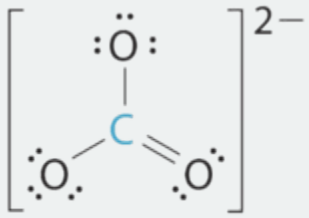
Figure 3.9.2): (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

3. All electron groups are bonding pairs (BP), so the structure is designated as AX_3.

4. From Figure 3.9.3 we see that with three bonding pairs around the central atom, the molecular geometry of BCl_3 is *trigonal planar*, as shown in Figure 3.9.2.

AX_3 Molecules: CO_3^{2-}

1. The central atom, carbon, has four valence electrons, and each oxygen atom has six valence electrons. As you learned previously, the Lewis electron structure of one of three resonance forms is represented as



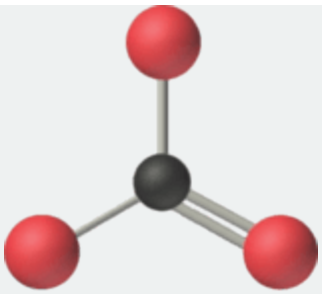
Lewis structure

Figure 3.9.2).

The three oxygens are arranged in a triangular shape with carbon at the center. Two of the oxygens have three lone pairs. One ocht oxygens has 2 lone pairs and is double bonded to the carbon. The molecule has a minus 2 charge.

3. All electron groups are bonding pairs (BP). With three bonding groups around the central atom, the structure is designated as AX_3.

4. We see from Figure 3.9.3 that the molecular geometry of CO_3^{2-} is trigonal planar with bond angles of 120°.



In our next example we encounter the effects of lone pairs and multiple bonds on molecular geometry for the first time.

AX_2E Molecules: SO_2

1. The central atom, sulfur, has 6 valence electrons, as does each oxygen atom. With 18 valence electrons, the Lewis electron structure is shown below.

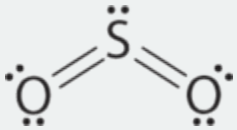


Figure 3.9.2): (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

The two oxygens are double bonded to the sulfur. The oxygens have 2 lone pairs while sulfur had one lone pair.

3. There are two bonding pairs and one lone pair, so the structure is designated as AX_2E. This designation has a total of three electron pairs, two X and one E. Because a lone pair is not shared by two nuclei, it occupies more space near the central atom than a bonding pair (Figure 3.9.4). Thus bonding pairs and lone pairs repel each other electrostatically in the order BP–BP < LP–BP < LP–LP. In SO_2, we have one BP–BP interaction and two LP–BP interactions.

4. The molecular geometry is described only by the positions of the nuclei, *not* by the positions of the lone pairs. Thus with two nuclei and one lone pair the shape is *bent*, or *V shaped*, which can be viewed as a trigonal planar arrangement with a missing vertex (Figures 3.9.2 and 3.9.3). The O-S-O bond angle is expected to be *less than* 120° because of the extra space taken up by the lone pair.

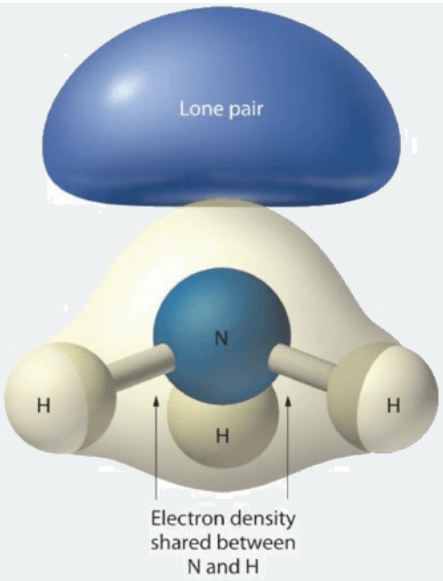
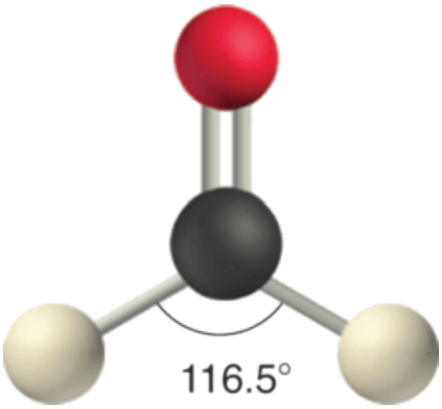


Figure 3.9.4: The Difference in the Space Occupied by a Lone Pair of Electrons and by a Bonding Pair. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

As with SO_2, this composite model of electron distribution and negative electrostatic potential in ammonia shows that a lone pair of electrons occupies a larger region of space around the nitrogen atom than does a bonding pair of electrons that is shared with a hydrogen atom.

Like lone pairs of electrons, multiple bonds occupy more space around the central atom than a single bond, which can cause other bond angles to be somewhat smaller than expected. This is because a multiple bond has a higher electron density than a single bond, so its electrons occupy more space than those of a single bond. For example, in a molecule such as CH_2O (AX_3), whose structure is shown below, the double bond repels the single bonds more strongly than the single bonds repel each other. This causes a deviation from ideal geometry (an H–C–H bond angle of 116.5° rather than 120°).

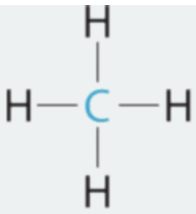


Four Electron Groups

One of the limitations of Lewis structures is that they depict molecules and ions in only two dimensions. With four electron groups, we must learn to show molecules and ions in three dimensions.

AX_4 Molecules: CH_4

1. The central atom, carbon, contributes four valence electrons, and each hydrogen atom has one valence electron, so the full Lewis electron structure is

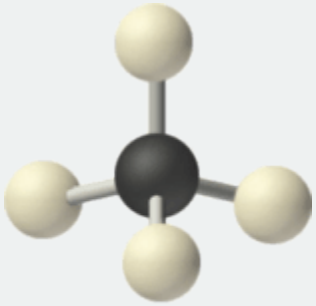


Lewis structure

2. There are four electron groups around the central atom. As shown in Figure 3.9.2, repulsions are minimized by placing the groups in the corners of a tetrahedron with bond angles of 109.5°.

3. All electron groups are bonding pairs, so the structure is designated as AX_4.

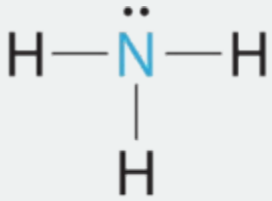
4. With four bonding pairs, the molecular geometry of methane is *tetrahedral* (Figure 3.9.3).



Molecular geometry
(tetrahedral)

AX_3E Molecules: NH_3

1. In ammonia, the central atom, nitrogen, has five valence electrons and each hydrogen donates one valence electron, producing the Lewis electron structure



Lewis structure

2. There are four electron groups around nitrogen, three bonding pairs and one lone pair. Repulsions are minimized by directing each hydrogen atom and the lone pair to the corners of a tetrahedron.

3. With three bonding pairs and one lone pair, the structure is designated as AX_3E. This designation has a total of four electron pairs, three X and one E. We expect the LP–BP interactions to cause the bonding pair angles to deviate significantly from the angles of a perfect tetrahedron.

4. There are three nuclei and one lone pair, so the molecular geometry is *trigonal pyramidal*. In essence, this is a tetrahedron with a vertex missing (Figure 3.9.3). However, the H–N–H bond angles are less than the ideal angle of 109.5° because of LP–BP repulsions (Figure 3.9.3 and Figure 3.9.4).

AX_2E_2 Molecules: H_2O

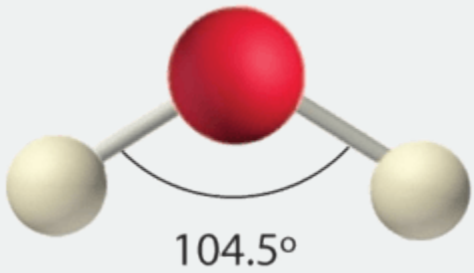
1. Oxygen has six valence electrons and each hydrogen has one valence electron, producing the Lewis electron structure



Figure 3.9.2: (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

3. With two bonding pairs and two lone pairs, the structure is designated as AX_2E_2 with a total of four electron pairs. Due to LP–LP, LP–BP, and BP–BP interactions, we expect a significant deviation from idealized tetrahedral angles.

4. With two hydrogen atoms and two lone pairs of electrons, the structure has significant lone pair interactions. There are two nuclei about the central atom, so the molecular shape is *bent*, or *V shaped*, with an H–O–H angle that is even less than the H–N–H angles in NH_3, as we would expect because of the presence of two lone pairs of electrons on the central atom rather than one. This molecular shape is essentially a tetrahedron with two missing vertices.



Five Electron Groups

In previous examples it did not matter where we placed the electron groups because all positions were equivalent. In some cases, however, the positions are not equivalent. We encounter this situation for the first time with five electron groups.

AX_5 Molecules: PCl_5

1. Phosphorus has five valence electrons and each chlorine has seven valence electrons, so the Lewis electron structure of PCl_5 is

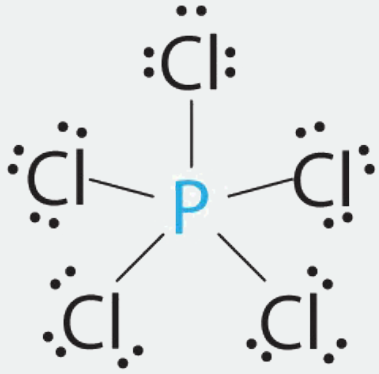
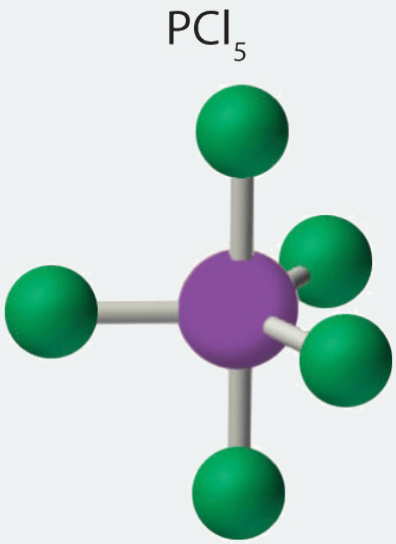


Figure 3.9.2): (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

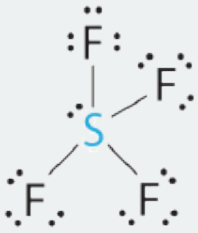
3. All electron groups are bonding pairs, so the structure is designated as AX_5. There are no lone pair interactions.

4. The molecular geometry of PCl_5 is *trigonal bipyramidal*, as shown in Figure 3.9.3. The molecule has three atoms in a plane in *equatorial* positions and two atoms above and below the plane in *axial* positions. The three equatorial positions are separated by 120° from one another, and the two axial positions are at 90° to the equatorial plane. The axial and equatorial positions are not chemically equivalent, as we will see in our next example.



AX_4E Molecules: SF_4

1. The sulfur atom has six valence electrons and each fluorine has seven valence electrons, so the Lewis electron structure is



Lewis structure

Four fluorenes are bonded to a central sulfur. Each fluorine has three lone pairs. Sulfur has one lone pair.

With an expanded valence, this species is an exception to the octet rule.

2. There are five groups around sulfur, four bonding pairs and one lone pair. With five electron groups, the lowest energy arrangement is a trigonal bipyramid, as shown in Figure 3.9.2.

3. We designate SF_4 as AX_4E; it has a total of five electron pairs. However, because the axial and equatorial positions are not chemically equivalent, where do we place the lone pair? If we place the lone pair in the axial position, we have three LP–BP repulsions at 90°. If we place it in the equatorial position, we have two 90° LP–BP repulsions at 90°. With fewer 90° LP–BP repulsions, we can predict that the structure with the lone pair of electrons in the *equatorial position is more stable than the one with the lone pair in the axial position*. We also expect a deviation from ideal geometry because a lone pair of electrons occupies more space than a bonding pair.

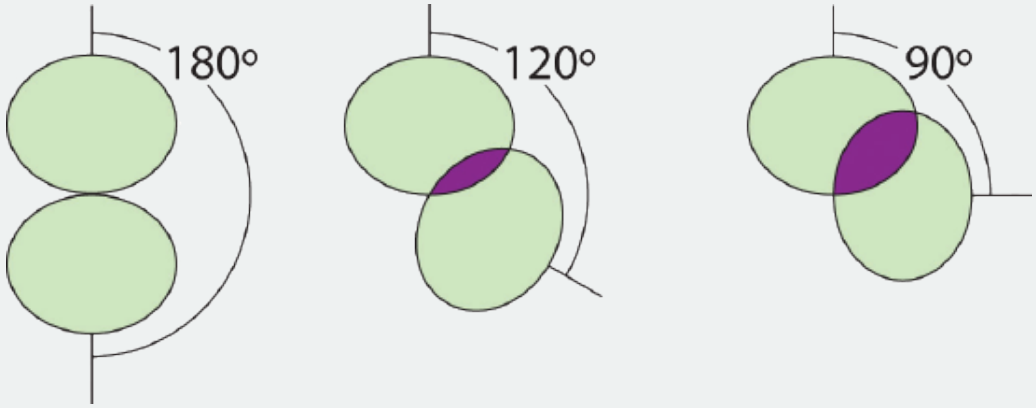
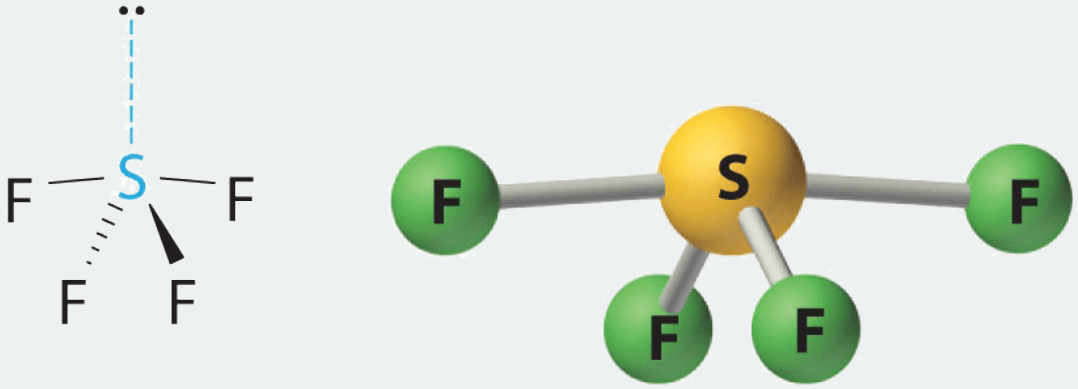


Figure 3.9.5: Illustration of the Area Shared by Two Electron Pairs versus the Angle between Them

180 degree angle has no shared space between teo electron pair, 120 degree angle has some shared area between two electron pairs. 90 degree angle has more shared space than 120.

At 90°, the two electron pairs share a relatively large region of space, which leads to strong repulsive electron–electron interactions.

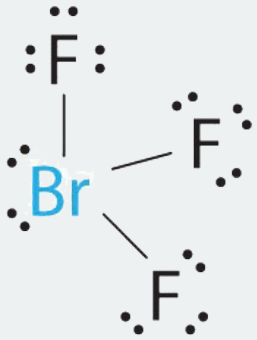
4. With four nuclei and one lone pair of electrons, the molecular structure is based on a trigonal bipyramid with a missing equatorial vertex; it is described as a *seesaw*. The F_{axial}–S–F_{axial} angle is 173° rather than 180° because of the lone pair of electrons in the equatorial plane.



Molecular geometry (seesaw)

AX_3E_2 Molecules: BrF_3

1. The bromine atom has seven valence electrons, and each fluorine has seven valence electrons, so the Lewis electron structure is



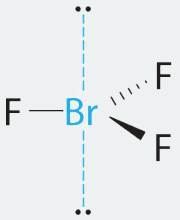
Lewis structure

Three fluorines are bonded to a central bromine. Each fluorine has three lone pairs, Bromine has two lone pairs.

Once again, we have a compound that is an exception to the octet rule.

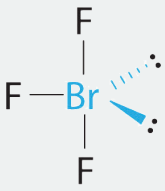
2. There are five groups around the central atom, three bonding pairs and two lone pairs. We again direct the groups toward the vertices of a trigonal bipyramid.

3. With three bonding pairs and two lone pairs, the structural designation is AX_3E_2 with a total of five electron pairs. Because the axial and equatorial positions are not equivalent, we must decide how to arrange the groups to minimize repulsions. If we place both lone pairs in the axial positions, we have six LP–BP repulsions at 90°. If both are in the equatorial positions, we have four LP–BP repulsions at 90°. If one lone pair is axial and the other equatorial, we have one LP–LP repulsion at 90° and three LP–BP repulsions at 90°:



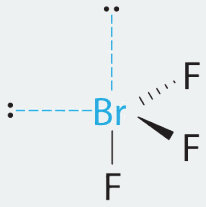
Lone pairs axial

(a)



Lone pairs equatorial

(b)



Lone pairs axial and equatorial

(c)

Interactions

90° LP–LP	0	0	1
90° LP–BP	6	4	3

If the lone pairs are axiam, the 90 degree LP-LP interactions are o and the 90 degree LP-BP interaction is zero. If the Lone pares are equatorial there are zero 90 degree LP-LP interactions and four 90 degree LP-BP intereactions. If the lone pairs are axial and equatorial there is one 90 degree LP-LP interaction and three 90 degree LP-BP interaction.

Structure (c) can be eliminated because it has a LP–LP interaction at 90°. Structure (b), with fewer LP–BP repulsions at 90° than (a), is lower in energy. However, we predict a deviation in bond angles because of the presence of the two lone pairs of electrons.

4. The three nuclei in BrF_3 determine its molecular structure, which is described as *T shaped*. This is essentially a trigonal bipyramid that is missing two equatorial vertices. The F_{axial}–Br–F_{axial} angle is 172°, less than 180° because of LP–BP repulsions (Figure 3.9.2.1).

Because lone pairs occupy more space around the central atom than bonding pairs, electrostatic repulsions are more important for lone pairs than for bonding pairs.

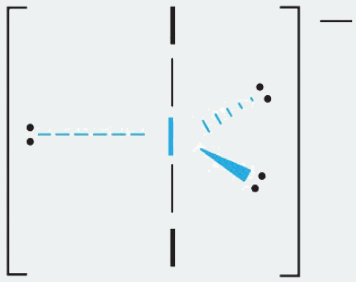
AX_2E_3 Molecules: I_3^-

1. Each iodine atom contributes seven electrons and the negative charge one, so the Lewis electron structure is



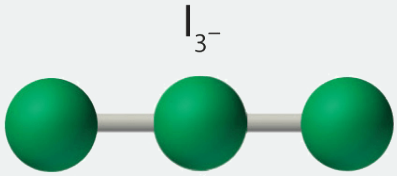
2. There are five electron groups about the central atom in I_3^-, two bonding pairs and three lone pairs. To minimize repulsions, the groups are directed to the corners of a trigonal bipyramid.

3. With two bonding pairs and three lone pairs, I_3^- has a total of five electron pairs and is designated as AX_2E_3. We must now decide how to arrange the lone pairs of electrons in a trigonal bipyramid in a way that minimizes repulsions. Placing them in the axial positions eliminates 90° LP–LP repulsions and minimizes the number of 90° LP–BP repulsions.



The three lone pairs of electrons have equivalent interactions with the three iodine atoms, so we do not expect any deviations in bonding angles.

4. With three nuclei and three lone pairs of electrons, the molecular geometry of I_3^- is linear. This can be described as a trigonal bipyramid with three equatorial vertices missing. The ion has an I–I–I angle of 180°, as expected.

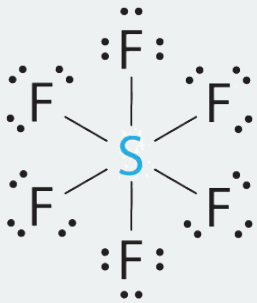


Six Electron Groups

Six electron groups form an *octahedron*, a polyhedron made of identical equilateral triangles and six identical vertices (Figure 3.9.2.)

AX_6 Molecules: SF_6

1. The central atom, sulfur, contributes six valence electrons, and each fluorine atom has seven valence electrons, so the Lewis electron structure is



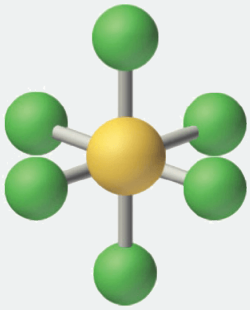
Lewis structure

With an expanded valence, this species is an exception to the octet rule.

2. There are six electron groups around the central atom, each a bonding pair. We see from Figure 3.9.2 that the geometry that minimizes repulsions is *octahedral*.

3. With only bonding pairs, SF_6 is designated as AX_6. All positions are chemically equivalent, so all electronic interactions are equivalent.

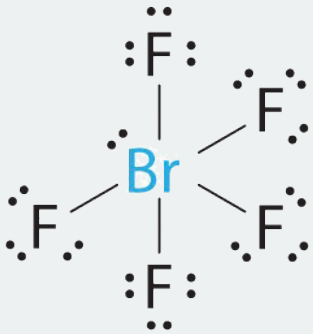
4. There are six nuclei, so the molecular geometry of SF_6 is octahedral.



Molecular geometry
(octahedral)

AX_5E Molecules: BrF_5

1. The central atom, bromine, has seven valence electrons, as does each fluorine, so the Lewis electron structure is

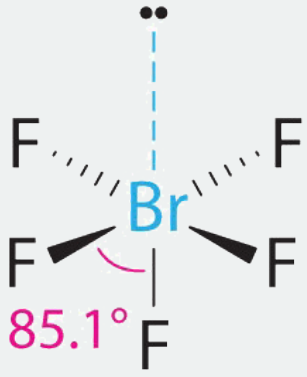


Lewis structure

Five fluorines are bonded to a central bromine. Each fluorine has three lone pairs, Bromine has one lone pair.

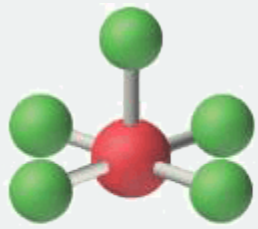
With its expanded valence, this species is an exception to the octet rule.

2. There are six electron groups around the Br, five bonding pairs and one lone pair. Placing five F atoms around Br while minimizing BP–BP and LP–BP repulsions gives the following structure:



3. With five bonding pairs and one lone pair, BrF_5 is designated as AX_5E; it has a total of six electron pairs. The BrF_5 structure has four fluorine atoms in a plane in an equatorial position and one fluorine atom and the lone pair of electrons in the axial positions. We expect all F_{axial}–Br–$F_{equatorial}$ angles to be less than 90° because of the lone pair of electrons, which occupies more space than the bonding electron pairs.

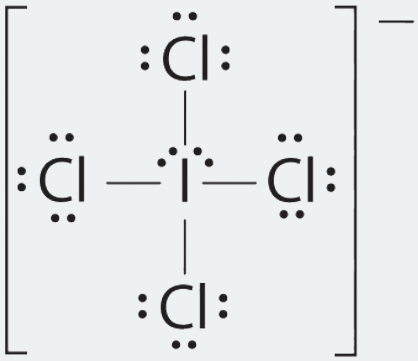
4. With five nuclei surrounding the central atom, the molecular structure is based on an octahedron with a vertex missing. This molecular structure is *square pyramidal*. The F_{axial}–B–$F_{equatorial}$ angles are 85.1°, less than 90° because of LP–BP repulsions.



Molecular geometry
(square pyramidal)

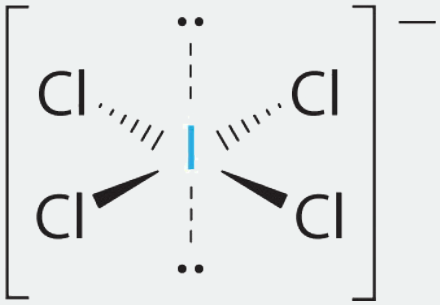
AX_4E_2 Molecules: ICl_4^-

1. The central atom, iodine, contributes seven electrons. Each chlorine contributes seven, and there is a single negative charge. The Lewis electron structure is



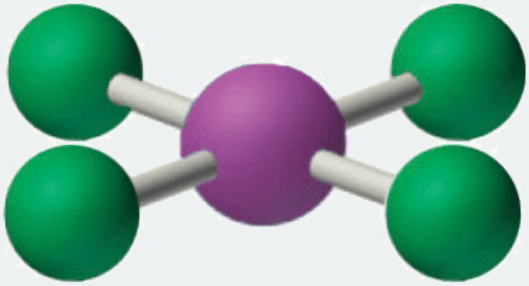
Four chlorines are bonded to a central iodine. Each chlorine has three electron pairs. The iodine has two electron pairs. The molecule is negatively charged.

2. There are six electron groups around the central atom, four bonding pairs and two lone pairs. The structure that minimizes LP–LP, LP–BP, and BP–BP repulsions is



3. ICl_4^- is designated as AX_4E_2 and has a total of six electron pairs. Although there are lone pairs of electrons, with four bonding electron pairs in the equatorial plane and the lone pairs of electrons in the axial positions, all LP–BP repulsions are the same. Therefore, we do not expect any deviation in the Cl–I–Cl bond angles.

4. With five nuclei, the ICl4– ion forms a molecular structure that is *square planar*, an octahedron with two opposite vertices missing.



The relationship between the number of electron groups around a central atom, the number of lone pairs of electrons, and the molecular geometry is summarized in Figure 3.9.6.

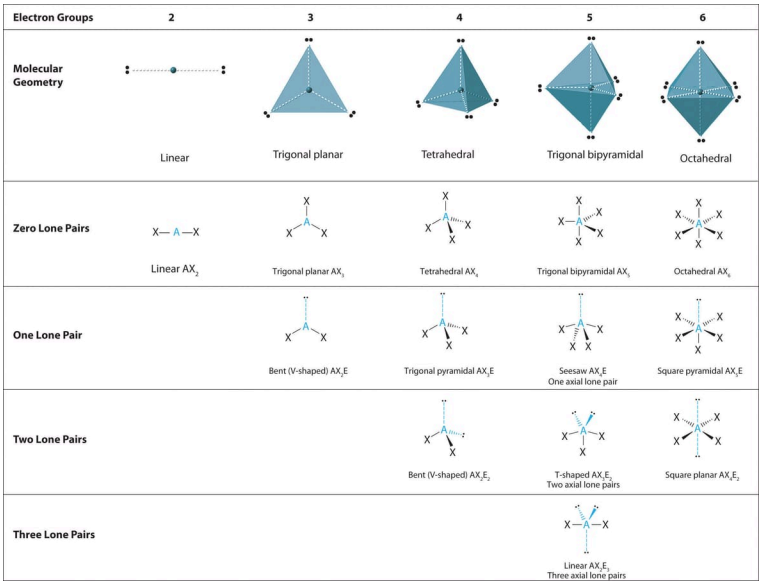


Figure 3.9.6***:*** *Overview of Molecular Geometries*

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Example 3.9.1

Using the VSEPR model, predict the molecular geometry of each molecule or ion.

1. PF_5 (phosphorus pentafluoride, a catalyst used in certain organic reactions)
2. H_3O^+ (hydronium ion)

Given: two chemical species

Asked for: molecular geometry

Strategy:

A. Draw the Lewis electron structure of the molecule or polyatomic ion.
B. Determine the electron group arrangement around the central atom that minimizes repulsions.
C. Assign an AX_mE_n designation; then identify the LP–LP, LP–BP, or BP–BP interactions and predict deviations in bond angles.
D. Describe the molecular geometry.

Solution:

1. **A** The central atom, P, has five valence electrons and each fluorine has seven valence electrons, so the Lewis structure of PF_5 is

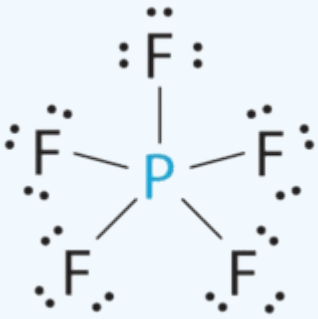


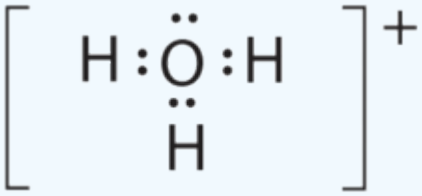
Figure 3.9.6): (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

C All electron groups are bonding pairs, so PF_5 is designated as AX_5. Notice that this gives a total of five electron pairs. With no lone pair repulsions, we do not expect any bond angles to deviate from the ideal.

D The PF_5 molecule has five nuclei and no lone pairs of electrons, so its molecular geometry is trigonal bipyramidal.



2. **A** The central atom, O, has six valence electrons, and each H atom contributes one valence electron. Subtracting one electron for the positive charge gives a total of eight valence electrons, so the Lewis electron structure is

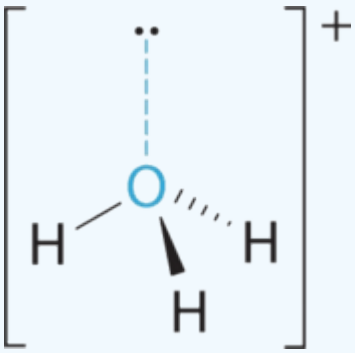


Three hydrogens are bonded to a central oxygen. The oxygen has two lone pairs. The molecule has a charge of plus one.

B There are four electron groups around oxygen, three bonding pairs and one lone pair. Like NH_3, repulsions are minimized by directing each hydrogen atom and the lone pair to the corners of a tetrahedron.

C With three bonding pairs and one lone pair, the structure is designated as AX_3E and has a total of four electron pairs (three X and one E). We expect the LP–BP interactions to cause the bonding pair angles to deviate significantly from the angles of a perfect tetrahedron.

D There are three nuclei and one lone pair, so the molecular geometry is *trigonal pyramidal*, in essence a tetrahedron missing a vertex. However, the H–O–H bond angles are less than the ideal angle of 109.5° because of LP–BP repulsions:



Exercise 3.9.1

Using the VSEPR model, predict the molecular geometry of each molecule or ion.

a. XeO_3
b. PF_6^-
c. NO_2^+

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Example 3.9.2

Predict the molecular geometry of each molecule.

1. XeF_2
2. $SnCl_2$

Given: two chemical compounds

Asked for: molecular geometry

Strategy:

Use the strategy given in Example3.9.1.

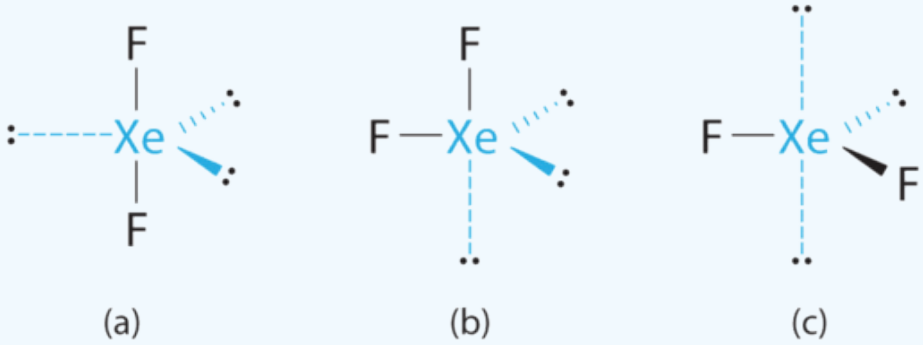
Solution:

1. **A** Xenon contributes eight electrons and each fluorine seven valence electrons, so the Lewis electron structure is



B There are five electron groups around the central atom, two bonding pairs and three lone pairs. Repulsions are minimized by placing the groups in the corners of a trigonal bipyramid.

C From B, XeF_2 is designated as AX_2E_3 and has a total of five electron pairs (two X and three E). With three lone pairs about the central atom, we can arrange the two F atoms in three possible ways: both F atoms can be axial, one can be axial and one equatorial, or both can be equatorial:



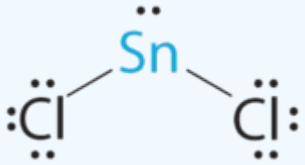
Interactions			
90 LP–LP	0	2	2

If the two F atoms are axial ther are zero 90 LP-LP interactions. If the two F atoms are axial and equatorial or just equatorial, there are 2 90 LP-LP interactions.

The structure with the lowest energy is the one that minimizes LP–LP repulsions. Both (b) and (c) have two 90° LP–LP interactions, whereas structure (a) has none. Thus both F atoms are in the axial positions, like the two iodine atoms around the central iodine in I_3^-. All LP–BP interactions are equivalent, so we do not expect a deviation from an ideal 180° in the F–Xe–F bond angle.

D With two nuclei about the central atom, the molecular geometry of XeF_2 is linear. It is a trigonal bipyramid with three missing equatorial vertices.

2. **A** The tin atom donates 4 valence electrons and each chlorine atom donates 7 valence electrons. With 18 valence electrons, the Lewis electron structure is



Two chlorines are bonded to a central tin. Each chlorine has three lone pairs. Tin has one lone pair.

B There are three electron groups around the central atom, two bonding groups and one lone pair of electrons. To minimize repulsions the three groups are initially placed at 120° angles from each other.

C From B we designate $SnCl_2$ as AX_2E. It has a total of three electron pairs, two X and one E. Because the lone pair of electrons occupies more space than the bonding pairs, we expect a decrease in the Cl–Sn–Cl bond angle due to increased LP–BP repulsions.

D With two nuclei around the central atom and one lone pair of electrons, the molecular geometry of $SnCl_2$ is bent, like SO_2, but with a Cl–Sn–Cl bond angle of 95°. The molecular geometry can be described as a trigonal planar arrangement with one vertex missing.

Exercise 3.9.2

Predict the molecular geometry of each molecule.

a. SO_3
b. XeF_4

Answer a available at the end of this section.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

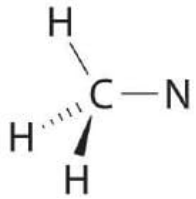
View this YouTube Video online

Molecules with No Single Central Atom

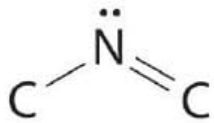
The VSEPR model can be used to predict the structure of somewhat more complex molecules with no single central atom by treating them as linked AX_mE_n fragments. We will demonstrate with methyl isocyanate (CH_3–N=C=O), a volatile and highly toxic molecule that is used to produce the pesticide Sevin. In 1984, large quantities of Sevin were accidentally released in Bhopal, India, when water leaked into storage tanks. The resulting highly exothermic reaction caused a rapid increase in pressure that ruptured the tanks, releasing large amounts of methyl isocyanate that killed approximately 3800 people and wholly or partially disabled about 50,000 others. In addition, there was significant damage to livestock and crops.

We can treat methyl isocyanate as linked AX_mE_n fragments beginning with the carbon atom at the left, which is connected to three H atoms and one N atom by single bonds. The four bonds around carbon mean that it must be surrounded by four bonding electron pairs in a configuration similar to AX_4. We can therefore predict the CH_3–N portion of the molecule to be roughly

tetrahedral, similar to methane:



The nitrogen atom is connected to one carbon by a single bond and to the other carbon by a double bond, producing a total of three bonds, C–N=C. For nitrogen to have an octet of electrons, it must also have a lone pair:



One carbon bonded to nitrogen and another carbon double bonded to the nitrogen. The nitrogen has one lone pair.

Because multiple bonds are not shown in the VSEPR model, the nitrogen is effectively surrounded by three electron pairs. Thus according to the VSEPR model, the C–N=C fragment should be bent with an angle less than 120°.

The carbon in the –N=C=O fragment is doubly bonded to both nitrogen and oxygen, which in the VSEPR model gives carbon a total of two electron pairs. The N=C=O angle should therefore be 180°, or linear. The three fragments combine to give the following structure:

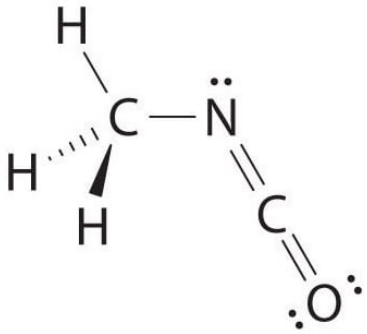


Figure 3.9.7).

Three hydrogens are bonded to a carbon. The carbon is also bonded to a nitrogen. The nitrogen is double bonded to another carbon. The second carbon is double bonded to an oxygen. The nitrogen has one lone pair. The oxygen has two lone pairs.

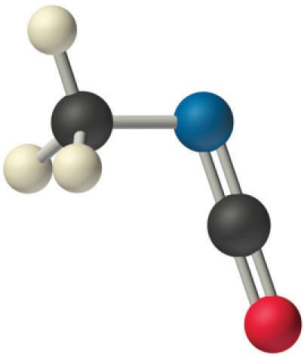


Figure 3.9.7: The Experimentally Determined Structure of Methyl Isocyanate

Certain patterns are seen in the structures of moderately complex molecules. For example, carbon atoms with four bonds (such as the carbon on the left in methyl isocyanate) are generally tetrahedral. Similarly, the carbon atom on the right has two double bonds that are similar to those in CO_2, so its geometry, like that of CO_2, is linear. Recognizing similarities to simpler molecules

will help you predict the molecular geometries of more complex molecules.

Example 3.9.3

Use the VSEPR model to predict the molecular geometry of propyne ($H_3C–C≡CH$), a gas with some anesthetic properties.

Given: chemical compound

Asked for: molecular geometry

Strategy:

Count the number of electron groups around each carbon, recognizing that in the VSEPR model, a multiple bond counts as a single group. Use Figure 3.9.3 to determine the molecular geometry around each carbon atom and then deduce the structure of the molecule as a whole.

Solution:

Because the carbon atom on the left is bonded to four other atoms, we know that it is approximately tetrahedral. The next two carbon atoms share a triple bond, and each has an additional single bond. Because a multiple bond is counted as a single bond in the VSEPR model, each carbon atom behaves as if it had two electron groups. This means that both of these carbons are linear, with C–C≡C and C≡C–H angles of 180°.

Exercise 3.9.3

Predict the geometry of allene ($H_2C=C=CH_2$), a compound with narcotic properties that is used to make more complex organic molecules.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Molecular Dipole Moments

You previously learned how to calculate the **dipole moments** of simple diatomic molecules. In more complex molecules with polar covalent bonds, the three-dimensional geometry and the compound's symmetry determine whether there is a net dipole moment. Mathematically, dipole moments are *vectors*; they possess both a *magnitude* and a *direction*. The dipole moment of a molecule is therefore the *vector sum* of the dipole moments of the individual bonds in the molecule. If the individual bond dipole moments cancel one another, there is no net dipole moment. Such is the case for CO_2, a linear molecule (Figure 3.9.8*a*). Each C–O bond in CO_2 is polar, yet experiments show that the CO_2 molecule has no dipole moment. Because the two C–O bond dipoles in CO_2 are equal in magnitude and oriented at 180° to each other, they cancel. As a result, the CO_2 molecule has no *net* dipole moment even though it has a substantial separation of charge. In contrast, the H_2O molecule is not linear (Figure 3.9.8*b*); it is bent in three-dimensional space, so the dipole moments do not cancel each other. Thus a molecule such as H_2O has a net dipole moment. We expect the concentration of negative charge to be on the oxygen, the more electronegative atom, and positive charge on the two hydrogens. This charge polarization allows H_2O to hydrogen-bond to other polarized or charged species, including other water molecules.

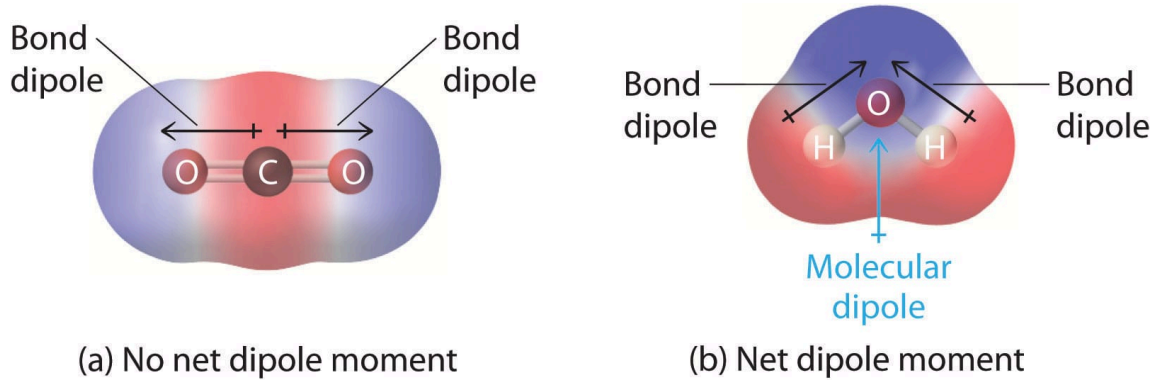


Figure 3.9.8: How Individual Bond Dipole Moments Are Added Together to Give an Overall Molecular Dipole Moment for Two Triatomic Molecules with Different Structures. (a) In CO_2, the C–O bond dipoles are equal in magnitude but oriented in opposite directions (at 180°). Their vector sum is zero, so CO_2 therefore has no net dipole. (b) In H_2O, the O–H bond dipoles are also equal in magnitude, but they are oriented at 104.5° to each other. Hence the vector sum is not zero, and H_2O has a net dipole moment.

Other examples of molecules with polar bonds are shown in Figure 3.9.9. In molecular geometries that are highly symmetrical (most notably tetrahedral and square planar, trigonal bipyramidal, and octahedral), individual bond dipole moments completely cancel, and there is no net dipole moment. Although a molecule like $CHCl_3$ is best described as tetrahedral, the atoms bonded to carbon are not identical. Consequently, the bond dipole moments cannot cancel one another, and the molecule has a dipole moment. Due to the arrangement of the bonds in molecules that have V-shaped, trigonal pyramidal, seesaw, T-shaped, and square pyramidal geometries, the bond dipole moments cannot cancel one another. Consequently, molecules with these geometries always have a nonzero dipole moment. Molecules with asymmetrical charge distributions have a net dipole moment.

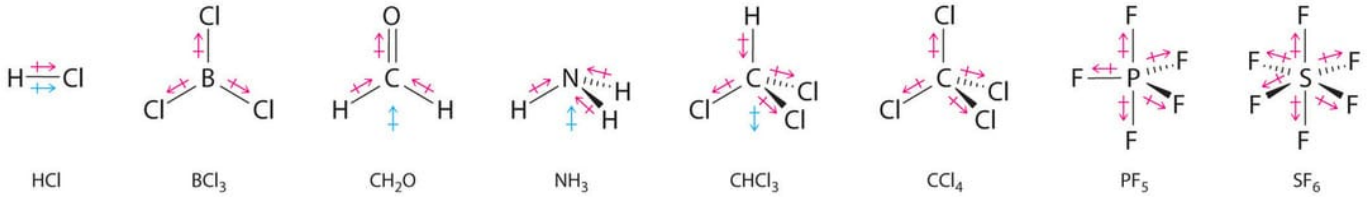


Figure 3.9.9: Molecules with Polar Bonds. Individual bond dipole moments are indicated in red. Due to their different three-dimensional structures, some molecules with polar bonds have a net dipole moment (HCl, CH_2O, NH_3, and $CHCl_3$), indicated in blue, whereas others do not because the bond dipole moments cancel (BCl_3, CCl_4, PF_5, and SF_6).

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Example 3.9.4

Which molecule(s) has a net dipole moment?

a. H_2S
b. NHF_2
c. BF_3

Given: three chemical compounds

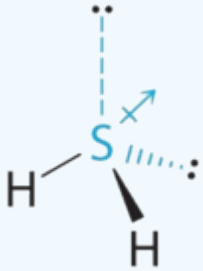
Asked for: net dipole moment

Strategy:

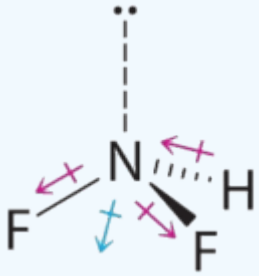
For each three-dimensional molecular geometry, predict whether the bond dipoles cancel. If they do not, then the molecule has a net dipole moment.

Solution:

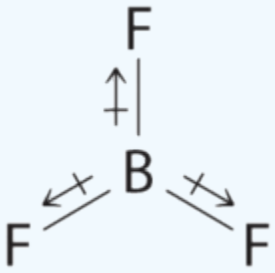
1. The total number of electrons around the central atom, S, is eight, which gives four electron pairs. Two of these electron pairs are bonding pairs and two are lone pairs, so the molecular geometry of $\mathrm{H_2S}$ is bent (Figure $3.9.6$). The bond dipoles cannot cancel one another, so the molecule has a net dipole moment.



2. Difluoroamine has a trigonal pyramidal molecular geometry. Because there is one hydrogen and two fluorines, and because of the lone pair of electrons on nitrogen, the molecule is not symmetrical, and the bond dipoles of NHF_2 cannot cancel one another. This means that NHF_2 has a net dipole moment. We expect polarization from the two fluorine atoms, the most electronegative atoms in the periodic table, to have a greater affect on the net dipole moment than polarization from the lone pair of electrons on nitrogen.



3. The molecular geometry of BF_3 is trigonal planar. Because all the B–F bonds are equal and the molecule is highly symmetrical, the dipoles cancel one another in three-dimensional space. Thus BF_3 has a net dipole moment of zero:



Exercise $3.9.4$

Which molecule(s) has a net dipole moment?

- $\mathrm{CH_3Cl}$
- $\mathrm{SO_3}$
- $\mathrm{XeO_3}$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

Lewis electron structures give no information about **molecular geometry**, the arrangement of bonded atoms in a molecule or polyatomic ion, which is crucial to understanding the chemistry of a molecule. The **valence-shell electron-pair repulsion (VSEPR) model** allows us to predict which of the possible structures is actually observed in most cases. It is based on the assumption that pairs of electrons occupy space, and the lowest-energy structure is the one that minimizes electron pair–electron pair repulsions. In the VSEPR model, the molecule or polyatomic ion is given an AX_mE_n designation, where A is the central atom, X is a bonded atom, E is a nonbonding valence electron group (usually a lone pair of electrons), and m and n are integers. Each group around the central atom is designated as a bonding pair (BP) or lone (nonbonding) pair (LP). From the BP and LP interactions we can predict both the relative positions of the atoms and the angles between the bonds, called the **bond angles**. From this we can describe the **molecular geometry**. The VSEPR model can be used to predict the shapes of many molecules and polyatomic ions, but it gives no information about bond lengths and the presence of multiple bonds. A combination of VSEPR and a bonding model, such as Lewis electron structures, is necessary to understand the presence of multiple bonds.

Molecules with polar covalent bonds can have a *dipole moment*, an asymmetrical distribution of charge that results in a tendency for molecules to align themselves in an applied electric field. Any diatomic molecule with a polar covalent bond has a dipole moment, but in polyatomic molecules, the presence or absence of a net dipole moment depends on the structure. For some highly symmetrical structures, the individual bond dipole moments cancel one another, giving a dipole moment of zero.

Answers

Exercise 3.9.1

trigonal pyramidal

octahedral

linear

Exercise 3.9.2

trigonal planar

square planar

Exercise 3.9.3

The terminal carbon atoms are trigonal planar, the central carbon is linear, and the C–C–C angle is 180°.

Exercise 3.9.4

CH_3Cl and XeO_3

This page titled 3.9: Shapes of Molecules is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 9.2: The VSEPR Model is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

4: INTERMOLECULAR INTERACTIONS AND PHASES OF MATTER

Petrucci: ***General Chemistry***
Principles and Modern Applications

I II III IV V VI VII VIII IX X XI XII XIII XIV XV XVI XVII XVIII XIX XX
XXI XXII XXIII XXIV XXV XXVI XXVII XXVIII

Template:HideTOC

- Topic hierarchy

4.1: Intermolecular Forces
4.2: Phase Diagrams
4.3: Some Properties of Liquids
4.4: Phase Diagrams

This page titled 4: Intermolecular Interactions and Phases of Matter is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

4.1: Intermolecular Forces

Learning Objectives

- To describe the intermolecular forces in liquids.

The properties of liquids are intermediate between those of gases and solids, but are more similar to solids. In contrast to *intra*molecular forces, such as the covalent bonds that hold atoms together in molecules and polyatomic ions, *inter*molecular forces hold molecules together in a liquid or solid. Intermolecular forces are generally much weaker than covalent bonds. For example, it requires 927 kJ to overcome the intramolecular forces and break both O–H bonds in 1 mol of water, but it takes only about 41 kJ to overcome the intermolecular attractions and convert 1 mol of liquid water to water vapor at 100°C. (Despite this seemingly low value, the intermolecular forces in liquid water are among the strongest such forces known!) Given the large difference in the strengths of intra- and intermolecular forces, changes between the solid, liquid, and gaseous states almost invariably occur for molecular substances *without breaking covalent bonds*.

The properties of liquids are intermediate between those of gases and solids, but are more similar to solids.

Intermolecular forces determine bulk properties, such as the melting points of solids and the boiling points of liquids. Liquids boil when the molecules have enough thermal energy to overcome the intermolecular attractive forces that hold them together, thereby forming bubbles of vapor within the liquid. Similarly, solids melt when the molecules acquire enough thermal energy to overcome the intermolecular forces that lock them into place in the solid.

Intermolecular forces are electrostatic in nature; that is, they arise from the interaction between positively and negatively charged species. Like covalent and ionic bonds, intermolecular interactions are the sum of both attractive and repulsive components. Because electrostatic interactions fall off rapidly with increasing distance between molecules, intermolecular interactions are most important for solids and liquids, where the molecules are close together. These interactions become important for gases only at very high pressures, where they are responsible for the observed deviations from the ideal gas law at high pressures.

In this section, we explicitly consider three kinds of intermolecular interactions. There are two additional types of electrostatic interaction that you are already familiar with: the ion–ion interactions that are responsible for ionic bonding, and the ion–dipole interactions that occur when ionic substances dissolve in a polar substance such as water. The first two are often described collectively as van der Waals forces.

Dipole–Dipole Interactions

Polar covalent bonds behave as if the bonded atoms have localized fractional charges that are equal but opposite (i.e., the two bonded atoms generate a *dipole*). If the structure of a molecule is such that the individual bond dipoles do not cancel one another, then the molecule has a net dipole moment. Molecules with net dipole moments tend to align themselves so that the positive end of one dipole is near the negative end of another and vice versa, as shown in Figure $4.1.1a$.

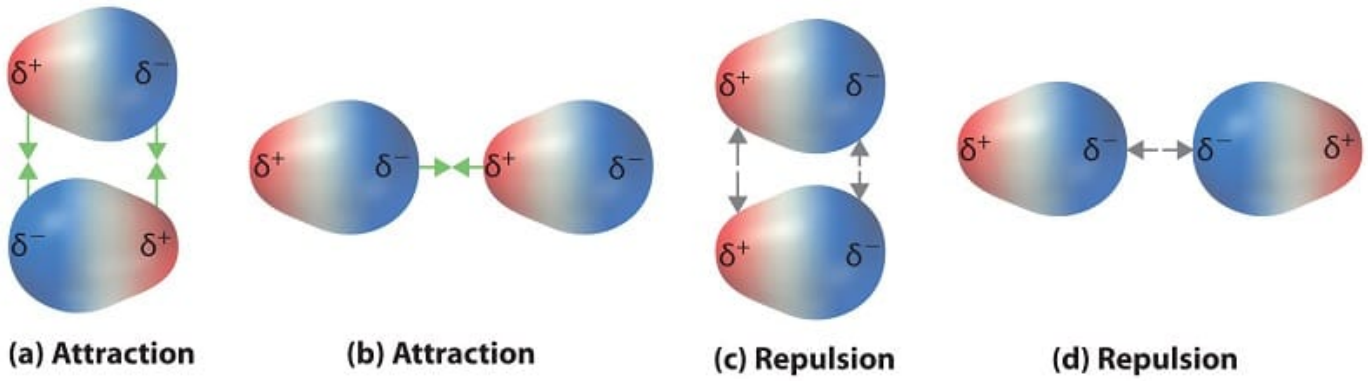


Figure 4.1.1: Attractive and Repulsive Dipole–Dipole Interactions. (a and b) Molecular orientations in which the positive end of one dipole (δ^+) is near the negative end of another (δ^-) (and vice versa) produce attractive interactions. (c and d) Molecular orientations that juxtapose the positive or negative ends of the dipoles on adjacent molecules produce repulsive interactions. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

These arrangements are more stable than arrangements in which two positive or two negative ends are adjacent (Figure 4.1.1*c*). Hence dipole–dipole interactions, such as those in Figure 4.1.1*b*, are *attractive intermolecular interactions*, whereas those in Figure 4.1.1*d* are *repulsive intermolecular interactions*. Because molecules in a liquid move freely and continuously, molecules always experience both attractive and repulsive dipole–dipole interactions simultaneously, as shown in Figure 4.1.2. On average, however, the attractive interactions dominate.

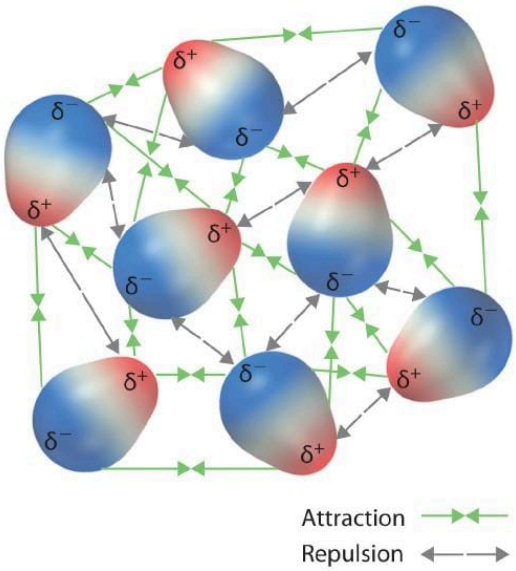


Figure 4.1.2: Both attractive and repulsive dipole–dipole interactions occur in a liquid sample with many molecules. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous) The green arrows pointing towards each other represent attraction. The gray arrows pointing away from each other represent repulsion

Because each end of a dipole possesses only a fraction of the charge of an electron, dipole–dipole interactions are substantially weaker than the interactions between two ions, each of which has a charge of at least ±1, or between a dipole and an ion, in which one of the species has at least a full positive or negative charge. In addition, the attractive interaction between dipoles falls off much more rapidly with increasing distance than do the ion–ion interactions. Recall that the attractive energy between two ions is proportional to $1/r$, where r is the distance between the ions. Doubling the distance ($r \rightarrow 2r$) decreases the attractive energy by one-half. In contrast, the energy of the interaction of two dipoles is proportional to $1/r^3$, so doubling the distance between the dipoles decreases the strength of the interaction by 2^3, or 8-fold. Thus a substance such as HCl, which is partially held together by dipole–dipole interactions, is a gas at room temperature and 1 atm pressure. Conversely, NaCl, which is held together by interionic interactions, is a high-melting-point solid. Within a series of compounds of similar molar mass, the strength of the intermolecular interactions increases as the dipole moment of the molecules increases, as shown in Table 4.1.1.

Table 4.1.1: Relationships Between the Dipole Moment and the Boiling Point for Organic Compounds of Similar Molar Mass

Compound	Molar Mass (g/mol)	Dipole Moment (D)	Boiling Point (K)
C_3H_6 (cyclopropane)	42	0	240
CH_3OCH_3 (dimethyl ether)	46	1.30	248
CH_3CN (acetonitrile)	41	3.9	355

The attractive energy between two ions is proportional to 1/r, whereas the attractive energy between two dipoles is proportional to 1/r6.

YouTube Video

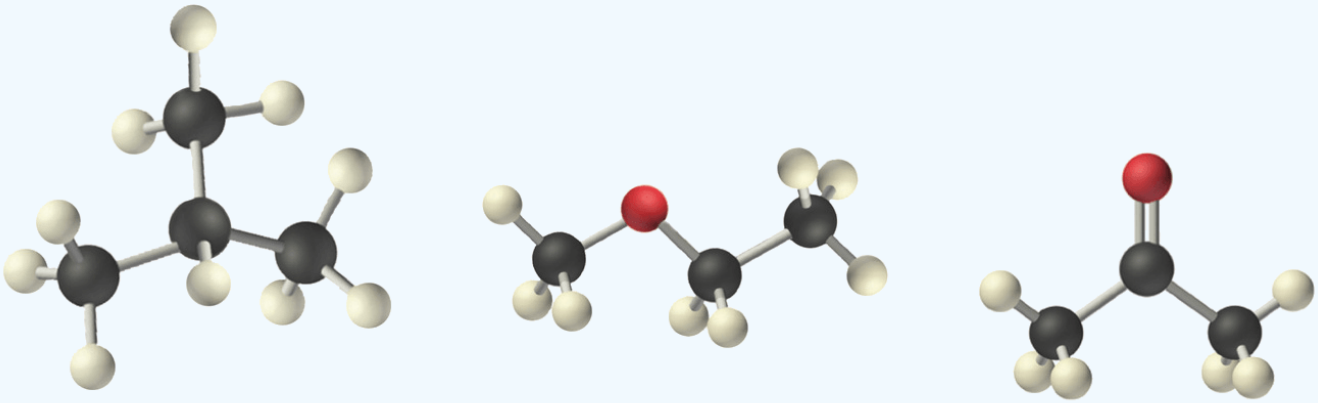
This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video Discussing Dipole Intermolecular Forces. Source: Dipole Intermolecular Force, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Example 4.1.1

Arrange ethyl methyl ether ($CH_3OCH_2CH_3$), 2-methylpropane [isobutane, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_3$], and acetone (CH_3COCH_3) in order of increasing boiling points. Their structures are as follows:



2-Methylpropane Ethyl methyl ether Acetone

Given: compounds.

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points.

Strategy:

Compare the molar masses and the polarities of the compounds. Compounds with higher molar masses and that are polar will have the highest boiling points.

Solution:

The three compounds have essentially the same molar mass (58–60 g/mol), so we must look at differences in polarity to predict the strength of the intermolecular dipole–dipole interactions and thus the boiling points of the compounds.

The first compound, 2-methylpropane, contains only C–H bonds, which are not very polar because C and H have similar electronegativities. It should therefore have a very small (but nonzero) dipole moment and a very low boiling point.

Ethyl methyl ether has a structure similar to H_2O; it contains two polar C–O single bonds oriented at about a 109° angle to each other, in addition to relatively nonpolar C–H bonds. As a result, the C–O bond dipoles partially reinforce one another and generate a significant dipole moment that should give a moderately high boiling point.

Acetone contains a polar C=O double bond oriented at about 120° to two methyl groups with nonpolar C–H bonds. The C–O bond dipole therefore corresponds to the molecular dipole, which should result in both a rather large dipole moment and a high boiling point.

Thus we predict the following order of boiling points:

2-methylpropane < ethyl methyl ether < acetone

This result is in good agreement with the actual data: 2-methylpropane, boiling point = –11.7°C, and the dipole moment (μ) = 0.13 D; methyl ethyl ether, boiling point = 7.4°C and μ = 1.17 D; acetone, boiling point = 56.1°C and μ = 2.88 D.

Exercise 4.1.1

Arrange carbon tetrafluoride (CF_4), ethyl methyl sulfide ($CH_3SC_2H_5$), dimethyl sulfoxide [$(CH_3)_2S{=}O$], and 2-methylbutane [isopentane, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$] in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer available at the end of this section.

London Dispersion Forces

Thus far, we have considered only interactions between polar molecules. Other factors must be considered to explain why many nonpolar molecules, such as bromine, benzene, and hexane, are liquids at room temperature; why others, such as iodine and naphthalene, are solids. Even the noble gases can be liquefied or solidified at low temperatures, high pressures, or both (Table 4.1.2).

What kind of attractive forces can exist between nonpolar molecules or atoms? This question was answered by Fritz London (1900–1954), a German physicist who later worked in the United States. In 1930, London proposed that temporary fluctuations in the electron distributions within atoms and nonpolar molecules could result in the formation of short-lived instantaneous dipole moments, which produce attractive forces called London dispersion forces between otherwise nonpolar substances.

Table 4.1.2: Normal Melting and Boiling Points of Some Elements and Nonpolar Compounds

Substance	Molar Mass (g/mol)	Melting Point (°C)	Boiling Point (°C)
Ar	40	–189.4	–185.9
Xe	131	–111.8	–108.1
N_2	28	–210	–195.8
O_2	32	–218.8	–183.0
F_2	38	–219.7	–188.1
I_2	254	113.7	184.4
CH_4	16	–182.5	–161.5

Consider a pair of adjacent He atoms, for example. On average, the two electrons in each He atom are uniformly distributed

around the nucleus. Because the electrons are in constant motion, however, their distribution in one atom is likely to be asymmetrical at any given instant, resulting in an instantaneous dipole moment. As shown in part (a) in Figure 4.1.3, the instantaneous dipole moment on one atom can interact with the electrons in an adjacent atom, pulling them toward the positive end of the instantaneous dipole or repelling them from the negative end. The net effect is that the first atom causes the temporary formation of a dipole, called an induced dipole, in the second. Interactions between these temporary dipoles cause atoms to be attracted to one another. These attractive interactions are weak and fall off rapidly with increasing distance. London was able to show with quantum mechanics that the attractive energy between molecules due to temporary dipole–induced dipole interactions falls off as $1/r^6$. Doubling the distance therefore decreases the attractive energy by 2^6, or 64-fold.

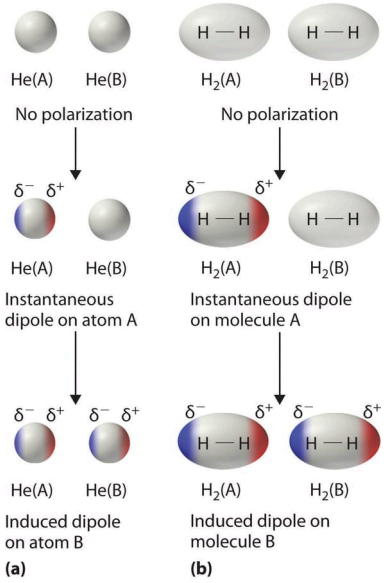


Figure 4.1.3: Instantaneous Dipole Moments. The formation of an instantaneous dipole moment on one He atom (a) or an H_2 molecule (b) results in the formation of an induced dipole on an adjacent atom or molecule.

Instantaneous dipole–induced dipole interactions between nonpolar molecules can produce intermolecular attractions just as they produce interatomic attractions in monatomic substances like Xe. This effect, illustrated for two H_2 molecules in part (b) in Figure 4.1.3, tends to become more pronounced as atomic and molecular masses increase (Table 4.1.2). For example, Xe boils at −108.1°C, whereas He boils at −269°C. The reason for this trend is that the strength of London dispersion forces is related to the ease with which the electron distribution in a given atom can be perturbed. In small atoms such as He, the two 1s electrons are held close to the nucleus in a very small volume, and electron–electron repulsions are strong enough to prevent significant asymmetry in their distribution. In larger atoms such as Xe, however, the outer electrons are much less strongly attracted to the nucleus because of filled intervening shells. As a result, it is relatively easy to temporarily deform the electron distribution to generate an instantaneous or induced dipole. The ease of deformation of the electron distribution in an atom or molecule is called its polarizability. Because the electron distribution is more easily perturbed in large, heavy species than in small, light species, we say that heavier substances tend to be much more *polarizable* than lighter ones.

For similar substances, London dispersion forces get stronger with increasing molecular size.

The polarizability of a substance also determines how it interacts with ions and species that possess permanent dipoles. Thus, London dispersion forces are responsible for the general trend toward higher boiling points with increased molecular mass and greater surface area in a homologous series of compounds, such as the alkanes (part (a) in Figure 4.1.4). The strengths of London dispersion forces also depend significantly on molecular shape because shape determines how much of one molecule can interact with its neighboring molecules at any given time. For example, part (b) in Figure 4.1.4 shows 2,2-dimethylpropane (neopentane) and *n*-pentane, both of which have the empirical formula C_5H_{12}. Neopentane is almost spherical, with a small surface area for intermolecular interactions, whereas *n*-pentane has an extended conformation that enables it to come into close contact with other *n*-pentane molecules. As a result, the boiling point of neopentane (9.5°C) is more than 25°C lower than the boiling point of *n*-pentane (36.1°C).

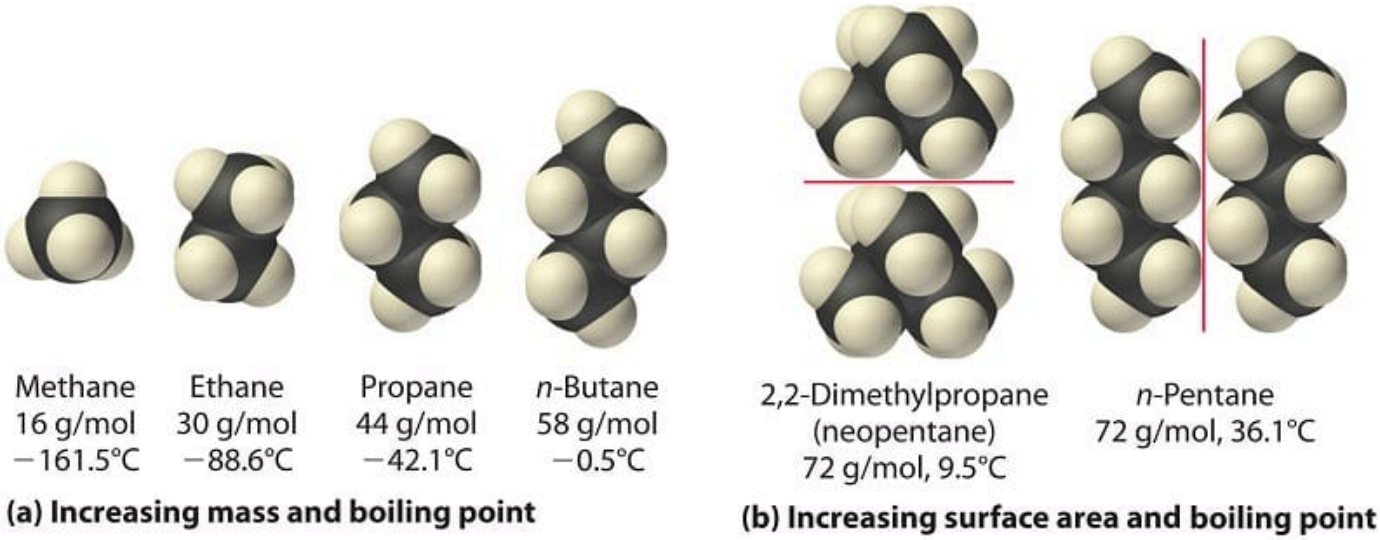


Figure 4.1.4: Mass and Surface Area Affect the Strength of London Dispersion Forces. (a) In this series of four simple alkanes, larger molecules have stronger London forces between them than smaller molecules do, and consequently have higher boiling points. (b) Linear *n*-pentane molecules have a larger surface area and stronger intermolecular forces than spherical neopentane molecules. As a result, neopentane is a gas at room temperature, whereas *n*-pentane is a volatile liquid.

All molecules, whether polar or nonpolar, are attracted to one another by London dispersion forces in addition to any other attractive forces that may be present. In general, however, dipole–dipole interactions in small polar molecules are significantly stronger than London dispersion forces, so the former predominate.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video Discussing London/Dispersion Intermolecular Forces. Source: Dispersion Intermolecular Force, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Example 4.1.2

Arrange *n*-butane, propane, 2-methylpropane [isobutene, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_3$], and *n*-pentane in order of increasing boiling points.

Given: compounds

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points

Strategy:

Determine the intermolecular forces in the compounds, and then arrange the compounds according to the strength of those forces. The substance with the weakest forces will have the lowest boiling point.

Solution:

The four compounds are alkanes and nonpolar, so London dispersion forces are the only important intermolecular forces. These forces are generally stronger with increasing molecular mass, so propane should have the lowest boiling point and *n*-pentane should have the highest, with the two butane isomers falling in between. Of the two butane isomers, 2-methylpropane is more compact, and *n*-butane has the more extended shape. Consequently, we expect intermolecular interactions for *n*-butane to be stronger due to its larger surface area, resulting in a higher boiling point. The overall order is thus as follows, with actual boiling points in parentheses: propane (−42.1°C) < 2-methylpropane (−11.7°C) < *n*-butane (−0.5°C) < *n*-pentane (36.1°C).

Exercise 4.1.2

Arrange GeH_4, $SiCl_4$, SiH_4, CH_4, and $GeCl_4$ in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Hydrogen Bonds

Molecules with hydrogen atoms bonded to electronegative atoms such as O, N, and F (and to a much lesser extent, Cl and S) tend to exhibit unusually strong intermolecular interactions. These result in much higher boiling points than are observed for substances in which London dispersion forces dominate, as illustrated for the covalent hydrides of elements of groups 14–17 in Figure 4.1.5. Methane and its heavier congeners in group 14 form a series whose boiling points increase smoothly with increasing molar mass. This is the expected trend in nonpolar molecules, for which London dispersion forces are the exclusive intermolecular forces. In contrast, the hydrides of the lightest members of groups 15–17 have boiling points that are more than 100°C greater than predicted on the basis of their molar masses. The effect is most dramatic for water: if we extend the straight line connecting the points for H_2Te and H_2Se to the line for period 2, we obtain an estimated boiling point of −130°C for water! Imagine the implications for life on Earth if water boiled at −130°C rather than 100°C.

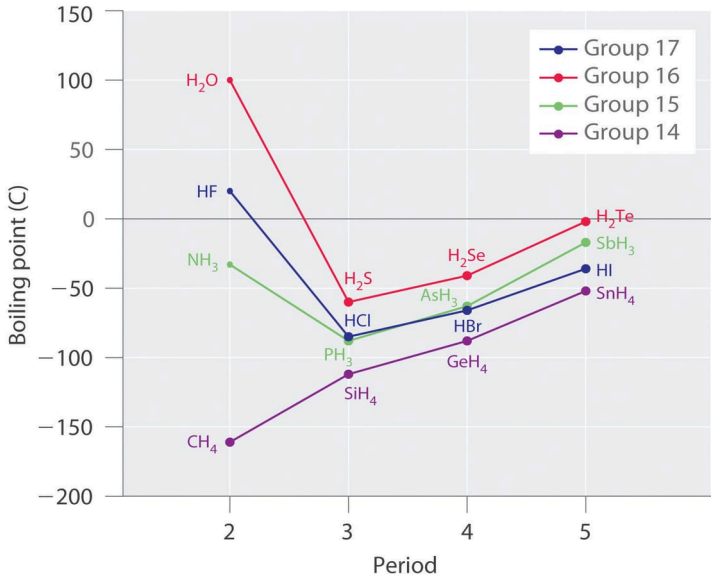


Figure 4.1.5: The Effects of Hydrogen Bonding on Boiling Points. These plots of the boiling points of the covalent hydrides of the elements of groups 14–17 show that the boiling points of the lightest members of each series for which hydrogen bonding is possible (HF, NH_3, and H_2O) are anomalously high for compounds with such low molecular masses.

Group 14 is in purple, group 15 is in green, group 16 is red, and group 17 is blue. Graph of boiling point against period.

Why do strong intermolecular forces produce such anomalously high boiling points and other unusual properties, such as high enthalpies of vaporization and high melting points? The answer lies in the highly polar nature of the bonds between hydrogen and very electronegative elements such as O, N, and F. The large difference in electronegativity results in a large partial positive charge on hydrogen and a correspondingly large partial negative charge on the O, N, or F atom. Consequently, H–O, H–N, and H–F bonds have very large bond dipoles that can interact strongly with one another. Because a hydrogen atom is so small, these

dipoles can also approach one another more closely than most other dipoles. The combination of large bond dipoles and short dipole–dipole distances results in very strong dipole–dipole interactions called hydrogen bonds, as shown for ice in Figure 4.1.6 . A hydrogen bond is usually indicated by a dotted line between the hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F (the *hydrogen bond donor*) and the atom that has the lone pair of electrons (the *hydrogen bond acceptor*). Because each water molecule contains two hydrogen atoms and two lone pairs, a tetrahedral arrangement maximizes the number of hydrogen bonds that can be formed. In the structure of ice, each oxygen atom is surrounded by a distorted tetrahedron of hydrogen atoms that form bridges to the oxygen atoms of adjacent water molecules. The bridging hydrogen atoms are *not* equidistant from the two oxygen atoms they connect, however. Instead, each hydrogen atom is 101 pm from one oxygen and 174 pm from the other. In contrast, each oxygen atom is bonded to two H atoms at the shorter distance and two at the longer distance, corresponding to two O–H covalent bonds and two O · · · H hydrogen bonds from adjacent water molecules, respectively. The resulting open, cagelike structure of ice means that the solid is actually slightly less dense than the liquid, which explains why ice floats on water, rather than sinks.

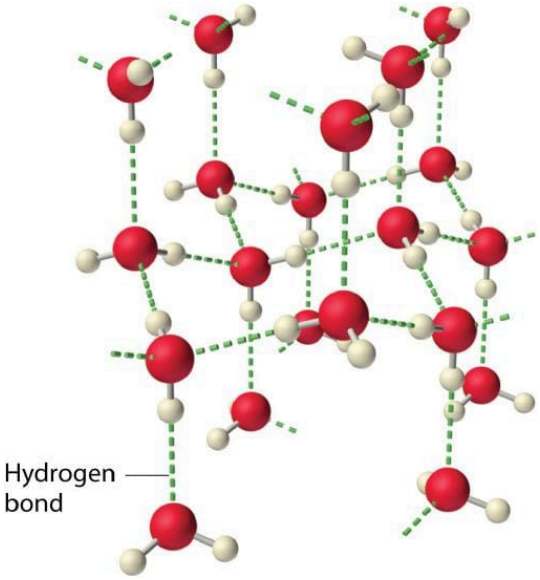


Figure 4.1.6: The Hydrogen-Bonded Structure of Ice

Each water molecule accepts two hydrogen bonds from two other water molecules and donates two hydrogen atoms to form hydrogen bonds with two more water molecules, producing an open, cage like structure. The structure of liquid water is very similar, but in the liquid, the hydrogen bonds are continually broken and formed because of rapid molecular motion.

Hydrogen bond formation requires both a hydrogen bond donor and a hydrogen bond acceptor.

Because ice is less dense than liquid water, rivers, lakes, and oceans freeze from the top down. In fact, the ice forms a protective surface layer that insulates the rest of the water, allowing fish and other organisms to survive in the lower levels of a frozen lake or sea. If ice were denser than the liquid, the ice formed at the surface in cold weather would sink as fast as it formed. Bodies of water would freeze from the bottom up, which would be lethal for most aquatic creatures. The expansion of water when freezing also explains why automobile or boat engines must be protected by “antifreeze” and why unprotected pipes in houses break if they are allowed to freeze.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video Discussing Hydrogen Bonding Intermolecular Forces. Source: Hydrogen Bonding Intermolecular Force, YouTube(opens in

new window) [youtu.be]

Example 4.1.3

Considering CH_3OH, C_2H_6, Xe, and $(CH_3)_3N$, which can form hydrogen bonds with themselves? Draw the hydrogen-bonded structures.

Given: compounds

Asked for: formation of hydrogen bonds and structure

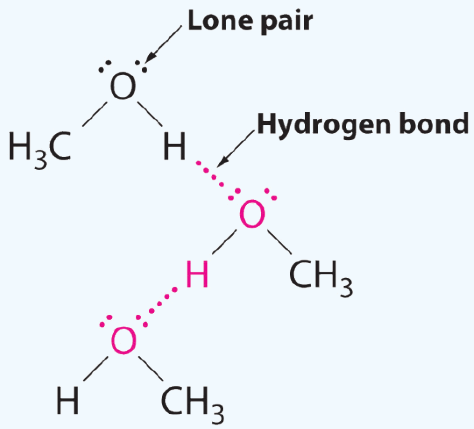
Strategy:

A. Identify the compounds with a hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F. These are likely to be able to act as hydrogen bond donors.
B. Of the compounds that can act as hydrogen bond donors, identify those that also contain lone pairs of electrons, which allow them to be hydrogen bond acceptors. If a substance is both a hydrogen donor and a hydrogen bond acceptor, draw a structure showing the hydrogen bonding.

Solution:

A. Of the species listed, xenon (Xe), ethane (C_2H_6), and trimethylamine [$(CH_3)_3N$] do not contain a hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F; hence they cannot act as hydrogen bond donors.

B. The one compound that can act as a hydrogen bond donor, methanol (CH_3OH), contains both a hydrogen atom attached to O (making it a hydrogen bond donor) and two lone pairs of electrons on O (making it a hydrogen bond acceptor); methanol can thus form hydrogen bonds by acting as either a hydrogen bond donor or a hydrogen bond acceptor. The hydrogen-bonded structure of methanol is as follows:



Hydrogen bonding in methanol

Exercise 4.1.3

Considering CH_3CO_2H, $(CH_3)_3N$, NH_3, and CH_3F, which can form hydrogen bonds with themselves? Draw the hydrogen-bonded structures.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Although hydrogen bonds are significantly weaker than covalent bonds, with typical dissociation energies of only 15–25 kJ/mol, they have a significant influence on the physical properties of a compound. Compounds such as HF can form only two hydrogen bonds at a time as can, on average, pure liquid NH_3. Consequently, even though their molecular masses are similar to that of

water, their boiling points are significantly lower than the boiling point of water, which forms *four* hydrogen bonds at a time.

Example 4.1.4: Buckyballs

Arrange C_{60} (buckminsterfullerene, which has a cage structure), NaCl, He, Ar, and N_2O in order of increasing boiling points.

Given: compounds.

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points.

Strategy:

Identify the intermolecular forces in each compound and then arrange the compounds according to the strength of those forces. The substance with the weakest forces will have the lowest boiling point.

Solution

Electrostatic interactions are strongest for an ionic compound, so we expect NaCl to have the highest boiling point. To predict the relative boiling points of the other compounds, we must consider their polarity (for dipole–dipole interactions), their ability to form hydrogen bonds, and their molar mass (for London dispersion forces). Helium is nonpolar and by far the lightest, so it should have the lowest boiling point. Argon and N_2O have very similar molar masses (40 and 44 g/mol, respectively), but N_2O is polar while Ar is not. Consequently, N_2O should have a higher boiling point. A C_{60} molecule is nonpolar, but its molar mass is 720 g/mol, much greater than that of Ar or N_2O. Because the boiling points of nonpolar substances increase rapidly with molecular mass, C_{60} should boil at a higher temperature than the other nonionic substances. The predicted order is thus as follows, with actual boiling points in parentheses:

$$\text{He } (-269^\circ\text{C}) < \text{Ar } (-185.7^\circ\text{C}) < N_2O\ (-88.5^\circ\text{C}) < C_{60}\ (>280^\circ\text{C}) < \text{NaCl } (1465^\circ\text{C}).$$

Exercise 4.1.4

Arrange 2,4-dimethylheptane, Ne, CS_2, Cl_2, and KBr in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Example 4.1.5

Identify the most significant intermolecular force in each substance.

a. C_3H_8
b. CH_3OH
c. H_2S

Solution

a. Although C–H bonds are polar, they are only minimally polar. The most significant intermolecular force for this substance would be dispersion forces.
b. This molecule has an H atom bonded to an O atom, so it will experience hydrogen bonding.
c. Although this molecule does not experience hydrogen bonding, the Lewis electron dot diagram and VSEPR indicate that it is bent, so it has a permanent dipole. The most significant force in this substance is dipole-dipole interaction.

Exercise 4.1.6

Identify the most significant intermolecular force in each substance.

a. HF
b. HCl

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Summary

Intermolecular forces are electrostatic in nature and include van der Waals forces and hydrogen bonds. Molecules in liquids are held to other molecules by intermolecular interactions, which are weaker than the intramolecular interactions that hold the atoms together within molecules and polyatomic ions. Transitions between the solid and liquid, or the liquid and gas phases, are due to changes in intermolecular interactions, but do not affect intramolecular interactions. The three major types of intermolecular interactions are dipole–dipole interactions, London dispersion forces (these two are often referred to collectively as **van der Waals forces**), and hydrogen bonds. **Dipole–dipole interactions** arise from the electrostatic interactions of the positive and negative ends of molecules with permanent dipole moments; their strength is proportional to the magnitude of the dipole moment and to $1/r^3$, where r is the distance between dipoles. **London dispersion forces** are due to the formation of **instantaneous dipole moments** in polar or nonpolar molecules as a result of short-lived fluctuations of electron charge distribution, which in turn cause the temporary formation of an **induced dipole** in adjacent molecules; their energy falls off as $1/r^6$. Larger atoms tend to be more **polarizable** than smaller ones, because their outer electrons are less tightly bound and are therefore more easily perturbed. **Hydrogen bonds** are especially strong dipole–dipole interactions between molecules that have hydrogen bonded to a highly electronegative atom, such as O, N, or F. The resulting partially positively charged H atom on one molecule (the *hydrogen bond donor*) can interact strongly with a lone pair of electrons of a partially negatively charged O, N, or F atom on adjacent molecules (the *hydrogen bond acceptor*). Because of strong O · · · H hydrogen bonding between water molecules, water has an unusually high boiling point, and ice has an open, cage like structure that is less dense than liquid water.

Answers

Exercise 4.1.1

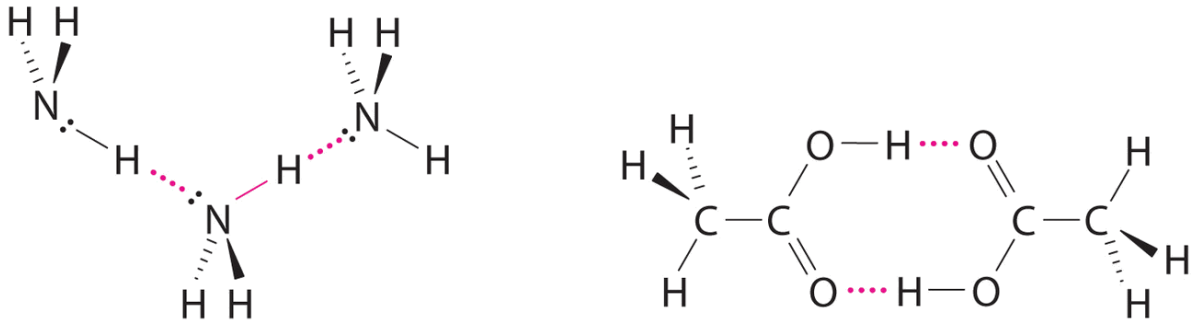
dimethyl sulfoxide (boiling point = 189.9°C) > ethyl methyl sulfide (boiling point = 67°C) > 2-methylbutane (boiling point = 27.8°C) > carbon tetrafluoride (boiling point = –128°C)

Exercise 4.1.2

$GeCl_4$ (87°C) > $SiCl_4$ (57.6°C) > GeH_4 (–88.5°C) > SiH_4 (–111.8°C) > CH_4 (–161°C)

Exercise 4.1.3

CH_3CO_2H and NH_3;



Hydrogen bonding in ammonia between nitrogen and hydrogen. hydrogen bonding in acetic acid is between oxygen and hydrogen.

Exercise 4.1.4

KBr (1435°C) > 2,4-dimethylheptane (132.9°C) > CS_2 (46.6°C) > Cl_2 (–34.6°C) > Ne (–246°C)

Exercise 4.1.6

hydrogen bonding
dipole-dipole interactions

This page titled 4.1: Intermolecular Forces is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 11.2: Intermolecular Forces is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.
- 12.1: Intermolecular Forces is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

4.2: Phase Diagrams

Learning Objectives

- To understand the basics of a one-component phase diagram as a function of temperature and pressure in a closed system.
- To be able to identify the triple point, the critical point, and four regions: solid, liquid, gas, and a supercritical fluid.

The state exhibited by a given sample of matter depends on the identity, temperature, and pressure of the sample. A phase diagram is a graphic summary of the physical state of a substance as a function of temperature and pressure in a closed system.

Introduction

A typical phase diagram consists of discrete regions that represent the different phases exhibited by a substance (Figure 4.2.1). Each region corresponds to the range of combinations of temperature and pressure over which that phase is stable. The combination of high pressure and low temperature (upper left of Figure 4.2.1) corresponds to the solid phase, whereas the gas phase is favored at high temperature and low pressure (lower right). The combination of high temperature and high pressure (upper right) corresponds to a supercritical fluid.

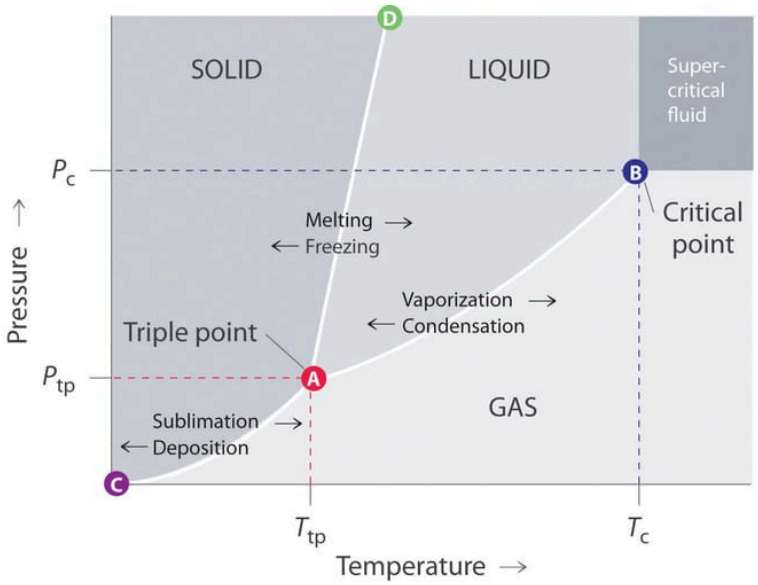


Figure 4.2.1: A Typical Phase Diagram for a Substance That Exhibits Three Phases—Solid, Liquid, and Gas—and a Supercritical Region

The solid phase is favored at low temperature and high pressure; the gas phase is favored at high temperature and low pressure.

The lines in a phase diagram correspond to the combinations of temperature and pressure at which two phases can coexist in equilibrium. In Figure 4.2.1, the line that connects points A and D separates the solid and liquid phases and shows how the melting point of a solid varies with pressure. The solid and liquid phases are in equilibrium all along this line; crossing the line horizontally corresponds to melting or freezing. The line that connects points A and B is the vapor pressure curve of the liquid, which we discussed in Section 11.5. It ends at the critical point, beyond which the substance exists as a supercritical fluid. The line that connects points A and C is the vapor pressure curve of the *solid* phase. Along this line, the solid is in equilibrium with the vapor phase through sublimation and deposition. Finally, point A, where the solid/liquid, liquid/gas, and solid/gas lines intersect, is the triple point; it is the *only* combination of temperature and pressure at which all three phases (solid, liquid, and gas) are in equilibrium and can therefore exist simultaneously. Because no more than three phases can ever coexist, a phase diagram can never have more than three lines intersecting at a single point.

Remember that a phase diagram, such as the one in Figure 4.2.1, is for a single pure substance in a closed system, not for a liquid in an open beaker in contact with air at 1 atm pressure. In practice, however, the conclusions reached about the behavior of a substance in a closed system can usually be extrapolated to an open system without a great deal of error.

The Phase Diagram of Water

Figure 4.2.2 shows the phase diagram of water and illustrates that the triple point of water occurs at 0.01°C and 0.00604 atm (4.59 mmHg). Far more reproducible than the melting point of ice, which depends on the amount of dissolved air and the atmospheric pressure, the triple point (273.16 K) is used to define the absolute (Kelvin) temperature scale. The triple point also represents the lowest pressure at which a liquid phase can exist in equilibrium with the solid or vapor. At pressures less than 0.00604 atm, therefore, ice does not melt to a liquid as the temperature increases; the solid sublimes directly to water vapor. Sublimation of water at low temperature and pressure can be used to "freeze-dry" foods and beverages. The food or beverage is first cooled to subzero temperatures and placed in a container in which the pressure is maintained below 0.00604 atm. Then, as the temperature is increased, the water sublimes, leaving the dehydrated food (such as that used by backpackers or astronauts) or the powdered beverage (as with freeze-dried coffee).

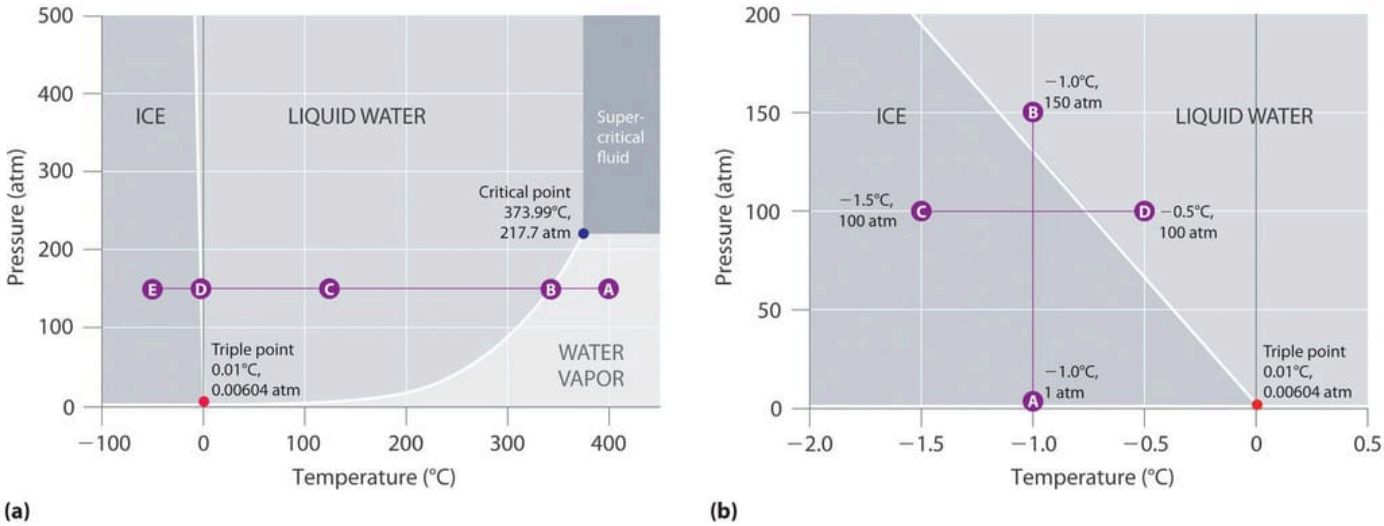


Figure 4.2.2: Two Versions of the Phase Diagram of Water. (a) In this graph with linear temperature and pressure axes, the boundary between ice and liquid water is almost vertical. (b) This graph with an expanded scale illustrates the decrease in melting point with increasing pressure. (The letters refer to points discussed in Example 4.2.1).

The phase diagram for water illustrated in Figure 4.2.2*b* shows the boundary between ice and water on an expanded scale. The melting curve of ice slopes up and slightly to the left rather than up and to the right as in Figure 4.2.1; that is, the melting point of ice *decreases* with increasing pressure; at 100 MPa (987 atm), ice melts at −9°C. Water behaves this way because it is one of the few known substances for which the crystalline solid is *less dense* than the liquid (others include antimony and bismuth). Increasing the pressure of ice that is in equilibrium with water at 0°C and 1 atm tends to push some of the molecules closer together, thus decreasing the volume of the sample. The decrease in volume (and corresponding increase in density) is smaller for a solid or a liquid than for a gas, but it is sufficient to melt some of the ice.

In Figure 4.2.2*b* point A is located at P = 1 atm and T = −1.0°C, within the solid (ice) region of the phase diagram. As the pressure increases to 150 atm while the temperature remains the same, the line from point A crosses the ice/water boundary to point B, which lies in the liquid water region. Consequently, applying a pressure of 150 atm will melt ice at −1.0°C. We have already indicated that the pressure dependence of the melting point of water is of vital importance. If the solid/liquid boundary in the phase diagram of water were to slant up and to the right rather than to the left, ice would be denser than water, ice cubes would

sink, water pipes would not burst when they freeze, and antifreeze would be unnecessary in automobile engines.

Ice Skating: An Incorrect Hypothesis of Phase Transitions

Until recently, many textbooks described ice skating as being possible because the pressure generated by the skater's blade is high enough to melt the ice under the blade, thereby creating a lubricating layer of liquid water that enables the blade to slide across the ice. Although this explanation is intuitively satisfying, it is incorrect, as we can show by a simple calculation.



Pressure from ice skates on ice. from wikihow.com.

Recall that pressure (*P*) is the force (*F*) applied per unit area (*A*):

$$P = \frac{F}{A}$$

To calculate the pressure an ice skater exerts on the ice, we need to calculate only the force exerted and the area of the skate blade. If we assume a 75.0 kg (165 lb) skater, then the force exerted by the skater on the ice due to gravity is

$$F = mg$$

where *m* is the mass and *g* is the acceleration due to Earth's gravity (9.81 m/s^2). Thus the force is

$$F = (75.0\ kg)(9.81\ m/s^2) = 736\ (kg \bullet m)/s^2 = 736N$$

If we assume that the skate blades are 2.0 mm wide and 25 cm long, then the area of the bottom of each blade is

$$A = (2.0 \times 10^{-3}\ m)(25 \times 10^{-2}\ m) = 5.0 \times 10^{-4} m^2$$

If the skater is gliding on one foot, the pressure exerted on the ice is

$$P = \frac{736\ N}{5.0 \times 10^{-4}\ m^2} = 1.5 \times 10^6\ N/m^2 = 1.5 \times 10^6\ Pa = 15\ atm$$

The pressure is much lower than the pressure needed to decrease the melting point of ice by even 1°C, and experience indicates that it is possible to skate even when the temperature is well below freezing. Thus pressure-induced melting of the ice cannot explain the low friction that enables skaters (and hockey pucks) to glide. Recent research indicates that the surface of ice, where the ordered array of water molecules meets the air, consists of one or more layers of almost liquid water.

These layers, together with melting induced by friction as a skater pushes forward, appear to account for both the ease with which a skater glides and the fact that skating becomes more difficult below about –7°C, when the number of lubricating surface water layers decreases.

Example 4.2.1: Water

Referring to the phase diagram of water in Figure 4.2.2:

a. predict the physical form of a sample of water at 400°C and 150 atm.
b. describe the changes that occur as the sample in part (a) is slowly allowed to cool to –50°C at a constant pressure of 150 atm.

Given: phase diagram, temperature, and pressure

Asked for: physical form and physical changes

Strategy:

A. Identify the region of the phase diagram corresponding to the initial conditions and identify the phase that exists in this region.
B. Draw a line corresponding to the given pressure. Move along that line in the appropriate direction (in this case cooling) and describe the phase changes.

Solution:

a. **A** Locate the starting point on the phase diagram in part (a) in Figure 4.2.2. The initial conditions correspond to point A, which lies in the region of the phase diagram representing water vapor. Thus water at T = 400°C and P = 150 atm is a gas.
b. **B** Cooling the sample at constant pressure corresponds to moving left along the horizontal line in part (a) in Figure 4.2.2 . At about 340°C (point B), we cross the vapor pressure curve, at which point water vapor will begin to condense and the sample will consist of a mixture of vapor and liquid. When all of the vapor has condensed, the temperature drops further, and we enter the region corresponding to liquid water (indicated by point C). Further cooling brings us to the melting curve, the line that separates the liquid and solid phases at a little below 0°C (point D), at which point the sample will consist of a mixture of liquid and solid water (ice). When all of the water has frozen, cooling the sample to –50°C takes us along the horizontal line to point E, which lies within the region corresponding to solid water. At P = 150 atm and T = –50°C, therefore, the sample is solid ice.

Exercise 4.2.2

Referring to the phase diagram of water in Figure 4.2.2, predict the physical form of a sample of water at –0.0050°C as the pressure is gradually increased from 1.0 mmHg to 218 atm.

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Phase Diagram of Carbon Dioxide

In contrast to the phase diagram of water, the phase diagram of CO_2 (Figure 4.2.3) has a more typical melting curve, sloping up and to the right. The triple point is –56.6°C and 5.11 atm, which means that liquid CO_2 cannot exist at pressures lower than 5.11 atm. At 1 atm, therefore, solid CO_2 sublimes directly to the vapor while maintaining a temperature of –78.5°C, the normal sublimation temperature. Solid CO_2 is generally known as dry ice because it is a cold solid with no liquid phase observed when it is warmed.



Dry ice ($CO_2\,(s)$) sublimed in air under room temperature and pressure. from Wikipedia.

Also notice the critical point at 30.98°C and 72.79 atm. Supercritical carbon dioxide is emerging as a natural refrigerant, making it a low carbon (and thus a more environmentally friendly) solution for domestic heat pumps.

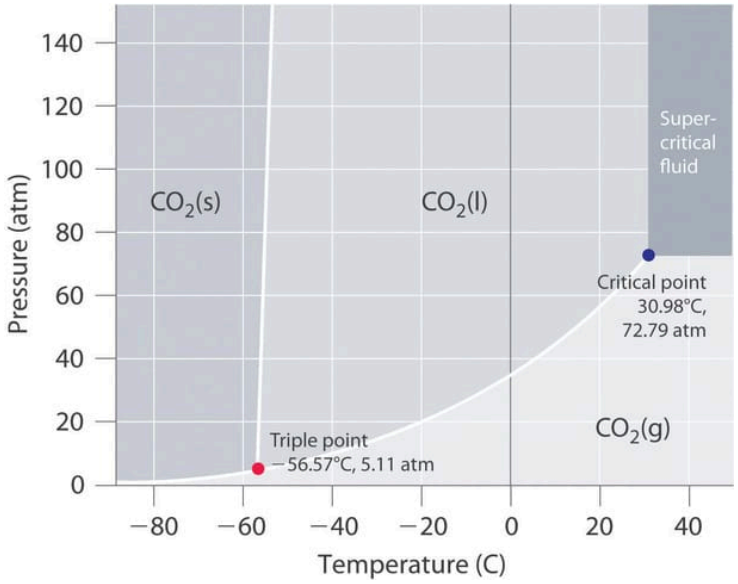


Figure 4.2.3: The Phase Diagram of Carbon Dioxide. Note the critical point, the triple point, and the normal sublimation temperature in this diagram.

The triple point is at -57.57 degrees C and 5.11 atm. The critical point is at 30.98 degree C and 72.79 atm.

The Critical Point

As the phase diagrams above demonstrate, a combination of high pressure and low temperature allows gases to be liquefied. As we increase the temperature of a gas, liquefaction becomes more and more difficult because higher and higher pressures are required to overcome the increased kinetic energy of the molecules. In fact, for every substance, there is some temperature above which the gas can no longer be liquefied, regardless of pressure. This temperature is the critical temperature (T_c), the highest temperature at which a substance can exist as a liquid. Above the critical temperature, the molecules have too much kinetic energy for the intermolecular attractive forces to hold them together in a separate liquid phase. Instead, the substance forms a single phase that completely occupies the volume of the container. Substances with strong intermolecular forces tend to form a liquid phase over a very large temperature range and therefore have high critical temperatures. Conversely, substances with weak intermolecular interactions have relatively low critical temperatures. Each substance also has a critical pressure (P_c), the minimum pressure needed to liquefy it at the critical temperature. The combination of critical temperature and critical pressure is called the critical point. The critical temperatures and pressures of several common substances are listed in Figure 4.2.1.

Figure 4.2.1: Critical Temperatures and Pressures of Some Simple Substances

Substance	T_c (°C)	P_c (atm)
NH_3	132.4	113.5
CO_2	31.0	73.8
CH_3CH_2OH (ethanol)	240.9	61.4
He	−267.96	2.27
Hg	1477	1587
CH_4	−82.6	46.0
N_2	−146.9	33.9
H_2O	374.0	217.7

High-boiling-point, nonvolatile liquids have high critical temperatures and vice versa.

Supercritical Fluids

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

A Video Discussing Phase Diagrams. Video Source: Phase Diagrams(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Answers

Exercise 4.2.2

The sample is initially a gas, condenses to a solid as the pressure increases, and then melts when the pressure is increased further to give a liquid.

This page titled 4.2: Phase Diagrams is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 11.6: Phase Diagrams is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

4.3: Some Properties of Liquids

Learning Objectives

- To describe the unique properties of liquids.
- To know how and why the vapor pressure of a liquid varies with temperature.
- To understand that the equilibrium vapor pressure of a liquid depends on the temperature and the intermolecular forces present.
- To understand that the relationship between pressure, enthalpy of vaporization, and temperature is given by the Clausius-Clapeyron equation.

Although you have been introduced to some of the interactions that hold molecules together in a liquid, we have not yet discussed the consequences of those interactions for the bulk properties of liquids. We now turn our attention to three unique properties of liquids that intimately depend on the nature of intermolecular interactions:

1. surface tension,
2. capillary action, and
3. viscosity.

Surface Tension

If liquids tend to adopt the shapes of their containers, then, do small amounts of water on a freshly waxed car form raised droplets instead of a thin, continuous film? The answer lies in a property called *surface tension*, which depends on intermolecular forces. Surface tension is the energy required to increase the surface area of a liquid by a unit amount and varies greatly from liquid to liquid based on the nature of the intermolecular forces, e.g., water with hydrogen bonds has a surface tension of 7.29 x 10^{-2} J/m^2 (at 20°C), while mercury with metallic (electrostatic) bonds has as surface tension that is 15-times lower: 4.6 x 10^{-1} J/m^2 (at 20°C).

Figure 4.3.1 presents a microscopic view of a liquid droplet. A typical molecule in the *interior* of the droplet is surrounded by other molecules that exert attractive forces from all directions. Consequently, there is no *net* force on the molecule that would cause it to move in a particular direction. In contrast, a molecule on the *surface* experiences a net attraction toward the drop because there are no molecules on the outside to balance the forces exerted by adjacent molecules in the interior. Because a sphere has the smallest possible surface area for a given volume, intermolecular attractive interactions between water molecules cause the droplet to adopt a spherical shape. This maximizes the number of attractive interactions and minimizes the number of water molecules at the surface. Hence raindrops are almost spherical, and drops of water on a waxed (nonpolar) surface, which does not interact strongly with water, form round beads (see the chapter opener photo). A dirty car is covered with a mixture of substances, some of which are polar. Attractive interactions between the polar substances and water cause the water to spread out into a thin film instead of forming beads.

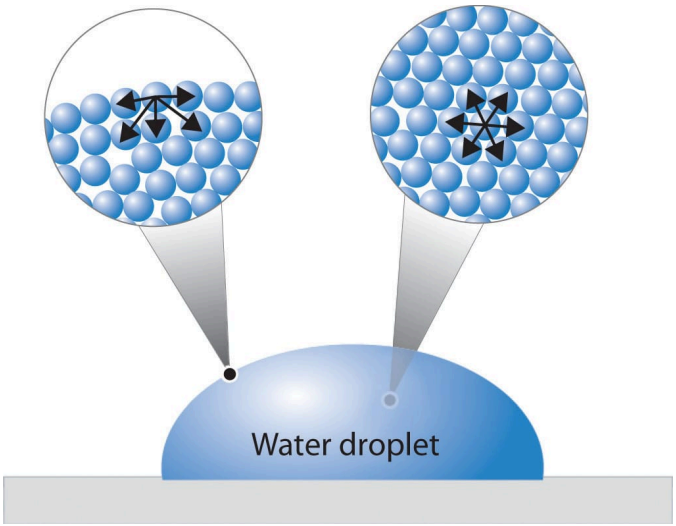


Figure 4.3.1: A Representation of Surface Tension in a Liquid. Molecules at the surface of water experience a net attraction to other molecules in the liquid, which holds the surface of the bulk sample together. In contrast, those in the interior experience uniform attractive forces.

The same phenomenon holds molecules together at the surface of a bulk sample of water, almost as if they formed a skin. When filling a glass with water, the glass can be overfilled so that the level of the liquid actually extends *above* the rim. Similarly, a sewing needle or a paper clip can be placed on the surface of a glass of water where it "floats," even though steel is much denser than water. Many insects take advantage of this property to walk on the surface of puddles or ponds without sinking. This is even better describe in the zero gravity condictions of space as Figure 4.3.2 indicates (and more so in the video link).



Figure 4.3.2: The Effects of the High Surface Tension of Liquid Water. The Full video can be found at https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9jB7rOC5kG8.

Such phenomena are manifestations of surface tension, which is defined as the energy required to increase the surface area of a liquid by a specific amount. Surface tension is therefore measured as energy per unit area, such as joules per square meter (J/m^2) or dyne per centimeter (dyn/cm), where 1 dyn = 1×10^{-5} N. The values of the surface tension of some representative liquids are listed in Table 4.3.1. Note the correlation between the surface tension of a liquid and the strength of the intermolecular forces: the stronger the intermolecular forces, the higher the surface tension. For example, water, with its strong intermolecular hydrogen bonding, has one of the highest surface tension values of any liquid, whereas low-boiling-point organic molecules, which have relatively weak intermolecular forces, have much lower surface tensions. Mercury is an apparent anomaly, but its very high surface tension is due to the presence of strong metallic bonding.

Table 4.3.1: Surface Tension, Viscosity, Vapor Pressure (at 25°C Unless Otherwise Indicated), and Normal Boiling Points of Common Liquids

Substance	Surface Tension ($\times 10^{-3}$ J/m^2)	Viscosity (mPa•s)	Vapor Pressure (mmHg)	Normal Boiling Point (°C)
Organic Compounds				
diethyl ether	17	0.22	531	34.6
n-hexane	18	0.30	149	68.7
acetone	23	0.31	227	56.5
ethanol	22	1.07	59	78.3
ethylene glycol	48	16.1	~0.08	198.9
Liquid Elements				
bromine	41	0.94	218	58.8
mercury	486	1.53	0.0020	357
Water				
0°C	75.6	1.79	4.6	—
20°C	72.8	1.00	17.5	—
60°C	66.2	0.47	149	—
100°C	58.9	0.28	760	—

Adding soaps and detergents that disrupt the intermolecular attractions between adjacent water molecules can reduce the surface tension of water. Because they affect the surface properties of a liquid, soaps and detergents are called surface-active agents, or surfactants. In the 1960s, US Navy researchers developed a method of fighting fires aboard aircraft carriers using "foams," which are aqueous solutions of fluorinated surfactants. The surfactants reduce the surface tension of water below that of fuel, so the fluorinated solution is able to spread across the burning surface and extinguish the fire. Such foams are now used universally to fight large-scale fires of organic liquids.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Surface Tension, Viscosity, & Melting Point: https://youtu.be/OgKDGrdTRRM

Capillary Action

Intermolecular forces also cause a phenomenon called capillary action, which is the tendency of a polar liquid to rise against gravity into a small-diameter tube (a *capillary*), as shown in Figure 4.3.3. When a glass capillary is put into a dish of water, water is drawn up into the tube. The height to which the water rises depends on the diameter of the tube and the temperature of the water but *not* on the angle at which the tube enters the water. The smaller the diameter, the higher the liquid rises.

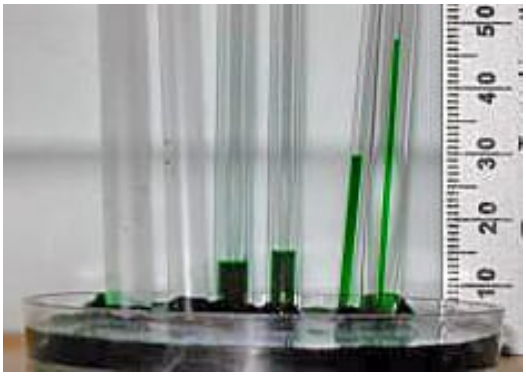


Figure 4.3.3: The Phenomenon of Capillary Action. Capillary action seen as water climbs to different levels in glass tubes of different diameters. Credit: Dr. Clay Robinson, PhD, West Texas A&M University.

When a glass capillary is placed in liquid water, water rises up into the capillary. The smaller the diameter of the capillary, the higher the water rises. The height of the water does *not* depend on the angle at which the capillary is tilted.

Note

- Cohesive forces bind molecules of the same type together
- Adhesive forces bind a substance to a surface

The same phenomenon holds molecules together at the surface of a bulk sample of water, almost as if they formed a skin. When filling a glass with water, the glass can be overfilled so that the level of the liquid actually extends

Capillary action is the net result of two opposing sets of forces: cohesive forces, which are the intermolecular forces that hold a liquid together, and adhesive forces, which are the attractive forces between a liquid and the substance that composes the capillary. Water has both strong adhesion to glass, which contains polar SiOH groups, and strong intermolecular cohesion. When a glass capillary is put into water, the surface tension due to cohesive forces constricts the surface area of water within the tube, while adhesion between the water and the glass creates an upward force that maximizes the amount of glass surface in contact with the water. If the adhesive forces are stronger than the cohesive forces, as is the case for water, then the liquid in the capillary rises to the level where the downward force of gravity exactly balances this upward force. If, however, the cohesive forces are stronger than the adhesive forces, as is the case for mercury and glass, the liquid pulls itself down into the capillary below the surface of the bulk liquid to minimize contact with the glass (part (a) in Figure 4.3.4). The upper surface of a liquid in a tube is called the meniscus, and the shape of the meniscus depends on the relative strengths of the cohesive and adhesive forces. In liquids such as water, the meniscus is concave; in liquids such as mercury, however, which have very strong cohesive forces and weak adhesion to glass, the meniscus is convex (part (b) in Figure 4.3.4).

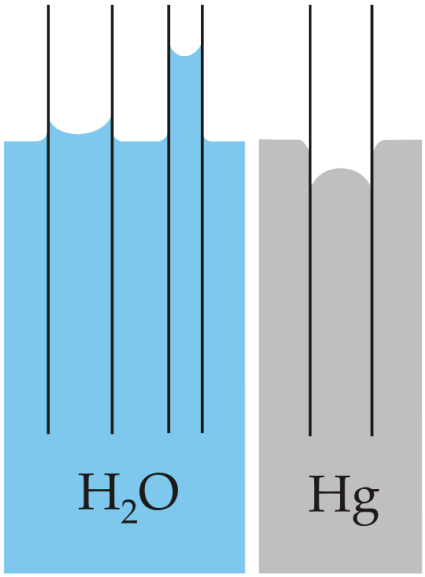


Figure used with permission from Wikipedia.

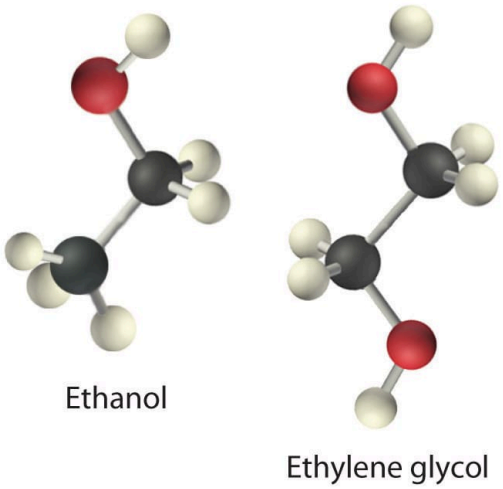
Note

Polar substances are drawn up a glass capillary and generally have a concave meniscus.

Fluids and nutrients are transported up the stems of plants or the trunks of trees by capillary action. Plants contain tiny rigid tubes composed of cellulose, to which water has strong adhesion. Because of the strong adhesive forces, nutrients can be transported from the roots to the tops of trees that are more than 50 m tall. Cotton towels are also made of cellulose; they absorb water because the tiny tubes act like capillaries and “wick” the water away from your skin. The moisture is absorbed by the entire fabric, not just the layer in contact with your body.

Viscosity

Viscosity (η) is the resistance of a liquid to flow. Some liquids, such as gasoline, ethanol, and water, flow very readily and hence have a *low viscosity*. Others, such as motor oil, molasses, and maple syrup, flow very slowly and have a *high viscosity*. The two most common methods for evaluating the viscosity of a liquid are (1) to measure the time it takes for a quantity of liquid to flow through a narrow vertical tube and (2) to measure the time it takes steel balls to fall through a given volume of the liquid. The higher the viscosity, the slower the liquid flows through the tube and the steel balls fall. Viscosity is expressed in units of the poise (mPa•s); the higher the number, the higher the viscosity. The viscosities of some representative liquids are listed in Table $4.3.1$ and show a correlation between viscosity and intermolecular forces. Because a liquid can flow only if the molecules can move past one another with minimal resistance, strong intermolecular attractive forces make it more difficult for molecules to move with respect to one another. The addition of a second hydroxyl group to ethanol, for example, which produces ethylene glycol ($HOCH_2CH_2OH$), increases the viscosity 15-fold. This effect is due to the increased number of hydrogen bonds that can form between hydroxyl groups in adjacent molecules, resulting in dramatically stronger intermolecular attractive forces.



There is also a correlation between viscosity and molecular shape. Liquids consisting of long, flexible molecules tend to have higher viscosities than those composed of more spherical or shorter-chain molecules. The longer the molecules, the easier it is for them to become "tangled" with one another, making it more difficult for them to move past one another. London dispersion forces also increase with chain length. Due to a combination of these two effects, long-chain hydrocarbons (such as motor oils) are highly viscous.

Note

Viscosity increases as intermolecular interactions or molecular size increases.

Application: Motor Oils

Motor oils and other lubricants demonstrate the practical importance of controlling viscosity. The oil in an automobile engine must effectively lubricate under a wide range of conditions, from subzero starting temperatures to the 200°C that oil can reach in an engine in the heat of the Mojave Desert in August. Viscosity decreases rapidly with increasing temperatures because the kinetic energy of the molecules increases, and higher kinetic energy enables the molecules to overcome the attractive forces that prevent the liquid from flowing. As a result, an oil that is thin enough to be a good lubricant in a cold engine will become too "thin" (have too low a viscosity) to be effective at high temperatures.



Oil being drained from a car

The viscosity of motor oils is described by an SAE (Society of Automotive Engineers) rating ranging from SAE 5 to SAE 50 for engine oils: the lower the number, the lower the viscosity. So-called *single-grade oils* can cause major problems. If they

are viscous enough to work at high operating temperatures (SAE 50, for example), then at low temperatures, they can be so viscous that a car is difficult to start or an engine is not properly lubricated. Consequently, most modern oils are *multigrade*, with designations such as SAE 20W/50 (a grade used in high-performance sports cars), in which case the oil has the viscosity of an SAE 20 oil at subzero temperatures (hence the W for winter) and the viscosity of an SAE 50 oil at high temperatures. These properties are achieved by a careful blend of additives that modulate the intermolecular interactions in the oil, thereby controlling the temperature dependence of the viscosity. Many of the commercially available oil additives "for improved engine performance" are highly viscous materials that increase the viscosity and effective SAE rating of the oil, but overusing these additives can cause the same problems experienced with highly viscous single-grade oils.

Example 4.3.1

Based on the nature and strength of the intermolecular cohesive forces and the probable nature of the liquid–glass adhesive forces, predict what will happen when a glass capillary is put into a beaker of SAE 20 motor oil. Will the oil be pulled up into the tube by capillary action or pushed down below the surface of the liquid in the beaker? What will be the shape of the meniscus (convex or concave)? (Hint: the surface of glass is lined with Si–OH groups.)

Given: substance and composition of the glass surface

Asked for: behavior of oil and the shape of meniscus

Strategy:

A. Identify the cohesive forces in the motor oil.
B. Determine whether the forces interact with the surface of glass. From the strength of this interaction, predict the behavior of the oil and the shape of the meniscus.

Solution:

A Motor oil is a nonpolar liquid consisting largely of hydrocarbon chains. The cohesive forces responsible for its high boiling point are almost solely London dispersion forces between the hydrocarbon chains. **B** Such a liquid cannot form strong interactions with the polar Si–OH groups of glass, so the surface of the oil inside the capillary will be lower than the level of the liquid in the beaker. The oil will have a convex meniscus similar to that of mercury.

Exercise 4.3.1

Predict what will happen when a glass capillary is put into a beaker of ethylene glycol. Will the ethylene glycol be pulled up into the tube by capillary action or pushed down below the surface of the liquid in the beaker? What will be the shape of the meniscus (convex or concave)?

Answer: Capillary action will pull the ethylene glycol up into the capillary. The meniscus will be concave.

Vapor Pressure

Nearly all of us have heated a pan of water with the lid in place and shortly thereafter heard the sounds of the lid rattling and hot water spilling onto the stovetop. When a liquid is heated, its molecules obtain sufficient kinetic energy to overcome the forces holding them in the liquid and they escape into the gaseous phase. By doing so, they generate a population of molecules in the vapor phase above the liquid that produces a pressure—the vapor pressure of the liquid. In the situation we described, enough pressure was generated to move the lid, which allowed the vapor to escape. If the vapor is contained in a sealed vessel, however, such as an unvented flask, and the vapor pressure becomes too high, the flask will explode (as many students have unfortunately discovered). In this section, we describe vapor pressure in more detail and explain how to quantitatively determine the vapor pressure of a liquid.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Vapor Pressure & Boiling Point: https://youtu.be/4QtcdpfRO1M

Evaporation and Condensation

Because the molecules of a liquid are in constant motion, we can plot the fraction of molecules with a given kinetic energy (*KE*) against their kinetic energy to obtain the kinetic energy distribution of the molecules in the liquid (Figure 4.3.5), just as we did for a gas (Figure 10.19). As for gases, increasing the temperature increases both the average kinetic energy of the particles in a liquid and the range of kinetic energy of the individual molecules. If we assume that a minimum amount of energy (E_0) is needed to overcome the intermolecular attractive forces that hold a liquid together, then some fraction of molecules in the liquid always has a kinetic energy greater than E_0. The fraction of molecules with a kinetic energy greater than this minimum value increases with increasing temperature. Any molecule with a kinetic energy greater than E_0 has enough energy to overcome the forces holding it in the liquid and escape into the vapor phase. Before it can do so, however, a molecule must also be at the surface of the liquid, where it is physically possible for it to leave the liquid surface; that is, only molecules at the surface can undergo evaporation (or vaporization), where molecules gain sufficient energy to enter a gaseous state above a liquid's surface, thereby creating a vapor pressure.

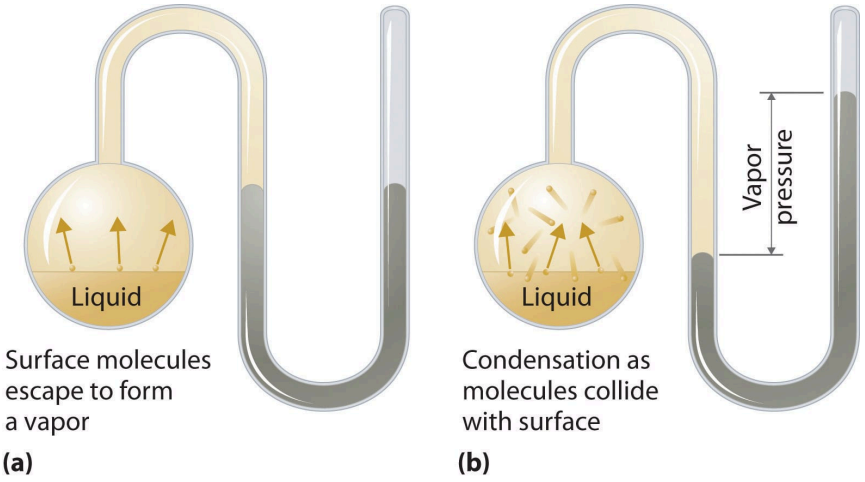


Figure 4.3.5: The Distribution of the Kinetic Energies of the Molecules of a Liquid at Two Temperatures. Just as with gases, increasing the temperature shifts the peak to a higher energy and broadens the curve. Only molecules with a kinetic energy greater than E_0 can escape from the liquid to enter the vapor phase, and the proportion of molecules with $KE > E_0$ is greater at the higher temperature.

To understand the causes of vapor pressure, consider the apparatus shown in Figure 4.3.6. When a liquid is introduced into an evacuated chamber (part (a) in Figure 4.3.6), the initial pressure above the liquid is approximately zero because there are as yet no molecules in the vapor phase. Some molecules at the surface, however, will have sufficient kinetic energy to escape from the liquid and form a vapor, thus increasing the pressure inside the container. As long as the temperature of the liquid is held constant, the fraction of molecules with $KE > E_0$ will not change, and the rate at which molecules escape from the liquid into the vapor phase will depend only on the surface area of the liquid phase.

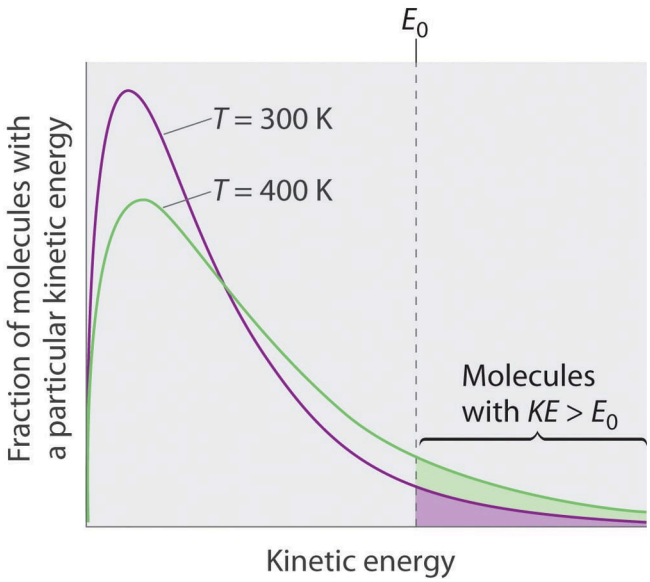


Figure 4.3.6: Vapor Pressure. (a) When a liquid is introduced into an evacuated chamber, molecules with sufficient kinetic energy escape from the surface and enter the vapor phase, causing the pressure in the chamber to increase. (b) When sufficient molecules are in the vapor phase for a given temperature, the rate of condensation equals the rate of evaporation (a steady state is reached), and the pressure in the container becomes constant.

As soon as some vapor has formed, a fraction of the molecules in the vapor phase will collide with the surface of the liquid and reenter the liquid phase in a process known as condensation (part (b) in Figure 4.3.6). As the number of molecules in the vapor phase increases, the number of collisions between vapor-phase molecules and the surface will also increase. Eventually, a *steady state* will be reached in which exactly as many molecules per unit time leave the surface of the liquid (vaporize) as collide with it (condense). At this point, the pressure over the liquid stops increasing and remains constant at a particular value that is characteristic of the liquid at a given temperature. The rates of evaporation and condensation over time for a system such as this are shown graphically in Figure 4.3.7.

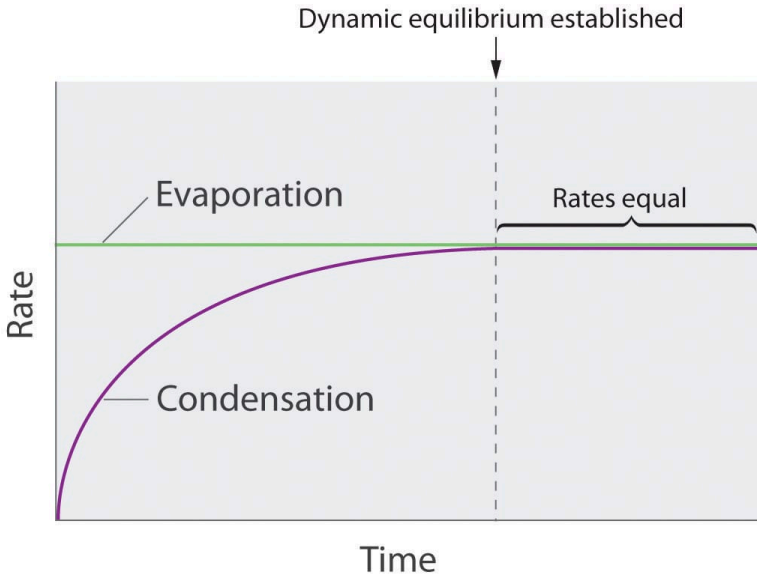


Figure 4.3.7: The Relative Rates of Evaporation and Condensation as a Function of Time after a Liquid Is Introduced into a Sealed Chamber. The rate of evaporation depends only on the surface area of the liquid and is essentially constant. The rate of condensation depends on the number of molecules in the vapor phase and increases steadily until it equals the rate of evaporation.

Equilibrium Vapor Pressure

Two opposing processes (such as evaporation and condensation) that occur at the same rate and thus produce no *net* change in a

system, constitute a dynamic equilibrium. In the case of a liquid enclosed in a chamber, the molecules continuously evaporate and condense, but the amounts of liquid and vapor do not change with time. The pressure exerted by a vapor in dynamic equilibrium with a liquid is the equilibrium vapor pressure of the liquid.

If a liquid is in an *open* container, however, most of the molecules that escape into the vapor phase will *not* collide with the surface of the liquid and return to the liquid phase. Instead, they will diffuse through the gas phase away from the container, and an equilibrium will never be established. Under these conditions, the liquid will continue to evaporate until it has "disappeared." The speed with which this occurs depends on the vapor pressure of the liquid and the temperature. Volatile liquids have relatively high vapor pressures and tend to evaporate readily; nonvolatile liquids have low vapor pressures and evaporate more slowly. Although the dividing line between volatile and nonvolatile liquids is not clear-cut, as a general guideline, we can say that substances with vapor pressures greater than that of water (Table 11.4) are relatively volatile, whereas those with vapor pressures less than that of water are relatively nonvolatile. Thus diethyl ether (ethyl ether), acetone, and gasoline are volatile, but mercury, ethylene glycol, and motor oil are nonvolatile.

The equilibrium vapor pressure of a substance at a particular temperature is a characteristic of the material, like its molecular mass, melting point, and boiling point (Table 11.4). It does *not* depend on the amount of liquid as long as at least a tiny amount of liquid is present in equilibrium with the vapor. The equilibrium vapor pressure does, however, depend very strongly on the temperature and the intermolecular forces present, as shown for several substances in Figure 4.3.8. Molecules that can hydrogen bond, such as ethylene glycol, have a much lower equilibrium vapor pressure than those that cannot, such as octane. The nonlinear increase in vapor pressure with increasing temperature is *much* steeper than the increase in pressure expected for an ideal gas over the corresponding temperature range. The temperature dependence is so strong because the vapor pressure depends on the fraction of molecules that have a kinetic energy greater than that needed to escape from the liquid, and this fraction increases exponentially with temperature. As a result, sealed containers of volatile liquids are potential bombs if subjected to large increases in temperature. The gas tanks on automobiles are vented, for example, so that a car won't explode when parked in the sun. Similarly, the small cans (1–5 gallons) used to transport gasoline are required by law to have a pop-off pressure release.

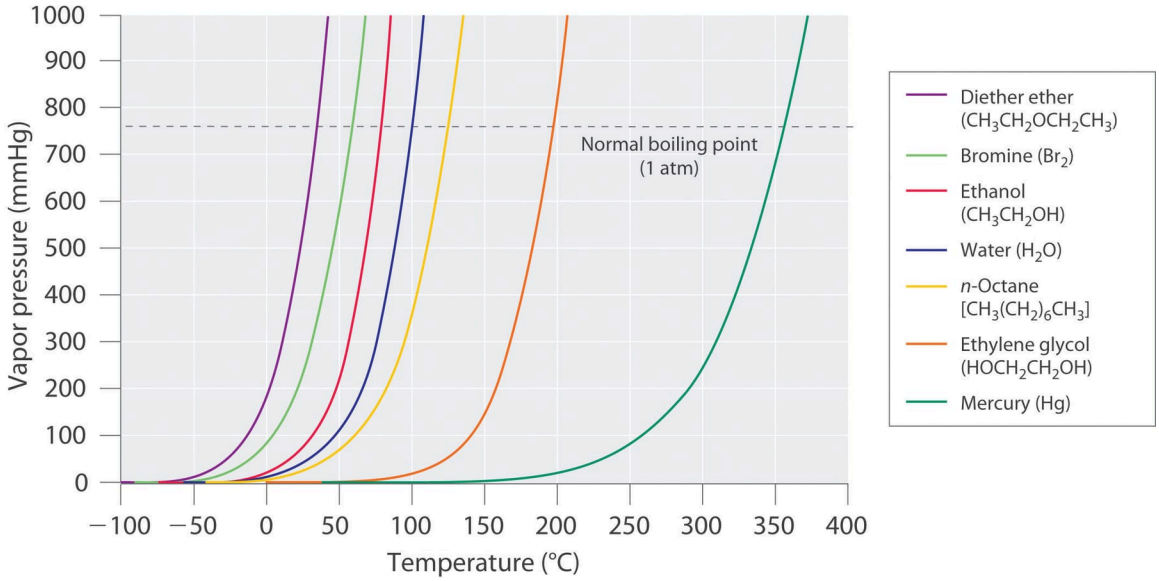


Figure 4.3.8: The Vapor Pressures of Several Liquids as a Function of Temperature. The point at which the vapor pressure curve crosses the P = 1 atm line (dashed) is the normal boiling point of the liquid.

Note

Volatile substances have low boiling points and relatively weak intermolecular interactions; nonvolatile substances have high boiling points and relatively strong intermolecular interactions.

The exponential rise in vapor pressure with increasing temperature in Figure 4.3.8 allows us to use natural logarithms to express the nonlinear relationship as a linear one.

$$\ln(P) = \frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T}\right) + C \tag{4.3.1}$$

where

- $\ln P$ is the natural logarithm of the vapor pressure,
- ΔH_{vap} is the **enthalpy of vaporization**,
- R is the universal gas constant [8.314 J/(mol•K)],
- T is the temperature in kelvins, and
- C is the y-intercept, which is a constant for any given line.

A plot of \ln P versus the inverse of the absolute temperature ($1/T$) is a straight line with a slope of $-\Delta H_{vap}/R$. Equation 4.3.1, called the Clausius–Clapeyron equation, can be used to calculate the ΔH_{vap} of a liquid from its measured vapor pressure at two or more temperatures. The simplest way to determine ΔH_{vap} is to measure the vapor pressure of a liquid at two temperatures and insert the values of P and T for these points into Equation 4.3.1, which is derived from the Clausius–Clapeyron equation:

$$\ln\left(\frac{P_1}{P_2}\right) = \frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_2} - \frac{1}{T_1}\right) \tag{4.3.2}$$

Conversely, if we know ΔH_{vap} and the vapor pressure P_1 at any temperature T_1, we can use Equation 4.3.1 to calculate the vapor pressure P_2 at any other temperature T_2, as shown in Example 4.3.2.

Example 4.3.2: Vapor Pressure of Mercury

The experimentally measured vapor pressures of liquid Hg at four temperatures are listed in the following table:

T (°C)	80.0	100	120	140
P (torr)	0.0888	0.2729	0.7457	1.845

From these data, calculate the enthalpy of vaporization (ΔH_{vap}) of mercury and predict the vapor pressure of the liquid at 160°C. (Safety note: mercury is highly toxic; when it is spilled, its vapor pressure generates hazardous levels of mercury vapor.)

Given: vapor pressures at four temperatures

Asked for: ΔH_{vap} of mercury and vapor pressure at 160°C

Strategy:

A. Use Equation 4.3.1 to obtain ΔH_{vap} directly from two pairs of values in the table, making sure to convert all values to the appropriate units.
B. Substitute the calculated value of ΔH_{vap} into Equation 4.3.1 to obtain the unknown pressure (P_2).

Solution:

A The table gives the measured vapor pressures of liquid Hg for four temperatures. Although one way to proceed would be to plot the data using Equation 4.3.1 and find the value of ΔH_{vap} from the slope of the line, an alternative approach is to use Equation 4.3.1 to obtain ΔH_{vap} directly from two pairs of values listed in the table, assuming no errors in our measurement. We therefore select two sets of values from the table and convert the temperatures from degrees Celsius to kelvins because the equation requires absolute temperatures. Substituting the values measured at 80.0°C (T_1) and 120.0°C (T_2) into Equation 4.3.1 gives

$$\ln\left(\frac{0.7457\ \cancel{Torr}}{0.0888\ \cancel{Torr}}\right) = \frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{8.314\ J/mol \cdot K}\left(\frac{1}{(120+273)\ K} - \frac{1}{(80.0+273)\ K}\right) \tag{4.3.3}$$

$$\ln(8.398) = \frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{8.314\ J/mol \cdot \cancel{K}}\left(-2.88 \times 10^{-4}\ \cancel{K^{-1}}\right) \tag{4.3.4}$$

$$2.13 = -\Delta H_{vap}\left(-3.46 \times 10^{-4}\right) J^{-1} \cdot mol \tag{4.3.5}$$

$$\Delta H_{vap} = 61,400\ J/mol = 61.4\ kJ/mol \tag{4.3.6}$$

B We can now use this value of ΔH_{vap} to calculate the vapor pressure of the liquid (P_2) at 160.0°C (T_2):

$$\ln\left(\frac{P_2}{0.0888\ torr}\right) = \frac{-61,400\ \cancel{J/mol}}{8.314\ \cancel{J/mol}\ K^{-1}}\left(\frac{1}{(160+273)\ K} - \frac{1}{(80.0+273)\ K}\right) \tag{4.3.7}$$

Using the relationship $e^{\ln x} = x$, we have

$$\ln\left(\frac{P_2}{0.0888\ Torr}\right) = 3.86 \tag{4.3.8}$$

$$\frac{P_2}{0.0888\ Torr} = e^{3.86} = 47.5 \tag{4.3.9}$$

$$P_2 = 4.21 Torr \tag{4.3.10}$$

At 160°C, liquid Hg has a vapor pressure of 4.21 torr, substantially greater than the pressure at 80.0°C, as we would expect.

Exercise 4.3.2: Vapor Pressure of Nickel

The vapor pressure of liquid nickel at 1606°C is 0.100 torr, whereas at 1805°C, its vapor pressure is 1.000 torr. At what temperature does the liquid have a vapor pressure of 2.500 torr?

Answer: 1896°C

Boiling Points

As the temperature of a liquid increases, the vapor pressure of the liquid increases until it equals the external pressure, or the atmospheric pressure in the case of an open container. Bubbles of vapor begin to form throughout the liquid, and the liquid begins to boil. The temperature at which a liquid boils at exactly 1 atm pressure is the normal boiling point of the liquid. For water, the normal boiling point is exactly 100°C. The normal boiling points of the other liquids in Figure 4.3.8 are represented by the points at which the vapor pressure curves cross the line corresponding to a pressure of 1 atm. Although we usually cite the normal boiling point of a liquid, the *actual* boiling point depends on the pressure. At a pressure greater than 1 atm, water boils at a temperature greater than 100°C because the increased pressure forces vapor molecules above the surface to condense. Hence the molecules must have greater kinetic energy to escape from the surface. Conversely, at pressures less than 1 atm, water boils below 100°C.

Table 4.3.2: The Boiling Points of Water at Various Locations on Earth

Place	Altitude above Sea Level (ft)	Atmospheric Pressure (mmHg)	Boiling Point of Water (°C)
Mt. Everest, Nepal/Tibet	29,028	240	70
Bogota, Colombia	11,490	495	88
Denver, Colorado	5280	633	95
Washington, DC	25	759	100
Dead Sea, Israel/Jordan	–1312	799	101.4

Typical variations in atmospheric pressure at sea level are relatively small, causing only minor changes in the boiling point of water. For example, the highest recorded atmospheric pressure at sea level is 813 mmHg, recorded during a Siberian winter; the lowest sea-level pressure ever measured was 658 mmHg in a Pacific typhoon. At these pressures, the boiling point of water changes minimally, to 102°C and 96°C, respectively. At high altitudes, on the other hand, the dependence of the boiling point of water on pressure becomes significant. Table 4.3.2 lists the boiling points of water at several locations with different altitudes. At an elevation of only 5000 ft, for example, the boiling point of water is already lower than the lowest ever recorded at sea level. The lower boiling point of water has major consequences for cooking everything from soft-boiled eggs (a “three-minute egg” may

well take four or more minutes in the Rockies and even longer in the Himalayas) to cakes (cake mixes are often sold with separate high-altitude instructions). Conversely, pressure cookers, which have a seal that allows the pressure inside them to exceed 1 atm, are used to cook food more rapidly by raising the boiling point of water and thus the temperature at which the food is being cooked.

Note

As pressure *increases*, the boiling point of a liquid *increases* and vice versa.

Example 4.3.3: Boiling Mercury

Use Figure 4.3.8 to estimate the following.

a. the boiling point of water in a pressure cooker operating at 1000 mmHg
b. the pressure required for mercury to boil at 250°C

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Mercury boils at 356 °C at room pressure. To see video go to https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=0iizsbXWYoo

Given: data in Figure 4.3.8, pressure, and boiling point

Asked for: corresponding boiling point and pressure

Strategy:

A. To estimate the boiling point of water at 1000 mmHg, refer to Figure 4.3.8 and find the point where the vapor pressure curve of water intersects the line corresponding to a pressure of 1000 mmHg.
B. To estimate the pressure required for mercury to boil at 250°C, find the point where the vapor pressure curve of mercury intersects the line corresponding to a temperature of 250°C.

Solution:

a. **A** The vapor pressure curve of water intersects the P = 1000 mmHg line at about 110°C; this is therefore the boiling point of water at 1000 mmHg.
b. **B** The vertical line corresponding to 250°C intersects the vapor pressure curve of mercury at $P \approx 75$ mmHg. Hence this is the pressure required for mercury to boil at 250°C.

Exercise 4.3.3: Boiling Ethlyene Glycol

Ethylene glycol is an organic compound primarily used as a raw material in the manufacture of polyester fibers and fabric industry, and polyethylene terephthalate resins (PET) used in bottling. Use the data in Figure 4.3.8 to estimate the following.

a. the normal boiling point of ethylene glycol
b. the pressure required for diethyl ether to boil at 20°C.

Answer

a. 200°C

b. 450 mmHg

Summary

- Surface tension, capillary action, and viscosity are unique properties of liquids that depend on the nature of intermolecular interactions.

Surface tension is the energy required to increase the surface area of a liquid by a given amount. The stronger the intermolecular interactions, the greater the surface tension. **Surfactants** are molecules, such as soaps and detergents, that reduce the surface tension of polar liquids like water. **Capillary action** is the phenomenon in which liquids rise up into a narrow tube called a capillary. It results when **cohesive forces**, the intermolecular forces in the liquid, are weaker than **adhesive forces**, the attraction between a liquid and the surface of the capillary. The shape of the **meniscus**, the upper surface of a liquid in a tube, also reflects the balance between adhesive and cohesive forces. The **viscosity** of a liquid is its resistance to flow. Liquids that have strong intermolecular forces tend to have high viscosities.

Because the molecules of a liquid are in constant motion and possess a wide range of kinetic energies, at any moment some fraction of them has enough energy to escape from the surface of the liquid to enter the gas or vapor phase. This process, called **vaporization** or **evaporation**, generates a **vapor pressure** above the liquid. Molecules in the gas phase can collide with the liquid surface and reenter the liquid via **condensation**. Eventually, a *steady state* is reached in which the number of molecules evaporating and condensing per unit time is the same, and the system is in a state of **dynamic equilibrium**. Under these conditions, a liquid exhibits a characteristic **equilibrium vapor pressure** that depends only on the temperature. We can express the nonlinear relationship between vapor pressure and temperature as a linear relationship using the **Clausius–Clapeyron equation**. This equation can be used to calculate the enthalpy of vaporization of a liquid from its measured vapor pressure at two or more temperatures. **Volatile liquids** are liquids with high vapor pressures, which tend to evaporate readily from an open container; **nonvolatile liquids** have low vapor pressures. When the vapor pressure equals the external pressure, bubbles of vapor form within the liquid, and it boils. The temperature at which a substance boils at a pressure of 1 atm is its **normal boiling point**.

Contributors and Attributions

- Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)
- Anonymous

This page titled 4.3: Some Properties of Liquids is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 12.2: Some Properties of Liquids is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

4.4: Phase Diagrams

Learning Objectives

- To understand the basics of a one-component phase diagram as a function of temperature and pressure in a closed system.
- To be able to identify the triple point, the critical point, and four regions: solid, liquid, gas, and a supercritical fluid.

The state exhibited by a given sample of matter depends on the identity, temperature, and pressure of the sample. A phase diagram is a graphic summary of the physical state of a substance as a function of temperature and pressure in a closed system.

Introduction

A typical phase diagram consists of discrete regions that represent the different phases exhibited by a substance (Figure 4.4.1). Each region corresponds to the range of combinations of temperature and pressure over which that phase is stable. The combination of high pressure and low temperature (upper left of Figure 4.4.1) corresponds to the solid phase, whereas the gas phase is favored at high temperature and low pressure (lower right). The combination of high temperature and high pressure (upper right) corresponds to a supercritical fluid.

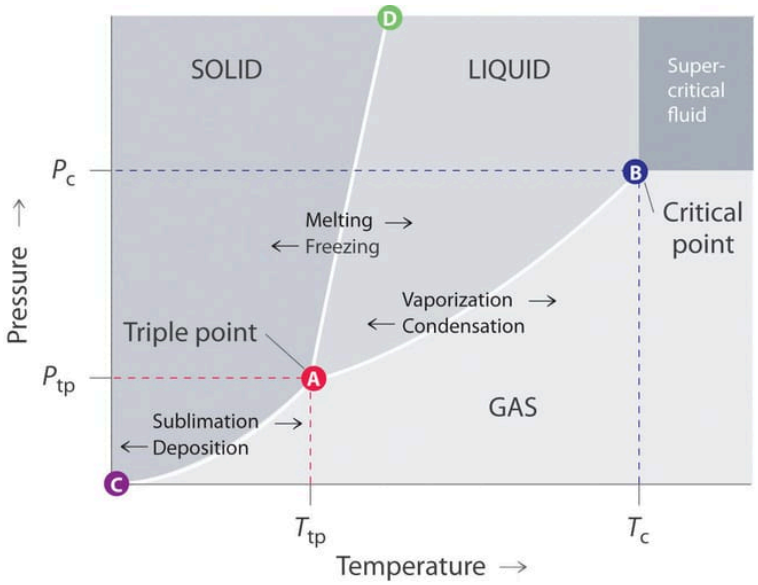


Figure 4.4.1: A Typical Phase Diagram for a Substance That Exhibits Three Phases—Solid, Liquid, and Gas—and a Supercritical Region

The solid phase is favored at low temperature and high pressure; the gas phase is favored at high temperature and low pressure.

The lines in a phase diagram correspond to the combinations of temperature and pressure at which two phases can coexist in equilibrium. In Figure 4.4.1, the line that connects points A and D separates the solid and liquid phases and shows how the melting point of a solid varies with pressure. The solid and liquid phases are in equilibrium all along this line; crossing the line horizontally corresponds to melting or freezing. The line that connects points A and B is the vapor pressure curve of the liquid, which we discussed in Section 11.5. It ends at the critical point, beyond which the substance exists as a supercritical fluid. The line that connects points A and C is the vapor pressure curve of the *solid* phase. Along this line, the solid is in equilibrium with the vapor phase through sublimation and deposition. Finally, point A, where the solid/liquid, liquid/gas, and solid/gas lines intersect, is the triple point; it is the *only* combination of temperature and pressure at which all three phases (solid, liquid, and gas) are in equilibrium and can therefore exist simultaneously. Because no more than three phases can ever coexist, a phase diagram can never have more than three lines intersecting at a single point.

Remember that a phase diagram, such as the one in Figure 4.4.1, is for a single pure substance in a closed system, not for a liquid in an open beaker in contact with air at 1 atm pressure. In practice, however, the conclusions reached about the behavior of a substance in a closed system can usually be extrapolated to an open system without a great deal of error.

The Phase Diagram of Water

Figure 4.4.2 shows the phase diagram of water and illustrates that the triple point of water occurs at 0.01°C and 0.00604 atm (4.59 mmHg). Far more reproducible than the melting point of ice, which depends on the amount of dissolved air and the atmospheric pressure, the triple point (273.16 K) is used to define the absolute (Kelvin) temperature scale. The triple point also represents the lowest pressure at which a liquid phase can exist in equilibrium with the solid or vapor. At pressures less than 0.00604 atm, therefore, ice does not melt to a liquid as the temperature increases; the solid sublimes directly to water vapor. Sublimation of water at low temperature and pressure can be used to "freeze-dry" foods and beverages. The food or beverage is first cooled to subzero temperatures and placed in a container in which the pressure is maintained below 0.00604 atm. Then, as the temperature is increased, the water sublimes, leaving the dehydrated food (such as that used by backpackers or astronauts) or the powdered beverage (as with freeze-dried coffee).

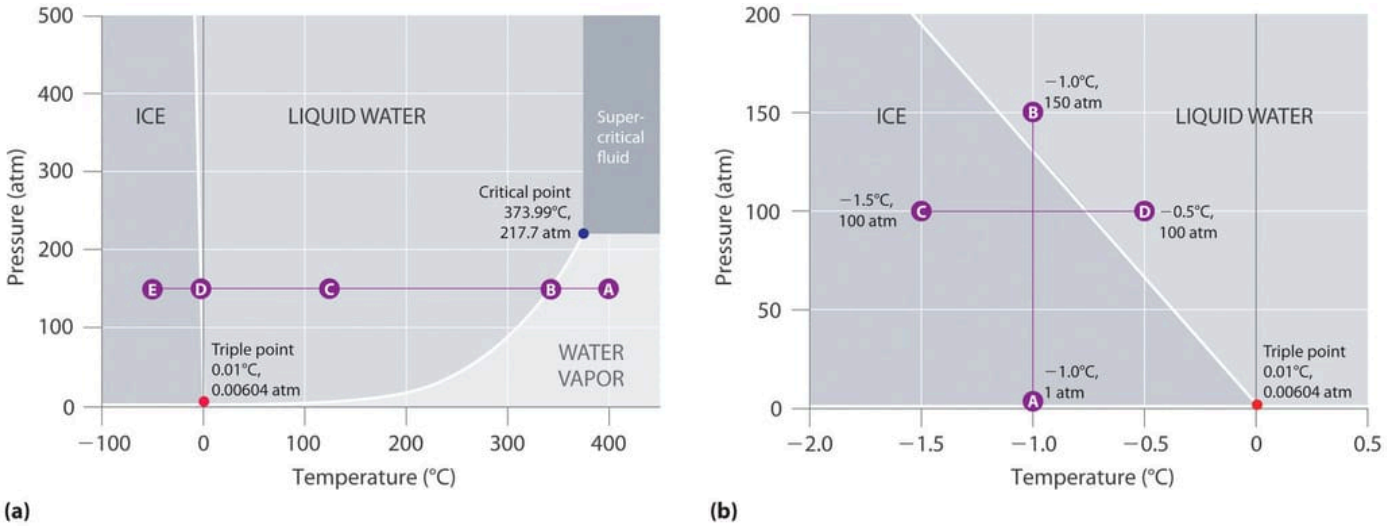


Figure 4.4.2: Two Versions of the Phase Diagram of Water. (a) In this graph with linear temperature and pressure axes, the boundary between ice and liquid water is almost vertical. (b) This graph with an expanded scale illustrates the decrease in melting point with increasing pressure. (The letters refer to points discussed in Example 4.4.1).

The phase diagram for water illustrated in Figure 4.4.2*b* shows the boundary between ice and water on an expanded scale. The melting curve of ice slopes up and slightly to the left rather than up and to the right as in Figure 4.4.1; that is, the melting point of ice *decreases* with increasing pressure; at 100 MPa (987 atm), ice melts at −9°C. Water behaves this way because it is one of the few known substances for which the crystalline solid is *less dense* than the liquid (others include antimony and bismuth). Increasing the pressure of ice that is in equilibrium with water at 0°C and 1 atm tends to push some of the molecules closer together, thus decreasing the volume of the sample. The decrease in volume (and corresponding increase in density) is smaller for a solid or a liquid than for a gas, but it is sufficient to melt some of the ice.

In Figure 4.4.2*b* point A is located at P = 1 atm and T = −1.0°C, within the solid (ice) region of the phase diagram. As the pressure increases to 150 atm while the temperature remains the same, the line from point A crosses the ice/water boundary to point B, which lies in the liquid water region. Consequently, applying a pressure of 150 atm will melt ice at −1.0°C. We have already indicated that the pressure dependence of the melting point of water is of vital importance. If the solid/liquid boundary in the phase diagram of water were to slant up and to the right rather than to the left, ice would be denser than water, ice cubes would

sink, water pipes would not burst when they freeze, and antifreeze would be unnecessary in automobile engines.

Ice Skating: An Incorrect Hypothesis of Phase Transitions

Until recently, many textbooks described ice skating as being possible because the pressure generated by the skater's blade is high enough to melt the ice under the blade, thereby creating a lubricating layer of liquid water that enables the blade to slide across the ice. Although this explanation is intuitively satisfying, it is incorrect, as we can show by a simple calculation.



Pressure from ice skates on ice. from wikihow.com.

Recall that pressure (*P*) is the force (*F*) applied per unit area (*A*):

$$P = \frac{F}{A}$$

To calculate the pressure an ice skater exerts on the ice, we need to calculate only the force exerted and the area of the skate blade. If we assume a 75.0 kg (165 lb) skater, then the force exerted by the skater on the ice due to gravity is

$$F = mg$$

where *m* is the mass and *g* is the acceleration due to Earth's gravity (9.81 m/s^2). Thus the force is

$$F = (75.0\ kg)(9.81\ m/s^2) = 736\ (kg \bullet m)/s^2 = 736N$$

If we assume that the skate blades are 2.0 mm wide and 25 cm long, then the area of the bottom of each blade is

$$A = (2.0 \times 10^{-3}\ m)(25 \times 10^{-2}\ m) = 5.0 \times 10^{-4} m^2$$

If the skater is gliding on one foot, the pressure exerted on the ice is

$$P = \frac{736\ N}{5.0 \times 10^{-4}\ m^2} = 1.5 \times 10^6\ N/m^2 = 1.5 \times 10^6\ Pa = 15\ atm$$

The pressure is much lower than the pressure needed to decrease the melting point of ice by even 1°C, and experience indicates that it is possible to skate even when the temperature is well below freezing. Thus pressure-induced melting of the ice cannot explain the low friction that enables skaters (and hockey pucks) to glide. Recent research indicates that the surface of ice, where the ordered array of water molecules meets the air, consists of one or more layers of almost liquid water.

These layers, together with melting induced by friction as a skater pushes forward, appear to account for both the ease with which a skater glides and the fact that skating becomes more difficult below about −7°C, when the number of lubricating surface water layers decreases.

Example 4.4.1: Water

Referring to the phase diagram of water in Figure 4.4.2:

a. predict the physical form of a sample of water at 400°C and 150 atm.
b. describe the changes that occur as the sample in part (a) is slowly allowed to cool to −50°C at a constant pressure of 150 atm.

Given: phase diagram, temperature, and pressure

Asked for: physical form and physical changes

Strategy:

A. Identify the region of the phase diagram corresponding to the initial conditions and identify the phase that exists in this region.
B. Draw a line corresponding to the given pressure. Move along that line in the appropriate direction (in this case cooling) and describe the phase changes.

Solution:

a. **A** Locate the starting point on the phase diagram in part (a) in Figure 4.4.2. The initial conditions correspond to point A, which lies in the region of the phase diagram representing water vapor. Thus water at T = 400°C and P = 150 atm is a gas.
b. **B** Cooling the sample at constant pressure corresponds to moving left along the horizontal line in part (a) in Figure 4.4.2 . At about 340°C (point B), we cross the vapor pressure curve, at which point water vapor will begin to condense and the sample will consist of a mixture of vapor and liquid. When all of the vapor has condensed, the temperature drops further, and we enter the region corresponding to liquid water (indicated by point C). Further cooling brings us to the melting curve, the line that separates the liquid and solid phases at a little below 0°C (point D), at which point the sample will consist of a mixture of liquid and solid water (ice). When all of the water has frozen, cooling the sample to −50°C takes us along the horizontal line to point E, which lies within the region corresponding to solid water. At P = 150 atm and T = −50°C, therefore, the sample is solid ice.

Exercise 4.4.2

Referring to the phase diagram of water in Figure 4.4.2, predict the physical form of a sample of water at −0.0050°C as the pressure is gradually increased from 1.0 mmHg to 218 atm.

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Phase Diagram of Carbon Dioxide

In contrast to the phase diagram of water, the phase diagram of CO_2 (Figure 4.4.3) has a more typical melting curve, sloping up and to the right. The triple point is −56.6°C and 5.11 atm, which means that liquid CO_2 cannot exist at pressures lower than 5.11 atm. At 1 atm, therefore, solid CO_2 sublimes directly to the vapor while maintaining a temperature of −78.5°C, the normal sublimation temperature. Solid CO_2 is generally known as dry ice because it is a cold solid with no liquid phase observed when it is warmed.



Dry ice ($CO_2\,(s)$) sublimed in air under room temperature and pressure. from Wikipedia.

Also notice the critical point at 30.98°C and 72.79 atm. Supercritical carbon dioxide is emerging as a natural refrigerant, making it a low carbon (and thus a more environmentally friendly) solution for domestic heat pumps.

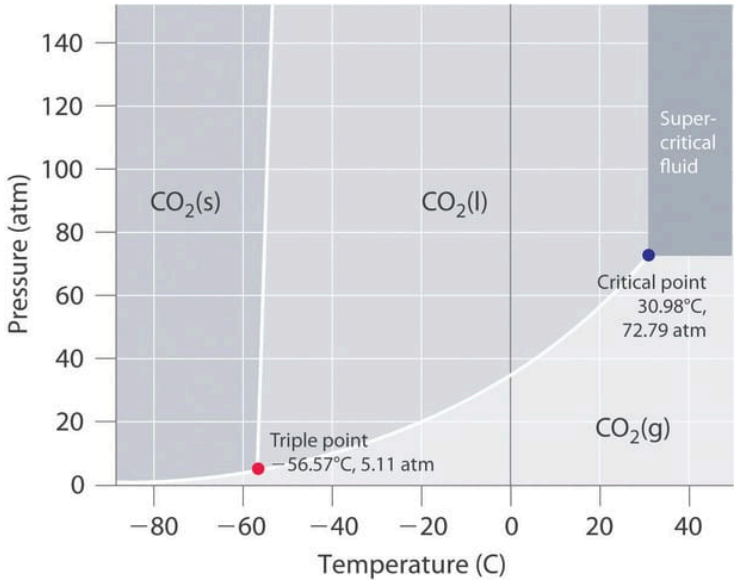


Figure 4.4.3: The Phase Diagram of Carbon Dioxide. Note the critical point, the triple point, and the normal sublimation temperature in this diagram.

The triple point is at -57.57 degrees C and 5.11 atm. The critical point is at 30.98 degree C and 72.79 atm.

The Critical Point

As the phase diagrams above demonstrate, a combination of high pressure and low temperature allows gases to be liquefied. As we increase the temperature of a gas, liquefaction becomes more and more difficult because higher and higher pressures are required to overcome the increased kinetic energy of the molecules. In fact, for every substance, there is some temperature above which the gas can no longer be liquefied, regardless of pressure. This temperature is the critical temperature (T_c), the highest temperature at which a substance can exist as a liquid. Above the critical temperature, the molecules have too much kinetic energy for the intermolecular attractive forces to hold them together in a separate liquid phase. Instead, the substance forms a single phase that completely occupies the volume of the container. Substances with strong intermolecular forces tend to form a liquid phase over a very large temperature range and therefore have high critical temperatures. Conversely, substances with weak intermolecular interactions have relatively low critical temperatures. Each substance also has a critical pressure (P_c), the minimum pressure needed to liquefy it at the critical temperature. The combination of critical temperature and critical pressure is called the critical point. The critical temperatures and pressures of several common substances are listed in Figure 4.4.1.

Figure 4.4.1: Critical Temperatures and Pressures of Some Simple Substances

Substance	T_c (°C)	P_c (atm)
NH_3	132.4	113.5
CO_2	31.0	73.8
CH_3CH_2OH (ethanol)	240.9	61.4
He	−267.96	2.27
Hg	1477	1587
CH_4	−82.6	46.0
N_2	−146.9	33.9
H_2O	374.0	217.7

High-boiling-point, nonvolatile liquids have high critical temperatures and vice versa.

Supercritical Fluids

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

A Video Discussing Phase Diagrams. Video Source: Phase Diagrams(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Answers

Exercise 4.4.2

The sample is initially a gas, condenses to a solid as the pressure increases, and then melts when the pressure is increased further to give a liquid.

This page titled 4.4: Phase Diagrams is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 11.6: Phase Diagrams is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

5: POLYMERS

5.1: Drawing Chemical Structures

5.2: Polymer Fundamentals

5.3: Writing Formulas for Polymers

5.4: Condensation Polymers

5.5: Condensation Polymers

5.6: Addition Polymers

5.7: Addition Polymers

5.8: The Polymerization of Ethene

5.9: Properties of Polymers

5.10: Cross-Linking

This page titled 5: Polymers is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.1: Drawing Chemical Structures

Objectives

After completing this section, you should be able to

1. propose one or more acceptable Kekulé structures (structural formulas) for any given molecular formula
2. write the molecular formula of a compound, given its Kekulé structure.
3. draw the shorthand structure of a compound, given its Kekulé structure.
4. interpret shorthand structures and convert them to Kekulé structures.
5. write the molecular formula of a compound, given its shorthand structure.

Study Notes

When drawing the structure of a neutral organic compound, you will find it helpful to remember that

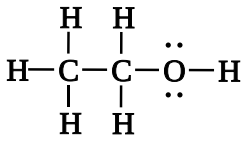
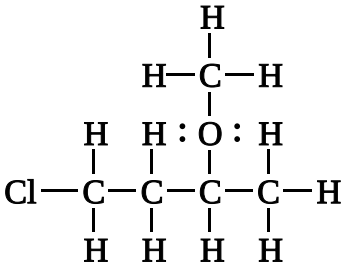
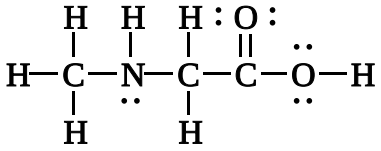
- each carbon atom has four bonds.
- each nitrogen atom has three bonds.
- each oxygen atom has two bonds.
- each hydrogen atom has one bond.

Through general chemistry, you may have already experienced looking at molecular structures using Lewis structures. Because organic chemistry can involve large molecules it would be beneficial if Lewis structures could be abbreviated. The three different ways to draw organic molecules include **Kekulé Formulas**, **Condensed Formulas**, and **Skeletal structures** (also called line-bond structures or line formulas). During this course, you will view molecules written in all three forms. It will be more helpful if you become comfortable going from one style of drawing to another, and look at drawings and understanding what they represent. Developing the ability to convert between different types of formulas requires practice, and in most cases the aid of molecular models. Many kinds of model kits are available to students and professional chemists, and the beginning student is encouraged to obtain one.

Simplification of structural formulas may be achieved without any loss of the information they convey. Kekule formulas is just organic chemistry's term for Lewis structures you have previously encountered. In **condensed structural formulas**, the bonds to each carbon are omitted, but each distinct structural unit (group) is written with subscript numbers designating multiple substituents, including the hydrogens. **Line formulas** omit the symbols for carbon and hydrogen entirely (unless the hydrogen is bonded to an atom other than carbon). Each straight line segment represents a bond, the ends and intersections of the lines are carbon atoms, and the correct number of hydrogens is calculated from the tetravalency of carbon. Non-bonding valence shell electrons are omitted in these formulas.

Kekulé (a.k.a. Lewis Structures)

A Kekulé Formula or structural formula displays the atoms of the molecule in the order they are bonded. It also depicts how the atoms are bonded to one another, for example single, double, and triple covalent bond. Covalent bonds are shown using lines. The number of dashes indicate whether the bond is a single, double, or triple covalent bond. All atom labels are shown and all lone pairs are shown.

		
A	**B**	**C**

Condensed Formula

A condensed formula is made up of the elemental symbols. Condensed structural formulas show the order of atoms like a structural formula but are written in a single line to save space and make it more convenient and faster to write out. The order of the atoms suggests the connectivity in the molecule. Condensed structural formulas are also helpful when showing that a group of atoms is connected to a single atom in a compound. When this happens, parenthesis are used around the group of atoms to show they are together. Also, if more than one of the same substituent is attached to a given atom, it is show with a subscript number. An example is CH_4, which represents four hydrogens attached to the same carbon. Condensed formulas can be read from either direction and H_3C is the same as CH_3, although the latter is more common.

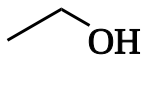
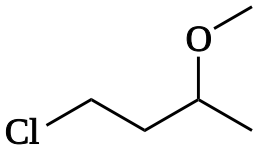
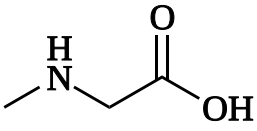
Look at the examples below and match them with their identical molecule under the Kekulé structures and the line formulas.

CH_3CH_2OH	$ClCH_2CH_2CH(OCH_3)CH_3$	CH_3NHCH_2COOH
A	**B**	**C**

Let's look closely at example B. As you go through a condensed formula, you want to focus on the carbons and other elements that aren't hydrogen. The hydrogen's are important, but are usually there to complete octets. Also, notice the $-OCH_3$ is in written in parentheses which tell you that it not part of the main chain of carbons. As you read through a a condensed formula, if you reach an atom that doesn't have a complete octet by the time you reach the next hydrogen, then it's possible that there are double or triple bonds. In example C, the carbon is double bonded to oxygen and single bonded to another oxygen. Notice how COOH means C(=O)-O-H instead of CH_3-C-O-O-H because carbon does not have a complete octet and oxygens.

Line Formula

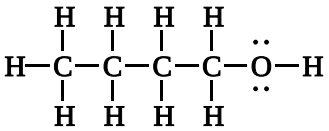
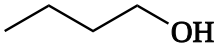
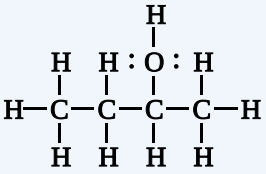
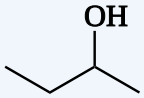
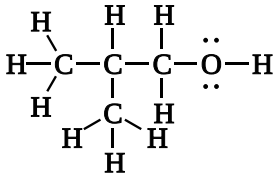
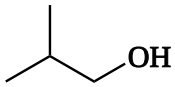
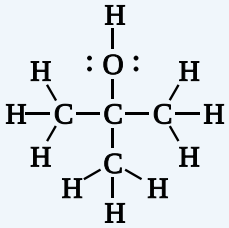
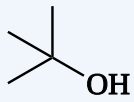
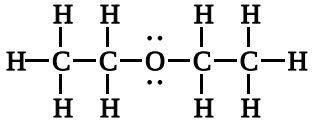
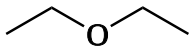
Because organic compounds can be complex at times, line-angle formulas are used to write carbon and hydrogen atoms more efficiently by replacing the letter "C" with lines. A carbon atom is present wherever a line intersects another line. Hydrogen atoms are omitted but are assumed to be present to complete each of carbon's four bonds. Hydrogens that are attached to elements other than carbon are shown. Atom labels for all other elements are shown. Lone pair electrons are usually omitted. They are assumed to be present to complete the octet of non-carbon atoms. Line formulas help show the structure and order of the atoms in a compound.

		
A	**B**	**C**

These molecules correspond to the exact same molecules depicted for Kekulé structures and condensed formulas. Notice how the carbons are no longer drawn in and are replaced by the ends and bends of a lines. In addition, the hydrogens have been omitted, but could be easily drawn in (see practice problems). Although we do not usually draw in the H's that are bonded to carbon, we do draw them in if they are connected to other atoms besides carbon (example is the OH group above in example A)

. This is done because it is not always clear if the non-carbon atom is surrounded by lone pairs or hydrogens. Also in example A, notice how the OH is drawn with a bond to the second carbon, but it does not mean that there is a third carbon at the end of that bond/ line.

Table 5.1.1: Structural Formulas for $C_4H_{10}O$ isomers

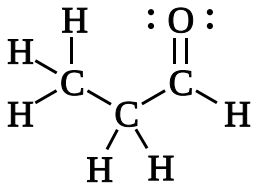
Kekulé Formula	Condensed Formula	Line Formula
	$CH_3(CH_2)_3OH$	
	$CH_3CH_2CH(OH)CH_3$	
	$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2OH$	
	$(CH_3)_3COH$	
	$CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$	

Example: Converting between Structural Formulas

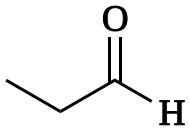
It is helpful to convert compounds into different structural formulas (Kekule, Line, and Condensed) depending on the type of question that is asked. Standardized exams frequently include a high percentage of condensed formulas because it is easier and cheaper to type letters and numbers than to import figures. Initially, it can be difficult writing a Line structure directly from a condensed formula. First, write the Kekule structure from the condensed formula and then draw the Line structure from the Kekule.

a) The condensed formula for propanal is CH_3CH_2CHO. Draw the Kekule structure.

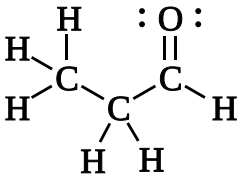
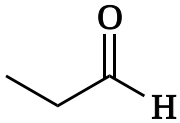
The Kekule structure for propanal is shown below. Remember that every carbon will have four bonds and oxygens octet is filled with lone pairs.



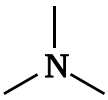
The bond-line structure for propanal is shown below. First, remove hydrogens. The hydrogen attached to the aldehyde group remains because it is part of a functional group. The remove the "C" labels from the structure and keep the lines in place. Lastly, remove any lone pairs.



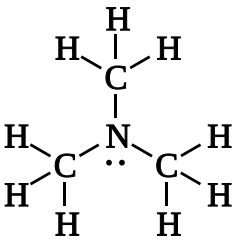
All three structures represent the same compound, propanal.

CH_3CH_2CHO =  = 

b) The following is the line structure of the molecule trimethyl amine.

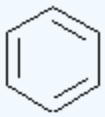


To convert it to a Kekule structure first identify the carbons in the molecule. The will be at the corners and ends of line without an atom label. Trimethyl amine has three carbons. Next, add hydrogens to the carbons until four bonds are present. Each carbon in trimethyl amine is singly bonded to nitrogen. This means each carbon will need three additional C-H bonds to create its octet. Lastly, add lone pairs to other elements to fill their octets. The nitrogen in trimethyl amine is bonded to three carbons. This means it will require one of lone pair electrons to complete its octet.



Exercise 5.1.1

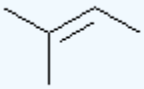
How many carbons are in the following drawing? How many hydrogens?



Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 5.1.2

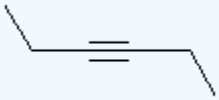
How many carbons are in the following drawing? How many hydrogens?



Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 5.1.3

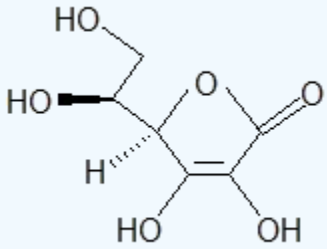
How many carbons are in the following drawing? How many hydrogens?



Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 5.1.4

Look at the following molecule of vitamin A and draw in the hidden hydrogens and electron pairs.



Hint: Do all of the carbons have 4 bonds? Do all the oxygens have a full octet?

Answer available at the end of this section.

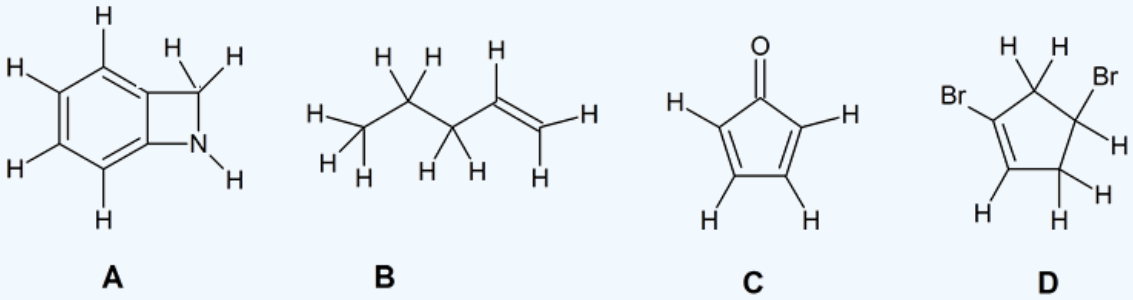
Exercise 5.1.5

Draw $ClCH_2CH_2CH(OCH_3)CH_3$ in Kekulé and line form.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 5.1.6

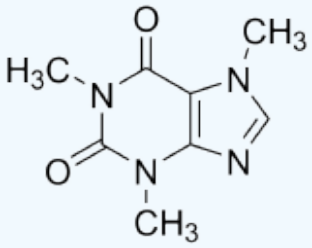
Write down the molecular formula for each of the compounds shown here.



Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 5.1.7

Below is the molecule for caffeine. Give the molecular formula for it.

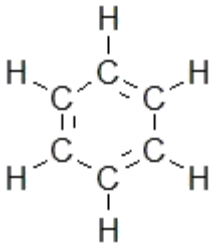


Answer available at the end of this section.

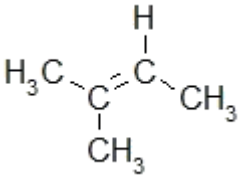
Answers

Exercise 5.1.1

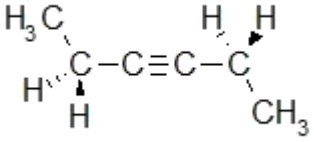
Remember the octet rule and how many times carbons and hydrogens are able to bond to other atoms.



Exercise 5.1.2

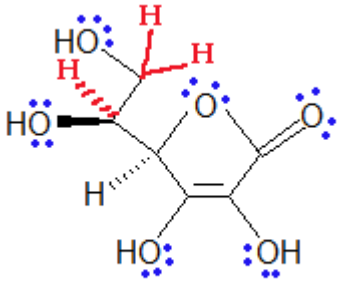


Exercise 5.1.3

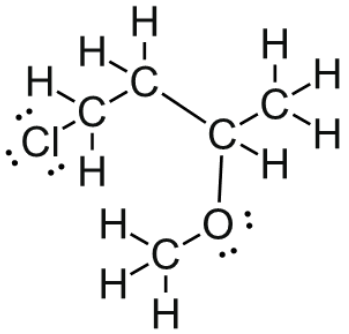


Exercise 5.1.4

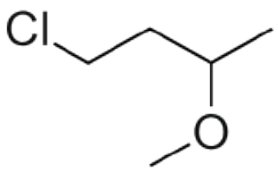
Electron pairs drawn in blue and hydrogens draw in red.



Exercise 5.1.5



and



Exercise 5.1.6

a. C_7H_7N
b. C_5H_{10}
c. C_5H_4O
d. $C_5H_6Br_2$

Exercise 5.1.7

$C_8H_{10}O_2N_4$

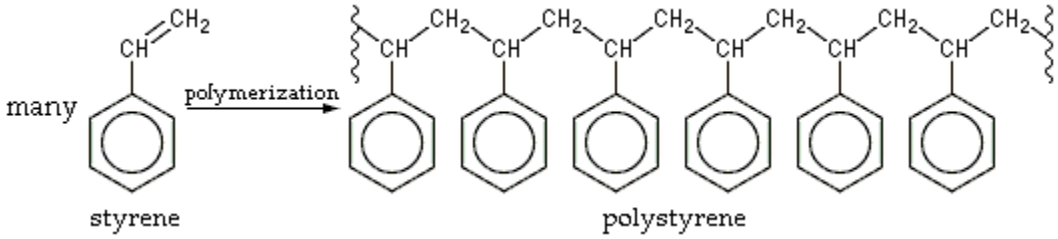
This page titled 5.1: Drawing Chemical Structures is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 1.12: Drawing Chemical Structures by Dietmar Kennepohl, Krista Cunningham, Steven Farmer, Tim Soderberg, William Reusch is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

5.2: Polymer Fundamentals

Polymers are long chain, giant organic molecules are assembled from many smaller molecules called **monomers**. Polymers consist of many repeating monomer units in long chains, sometimes with *branching* or *cross-linking* between the chains. A polymer is analogous to a necklace made from many small beads (monomers). A chemical reaction forming polymers from monomers is called **polymerization**, of which there are many types. A common name for many synthetic polymer materials is plastic, which comes from the Greek word "plastikos", suitable for molding or shaping.

In the following illustrated example, many monomers called styrene are polymerized into a long chain polymer called polystyrene. The squiggly lines indicate that the polymer molecule extends further at both the left and right ends. In fact, polymer molecules are often hundreds or thousands of monomer units long.



Introduction

Many objects in daily use from packing, wrapping, and building materials include half of all polymers synthesized. Other uses include textiles, many electronic appliance casings, CD's, automobile parts, and many others are made from polymers. A quarter of the solid waste from homes is plastic materials - some of which may be recycled as shown in the table below.

Some products, such as adhesives, are made to include monomers which can be polymerized by the user in their application.

Polyurethane Foam



C. Ophardt, c. 2003

Types of Polymers

There are many types of polymers including synthetic and natural polymers.

Natural biopolymers

- Polypeptides in proteins - silk, collagen, keratin.
- Polysaccharides (Carbohydrate chains) - cellulose, starch, glycogen
- Nucleic acids - DNA and RNA

Synthetic polymers

- Plastics
- Elastomers - solids with rubber-like qualities
  - Rubber (carbon backbone often from hydrocarbon monomers)
  - silicones (backbone of alternating silicon and oxygen atoms).
- Fibers
- Solid materials of intermediate characteristics
- Gels or viscous liquids

Classification of Polymers

- Homopolymers: These consist of chains with identical bonding linkages to each monomer unit. This usually implies that the polymer is made from all identical monomer molecules. These may be represented as : -[A-A-A-A-A-A]- Homopolymers are commonly named by placing the prefix poly in front of the constituent monomer name. For example, polystyrene is the name for the polymer made from the monomer styrene (vinylbenzene).

- Copolymers: These consist of chains with two or more linkages usually implying two or more different types of monomer units. These may be represented as : -[A-B-A-B-A-B]-

Polymers classified by mode of polymerization

- Addition Polymers: The monomer molecules bond to each other without the loss of any other atoms. Addition polymers from alkene monomers or substituted alkene monomers are the biggest groups of polymers in this class. Ring opening polymerization can occur without the loss of any small molecules.
- Condensation Polymers: Usually two different monomer combine with the loss of a small molecule, usually water. Most polyesters and polyamides (nylon) are in this class of polymers. Polyurethane Foam in graphic above.

Polymers classified by Physical Response to Heating

Thermoplastics

Plastics that soften when heated and become firm again when cooled. This is the more popular type of plastic because the heating and cooling may be repeated and the thermoplastic may be reformed.

Thermosets

These are plastics that soften when heated and can be molded, but harden permanently. They will decompose when reheated. An example is Bakelite, which is used in toasters, handles for pots and pans, dishes, electrical outlets and billiard balls.

Recycled Plastics

Recycle Code	Abbreviation and Chemical Name of Plastic	Types of Uses and Examples

1	PET - polyethylene terephthalate	Many types of clear plastic consumer bottles, including clear, 2-liter beverage bottles
2	HDPE - High density polyethylene	Milk jugs, detergent bottles, some water bottles, some grocery plastic bags
3	PVC - Polyvinyl chloride	Plastic drain pipe, shower curtains, some water bottles
4	LDPE - Low density polyethylene	Plastic garbage and other bags, garment bags, snap-on lids such as coffee can lids
5	PP - Polypropylene	Many translucent (or opaque) plastic containers; containers for some products such as yogurt, soft butter, or margarine; aerosol can tops; rigid bottle caps; candy wrappers; bottoms of bottles
6	PS - Polystyrene	Hard clear plastic cups, foam cups, eating utensils, deli food containers, toy model kits, some packing popcorn
7	Other	Polycarbonate is a common type, Biodegradable, Some packing popcorn

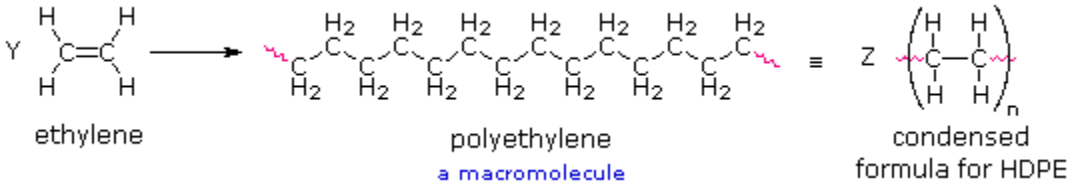
Contributors

- Charles Ophardt, Professor Emeritus, Elmhurst College; Virtual Chembook

This page titled 5.2: Polymer Fundamentals is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.3: Writing Formulas for Polymers

The repeating structural unit of most simple polymers not only reflects the monomer(s) from which the polymers are constructed, but also provides a concise means for drawing structures to represent these macromolecules. For polyethylene, arguably the simplest polymer, this is demonstrated by the following equation. Here ethylene (ethene) is the monomer, and the corresponding linear polymer is called high-density polyethylene (HDPE). HDPE is composed of macromolecules in which n ranges from 10,000 to 100,000 (molecular weight 2×10^5 to 3×10^6).



If Y and Z represent moles of monomer and polymer respectively, Z is approximately 10^{-5} Y. This polymer is called polyethylene rather than polymethylene, $(-CH_2-)_n$, because ethylene is a stable compound (methylene is not), and it also serves as the synthetic precursor of the polymer. The two open bonds remaining at the ends of the long chain of carbons (colored magenta) are normally not specified, because the atoms or groups found there depend on the chemical process used for polymerization. The synthetic methods used to prepare this and other polymers will be described later in this chapter.

Contributors

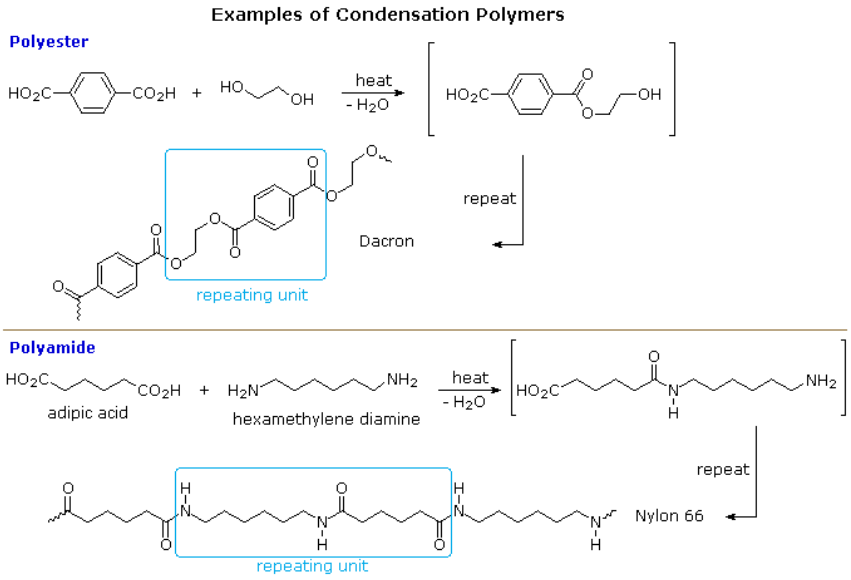
William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

This page titled 5.3: Writing Formulas for Polymers is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.4: Condensation Polymers

A large number of important and useful polymeric materials are not formed by chain-growth processes involving reactive species such as radicals, but proceed instead by conventional functional group transformations of polyfunctional reactants. These polymerizations often (but not always) occur with loss of a small byproduct, such as water, and generally (but not always) combine two different components in an alternating structure. The polyester Dacron and the polyamide Nylon 66, shown here, are two examples of synthetic condensation polymers, also known as step-growth polymers. In contrast to chain-growth polymers, most of which grow by carbon-carbon bond formation, step-growth polymers generally grow by carbon-heteroatom bond formation (C-O & C-N in Dacron & Nylon respectively). Although polymers of this kind might be considered to be alternating copolymers, the repeating monomeric unit is usually defined as a combined moiety.

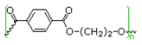
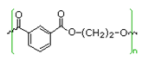
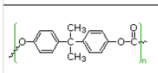
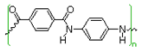
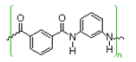
Examples of naturally occurring condensation polymers are cellulose, the polypeptide chains of proteins, and poly(β-hydroxybutyric acid), a polyester synthesized in large quantity by certain soil and water bacteria. Formulas for these will be displayed below by clicking on the diagram.



Characteristics of Condensation Polymers

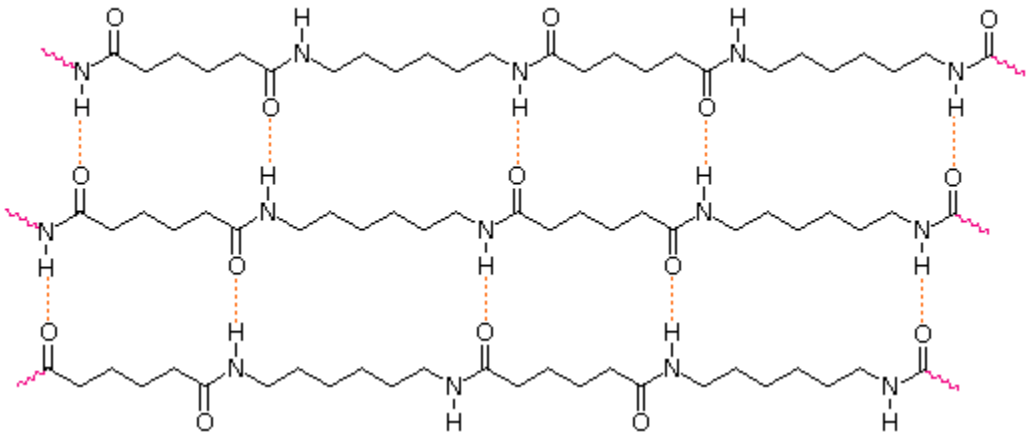
Condensation polymers form more slowly than addition polymers, often requiring heat, and they are generally lower in molecular weight. The terminal functional groups on a chain remain active, so that groups of shorter chains combine into longer chains in the late stages of polymerization. The presence of polar functional groups on the chains often enhances chain-chain attractions, particularly if these involve hydrogen bonding, and thereby crystallinity and tensile strength. The following examples of condensation polymers are illustrative.

Note that for commercial synthesis the carboxylic acid components may actually be employed in the form of derivatives such as simple esters. Also, the polymerization reactions for Nylon 6 and Spandex do not proceed by elimination of water or other small molecules. Nevertheless, the polymer clearly forms by a step-growth process. Some Condensation Polymers

Formula	Type	Components	T_g °C	T_m °C
~[CO(CH$_2$)$_4$CO-OCH$_2$CH$_2$O]$_n$~	polyester	HO$_2$C-(CH$_2$)$_4$-CO$_2$H HO-CH$_2$CH$_2$-OH	< 0	50
	polyester Dacron, Mylar	para HO$_2$C-C$_6$H$_4$-CO$_2$H HO-CH$_2$CH$_2$-OH	70	265
	polyester	meta HO$_2$C-C$_6$H$_4$-CO$_2$H HO-CH$_2$CH$_2$-OH	50	240
	polyester Lexan	(HO-C$_6$H$_4$-)$_2$C(CH$_3$)$_2$ (Bisphenol A) X$_2$C=O (X = OCH$_3$ or Cl)	150	267
~[CO(CH$_2$)$_4$CO-NH(CH$_2$)$_6$NH]$_n$~	polyamide Nylon 66	HO$_2$C-(CH$_2$)$_4$-CO$_2$H H$_2$N-(CH$_2$)$_6$-NH$_2$	45	265
~[CO(CH$_2$)$_5$NH]$_n$~	polyamide Nylon 6 Perlon		53	223
	polyamide Kevlar	para HO$_2$C-C$_6$H$_4$-CO$_2$H para H$_2$N-C$_6$H$_4$-NH$_2$	---	500
	polyamide Nomex	meta HO$_2$C-C$_6$H$_4$-CO$_2$H meta H$_2$N-C$_6$H$_4$-NH$_2$	273	390

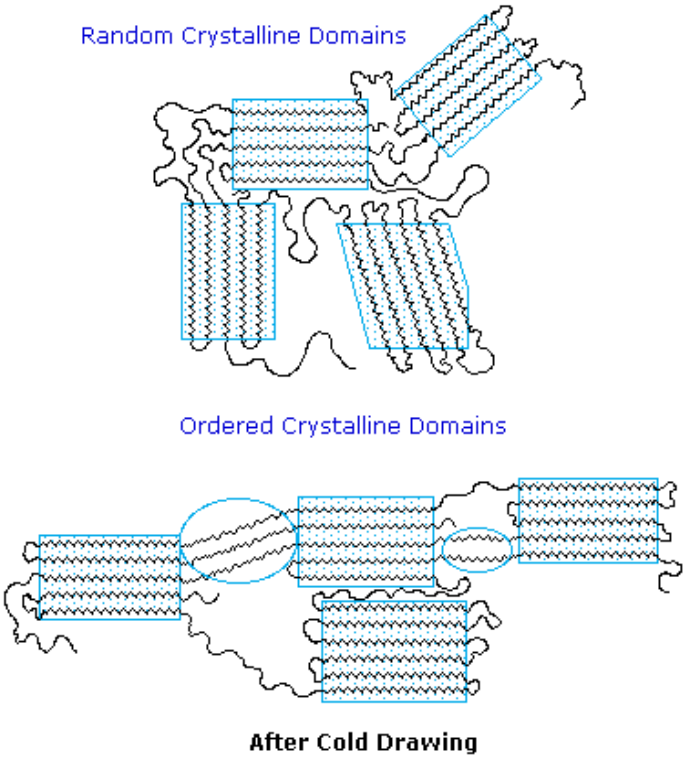
The difference in Tg and Tm between the first polyester (completely aliphatic) and the two nylon polyamides (5th & 6th entries) shows the effect of intra-chain hydrogen bonding on crystallinity. The replacement of flexible alkylidene links with rigid benzene rings also stiffens the polymer chain, leading to increased crystalline character, as demonstrated for polyesters (entries 1, 2 &3) and polyamides (entries 5, 6, 7 & 8). The high Tg and Tm values for the amorphous polymer Lexan are consistent with its brilliant transparency and glass-like rigidity. Kevlar and Nomex are extremely tough and resistant materials, which find use in bullet-proof vests and fire resistant clothing.

Interchain Hydrogen Bonding Enhances Crystallinity

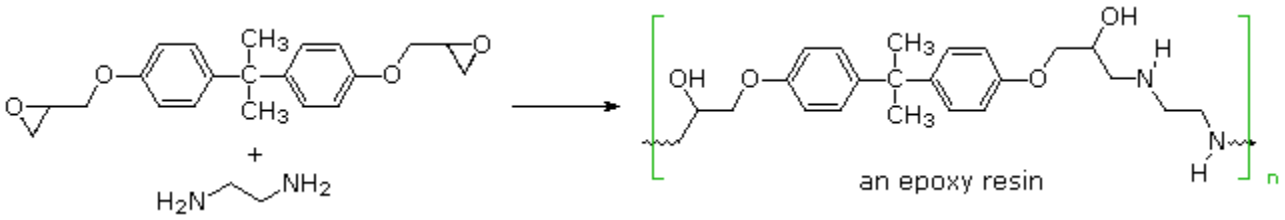


Many polymers, both addition and condensation, are used as fibers The chief methods of spinning synthetic polymers into fibers are from melts or viscous solutions. Polyesters, polyamides and polyolefins are usually spun from melts, provided the Tm is not too high. Polyacrylates suffer thermal degradation and are therefore spun from solution in a volatile solvent. Cold-drawing is an important physical treatment that improves the strength and appearance of these polymer fibers. At temperatures above T_g, a thicker than desired fiber can be forcibly stretched to many times its length; and in so doing the polymer chains become untangled, and tend to align in a parallel fashion. This cold-drawing procedure organizes randomly oriented crystalline domains, and also aligns amorphous domains so they become more crystalline. In these cases, the physically oriented morphology is stabilized and retained in the final product. This contrasts with elastomeric polymers, for which the stretched or aligned morphology is unstable relative to the amorphous random coil morphology.

This cold-drawing treatment may also be used to treat polymer films (e.g. Mylar & Saran) as well as fibers.



Step-growth polymerization is also used for preparing a class of adhesives and amorphous solids called epoxy resins. Here the covalent bonding occurs by an S_N2 reaction between a nucleophile, usually an amine, and a terminal epoxide. In the following example, the same bisphenol A intermediate used as a monomer for Lexan serves as a difunctional scaffold to which the epoxide rings are attached. Bisphenol A is prepared by the acid-catalyzed condensation of acetone with phenol.



Contributors

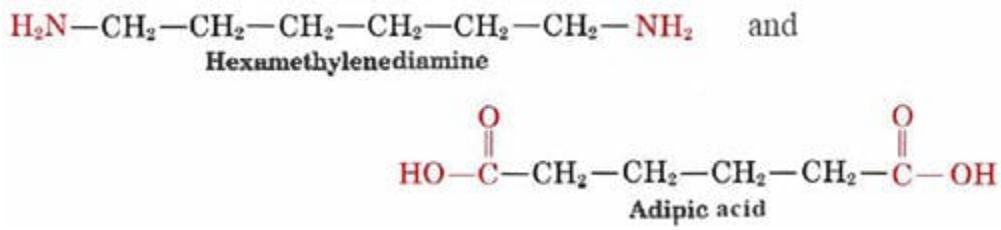
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

This page titled 5.4: Condensation Polymers is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by William Reusch.

- Condensation Polymers by William Reusch is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

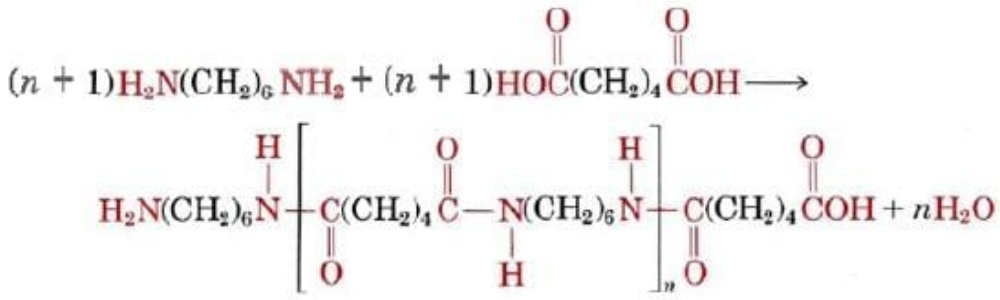
5.5: Condensation Polymers

When addition polymers are formed, no by-products result. Formation of a condensation polymer, on the other hand, produces H_2O, HCl, or some other simple molecule which escapes as a gas. A familiar example of a condensation polymer is *nylon*, which is obtained from the reaction of two monomers



Structure of hexamethylenediamine. Its "N" "H" 2 groups are highlighted in color. Structure of adipic acid is also shown with its "C" double bond "O" single bond "O" "H" highlighted in color.

These two molecules can link up with each other because each contains a reactive functional group, either an amine or a carboxylic acid which reacts to form an amide linkage. They combine as follows:



Equation shows the "N" "H" 2 functional group of an amine reacting with a "C" "O" "O" "H" group from a carboxylic acid. This forms a "N" "H" "C" double bond "O" group linkage between the two reactants. Water is a byproduct.

Below is a video of the reaction to form nylon. This reaction is slightly modified from the one described above, as adipoyl chloride, not adipic acid, is used as a reactant. Thus HCl, not H_2O is produced. This also means that the chain terminates in an acid chloride, rather than the carboxylic acid shown above. Note that an amide linkage is still formed.

A solution of adipoyl chloride in cyclohexane is poured on top of an aqueous solution of 1,6-diaminohexane in a beaker. Nylon (6,6) polyamide is formed at the interface of the two immiscible liquids and is carefully drawn from the solution and placed on a glass rod. The rod is then spun, and the Nylon (6,6) polyamide is spun onto the rod.

Well-known condensation polymers other than nylon are Dacron, Bakelite, melamine, and Mylar. Nylon makes extremely strong threads and fibers because its long-chain molecules have stronger intermolecular forces than the London forces of polyethylene. Each N—H group in a nylon chain can hydrogen bond to the O of a C=O group in a neighboring chain, as shown below. Therefore the chains cannot slide past one another easily.

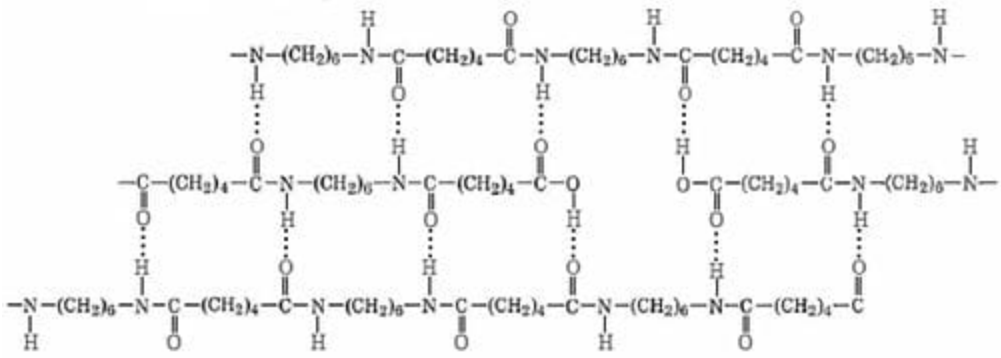


Figure 5.5.1: The three nylon molecules are held together by hydrogen bonding. The N-H group of one chain hydrogen bonds to the C=O group of another chain. This makes nylon quite strong and difficult to pull apart.

If you pull on both ends of a nylon thread, for example, it will only stretch slightly. After that it will strongly resist breaking because a large number of hydrogen bonds are holding overlapping chains together. The same is not true of a polyethylene thread in which only London forces attract overlapping chains together, and this is one reason that polyethylene is not used to make thread.

This page titled 5.5: Condensation Polymers is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ed Vitz, John W. Moore, Justin Shorb, Xavier Prat-Resina, Tim Wendorff, and Adam Hahn.

- 8.25: Condensation Polymers by Ed Vitz, John W. Moore, Justin Shorb, Xavier Prat-Resina, Tim Wendorff, and Adam Hahn is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

5.6: Addition Polymers

Polymers are long chain giant organic molecules are assembled from many smaller molecules called **monomers**. **Polymers** consist of many repeating monomer units in long chains. A polymer is analogous to a necklace made from many small beads (monomers). Many monomers are alkenes or other molecules with double bonds which react by **addition** to their unsaturated double bonds.

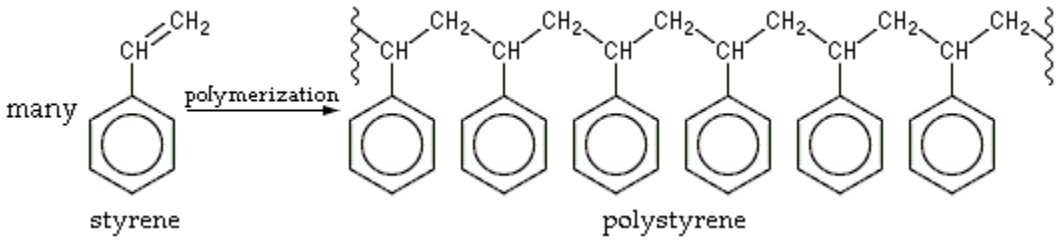
Introduction

The electrons in the double bond are used to bond two monomer molecules together. This is represented by the red arrows moving from one molecule to the space between two molecules where a new bond is to form. The formation of polyethylene from ethylene (ethene) may be illustrated in the graphic on the left as follows. In the complete polymer, all of the double bonds have been turned into single bonds. No atoms have been lost and you can see that the monomers have just been joined in the process of addition. A simple representation is -[A-A-A-A-A]-. Polyethylene is used in plastic bags, bottles, toys, and electrical insulation.

- **LDPE - Low Density Polyethylene:** The first commercial polyethylene process used peroxide catalysts at a temperature of 500 C and 1000 atmospheres of pressure. This yields a transparent polymer with highly branched chains which do not pack together well and is low in density. LDPE makes a flexible plastic. Today most LDPE is used for blow-molding of films for packaging and trash bags and flexible snap-on lids. LDPE is recyclable plastic #4.
- **HDPE - High Density Polyethylene:** An alternate method is to use Ziegler-Natta aluminum titanium catalysts to make HDPE which has very little branching, allows the strands to pack closely, and thus is high density. It is three times stronger than LDPE and more opaque. About 45% of the HDPE is blow molded into milk and disposable consumer bottles. HDPE is also used for crinkly plastic bags to pack groceries at grocery stores. HDPE is recyclable plastic #2.

Other Addition Polymers

- **PVC** (polyvinyl chloride), which is found in plastic wrap, simulated leather, water pipes, and garden hoses, is formed from vinyl chloride (H_2C=CHCl). The reaction is shown in the graphic on the left. Notice how every other carbon must have a chlorine attached.
- **Polypropylene:** The reaction to make polypropylene (H_2C=$CHCH_3$) is illustrated in the middle reaction of the graphic. Notice that the polymer bonds are always through the carbons of the double bond. Carbon #3 already has saturated bonds and cannot participate in any new bonds. A methyl group is on every other carbon.
- **Polystyrene:** The reaction is the same for polystrene where every other carbon has a benzene ring attached. Polystyrene (PS) is recyclable plastic #6. In the following illustrated example, many styrene monomers are polymerized into a long chain polystyrene molecule. The squiggly lines indicate that the polystyrene molecule extends further at both the left and right ends.



- Blowing fine gas bubbles into liquid polystyrene and letting it solidify produces *expanded polystyrene*, called *Styrofoam* by the Dow Chemical Company.
- **Polystyrene with DVB:** Cross-linking between polymer chains can be introduced into polystyrene by copolymerizing with ***p*-divinylbenzene** (**DVB**). DVB has vinyl groups (-CH=CH_2) at each end of its molecule, each of which can be polymerized into a polymer chain like any other vinyl group on a styrene monomer.

***Table 1**: Various Polymers*

Monomer	Polymer Name	Trade Name	Uses
$F_2C=CF_2$	polytetrafluoroethylene	Teflon	Non-stick coating for cooking utensils, chemically-resistant specialty plastic parts, Gore-Tex
$H_2C=CCl_2$	polyvinylidene dichloride	Saran	Clinging food wrap
$H_2C=CH(CN)$	polyacrylonitrile	Orlon, Acrilan, Creslan	Fibers for textiles, carpets, upholstery
$H_2C=CH(OCOCH_3)$	polyvinyl acetate		Elmer's glue - Silly Putty Demo
$H_2C=CH(OH)$	polyvinyl alcohol		Ghostbusters Demo
$H_2C=C(CH_3)COOCH_3$	polymethyl methacrylate	Plexiglass, Lucite	Stiff, clear, plastic sheets, blocks, tubing, and other shapes

Addition polymers from conjugated dienes

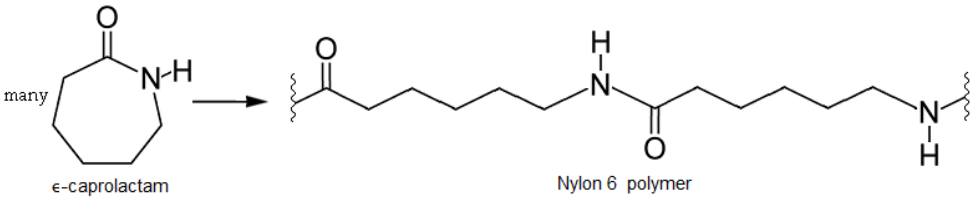
Polymers from conjugated dienes usually give elastomer polymers having rubber-like properties.

***Table 2.** Addition homopolymers from conjugated dienes*

Monomer	Polymer name	Trade name	Uses
$H_2C=CH-C(CH_3)=CH_2$	polyisoprene	natural or some synthetic rubber	applications similar to natural rubber
$H_2C=CH-CH=CH_2$	polybutadiene	polybutadiene synthetic rubber	select synthetic rubber applications
$H_2C=CH-CCl=CH_2$	polychloroprene	Neoprene	chemically-resistant rubber

Ring opening polymerization

In this kind of polymerization, molecular rings are opened in the formation of a polymer. Here epsilon-caprolactam, a 6-carbon cyclic monomer, undergoes ring opening to form a Nylon 6 homopolymer, which is somewhat similar to but not the same as Nylon 6,6 alternating copolymer.



References

- Gorodetsky, Malka. "Electroplating of polyethylene." *J. Chem. Educ.* **1978**, *55*, 66.

Contributors

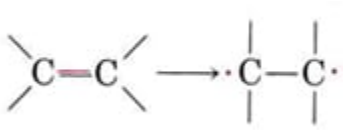
Charles Ophardt (Professor Emeritus, Elmhurst College); Virtual Chembook

This page titled 5.6: Addition Polymers is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- Addition Polymers is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

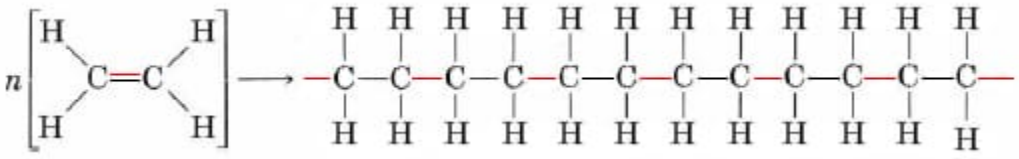
5.7: Addition Polymers

Addition polymers are usually made from a monomer containing a double bond. We can think of the double bond as "opening out" in order to participate in two new single bonds in the following way:



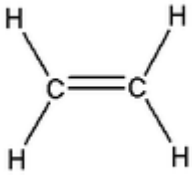
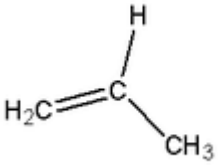
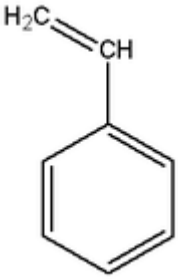
One of the lines in a double bond is highlighted in red. An arrow points from this double bond to a single bond in which each carbon now has one free electron each.

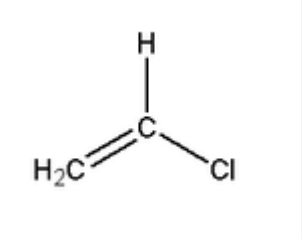
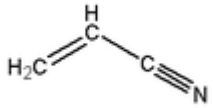
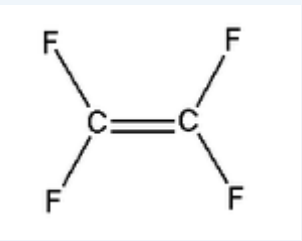
Thus, if ethene is heated at moderate temperature and pressure in the presence of an appropriate catalyst, it polymerizes:



Polymerization of ethene equation shows an indefinite amount of repeating ethene structure forming a long carbon chain.

Table 5.7.1: Some Common Addition Polymers.

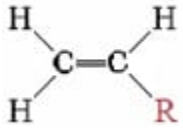
Monomer	Nonsystematic Name	Polymer	Some Typical Uses
	Ethylene	Polyethylene	Film for packaging and bags, toys, bottles, coatings
	Propylene	Polypropylene	Milk cartons, rope, outdoor carpeting
	Styrene	Polystyrene	Transparent containers, plastic glasses, refrigerators, styrofoam

Monomer	Nonsystematic Name	Polymer	Some Typical Uses
	Vinyl chloride	Polyvinyl chloride, PVC	Pipe and tubing, raincoats, curtains, phonograph records, luggage, floor tiles
	Acrylonitrile	Polyacrylonitrile (Orlon, Acrilan)	Textiles, ruga
	Tetrafluoroethylene	Teflon	Nonstick pan coatings, bearings, gaskets

The result is the familiar waxy plastic called polyethylene, which at a molecular level consists of a collection of long-chain alkane molecules, most of which contain tens of thousands of carbon atoms. There is only an occasional short branch chain.

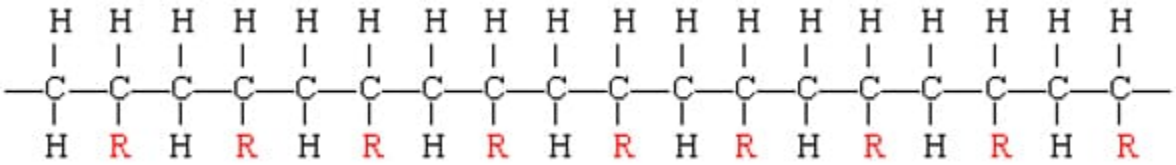
Polyethylene is currently manufactured on a very large scale, larger than any other polymer, and is used for making plastic bags, cheap bottles, toys, etc. Many of its properties are what we would expect from its molecular composition. The fact that it is a mixture of molecules each of slightly different chain length (and hence slightly different melting point) explains why it softens over a range of temperatures rather than having a single melting point. Because the molecules are only held together by London forces, this melting and softening occurs at a rather low temperature. (Some of the cheaper varieties of polyethylene with shorter chains and more branch chains will even soften in boiling water.) The same weak London forces explain why polyethylene is soft and easy to scratch and why it is not very ‘strong mechanically.'

The table above lists some other well-known addition polymers and also some of their uses. You can probably find at least one example of each of them in your home. Except for Teflon, all these polymers derive from a monomer of the form.



Structure shows "C" double bond "C". One "C" is single bonded to two "H". The other "C" is bonded to 1 "H" and one other "R" group.

The resulting polymer thus has the general form:



Repeating pattern in polymer show "C" "H" 2 single bond "C" "H" "R" single bond "C" "H" 2 and so on.

By varying the nature of the R group, the physical properties of the polymer can be controlled rather precisely.

This page titled 5.7: Addition Polymers is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ed Vitz, John W. Moore, Justin Shorb, Xavier Prat-Resina, Tim Wendorff, and Adam Hahn.

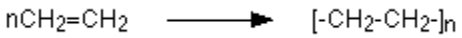
- 8.24: Addition Polymers by Ed Vitz, John W. Moore, Justin Shorb, Xavier Prat-Resina, Tim Wendorff, and Adam Hahn is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

5.8: The Polymerization of Ethene

This module guides you through the mechanism for the polymerisation of ethene by a free radical addition reaction. We are going to talk through this mechanism in a very detailed way so that you get a feel for what is going on.

A Free Radical Addition Reaction

You will remember that during the polymeriation of ethene, thousands of ethene molecules join together to make poly(ethene) - commonly called polythene. The reaction is done at high pressures in the presence of a trace of oxygen as an initiator.

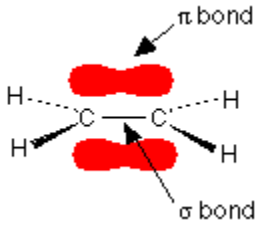


Step 1: Chain Initiation

The oxygen reacts with some of the ethene to give an organic peroxide. Organic peroxides are very reactive molecules containing oxygen-oxygen single bonds which are quite weak and which break easily to give free radicals. You can short-cut the process by adding other organic peroxides directly to the ethene instead of using oxygen if you want to. The type of the free radicals that start the reaction off vary depending on their source. For simplicity we give them a general formula: $Ra^{\bullet}$

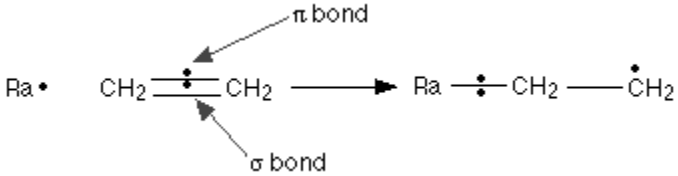
Step 2: Chain Propagation

In an ethene molecule, CH_2=CH_2, the two pairs of electrons which make up the double bond aren't the same. One pair is held securely on the line between the two carbon nuclei in a bond called a sigma bond. The other pair is more loosely held in an orbital above and below the plane of the molecule known as a π bond.



> Note
>
> It would be helpful - but not essential - if you read about the structure of ethene before you went on. If the diagram above is unfamiliar to you, then you certainly ought to read this background material.

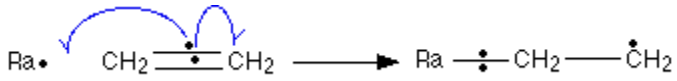
Imagine what happens if a free radical approaches the π bond in ethene.



Note

Don't worry that we've gone back to a simpler diagram. As long as you realise that the pair of electrons shown between the two carbon atoms is in a π bond - and therefore vulnerable - that's all that really matters for this mechanism.

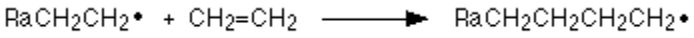
The sigma bond between the carbon atoms isn't affected by any of this. The free radical, Ra•, uses one of the electrons in the π bond to help to form a new bond between itself and the left hand carbon atom. The other electron returns to the right hand carbon. You can show this using "curly arrow" notation if you want to:



Note

If you aren't sure about about curly arrow notation you can follow this link.

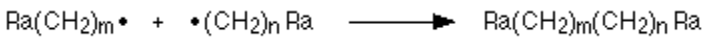
This is energetically worth doing because the new bond between the radical and the carbon is stronger than the π bond which is broken. You would get more energy out when the new bond is made than was used to break the old one. The more energy that is given out, the more stable the system becomes. What we've now got is a bigger free radical - lengthened by CH_2CH_2. That can react with another ethene molecule in the same way:



So now the radical is even bigger. That can react with another ethene - and so on and so on. The polymer chain gets longer and longer.

Step 3: Chain Termination

The chain does not, however, grow indefinitely. Sooner or later two free radicals will collide together.



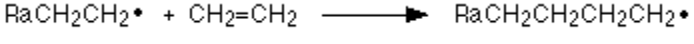
That immediately stops the growth of two chains and produces one of the final molecules in the poly(ethene). It is important to realise that the poly(ethene) is going to be a mixture of molecules of different sizes, made in this sort of random way.

Summary

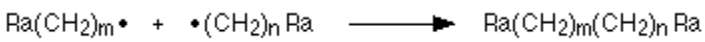
The over-all process is known as ***free radical addition.***

- **Chain initiation**: The chain is initiated by free radicals, Ra•, produced by reaction between some of the ethene and the oxygen initiator.
- **Chain propagation**: Each time a free radical hits an ethene molecule a new longer free radical is formed (e.g.,





- **Chain termination**: Eventually two free radicals hit each other producing a final molecule. The process stops here because no new free radicals are formed.



Because chain termination is a random process, poly(ethene) will be made up of chains of different lengths.

Contributors

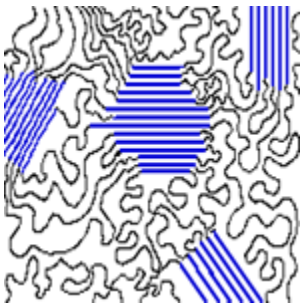
Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

This page titled 5.8: The Polymerization of Ethene is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.9: Properties of Polymers

A comparison of the properties of polyethylene (both LDPE & HDPE) with the natural polymers rubber and cellulose is instructive. As noted above, synthetic HDPE macromolecules have masses ranging from 105 to 106 amu (LDPE molecules are more than a hundred times smaller). Rubber and cellulose molecules have similar mass ranges, but fewer monomer units because of the monomer's larger size. The physical properties of these three polymeric substances differ from each other, and of course from their monomers.

- HDPE is a rigid translucent solid which softens on heating above 100° C, and can be fashioned into various forms including films. It is not as easily stretched and deformed as is LDPE. HDPE is insoluble in water and most organic solvents, although some swelling may occur on immersion in the latter. HDPE is an excellent electrical insulator.
- LDPE is a soft translucent solid which deforms badly above 75° C. Films made from LDPE stretch easily and are commonly used for wrapping. LDPE is insoluble in water, but softens and swells on exposure to hydrocarbon solvents. Both LDPE and HDPE become brittle at very low temperatures (below -80° C). Ethylene, the common monomer for these polymers, is a low boiling (-104° C) gas.
- Natural (latex) rubber is an opaque, soft, easily deformable solid that becomes sticky when heated (above. 60° C), and brittle when cooled below -50° C. It swells to more than double its size in nonpolar organic solvents like toluene, eventually dissolving, but is impermeable to water. The C5H8 monomer isoprene is a volatile liquid (b.p. 34° C).
- Pure cellulose, in the form of cotton, is a soft flexible fiber, essentially unchanged by variations in temperature ranging from -70 to 80° C. Cotton absorbs water readily, but is unaffected by immersion in toluene or most other organic solvents. Cellulose fibers may be bent and twisted, but do not stretch much before breaking. The monomer of cellulose is the $C_6H_{12}O_6$ aldohexose D-glucose. Glucose is a water soluble solid melting below 150° C.



To account for the differences noted here we need to consider the nature of the aggregate macromolecular structure, or morphology, of each substance. Because polymer molecules are so large, they generally pack together in a non-uniform fashion, with ordered or crystalline-like regions mixed together with disordered or amorphous domains. In some cases the entire solid may be amorphous, composed entirely of coiled and tangled macromolecular chains. Crystallinity occurs when linear polymer chains are structurally oriented in a uniform three-dimensional matrix. In the diagram on the right, crystalline domains are colored blue. Increased crystallinity is associated with an increase in rigidity, tensile strength and opacity (due to light scattering). Amorphous polymers are usually less rigid, weaker and more easily deformed. They are often transparent.

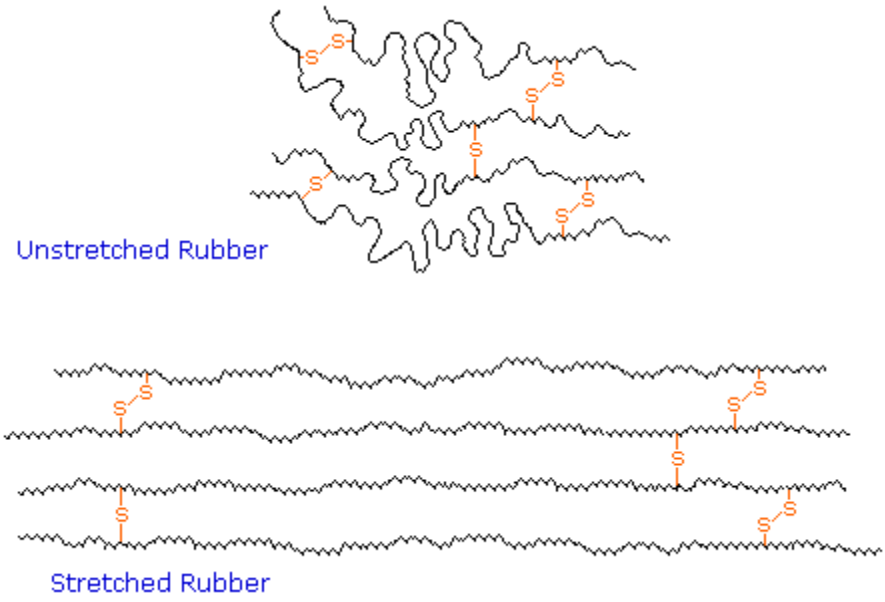
Three factors that influence the degree of crystallinity are:
i) Chain length
ii) Chain branching
iii) Interchain bonding

The importance of the first two factors is nicely illustrated by the differences between LDPE and HDPE. As noted earlier, HDPE is composed of very long unbranched hydrocarbon chains. These pack together easily in crystalline domains that alternate with amorphous segments, and the resulting material, while relatively strong and stiff, retains a degree of flexibility. In contrast, LDPE is composed of smaller and more highly branched chains which do not easily adopt crystalline structures. This material is therefore softer, weaker, less dense and more easily deformed than HDPE. As a rule, mechanical properties such as ductility, tensile strength, and hardness rise and eventually level off with increasing chain length.

The nature of cellulose supports the above analysis and demonstrates the importance of the third factor (iii). To begin with, cellulose chains easily adopt a stable rod-like conformation. These molecules align themselves side by side into fibers that are

stabilized by inter-chain hydrogen bonding between the three hydroxyl groups on each monomer unit. Consequently, crystallinity is high and the cellulose molecules do not move or slip relative to each other. The high concentration of hydroxyl groups also accounts for the facile absorption of water that is characteristic of cotton.

Natural rubber is a completely amorphous polymer. Unfortunately, the potentially useful properties of raw latex rubber are limited by temperature dependence; however, these properties can be modified by chemical change. The cis-double bonds in the hydrocarbon chain provide planar segments that stiffen, but do not straighten the chain. If these rigid segments are completely removed by hydrogenation (H2 & Pt catalyst), the chains lose all constrainment, and the product is a low melting paraffin-like semisolid of little value. If instead, the chains of rubber molecules are slightly cross-linked by sulfur atoms, a process called vulcanization which was discovered by Charles Goodyear in 1839, the desirable elastomeric properties of rubber are substantially improved. At 2 to 3% crosslinking a useful soft rubber, that no longer suffers stickiness and brittleness problems on heating and cooling, is obtained. At 25 to 35% crosslinking a rigid hard rubber product is formed. The following illustration shows a cross-linked section of amorphous rubber. By clicking on the diagram it will change to a display of the corresponding stretched section. The more highly-ordered chains in the stretched conformation are entropically unstable and return to their original coiled state when allowed to relax



Contributors

William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

This page titled 5.9: Properties of Polymers is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.10: Cross-Linking

The formation of covalent bonds which hold portions of several polymer chains together is called **cross-linking**. Extensive cross-linking results in a random three-dimensional network of interconnected chains, as shown in the figure. As one might expect, extensive cross-linking produces a substance which has more rigidity, hardness, and a higher melting point than the equivalent polymer without cross-linking. Almost all the hard and rigid plastics we use are cross-linked. These include *Bakelite*, which is used in many electric plugs and sockets, *melamine*, which is used in plastic crockery, and epoxy resin glues.

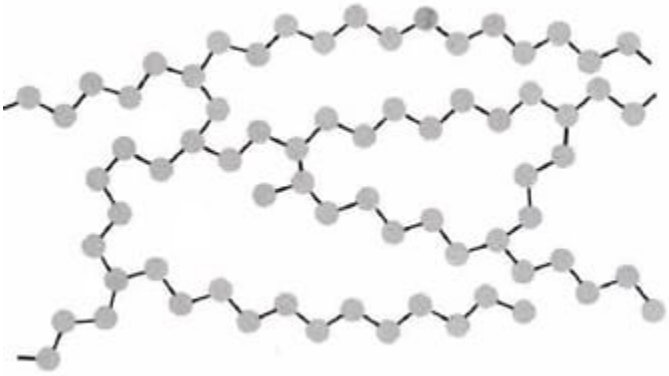


Figure 5.10.1: A cross-linked polymer. For purposes of clarity, hydrogen atoms and side chains have been omitted, and only the carbon atoms in the chains are shown. Note that the cross links between chains occur at random.

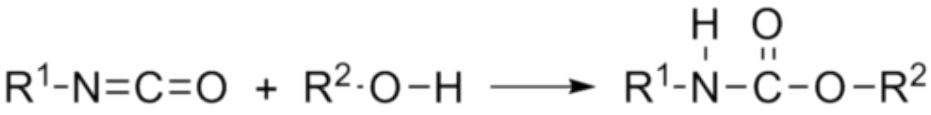
Below is a video of the formation of Polyurethane Foam.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Polyether polyol, a blowing agent, which adds a gas to the mixture to produce a foam, silicone surfactant, and a catalyst is mixed with a second liquid contains a polyfunctional isocyanate. The polyol and the polyfunctional isocyanate react to form polyurethane - a very hard substance when dried. The general reaction is shown below:



isocyanate group **hydroxyl group urethane linkage**

"R" 1 single bond "N" double bond "C" double bond "O" reacts with "R" 2 single bond "O" single bond "H" to give "R" 1 single bond "N" "H" single bond "C" double bond "O" single bond "O" single bond "R" 2.

In the reaction in the video, each R^1 group has multiple isocyanate groups; the reactants are polyfunctional. Thus there is a high degree of cross-linking in the polyurethane. This causes the foam to become rigid after cooling.

This page titled 5.10: Cross-Linking is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ed Vitz, John W. Moore, Justin Shorb, Xavier Prat-Resina, Tim Wendorff, and Adam Hahn.

- 8.26: Cross-Linking by Ed Vitz, John W. Moore, Justin Shorb, Xavier Prat-Resina, Tim Wendorff, and Adam Hahn is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

6: GASES

Petrucci: *General Chemistry*
Principles and Modern Applications

I II III IV V VI VII VIII IX X XI XII XIII XIV XV XVI XVII XVIII XIX XX
XXI XXII XXIII XXIV XXV XXVI XXVII XXVIII

Template:HideTOC

- Topic hierarchy

6.1: Properties of Gases: Gas Pressure
6.2: The Simple Gas Laws
6.3: Combining the Gas Laws: The Ideal Gas Equation and the General Gas Equation
6.4: Mixtures of Gases
6.5: Kinetic-Molecular Theory of Gases
6.6: Non-ideal (Real) Gases
6.7: Applications of the Ideal Gas Equation
6.8: Gases in Chemical Reactions

This page titled 6: Gases is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.1: Properties of Gases: Gas Pressure

Learning Objectives

- To describe the characteristics of a gas.

The three common phases (or states) of matter are gases, liquids, and solids. Gases have the lowest density of the three, are highly compressible, and completely fill any container in which they are placed. Gases behave this way because their intermolecular forces are relatively weak, so their molecules are constantly moving independently of the other molecules present. Solids, in contrast, are relatively dense, rigid, and incompressible because their intermolecular forces are so strong that the molecules are essentially locked in place. Liquids are relatively dense and incompressible, like solids, but they flow readily to adapt to the shape of their containers, like gases. We can therefore conclude that the sum of the intermolecular forces in liquids are between those of gases and solids. Figure 6.1.1 compares the three states of matter and illustrates the differences at the molecular level.

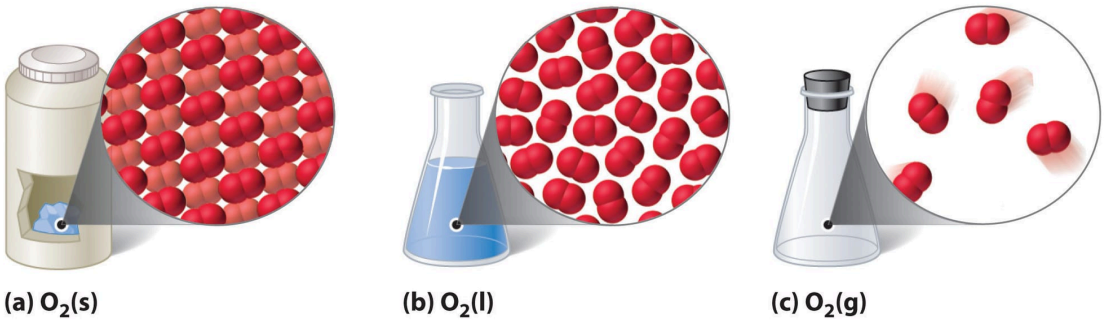


Figure 6.1.1: A Diatomic Substance (O_2) in the Solid, Liquid, and Gaseous States: (a) Solid O_2 has a fixed volume and shape, and the molecules are packed tightly together. (b) Liquid O_2 conforms to the shape of its container but has a fixed volume; it contains relatively densely packed molecules. (c) Gaseous O_2 fills its container completely—regardless of the container's size or shape—and consists of widely separated molecules.

The state of a given substance depends strongly on conditions. For example, H_2O is commonly found in all three states: solid ice, liquid water, and water vapor (its gaseous form). Under most conditions, we encounter water as the liquid that is essential for life; we drink it, cook with it, and bathe in it. When the temperature is cold enough to transform the liquid to ice, we can ski or skate on it, pack it into a snowball or snow cone, and even build dwellings with it. Water vapor (the term *vapor* refers to the gaseous form of a substance that is a liquid or a solid under normal conditions so nitrogen (N_2) and oxygen (O_2) are referred to as gases, but gaseous water in the atmosphere is called water vapor) is a component of the air we breathe, and it is produced whenever we heat water for cooking food or making coffee or tea. Water vapor at temperatures greater than 100°C is called steam. Steam is used to drive large machinery, including turbines that generate electricity. The properties of the three states of water are summarized in Table 6.1.1.

Table 6.1.1: Properties of Water at 1.0 atm

Temperature	State	Density (g/cm^3)
≤0°C	solid (ice)	0.9167 (at 0.0°C)
0°C–100°C	liquid (water)	0.9997 (at 4.0°C)
≥100°C	vapor (steam)	0.005476 (at 127°C)

The geometric structure and the physical and chemical properties of atoms, ions, and molecules usually do *not* depend on their physical state; the individual water molecules in ice, liquid water, and steam, for example, are all identical. In contrast, the macroscopic properties of a substance depend strongly on its physical state, which is determined by intermolecular forces and conditions such as temperature and pressure.

Figure 6.1.2 shows the locations in the periodic table of those elements that are commonly found in the gaseous, liquid, and solid states. Except for hydrogen, the elements that occur naturally as gases are on the right side of the periodic table. Of these, all the noble gases (group 18) are monatomic gases, whereas the other gaseous elements are diatomic molecules (**H_2, N_2, O_2, F_2, and Cl_2**). Oxygen can also form a second allotrope, the highly reactive triatomic molecule ozone (**O_3**), which is also a gas. In contrast, bromine (as Br_2) and mercury (Hg) are liquids under normal conditions (25°C and 1.0 atm, commonly referred to as "room temperature and pressure"). Gallium (Ga), which melts at only 29.76°C, can be converted to a liquid simply by holding a container of it in your hand or keeping it in a non-air-conditioned room on a hot summer day. The rest of the elements are all solids under normal conditions.

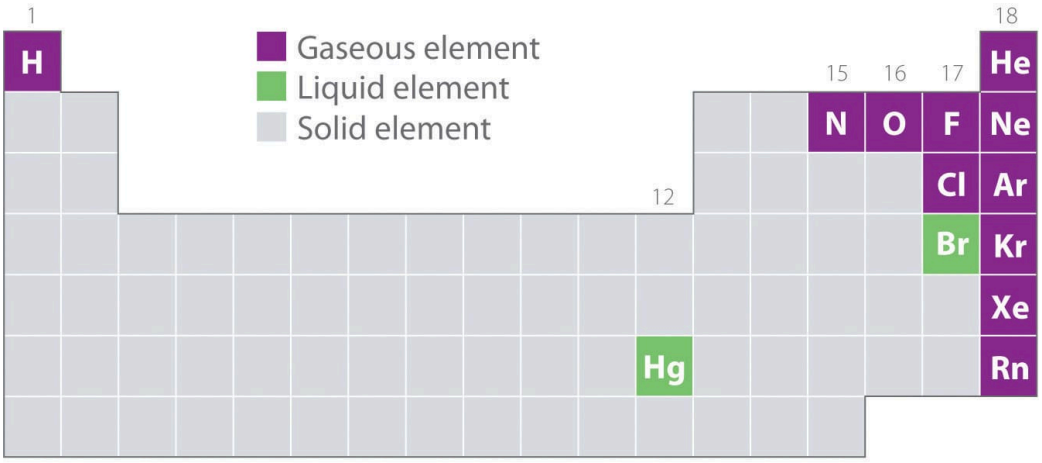


Figure 6.1.2: Elements That Occur Naturally as Gases, Liquids, and Solids at 25°C and 1 atm. The noble gases and mercury occur as monatomic species, whereas all other gases and bromine are diatomic molecules.

All of the gaseous elements (other than the monatomic noble gases) are molecules. Within the same group (1, 15, 16 and 17), the lightest elements are gases. All gaseous substances are characterized by weak interactions between the constituent molecules or atoms.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Defining Gas Pressure: https://youtu.be/_CRn3cFs2CI

Summary

Bulk matter can exist in three states: gas, liquid, and solid. Gases have the lowest density of the three, are highly compressible, and fill their containers completely. Elements that exist as gases at room temperature and pressure are clustered on the right side of the periodic table; they occur as either monatomic gases (the noble gases) or diatomic molecules (some halogens, N_2, O_2).

This page titled 6.1: Properties of Gases: Gas Pressure is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 6.1: Properties of Gases: Gas Pressure is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

6.2: The Simple Gas Laws

Learning Objectives

- To understand the relationships among pressure, temperature, volume, and the amount of a gas.

Early scientists explored the relationships among the pressure of a gas (*P*) and its temperature (*T*), volume (*V*), and amount (*n*) by holding two of the four variables constant (amount and temperature, for example), varying a third (such as pressure), and measuring the effect of the change on the fourth (in this case, volume). The history of their discoveries provides several excellent examples of the scientific method.

The Relationship between Pressure and Volume: Boyle's Law

As the pressure on a gas increases, the volume of the gas decreases because the gas particles are forced closer together. Conversely, as the pressure on a gas decreases, the gas volume increases because the gas particles can now move farther apart. Weather balloons get larger as they rise through the atmosphere to regions of lower pressure because the volume of the gas has increased; that is, the atmospheric gas exerts less pressure on the surface of the balloon, so the interior gas expands until the internal and external pressures are equal.

The Irish chemist Robert Boyle (1627–1691) carried out some of the earliest experiments that determined the quantitative relationship between the pressure and the volume of a gas. Boyle used a J-shaped tube partially filled with mercury, as shown in Figure $6.2.1$. In these experiments, a small amount of a gas or air is trapped above the mercury column, and its volume is measured at atmospheric pressure and constant temperature. More mercury is then poured into the open arm to increase the pressure on the gas sample. The pressure on the gas is atmospheric pressure plus the difference in the heights of the mercury columns, and the resulting volume is measured. This process is repeated until either there is no more room in the open arm or the volume of the gas is too small to be measured accurately. Data such as those from one of Boyle's own experiments may be plotted in several ways (Figure $6.2.2$). A simple plot of V versus P gives a curve called a hyperbola and reveals an inverse relationship between pressure and volume: as the pressure is doubled, the volume decreases by a factor of two. This relationship between the two quantities is described as follows:

$$PV = \text{constant} \tag{6.2.1}$$

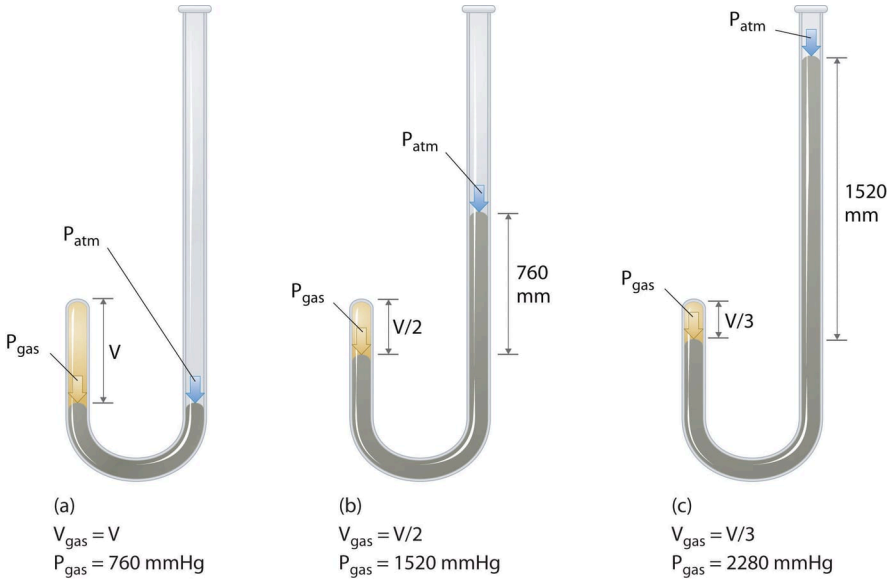


Figure 6.2.1: Boyle's Experiment Using a J-Shaped Tube to Determine the Relationship between Gas Pressure and Volume. (a) Initially the gas is at a pressure of 1 atm = 760 mmHg (the mercury is at the same height in both the arm containing the sample and the arm open to the atmosphere); its volume is *V*. (b) If enough mercury is added to the right side to give a difference in height of 760 mmHg between the two arms, the pressure of the gas is 760 mmHg (atmospheric pressure) + 760 mmHg = 1520 mmHg and the volume is *V*/2. (c) If an additional 760 mmHg is added to the column on the right, the total pressure on the gas increases to 2280 mmHg, and the volume of the gas decreases to *V*/3.

Dividing both sides by P gives an equation illustrating the inverse relationship between P and V:

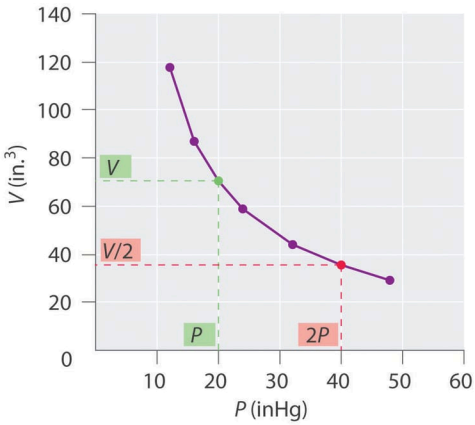
$$V = \frac{\text{const.}}{P} = \text{const.}\left(\frac{1}{P}\right) \tag{6.2.2}$$

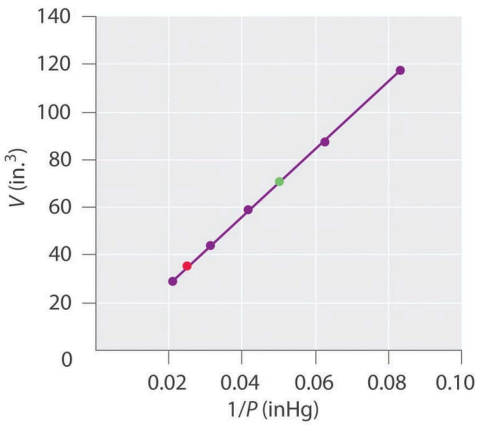
or

$$V \propto \frac{1}{P} \tag{6.2.3}$$

where the $\propto$ symbol is read "is proportional to." A plot of *V* versus 1/*P* is thus a straight line whose slope is equal to the constant in Equation 6.2.1 and Equation 6.2.3. Dividing both sides of Equation 6.2.1 by *V* instead of *P* gives a similar relationship between *P* and 1/*V*. The numerical value of the constant depends on the amount of gas used in the experiment and on the temperature at which the experiments are carried out. This relationship between pressure and volume is known as Boyle's law, after its discoverer, and can be stated as follows: *At constant temperature, the volume of a fixed amount of a gas is inversely proportional to its pressure*.

P (inHg)	V (in.^{3})	PV
12.0	117.5	1410
16.0	87.2	1400
20.0	70.7	1410
24.0	58.8	1410
32.0	44.2	1410
40.0	35.3	1410
48.0	29.1	1400





(a) Data from Boyle's experiment **(b) Volume vs. pressure** **(c) Volume vs. 1/pressure**

Figure 6.2.2: Plots of Boyle's Data. (a) Here are actual data from a typical experiment conducted by Boyle. Boyle used non-SI units to measure the volume (in.^{3} rather than cm^3) and the pressure (in. Hg rather than mmHg). (b) This plot of pressure versus volume is a hyperbola. Because PV is a constant, decreasing the pressure by a factor of two results in a twofold increase in volume and vice versa. (c) A plot of volume versus 1/pressure for the same data shows the inverse linear relationship between the two quantities, as expressed by the equation V = constant/P.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Boyle's Law: https://youtu.be/lu86VSupPO4

The Relationship between Temperature and Volume: Charles's Law

Hot air rises, which is why hot-air balloons ascend through the atmosphere and why warm air collects near the ceiling and cooler air collects at ground level. Because of this behavior, heating registers are placed on or near the floor, and vents for air-conditioning are placed on or near the ceiling. The fundamental reason for this behavior is that gases expand when they are heated. Because the same amount of substance now occupies a greater volume, hot air is less dense than cold air. The substance with the lower density—in this case hot air—rises through the substance with the higher density, the cooler air.

The first experiments to quantify the relationship between the temperature and the volume of a gas were carried out in 1783 by an avid balloonist, the French chemist Jacques Alexandre César Charles (1746–1823). Charles's initial experiments showed that a plot of the volume of a given sample of gas versus temperature (in degrees Celsius) at constant pressure is a straight line. Similar but more precise studies were carried out by another balloon enthusiast, the Frenchman Joseph-Louis Gay-Lussac (1778–1850), who showed that a plot of V versus T was a straight line that could be extrapolated to a point at zero volume, a theoretical condition now known to correspond to −273.15°C (Figure 6.2.3).A sample of gas cannot really have a volume of zero because any sample of matter must have some volume. Furthermore, at 1 atm pressure all gases liquefy at temperatures well above −273.15°C. Note from part (a) in Figure 6.2.3 that the slope of the plot of V versus T varies for the same gas at different pressures but that the intercept remains constant at −273.15°C. Similarly, as shown in part (b) in Figure 6.2.3, plots of V versus T for different amounts of varied gases are straight lines with different slopes but the same intercept on the T axis.

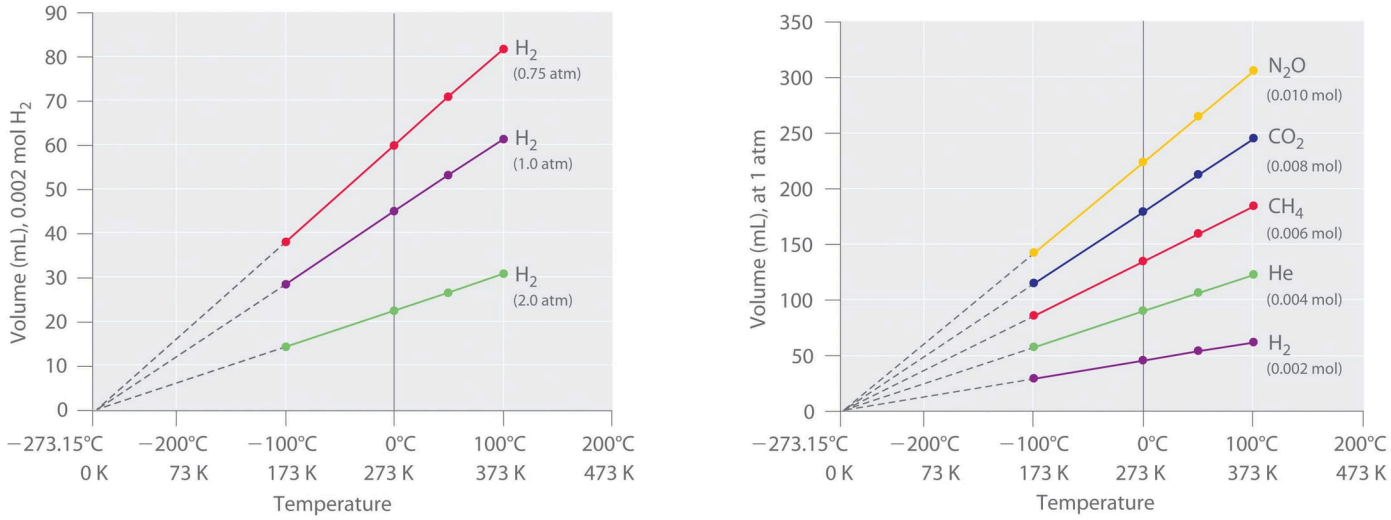


Figure 6.2.3: The Relationship between Volume and Temperature. (a) In these plots of volume versus temperature for equal-sized samples of H_2 at three different pressures, the solid lines show the experimentally measured data down to –100°C, and the broken lines show the extrapolation of the data to $V = 0$. The temperature scale is given in both degrees Celsius and kelvins. Although the slopes of the lines decrease with increasing pressure, all of the lines extrapolate to the same temperature at $V = 0$ (–273.15°C = 0 K). (b) In these plots of volume versus temperature for different amounts of selected gases at 1 atm pressure, all the plots extrapolate to a value of $V = 0$ at –273.15°C, regardless of the identity or the amount of the gas.

The significance of the invariant T intercept in plots of V versus T was recognized in 1848 by the British physicist William Thomson (1824–1907), later named Lord Kelvin. He postulated that –273.15°C was the lowest possible temperature that could theoretically be achieved, for which he coined the term absolute zero (0 K).

We can state Charles's and Gay-Lussac's findings in simple terms: At constant pressure, the volume of a fixed amount of gas is directly proportional to its absolute temperature (in kelvins). This relationship, illustrated in part (b) in Figure 6.2.3 is often referred to as Charles's law and is stated mathematically as

$$V = \text{const.}\ T \tag{6.2.4}$$

or

$$V \propto T \tag{6.2.5}$$

with *temperature expressed in kelvins,* not *in degrees Celsius.* Charles's law is valid for virtually all gases at temperatures well above their boiling points.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Charles's Law: https://youtu.be/NBf510ZnlR0

The Relationship between Amount and Volume: Avogadro's Law

We can demonstrate the relationship between the volume and the amount of a gas by filling a balloon; as we add more gas, the balloon gets larger. The specific quantitative relationship was discovered by the Italian chemist Amedeo Avogadro, who

recognized the importance of Gay-Lussac's work on combining volumes of gases. In 1811, Avogadro postulated that, at the same temperature and pressure, equal volumes of gases contain the same number of gaseous particles (Figure 6.2.4). This is the historic "Avogadro's hypothesis."

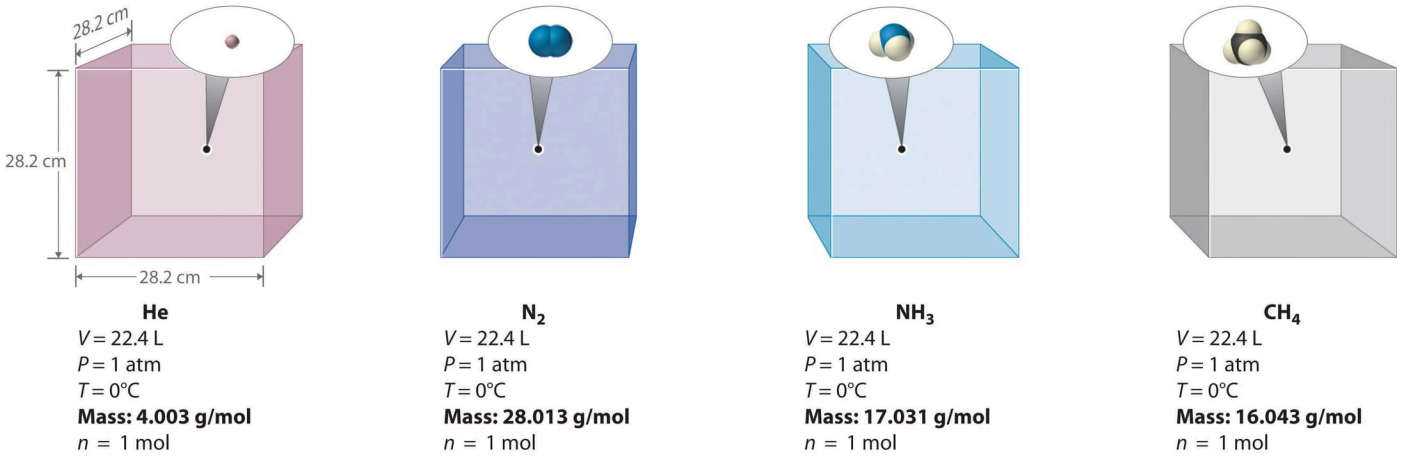


Figure 6.2.4: Avogadro's Hypothesis. Equal volumes of four different gases at the same temperature and pressure contain the same number of gaseous particles. Because the molar mass of each gas is different, the *mass* of each gas sample is different even though all contain 1 mol of gas.

A logical corollary to Avogadro's hypothesis (sometimes called Avogadro's law) describes the relationship between the volume and the amount of a gas: *At constant temperature and pressure, the volume of a sample of gas is directly proportional to the number of moles of gas in the sample*. Stated mathematically,

$$V = \text{const.}\ (n) \tag{6.2.6}$$

or

$$V \propto .n@\ \text{constant T and P} \tag{6.2.7}$$

This relationship is valid for most gases at relatively low pressures, but deviations from strict linearity are observed at elevated pressures.

Note

For a sample of gas,

- *V* increases as *P* decreases (and vice versa)
- *V* increases as *T* increases (and vice versa)
- *V* increases as *n* increases (and vice versa)

The relationships among the volume of a gas and its pressure, temperature, and amount are summarized in Figure 6.2.5. Volume *increases* with increasing temperature or amount but *decreases* with increasing pressure.



(a) *P* vs. *V* (Boyle's law): At constant temperature and amount of gas, pressure decreases as volume increases (and vice versa).

(b) *V* vs. *T* (Charles' law): At constant pressure and amount of gas, volume increases as temperature increases (and vice versa).

(c) *V* vs. *n* (Avogadro's law): At constant pressure and temperature, volume increases as amount of gas increases (and vice versa).

Figure 6.2.5: The Empirically Determined Relationships among Pressure, Volume, Temperature, and Amount of a Gas. The thermometer and pressure gauge indicate the temperature and the pressure qualitatively, the level in the flask indicates the volume, and the number of particles in each flask indicates relative amounts.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Avogadro's Law: https://youtu.be/dRY3Trl4T24

Summary

The volume of a gas is inversely proportional to its pressure and directly proportional to its temperature and the amount of gas. Boyle showed that the volume of a sample of a gas is inversely proportional to its pressure (**Boyle's law**), Charles and Gay-Lussac demonstrated that the volume of a gas is directly proportional to its temperature (in kelvins) at constant pressure (**Charles's law**), and Avogadro postulated that the volume of a gas is directly proportional to the number of moles of gas present (**Avogadro's law**). Plots of the volume of gases versus temperature extrapolate to zero volume at –273.15°C, which is **absolute zero (0 K)**, the lowest temperature possible. Charles's law implies that the volume of a gas is directly proportional to its absolute temperature.

This page titled 6.2: The Simple Gas Laws is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 6.2: The Simple Gas Laws is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

6.3: Combining the Gas Laws: The Ideal Gas Equation and the General Gas Equation

Learning Objectives

- To use the ideal gas law to describe the behavior of a gas.

In this module, the relationship between Pressure, Temperature, Volume, and Amount of a gas are described and how these relationships can be combined to give a general expression that describes the behavior of a gas.

Deriving the Ideal Gas Law

Any set of relationships between a single quantity (such as V) and several other variables (P, T, and n) can be combined into a single expression that describes all the relationships simultaneously. The three individual expressions are as follows:

- **Boyle's law**

$$V \propto \frac{1}{P} \quad @ \text{ constant n and T} \tag{6.3.1}$$

- **Charles's law**

$$V \propto T \quad @ \text{ constant n and P} \tag{6.3.2}$$

- **Avogadro's law**

$$V \propto n \quad @ \text{ constant T and P} \tag{6.3.3}$$

Combining these three expressions gives

$$V \propto \frac{nT}{P} \tag{6.3.1}$$

which shows that the volume of a gas is proportional to the number of moles and the temperature and inversely proportional to the pressure. This expression can also be written as

$$V = \text{Cons.} \left(\frac{nT}{P}\right) \tag{6.3.2}$$

By convention, the proportionality constant in Equation 6.3.1 is called the gas constant, which is represented by the letter R. Inserting R into Equation 6.3.2 gives

$$V = \frac{Rnt}{P} = \frac{nRT}{P} \tag{6.3.3}$$

Clearing the fractions by multiplying both sides of Equation 6.3.4 by P gives

$$PV = nRT \tag{6.3.4}$$

This equation is known as the **ideal gas law**.

An ideal gas is defined as a hypothetical gaseous substance whose behavior is independent of attractive and repulsive forces and can be completely described by the ideal gas law. In reality, there is no such thing as an ideal gas, but an ideal gas is a useful conceptual model that allows us to understand how gases respond to changing conditions. As we shall see, under many conditions, most real gases exhibit behavior that closely approximates that of an ideal gas. The ideal gas law can therefore be used to predict the behavior of real gases under most conditions. The ideal gas law does not work well at very low temperatures

or very high pressures, where deviations from ideal behavior are most commonly observed.

> **Note**
>
> Significant deviations from ideal gas behavior commonly occur at low temperatures and very high pressures.

Before we can use the ideal gas law, however, we need to know the value of the gas constant R. Its form depends on the units used for the other quantities in the expression. If V is expressed in liters (L), P in atmospheres (atm), T in kelvins (K), and n in moles (mol), then

$$R = 0.08206 \frac{\text{L} \cdot \text{atm}}{\text{K} \cdot \text{mol}} \tag{6.3.5}$$

Because the product PV has the units of energy, R can also have units of J/(K•mol):

$$R = 8.3145 \frac{\text{J}}{\text{K} \cdot \text{mol}} \tag{6.3.6}$$

Standard Conditions of Temperature and Pressure

Scientists have chosen a particular set of conditions to use as a reference: 0°C (273.15 K) and $1\ \text{bar} = 100\ \text{kPa} = 10^5\ \text{Pa}$ pressure, referred to as standard temperature and pressure (**STP**).

$$\text{STP:} \qquad T = 273.15\ \text{K and}\ P = 1\ \text{bar} = 10^5\ \text{Pa} \tag{6.3.4}$$

Please note that STP was defined differently in the part. The old definition was based on a standard pressure of 1 atm.

We can calculate the volume of 1.000 mol of an ideal gas under standard conditions using the variant of the ideal gas law given in Equation 6.3.4:

$$V = \frac{nRT}{P} \tag{6.3.7}$$

Thus the volume of 1 mol of an ideal gas is **22.71 L at STP** and **22.41 L at 0°C and 1 atm**, approximately equivalent to the volume of three basketballs. The molar volumes of several real gases at 0°C and 1 atm are given in Table 10.3, which shows that the deviations from ideal gas behavior are quite small. Thus the ideal gas law does a good job of approximating the behavior of real gases at 0°C and 1 atm. The relationships described in Section 10.3 as Boyle's, Charles's, and Avogadro's laws are simply special cases of the ideal gas law in which two of the four parameters (P, V, T, and n) are held fixed.

Table 6.3.1: Molar Volumes of Selected Gases at 0°C and 1 atm

Gas	Molar Volume (L)
He	22.434
Ar	22.397
H_2	22.433
N_2	22.402
O_2	22.397
CO_2	22.260
NH_3	22.079

Applying the Ideal Gas Law

The ideal gas law allows us to calculate the value of the fourth variable for a gaseous sample if we know the values of any three

of the four variables (*P*, *V*, *T*, and *n*). It also allows us to predict the *final state* of a sample of a gas (i.e., its final temperature, pressure, volume, and amount) following any changes in conditions if the parameters (*P*, *V*, *T*, and *n*) are specified for an *initial state*. Some applications are illustrated in the following examples. The approach used throughout is always to start with the same equation—the ideal gas law—and then determine which quantities are given and which need to be calculated. Let's begin with simple cases in which we are given three of the four parameters needed for a complete physical description of a gaseous sample.

Example 6.3.1

The balloon that Charles used for his initial flight in 1783 was destroyed, but we can estimate that its volume was 31,150 L (1100 ft^3), given the dimensions recorded at the time. If the temperature at ground level was 86°F (30°C) and the atmospheric pressure was 745 mmHg, how many moles of hydrogen gas were needed to fill the balloon?

Given: volume, temperature, and pressure

Asked for: amount of gas

Strategy:

A. Solve the ideal gas law for the unknown quantity, in this case *n*.
B. Make sure that all quantities are given in units that are compatible with the units of the gas constant. If necessary, convert them to the appropriate units, insert them into the equation you have derived, and then calculate the number of moles of hydrogen gas needed.

Solution:

A We are given values for *P*, *T*, and *V* and asked to calculate *n*. If we solve the ideal gas law (Equation 6.3.4) for *n*, we obtain

$$745\ \text{mmHg} \times \frac{1\ \text{atm}}{760\ \text{mmHg}} = 0.980\ \text{atm} \tag{6.3.5}$$

B *P* and *T* are given in units that are not compatible with the units of the gas constant [*R* = 0.08206 (L•atm)/(K•mol)]. We must therefore convert the temperature to kelvins and the pressure to atmospheres:

$$T = 273 + 30 = 303\text{K} \tag{6.3.6}$$

Substituting these values into the expression we derived for *n*, we obtain

$$n = \frac{PV}{RT} = \frac{0.980\ \text{atm} \times 31150\ \text{L}}{0.08206 \frac{\text{atm} \cdot \text{L}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} \times 303\ \text{K}} = 1.23 \times 10^3\ \text{mol} \tag{6.3.7}$$

Exercise 6.3.1

Suppose that an "empty" aerosol spray-paint can has a volume of 0.406 L and contains 0.025 mol of a propellant gas such as CO_2. What is the pressure of the gas at 25°C?

Answer: 1.5 atm

In Example 6.3.1, we were given three of the four parameters needed to describe a gas under a particular set of conditions, and we were asked to calculate the fourth. We can also use the ideal gas law to calculate the effect of *changes* in any of the specified conditions on any of the other parameters, as shown in Example 6.3.5.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Ideal Gas Law: https://youtu.be/rHGs23368mE

General Gas Equation

When a gas is described under two different conditions, the ideal gas equation must be applied twice - to an initial condition and a final condition. This is:

$$\begin{matrix} \text{Initial condition } (i) & \text{Final condition}(f) \\ P_iV_i = n_iRT_i & P_fV_f = n_fRT_f \end{matrix} \tag{6.3.8}$$

Both equations can be rearranged to give:

$$R = \frac{P_iV_i}{n_iT_i} \qquad R = \frac{P_fV_f}{n_fT_f} \tag{6.3.9}$$

The two equations are equal to each other since each is equal to the same constant R. Therefore, we have:

$$\frac{P_iV_i}{n_iT_i} = \frac{P_fV_f}{n_fT_f} \tag{6.3.8}$$

The equation is called the **general gas equation**. The equation is particularly useful when one or two of the gas properties are held constant between the two conditions. In such cases, the equation can be simplified by eliminating these constant gas properties.

Example 6.3.2

Suppose that Charles had changed his plans and carried out his initial flight not in August but on a cold day in January, when the temperature at ground level was –10°C (14°F). How large a balloon would he have needed to contain the same amount of hydrogen gas at the same pressure as in Example 6.3.1?

Given: temperature, pressure, amount, and volume in August; temperature in January

Asked for: volume in January

Strategy:

A. Use the results from Example 6.3.1 for August as the initial conditions and then calculate the *change in volume* due to the change in temperature from 30°C to –10°C. Begin by constructing a table showing the initial and final conditions.
B. Simplify the general gas equation by eliminating the quantities that are held constant between the initial and final conditions, in this case P and n.
C. Solve for the unknown parameter.

Solution:

A To see exactly which parameters have changed and which are constant, prepare a table of the initial and final conditions:

Initial (August)	Final (January)
$T_i = 30$°C = 303 K	$T_f =$–10°C = 263 K
$P_i =$0.980 atm	$P_f =$0.980 atm
$n_i =$1.23 × 103 mol	$n_f =$1.23 × 103 mol
$V_i = 31150$ L	$V_f =?$

B Both n and P are the same in both cases ($n_i = n_f, P_i = P_f$). Therefore, Equation can be simplified to:

$$\frac{V_i}{T_i} = \frac{V_f}{T_f} \tag{6.3.10}$$

This is the relationship first noted by Charles.

C Solving the equation for V_f, we get:

$$V_f = V_i \times \frac{T_f}{T_i} = 31150\ \text{L} \times \frac{263\ \text{K}}{303\ \text{K}} = 2.70 \times 10^4\ \text{L} \tag{6.3.11}$$

It is important to check your answer to be sure that it makes sense, just in case you have accidentally inverted a quantity or multiplied rather than divided. In this case, the temperature of the gas decreases. Because we know that gas volume decreases with decreasing temperature, the final volume must be less than the initial volume, so the answer makes sense. We could have calculated the new volume by plugging all the given numbers into the ideal gas law, but it is generally much easier and faster to focus on only the quantities that change.

Exercise 6.3.2

At a laboratory party, a helium-filled balloon with a volume of 2.00 L at 22°C is dropped into a large container of liquid nitrogen (T = –196°C). What is the final volume of the gas in the balloon?

Answer: 0.52 L

Example 6.3.1 illustrates the relationship originally observed by Charles. We could work through similar examples illustrating the inverse relationship between pressure and volume noted by Boyle (*PV* = constant) and the relationship between volume and amount observed by Avogadro (*V*/*n* = constant). We will not do so, however, because it is more important to note that the historically important gas laws are only special cases of the ideal gas law in which two quantities are varied while the other two remain fixed. The method used in Example 6.3.1 can be applied in *any* such case, as we demonstrate in Example 6.3.2 (which also shows why heating a closed container of a gas, such as a butane lighter cartridge or an aerosol can, may cause an explosion).

Example 6.3.3

Aerosol cans are prominently labeled with a warning such as “Do not incinerate this container when empty.” Assume that you did not notice this warning and tossed the “empty” aerosol can in Exercise 5 (0.025 mol in 0.406 L, initially at 25°C and 1.5 atm internal pressure) into a fire at 750°C. What would be the pressure inside the can (if it did not explode)?

Given: initial volume, amount, temperature, and pressure; final temperature

Asked for: final pressure

Strategy:

Follow the strategy outlined in Example 6.3.5.

Solution:

Prepare a table to determine which parameters change and which are held constant:

Initial	Final
$V_i = 0.406\ \text{L}$	$V_f = 0.406\ \text{L}$
$n_i = 0.025\ \text{mol}$	$n_f = 0.025\ \text{mol}$
$T_i = 25\ ^\circ\text{C} = 298\ \text{K}$	$T_i = 750\ ^\circ\text{C} = 1023\ \text{K}$
$P_i = 1.5\ \text{atm}$	$P_f = ?$

Both V and n are the same in both cases ($V_i = V_f, n_i = n_f$). Therefore, Equation can be simplified to:

$$P_i T_i = P_f T_f \tag{6.3.12}$$

By solving the equation for P_f, we get:

$$P_f = P_i \times \frac{T_i}{T_f} = 1.5\ \text{atm} \times \frac{1023\ \text{K}}{298\ \text{K}} = 5.1\ \text{atm} \tag{6.3.13}$$

This pressure is more than enough to rupture a thin sheet metal container and cause an explosion!

Exercise 6.3.3

Suppose that a fire extinguisher, filled with CO_2 to a pressure of 20.0 atm at 21°C at the factory, is accidentally left in the sun in a closed automobile in Tucson, Arizona, in July. The interior temperature of the car rises to 160°F (71.1°C). What is the internal pressure in the fire extinguisher?

Answer: 23.4 atm

In Example 6.3.1 and Example 6.3.2, two of the four parameters (*P*, *V*, *T*, and *n*) were fixed while one was allowed to vary, and we were interested in the effect on the value of the fourth. In fact, we often encounter cases where two of the variables *P*, *V*, and *T* are allowed to vary for a given sample of gas (hence *n* is constant), and we are interested in the change in the value of the third under the new conditions.

Example 6.3.4

We saw in Example 6.3.1 that Charles used a balloon with a volume of 31,150 L for his initial ascent and that the balloon contained 1.23×10^3 mol of H_2 gas initially at 30°C and 745 mmHg. Suppose that Gay-Lussac had also used this balloon for his record-breaking ascent to 23,000 ft and that the pressure and temperature at that altitude were 312 mmHg and –30°C, respectively. To what volume would the balloon have had to expand to hold the same amount of hydrogen gas at the higher altitude?

Given: initial pressure, temperature, amount, and volume; final pressure and temperature

Asked for: final volume

Strategy:

Follow the strategy outlined in Example 6.3.5.

Solution:

Begin by setting up a table of the two sets of conditions:

Initial	Final
$P_i = 745 \text{ mmHg} = 0.980 \text{ atm}$	$P_f = 312 \text{ mmHg} = 0.411 \text{ atm}$
$T_i = 30 \text{ °C} = 303 \text{ K}$	$T_f = 750 - 30 \text{ °C} = 243 \text{ K}$
$n_i = 1.2 \times 10^3 \text{ mol}$	$n_i = 1.2 \times 10^3 \text{ mol}$
$V_i = 31150 \text{ L}$	$V_f = ?$

By eliminating the constant property (n) of the gas, Equation 6.3.8 is simplified to:

$$\frac{P_i V_i}{T_i} = \frac{P_f V_f}{T_f} \tag{6.3.14}$$

By solving the equation for V_f, we get:

$$V_f = V_i \times \frac{P_i}{P_f}\frac{T_f}{T_i} = 3.115 \times 10^4 \text{ L} \times \frac{0.980 \text{ atm}}{0.411 \text{ atm}}\frac{243 \text{ K}}{303 \text{ K}} = 5.96 \times 10^4 \text{ L} \tag{6.3.15}$$

Does this answer make sense? Two opposing factors are at work in this problem: decreasing the pressure tends to *increase* the volume of the gas, while decreasing the temperature tends to *decrease* the volume of the gas. Which do we expect to predominate? The pressure drops by more than a factor of two, while the absolute temperature drops by only about 20%. Because the volume of a gas sample is directly proportional to both *T* and 1/*P*, the variable that changes the most will have the greatest effect on *V*. In this case, the effect of decreasing pressure predominates, and we expect the volume of the gas to increase, as we found in our calculation.

We could also have solved this problem by solving the ideal gas law for *V* and then substituting the relevant parameters for an altitude of 23,000 ft:

Except for a difference caused by rounding to the last significant figure, this is the same result we obtained previously. *There is often more than one "right" way to solve chemical problems.*

Exercise 6.3.4

A steel cylinder of compressed argon with a volume of 0.400 L was filled to a pressure of 145 atm at 10°C. At 1.00 atm pressure and 25°C, how many 15.0 mL incandescent light bulbs could be filled from this cylinder? (Hint: find the number of moles of argon in each container.)

Answer: 4.07×10^3

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Second Type of Ideal Gas Law Problems: https://youtu.be/WQDJOqddPI0

Using the Ideal Gas Law to Calculate Gas Densities and Molar Masses

The ideal gas law can also be used to calculate molar masses of gases from experimentally measured gas densities. To see how this is possible, we first rearrange the ideal gas law to obtain

$$\frac{n}{V} = \frac{P}{RT} \tag{6.3.9}$$

The left side has the units of moles per unit volume (mol/L). The number of moles of a substance equals its mass (m, in grams) divided by its molar mass (M, in grams per mole):

$$n = \frac{m}{M} \tag{6.3.10}$$

Substituting this expression for n into Equation 6.3.9 gives

$$\frac{m}{MV} = \frac{P}{RT} \tag{6.3.11}$$

Because m/V is the density d of a substance, we can replace m/V by d and rearrange to give

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V} = \frac{MP}{RT} \tag{6.3.12}$$

The distance between particles in gases is large compared to the size of the particles, so their densities are much lower than the densities of liquids and solids. Consequently, gas density is usually measured in grams per liter (g/L) rather than grams per milliliter (g/mL).

Example 6.3.5

Calculate the density of butane at 25°C and a pressure of 750 mmHg.

Given: compound, temperature, and pressure

Asked for: density

Strategy:

A. Calculate the molar mass of butane and convert all quantities to appropriate units for the value of the gas constant.
B. Substitute these values into Equation 6.3.12 to obtain the density.

Solution:

A The molar mass of butane (C_4H_{10}) is

$$M = (4)(12.011) + (10)(1.0079) = 58.123\text{g/mol} \tag{6.3.16}$$

Using 0.08206 (L•atm)/(K•mol) for *R* means that we need to convert the temperature from degrees Celsius to kelvins (*T* = 25 + 273 = 298 K) and the pressure from millimeters of mercury to atmospheres:

$$P = 750\ \text{mmHg} \times \frac{1\ \text{atm}}{760\ \text{mmHg}} = 0.987\ \text{atm} \tag{6.3.17}$$

B Substituting these values into Equation 6.3.12 gives

$$\rho = \frac{58.123\ \text{g/mol} \times 0.987\ \text{atm}}{0.08206 \frac{\text{L} \cdot \text{atm}}{\text{K} \cdot \text{mol}} \times 298\ \text{K}} = 2.35\ \text{g/L} \tag{6.3.18}$$

Exercise 6.3.5

Radon (Rn) is a radioactive gas formed by the decay of naturally occurring uranium in rocks such as granite. It tends to collect in the basements of houses and poses a significant health risk if present in indoor air. Many states now require that houses be tested for radon before they are sold. Calculate the density of radon at 1.00 atm pressure and 20°C and compare it with the density of nitrogen gas, which constitutes 80% of the atmosphere, under the same conditions to see why radon is found in basements rather than in attics.

Answer: radon, 9.23 g/L; N_2, 1.17 g/L

A common use of Equation 6.3.12 is to determine the molar mass of an unknown gas by measuring its density at a known temperature and pressure. This method is particularly useful in identifying a gas that has been produced in a reaction, and it is not difficult to carry out. A flask or glass bulb of known volume is carefully dried, evacuated, sealed, and weighed empty. It is then filled with a sample of a gas at a known temperature and pressure and reweighed. The difference in mass between the two readings is the mass of the gas. The volume of the flask is usually determined by weighing the flask when empty and when filled with a liquid of known density such as water. The use of density measurements to calculate molar masses is illustrated in Example 6.3.6.

Example 6.3.6

The reaction of a copper penny with nitric acid results in the formation of a red-brown gaseous compound containing nitrogen and oxygen. A sample of the gas at a pressure of 727 mmHg and a temperature of 18°C weighs 0.289 g in a flask with a volume of 157.0 mL. Calculate the molar mass of the gas and suggest a reasonable chemical formula for the compound.

Given: pressure, temperature, mass, and volume

Asked for: molar mass and chemical formula

Strategy:

A. Solve Equation 6.3.12 for the molar mass of the gas and then calculate the density of the gas from the information given.
B. Convert all known quantities to the appropriate units for the gas constant being used. Substitute the known values into your equation and solve for the molar mass.
C. Propose a reasonable empirical formula using the atomic masses of nitrogen and oxygen and the calculated molar mass of the gas.

Solution:

A Solving Equation 6.3.12 for the molar mass gives

$$M = \frac{mRT}{PV} = \frac{dRT}{P} \tag{6.3.19}$$

Density is the mass of the gas divided by its volume:

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V} = \frac{0.289\text{g}}{0.17\text{L}} = 1.84\text{g/L} \tag{6.3.20}$$

B We must convert the other quantities to the appropriate units before inserting them into the equation:

$$T = 18 + 273 = 291K \tag{6.3.21}$$

$$P = 727\text{mmHg} \times \frac{1\text{atm}}{760\text{mmHg}} = 0.957\text{atm} \tag{6.3.22}$$

The molar mass of the unknown gas is thus

$$\rho = \frac{1.84\ \text{g/L} \times 0.08206 \frac{\text{L} \cdot \text{atm}}{\text{K} \cdot \text{mol}} \times 291\ \text{K}}{0.957\ \text{atm}} = 45.9 \text{g/mol} \tag{6.3.23}$$

C The atomic masses of N and O are approximately 14 and 16, respectively, so we can construct a list showing the masses of possible combinations:

$$M(\text{NO}) = 14 + 16 = 30\ \text{g/mol} \tag{6.3.24}$$

$$M(\text{N}_2\text{O}) = (2)(14) + 16 = 44\ \text{g/mol} \tag{6.3.25}$$

$$M(\text{NO}_2) = 14 + (2)(16) = 46\ \text{g/mol} \tag{6.3.26}$$

The most likely choice is NO_2 which is in agreement with the data. The red-brown color of smog also results from the presence of NO_2 gas.

Exercise 6.3.6

You are in charge of interpreting the data from an unmanned space probe that has just landed on Venus and sent back a report on its atmosphere. The data are as follows: pressure, 90 atm; temperature, 557°C; density, 58 g/L. The major constituent of the atmosphere (>95%) is carbon. Calculate the molar mass of the major gas present and identify it.

Answer: 44 g/mol; CO_2

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Density and the Molar Mass of Gases: https://youtu.be/gnkGBsvUFVk

Summary

The ideal gas law is derived from empirical relationships among the pressure, the volume, the temperature, and the number of moles of a gas; it can be used to calculate any of the four properties if the other three are known.

Ideal gas equation: $PV = nRT$,

where $R = 0.08206 \frac{\text{L} \cdot \text{atm}}{\text{K} \cdot \text{mol}} = 8.3145 \frac{\text{J}}{\text{K} \cdot \text{mol}}$

General gas equation: $\frac{P_i V_i}{n_i T_i} = \frac{P_f V_f}{n_f T_f}$

Density of a gas: $\rho = \frac{MP}{RT}$

The empirical relationships among the volume, the temperature, the pressure, and the amount of a gas can be combined into the **ideal gas law**, *PV* = *nRT*. The proportionality constant, *R*, is called the **gas constant** and has the value 0.08206 (L•atm)/(K•mol), 8.3145 J/(K•mol), or 1.9872 cal/(K•mol), depending on the units used. The ideal gas law describes the behavior of an **ideal gas**, a hypothetical substance whose behavior can be explained quantitatively by the ideal gas law and the kinetic molecular theory of gases. **Standard temperature and pressure (STP)** is 0°C and 1 atm. The volume of 1 mol of an ideal gas at STP is 22.41

L, the **standard molar volume**. All of the empirical gas relationships are special cases of the ideal gas law in which two of the four parameters are held constant. The ideal gas law allows us to calculate the value of the fourth quantity (*P*, *V*, *T*, or *n*) needed to describe a gaseous sample when the others are known and also predict the value of these quantities following a change in conditions if the original conditions (values of *P*, *V*, *T*, and *n*) are known. The ideal gas law can also be used to calculate the density of a gas if its molar mass is known or, conversely, the molar mass of an unknown gas sample if its density is measured.

This page titled 6.3: Combining the Gas Laws: The Ideal Gas Equation and the General Gas Equation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 6.3: Combining the Gas Laws: The Ideal Gas Equation and the General Gas Equation is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

6.4: Mixtures of Gases

Learning Objectives

- To determine the contribution of each component gas to the total pressure of a mixture of gases

In our use of the ideal gas law thus far, we have focused entirely on the properties of pure gases with only a single chemical species. But what happens when two or more gases are mixed? In this section, we describe how to determine the contribution of each gas present to the total pressure of the mixture.

Partial Pressures

The ideal gas law *assumes* that all gases behave identically and that their behavior is independent of attractive and repulsive forces. If volume and temperature are held constant, the ideal gas equation can be rearranged to show that the pressure of a sample of gas is directly proportional to the number of moles of gas present:

$$P = n\left(\frac{RT}{V}\right) = n \times \text{const.} \tag{6.4.1}$$

Nothing in the equation depends on the *nature* of the gas—only the amount.

With this assumption, let's suppose we have a mixture of two ideal gases that are present in equal amounts. What is the total pressure of the mixture? Because the pressure depends on only the total number of particles of gas present, the total pressure of the mixture will simply be twice the pressure of either component. More generally, the total pressure exerted by a mixture of gases at a given temperature and volume is the sum of the pressures exerted by each gas alone. Furthermore, if we know the volume, the temperature, and the number of moles of each gas in a mixture, then we can calculate the pressure exerted by each gas individually, which is its partial pressure, the pressure the gas would exert if it were the only one present (at the same temperature and volume).

To summarize, ***the total pressure exerted by a mixture of gases is the sum of the partial pressures of component gases***. This law was first discovered by John Dalton, the father of the atomic theory of matter. It is now known as *Dalton's law of partial pressures*. We can write it mathematically as

$$P_{tot} = P_1 + P_2 + P_3 + P_4 \ldots = \sum_{i=1}^{n} P_i \tag{6.4.2}$$

where P_{tot} is the total pressure and the other terms are the partial pressures of the individual gases (up to n component gases).

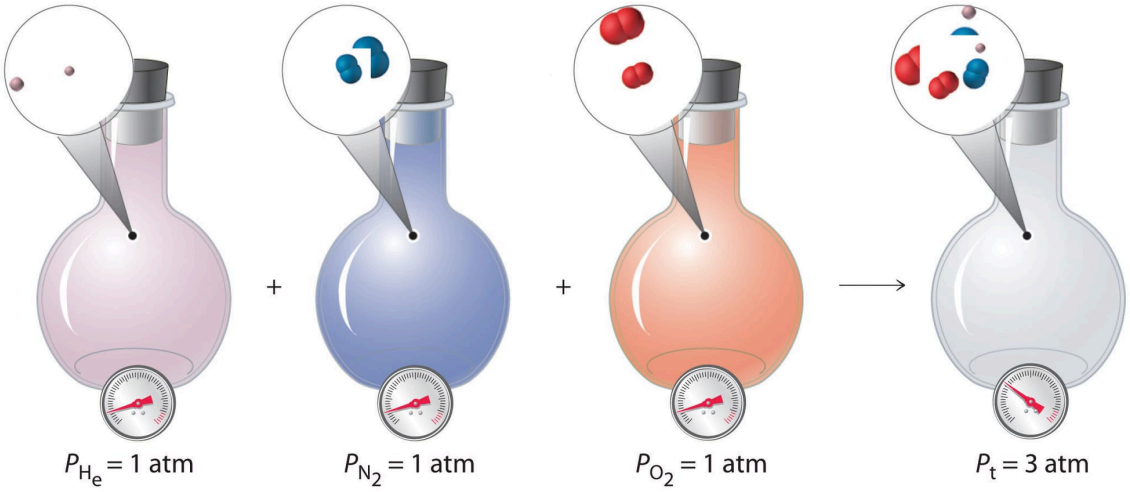


Figure 6.4.1: Dalton's Law. The total pressure of a mixture of gases is the sum of the partial pressures of the individual gases.

For a mixture of two ideal gases, A and B, we can write an expression for the total pressure:

$$P_{tot} = P_A + P_B = n_A\left(\frac{RT}{V}\right) + n_B\left(\frac{RT}{V}\right) = (n_A + n_B)\left(\frac{RT}{V}\right) \tag{6.4.3}$$

More generally, for a mixture of n component gases, the total pressure is given by

$$P_{tot} = (P_1 + P_2 + P_3 + \cdots + P_n)\left(\frac{RT}{V}\right) \tag{6.4.4}$$

$$P_{tot} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} n_i\left(\frac{RT}{V}\right) \tag{6.4.5}$$

Equation 6.6.4 restates Equation 6.6.3 in a more general form and makes it explicitly clear that, at constant temperature and volume, the pressure exerted by a gas depends on only the total number of moles of gas present, whether the gas is a single chemical species or a mixture of dozens or even hundreds of gaseous species. For Equation 6.6.4 to be valid, the identity of the particles present cannot have an effect. Thus an ideal gas must be one whose properties are not affected by either the size of the particles or their intermolecular interactions because both will vary from one gas to another. The calculation of total and partial pressures for mixtures of gases is illustrated in Example 6.4.1.

Example 6.4.1

Deep-sea divers must use special gas mixtures in their tanks, rather than compressed air, to avoid serious problems, most notably a condition called "the bends." At depths of about 350 ft, divers are subject to a pressure of approximately 10 atm. A typical gas cylinder used for such depths contains 51.2 g of O_2 and 326.4 g of He and has a volume of 10.0 L. What is the partial pressure of each gas at 20.00°C, and what is the total pressure in the cylinder at this temperature?

Given: masses of components, total volume, and temperature

Asked for: partial pressures and total pressure

Strategy:

A. Calculate the number of moles of He and O_2 present.
B. Use the ideal gas law to calculate the partial pressure of each gas. Then add together the partial pressures to obtain the total pressure of the gaseous mixture.

Solution:

A The number of moles of He is

$$n_{\text{He}} = \frac{326.4\ \text{g}}{4.003\ \text{g/mol}} = 81.54\ \text{mol} \tag{6.4.6}$$

The number of moles of O_2 is

$$n_{\text{O}_2} = \frac{51.2\ \text{g}}{32.00\ \text{g/mol}} = 1.60\ \text{mol} \tag{6.4.7}$$

B We can now use the ideal gas law to calculate the partial pressure of each:

$$P_{\text{He}} = \frac{n_{\text{He}}RT}{V} = \frac{81.54\ \text{mol} \times 0.08206\ \frac{\text{atm} \cdot \text{L}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} \times 293.15\ \text{K}}{10.0\ \text{L}} = 196.2\ \text{atm} \tag{6.4.8}$$

$$P_{\text{O}_2} = \frac{n_{\text{O}_2}RT}{V} = \frac{1.60\ \text{mol} \times 0.08206\ \frac{\text{atm} \cdot \text{L}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} \times 293.15\ \text{K}}{10.0\ \text{L}} = 3.85\ \text{atm} \tag{6.4.9}$$

The total pressure is the sum of the two partial pressures:

$$P_{\text{tot}} = P_{\text{He}} + P_{\text{O}_2} = (196.2 + 3.85)\ \text{atm} = 200.1\ \text{atm} \tag{6.4.10}$$

Exercise 6.4.1

A cylinder of compressed natural gas has a volume of 20.0 L and contains 1813 g of methane and 336 g of ethane. Calculate the partial pressure of each gas at 22.0°C and the total pressure in the cylinder.

Answer: $P_{CH_4} = 137\ \ atm$; $P_{C_2H_6} = 13.4\ \ atm$; $P_{tot} = 151\ \ atm$

Mole Fractions of Gas Mixtures

The composition of a gas mixture can be described by the mole fractions of the gases present. The mole fraction (X) of any component of a mixture is the ratio of the number of moles of that component to the total number of moles of all the species present in the mixture (n_{tot}):

$$x_A = \frac{\text{moles of A}}{\text{total moles}} = \frac{n_A}{n_{tot}} = \frac{n_A}{n_A + n_B + \cdots} \tag{6.4.11}$$

The mole fraction is a dimensionless quantity between 0 and 1. If $x_A = 1.0$, then the sample is pure A, not a mixture. If $x_A = 0$, then no A is present in the mixture. The sum of the mole fractions of all the components present must equal 1.

To see how mole fractions can help us understand the properties of gas mixtures, let's evaluate the ratio of the pressure of a gas A to the total pressure of a gas mixture that contains A. We can use the ideal gas law to describe the pressures of both gas A and the mixture: $P_A = n_ART/V$ and $P_{tot} = n_tRT/V$. The ratio of the two is thus

$$\frac{P_A}{P_{tot}} = \frac{n_ART/V}{n_{tot}RT/V} = \frac{n_A}{n_{tot}} = x_A \tag{6.4.12}$$

Rearranging this equation gives

$$P_A = x_AP_{tot} \tag{6.4.13}$$

That is, the partial pressure of any gas in a mixture is the total pressure multiplied by the mole fraction of that gas. This conclusion is a direct result of the ideal gas law, which assumes that all gas particles behave ideally. Consequently, the pressure of a gas in a mixture depends on only the percentage of particles in the mixture that are of that type, not their specific physical or chemical properties. By volume, Earth's atmosphere is about 78% N_2, 21% O_2, and 0.9% Ar, with trace amounts of gases such as CO_2, H_2O, and others. This means that 78% of the particles present in the atmosphere are N_2; hence the mole fraction of N_2 is 78%/100% =

0.78. Similarly, the mole fractions of O_2 and Ar are 0.21 and 0.009, respectively. Using Equation 6.6.7, we therefore know that the partial pressure of N_2 is 0.78 atm (assuming an atmospheric pressure of exactly 760 mmHg) and, similarly, the partial pressures of O_2 and Ar are 0.21 and 0.009 atm, respectively.

Example 6.4.2

We have just calculated the partial pressures of the major gases in the air we inhale. Experiments that measure the composition of the air we *exhale* yield different results, however. The following table gives the measured pressures of the major gases in both inhaled and exhaled air. Calculate the mole fractions of the gases in exhaled air.

	Inhaled Air / mmHg	Exhaled Air / mmHg
P_{N_2}	597	568
P_{O_2}	158	116
P_{H_2O}	0.3	28
P_{CO_2}	5	48
P_{Ar}	8	8
P_{tot}	767	767

Given: pressures of gases in inhaled and exhaled air

Asked for: mole fractions of gases in exhaled air

Strategy:

Calculate the mole fraction of each gas using Equation 6.6.7.

Solution:

The mole fraction of any gas A is given by

$$x_A = \frac{P_A}{P_{tot}} \tag{6.4.14}$$

where P_A is the partial pressure of A and P_{tot} is the total pressure. For example, the mole fraction of CO_2 is given as:

$$x_{CO_2} = \frac{48 \text{ mmHg}}{767 \text{ mmHg}} = 0.063 \tag{6.4.15}$$

The following table gives the values of x_A for the gases in the exhaled air.

Gas	Mole Fraction
N_2	0.741
O_2	0.151
H_2O	0.037
CO_2	0.063
Ar	0.010

Exercise 6.4.2

Venus is an inhospitable place, with a surface temperature of 560°C and a surface pressure of 90 atm. The atmosphere consists of about 96% CO_2 and 3% N_2, with trace amounts of other gases, including water, sulfur dioxide, and sulfuric acid. Calculate the partial pressures of CO_2 and N_2.

Answer

$$P_{CO_2} = 86 \text{ atm}, P_{N_2} = 2.7 \text{ atm}$$

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Dalton's Law of Partial Pressures: https://youtu.be/y5-SbspyvBA

Summary

- The partial pressure of each gas in a mixture is proportional to its mole fraction.

The pressure exerted by each gas in a gas mixture (its **partial pressure**) is independent of the pressure exerted by all other gases present. Consequently, the total pressure exerted by a mixture of gases is the sum of the partial pressures of the components (**Dalton's law of partial pressures**). The amount of gas present in a mixture may be described by its partial pressure or its mole fraction. The **mole fraction** of any component of a mixture is the ratio of the number of moles of that substance to the total number of moles of all substances present. In a mixture of gases, the partial pressure of each gas is the product of the total pressure and the mole fraction of that gas.

This page titled 6.4: Mixtures of Gases is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 6.6: Mixtures of Gases is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

6.5: Kinetic-Molecular Theory of Gases

Learning Objectives

- To understand the significance of the kinetic molecular theory of gases.

The laws that describe the behavior of gases were well established long before anyone had developed a coherent model of the properties of gases. In this section, we introduce a theory that describes why gases behave the way they do. The theory we introduce can also be used to derive laws such as the ideal gas law from fundamental principles and the properties of individual particles.

A Molecular Description

The kinetic molecular theory of gases explains the laws that describe the behavior of gases. Developed during the mid-19th century by several physicists, including the Austrian Ludwig Boltzmann (1844–1906), the German Rudolf Clausius (1822–1888), and the Englishman James Clerk Maxwell (1831–1879), who is also known for his contributions to electricity and magnetism, this theory is based on the properties of individual particles as defined for an ideal gas and the fundamental concepts of physics. Thus the kinetic molecular theory of gases provides a molecular explanation for observations that led to the development of the ideal gas law. The kinetic molecular theory of gases is based on the following five postulates:

1. A gas is composed of a large number of particles called molecules (whether monatomic or polyatomic) that are in constant random motion.
2. Because the distance between gas molecules is much greater than the size of the molecules, the volume of the molecules is negligible.
3. Intermolecular interactions, whether repulsive or attractive, are so weak that they are also negligible.
4. Gas molecules collide with one another and with the walls of the container, but these collisions are perfectly elastic; that is, they do not change the average kinetic energy of the molecules.
5. The average kinetic energy of the molecules of any gas depends on only the temperature, and at a given temperature, all gaseous molecules have exactly the same average kinetic energy.

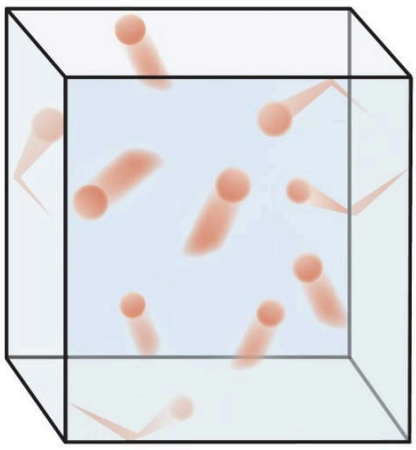


Figure 6.5.1 Visualizing molecular motion. Molecules of a gas are in constant motion and collide with one another and with the container wall.

Although the molecules of real gases have nonzero volumes and exert both attractive and repulsive forces on one another, for the moment we will focus on how the kinetic molecular theory of gases relates to the properties of gases we have been discussing. In Section 10.8, we explain how this theory must be modified to account for the behavior of real gases.

Postulates 1 and 4 state that gas molecules are in constant motion and collide frequently with the walls of their containers. The collision of molecules with their container walls results in a **momentum transfer** (impulse) from molecules to the walls (Figure

6.5.2).

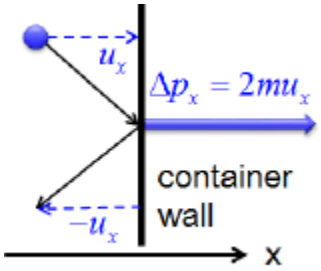


Figure 6.5.2 Momentum transfer (Impulse) from a molecule to the container wall as it bounces off the wall. u_x and Δp_x are the x component of the molecular velocity and the momentum transfered to the wall, respectively. The wall is perpendicular to x axis. Since the collisions are elastic, the molecule bounces back with the same velocity in the opposite direction.

The **momentum transfer** to the wall perpendicular to x axis as a molecule with an initial velocity u_x in x direction hits is expressed as:

$$\Delta p_x = 2mu_x \tag{6.5.1}$$

The **collision frequency**, a number of collisions of the molecules to the wall per unit area and per second, increases with the molecular speed and the number of molecules per unit volume.

$$f \propto (u_x) \times \left(\frac{N}{V}\right) \tag{6.5.2}$$

The pressure the gas exerts on the wall is expressed as the product of impulse and the collision frequency.

$$P \propto (2mu_x) \times (u_x) \times \left(\frac{N}{V}\right) \propto \left(\frac{N}{V}\right) mu_x^2 \tag{6.5.3}$$

At any instant, however, the molecules in a gas sample are traveling at different speed. Therefore, we must replace u_x^2 in the expression above with the average value of u_x^2, which is denoted by $\overline{u_x^2}$. The overbar designates the average value over all molecules.

The exact expression for pressure is given as :

$$P = \frac{N}{V} m\overline{u_x^2} \tag{6.5.4}$$

Finally, we must consider that there is nothing special about x direction. We should expect that $\overline{u_x^2} = \overline{u_y^2} = \overline{u_z^2} = \frac{1}{3}\overline{u^2}$. Here the quantity $\overline{u^2}$ is called the **mean-square speed** defined as the average value of square-speed (u^2) over all molecules. Since $u^2 = u_x^2 + u_y^2 + u_z^2$ for each molecule, $\overline{u^2} = \overline{u_x^2} + \overline{u_y^2} + \overline{u_z^2}$. By substituting $\frac{1}{3}\overline{u^2}$ for $\overline{u_x^2}$ in the expression above, we can get the final expression for the pressure:

$$P = \frac{1}{3}\frac{N}{V} m\overline{u^2} \tag{6.5.5}$$

Because volumes and intermolecular interactions are negligible, postulates 2 and 3 state that all gaseous particles behave identically, regardless of the chemical nature of their component molecules. This is the essence of the ideal gas law, which treats all gases as collections of particles that are identical in all respects except mass. Postulate 2 also explains why it is relatively easy to compress a gas; you simply decrease the distance between the gas molecules.

Postulate 5 provides a molecular explanation for the temperature of a gas. Postulate 5 refers to the *average translational* kinetic energy of the molecules of a gas ($\overline{e_K}$), which can be represented as *and states that at a given Kelvin temperature* (T)*, all gases have the same value of*

$$\overline{e_K} = \frac{1}{2} m\overline{u^2} = \frac{3}{2}\frac{R}{N_A} T \tag{6.5.6}$$

where N_A is the Avogadro's constant. The total translational kinetic energy of 1 mole of molecules can be obtained by multiplying the equation by N_A:

$$N_A\overline{e_K} = \frac{1}{2}M\overline{u^2} = \frac{3}{2}RT \tag{6.5.7}$$

where M is the molar mass of the gas molecules and is related to the molecular mass by $M = N_A m$.

By rearranging the equation, we can get the relationship between the root-mean square speed (u_{rms}) and the temperature.

The rms speed (u_{rms}) is the square root of the sum of the squared speeds divided by the number of particles:

$$u_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{\overline{u^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{u_1^2 + u_2^2 + \cdots u_N^2}{N}} \tag{6.5.8}$$

where N is the number of particles and u_i is the speed of particle i.

The relationship between u_{rms} and the temperature is given by:

$$u_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{\frac{3RT}{M}} \tag{6.5.9}$$

In this equation, u_{rms} has units of meters per second; consequently, the units of molar mass M are kilograms per mole, temperature T is expressed in kelvins, and the ideal gas constant R has the value 8.3145 J/(K•mol).

The equation shows that u_{rms} of a gas is proportional to the square root of its Kelvin temperature and inversely proportional to the square root of its molar mass. The root mean-square speed of a gas increase with increasing temperature. At a given temperature, heavier gas molecules have slower speeds than do lighter ones.

The rms speed and the average speed do not differ greatly (typically by less than 10%). The distinction is important, however, because the rms speed is the speed of a gas particle that has average kinetic energy. Particles of different gases at the same temperature have the same average kinetic energy, not the same average speed. In contrast, the most probable speed (v_p) is the speed at which the greatest number of particles is moving. If the average kinetic energy of the particles of a gas increases linearly with increasing temperature, then Equation 6.7.8 tells us that the rms speed must also increase with temperature because the mass of the particles is constant. At higher temperatures, therefore, the molecules of a gas move more rapidly than at lower temperatures, and v_p increases.

Note

At a given temperature, all gaseous particles have the same average kinetic energy but not the same average speed.

Example 6.5.1

The speeds of eight particles were found to be 1.0, 4.0, 4.0, 6.0, 6.0, 6.0, 8.0, and 10.0 m/s. Calculate their average speed (v_{av}) root mean square speed (v_{rms}), and most probable speed (v_{m}).

Given: particle speeds

Asked for: average speed (v_{av}), root mean square speed (v_{rms}), and most probable speed (v_{m})

Strategy:

Use Equation 6.7.6 to calculate the average speed and Equation 6.7.8 to calculate the rms speed. Find the most probable speed by determining the speed at which the greatest number of particles is moving.

Solution:

The average speed is the sum of the speeds divided by the number of particles:

$$v_{\text{av}} = \frac{(1.0 + 4.0 + 4.0 + 6.0 + 6.0 + 6.0 + 8.0 + 10.0)\ \text{m/s}}{8} = 5.6\ \text{m/s} \tag{6.5.10}$$

The rms speed is the square root of the sum of the squared speeds divided by the number of particles:

$$v_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{\frac{(1.0^2 + 4.0^2 + 4.0^2 + 6.0^2 + 6.0^2 + 6.0^2 + 8.0^2 + 10.0^2)\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2}{8}} = 6.2\ \text{m/s} \tag{6.5.11}$$

The most probable speed is the speed at which the greatest number of particles is moving. Of the eight particles, three have speeds of 6.0 m/s, two have speeds of 4.0 m/s, and the other three particles have different speeds. Hence $v_{\text{m}} = 6.0$ m/s. The v_{rms} of the particles, which is related to the average kinetic energy, is greater than their average speed.

Boltzmann Distributions

At any given time, what fraction of the molecules in a particular sample has a given speed? Some of the molecules will be moving more slowly than average, and some will be moving faster than average, but how many in each situation? Answers to questions such as these can have a substantial effect on the amount of product formed during a chemical reaction, as you will learn in Chapter 14. This problem was solved mathematically by Maxwell in 1866; he used statistical analysis to obtain an equation that describes the distribution of molecular speeds at a given temperature. Typical curves showing the distributions of speeds of molecules at several temperatures are displayed in Figure 6.5.1. Increasing the temperature has two effects. First, the peak of the curve moves to the right because the most probable speed increases. Second, the curve becomes broader because of the increased spread of the speeds. Thus increased temperature increases the *value* of the most probable speed but decreases the relative number of molecules that have that speed. Although the mathematics behind curves such as those in Figure 6.5.1 were first worked out by Maxwell, the curves are almost universally referred to as Boltzmann distributions, after one of the other major figures responsible for the kinetic molecular theory of gases.

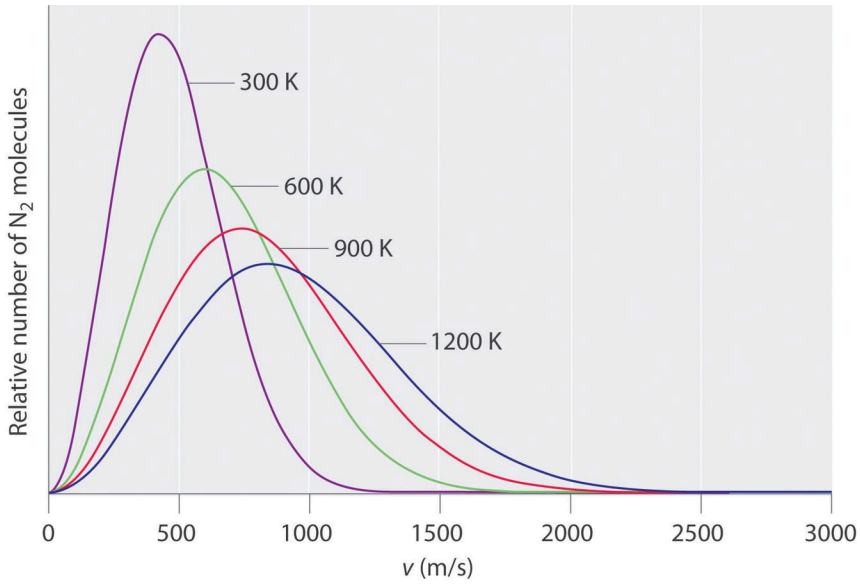


Figure 6.5.2 The Distributions of Molecular Speeds for a Sample of Nitrogen Gas at Various Temperatures. Increasing the temperature increases both the most probable speed (given at the peak of the curve) and the width of the curve.

The Relationships among Pressure, Volume, and Temperature

We now describe how the kinetic molecular theory of gases explains some of the important relationships we have discussed previously.

- **Pressure versus Volume**: At constant temperature, the kinetic energy of the molecules of a gas and hence the rms speed

remain unchanged. If a given gas sample is allowed to occupy a larger volume, then the speed of the molecules does not change, but the density of the gas (number of particles per unit volume) decreases, and the average distance between the molecules increases. Hence the molecules must, on average, travel farther between collisions. They therefore collide with one another and with the walls of their containers less often, leading to a decrease in pressure. Conversely, increasing the pressure forces the molecules closer together and increases the density, until the collective impact of the collisions of the molecules with the container walls just balances the applied pressure.

- **Volume versus Temperature**: Raising the temperature of a gas increases the average kinetic energy and therefore the rms speed (and the average speed) of the gas molecules. Hence as the temperature increases, the molecules collide with the walls of their containers more frequently and with greater force. This increases the pressure, *unless* the volume increases to reduce the pressure, as we have just seen. Thus an increase in temperature must be offset by an increase in volume for the net impact (pressure) of the gas molecules on the container walls to remain unchanged.
- **Pressure of Gas Mixtures**: Postulate 3 of the kinetic molecular theory of gases states that gas molecules exert no attractive or repulsive forces on one another. If the gaseous molecules do not interact, then the presence of one gas in a gas mixture will have no effect on the pressure exerted by another, and Dalton's law of partial pressures holds.

Example 6.5.2

The temperature of a 4.75 L container of N_2 gas is increased from 0°C to 117°C. What is the qualitative effect of this change on the

1. average kinetic energy of the N_2 molecules?
2. rms speed of the N_2 molecules?
3. average speed of the N_2 molecules?
4. impact of each N_2 molecule on the wall of the container during a collision with the wall?
5. total number of collisions per second of N_2 molecules with the walls of the entire container?
6. number of collisions per second of N_2 molecules with each square centimeter of the container wall?
7. pressure of the N_2 gas?

Given: temperatures and volume

Asked for: effect of increase in temperature

Strategy:

Use the relationships among pressure, volume, and temperature to predict the qualitative effect of an increase in the temperature of the gas.

Solution:

1. Increasing the temperature increases the average kinetic energy of the N_2 molecules.
2. An increase in average kinetic energy can be due only to an increase in the rms speed of the gas particles.
3. If the rms speed of the N_2 molecules increases, the average speed also increases.
4. If, on average, the particles are moving faster, then they strike the container walls with more energy.
5. Because the particles are moving faster, they collide with the walls of the container more often per unit time.
6. The number of collisions per second of N_2 molecules with each square centimeter of container wall increases because the total number of collisions has increased, but the volume occupied by the gas and hence the total area of the walls are unchanged.
7. The pressure exerted by the N_2 gas increases when the temperature is increased at constant volume, as predicted by the ideal gas law.

Exercise 6.5.2

A sample of helium gas is confined in a cylinder with a gas-tight sliding piston. The initial volume is 1.34 L, and the temperature is 22°C. The piston is moved to allow the gas to expand to 2.12 L at constant temperature. What is the qualitative effect of this change on the

1. average kinetic energy of the He atoms?
2. rms speed of the He atoms?
3. average speed of the He atoms?
4. impact of each He atom on the wall of the container during a collision with the wall?
5. total number of collisions per second of He atoms with the walls of the entire container?
6. number of collisions per second of He atoms with each square centimeter of the container wall?
7. pressure of the He gas?

Answer: a. no change; b. no change; c. no change; d. no change; e. decreases; f. decreases; g. decreases

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Kinetic-Molecular Theory of Gases: https://youtu.be/9f83XAYfXAg

Summary

- The kinetic molecular theory of gases provides a molecular explanation for the observations that led to the development of the ideal gas law.
- **Average kinetic energy:**

$$\overline{e_K} = \frac{1}{2} m {u_{\text{rms}}}^2 = \frac{3}{2} \frac{R}{N_A} T, \tag{6.5.12}$$

- **Root mean square speed:**

$$u_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{\frac{u_1^2 + u_2^2 + \cdots u_N^2}{N}}, \tag{6.5.13}$$

- **Kinetic molecular theory of gases:**

$$u_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{\frac{3RT}{M}}. \tag{6.5.14}$$

The behavior of ideal gases is explained by the **kinetic molecular theory of gases**. Molecular motion, which leads to collisions between molecules and the container walls, explains pressure, and the large intermolecular distances in gases explain their high compressibility. Although all gases have the same average kinetic energy at a given temperature, they do not all possess the same **root mean square (rms) speed (v_{rms})**. The actual values of speed and kinetic energy are not the same for all particles of a gas but are given by a **Boltzmann distribution**, in which some molecules have higher or lower speeds (and kinetic energies) than average.

This page titled 6.5: Kinetic-Molecular Theory of Gases is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 6.7: Kinetic-Molecular Theory of Gases is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

6.6: Non-ideal (Real) Gases

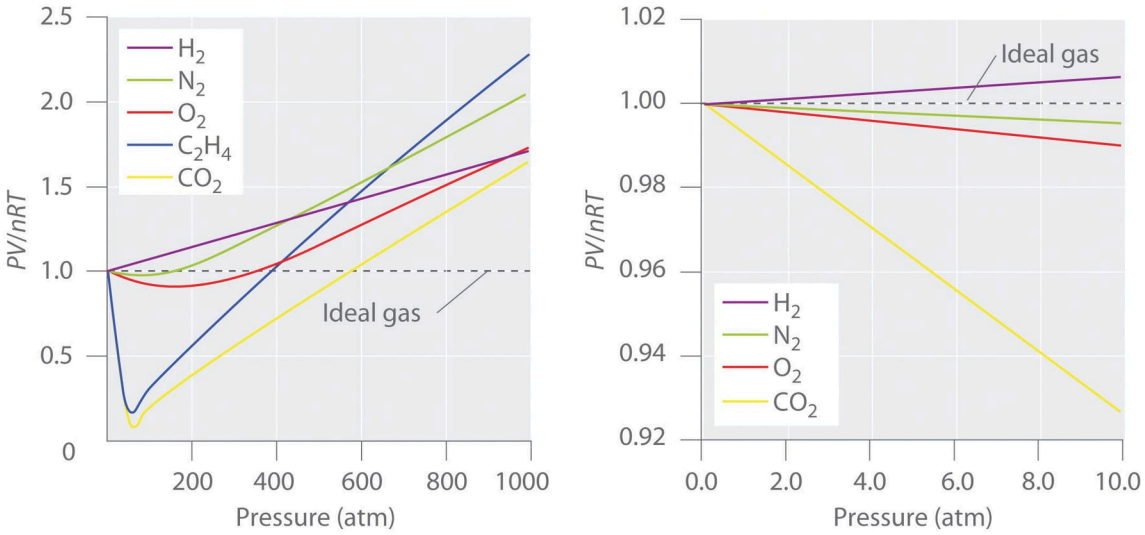
Learning Objectives

- To recognize the differences between the behavior of an ideal gas and a real gas.
- To understand how molecular volumes and intermolecular attractions cause the properties of real gases to deviate from those predicted by the ideal gas law.

The postulates of the kinetic molecular theory of gases ignore both the volume occupied by the molecules of a gas and all interactions between molecules, whether attractive or repulsive. In reality, however, all gases have nonzero molecular volumes. Furthermore, the molecules of real gases interact with one another in ways that depend on the structure of the molecules and therefore differ for each gaseous substance. In this section, we consider the properties of real gases and how and why they differ from the predictions of the ideal gas law. We also examine liquefaction, a key property of real gases that is not predicted by the kinetic molecular theory of gases.

Pressure, Volume, and Temperature Relationships in Real Gases

For an ideal gas, a plot of PV/nRT versus P gives a horizontal line with an intercept of 1 on the PV/nRT axis. Real gases, however, show significant deviations from the behavior expected for an ideal gas, particularly at high pressures (part (a) in Figure $6.6.1$). Only at relatively low pressures (less than 1 atm) do real gases approximate ideal gas behavior (part (b) in Figure $6.6.1$).



(a) *PV/nRT* at high pressures **(b) *PV/nRT* at low pressures**

Figure $6.6.1$: Real Gases Do Not Obey the Ideal Gas Law, Especially at High Pressures. (a) In these plots of *PV/nRT* versus *P* at 273 K for several common gases, there are large negative deviations observed for C_2H_4 and CO_2 because they liquefy at relatively low pressures. (b) These plots illustrate the relatively good agreement between experimental data for real gases and the ideal gas law at low pressures.

Real gases also approach ideal gas behavior more closely at higher temperatures, as shown in Figure $6.6.2$ for N_2. Why do real gases behave so differently from ideal gases at high pressures and low temperatures? Under these conditions, the two basic assumptions behind the ideal gas law—namely, that gas molecules have negligible volume and that intermolecular interactions are negligible—are no longer valid.

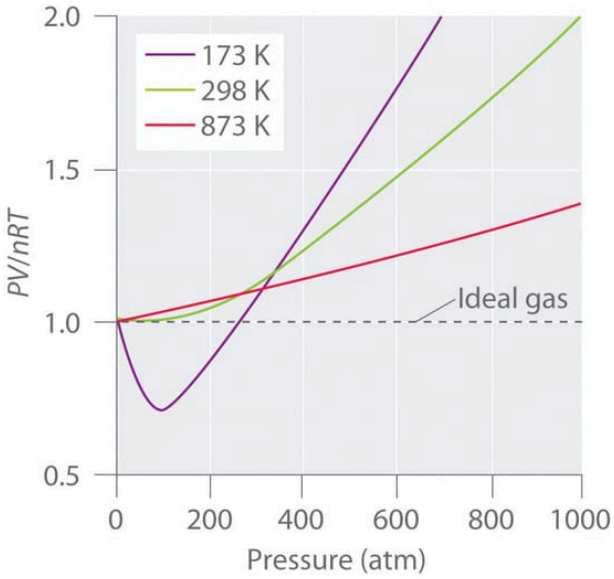


Figure $6.6.2$: The Effect of Temperature on the Behavior of Real Gases. A plot of PV/nRT versus P for nitrogen gas at three temperatures shows that the approximation to ideal gas behavior becomes better as the temperature increases.

Because the molecules of an ideal gas are assumed to have zero volume, the volume available to them for motion is always the same as the volume of the container. In contrast, the molecules of a real gas have small but measurable volumes. At low pressures, the gaseous molecules are relatively far apart, but as the pressure of the gas increases, the intermolecular distances become smaller and smaller (Figure $6.6.3$). As a result, the volume occupied by the molecules becomes significant compared with the volume of the container. Consequently, the total volume occupied by the gas is greater than the volume predicted by the ideal gas law. Thus at very high pressures, the experimentally measured value of *PV/nRT* is greater than the value predicted by the ideal gas law.

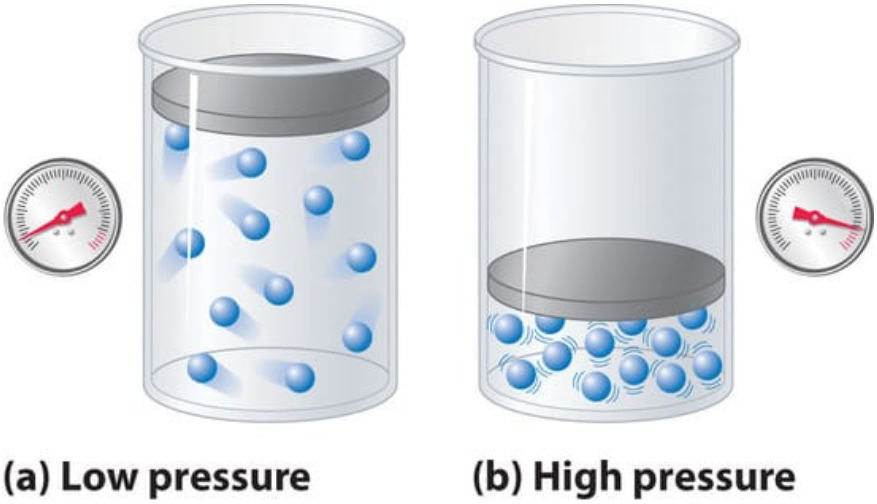


Figure $6.6.3$: The Effect of Nonzero Volume of Gas Particles on the Behavior of Gases at Low and High Pressures. (a) At low pressures, the volume occupied by the molecules themselves is small compared with the volume of the container. (b) At high pressures, the molecules occupy a large portion of the volume of the container, resulting in significantly decreased space in which the molecules can move.

Moreover, all molecules are attracted to one another by a combination of forces. These forces become particularly important for gases at low temperatures and high pressures, where intermolecular distances are shorter. Attractions between molecules reduce the number of collisions with the container wall, an effect that becomes more pronounced as the number of attractive interactions increases. Because the average distance between molecules decreases, the pressure exerted by the gas on the container wall decreases, and the observed pressure is *less* than expected. Thus as shown in Figure $6.6.2$, at low temperatures, the ratio of \(PV/nRT\) is lower than predicted for an ideal gas, an effect that becomes particularly evident for complex gases and for simple gases at low temperatures. At very high pressures, the effect of nonzero molecular volume predominates. The competition between these effects is responsible for the minimum observed in the PV/nRT versus P plot for many gases.

Nonzero molecular volume makes the actual volume *greater* than predicted at high pressures; intermolecular attractions make the pressure *less* than predicted.

At high temperatures, the molecules have sufficient kinetic energy to overcome intermolecular attractive forces, and the effects of nonzero molecular volume predominate. Conversely, as the temperature is lowered, the kinetic energy of the gas molecules decreases. Eventually, a point is reached where the molecules can no longer overcome the intermolecular attractive forces, and the gas liquefies (condenses to a liquid).

The van der Waals Equation

The Dutch physicist Johannes van der Waals (1837–1923; Nobel Prize in Physics, 1910) modified the ideal gas law to describe the behavior of real gases by explicitly including the effects of molecular size and intermolecular forces. In his description of gas behavior, the so-called *van der Waals* equation,

$$\left(P + \frac{an^2}{V^2}\right)(V - nb) = nRT \tag{6.6.1}$$

a and *b* are empirical constants that are different for each gas. The values of a and b are listed in Table $6.6.1$ for several common gases.

Table $6.6.1$*: van der Waals Constants for Some Common Gases (see Table A8 for more complete list)*

Gas	a ($(L^2 \cdot atm)/mol^2$)	b (L/mol)
He	0.03410	0.0238
Ne	0.205	0.0167
Ar	1.337	0.032
H_2	0.2420	0.0265
N_2	1.352	0.0387
O_2	1.364	0.0319
Cl_2	6.260	0.0542
NH_3	4.170	0.0371
CH_4	2.273	0.0430
CO_2	3.610	0.0429

The pressure term in Equation $6.6.1$ —$P + (an^2/V^2)$—corrects for intermolecular attractive forces that tend to reduce the pressure from that predicted by the ideal gas law. Here, n^2/V^2 represents the concentration of the gas (n/V) squared because it takes two particles to engage in the pairwise intermolecular interactions of the type shown in Figure $6.6.4$. The volume term—$V - nb$ —corrects for the volume occupied by the gaseous molecules.

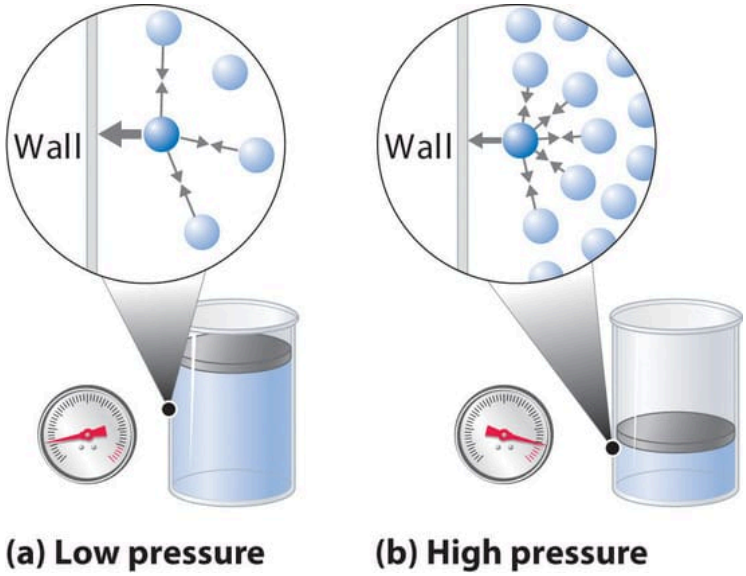


Figure 6.6.4: The Effect of Intermolecular Attractive Forces on the Pressure a Gas Exerts on the Container Walls. (a) At low pressures, there are relatively few attractive intermolecular interactions to lessen the impact of the molecule striking the wall of the container, and the pressure is close to that predicted by the ideal gas law. (b) At high pressures, with the average intermolecular distance relatively small, the effect of intermolecular interactions is to lessen the impact of a given molecule striking the container wall, resulting in a lower pressure than predicted by the ideal gas law.

The correction for volume is negative, but the correction for pressure is positive to reflect the effect of each factor on *V* and *P*, respectively. Because nonzero molecular volumes produce a measured volume that is *larger* than that predicted by the ideal gas law, we must subtract the molecular volumes to obtain the actual volume available. Conversely, attractive intermolecular forces produce a pressure that is *less* than that expected based on the ideal gas law, so the an^2/V^2 term must be added to the measured pressure to correct for these effects.

Example 6.6.1

You are in charge of the manufacture of cylinders of compressed gas at a small company. Your company president would like to offer a 4.00 L cylinder containing 500 g of chlorine in the new catalog. The cylinders you have on hand have a rupture pressure of 40 atm. Use both the ideal gas law and the van der Waals equation to calculate the pressure in a cylinder at 25°C. Is this cylinder likely to be safe against sudden rupture (which would be disastrous and certainly result in lawsuits because chlorine gas is highly toxic)?

Given: volume of cylinder, mass of compound, pressure, and temperature

Asked for: safety

Strategy:

A Use the molar mass of chlorine to calculate the amount of chlorine in the cylinder. Then calculate the pressure of the gas using the ideal gas law.

B Obtain *a* and *b* values for Cl_2 from Table 6.6.1. Use the van der Waals equation to solve for the pressure of the gas. Based on the value obtained, predict whether the cylinder is likely to be safe against sudden rupture.

Solution:

A We begin by calculating the amount of chlorine in the cylinder using the molar mass of chlorine (70.906 g/mol):

$$n = \frac{m}{M} = \frac{500\ \text{g}}{70.906\ \text{g/mol}} = 7.052\ \text{mol} \tag{6.6.2}$$

Using the ideal gas law and the temperature in kelvins (298 K), we calculate the pressure:

$$P = \frac{nRT}{V} = \frac{7.052 \text{ mol} \times 0.08206 \frac{\text{L} \cdot \text{atm}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} \times 298 \text{ K}}{4.00 \text{ L}} = 43.1 \text{ atm} \tag{6.6.3}$$

If chlorine behaves like an ideal gas, you have a real problem!

B Now let's use the van der Waals equation with the *a* and *b* values for Cl_2 from Table 6.6.1. Solving for *P* gives

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \frac{nRT}{V - nb} - \frac{an^2}{V^2} \\ &= \frac{7.052 \text{ mol} \times 0.08206 \frac{\text{L} \cdot \text{atm}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} \times 298 \text{ K}}{4.00 \text{ L} - 7.052 \text{ mol} \times 0.0542 \frac{\text{L}}{\text{mol}}} - \frac{6.260 \frac{\text{L}^2\text{atm}}{\text{mol}^2} \times (7.052 \text{ mol})^2}{(4.00 \text{ L})^2} \\ &= 28.2 \text{ atm} \end{aligned} \tag{6.6.4}$$

This pressure is well within the safety limits of the cylinder. The ideal gas law predicts a pressure 15 atm higher than that of the van der Waals equation.

Exercise 6.6.1

A 10.0 L cylinder contains 500 g of methane. Calculate its pressure to two significant figures at 27°C using the

a. ideal gas law.
b. van der Waals equation.

Answer: a. 77 atm; b. 67 atm

Liquefaction of Gases

Liquefaction of gases is the condensation of gases into a liquid form, which is neither anticipated nor explained by the kinetic molecular theory of gases. Both the theory and the ideal gas law predict that gases compressed to very high pressures and cooled to very low temperatures should still behave like gases, albeit cold, dense ones. As gases are compressed and cooled, however, they invariably condense to form liquids, although very low temperatures are needed to liquefy light elements such as helium (for He, 4.2 K at 1 atm pressure).

Liquefaction can be viewed as an extreme deviation from ideal gas behavior. It occurs when the molecules of a gas are cooled to the point where they no longer possess sufficient kinetic energy to overcome intermolecular attractive forces. The precise combination of temperature and pressure needed to liquefy a gas depends strongly on its molar mass and structure, with heavier and more complex molecules usually liquefying at higher temperatures. In general, substances with large van der Waals a coefficients are relatively easy to liquefy because large *a* coefficients indicate relatively strong intermolecular attractive interactions. Conversely, small molecules with only light elements have small *a* coefficients, indicating weak intermolecular interactions, and they are relatively difficult to liquefy. Gas liquefaction is used on a massive scale to separate O_2, N_2, Ar, Ne, Kr, and Xe. After a sample of air is liquefied, the mixture is warmed, and the gases are separated according to their boiling points.

> A large value of *a* indicates the presence of relatively strong intermolecular attractive interactions.

The ultracold liquids formed from the liquefaction of gases are called cryogenic liquids, from the Greek *kryo*, meaning "cold," and *genes*, meaning "producing." They have applications as refrigerants in both industry and biology. For example, under carefully controlled conditions, the very cold temperatures afforded by liquefied gases such as nitrogen (boiling point = 77 K at 1 atm) can preserve biological materials, such as semen for the artificial insemination of cows and other farm animals. These liquids can also be used in a specialized type of surgery called *cryosurgery*, which selectively destroys tissues with a minimal loss of blood by the use of extreme cold.



Figure 6.6.5: A Liquid Natural Gas Transport Ship

Moreover, the liquefaction of gases is tremendously important in the storage and shipment of fossil fuels (Figure 6.6.5). Liquefied natural gas (LNG) and liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) are liquefied forms of hydrocarbons produced from natural gas or petroleum reserves. LNG consists mostly of methane, with small amounts of heavier hydrocarbons; it is prepared by cooling natural gas to below about −162°C. It can be stored in double-walled, vacuum-insulated containers at or slightly above atmospheric pressure. Because LNG occupies only about 1/600 the volume of natural gas, it is easier and more economical to transport. LPG is typically a mixture of propane, propene, butane, and butenes and is primarily used as a fuel for home heating. It is also used as a feedstock for chemical plants and as an inexpensive and relatively nonpolluting fuel for some automobiles.

Summary

No real gas exhibits ideal gas behavior, although many real gases approximate it over a range of conditions. Deviations from ideal gas behavior can be seen in plots of *PV*/*nRT* versus *P* at a given temperature; for an ideal gas, *PV*/*nRT* versus *P* = 1 under all conditions. At high pressures, most real gases exhibit larger *PV*/*nRT* values than predicted by the ideal gas law, whereas at low pressures, most real gases exhibit *PV*/*nRT* values close to those predicted by the ideal gas law. Gases most closely approximate ideal gas behavior at high temperatures and low pressures. Deviations from ideal gas law behavior can be described by the **van der Waals equation**, which includes empirical constants to correct for the actual volume of the gaseous molecules and quantify the reduction in pressure due to intermolecular attractive forces. If the temperature of a gas is decreased sufficiently, **liquefaction** occurs, in which the gas condenses into a liquid form. Liquefied gases have many commercial applications, including the transport of large amounts of gases in small volumes and the uses of ultracold **cryogenic liquids**.

This page titled 6.6: Non-ideal (Real) Gases is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 6.9: Non-ideal (Real) Gases is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

6.7: Applications of the Ideal Gas Equation

Learning Objectives

- To relate the amount of gas consumed or released in a chemical reaction to the stoichiometry of the reaction.
- To understand how the ideal gas equation and the stoichiometry of a reaction can be used to calculate the volume of gas produced or consumed in a reaction.

With the ideal gas law, we can use the relationship between the amounts of gases (in moles) and their volumes (in liters) to calculate the stoichiometry of reactions involving gases, if the pressure and temperature are known. This is important for several reasons. Many reactions that are carried out in the laboratory involve the formation or reaction of a gas, so chemists must be able to quantitatively treat gaseous products and reactants as readily as they quantitatively treat solids or solutions. Furthermore, many, if not most, industrially important reactions are carried out in the gas phase for practical reasons. Gases mix readily, are easily heated or cooled, and can be transferred from one place to another in a manufacturing facility via simple pumps and plumbing.

Gas Densities and Molar Mass

For gases the density varies with the number of gas molecules in a constant volume. The ideal-gas equation can be manipulated to solve a variety of different types of problems. To determine the density, ρ, of a gas, we rearrange the equation to

$$\rho = \frac{n}{V} = \frac{P}{RT} \tag{6.7.1}$$

Density of a gas is generally expressed in g/L. Multiplication of the left and right sides of the equation by the molar mass (M) of the gas gives

$$\frac{g}{L} = \frac{PM}{RT} \tag{6.7.2}$$

This allows us to determine the density of a gas when we know the molar mass, or vice versa.

Example 6.7.1

What is the density of nitrogen gas (N_2) at 248.0 Torr and 18° C?

Solution

Step 1: Write down your given information

- P = 248.0 Torr
- V = ?
- n = ?
- R = 0.0820574 L•atm•mol^{-1} K^{-1}
- T = 18° C

Step 2: Convert as necessary.

$$(248\ \text{Torr}) \times \frac{1\ \text{atm}}{760\ \text{Torr}} = 0.3263\ \text{atm} \tag{6.7.3}$$

$$18^{o}C + 273 = 291K \tag{6.7.4}$$

Step 3: This one is tricky. We need to manipulate the Ideal Gas Equation to incorporate density into the equation. *Write down all known equations:

$$PV = nRT \tag{6.7.5}$$

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V} \tag{6.7.6}$$

where ρ=density, m=mass, V=Volume

$$m = M \times n \tag{6.7.7}$$

where m=mass, M=molar mass, n=moles

*Now take the density equation.

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V} \tag{6.7.8}$$

*Keeping in mind $m = M \times n$...replace $(M \times n)$ for $mass$ within the density formula.

$$\rho = \frac{M \times n}{V} \tag{6.7.9}$$

$$\frac{\rho}{M} = \frac{n}{V} \tag{6.7.10}$$

*Now manipulate the Ideal Gas Equation

$$PV = nRT$$

$$\frac{n}{V} = \frac{P}{RT} \tag{6.7.11}$$

*(n/V) is in both equations.

$$\frac{n}{V} = \frac{\rho}{M} \tag{6.7.12}$$

$$\frac{n}{V} = \frac{P}{RT} \tag{6.7.13}$$

*Now combine them please.

$$\frac{\rho}{M} = \frac{P}{RT} \tag{6.7.14}$$

*Isolate density.

$$\rho = \frac{PM}{RT} \tag{6.7.15}$$

Step 4: Now plug in the information you have.

$$\rho = \frac{PM}{RT} \tag{6.7.16}$$

$$\rho = \frac{(0.3263 \text{ atm})(2 * 14.01 \text{ g/mol})}{(0.08206 Latm/Kmol)(291 \text{ K})} \tag{6.7.17}$$

$$\rho = 0.3828 \ g/L \tag{6.7.18}$$

An example of varying density for a useful purpose is the hot air balloon, which consists of a bag (called the envelope) that is capable of containing heated air. As the air in the envelope is heated, it becomes less dense than the surrounding cooler air (Equation 6.4.1), which is has enough lifting power (due to buoyancy) to cause the balloon to float and rise into the air. Constant

heating of the air is required to keep the balloon aloft. As the air in the balloon cools, it contracts, allowing outside cool air to enter, and the density increases. When this is carefully controlled by the pilot, the balloon can land as gently as it rose.



Figure 6.7.1: A hot air balloon is inflated partially with cold air from a gas-powered fan, before the propane burners are used for final inflation.

Note

- The density of a gas INCREASES with increasing pressure (Equation 6.4.1)
- The density of a gas DECREASES with increasing temperature (Equation 6.4.1)

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Density and the Molar Mass of Gases: https://youtu.be/gnkGBsvUFVk

Determining Gas Volumes in Chemical Reactions

The ideal gas law can be used to calculate volume of gases consumed or produced. The ideal-gas equation frequently is used to interconvert between volumes and molar amounts in chemical equations.

Example 6.7.2

What volume of carbon dioxide gas is produced at STP by the decomposition of 0.150 g $CaCO_3$ via the equation:

$$CaCO_{3(s)} \rightarrow CaO_{(s)} + CO_{2(g)} \tag{6.7.19}$$

Solution

Begin by converting the mass of calcium carbonate to moles.

$$\frac{0.150\ g}{100.1\ g/mol} = 0.0015\ mol \tag{6.7.20}$$

The stoichiometry of the reaction dictates that the number of moles $CaCO_3$ decomposed equals the number of moles CO_2 produced. Use the ideal-gas equation to convert moles of CO_2 to a volume.

$$V = \frac{nRT}{R} = \frac{(0.0015\ mol)\left(0.08206\ \frac{L \cdot atm}{mol \cdot K}\right)(273.15\ K)}{1\ atm} = 0.0336\ L\ or\ 33.6\ mL \tag{6.7.21}$$

Example 6.7.3

A 3.00 L container is filled with $Ne_{(g)}$ at 770 mmHg at 27°C. A $0.633\ \text{g}$ sample of CO_2 vapor is then added. What is the partial pressure of CO_2 and Ne in atm? What is the total pressure in the container in atm?

Solution

Step 1: Write down all given information, and convert as necessary.

Before:

- P = 770mmHg --> 1.01 atm
- V = 3.00L
- n_{Ne}=?
- T = 27°C --> $300\ K$

Other Unknowns: n_{CO_2}= ?

$$n_{CO_2} = 0.633\ \text{g CO}_2 \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}}{44\ \text{g}} = 0.0144\ \text{mol CO}_2 \tag{6.7.22}$$

Step 2: After writing down all your given information, find the unknown moles of Ne.

$$n_{Ne} = \frac{PV}{RT} \tag{6.7.23}$$

$$n_{Ne} = \frac{(1.01\ \text{atm})(3.00\ \text{L})}{(0.08206\ atm\ L/mol\ K)(300\ \text{K})} \tag{6.7.24}$$

$$n_{Ne} = 0.123\ \text{mol} \tag{6.7.25}$$

Because the pressure of the container before the CO_2 was added contained only Ne, that is your partial pressure of Ne. After converting it to atm, you have already answered part of the question!

$$P_{Ne} = 1.01\ \text{atm} \tag{6.7.26}$$

Step 3: Now that have pressure for Ne, you must find the partial pressure for CO_2. Use the ideal gas equation.

$$\frac{P_{Ne}V}{n_{Ne}RT} = \frac{P_{CO_2}V}{n_{CO_2}RT} \tag{6.7.27}$$

but because both gases share the same Volume (V) and Temperature (T) and since the Gas Constant (R) is constants, all three terms cancel and can be removed them from the equation.

$$\frac{P}{n_{Ne}} = \frac{P}{n_{CO_2}} \tag{6.7.28}$$

$$\frac{1.01\ \text{atm}}{0.123\ \text{mol Ne}} = \frac{P_{CO_2}}{0.0144\ \text{mol CO}_2} \tag{6.7.29}$$

$$P_{CO_2} = 0.118 \text{ atm} \tag{6.7.30}$$

This is the partial pressure CO_2.

Step 4: Now find total pressure.

$$P_{total} = P_{Ne} + P_{CO_2} \tag{6.7.31}$$

$$P_{total} = 1.01 \text{ atm} + 0.118 \text{ atm} \tag{6.7.32}$$

$$P_{total} = 1.128 \text{ atm} \approx 1.13 \text{ atm (with appropriate significant figures)} \tag{6.7.33}$$

Example 6.7.4

Sulfuric acid, the industrial chemical produced in greatest quantity (almost 45 million tons per year in the United States alone), is prepared by the combustion of sulfur in air to give SO_2, followed by the reaction of SO_2 with O_2 in the presence of a catalyst to give SO_3, which reacts with water to give H_2SO_4. The overall chemical equation is as follows:

$$2S_{(s)} + 3O_{2(g)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow 2H_2SO_{4(aq)} \tag{6.7.34}$$

What volume of O_2 (in liters) at 22°C and 745 mmHg pressure is required to produce 1.00 ton (907.18 kg) of H_2SO_4?

Given: reaction, temperature, pressure, and mass of one product

Asked for: volume of gaseous reactant

Strategy:

A Calculate the number of moles of H_2SO_4 in 1.00 ton. From the stoichiometric coefficients in the balanced chemical equation, calculate the number of moles of O_2 required.

B Use the ideal gas law to determine the volume of O_2 required under the given conditions. Be sure that all quantities are expressed in the appropriate units.

Solution:

mass of H_2SO_4 → moles H_2SO_4 → moles O_2 → liters O_2

A We begin by calculating the number of moles of H_2SO_4 in 1.00 ton:

$$\frac{907.18 \times 10^3 \text{ g } H_2SO_4}{(2 \times 1.008 + 32.06 + 4 \times 16.00) \text{ g/mol}} = 9250 \text{ mol } H_2SO_4 \tag{6.7.35}$$

We next calculate the number of moles of O_2 required:

$$9250 \text{ mol } H_2SO_4 \times \frac{3\text{mol } O_2}{2\text{mol } H_2SO_4} = 1.389 \times 10^4 \text{ mol } O_2 \tag{6.7.36}$$

B After converting all quantities to the appropriate units, we can use the ideal gas law to calculate the volume of O_2:

$$V = \frac{nRT}{P} = \frac{1.389 \times 10^4 \text{ mol} \times 0.08206 \frac{\text{L} \cdot \text{atm}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} \times (273 + 22) \text{ K}}{745 \text{ mmHg} \times \frac{1 \text{ atm}}{760 \text{ mmHg}}} = 3.43 \times 10^5 \text{ L} \tag{6.7.37}$$

The answer means that more than 300,000 L of oxygen gas are needed to produce 1 ton of sulfuric acid. These numbers may give you some appreciation for the magnitude of the engineering and plumbing problems faced in industrial chemistry.

Exercise 6.7.4

Charles used a balloon containing approximately 31,150 L of H_2 for his initial flight in 1783. The hydrogen gas was produced by the reaction of metallic iron with dilute hydrochloric acid according to the following balanced chemical equation:

$$Fe_{(s)} + 2HCl_{(aq)} \rightarrow H_{2(g)} + FeCl_{2(aq)} \tag{6.7.38}$$

How much iron (in kilograms) was needed to produce this volume of H_2 if the temperature was 30°C and the atmospheric pressure was 745 mmHg?

Answer: 68.6 kg of Fe (approximately 150 lb)

Example 6.7.5

Sodium azide (NaN_3) decomposes to form sodium metal and nitrogen gas according to the following balanced chemical equation:

$$2NaN_3 \rightarrow 2Na_{(s)} + 3N_{2\ (g)} \tag{6.7.39}$$

This reaction is used to inflate the air bags that cushion passengers during automobile collisions. The reaction is initiated in air bags by an electrical impulse and results in the rapid evolution of gas. If the N_2 gas that results from the decomposition of a 5.00 g sample of NaN_3 could be collected by displacing water from an inverted flask, as in Figure 6.7.4, what volume of gas would be produced at 21°C and 762 mmHg?

Given: reaction, mass of compound, temperature, and pressure

Asked for: volume of nitrogen gas produced

Strategy:

A Calculate the number of moles of N_2 gas produced. From the data in Table 6.7.4, determine the partial pressure of N_2 gas in the flask.

B Use the ideal gas law to find the volume of N_2 gas produced.

Solution:

A Because we know the mass of the reactant and the stoichiometry of the reaction, our first step is to calculate the number of moles of N_2 gas produced:

$$\frac{5.00\ \text{g NaN}_3}{(22.99 + 3 \times 14.01)\ \text{g/mol}} \times \frac{3\text{mol N}_2}{2\text{mol NaN}_3} = 0.115\ \text{mol N}_2 \tag{6.7.40}$$

The pressure given (762 mmHg) is the *total* pressure in the flask, which is the sum of the pressures due to the N_2 gas and the water vapor present. Table 6.7.4 tells us that the vapor pressure of water is 18.65 mmHg at 21°C (294 K), so the partial pressure of the N_2 gas in the flask is only

$$(762 - 18.65)\ \text{mmHg} \times \frac{1\ \text{atm}}{760\ \text{atm}} = 743.4\ \text{mmHg} \times \frac{1\ \text{atm}}{760\ \text{atm}} = 0.978\ \text{atm}. \tag{6.7.41}$$

B Solving the ideal gas law for *V* and substituting the other quantities (in the appropriate units), we get

$$V = \frac{nRT}{P} = \frac{0.115\ \text{mol} \times 0.08206 \frac{\text{atm} \cdot \text{L}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} \times 294\ \text{K}}{0.978\ \text{atm}} = 2.84\ \text{L} \tag{6.7.42}$$

Exercise 6.7.5

A 1.00 g sample of zinc metal is added to a solution of dilute hydrochloric acid. It dissolves to produce H_2 gas according to the equation $Zn(s) + 2\ HCl(aq) \rightarrow H_2(g) + ZnCl_2(aq)$. The resulting H_2 gas is collected in a water-filled bottle at 30°C and an atmospheric pressure of 760 mmHg. What volume does it occupy?

Answer: 0.397 L

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Ideal Gas law Equation and Reaction Stoichiometry: https://youtu.be/8pPlW8MRhgI

Summary

The relationship between the amounts of products and reactants in a chemical reaction can be expressed in units of moles or masses of pure substances, of volumes of solutions, or of volumes of gaseous substances. The ideal gas law can be used to calculate the volume of gaseous products or reactants as needed. In the laboratory, gases produced in a reaction are often collected by the displacement of water from filled vessels; the amount of gas can then be calculated from the volume of water displaced and the atmospheric pressure. A gas collected in such a way is not pure, however, but contains a significant amount of water vapor. The measured pressure must therefore be corrected for the vapor pressure of water, which depends strongly on the temperature.

This page titled 6.7: Applications of the Ideal Gas Equation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 6.4: Applications of the Ideal Gas Equation is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

6.8: Gases in Chemical Reactions

Learning Objectives

- To relate the amount of gas consumed or released in a chemical reaction to the stoichiometry of the reaction.
- To understand how the ideal gas equation and the stoichiometry of a reaction can be used to calculate the volume of gas produced or consumed in a reaction.

Introduction

With the ideal gas law, we can use the relationship between the amounts of gases (in moles) and their volumes (in liters) to calculate the stoichiometry of reactions involving gases, if the pressure and temperature are known. This is important for several reasons. Many reactions that are carried out in the laboratory involve the formation or reaction of a gas, so chemists must be able to quantitatively treat gaseous products and reactants as readily as they quantitatively treat solids or solutions. Furthermore, many, if not most, industrially important reactions are carried out in the gas phase for practical reasons. Gases mix readily, are easily heated or cooled, and can be transferred from one place to another in a manufacturing facility via simple pumps and plumbing. As a chemical engineer said to one of the authors, "Gases always go where you want them to, liquids sometimes do, but solids almost never do."

Example 6.8.1

Sulfuric acid, the industrial chemical produced in greatest quantity (almost 45 million tons per year in the United States alone), is prepared by the combustion of sulfur in air to give SO_2, followed by the reaction of SO_2 with O_2 in the presence of a catalyst to give SO_3, which reacts with water to give H_2SO_4. The overall chemical equation is as follows:

$$2S_{(s)} + 3O_{2(g)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow 2H_2SO_{4(aq)} \tag{6.8.1}$$

What volume of O_2 (in liters) at 22°C and 745 mmHg pressure is required to produce 1.00 ton (907.18 kg) of H_2SO_4?

Given: reaction, temperature, pressure, and mass of one product

Asked for: volume of gaseous reactant

Strategy:

A Calculate the number of moles of H_2SO_4 in 1.00 ton. From the stoichiometric coefficients in the balanced chemical equation, calculate the number of moles of O_2 required.

B Use the ideal gas law to determine the volume of O_2 required under the given conditions. Be sure that all quantities are expressed in the appropriate units.

Solution:

mass of H_2SO_4 → moles H_2SO_4 → moles O_2 → liters O_2

A We begin by calculating the number of moles of H_2SO_4 in 1.00 ton:

$$\frac{907.18 \times 10^3 \text{ g } H_2SO_4}{(2 \times 1.008 + 32.06 + 4 \times 16.00) \text{ g/mol}} = 9250 \text{ mol } H_2SO_4 \tag{6.8.2}$$

We next calculate the number of moles of O_2 required:

$$9250 \text{ mol } H_2SO_4 \times \frac{3\text{mol } O_2}{2\text{mol } H_2SO_4} = 1.389 \times 10^4 \text{ mol } O_2 \tag{6.8.3}$$

B After converting all quantities to the appropriate units, we can use the ideal gas law to calculate the volume of O_2:

$$V = \frac{nRT}{P} = \frac{1.389 \times 10^4 \text{ mol} \times 0.08206 \frac{\text{L} \cdot \text{atm}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} \times (273 + 22) \text{ K}}{745 \text{ mmHg} \times \frac{1 \text{ atm}}{760 \text{ mmHg}}} = 3.43 \times 10^5 \text{ L} \tag{6.8.4}$$

The answer means that more than 300,000 L of oxygen gas are needed to produce 1 ton of sulfuric acid. These numbers may give you some appreciation for the magnitude of the engineering and plumbing problems faced in industrial chemistry.

Exercise 6.8.1

In Example 5, we saw that Charles used a balloon containing approximately 31,150 L of H_2 for his initial flight in 1783. The hydrogen gas was produced by the reaction of metallic iron with dilute hydrochloric acid according to the following balanced chemical equation:

$$Fe_{(s)} + 2HCl_{(aq)} \rightarrow H_{2(g)} + FeCl_{2(aq)} \tag{6.8.5}$$

How much iron (in kilograms) was needed to produce this volume of H_2 if the temperature was 30°C and the atmospheric pressure was 745 mmHg?

Answer: 68.6 kg of Fe (approximately 150 lb)

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Ideal Gas law Equation and Reaction Stoichiometry: https://youtu.be/8pPlW8MRhgI

Collecting gases over water

As shown in Figure 6.8.1, a common laboratory method of collecting the gaseous product of a chemical reaction is to conduct it into an inverted tube or bottle filled with water, the opening of which is immersed in a larger container of water. Because the gas is less dense than liquid water, it bubbles to the top of the bottle, displacing the water. Eventually, all the water is forced out and the bottle contains only gas. If a calibrated bottle is used (i.e., one with markings to indicate the volume of the gas) and the bottle is raised or lowered until the level of the water is the same both inside and outside, then the pressure within the bottle will exactly equal the atmospheric pressure measured separately with a barometer ($P_{\text{bar.}}$).

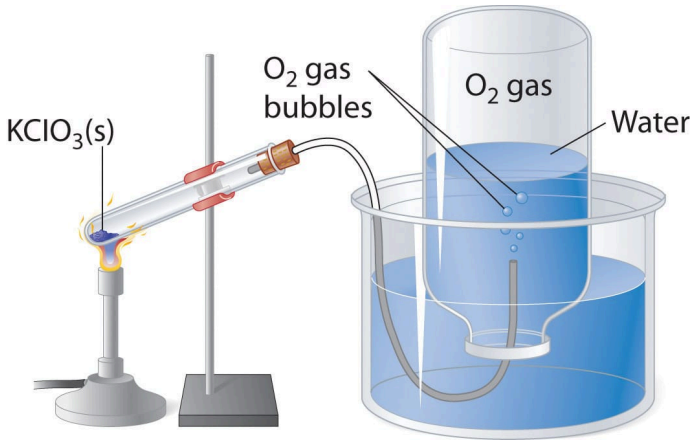


Figure 6.8.1: An Apparatus for Collecting Gases by the Displacement of Water

Remember, however, when calculating the amount of gas formed in the reaction, the gas collected inside the bottle is *not* pure. Instead, it is a mixture of the product gas and water vapor. All liquids (including water) have a measurable amount of vapor in equilibrium with the liquid because molecules of the liquid are continuously escaping from the liquid's surface, while other molecules from the vapor phase collide with the surface and return to the liquid. The vapor thus exerts a pressure above the liquid, which is called the liquid's ***vapor pressure***. In the case shown in Figure 6.8.1, the bottle is therefore actually filled with a mixture of O_2 and water vapor, and the total pressure is, by **Dalton's law** of partial pressures, the sum of the pressures of the two components:

$$P_{\text{tot}} = P_{\text{gas}} + P_{\text{H}_2\text{O}} = P_{\text{bar.}} \tag{6.8.6}$$

If we want to know the pressure of the gas generated in the reaction to calculate the amount of gas formed, we must first subtract the pressure due to water vapor from the total pressure. This is done by referring to tabulated values of the vapor pressure of water as a function of temperature (Table 6.8.1).

Table 6.8.1: Vapor Pressure of Water at Various Temperatures

T (°C)	*P* (in mmHg)
0	4.58
15	12.79
17	14.53
19	16.48
21	18.65
23	21.07
25	23.76
30	31.82
50	92.51
70	233.8
100	760.0

As shown in Figure 6.8.2, the vapor pressure of water increases rapidly with increasing temperature, and at the normal boiling point (100°C), the vapor pressure is exactly 1 atm. The methodology is illustrated in Example 6.8.2. The only gases that cannot be collected using this technique are those that readily dissolve in water (e.g., NH_3, H_2S, and CO_2) and those that react rapidly with water (such as F_2 and NO_2).

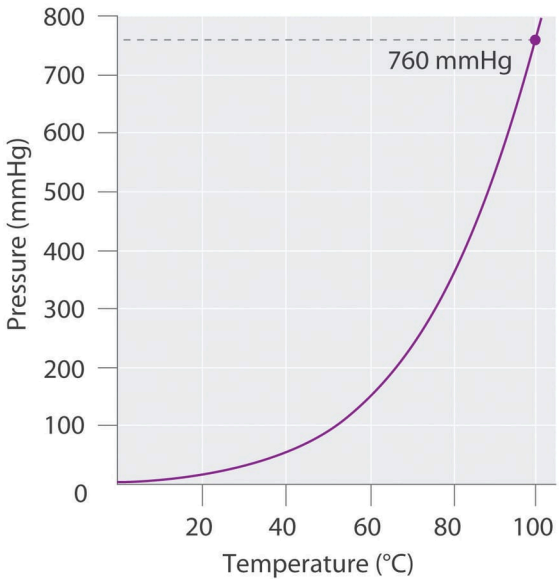


Figure 6.8.2***:*** *A Plot of the Vapor Pressure of Water versus Temperature. The vapor pressure is very low (but not zero) at 0°C and reaches 1 atm = 760 mmHg at the normal boiling point, 100°C.*

Example 6.8.2

Sodium azide (NaN_3) decomposes to form sodium metal and nitrogen gas according to the following balanced chemical equation:

$$2NaN_3 \rightarrow 2Na_{(s)} + 3N_{2\ (g)} \tag{6.8.7}$$

This reaction is used to inflate the air bags that cushion passengers during automobile collisions. The reaction is initiated in air bags by an electrical impulse and results in the rapid evolution of gas. If the N_2 gas that results from the decomposition of a 5.00 g sample of NaN_3 could be collected by displacing water from an inverted flask, as in Figure 6.8.1, what volume of gas would be produced at 21°C and 762 mmHg?

Given: reaction, mass of compound, temperature, and pressure

Asked for: volume of nitrogen gas produced

Strategy:

A Calculate the number of moles of N_2 gas produced. From the data in Table 6.8.1, determine the partial pressure of N_2 gas in the flask.

B Use the ideal gas law to find the volume of N_2 gas produced.

Solution:

A Because we know the mass of the reactant and the stoichiometry of the reaction, our first step is to calculate the number of moles of N_2 gas produced:

$$\frac{5.00\ \text{g NaN}_3}{(22.99 + 3 \times 14.01)\ \text{g/mol}} \times \frac{3\text{mol N}_2}{2\text{mol NaN}_3} = 0.115\ \text{mol N}_2 \tag{6.8.8}$$

The pressure given (762 mmHg) is the *total* pressure in the flask, which is the sum of the pressures due to the N_2 gas and the water vapor present. Table 6.8.1 tells us that the vapor pressure of water is 18.65 mmHg at 21°C (294 K), so the partial pressure of the N_2 gas in the flask is only

$$(762 - 18.65)\ \text{mmHg} \times \frac{1\ \text{atm}}{760\ \text{atm}} = 743.4\ \text{mmHg} \times \frac{1\ \text{atm}}{760\ \text{atm}} = 0.978\ \text{atm}. \tag{6.8.9}$$

B Solving the ideal gas law for *V* and substituting the other quantities (in the appropriate units), we get

$$V = \frac{nRT}{P} = \frac{0.115\ \text{mol} \times 0.08206 \frac{\text{atm} \cdot \text{L}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} \times 294\ \text{K}}{0.978\ \text{atm}} = 2.84\ \text{L} \tag{6.8.10}$$

Exercise 6.8.2

A 1.00 g sample of zinc metal is added to a solution of dilute hydrochloric acid. It dissolves to produce H_2 gas according to the equation Zn(s) + 2 HCl(aq) → H_2(g) + $ZnCl_2$(aq). The resulting H_2 gas is collected in a water-filled bottle at 30°C and an atmospheric pressure of 760 mmHg. What volume does it occupy?

Answer: 0.397 L

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Collecting a Product Gas over Water: https://youtu.be/zFuy3t81vjQ

Summary

The relationship between the amounts of products and reactants in a chemical reaction can be expressed in units of moles or masses of pure substances, of volumes of solutions, or of volumes of gaseous substances. The ideal gas law can be used to calculate the volume of gaseous products or reactants as needed. In the laboratory, gases produced in a reaction are often collected by the displacement of water from filled vessels; the amount of gas can then be calculated from the volume of water displaced and the atmospheric pressure. A gas collected in such a way is not pure, however, but contains a significant amount of water vapor. The measured pressure must therefore be corrected for the vapor pressure of water, which depends strongly on the temperature.

Conceptual Problems

1. Why are so many industrially important reactions carried out in the gas phase?

2. The volume of gas produced during a chemical reaction can be measured by collecting the gas in an inverted container filled with water. The gas forces water out of the container, and the volume of liquid displaced is a measure of the volume of gas. What additional information must be considered to determine the number of moles of gas produced? The volume of some gases cannot be measured using this method. What property of a gas precludes the use of this method?

3. Equal masses of two solid compounds (A and B) are placed in separate sealed flasks filled with air at 1 atm and heated to 50°C for 10 hours. After cooling to room temperature, the pressure in the flask containing A was 1.5 atm. In contrast, the pressure in the flask containing B was 0.87 atm. Suggest an explanation for these observations. Would the masses of samples A and B still be equal after the experiment? Why or why not?

Numerical Problems

1. Balance each chemical equation and then determine the volume of the indicated reactant at STP that is required for complete reaction. Assuming complete reaction, what is the volume of the products?
    1. $SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow SO_3(g)$ given 2.4 mol of O_2
    2. $H_2(g) + Cl_2(g) \rightarrow HCl(g)$ given 0.78 g of H_2
    3. $C_2H_6(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(g)$ given 1.91 mol of O_2

- During the smelting of iron, carbon reacts with oxygen to produce carbon monoxide, which then reacts with iron(III) oxide to produce iron metal and carbon dioxide. If 1.82 L of CO_2 at STP is produced,

    1. what mass of CO is consumed?
    2. what volume of CO at STP is consumed?
    3. how much O_2 (in liters) at STP is used?
    4. what mass of carbon is consumed?
    5. how much iron metal (in grams) is produced?

- Complete decomposition of a sample of potassium chlorate produced 1.34 g of potassium chloride and oxygen gas.

    1. What is the mass of $KClO_3$ in the original sample?
    2. What mass of oxygen is produced?
    3. What is the volume of oxygen produced at STP?

- The combustion of a 100.0 mg sample of an herbicide in excess oxygen produced 83.16 mL of CO_2 and 72.9 mL of H_2O vapor at STP. A separate analysis showed that the sample contained 16.44 mg of chlorine. If the sample is known to contain only C, H, Cl, and N, determine the percent composition and the empirical formula of the herbicide.

- The combustion of a 300.0 mg sample of an antidepressant in excess oxygen produced 326 mL of CO_2 and 164 mL of H_2O vapor at STP. A separate analysis showed that the sample contained 23.28% oxygen. If the sample is known to contain only C, H, O, and N, determine the percent composition and the empirical formula of the antidepressant.

Answers

1.
2.

3.
    1. 2.20 g $KClO_3$
    2. 0.863 g O_2
    3. 604 mL O_2
4.

5. Percent composition: 58.3% C, 4.93% H, 23.28% O, and 13.5% N; empirical formula: $C_{10}H_{10}O_3N_2$

This page titled 6.8: Gases in Chemical Reactions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 6.5: Gases in Chemical Reactions is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

7: ENERGY AND CHEMISTRY

Petrucci: *General Chemistry*
Principles and Modern Applications

Template:HideTOC

- Topic hierarchy

7.1: Getting Started: Some Terminology
7.2: Heat
7.3: Heats of Reactions and Calorimetry
7.4: Work
7.5: The First Law of Thermodynamics
7.6: Heats of Reactions - ΔU and ΔH
7.7: Indirect Determination of ΔH - Hess's Law
7.8: Standard Enthalpies of Formation
7.9: Fuels as Sources of Energy

This page titled 7: Energy and Chemistry is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

7.1: Getting Started: Some Terminology

Learning Objectives

- To understand the concept of energy and its various forms.
- To know the relationship between energy, work, and heat.

Because energy takes many forms, only some of which can be seen or felt, it is defined by its effect on matter. For example, microwave ovens produce energy to cook food, but we cannot see that energy. In contrast, we can see the energy produced by a light bulb when we switch on a lamp. In this section, we describe the forms of energy and discuss the relationship between energy, heat, and work.

Forms of Energy

The forms of energy include thermal energy, radiant energy, electrical energy, nuclear energy, and chemical energy (Figure 7.1.1). Thermal energy results from atomic and molecular motion; the faster the motion, the greater the thermal energy. The temperature of an object is a measure of its thermal energy content. Radiant energy is the energy carried by light, microwaves, and radio waves. Objects left in bright sunshine or exposed to microwaves become warm because much of the radiant energy they absorb is converted to thermal energy. Electrical energy results from the flow of electrically charged particles. When the ground and a cloud develop a separation of charge, for example, the resulting flow of electrons from one to the other produces lightning, a natural form of electrical energy. Nuclear energy is stored in the nucleus of an atom, and chemical energy is stored within a chemical compound because of a particular arrangement of atoms.

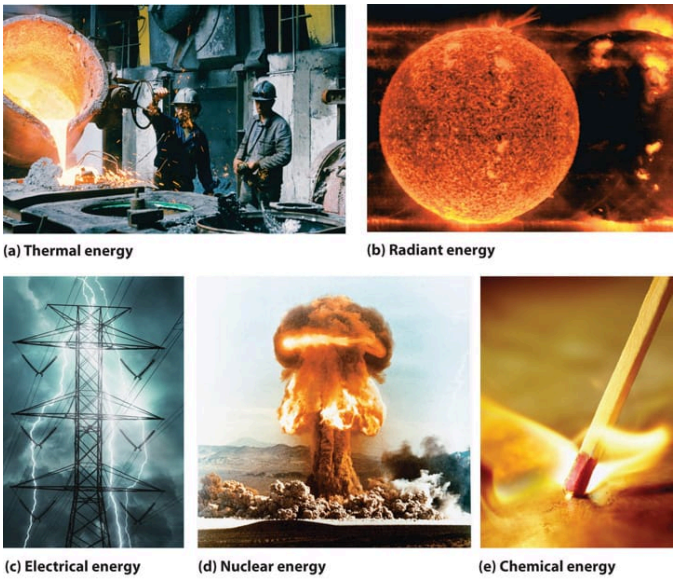


Figure 7.1.1: Forms of Energy. (a) *Thermal energy* results from atomic and molecular motion; molten steel at 2000°C has a very high thermal energy content. (b) *Radiant energy* (e.g., from the sun) is the energy in light, microwaves, and radio waves. (c) Lightning is an example of *electrical energy*, which is due to the flow of electrically charged particles. (d) *Nuclear energy* is released when particles in the nucleus of the atom are rearranged. (e) *Chemical energy* results from the particular arrangement of atoms in a chemical compound; the heat and light produced in this reaction are due to energy released during the breaking and reforming of chemical bonds.

Electrical energy, nuclear energy, and chemical energy are different forms of potential energy (PE), which is energy stored in an object because of the relative positions or orientations of its components. A brick lying on the windowsill of a 10th-floor office has a great deal of potential energy, but until its position changes by falling, the energy is contained. In contrast, kinetic energy (KE) is energy due to the motion of an object. When the brick falls, its potential energy is transformed to kinetic energy, which is then transferred to the object on the ground that it strikes. The electrostatic attraction between oppositely charged particles is a form of potential energy, which is converted to kinetic energy when the charged particles move toward each other.

Energy can be converted from one form to another (Figure 7.1.2) or, as we saw with the brick, transferred from one object to another. For example, when you climb a ladder to a high diving board, your body uses chemical energy produced by the combustion of organic molecules. As you climb, the chemical energy is converted to *mechanical work* to overcome the force of gravity. When you stand on the end of the diving board, your potential energy is greater than it was before you climbed the ladder: the greater the distance from the water, the greater the potential energy. When you then dive into the water, your potential energy is converted to kinetic energy as you fall, and when you hit the surface, some of that energy is transferred to the water, causing it to splash into the air. Chemical energy can also be converted to radiant energy; one common example is the light emitted by fireflies, which is produced from a chemical reaction.

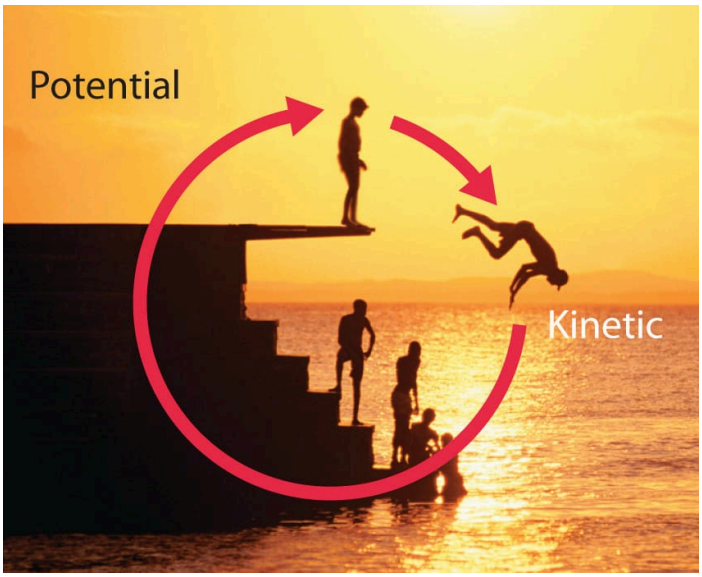


Figure 7.1.2: Interconversion of Forms of Energy. When a swimmer steps off the platform to dive into the water, potential energy is converted to kinetic energy. As the swimmer climbs back up to the top of the diving platform, chemical energy is converted to mechanical work.

Although energy can be converted from one form to another, *the total amount of energy in the universe remains constant*. This is known as the **law of conservation of energy**: *Energy cannot be created or destroyed.*

Kinetic and Potential Energy

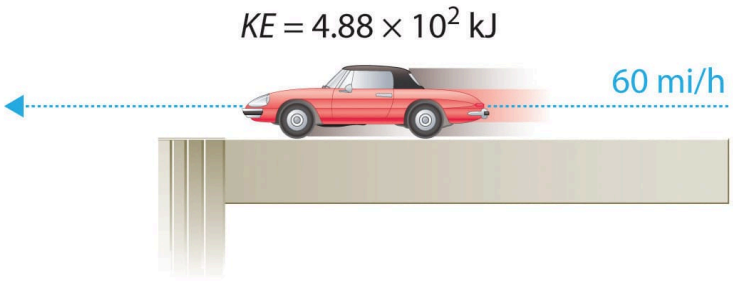
The kinetic energy of an object is related to its mass m and velocity v:

$$KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 \tag{7.1.4}$$

For example, the kinetic energy of a 1360 kg (approximately 3000 lb) automobile traveling at a velocity of 26.8 m/s (approximately 60 mi/h) is

$$KE = \frac{1}{2}(1360kg)(26.8ms)^2 = 4.88 \times 10^5 g \cdot m^2 \tag{7.1.5}$$

Because all forms of energy can be interconverted, energy in any form can be expressed using the same units as kinetic energy. The SI unit of energy, the joule (J), is named after the British physicist James Joule (1818–1889), an early worker in the field of energy. is defined as 1 kilogram·meter^2/second^2 (kg·m^2/s^2). Because a joule is such a small quantity of energy, chemists usually express energy in kilojoules (1 kJ = 10^3 J). For example, the kinetic energy of the 1360 kg car traveling at 26.8 m/s is 4.88 × 10^5 J or 4.88 × 10^2 kJ. It is important to remember that *the units of energy are the same regardless of the form of energy*, whether thermal, radiant, chemical, or any other form. Because heat and work result in changes in energy, their units must also be the same.



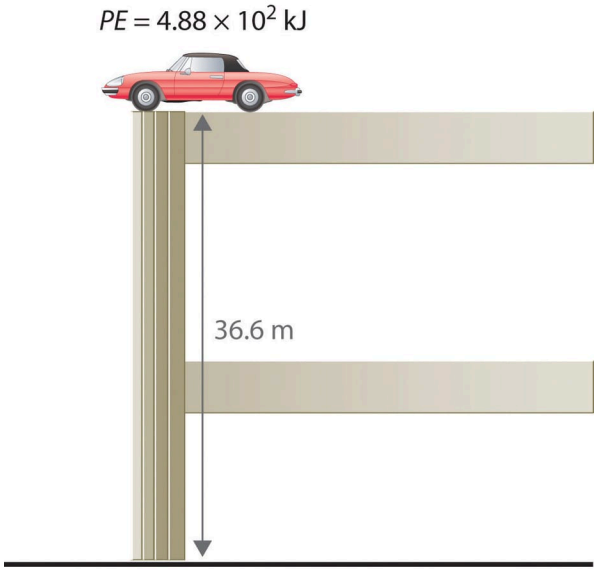
To demonstrate, let's calculate the potential energy of the same 1360 kg automobile if it were parked on the top level of a parking garage 36.6 m (120 ft) high. Its potential energy is equivalent to the amount of work required to raise the vehicle from street level to the top level of the parking garage, which is $w = Fd$. According to Equation 7.1.2, the force (F) exerted by gravity on any object is equal to its mass (m, in this case, 1360 kg) times the acceleration (a) due to gravity (g, 9.81 m/s^2 at Earth's surface). The distance (d) is the height (h) above street level (in this case, 36.6 m). Thus the potential energy of the car is as follows:

$$PE = F\ d = m\ a\ d = m\ g\ h \tag{7.1.6a}$$

$$PE = (1360, Kg)\left(\frac{9.81\ m}{s^2}\right)(36.6\ m) = 4.88 \times 10^5\ \frac{Kg \cdot m}{s^2} \tag{7.1.6b}$$

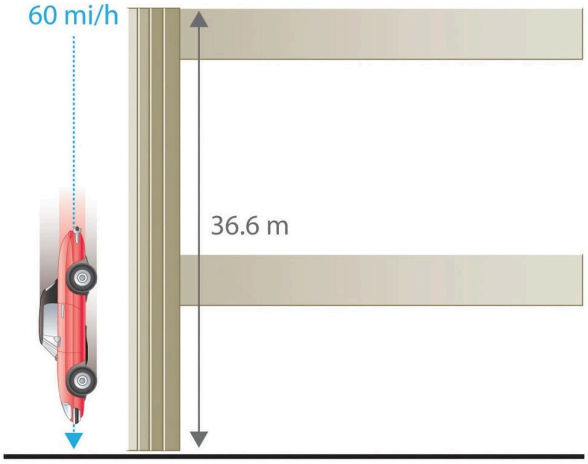
$$= 4.88 \times 10^5 J = 488\ kJ \tag{7.1.6c}$$

The units of potential energy are the same as the units of kinetic energy. Notice that in this case the potential energy of the stationary automobile at the top of a 36.6 m high parking garage is the same as its kinetic energy at 60 mi/h.

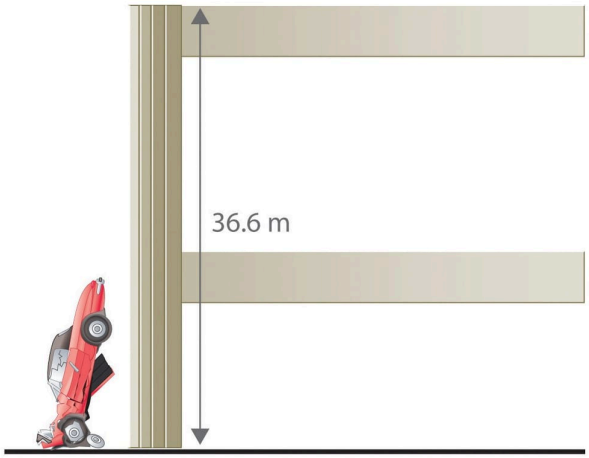


If the vehicle fell from the roof of the parking garage, its potential energy would be converted to kinetic energy, and it is reasonable to infer that the vehicle would be traveling at 60 mi/h just before it hit the ground, neglecting air resistance. After the car hit the ground, its potential and kinetic energy would both be zero.

Potential energy is usually defined relative to an arbitrary standard position (in this case, the street was assigned an elevation of zero). As a result, we usually calculate only differences in potential energy: in this case, the difference between the potential energy of the car on the top level of the parking garage and the potential energy of the same car on the street at the base of the garage.



$KE = 4.88 \times 10^2$ kJ



$PE = 0$ kJ, $KE = 0$

Units of Energy

The units of energy are the same for all forms of energy. Energy can also be expressed in the non-SI units of calories (cal), where 1 cal was originally defined as the amount of energy needed to raise the temperature of exactly 1 g of water from 14.5°C to 15.5°C.We specify the exact temperatures because the amount of energy needed to raise the temperature of 1 g of water 1°C varies slightly with elevation. To three significant figures, however, this amount is 1.00 cal over the temperature range 0°C–100°C. The name is derived from the Latin *calor*, meaning "heat." Although energy may be expressed as either calories or joules, calories were defined in terms of heat, whereas joules were defined in terms of motion. Because calories and joules are both units of energy, however, the calorie is now defined in terms of the joule:

$$1\ cal = 4.184\ J \text{ exactly} \tag{7.1.7a}$$

$$1\ J = 0.2390\ cal \tag{7.1.7b}$$

In this text, we will use the SI units—joules (J) and kilojoules (kJ)—exclusively, except when we deal with nutritional information.

Example 7.1.1

a. If the mass of a baseball is 149 g, what is the kinetic energy of a fastball clocked at 100 mi/h?
b. A batter hits a pop fly, and the baseball (with a mass of 149 g) reaches an altitude of 250 ft. If we assume that the ball was 3 ft above home plate when hit by the batter, what is the increase in its potential energy?

Given: mass and velocity or height

Asked for: kinetic and potential energy

Strategy:

Use Equation 7.1.4 to calculate the kinetic energy and Equation 7.1.6 to calculate the potential energy, as appropriate.

Solution:

a. The kinetic energy of an object is given by $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ In this case, we know both the mass and the velocity, but we must convert the velocity to SI units:

$$v = \left(\frac{100\ \cancel{mi}}{1\ \cancel{h}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{h}}{60\ \cancel{min}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{min}}{60\ s}\right)\left(\frac{1.61\ \cancel{km}}{1\ \cancel{mi}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ m}{1\ \cancel{km}}\right) = 44.7\ m/s \tag{7.1.1}$$

The kinetic energy of the baseball is therefore

$$KE = 1492 \cancel{g}\left(\frac{1\ kg}{1000\ \cancel{g}}\right)\left(\frac{44.7\ m}{s}\right)^2 = 1.49 \times 10^2\ \frac{kg \cdot m^2}{s^2} = 1.49 \times 10^2\ J \tag{7.1.2}$$

b. The increase in potential energy is the same as the amount of work required to raise the ball to its new altitude, which is (250 – 3) = 247 feet above its initial position. Thus

$$PE = 149\ \cancel{g}\left(\frac{1\ kg}{1000\ \cancel{g}}\right)\left(\frac{9.81\ m}{s^2}\right)(247\ \cancel{ft})\left(\frac{0.3048\ m}{1\ \cancel{ft}}\right) = 1.10 \times 10^2\ \frac{kg \cdot m^2}{s^2} = 1.10 \times 10^2\ J \tag{7.1.3}$$

Exercise

a. In a bowling alley, the distance from the foul line to the head pin is 59 ft, 10 13/16 in. (18.26 m). If a 16 lb (7.3 kg) bowling ball takes 2.0 s to reach the head pin, what is its kinetic energy at impact? (Assume its speed is constant.)
b. What is the potential energy of a 16 lb bowling ball held 3.0 ft above your foot?

Answer

a. 3.10×10^2 J
b. 65 J

Summary

- All forms of energy can be interconverted. Three things can change the energy of an object: the transfer of heat, work performed on or by an object, or some combination of heat and work.

Thermochemistry is a branch of chemistry that qualitatively and quantitatively describes the energy changes that occur during chemical reactions. **Energy** is the capacity to do work. **Mechanical work** is the amount of energy required to move an object a given distance when opposed by a force. **Thermal energy** is due to the random motions of atoms, molecules, or ions in a substance. The **temperature** of an object is a measure of the amount of thermal energy it contains. **Heat (*q*)** is the transfer of thermal energy from a hotter object to a cooler one. Energy can take many forms; most are different varieties of **potential energy (*PE*)**, energy caused by the relative position or orientation of an object. **Kinetic energy (*KE*)** is the energy an object possesses due to its motion. Energy can be converted from one form to another, but the **law of conservation of energy** states that energy can be neither created nor destroyed. The most common units of energy are the **joule (J)**, defined as 1 $(kg{\cdot}m^2)/s^2$, and the **calorie**, defined as the amount of energy needed to raise the temperature of 1 g of water by 1°C (1 cal = 4.184 J).

This page titled 7.1: Getting Started: Some Terminology is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 7.1: Getting Started: Some Terminology is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

7.2: Heat

Learning Objectives

- Distinguish the related properties of heat, thermal energy, and temperature
- Define and distinguish specific heat and heat capacity, and describe the physical implications of both
- Perform calculations involving heat, specific heat, and temperature change

Thermal energy is kinetic energy associated with the random motion of atoms and molecules. Temperature is a quantitative measure of “hot” or “cold.” When the atoms and molecules in an object are moving or vibrating quickly, they have a higher average kinetic energy (KE), and we say that the object is “hot.” When the atoms and molecules are moving slowly, they have lower KE, and we say that the object is “cold” (Figure 7.2.1). Assuming that no chemical reaction or phase change (such as melting or vaporizing) occurs, increasing the amount of thermal energy in a sample of matter will cause its temperature to increase. And, assuming that no chemical reaction or phase change (such as condensation or freezing) occurs, decreasing the amount of thermal energy in a sample of matter will cause its temperature to decrease.

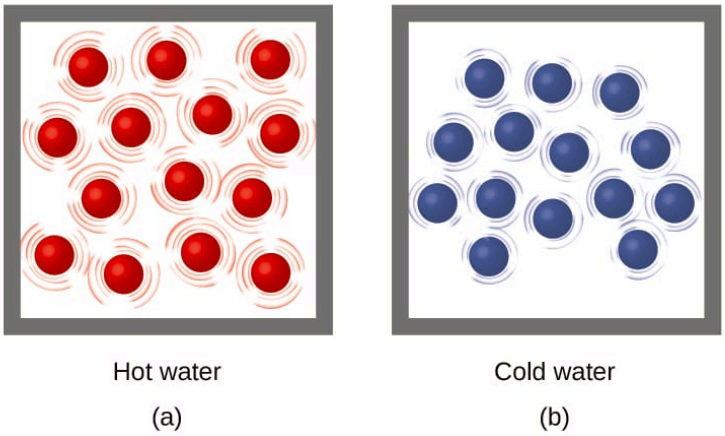
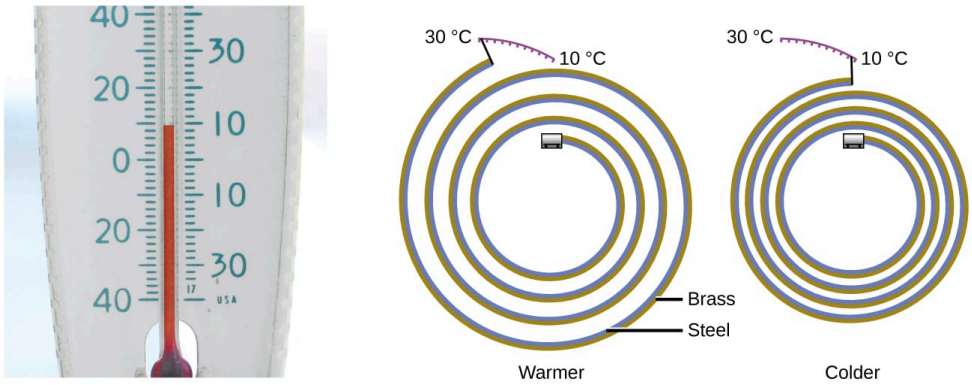


Figure 7.2.1: (a) The molecules in a sample of hot water move more rapidly than (b) those in a sample of cold water.

Most substances expand as their temperature increases and contract as their temperature decreases. This property can be used to measure temperature changes, as shown in Figure 7.2.2. The operation of many thermometers depends on the expansion and contraction of substances in response to temperature changes.



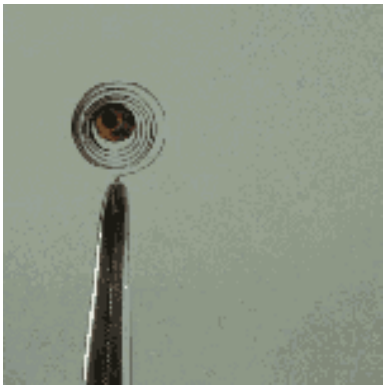


Figure 7.2.2: (a) In an alcohol or mercury thermometer, the liquid (dyed red for visibility) expands when heated and contracts when cooled, much more so than the glass tube that contains the liquid. (b) In a bimetallic thermometer, two different metals (such as brass and steel) form a two-layered strip. When heated or cooled, one of the metals (brass) expands or contracts more than the other metal (steel), causing the strip to coil or uncoil. Both types of thermometers have a calibrated scale that indicates the temperature. (credit a: modification of work by "dwstucke"/Flickr). (c) The demonstration allows one to view the effects of heating and cooling a coiled bimetallic strip.A bimetallic coil from a thermometer reacts to the heat from a lighter, by uncoiling and then coiling back up when the lighter is removed. Animation used with permission from Hustvedt (via Wikipedia)

Heat (q) is the transfer of thermal energy between two bodies at different temperatures. Heat flow (a redundant term, but one commonly used) increases the thermal energy of one body and decreases the thermal energy of the other. Suppose we initially have a high temperature (and high thermal energy) substance (H) and a low temperature (and low thermal energy) substance (L). The atoms and molecules in H have a higher average KE than those in L. If we place substance H in contact with substance L, the thermal energy will flow spontaneously from substance H to substance L. The temperature of substance H will decrease, as will the average KE of its molecules; the temperature of substance L will increase, along with the average KE of its molecules. Heat flow will continue until the two substances are at the same temperature (Figure 7.2.3).

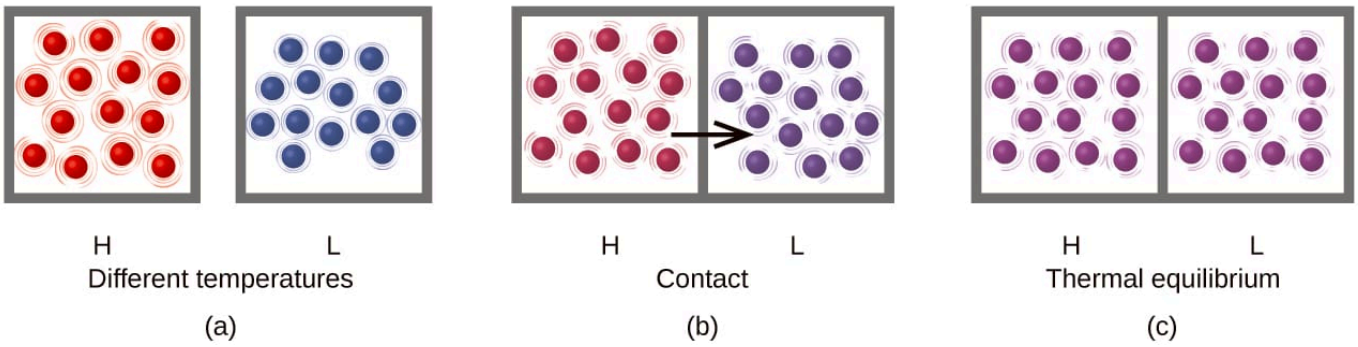


Figure 7.2.3: (a) Substances H and L are initially at different temperatures, and their atoms have different average kinetic energies. (b) When they are put into contact with each other, collisions between the molecules result in the transfer of kinetic (thermal) energy from the hotter to the cooler matter. (c) The two objects reach "thermal equilibrium" when both substances are at the same temperature, and their molecules have the same average kinetic energy.

Matter undergoing chemical reactions and physical changes can release or absorb heat. A change that releases heat is called

an exothermic process. For example, the combustion reaction that occurs when using an oxyacetylene torch is an exothermic process—this process also releases energy in the form of light as evidenced by the torch's flame (Figure 7.2.4a). A reaction or change that absorbs heat is an endothermic process. A cold pack used to treat muscle strains provides an example of an endothermic process. When the substances in the cold pack (water and a salt like ammonium nitrate) are brought together, the resulting process absorbs heat, leading to the sensation of cold.



Figure 7.2.4: (a) An oxyacetylene torch produces heat by the combustion of acetylene in oxygen. The energy released by this exothermic reaction heats and then melts the metal being cut. The sparks are tiny bits of the molten metal flying away. (b) A cold pack uses an endothermic process to create the sensation of cold. (credit a: modification of work by "Skatebiker"/Wikimedia commons).

Historically, energy was measured in units of calories (cal). A calorie is the amount of energy required to raise one gram of water by 1 degree C (1 kelvin). However, this quantity depends on the atmospheric pressure and the starting temperature of the water. The ease of measurement of energy changes in calories has meant that the calorie is still frequently used. The Calorie (with a capital C), or large calorie, commonly used in quantifying food energy content, is a kilocalorie. The SI unit of heat, work, and energy is the joule. A joule (J) is defined as the amount of energy used when a force of 1 newton moves an object 1 meter. It is named in honor of the English physicist James Prescott Joule. One joule is equivalent to 1 kg m^2/s^2, which is also called 1 newton–meter. A kilojoule (kJ) is 1000 joules. To standardize its definition, 1 calorie has been set to equal 4.184 joules.

Heat Capacity

We now introduce two concepts useful in describing heat flow and temperature change. The heat capacity (*C*) of a body of matter is the quantity of heat (*q*) it absorbs or releases when it experiences a temperature change (ΔT) of 1 degree Celsius (or equivalently, 1 kelvin)

$$C = \frac{q}{\Delta T} \tag{7.2.1}$$

Heat capacity is determined by both the type and amount of substance that absorbs or releases heat. It is therefore an *extensive* property—its value is proportional to the amount of the substance.

For example, consider the heat capacities of two cast iron frying pans. The heat capacity of the large pan is five times greater than that of the small pan because, although both are made of the same material, the mass of the large pan is five times greater than the mass of the small pan. More mass means more atoms are present in the larger pan, so it takes more energy to make all of those atoms vibrate faster. The heat capacity of the small cast iron frying pan is found by observing that it takes 18,150 J of energy to raise the temperature of the pan by 50.0 °C

$$C_{\text{small pan}} = \frac{18,140J}{50.0\ ^\circ C} = 363\ J/^\circ C \tag{7.2.2}$$

The larger cast iron frying pan, while made of the same substance, requires 90,700 J of energy to raise its temperature by 50.0 °C. The larger pan has a (proportionally) larger heat capacity because the larger amount of material requires a (proportionally) larger amount of energy to yield the same temperature change:

$$C_{\text{large pan}} = \frac{90,700\ J}{50.0\ °C} = 1814\ J/°C \tag{7.2.3}$$

The specific heat capacity (c) of a substance, commonly called its "specific heat," is the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 gram of a substance by 1 degree Celsius (or 1 kelvin):

$$c = \frac{q}{m\Delta T} \tag{7.2.4}$$

Specific heat capacity depends only on the kind of substance absorbing or releasing heat. It is an intensive property—the type, but not the amount, of the substance is all that matters. For example, the small cast iron frying pan has a mass of 808 g. The specific heat of iron (the material used to make the pan) is therefore:

$$c_{iron} = \frac{18,140\ J}{(808\ g)(50.0\ °C)} = 0.449\ J/g\ °C \tag{7.2.5}$$

The large frying pan has a mass of 4040 g. Using the data for this pan, we can also calculate the specific heat of iron:

$$c_{iron} = \frac{90,700 J}{(4,040\ g)(50.0\ °C)} = 0.449\ J/g\ °C \tag{7.2.6}$$

Although the large pan is more massive than the small pan, since both are made of the same material, they both yield the same value for specific heat (for the material of construction, iron). Note that specific heat is measured in units of energy per temperature per mass and is an intensive property, being derived from a ratio of two extensive properties (heat and mass). The molar heat capacity, also an intensive property, is the heat capacity per mole of a particular substance and has units of J/mol °C (Figure 7.2.5).



Figure 7.2.5: Due to its larger mass, a large frying pan has a larger heat capacity than a small frying pan. Because they are made of the same material, both frying pans have the same specific heat. (credit: Mark Blaser).

The heat capacity of an object depends on both its *mass* and its *composition*. For example, doubling the mass of an object doubles its heat capacity. Consequently, the amount of substance must be indicated when the heat capacity of the substance is reported. The molar heat capacity (C_p) is the amount of energy needed to increase the temperature of 1 mol of a substance by 1°C; the units of C_p are thus J/(mol•°C).The subscript *p* indicates that the value was measured at constant pressure. The specific heat (C_s) is the amount of energy needed to increase the temperature of 1 g of a substance by 1°C; its units are thus J/(g•°C).

We can relate the quantity of a substance, the amount of heat transferred, its heat capacity, and the temperature change either via moles (Equation 7.3.2) or mass (Equation 7.3.3):

$$q = nC_p\Delta T \tag{7.2.7}$$

where

- n is the number of moles of substance and

- C_p is the molar heat capacity (i.e., heat capacity per **mole** of substance)

$$q = mC_s\Delta T \tag{7.2.8}$$

where

The specific heats of some common substances are given in Table 7.2.1. Note that the specific heat values of most solids are less than 1 J/(g•°C), whereas those of most liquids are about 2 J/(g•°C). Water in its solid and liquid states is an exception. The heat capacity of ice is twice as high as that of most solids; the heat capacity of liquid water, 4.184 J/(g•°C), is one of the highest known.

Liquid water has a relatively high specific heat (about 4.2 J/g °C); most metals have much lower specific heats (usually less than 1 J/g °C). The specific heat of a substance varies somewhat with temperature. However, this variation is usually small enough that we will treat specific heat as constant over the range of temperatures that will be considered in this chapter. Specific heats of some common substances are listed in Table 7.2.1.

Table 7.2.1: Specific Heats of Common Substances at 25 °C and 1 bar

Substance	Symbol (state)	Specific Heat (J/g °C)
helium	He(*g*)	5.193
water	$H_2O(l)$	4.184
ethanol	$C_2H_6O(l)$	2.376
ice	H_2O(s)	2.093 (at –10 °C)
water vapor	$H_2O(g)$	1.864
nitrogen	$N_2(g)$	1.040
air	mixture	1.007
oxygen	$O_2(g)$	0.918
aluminum	Al(s)	0.897
carbon dioxide	$CO_2(g)$	0.853
argon	Ar(*g*)	0.522
iron	Fe(s)	0.449
copper	Cu(s)	0.385
lead	Pb(s)	0.130
gold	Au(s)	0.129
silicon	Si(s)	0.712

The value of *C* is intrinsically a positive number, but Δ*T* and *q* can be either positive or negative, and they both must have the *same* sign. If Δ*T* and *q* are positive, then *heat flows from the surroundings into an object*. If Δ*T* and *q* are negative, then *heat flows from an object into its surroundings*.

If we know the mass of a substance and its specific heat, we can determine the amount of heat, *q*, entering or leaving the substance by measuring the temperature change before and after the heat is gained or lost:

$$q = (\text{specific heat}) \times (\text{mass of substance}) \times (\text{temperature change}) \tag{7.2.9}$$

$$q = c \times m \times \Delta T = c \times m \times (T_{\text{final}} - T_{\text{initial}}) \tag{7.2.10}$$

In this equation, c is the specific heat of the substance, *m* is its mass, and Δ*T* (which is read “delta T”) is the temperature change, T_{final} – $T_{initial}$. If a substance gains thermal energy, its temperature increases, its final temperature is higher than its initial temperature, T_{final} – $T_{initial}$ has a positive value, and the value of *q* is positive. If a substance loses thermal energy, its temperature decreases, the final temperature is lower than the initial temperature, T_{final} – $T_{initial}$ has a negative value, and the

value of q is negative.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Movement of Heat in a Substance: https://youtu.be/gaJQYke-lVY

Example 7.2.1: Measuring Heat

A flask containing 8.0×10^2 g of water is heated, and the temperature of the water increases from 21 °C to 85 °C. How much heat did the water absorb?

Solution

To answer this question, consider these factors:

- the specific heat of the substance being heated (in this case, water)
- the amount of substance being heated (in this case, 800 g)
- the magnitude of the temperature change (in this case, from 21 °C to 85 °C).

The specific heat of water is 4.184 J/g °C, so to heat 1 g of water by 1 °C requires 4.184 J. We note that since 4.184 J is required to heat 1 g of water by 1 °C, we will need 800 times as much to heat 800 g of water by 1 °C. Finally, we observe that since 4.184 J are required to heat 1 g of water by 1 °C, we will need 64 times as much to heat it by 64 °C (that is, from 21 °C to 85 °C).

This can be summarized using the equation:

$$q = c \times m \times \Delta T = c \times m \times (T_{\text{final}} - T_{\text{initial}}) \tag{7.2.11}$$

$$= (4.184\ \text{J}/\cancel{g}^\circ\text{C}) \times (800\ \cancel{g}) \times (85 - 20)^\circ\text{C} \tag{7.2.12}$$

$$= (4.184\ \text{J}/\cancel{g}^\circ\cancel{\text{C}}) \times (800\ \cancel{g}) \times (65)^\circ\cancel{\text{C}} \tag{7.2.13}$$

$$= 210,000\ \text{J} (= 210\ \text{kJ}) \tag{7.2.14}$$

Because the temperature increased, the water absorbed heat and q is positive.

Exercise 7.2.1

How much heat, in joules, must be added to a 5.00×10^2 g iron skillet to increase its temperature from 25 °C to 250 °C? The specific heat of iron is 0.451 J/g °C.

Answer:

5.05×10^4 J

Note that the relationship between heat, specific heat, mass, and temperature change can be used to determine any of these quantities (not just heat) if the other three are known or can be deduced.

Example 7.2.2: Determining Other Quantities

A piece of unknown metal weighs 348 g. When the metal piece absorbs 6.64 kJ of heat, its temperature increases from 22.4 °C to 43.6 °C. Determine the specific heat of this metal (which might provide a clue to its identity).

Solution

Since mass, heat, and temperature change are known for this metal, we can determine its specific heat using the relationship:

$$q = c \times m \times \Delta T = c \times m \times (T_{final} - T_{initial}) \tag{7.2.15}$$

Substituting the known values:

$$6,640\ J = c \times (348\ g) \times (43.6 - 22.4)\ °C \tag{7.2.16}$$

Solving:

$$c = \frac{6,640\ J}{(348\ g) \times (21.2°C)} = 0.900\ J/g\ °C \tag{7.2.17}$$

Comparing this value with the values in Table 7.2.1, this value matches the specific heat of aluminum, which suggests that the unknown metal may be aluminum.

Exercise 7.2.2

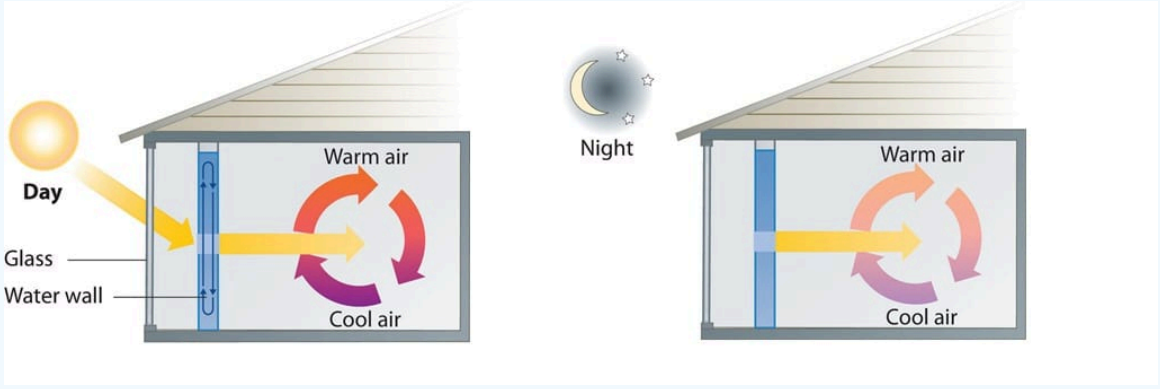
A piece of unknown metal weighs 217 g. When the metal piece absorbs 1.43 kJ of heat, its temperature increases from 24.5 °C to 39.1 °C. Determine the specific heat of this metal, and predict its identity.

Answer

$c = 0.45\ \ J/g\ \ °C$; the metal is likely to be iron from checking Tabel 7.2.1

Example 7.2.3: Solar Heating

A home solar energy storage unit uses 400 L of water for storing thermal energy. On a sunny day, the initial temperature of the water is 22.0°C. During the course of the day, the temperature of the water rises to 38.0°C as it circulates through the water wall. How much energy has been stored in the water? (The density of water at 22.0°C is 0.998 g/mL.)



Passive solar system. *During the day (a), sunlight is absorbed by water circulating in the water wall. At night (b), heat stored in the water wall continues to warm the air inside the house.*

Given: volume and density of water and initial and final temperatures

Asked for: amount of energy stored

Strategy:

A. Use the density of water at 22.0°C to obtain the mass of water (*m*) that corresponds to 400 L of water. Then compute ΔT for the water.
B. Determine the amount of heat absorbed by substituting values for *m*, C_s, and ΔT into Equation 7.3.1.

Solution:

A The mass of water is

$$mass\ of\ H_2O = 400\ \cancel{L}\left(\frac{1000\ \cancel{mL}}{1\ \cancel{L}}\right)\left(\frac{0.998\ g}{1\ \cancel{mL}}\right) = 3.99 \times 10^5 g\ H_2O \tag{7.2.18}$$

The temperature change (ΔT) is 38.0°C – 22.0°C = +16.0°C.

B From Table 7.2.1, the specific heat of water is 4.184 J/(g•°C). From Equation 7.3.3, the heat absorbed by the water is thus

$$q = mC_s\Delta T = \left(3.99X10^5\ \cancel{g}\right)\left(\frac{4.184\ J}{\cancel{g}\cdot\cancel{^oC}}\right)\left(16.0\ \cancel{^oC}\right) = 2.67 \times 10^7 J = 2.67 \times 10^4 kJ \tag{7.2.19}$$

Both *q* and ΔT are positive, consistent with the fact that the water has absorbed energy.

Exercise 7.2.3: Solar Heating

Some solar energy devices used in homes circulate air over a bed of rocks that absorb thermal energy from the sun. If a house uses a solar heating system that contains 2500 kg of sandstone rocks, what amount of energy is stored if the temperature of the rocks increases from 20.0°C to 34.5°C during the day? Assume that the specific heat of sandstone is the same as that of quartz (SiO_2) in Table 7.2.1.

Answer

2.7 × 10^4 kJ (Even though the mass of sandstone is more than six times the mass of the water in Example 7.2.1, the amount of thermal energy stored is the same to two significant figures.)

When two objects at different temperatures are placed in contact, heat flows from the warmer object to the cooler one until the temperature of both objects is the same. The law of conservation of energy says that the total energy cannot change during this process:

$$q_{cold} + q_{hot} = 0 \tag{7.2.20}$$

The equation implies that the amount of heat that flows *from* a warmer object is the same as the amount of heat that flows *into* a cooler object. Because the direction of heat flow is opposite for the two objects, the sign of the heat flow values must be opposite:

$$q_{cold} = -q_{hot} \tag{7.2.21}$$

Thus heat is conserved in any such process, consistent with the law of conservation of energy.

> The amount of heat lost by a warmer object equals the amount of heat gained by a cooler object.

Substituting for *q* from Equation 7.3.2 gives

$$[mC_s\Delta T]_{cold} + [mC_s\Delta T]_{hot} = 0 \tag{7.2.22}$$

which can be rearranged to give

$$[mC_s\Delta T]_{cold} = -[mC_s\Delta T]_{hot} \tag{7.2.23}$$

When two objects initially at different temperatures are placed in contact, we can use Equation 7.3.7 to calculate the final temperature if we know the chemical composition and mass of the objects.

Example 7.2.2: Thermal Equilibration of Copper and Water

If a 30.0 g piece of copper pipe at 80.0°C is placed in 100.0 g of water at 27.0°C, what is the final temperature? Assume that no heat is transferred to the surroundings.

Given: mass and initial temperature of two objects

Asked for: final temperature

Strategy: Using Equation 7.3.7 and writing ΔT as $T_{final} - T_{initial}$ for both the copper and the water, substitute the appropriate values of m, C_s, and $T_{initial}$ into the equation and solve for T_{final}.

Solution

We can adapt Equation 7.3.7 to solve this problem, remembering that ΔT is defined as $T_{final} - T_{initial}$:

$$[mC_s\,(T_{final} - T_{initial})]_{Cu} + [mC_s\,(T_{final} - T_{initial})]_{H_2O} = 0 \tag{7.2.24}$$

Substituting the data provided in the problem and Table 7.2.1 gives

$$[(30\ g)\,(0.385\ J)\,(T_{final} - T_{initial})]_{Cu} + [mC_s\,(T_{final} - T_{initial})]_{H_2O} = 0 \tag{7.2.25}$$

$$T_{final}\,(11.6\ J/^oC) - 924\ J + T_{final}\,(418.4\ J/^oC) - 11,300\ J \tag{7.2.26}$$

$$T_{final}\,(430\ J/\,(g\cdot^o C)) = -12,224\ J \tag{7.2.27}$$

$$T_{final} = -28.4\ ^oC \tag{7.2.28}$$

Exercise 7.2.2a: Thermal Equilibration of Gold and Water

If a 14.0 g chunk of gold at 20.0°C is dropped into 25.0 g of water at 80.0°C, what is the final temperature if no heat is transferred to the surroundings?

Answer: 80.0°C

Exercise 7.2.2b: Thermal Equilibration of Aluminum and Water

A 28.0 g chunk of aluminum is dropped into 100.0 g of water with an initial temperature of 20.0°C. If the final temperature of the water is 24.0°C, what was the initial temperature of the aluminum? (Assume that no heat is transferred to the surroundings.)

Answer: 90.6°C

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Conservation of Energy: The Movement of Heat between Substances: https://youtu.be/pGEYy-pNHBg

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous
- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 7.2: Heat is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 7.2: Heat is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

7.3: Heats of Reactions and Calorimetry

Learning Objectives

- Explain the technique of calorimetry
- Calculate and interpret heat and related properties using typical calorimetry data
- To use calorimetric data to calculate enthalpy changes.

Measuring Heat Flow

One technique we can use to measure the amount of heat involved in a chemical or physical process is known as calorimetry. Calorimetry is used to measure amounts of heat transferred to or from a substance. To do so, the heat is exchanged with a calibrated object (calorimeter). The change in temperature of the measuring part of the calorimeter is converted into the amount of heat (since the previous calibration was used to establish its heat capacity). The measurement of heat transfer using this approach requires the definition of a system (the substance or substances undergoing the chemical or physical change) and its surroundings (the other components of the measurement apparatus that serve to either provide heat to the system or absorb heat from the system). Knowledge of the heat capacity of the surroundings, and careful measurements of the masses of the system and surroundings and their temperatures before and after the process allows one to calculate the heat transferred as described in this section.

A calorimeter is a device used to measure the amount of heat involved in a chemical or physical process.

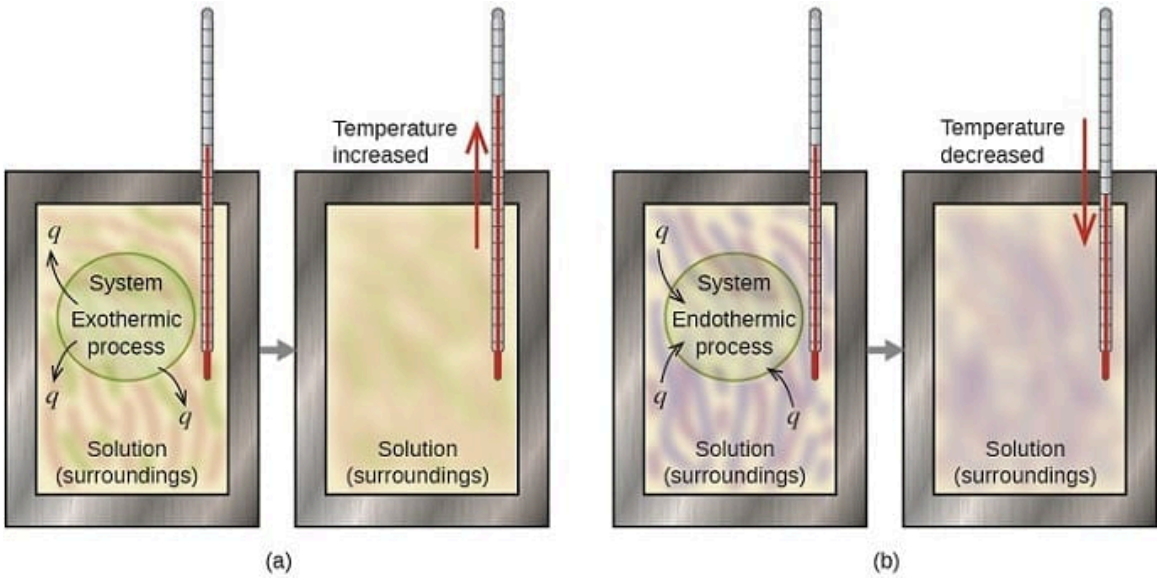


Figure 7.3.1: In a calorimetric determination, either (a) an exothermic process occurs and heat, q, is negative, indicating that thermal energy is transferred from the system to its surroundings, or (b) an endothermic process occurs and heat, q, is positive, indicating that thermal energy is transferred from the surroundings to the system. (CC-BY; OpenStax).

The thermal energy change accompanying a chemical reaction is responsible for the change in temperature that takes place in a calorimeter. If the reaction releases heat ($q_{rxn} < 0$), then heat is absorbed by the calorimeter ($q_{calorimeter} > 0$) and its temperature increases. Conversely, if the reaction absorbs heat ($q_{rxn} > 0$), then heat is transferred from the calorimeter to the system ($q_{calorimeter} < 0$) and the temperature of the calorimeter decreases. In both cases, *the amount of heat absorbed or released by the calorimeter is equal in magnitude and opposite in sign to the amount of heat produced or consumed by the reaction*. The heat capacity of the calorimeter or of the reaction mixture may be used to calculate the amount of heat released or absorbed by the chemical reaction. The amount of heat released or absorbed per gram or mole of reactant can then be calculated from the mass of the reactants.

Note

The amount of heat absorbed or released by the calorimeter is equal in magnitude and opposite in sign to the amount of heat produced or consumed by the reaction.

Constant-Pressure Calorimetry

Because ΔH is defined as the heat flow at constant pressure, measurements made using a constant-pressure calorimeter (a device used to measure enthalpy changes in chemical processes at constant pressure) give ΔH values directly. This device is particularly well suited to studying reactions carried out in solution at a constant atmospheric pressure. A "student" version, called a *coffee-cup calorimeter* (Figure 7.3.2), is often encountered in general chemistry laboratories. Commercial calorimeters operate on the same principle, but they can be used with smaller volumes of solution, have better thermal insulation, and can detect a change in temperature as small as several millionths of a degree (10^{-6}°C).

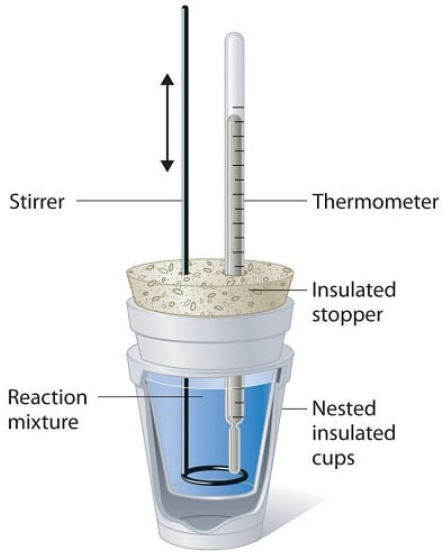


Figure 7.3.2: A Coffee-Cup Calorimeter. This simplified version of a constant-pressure calorimeter consists of two Styrofoam cups nested and sealed with an insulated stopper to thermally isolate the system (the solution being studied) from the surroundings (the air and the laboratory bench). Two holes in the stopper allow the use of a thermometer to measure the temperature and a stirrer to mix the reactants.

Before we practice calorimetry problems involving chemical reactions, consider a simpler example that illustrates the core idea behind calorimetry. Suppose we initially have a high-temperature substance, such as a hot piece of metal (M), and a low-temperature substance, such as cool water (W). If we place the metal in the water, heat will flow from M to W. The temperature of M will decrease, and the temperature of W will increase, until the two substances have the same temperature—that is, when they reach thermal equilibrium (Figure 7.3.4). If this occurs in a calorimeter, ideally all of this heat transfer occurs between the two substances, with no heat gained or lost by either the calorimeter or the calorimeter's surroundings. Under these ideal circumstances, the net heat change is zero:

$$q_{\text{substance M}} + q_{\text{substance W}} = 0 \tag{7.3.1}$$

This relationship can be rearranged to show that the heat gained by substance M is equal to the heat lost by substance W:

$$q_{\text{substance M}} = -q_{\text{substance W}} \tag{7.3.2}$$

The magnitude of the heat (change) is therefore the same for both substances, and the negative sign merely shows that $q_{substance\ M}$ and $q_{substance\ W}$ are opposite in direction of heat flow (gain or loss) but does not indicate the arithmetic sign of either q value (that is determined by whether the matter in question gains or loses heat, per definition). In the specific situation described, $q_{\text{substance M}}$ is a negative value and $q_{\text{substance W}}$ is positive, since heat is transferred from M to W.

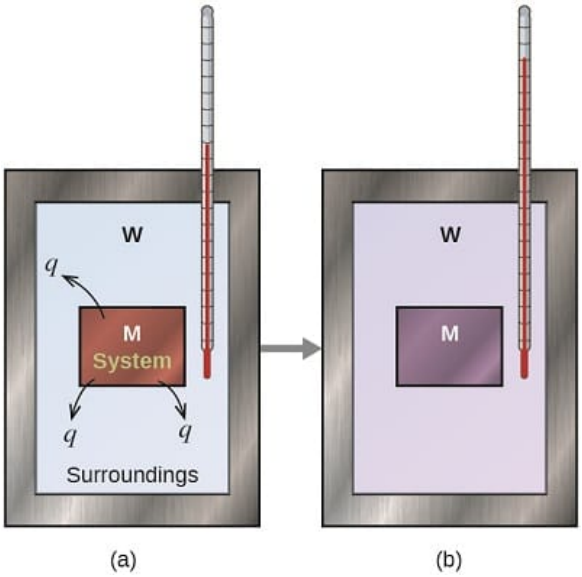


Figure 7.3.4: In a simple calorimetry process, (a) heat, q, is transferred from the hot metal, M, to the cool water, W, until (b) both are at the same temperature.

Heat Transfer between Substances at Different Temperatures

A 360-g piece of rebar (a steel rod used for reinforcing concrete) is dropped into 425 mL of water at 24.0 °C. The final temperature of the water was measured as 42.7 °C. Calculate the initial temperature of the piece of rebar. Assume the specific heat of steel is approximately the same as that for iron (Table T4), and that all heat transfer occurs between the rebar and the water (there is no heat exchange with the surroundings).

Solution

The temperature of the water increases from 24.0 °C to 42.7 °C, so the water absorbs heat. That heat came from the piece of rebar, which initially was at a higher temperature. Assuming that all heat transfer was between the rebar and the water, with no heat "lost" to the surroundings, then heat given off by rebar = –heat taken in by water, or:

$$q_{\text{rebar}} = -q_{\text{water}} \tag{7.3.3}$$

Since we know how heat is related to other measurable quantities, we have:

$$(c \times m \times \Delta T)_{\text{rebar}} = -(c \times m \times \Delta T)_{\text{water}} \tag{7.3.4}$$

Letting f = final and i = initial, in expanded form, this becomes:

$$c_{\text{rebar}} \times m_{\text{rebar}} \times (T_{\text{f,rebar}} - T_{\text{i,rebar}}) = -c_{\text{water}} \times m_{\text{water}} \times (T_{\text{f,water}} - T_{\text{i,water}}) \tag{7.3.5}$$

The density of water is 1.0 g/mL, so 425 mL of water = 425 g. Noting that the final temperature of both the rebar and water is 42.7 °C, substituting known values yields:

$$(0.449\ \text{J/g °C})(360\text{g})(42.7\text{°C} - T_{\text{i,rebar}}) = (4.184\ \text{J/g °C})(425\ \text{g})(42.7\text{°C} - 24.0\text{°C}) \tag{7.3.6}$$

$$T_{\text{i,rebar}} = \frac{(4.184\ \text{J/g °C})(425\ \text{g})(42.7\text{°C} - 24.0\text{°C})}{(0.449\ \text{J/g °C})(360\ \text{g})} + 42.7\text{°C} \tag{7.3.7}$$

Solving this gives Ti,rebar= 248 °C, so the initial temperature of the rebar was 248 °C.

Exercise 7.3.1A

A 248-g piece of copper is dropped into 390 mL of water at 22.6 °C. The final temperature of the water was measured as 39.9 °C. Calculate the initial temperature of the piece of copper. Assume that all heat transfer occurs between the copper and the water.

Answer:

The initial temperature of the copper was 335.6 °C.

Exercise 7.3.1B

A 248-g piece of copper initially at 314 °C is dropped into 390 mL of water initially at 22.6 °C. Assuming that all heat transfer occurs between the copper and the water, calculate the final temperature.

Answer:

The final temperature (reached by both copper and water) is 38.8 °C.

This method can also be used to determine other quantities, such as the specific heat of an unknown metal.

Identifying a Metal by Measuring Specific Heat

A 59.7 g piece of metal that had been submerged in boiling water was quickly transferred into 60.0 mL of water initially at 22.0 °C. The final temperature is 28.5 °C. Use these data to determine the specific heat of the metal. Use this result to identify the metal.

Solution

Assuming perfect heat transfer, heat given off by metal = –heat taken in by water, or:

$$q_{\text{metal}} = -q_{\text{water}} \tag{7.3.8}$$

In expanded form, this is:

$$c_{\text{metal}} \times m_{\text{metal}} \times (T_{\text{f,metal}} - T_{\text{i,metal}}) = -c_{\text{water}} \times m_{\text{water}} \times (T_{\text{f,water}} - T_{\text{i,water}}) \tag{7.3.9}$$

Noting that since the metal was submerged in boiling water, its initial temperature was 100.0 °C; and that for water, 60.0 mL = 60.0 g; we have:

$$(c_{\text{metal}})(59.7\text{ g})(28.5°\text{C} - 100.0°\text{C}) = -(4.18\text{ J/g °C})(60.0\text{ g})(28.5°\text{C} - 22.0°\text{C}) \tag{7.3.10}$$

Solving this:

$$c_{\text{metal}} = \frac{-(4.184\text{ J/g °C})(60.0\text{ g})(6.5°\text{C})}{(59.7\text{ g})(-71.5°\text{C})} = 0.38\text{ J/g °C} \tag{7.3.11}$$

Comparing this with values in Table T4, our experimental specific heat is closest to the value for copper (0.39 J/g °C), so we identify the metal as copper.

Exercise 7.3.2

A 92.9-g piece of a silver/gray metal is heated to 178.0 °C, and then quickly transferred into 75.0 mL of water initially at 24.0 °C. After 5 minutes, both the metal and the water have reached the same temperature: 29.7 °C. Determine the specific heat and the identity of the metal. (Note: You should find that the specific heat is close to that of two different metals. Explain how you can confidently determine the identity of the metal).

Answer

$$c_{metal} = 0.13 \ \ J/g \ \ ^\circ C$$

This specific heat is close to that of either gold or lead. It would be difficult to determine which metal this was based solely on the numerical values. However, the observation that the metal is silver/gray in addition to the value for the specific heat indicates that the metal is lead.

When we use calorimetry to determine the heat involved in a chemical reaction, the same principles we have been discussing apply. The amount of heat absorbed by the calorimeter is often small enough that we can neglect it (though not for highly accurate measurements, as discussed later), and the calorimeter minimizes energy exchange with the surroundings. Because energy is neither created nor destroyed during a chemical reaction, there is no overall energy change during the reaction. The heat produced or consumed in the reaction (the "system"), q_{reaction}, plus the heat absorbed or lost by the solution (the "surroundings"), q_{solution}, must add up to zero:

$$q_{\text{reaction}} + q_{\text{solution}} = 0 \tag{7.3.12}$$

This means that the amount of heat produced or consumed in the reaction equals the amount of heat absorbed or lost by the solution:

$$q_{\text{reaction}} = -q_{\text{solution}} \tag{7.3.13}$$

This concept lies at the heart of all calorimetry problems and calculations. Because the heat released or absorbed at constant pressure is equal to ΔH, the relationship between heat and ΔH_{rxn} is

$$\Delta H_{rxn} = q_{rxn} = -q_{calorimater} = -mC_s\Delta T \tag{7.3.14}$$

The use of a constant-pressure calorimeter is illustrated in Example 7.3.3.

Example 7.3.3

When 5.03 g of solid potassium hydroxide are dissolved in 100.0 mL of distilled water in a coffee-cup calorimeter, the temperature of the liquid increases from 23.0°C to 34.7°C. The density of water in this temperature range averages 0.9969 g/cm^3. What is ΔH_{soln} (in kilojoules per mole)? Assume that the calorimeter absorbs a negligible amount of heat and, because of the large volume of water, the specific heat of the solution is the same as the specific heat of pure water.

Given: mass of substance, volume of solvent, and initial and final temperatures

Asked for: ΔH_{soln}

Strategy:

A. Calculate the mass of the solution from its volume and density and calculate the temperature change of the solution.
B. Find the heat flow that accompanies the dissolution reaction by substituting the appropriate values into Equation 7.3.1.
C. Use the molar mass of KOH to calculate ΔH_{soln}.

Solution:

A To calculate ΔH_{soln}, we must first determine the amount of heat released in the calorimetry experiment. The mass of the solution is

$$(100.0\ mL\ H2O)\left(0.9969\ g/\cancel{mL}\right) + 5.03\ g\ KOH = 104.72\ g \tag{7.3.15}$$

The temperature change is (34.7°C – 23.0°C) = +11.7°C.

B Because the solution is not very concentrated (approximately 0.9 M), we assume that the specific heat of the solution is the same as that of water. The heat flow that accompanies dissolution is thus

$$q_{calorimater} = mC_s\Delta T = \left(104.72\ \cancel{g}\right)\left(\frac{4.184\ J}{\cancel{g}\cdot\cancel{^oC}}\right)(11.7\ ^oC) = 5130\ J = 5.13\ lJ \tag{7.3.16}$$

The temperature of the solution increased because heat was absorbed by the solution ($q > 0$). Where did this heat come from? It was released by KOH dissolving in water. From Equation 7.3.1, we see that

$$\Delta H_{rxn} = -q_{calorimeter} = -5.13\ kJ$$

This experiment tells us that dissolving 5.03 g of KOH in water is accompanied by the *release* of 5.13 kJ of energy. Because the temperature of the solution increased, the dissolution of KOH in water must be exothermic.

C The last step is to use the molar mass of KOH to calculate ΔH_{soln}—the heat released when dissolving 1 mol of KOH:

$$\Delta H_{soln} = \left(\frac{5.13\ kJ}{5.03\ \cancel{g}}\right)\left(\frac{56.11\ \cancel{g}}{1\ mol}\right) = -57.2\ kJ/mol \tag{7.3.17}$$

Exercise 7.3.3

A coffee-cup calorimeter contains 50.0 mL of distilled water at 22.7°C. Solid ammonium bromide (3.14 g) is added and the solution is stirred, giving a final temperature of 20.3°C. Using the same assumptions as in Example 7.3.3, find ΔH_{soln} for NH_4Br (in kilojoules per mole).

Answer: 16.6 kJ/mol

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Conservation of Energy: Coffee Cup Calorimetry: https://youtu.be/FwQcc17PN0k

Constant-Volume Calorimetry

Constant-pressure calorimeters are not very well suited for studying reactions in which one or more of the reactants is a gas, such as a combustion reaction. The enthalpy changes that accompany combustion reactions are therefore measured using a constant-volume calorimeter, such as the bomb calorimeter (A device used to measure energy changes in chemical processes. shown schematically in Figure 7.3.3). The reactant is placed in a steel cup inside a steel vessel with a fixed volume (the “bomb”). The bomb is then sealed, filled with excess oxygen gas, and placed inside an insulated container that holds a known amount of water. Because combustion reactions are exothermic, the temperature of the bath and the calorimeter increases during combustion. If

the heat capacity of the bomb and the mass of water are known, the heat released can be calculated.

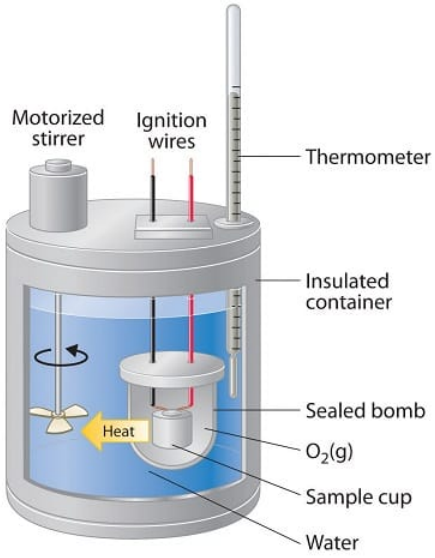


Figure 7.3.3: A Bomb Calorimeter. After the temperature of the water in the insulated container has reached a constant value, the combustion reaction is initiated by passing an electric current through a wire embedded in the sample. Because this calorimeter operates at constant volume, the heat released is not precisely the same as the enthalpy change for the reaction.

Because the volume of the system (the inside of the bomb) is fixed, the combustion reaction occurs under conditions in which the volume, but not the pressure, is constant. The heat released by a reaction carried out at constant volume is identical to the change in *internal energy* (ΔU) rather than the enthalpy change (Δ*H*); ΔU is related to Δ*H* by an expression that depends on the change in the number of moles of gas during the reaction. The difference between the heat flow measured at constant volume and the enthalpy change is usually quite small, however (on the order of a few percent). Assuming that $\Delta U < \Delta H$, the relationship between the measured temperature change and ΔH_{comb} is given in Equation 7.3.18, where C_{bomb} is the total heat capacity of the steel bomb and the water surrounding it:

$$\Delta H_{comb} < q_{comb} = q_{calorimater} = C_{bomb}\Delta T \tag{7.3.18}$$

To measure the heat capacity of the calorimeter, we first burn a carefully weighed mass of a standard compound whose enthalpy of combustion is accurately known. Benzoic acid ($C_6H_5CO_2H$) is often used for this purpose because it is a crystalline solid that can be obtained in high purity. The combustion of benzoic acid in a bomb calorimeter releases 26.38 kJ of heat per gram (i.e., its ΔH_{comb} = −26.38 kJ/g). This value and the measured increase in temperature of the calorimeter can be used in Equation ??? to determine C_{bomb}. The use of a bomb calorimeter to measure the ΔH_{comb} of a substance is illustrated in Example 7.3.4.

YouTube Video

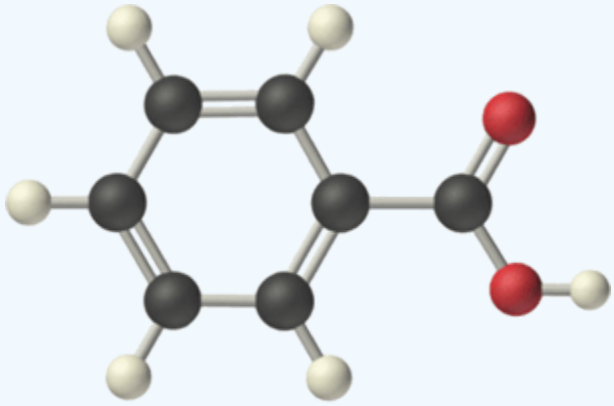
This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video* 7.3.1*: Video of view how a bomb calorimeter is prepared for action.

Example 7.3.4: Combustion of Glucose

The combustion of 0.579 g of benzoic acid in a bomb calorimeter caused a 2.08°C increase in the temperature of the calorimeter. The chamber was then emptied and recharged with 1.732 g of glucose and excess oxygen. Ignition of the glucose resulted in a temperature increase of 3.64°C. What is the ΔH_{comb} of glucose?



Benzoic acid

Given: mass and ΔT for combustion of standard and sample

Asked for: ΔH_{comb} of glucose

Strategy:

A. Calculate the value of q_{rxn} for benzoic acid by multiplying the mass of benzoic acid by its ΔH_{comb}. Then use Equation 7.3.2 to determine the heat capacity of the calorimeter (C_{bomb}) from q_{comb} and ΔT.
B. Calculate the amount of heat released during the combustion of glucose by multiplying the heat capacity of the bomb by the temperature change. Determine the ΔH_{comb} of glucose by multiplying the amount of heat released per gram by the molar mass of glucose.

Solution:

The first step is to use Equation 7.3.2 and the information obtained from the combustion of benzoic acid to calculate C_{bomb}. We are given ΔT, and we can calculate q_{comb} from the mass of benzoic acid:

$$q_{comb} = \left(0.579 \cancel{g}\right)\left(-26.38\ kJ/\cancel{g}\right) = -15.3\ kJ \tag{7.3.19}$$

From Equation 7.3.2,

$$-C_{bomb} = \frac{q_{comb}}{\Delta T} = \frac{-15.3\ kJ}{2.08\ ^oC} = -7.34\ kJ/^oC \tag{7.3.20}$$

B According to the strategy, we can now use the heat capacity of the bomb to calculate the amount of heat released during the combustion of glucose:

$$q_{comb} = -C_{bomb}\Delta T = (-7.34\ kJ/^oC)\,(3.64\ ^oC) = -26.7\ kJ \tag{7.3.21}$$

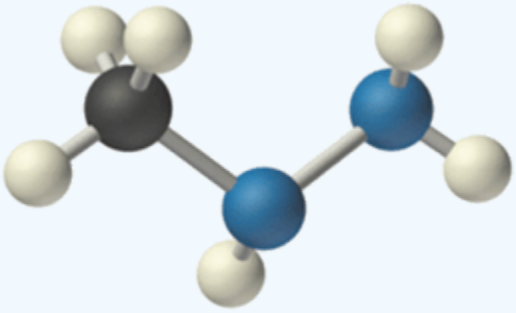
Because the combustion of 1.732 g of glucose released 26.7 kJ of energy, the ΔH_{comb} of glucose is

$$\Delta H_{comb} = \left(\frac{-26.7\ kJ}{1.732\ \cancel{g}}\right)\left(\frac{180.16\ \cancel{g}}{mol}\right) = -2780\ kJ/mol = 2.78 \times 10^3\ kJ/mol \tag{7.3.22}$$

This result is in good agreement (< 1% error) with the value of ΔH_{comb} = −2803 kJ/mol that calculated using enthalpies of formation.

Exercise 7.3.4: Combustion of Benzoic Acid

When 2.123 g of benzoic acid is ignited in a bomb calorimeter, a temperature increase of 4.75°C is observed. When 1.932 g of methylhydrazine (CH_3NHNH_2) is ignited in the same calorimeter, the temperature increase is 4.64°C. Calculate the ΔH_{comb} of methylhydrazine, the fuel used in the maneuvering jets of the US space shuttle.



Methylhydrazine

Answer: -1.30×10^3 kJ/mol

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Conservation of Energy: Bomb Calorimetry: https://youtu.be/SSNZGgwYBsQ

Summary

- Calorimetry measures enthalpy changes during chemical processes, where the magnitude of the temperature change depends on the amount of heat released or absorbed and on the heat capacity of the system.

Calorimetry is the set of techniques used to measure enthalpy changes during chemical processes. It uses devices called *calorimeters*, which measure the change in temperature when a chemical reaction is carried out. The magnitude of the temperature change depends on the amount of heat released or absorbed and on the heat capacity of the system. The **heat capacity (*C*)** of an object is the amount of energy needed to raise its temperature by 1°C; its units are joules per degree Celsius. The **specific heat (C_s)** of a substance is the amount of energy needed to raise the temperature of 1 g of the substance by 1°C, and the **molar heat capacity (C_p)** is the amount of energy needed to raise the temperature of 1 mol of a substance by 1°C. Liquid water has one of the highest specific heats known. Heat flow measurements can be made with either a **constant-pressure calorimeter**, which gives ΔH values directly, or a **bomb calorimeter**, which operates at constant volume and is particularly useful for measuring enthalpies of combustion.

Thermal energy itself cannot be measured easily, but the temperature change caused by the flow of thermal energy between objects or substances can be measured. Calorimetry describes a set of techniques employed to measure enthalpy changes

in chemical processes using devices called *calorimeters*. To have any meaning, the quantity that is actually measured in a calorimetric experiment, the change in the temperature of the device, must be related to the heat evolved or consumed in a chemical reaction. We begin this section by explaining how the flow of thermal energy affects the temperature of an object.

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous
- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 7.3: Heats of Reactions and Calorimetry is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 7.3: Heats of Reactions and Calorimetry is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

7.4: Work

Learning Objectives

- To know the relationship between energy, work, and heat.

One definition of energy is the capacity to do work. There are many kinds of work, including mechanical work, electrical work, and work against a gravitational or a magnetic field. Here we will consider only mechanical work and focus on the work done during changes in the pressure or the volume of a gas.

Mechanical Work

The easiest form of work to visualize is mechanical work (Figure 7.4.1), which is the energy required to move an object a distance d when opposed by a force F, such as gravity:

$$w = F\,d \tag{7.4.1}$$

with

- w is work
- F is opposing force
- d is distance

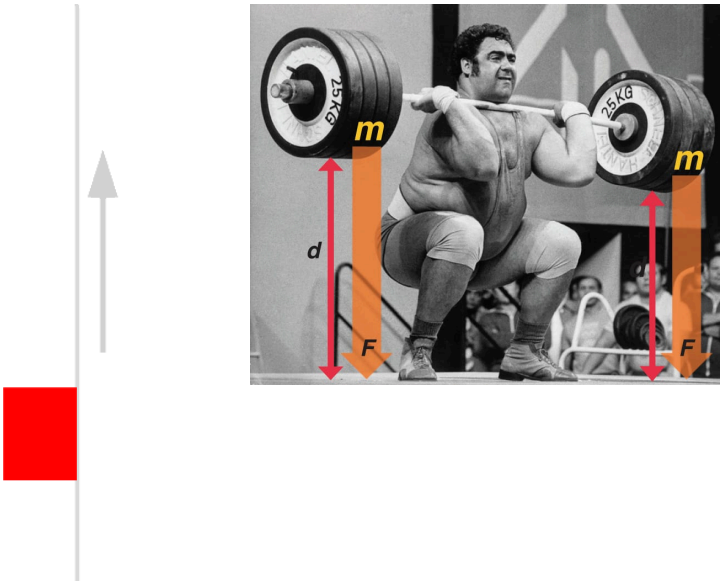


Figure 7.4.1: One form of energy is mechanical work, the energy required to move an object of mass m through distance d when opposed by a force F, i.e., as gravity. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Because the force (F) that opposes the action is equal to the mass (m) of the object times its acceleration (a), Equation 7.4.1 can be rewritten to:

$$w = m\,a\,d \tag{7.4.2}$$

with

- w is work
- m is mass

- a is a acceleration, and
- d is distance

Recall from that weight is a force caused by the gravitational attraction between two masses, such as you and Earth. Hence for works against gravity (on Earth), a can be set to $g = 9.8\ m/s^2$). Consider the mechanical work required for you to travel from the first floor of a building to the second. Whether you take an elevator or an escalator, trudge upstairs, or leap up the stairs two at a time, energy is expended to overcome the opposing force of gravity. The amount of work done (*w*) and thus the energy required depends on three things:

1. the height of the second floor (the distance \(*d*\));
2. your mass, which must be raised that distance against the downward acceleration due to gravity; and
3. your path.

Pressure-Volume (PV) Work

To describe this pressure–volume work (PV work), we will use such imaginary oddities as frictionless pistons, which involve no component of resistance, and ideal gases, which have no attractive or repulsive interactions. Imagine, for example, an ideal gas, confined by a frictionless piston, with internal pressure P_{int} and initial volume V_i (Figure 7.4.2). If $P_{ext} = P_{int}$, the system is at equilibrium; the piston does not move, and no work is done. If the external pressure on the piston (P_{ext}) is less than P_{int}, however, then the ideal gas inside the piston will expand, forcing the piston to perform work on its surroundings; that is, the final volume (V_f) will be greater than V_i. If $P_{ext} > P_{int}$, then the gas will be compressed, and the surroundings will perform work on the system.

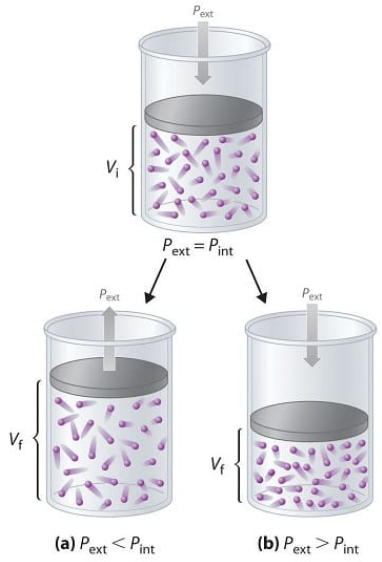


Figure 7.4.2: PV Work demonstrated with a frictionless piston. (a) if the external pressure is less than P_{int}, the ideal gas inside the piston will expand, forcing the piston to perform work on its surroundings. The final volume (V_f) will be greater than V_i. (b) Alternatively, if the external pressure is greater than P_{int}, the gas will be compressed, and the surroundings will perform work on the system.

If the piston has cross-sectional area A, the external pressure exerted by the piston is, by definition, the force per unit area:

$$P_{ext} = \frac{F}{A} \tag{7.4.3}$$

The volume of any three-dimensional object with parallel sides (such as a cylinder) is the cross-sectional area times the height (V = Ah). Rearranging to give F = P_{ext}A and defining the distance the piston moves (d) as Δh, we can calculate the magnitude of the work performed by the piston by substituting into Equation 7.4.1:

$$w = Fd = P_{ext}A\Delta h \tag{7.4.4}$$

The change in the volume of the cylinder (ΔV) as the piston moves a distance d is ΔV = AΔh, as shown in Figure 7.4.3. The work performed is thus

$$w = P_{ext}\Delta V \tag{7.4.5}$$

The units of work obtained using this definition are correct for energy: pressure is force per unit area (newton/m^2) and volume has units of cubic meters, so

$$w = \left(\frac{F}{A}\right)_{\text{ext}} (\Delta V) = \frac{\text{newton}}{\text{m}^2} \times \text{m}^3 = \text{newton} \cdot \text{m} = \text{joule} \tag{7.4.6}$$

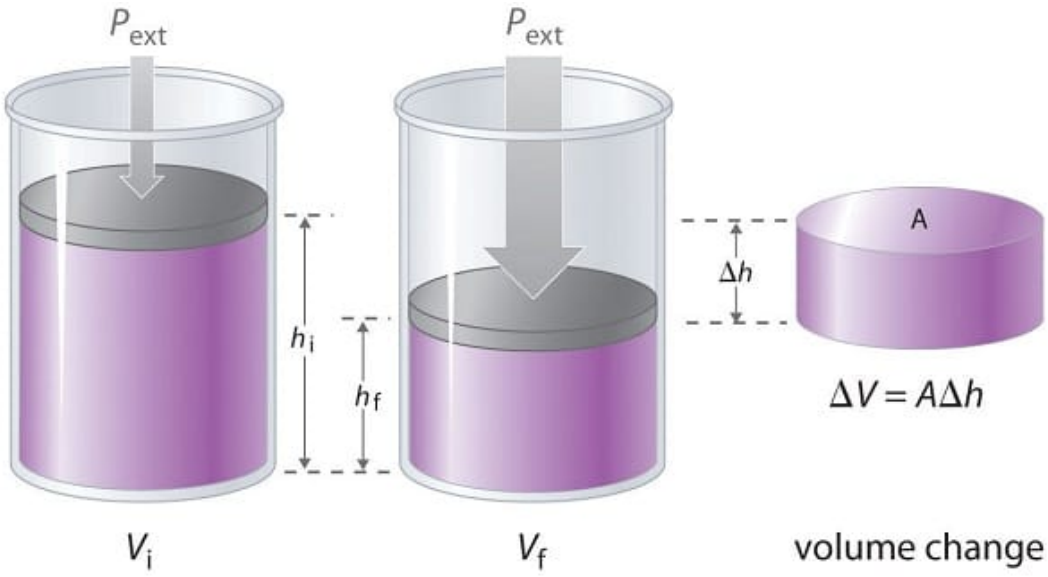


Figure 7.4.3: Work Performed with a change in volume. The change in the volume (ΔV) of the cylinder housing a piston is $\Delta V = A\Delta h$ as the piston moves. The work performed by the surroundings on the system as the piston moves inward is given by Equation ???.

If we use atmospheres for P and liters for V, we obtain units of L·atm for work. These units correspond to units of energy, as shown in the different values of the ideal gas constant R:

$$R = \frac{0.08206\ \text{L} \cdot \text{atm}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} = \frac{8.314\ \text{J}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} \tag{7.4.7}$$

Thus 0.08206 L·atm = 8.314 J and 1 L·atm = 101.3 J.

Whether work is defined as having a positive sign or a negative sign is a matter of convention. Heat flow is defined from a system to its surroundings as negative; using that same sign convention, we define work done by a system on its surroundings as having a negative sign because it results in a transfer of energy from a system to its surroundings. This is an arbitrary convention and one that is not universally used. Some engineering disciplines are more interested in the work done on the surroundings than in the work done by the system and therefore use the opposite convention. Because $\Delta V > 0$ for an expansion, Equation 7.4.4 must be written with a negative sign to describe PV work done by the system as negative:

$$w = -P_{ext}\Delta V \tag{7.4.8}$$

The work done by a gas expanding against an external pressure is therefore negative, corresponding to work done by a system on its surroundings. Conversely, when a gas is compressed by an external pressure, $\Delta V < 0$ and the work is positive because work is being done on a system by its surroundings.

Note: A Matter of Convention

- Heat flow is defined from the system to its surroundings as **negative**
- Work is defined as by the system on its surroundings as **negative**

Suppose, for example, that the system under study is a mass of steam heated by the combustion of several hundred pounds of coal and enclosed within a cylinder housing a piston attached to the crankshaft of a large steam engine. The gas is not ideal,

and the cylinder is not frictionless. Nonetheless, as steam enters the engine chamber and the expanding gas pushes against the piston, the piston moves, so useful work is performed. In fact, PV work launched the Industrial Revolution of the 19th century and powers the internal combustion engine on which most of us still rely for transportation.

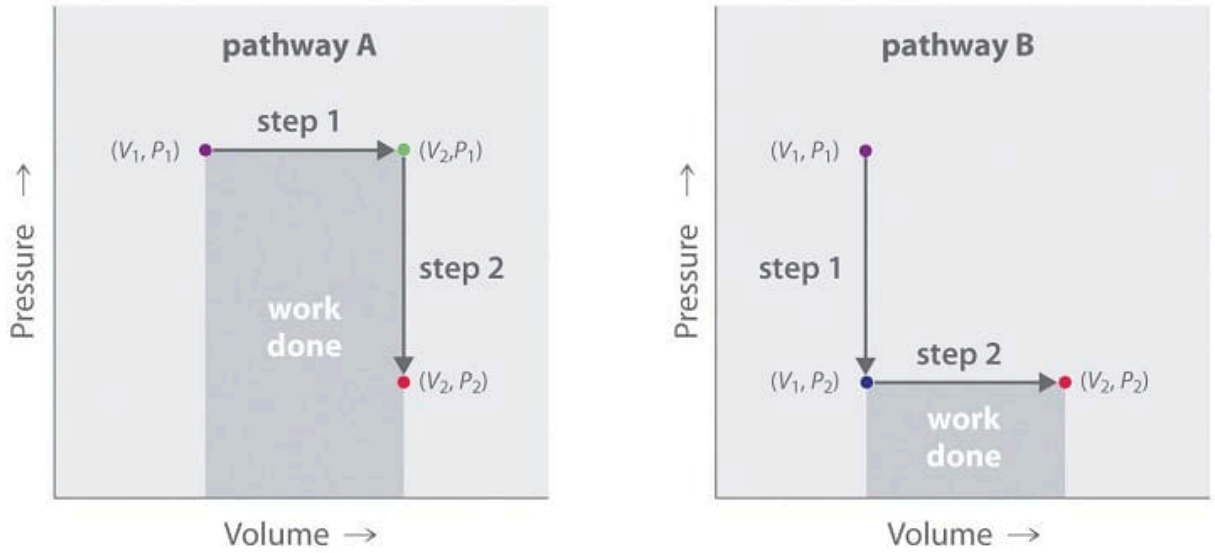


Figure 7.4.4: Work Is Not a State Function. In pathway A, the volume of a gas is initially increased while its pressure stays constant (step 1). Its pressure is then decreased while the volume remains constant (step 2). Pathway B reverses these steps. Although (V_1, P_1) and (V_2, P_2) are identical in both cases, the amount of work done (shaded area) depends on the pathway taken. (Cc BY-NC-SA; Anonymous by request)

In contrast to internal energy, work is not a state function. We can see this by examining Figure 7.4.4, in which two different, two-step pathways take a gaseous system from an initial state to a final state with corresponding changes in temperature. In pathway A, the volume of a gas is initially increased while its pressure stays constant (step 1); then its pressure is decreased while the volume remains constant (step 2). In pathway B, the order of the steps is reversed. The temperatures, pressures, and volumes of the initial and final states are identical in both cases, but the amount of work done, indicated by the shaded areas in the figure, is substantially different. As we can see, the amount of work done depends on the pathway taken from (V_1, P_1) to (V_2, P_2), which means that work is **not** a state function.

Note

Internal energy is a state function, whereas work is not.

Example 7.4.1

A small high-performance internal combustion engine has six cylinders with a total nominal displacement (volume) of 2.40 L and a 10:1 compression ratio (meaning that the volume of each cylinder decreases by a factor of 10 when the piston compresses the air–gas mixture inside the cylinder prior to ignition). How much work in joules is done when a gas in one cylinder of the engine expands at constant temperature against an opposing pressure of 40.0 atm during the engine cycle? Assume that the gas is ideal, the piston is frictionless, and no energy is lost as heat.

Given: final volume, compression ratio, and external pressure

Asked for: work done

Strategy:

A. Calculate the final volume of gas in a single cylinder. Then compute the initial volume of gas in a single cylinder from the compression ratio.
B. Use Equation 7.4.5 to calculate the work done in liter-atmospheres. Convert from liter-atmospheres to joules.

Solution:

A To calculate the work done, we need to know the initial and final volumes. The final volume is the volume of one of the six cylinders with the piston all the way down: V_f = 2.40 L/6 = 0.400 L. With a 10:1 compression ratio, the volume of the same cylinder with the piston all the way up is V_i = 0.400 L/10 = 0.0400 L. Work is done by the system on its surroundings, so work is negative.

$$w = -P_{ext}\Delta V = -(40.0 \text{ atm})(0.400 \text{ L} - 0.0400 \text{ L}) = -14.4 \text{ L·atm}$$

Converting from liter-atmospheres to joules,

$$w = -(14.4 \text{ L} \cdot \text{atm})[101.3 \text{ J}/(\text{L} \cdot \text{atm})] = -1.46 \times 10^3 \text{ J} \tag{7.4.9}$$

In the following exercise, you will see that the concept of work is not confined to engines and pistons. It is found in other applications as well.

Exercise 7.4.1

Breathing requires work, even if you are unaware of it. The lung volume of a 70 kg man at rest changed from 2200 mL to 2700 mL when he inhaled, while his lungs maintained a pressure of approximately 1.0 atm. How much work in liter-atmospheres and joules was required to take a single breath? During exercise, his lung volume changed from 2200 mL to 5200 mL on each in-breath. How much additional work in joules did he require to take a breath while exercising?

Answer: −0.500 L·atm, or −50.7 J; −304 J; if he takes a breath every three seconds, this corresponds to 1.4 Calories per minute (1.4 kcal).

Work and Chemical Reactions

We have stated that the change in energy (ΔU) is equal to the sum of the heat produced and the work performed. Work done by an expanding gas is called *pressure-volume work*, (or just *PV work)*. Consider, for example, a reaction that produces a gas, such as dissolving a piece of copper in concentrated nitric acid. The chemical equation for this reaction is as follows:

$$Cu_{(s)} + 4HNO_{3(aq)} \rightarrow Cu(NO_3)_{2(aq)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} + 2NO_{2(g)} \tag{7.4.10}$$

If the reaction is carried out in a closed system that is maintained at constant pressure by a movable piston, the piston will rise as nitrogen dioxide gas is formed (Figure 7.4.5). The system is performing work by lifting the piston against the downward force exerted by the atmosphere (i.e., *atmospheric pressure*). We find the amount of *PV* work done by multiplying the external pressure *P* by the change in volume caused by movement of the piston (ΔV). At a constant external pressure (here, atmospheric pressure)

$$w = -P\Delta V \tag{7.4.11}$$

The negative sign associated with *PV* work done indicates that the system loses energy. If the volume increases at constant pressure ($\Delta V > 0$), the work done by the system is negative, indicating that a system has lost energy by performing work on its surroundings. Conversely, if the volume decreases ($\Delta V < 0$), the work done by the system is positive, which means that the surroundings have performed work on the system, thereby increasing its energy.

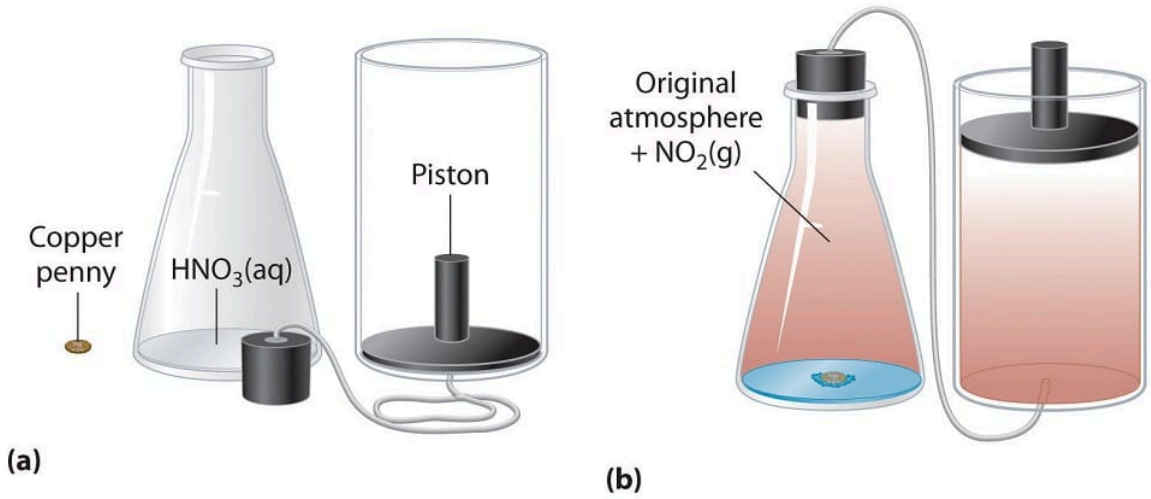


Figure 7.4.5: An Example of Work Performed by a Reaction Carried Out at Constant Pressure. (a) Initially, the system (a copper penny and concentrated nitric acid) is at atmospheric pressure. (b) When the penny is added to the nitric acid, the volume of NO_2 gas that is formed causes the piston to move upward to maintain the system at atmospheric pressure. In doing so, the system is performing work on its surroundings.

The symbol U represents the internal energy of a system, which is the sum of the kinetic energy and potential energy of all its components. It is the change in internal energy that produces heat plus work. To measure the energy changes that occur in chemical reactions, chemists usually use a related thermodynamic quantity called enthalpy (*H*) (from the Greek *enthalpein*, meaning "to warm"). The enthalpy of a system is defined as the sum of its internal energy U plus the product of its pressure *P* and volume *V*:

$$H = U + PV \tag{7.4.12}$$

Because internal energy, pressure, and volume are all state functions, enthalpy is also a state function.

If a chemical change occurs at constant pressure (i.e., for a given *P*, $\Delta P = 0$), the change in enthalpy (ΔH) is

$$\Delta H = \Delta(U + PV) = \Delta U + \Delta PV = \Delta U + P\Delta V \tag{7.4.13}$$

Substituting $q + w$ for ΔU (Equation 5.2.2) and $-w$ for $P\Delta V$ (Equation 7.4.6), we obtain

$$\Delta H = \Delta U + P\Delta V = q_p + w - w = q_p \tag{7.4.14}$$

The subscript p is used here to emphasize that this equation is true only for a process that occurs at constant pressure. From Equation 7.4.9 we see that at constant pressure the change in enthalpy, ΔH of the system, defined as $H_{final} - H_{initial}$, is equal to the heat gained or lost.

$$\Delta H = H_{final} - H_{initial} = q_p \tag{7.4.15}$$

Just as with ΔU, because enthalpy is a state function, the magnitude of ΔH depends on only the initial and final states of the system, not on the path taken. Most important, the enthalpy change is the same even if the process does *not* occur at constant pressure.

Note

To find ΔH *for a reaction*, measure q_p.

Summary

All forms of energy can be interconverted. Three things can change the energy of an object: the transfer of heat, work performed on or by an object, or some combination of heat and work.

Exercise 7.4.1

How much work is done by a gas that expands from 2 liters to 5 liters against an external pressure of 750 mmHg?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 7.4.2

How much work is done by 0.54 moles of a gas that has an initial volume of 8 liters and expands under the following conditions: 30 ^{o}C and 1.3 atm?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 7.4.3

How much work is done by a gas (p=1.70 atm, V=1.56 L) that expands against an external pressure of 1.80 atm?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answers

Exercise 7.4.1

$$w = -p\Delta V$$
$$\Delta V = V_{final} - V_{initial}$$
$$= 5\,\text{L} - 2\,\text{L}$$
$$= 3\,\text{L}$$

Convert 750 mmHg to atm:

$$750\,\text{mmHg}\frac{1\,\text{amt}}{760\,\text{mmHg}} = 0.9868\,\text{atm}.$$
$$w = -p\Delta V = -(0.9868atm)(3Liters) = -2.96\,\text{L atm}.$$

Exercise 7.4.2

First we must find the final volume using the idela gas law:

$$pv = nRT$$

or

$$v = \frac{nRT}{P} = \frac{(0.54moles)(0.082057(Latm)/(molK))(303\,\text{K})}{1.3\,\text{atm}} = 10.33\,\text{L}.$$
$$\Delta V = V_{final} - V_{initial} = 10.3\,\text{L} - 8\,\text{L} = 2.3\,\text{L}$$
$$w = -p\Delta V = -(1.3\,\text{atm})(2.3\,\text{L}) = -3\,\text{L atm}.$$

Exercise 7.4.3

$W = -p\ \Delta V = (-1.80\ \text{atm})\Delta V.$

Given p_1,V_1, and p_2, find V_2:

$p_1V_1 = p_2V_2$ (at constant T and n)

$V_2 = \frac{V_1P_1}{P_2} = \frac{(1.56L)(1.70atm)}{1.80atm} = 1.47\ \text{L}$

Now, $\Delta V = V_2 - V_1 = 1.47L - 1.56L$

$$w = -(1.80\,\text{atm})(1.47\,\text{L} - 1.56\,\text{L}) = 0.162\,\text{L atm}. \tag{7.4.16}$$

This page titled 7.4: Work is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 7.4: Work is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

7.5: The First Law of Thermodynamics

Learning Objectives

- To calculate changes in internal energy

To study the flow of energy during a chemical reaction, we need to distinguish between a system, the small, well-defined part of the universe in which we are interested (such as a chemical reaction), and its surroundings, the rest of the universe, including the container in which the reaction is carried out (Figure 7.5.1). In the discussion that follows, the mixture of chemical substances that undergoes a reaction is always the system, and the flow of heat can be from the system to the surroundings or vice versa.

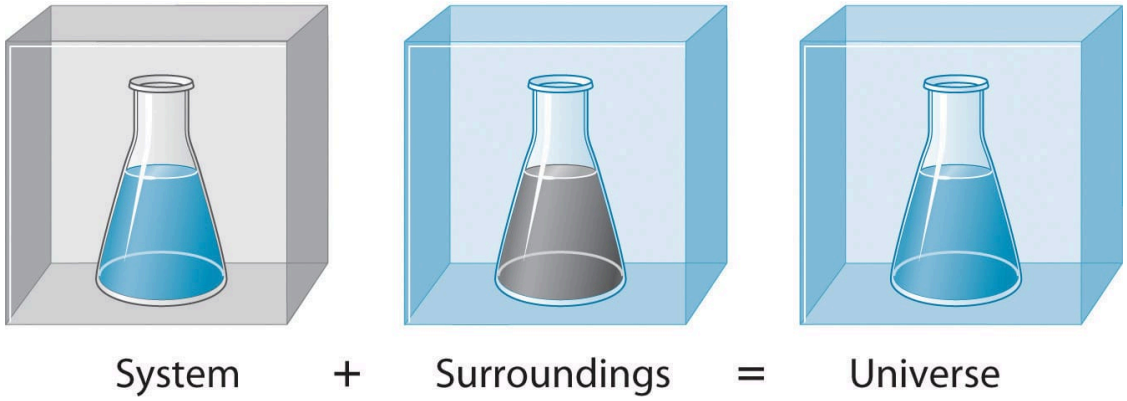


Figure 7.5.1: A System and Its Surroundings. The system is that part of the universe we are interested in studying, such as a chemical reaction inside a flask. The surroundings are the rest of the universe, including the container in which the reaction is carried out.

Three kinds of systems are important in chemistry. An open system can exchange both matter and energy with its surroundings. A pot of boiling water is an open system because a burner supplies energy in the form of heat, and matter in the form of water vapor is lost as the water boils. A closed system can exchange energy but not matter with its surroundings. The sealed pouch of a ready-made dinner that is dropped into a pot of boiling water is a closed system because thermal energy is transferred to the system from the boiling water but no matter is exchanged (unless the pouch leaks, in which case it is no longer a closed system). An isolated system exchanges neither energy nor matter with the surroundings. Energy is always exchanged between a system and its surroundings, although this process may take place very slowly. A truly isolated system does not actually exist. An insulated thermos containing hot coffee approximates an isolated system, but eventually the coffee cools as heat is transferred to the surroundings. In all cases, the amount of heat lost by a system is equal to the amount of heat gained by its surroundings and vice versa. That is, *the total energy of a system plus its surroundings is constant*, which must be true if *energy is conserved*.

The state of a system is a complete description of a system at a given time, including its temperature and pressure, the amount of matter it contains, its chemical composition, and the physical state of the matter. A state function is a property of a system whose magnitude depends on only the present state of the system, not its previous history. Temperature, pressure, volume, and potential energy are all state functions. The temperature of an oven, for example, is independent of however many steps it may have taken for it to reach that temperature. Similarly, the pressure in a tire is independent of how often air is pumped into the tire for it to reach that pressure, as is the final volume of air in the tire. Heat and work, on the other hand, are not state functions because they are *path dependent*. For example, a car sitting on the top level of a parking garage has the same potential energy whether it was lifted by a crane, set there by a helicopter, driven up, or pushed up by a group of students (Figure 7.5.2). The amount of work expended to get it there, however, can differ greatly depending on the path chosen. If the students decided to carry the car to the top of the ramp, they would perform a great deal more work than if they simply pushed the car up the ramp (unless, of course, they neglected to release the parking brake, in which case the work expended would increase substantially!). The potential energy of the car is the same, however, no matter which path they choose.

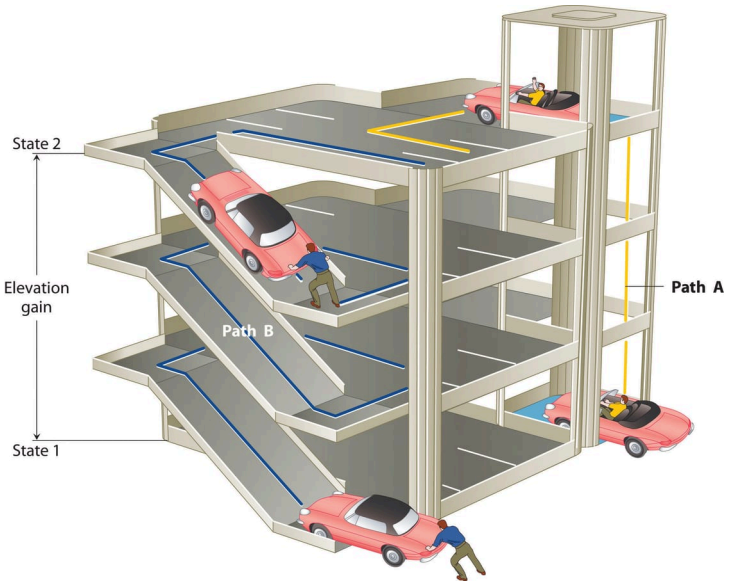


Figure 7.5.2: Elevation as an Example of a State Function. The change in elevation between state 1 (at the bottom of the parking garage) and state 2 (at the top level of the parking garage) is the same for both paths A and B; it does not depend on which path is taken from the bottom to the top. In contrast, the distance traveled and the work needed to reach the top do depend on which path is taken. Elevation is a state function, but distance and work are *not* state functions.

Direction of Heat Flow

The reaction of powdered aluminum with iron(III) oxide, known as the thermite reaction, generates an enormous amount of heat—enough, in fact, to melt steel (see chapter opening image).

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The balanced chemical equation for the reaction is as follows:

$$2Al(s) + Fe_2O_3(s) \rightarrow 2Fe(s) + Al_2O_3(s) \tag{7.5.1}$$

We can also write this chemical equation as

$$2Al(s) + Fe_2O_3(s) \rightarrow 2Fe(s) + Al_2O_3(s) + \text{heat} \tag{7.5.2}$$

to indicate that heat is one of the products. Chemical equations in which heat is shown as either a reactant or a product are called *thermochemical equations*. In this reaction, the system consists of aluminum, iron, and oxygen atoms; everything else, including the container, makes up the surroundings. During the reaction, so much heat is produced that the iron liquefies. Eventually, the system cools; the iron solidifies as heat is transferred to the surroundings.A process in which heat (q) is transferred *from* a system *to* its surroundings is described as exothermic. By convention, \(q < 0\) for an exothermic reaction.

When you hold an ice cube in your hand, heat from the surroundings (including your hand) is transferred to the system (the ice), causing the ice to melt and your hand to become cold. We can describe this process by the following thermochemical equation:

$$heat + H_2O_{(s)} \rightarrow H_2O_{(l)} \tag{7.5.3}$$

When heat is transferred *to* a system *from* its surroundings, the process is endothermic. By convention, $q > 0$ for an endothermic reaction.

Note: Heat is technically not a component in Chemical Reactions

Technically, it is poor form to have a $heat$ term in the chemical reaction like in Equations 7.5.2 and 7.5.3 since is it not a true species in the reaction. However, this is a convenient approach to represent exothermic and endothermic behavior and is commonly used by chemists.

The First Law

The relationship between the energy change of a system and that of its surroundings is given by the first law of thermodynamics, which states that the energy of the universe is constant. We can express this law mathematically as follows:

$$U_{univ} = \Delta U_{sys} + \Delta U_{surr} = 0 \tag{7.5.4a}$$

$$\Delta U_{sys} = -\Delta U_{surr} \tag{7.5.4b}$$

where the subscripts *univ*, *sys*, and *surr* refer to the universe, the system, and the surroundings, respectively. Thus the change in energy of a system is identical in magnitude but opposite in sign to the change in energy of its surroundings.

Note

The tendency of all systems, chemical or otherwise, is to move toward the state with the lowest possible energy.

An important factor that determines the outcome of a chemical reaction is the tendency of all systems, chemical or otherwise, to move toward the lowest possible overall energy state. As a brick dropped from a rooftop falls, its potential energy is converted to kinetic energy; when it reaches ground level, it has achieved a state of lower potential energy. Anyone nearby will notice that energy is transferred to the surroundings as the noise of the impact reverberates and the dust rises when the brick hits the ground. Similarly, if a spark ignites a mixture of isooctane and oxygen in an internal combustion engine, carbon dioxide and water form spontaneously, while potential energy (in the form of the relative positions of atoms in the molecules) is released to the surroundings as heat and work. The internal energy content of the CO_2/H_2O product mixture is less than that of the isooctane O_2 reactant mixture. The two cases differ, however, in the form in which the energy is released to the surroundings. In the case of the falling brick, the energy is transferred as work done on whatever happens to be in the path of the brick; in the case of burning isooctane, the energy can be released as solely heat (if the reaction is carried out in an open container) or as a mixture of heat and work (if the reaction is carried out in the cylinder of an internal combustion engine). Because heat and work are the only two ways in which energy can be transferred between a system and its surroundings, any change in the internal energy of the system is the sum of the heat transferred (q) and the work done (w):

$$\Delta U_{sys} = q + w \tag{7.5.5}$$

Although q and w are not state functions on their own, their sum (ΔU_{sys}) is independent of the path taken and is therefore a state function. A major task for the designers of any machine that converts energy to work is to maximize the amount of work obtained and minimize the amount of energy released to the environment as heat. An example is the combustion of coal to produce electricity. Although the maximum amount of energy available from the process is fixed by the energy content of the reactants and the products, the fraction of that energy that can be used to perform useful work is not fixed. Because we focus almost exclusively on the changes in the energy of a system, we will not use “sys” as a subscript unless we need to distinguish explicitly between a system and its surroundings.

Note

Although q and w are not state functions, their sum (ΔU_{sys}) is independent of the path taken and therefore is a state function.

Example 7.5.1

A sample of an ideal gas in the cylinder of an engine is compressed from 400 mL to 50.0 mL during the compression stroke against a constant pressure of 8.00 atm. At the same time, 140 J of energy is transferred from the gas to the surroundings as heat. What is the total change in the internal energy (ΔU) of the gas in joules?

Given: initial volume, final volume, external pressure, and quantity of energy transferred as heat

Asked for: total change in internal energy

Strategy:

A. Determine the sign of q to use in Equation 7.5.5.
B. From Equation 7.5.5 calculate w from the values given. Substitute this value into Equation 7.5.5 to calculate ΔU.

Solution

A From Equation 7.5.5, we know that ΔU = q + w. We are given the magnitude of q (140 J) and need only determine its sign. Because energy is transferred from the system (the gas) to the surroundings, q is negative by convention.

B Because the gas is being compressed, we know that work is being done on the system, so w must be positive. From Equation 7.5.5,

$$w = -P_{\text{ext}}\Delta V = -8.00\ \text{atm}(0.0500\ \text{L} - 0.400\ \text{L})\left(\frac{101.3\ \text{J}}{\text{L}\cdot\text{atm}}\right) = 284\ \text{J} \tag{7.5.1}$$

Thus

$$\Delta U = q + w = -140\ \text{J} + 284\ \text{J} = 144\ \text{J}$$

In this case, although work is done on the gas, increasing its internal energy, heat flows from the system to the surroundings, decreasing its internal energy by 144 J. The work done and the heat transferred can have opposite signs.

Exercise 7.5.1

A sample of an ideal gas is allowed to expand from an initial volume of 0.200 L to a final volume of 3.50 L against a constant external pressure of 0.995 atm. At the same time, 117 J of heat is transferred from the surroundings to the gas. What is the total change in the internal energy (ΔU) of the gas in joules?

Answer: −216 J

Note

By convention, both heat flow and work have a negative sign when energy is transferred from a system to its surroundings and vice versa.

Summary

- Enthalpy is a state function, and the change in enthalpy of a system is equal to the sum of the change in the internal energy of the system and the PV work done.

The first law of thermodynamics states that the energy of the universe is constant. The change in the internal energy of a system is the sum of the heat transferred and the work done. At constant pressure, heat flow (q) and internal energy (U) are related to the system's enthalpy (H). The heat flow is equal to the change in the internal energy of the system plus the PV work done. When the volume of a system is constant, changes in its internal energy can be calculated by substituting the ideal gas law into the

equation for ΔU.

This page titled 7.5: The First Law of Thermodynamics is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 7.5: The First Law of Thermodynamics is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

7.6: Heats of Reactions - ΔU and ΔH

Learning Objectives

- To understand how enthalpy pertains to chemical reactions

When we study energy changes in chemical reactions, the most important quantity is usually the enthalpy of reaction (ΔH_{rxn}), the change in enthalpy that occurs during a reaction (such as the dissolution of a piece of copper in nitric acid). If heat flows from a system to its surroundings, the enthalpy of the system decreases, so ΔH_{rxn} is negative. Conversely, if heat flows from the surroundings to a system, the enthalpy of the system increases, so ΔH_{rxn} is positive. Thus $\Delta H_{rxn} < 0$ *for an exothermic reaction*, and $\Delta H_{rxn} > 0$ *for an endothermic reaction*. In chemical reactions, bond breaking requires an input of energy and is therefore an endothermic process, whereas bond making releases energy, which is an exothermic process. The sign conventions for heat flow and enthalpy changes are summarized in the following table:

Reaction Type	q	ΔH_{rxn}
exothermic	< 0	< 0 (heat flows from a system to its surroundings)
endothermic	> 0	> 0 (heat flows from the surroundings to a system)

If ΔH_{rxn} is negative, then the enthalpy of the products is less than the enthalpy of the reactants; that is, *an exothermic reaction is energetically downhill* (Figure $7.6.1a$). Conversely, if ΔH_{rxn} is positive, then the enthalpy of the products is greater than the enthalpy of the reactants; thus, *an endothermic reaction is energetically uphill* (Figure $7.6.1b$).

Bond breaking **ALWAYS** requires an input of energy; bond making **ALWAYS** releases energy.

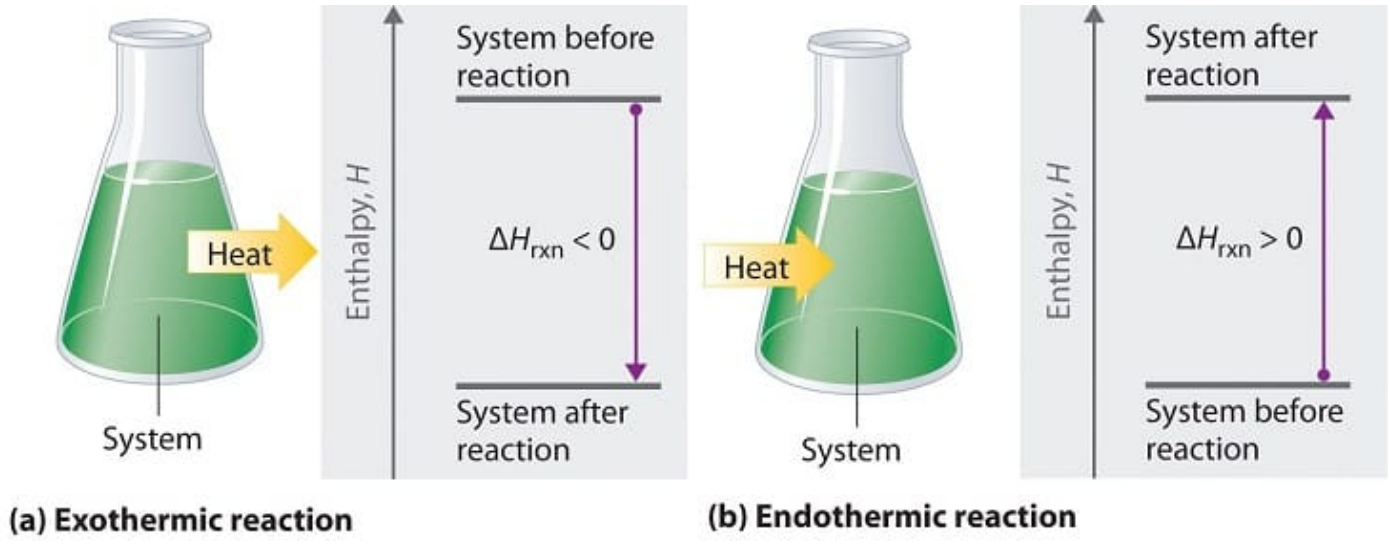


Figure $7.6.1$: The Enthalpy of Reaction. Energy changes in chemical reactions are usually measured as changes in enthalpy. (a) If heat flows from a system to its surroundings, the enthalpy of the system decreases, ΔH_{rxn} is negative, and the reaction is exothermic; it is energetically downhill. (b) Conversely, if heat flows from the surroundings to a system, the enthalpy of the system increases, ΔH_{rxn} is positive, and the reaction is endothermic; it is energetically uphill.

Two important characteristics of enthalpy and changes in enthalpy are summarized in the following discussion.

- **Reversing a reaction or a process changes the sign of ΔH.** Ice *absorbs* heat when it melts (electrostatic interactions are broken), so liquid water must *release* heat when it freezes (electrostatic interactions are formed):

$$\text{heat} + \mathrm{H_2O\,(s)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O\,(l)} \qquad \Delta\mathrm{H} > 0 \tag{7.6.1}$$

$$\mathrm{H_2O\,(l)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O\,(s)} + \text{heat} \qquad \Delta\mathrm{H} < 0 \tag{7.6.2}$$

In both cases, the *magnitude* of the enthalpy change is the same; only the *sign* is different.

- **Enthalpy is an extensive property (like mass).** The magnitude of ΔH for a reaction is proportional to the amounts of the substances that react. For example, a large fire produces more heat than a single match, even though the chemical reaction—the combustion of wood—is the same in both cases. For this reason, the enthalpy change for a reaction is usually given in kilojoules per mole of a particular reactant or product. Consider Equation 7.6.3, which describes the reaction of aluminum with iron(III) oxide (Fe_2O_3) at constant pressure. According to the reaction stoichiometry, 2 mol of Fe, 1 mol of Al_2O_3, and 851.5 kJ of heat are produced for every 2 mol of Al and 1 mol of Fe_2O_3 consumed:

$$2\,\mathrm{Al}\ (\mathrm{s}\ ) + \mathrm{Fe_2O_3}\ (\mathrm{s}\ ) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Fe\,(s)} + \mathrm{Al_2O_3}\ (\mathrm{s}\ ) + 851.5\ kJ \tag{7.6.3}$$

Thus $\Delta H = -851.5\ kJ/mol$ of $\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}$. We can also describe ΔH for the reaction as –425.8 kJ/mol of Al: because 2 mol of Al are consumed in the balanced chemical equation, we divide –851.5 kJ by 2. When a value for ΔH, in kilojoules rather than kilojoules per mole, is written after the reaction, as in Equation 7.6.3, it is the value of Δ*H* corresponding to the reaction of the molar quantities of reactants as given in the balanced chemical equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{Al\,(s)} + \mathrm{Fe_2O_3\,(s)} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Fe\,(s)} + \mathrm{Al_2O_3\,(s)} \qquad \Delta H_{rxn} = -851.5\ kJ \tag{7.6.4}$$

If 4 mol of Al and 2 mol of Fe_2O_3 react, the change in enthalpy is 2 × (–851.5 kJ) = –1703 kJ. We can summarize the relationship between the amount of each substance and the enthalpy change for this reaction as follows:

$$-\frac{851.5\ kJ}{2\ mol\ Al} = -\frac{425.8\ kJ}{1\ mol\ Al} = -\frac{1703\ kJ}{4\ mol\ Al} \tag{7.6.5}$$

The relationship between the magnitude of the enthalpy change and the mass of reactants is illustrated in Example 7.6.1.

7.6.1 Exam

Certain parts of the world, such as southern California and Saudi Arabia, are short of fresh water for drinking. One possible solution to the problem is to tow icebergs from Antarctica and then melt them as needed. If ΔH is 6.01 kJ/mol for the reaction $\mathrm{H_2O\,(s)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O\,(l)}$ at 0°C and constant pressure, how much energy would be required to melt a moderately large iceberg with a mass of 1.00 million metric tons (1.00×10^6 metric tons)? (A metric ton is 1000 kg.)

Given: energy per mole of ice and mass of iceberg

Asked for: energy required to melt iceberg

Strategy:

A. Calculate the number of moles of ice contained in 1 million metric tons (1.00×10^6 metric tons) of ice.
B. Calculate the energy needed to melt the ice by multiplying the number of moles of ice in the iceberg by the amount of energy required to melt 1 mol of ice.

Solution A

Because enthalpy is an extensive property, the amount of energy required to melt ice depends on the amount of ice present. We are given Δ*H* for the process—that is, the amount of energy needed to melt 1 mol (or 18.015 g) of ice—so we need to calculate the number of moles of ice in the iceberg and multiply that number by Δ*H* (+6.01 kJ/mol):

$$moles\ H_2O = 1.00 \times 10^6\ \cancel{metric\ tons}\ H_2O \left(\frac{1000\ \cancel{kg}}{1\ \cancel{metric\ ton}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ \cancel{g}}{1\ \cancel{kg}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ mol\ H_2O}{18.015\ \cancel{g\ H_2O}}\right)$$

$$= 5.55 \times 10^{10}\ mol H_2O$$

Solution B

he energy needed to melt the iceberg is thus

$$\left(\frac{6.01\ kJ}{\cancel{mol\ H_2O}}\right)\left(5.55\times10^{10}\ \cancel{mol\ H_2O}\right)=3.34\times10^{11}\ kJ$$

Because so much energy is needed to melt the iceberg, this plan would require a relatively inexpensive source of energy to be practical. To give you some idea of the scale of such an operation, the amounts of different energy sources equivalent to the amount of energy needed to melt the iceberg are shown in the table below.

Possible sources of the approximately 3.34 × 10^{11} kJ needed to melt a 1.00 × 10^{6} metric ton iceberg

- Combustion of 3.8 × 10^{3} ft^{3} of natural gas
- Combustion of 68,000 barrels of oil
- Combustion of 15,000 tons of coal
- 1.1 × 10^{8} kilowatt-hours of electricity

7.6.1Exerc

If 17.3 g of powdered aluminum are allowed to react with excess $\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}$, how much heat is produced?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Types of Enthalpies of Reactions

One way to report the heat absorbed or released would be to compile a massive set of reference tables that list the enthalpy changes for all possible chemical reactions, which would require an incredible amount of effort. Fortunately, Hess's law allows us to calculate the enthalpy change for virtually any conceivable chemical reaction using a relatively small set of tabulated data, such as the following:

- **Enthalpy of combustion** (ΔH_{comb}) is the change in enthalpy that occurs during a combustion reaction. Enthalpy changes have been measured for the combustion of virtually any substance that will burn in oxygen; these values are usually reported as the enthalpy of combustion per mole of substance.
- **Enthalpy of fusion** (ΔH_{fus}) is the enthalpy change that accompanies the melting (fusion) of 1 mol of a substance. The enthalpy change that accompanies the melting, or fusion, of 1 mol of a substance; these values have been measured for almost all the elements and for most simple compounds.
- **Enthalpy of vaporization** (ΔH_{vap}) is the enthalpy change that accompanies the vaporization of 1 mol of a substance. The enthalpy change that accompanies the vaporization of 1 mol of a substance; these values have also been measured for nearly all the elements and for most volatile compounds.
- **Enthalpy of solution** (ΔH_{soln}) is the change in enthalpy that occurs when a specified amount of solute dissolves in a given quantity of solvent.

Table 7.6.1: Enthalpies of Vaporization and Fusion for Selected Substances at Their Boiling Points and Melting Points

Substance	ΔH_{vap} (kJ/mol)	ΔH_{fus} (kJ/mol)
argon (Ar)	6.3	1.3
methane (CH_4)	9.2	0.84
ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH)	39.3	7.6
benzene (C_6H_6)	31.0	10.9
water (H_2O)	40.7	6.0
mercury (Hg)	59.0	2.29

Substance	ΔH_{vap} (kJ/mol)	ΔH_{fus} (kJ/mol)
iron (Fe)	340	14

The sign convention is the same for all enthalpy changes: negative if heat is released by the system and positive if heat is absorbed by the system.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Enthalpy of Reaction: https://youtu.be/z2KUaIEF9qI

Summary

Enthalpy is a state function used to measure the heat transferred from a system to its surroundings or vice versa at constant pressure. Only the **change in enthalpy** (ΔH) can be measured. A negative ΔH means that heat flows from a system to its surroundings; a positive ΔH means that heat flows into a system from its surroundings. For a chemical reaction, the **enthalpy of reaction** (ΔH_{rxn}) is the difference in enthalpy between products and reactants; the units of ΔH_{rxn} are kilojoules per mole. Reversing a chemical reaction reverses the sign of ΔH_{rxn}.

The magnitude of ΔH_{rxn} also depends on the physical state of the reactants and the products because processes such as melting solids or vaporizing liquids are also accompanied by enthalpy changes: the **enthalpy of fusion** (ΔH_{fus}) and the **enthalpy of vaporization** (ΔH_{vap}), respectively. The overall enthalpy change for a series of reactions is the sum of the enthalpy changes for the individual reactions, which is **Hess's law**. The **enthalpy of combustion** (ΔH_{comb}) is the enthalpy change that occurs when a substance is burned in excess oxygen.

Contributors and Attributions

- Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

Answers

- 273 kJ

This page titled 7.6: Heats of Reactions - ΔU and ΔH is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 7.6: Heats of Reactions - ΔU and ΔH by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

7.7: Indirect Determination of ΔH - Hess's Law

Learning Objectives

- To use Hess's law and thermochemical cycles to calculate enthalpy changes of chemical reactions.

Because enthalpy is a state function, the enthalpy change for a reaction depends on only two things:

1. the masses of the reacting substances and
2. the physical states of the reactants and products.

It does **not** depend on the path by which reactants are converted to products. If you climbed a mountain, for example, the altitude change would not depend on whether you climbed the entire way without stopping or you stopped many times to take a break. If you stopped often, the overall change in altitude would be the sum of the changes in altitude for each short stretch climbed. Similarly, when we add two or more balanced chemical equations to obtain a net chemical equation, ΔH for the net reaction is the sum of the ΔH values for the individual reactions. This principle is called Hess's law, after the Swiss-born Russian chemist Germain Hess (1802–1850), a pioneer in the study of thermochemistry. Hess's law allows us to calculate ΔH values for reactions that are difficult to carry out directly by adding together the known ΔH values for individual steps that give the overall reaction, even though the overall reaction may not actually occur via those steps.

We can illustrate Hess's law using the thermite reaction. The overall reaction shown in Equation 7.7.1 can be viewed as occurring in three distinct steps with known ΔH values. As shown in Figure 7.7.1:

1. The first reaction produces 1 mol of solid aluminum oxide ($\mathrm{Al_2O_3}$) and 2 mol of liquid iron at its melting point of 1758°C (Equation 7.7.1a); the enthalpy change for this reaction is –732.5 kJ/mol of $\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}$.
2. The second reaction is the conversion of 2 mol of liquid iron at 1758°C to 2 mol of solid iron at 1758°C (Equation 7.7.1b); the enthalpy change for this reaction is –13.8 kJ/mol of Fe (–27.6 kJ per 2 mol Fe).
3. In the third reaction, 2 mol of solid iron at 1758°C is converted to 2 mol of solid iron at 25°C (Equation 7.7.1c); the enthalpy change for this reaction is –45.5 kJ/mol of Fe (–91.0 kJ per 2 mol Fe).

As you can see in Figure 7.7.1, the overall reaction is given by the longest arrow (shown on the left), which is the sum of the three shorter arrows (shown on the right). Adding Equations 7.7.1a-7.7.1c} gives the overall reaction, shown Equation 7.7.1d:

$$\begin{array}{rcll} 2Al\,(s,\ 25^oC) + Fe_2O_3\,(s,\ 25^oC) & \rightarrow & 2Fe\,(l,\ 1758^oC) + Al_2O_3\,(s,\ 1758^oC) & \Delta H = -732.5\ kJ \quad (reaction\,a) \\ 2Fe\,(l,\ 1758^oC) & \rightarrow & 2Fe\,(s,\ 1758^oC) & \Delta H = -\ 27.6\ kJ \quad (reaction\,b) \\ 2Fe\,(s,\ 1758^oC) + 2Al\,(s,\ 1758^oC) & \rightarrow & 2Fe\,(s,\ 25^oC) + 2Al\,(s,\ 25^oC) & \Delta H = -\ 91.0\ kJ \quad (reaction\,c) \\ 2Al\,(s,\ 25^oC) + Fe_2O_3\,(s,\ 25^oC) & \rightarrow & 2Al\,(s,\ 25^oC) + 2Fe_2O_3\,(s,\ 25^oC) & \Delta H = -852.2\ kJ \quad (total\ reaction\,d) \end{array} \tag{7.7.1}$$

By Hess's law, the enthalpy change for part (d) is the sum of the enthalpy changes for parts (a), (b), and (c). In essence, Hess's law enables us to calculate the enthalpy change for the sum of a series of reactions without having to draw a diagram like that in Figure 7.7.1.

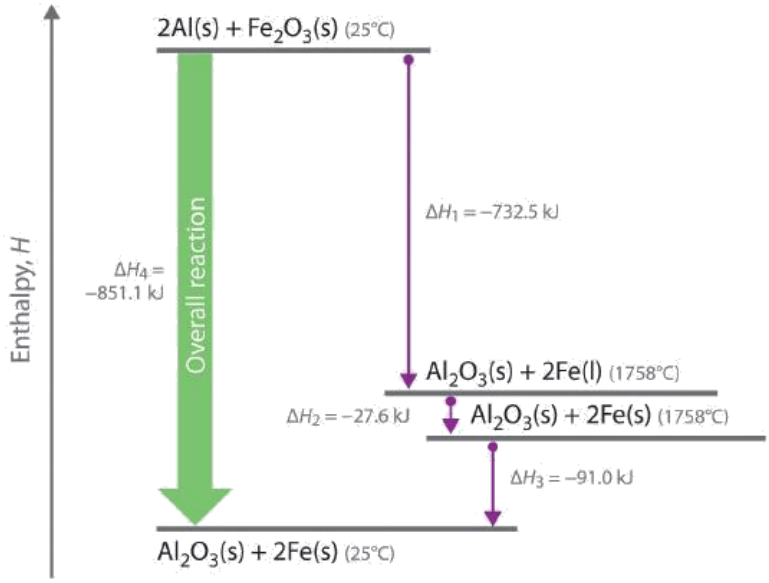


Figure 7.7.1: Energy Changes Accompanying the Thermite Reaction. Because enthalpy is a state function, the overall enthalpy change for the reaction of 2 mol of Al(s) with 1 mol of Fe_2O_3(s) is −851.1 kJ, whether the reaction occurs in a single step (ΔH_4, shown on the left) or in three hypothetical steps (shown on the right) that involve the successive formation of solid Al_2O_3 and liquid iron (ΔH_1), solid iron at 1758°C (ΔH_2), and solid iron at 25°C (ΔH_3). Thus $\Delta H_4 = \Delta H_1 + \Delta H_2 + \Delta H_3$, as stated by Hess's law.

Comparing parts (a) and (d) in Equation 7.7.1 also illustrates an important point: The magnitude of ΔH for a reaction depends on the physical states of the reactants and the products (gas, liquid, solid, or solution). When the product is liquid iron at its melting point (part (a) in Equation 7.7.1), only 732.5 kJ of heat are released to the surroundings compared with 852 kJ when the product is solid iron at 25°C (part (d) in Equation 7.7.1). The difference, 120 kJ, is the amount of energy that is released when 2 mol of liquid iron solidifies and cools to 25°C. It is important to specify the physical state of all reactants and products when writing a thermochemical equation.

When using Hess's law to calculate the value of ΔH for a reaction, follow this procedure:

1. Identify the equation whose ΔH value is unknown and write individual reactions with known ΔH values that, when added together, will give the desired equation. We illustrate how to use this procedure in Example 7.7.1.
2. Arrange the chemical equations so that the reaction of interest is the sum of the individual reactions.
3. If a reaction must be reversed, change the sign of ΔH for that reaction. Additionally, if a reaction must be multiplied by a factor to obtain the correct number of moles of a substance, multiply its ΔH value by that same factor.
4. Add together the individual reactions and their corresponding ΔH values to obtain the reaction of interest and the unknown ΔH.

Example 7.7.1

When carbon is burned with limited amounts of oxygen gas (O_2), carbon monoxide (CO) is the main product:

$$2\,C\,(s) + O_2\,(g) \longrightarrow 2\,CO\,(g) \qquad \Delta H = -221.0\ kJ \qquad \text{(reaction 1)}$$

When carbon is burned in excess O_2, carbon dioxide (CO_2) is produced:

$$C\,(s) + O_2\,(g) \ \rightarrow CO_2\,(g) \qquad \Delta H = -393.5\ kJ \qquad \text{(reaction 2)}$$

Use this information to calculate the enthalpy change per mole of CO for the reaction of CO with O_2 to give CO_2.

Given: two balanced chemical equations and their ΔH values

Asked for: enthalpy change for a third reaction

Strategy:

A. After balancing the chemical equation for the overall reaction, write two equations whose ΔH values are known and that, when added together, give the equation for the overall reaction. (Reverse the direction of one or more of the equations as necessary, making sure to also reverse the sign of ΔH.)
B. Multiply the equations by appropriate factors to ensure that they give the desired overall chemical equation when added together. To obtain the enthalpy change per mole of CO, write the resulting equations as a sum, along with the enthalpy change for each.

Solution:

A We begin by writing the balanced chemical equation for the reaction of interest:

$$\mathrm{CO\,(g)} + \tfrac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{O_2\,(g)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2\,(g)} \qquad \Delta H_{rxn} = ? \qquad \text{(reaction 3)}$$

There are at least two ways to solve this problem using Hess's law and the data provided. The simplest is to write two equations that can be added together to give the desired equation and for which the enthalpy changes are known. Observing that CO, a reactant in reaction 2 and a product in Equation reaction 1, we can reverse reaction 1 to give

$$2CO\,(g) \rightarrow 2C\,(s) + O_2\,(g) \qquad \Delta H = +221.0\ kJ$$

Because we have reversed the direction of the reaction, the sign of ΔH is changed. We can use reaction 2, as written because its product, CO_2, is the product we want in reaction 3,:

$$\mathrm{C\,(s) + O_2\,(g) \longrightarrow CO_2\,(s)} \qquad \Delta H = -393.5\ kJ \qquad (7.7.2)$$

B Adding these two equations together does not give the desired reaction, however, because the numbers of C(s) on the left and right sides do not cancel. According to our strategy, we can multiply the second equation by 2 to obtain 2 mol of C(s) as the reactant:

$$\mathrm{2\,C\,(s) + 2\,O_2\,(g) \longrightarrow 2\,CO_2\,(s)} \qquad \Delta H = -787.0\ kJ \qquad (7.7.3)$$

Writing the resulting equations as a sum, along with the enthalpy change for each, gives

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 2CO\,(g) & \rightarrow & \cancel{2C\,(s)} + \cancel{O_2\,(g)} \quad \Delta H = -\Delta H_1 = +221.0\ kJ \\ \cancel{2C\,(s)} + \cancel{2}\,O_2\,(g) & \rightarrow & 2CO_2\,(g) \quad \Delta H = -\Delta 2H_2 = -787.0\ kJ \\ 2CO\,(g) + O_2\,(g) & \rightarrow & 2CO_2\,(g) \quad \Delta H = -566.0\ kJ \end{array} \qquad (7.7.4)$$

Note that the overall chemical equation and the enthalpy change for the reaction are both for the reaction of 2 mol of CO with O_2, and the problem asks for the amount per mole of CO. Consequently, we must divide both sides of the final equation and the magnitude of ΔH by 2:

$$CO\,(g) + \tfrac{1}{2}O_2\,(g) \rightarrow CO_2\,(g) \quad \Delta H = -283.0\ kJ$$

An alternative and equally valid way to solve this problem is to write the two given equations as occurring in steps. Note that we have multiplied the equations by the appropriate factors to allow us to cancel terms:

$$\begin{array}{llcl} (A) & 2C\,(s) + O_2\,(g) \rightarrow \cancel{2CO\,(g)} & \Delta H_A = \Delta H_1 = & +221.0\ kJ \\ (B) & \cancel{2CO\,(g)} + O_2\,(g) \rightarrow 2CO_2\,(g) & \Delta H_B = & ? \\ (C) & 2C\,(s) + 2O_2\,(g) \rightarrow 2CO_2\,(g) & \Delta H = 2\Delta H_2 = 2 \times (-393.5\ kJ) = & -787.0\ kJ \end{array} \qquad (7.7.5)$$

The sum of reactions A and B is reaction C, which corresponds to the combustion of 2 mol of carbon to give CO_2. From Hess's law, $\Delta H_A + \Delta H_B = \Delta H_C$, and we are given ΔH for reactions A and C. Substituting the appropriate values gives

$$-221.0\ kJ + \Delta H_B = -787.0\ kJ$$
$$\Delta H_B = -566.0$$

This is again the enthalpy change for the conversion of 2 mol of CO to CO_2. The enthalpy change for the conversion of 1 mol of CO to CO_2 is therefore –566.0 ÷ 2 = –283.0 kJ/mol of CO, which is the same result we obtained earlier. As you can see, there may be more than one correct way to solve a problem.

Exercise 7.7.1

The reaction of acetylene (C_2H_2) with hydrogen (H_2) can produce either ethylene (C_2H_4) or ethane (C_2H_6):

$$C_2H_2\,(g) + H_2\,(g) \rightarrow C_2H_4\,(g) \quad \Delta H = -175.7\ kJ/mol\ C_2H_2$$
$$C_2H_2\,(g) + 2H_2\,(g) \rightarrow C_2H_6\,(g) \quad \Delta H = -312.0\ kJ/mol\ C_2H_2$$

What is ΔH for the reaction of C_2H_4 with H_2 to form C_2H_6?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

Hess's law is that the overall enthalpy change for a series of reactions is the sum of the enthalpy changes for the individual reactions. For a chemical reaction, the **enthalpy of reaction** (ΔH_{rxn}) is the difference in enthalpy between products and reactants; the units of ΔH_{rxn} are kilojoules per mole. Reversing a chemical reaction reverses the sign of ΔH_{rxn}.

Contributors and Attributions

- Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

Answers

Exercise 7.7.1

–136.3 kJ/mol of C_2H_4

This page titled 7.7: Indirect Determination of ΔH - Hess's Law is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

7.8: Standard Enthalpies of Formation

Learning Objectives

- To understand Enthalpies of Formation and be able to use them to calculate Enthalpies of Reaction

One way to report the heat absorbed or released by chemical reactions would be to compile a massive set of reference tables that list the enthalpy changes for all possible chemical reactions, which would require an incredible amount of effort. Fortunately, Hess's law allows us to calculate the enthalpy change for virtually any conceivable chemical reaction using a relatively small set of tabulated data, starting from the elemental forms of each atom at 25 °C and 1 atm pressure.

Enthalpy of formation (ΔH_f) is the enthalpy change for the formation of 1 mol of a compound from its component elements, such as the formation of carbon dioxide from carbon and oxygen. The formation of any chemical can be as a reaction from the corresponding elements:

$$\text{elements} \rightarrow \text{compound}$$

which in terms of the the Enthalpy of formation becomes

$$\Delta H_{rxn} = \Delta H_f \tag{7.8.1}$$

For example, consider the combustion of carbon:

$$\mathrm{C\,(s) + O_2\,(g) \longrightarrow CO_2\,(g)}$$

then

$$\Delta H_{rxn} = \Delta H_f\,[CO_2\,(g)]$$

The sign convention for ΔH_f is the same as for any enthalpy change: $\Delta H_f < 0$ if heat is released when elements combine to form a compound and $\Delta H_f > 0$ if heat is absorbed.

> The sign convention is the same for all enthalpy changes: negative if heat is released by the system and positive if heat is absorbed by the system.

Standard Enthalpies of Formation

The magnitude of ΔH for a reaction depends on the physical states of the reactants and the products (gas, liquid, solid, or solution), the pressure of any gases present, and the temperature at which the reaction is carried out. To avoid confusion caused by differences in reaction conditions and ensure uniformity of data, the scientific community has selected a specific set of conditions under which enthalpy changes are measured. These standard conditions serve as a reference point for measuring differences in enthalpy, much as sea level is the reference point for measuring the height of a mountain or for reporting the altitude of an airplane.

The standard conditions for which most thermochemical data are tabulated are a *pressure* of 1 atmosphere (atm) for all gases and a *concentration* of 1 M for all species in solution (1 mol/L). In addition, each pure substance must be in its standard state, which is usually its most stable form at a pressure of 1 atm at a specified temperature. We assume a temperature of 25°C (298 K) for all enthalpy changes given in this text, unless otherwise indicated. Enthalpies of formation measured under these conditions are called **standard enthalpies of formation** (ΔH_f^o) The enthalpy change for the formation of 1 mol of a compound from its component elements when the component elements are each in their standard states. The standard enthalpy of formation of any element in its most stable form is zero by definition.

> The standard enthalpy of formation of any element in its standard state is zero by definition.

For example, although oxygen can exist as ozone (O_3), atomic oxygen (O), and molecular oxygen (O_2), O_2 is the most stable form at 1 atm pressure and 25°C. Similarly, hydrogen is H_2(g), not atomic hydrogen (H). Graphite and diamond are both forms of elemental carbon, but because graphite is more stable at 1 atm pressure and 25°C, the standard state of carbon is graphite (Figure 7.8.1). Therefore, $\mathrm{O_2\,(g)}$, $\mathrm{H_2\,(g)}$, and graphite have ΔH_f^o values of zero.



Figure 7.8.1: Elemental Carbon. Although graphite and diamond are both forms of elemental carbon, graphite is slightly more stable at 1 atm pressure and 25°C than diamond is. Given enough time, diamond will revert to graphite under these conditions. Hence graphite is the standard state of carbon.

The standard enthalpy of formation of glucose from the elements at 25°C is the enthalpy change for the following reaction:

$$6C\,(s, graphite) + 6H_2\,(g) + 3O_2\,(g) \rightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6\,(s) \quad \Delta H_f^o = -1273.3\ kJ \tag{7.8.2}$$

It is not possible to measure the value of $\Delta H^o o_f$ for glucose, –1273.3 kJ/mol, by simply mixing appropriate amounts of graphite, $\mathrm{O_2}$, and $\mathrm{H_2}$ and measuring the heat evolved as glucose is formed since the reaction shown in Equation 7.8.2 does not occur at a measurable rate under any known conditions. Glucose is not unique; most compounds cannot be prepared by the chemical equations that define their standard enthalpies of formation. Instead, values of $\Delta H^o o_f$ are obtained using **Hess's law** and standard enthalpy changes that have been measured for other reactions, such as combustion reactions. Values of ΔH_f^o for an extensive list of compounds are given in Table T1. Note that ΔH_f^o values are always reported in kilojoules per mole of the substance of interest. Also notice in Table T1 that the standard enthalpy of formation of O_2(g) is zero because it is the most stable form of oxygen in its standard state.

Example 7.8.1: Enthalpy of Formation

For the formation of each compound, write a balanced chemical equation corresponding to the standard enthalpy of formation of each compound.

a. $\mathrm{HCl\,(g)}$
b. $\mathrm{MgCO_3\,(s)}$
c. $\mathrm{CH_3(CH_2)_{14}CO_2H\,(s)}$ (*palmitic acid*)

Given: available at the end of this section.

Exercise 7.8.1

For the formation of each compound, write a balanced chemical equation corresponding to the standard enthalpy of formation of each compound.

a. $\mathrm{NaCl(s)}$
b. $\mathrm{H_2SO_4(l)}$
c. $\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H(l)}$ (*acetic acid*)

Answer a available at the end of this section.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Definition of Heat of Formation Reactions: https://youtu.be/A20k0CK4doI

Standard Enthalpies of Reaction

Tabulated values of standard enthalpies of formation can be used to calculate enthalpy changes for *any* reaction involving substances whose ΔH_f^o values are known. The standard enthalpy of reaction ΔH_{rxn}^o is the enthalpy change that occurs when a reaction is carried out with all reactants and products in their standard states. Consider the general reaction

$$aA + bB \rightarrow cC + dD \tag{7.8.3}$$

where A, B, C, and D are chemical substances and a, b, c, and d are their stoichiometric coefficients. The magnitude of ΔH^o is the sum of the standard enthalpies of formation of the products, each multiplied by its appropriate coefficient, minus the sum of the standard enthalpies of formation of the reactants, also multiplied by their coefficients:

$$\Delta H_{rxn}^o = \underbrace{\left[c\Delta H_f^o(C) + d\Delta H_f^o(D)\right]}_{\text{products}} - \underbrace{\left[a\Delta H_f^o(A) + b\Delta H_f^o(B)\right]}_{\text{reactants}} \tag{7.8.4}$$

More generally, we can write

$$\Delta H_{rxn}^o = \sum m\Delta H_f^o(products) - \sum n\Delta H_f^o(reactants) \tag{7.8.5}$$

where the symbol $\sum$ means “sum of” and m and n are the stoichiometric coefficients of each of the products and the reactants, respectively. “Products minus reactants” summations such as Equation 7.8.5 arise from the fact that enthalpy is a state function. Because many other thermochemical quantities are also state functions, “products minus reactants” summations are very common in chemistry; we will encounter many others in subsequent chapters.

"Products minus reactants" summations are typical of state functions.

To demonstrate the use of tabulated ΔH^0 values, we will use them to calculate ΔH_{rxn} for the combustion of glucose, the reaction that provides energy for your brain:

$$\mathrm{C_6H_{12}O_6(s) + 6\,O_2(g) \rightarrow 6\,CO_2(g) + 6\,H_2O(l)} \tag{7.8.6}$$

Using Equation 7.8.5, we write

$$\Delta H_f^o = \left\{6\Delta H_f^o\left[CO_2(g)\right] + 6\Delta H_f^o\left[H_2O(g)\right]\right\} - \left\{\Delta H_f^o\left[C_6H_{12}O_6(s)\right] + 6\Delta H_f^o\left[O_2(g)\right]\right\} \tag{7.8.7}$$

From Table T1, the relevant ΔH^0_f values are ΔH^0_f [CO_2(g)] = -393.5 kJ/mol, ΔH^0_f [H_2O(l)] = -285.8 kJ/mol, and ΔH^0_f [$C_6H_{12}O_6$(s)] = -1273.3 kJ/mol. Because O_2(g) is a pure element in its standard state, ΔH^0_f [O_2(g)] = 0 kJ/mol. Inserting these values into

Equation 7.8.7 and changing the subscript to indicate that this is a combustion reaction, we obtain

$$\Delta H^o_{comb} = [6\,(-393.5\ kJ/mol) + 6\,(-285.8\ kJ/mol)] - [-1273.3 + 6\,(0\ kJ\ mol)] \tag{7.8.8}$$

$$= -2802.5\ kJ/mol \tag{7.8.9}$$

As illustrated in Figure 7.8.2, we can use Equation 7.8.8 to calculate ΔH^o_f for glucose because enthalpy is a state function. The figure shows two pathways from reactants (middle left) to products (bottom). The more direct pathway is the downward green arrow labeled ΔH^o_{comb}. The alternative hypothetical pathway consists of **four separate reactions** that convert the reactants to the elements in their standard states (upward purple arrow at left) and then convert the elements into the desired products (downward purple arrows at right). The reactions that convert the reactants to the elements are the reverse of the equations that define the ΔH^o_f values of the reactants. Consequently, the enthalpy changes are

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta H^o_1 &= \Delta H^o_f\,[glucose\,(s)] \\
&= -1\ \cancel{mol\ glucose}\left(\frac{1273.3\ kJ}{1\ \cancel{mol\ glucose}}\right) \\
&= +1273.3\ kJ \\
\Delta H^o_2 &= 6\Delta H^o_f\,[O_2\,(g)] \\
&= 6\ \cancel{mol\ O_2}\left(\frac{0\ kJ}{1\ \cancel{mol\ O_2}}\right) \\
&= 0\ kJ
\end{aligned} \tag{7.8.10}$$

Recall that when we reverse a reaction, we must also reverse the **sign** of the accompanying enthalpy change (Equation 7.8.4 since the products are now reactants and vice versa.

The overall enthalpy change for conversion of the reactants (1 mol of glucose and 6 mol of O_2) to the elements is therefore +1273.3 kJ.

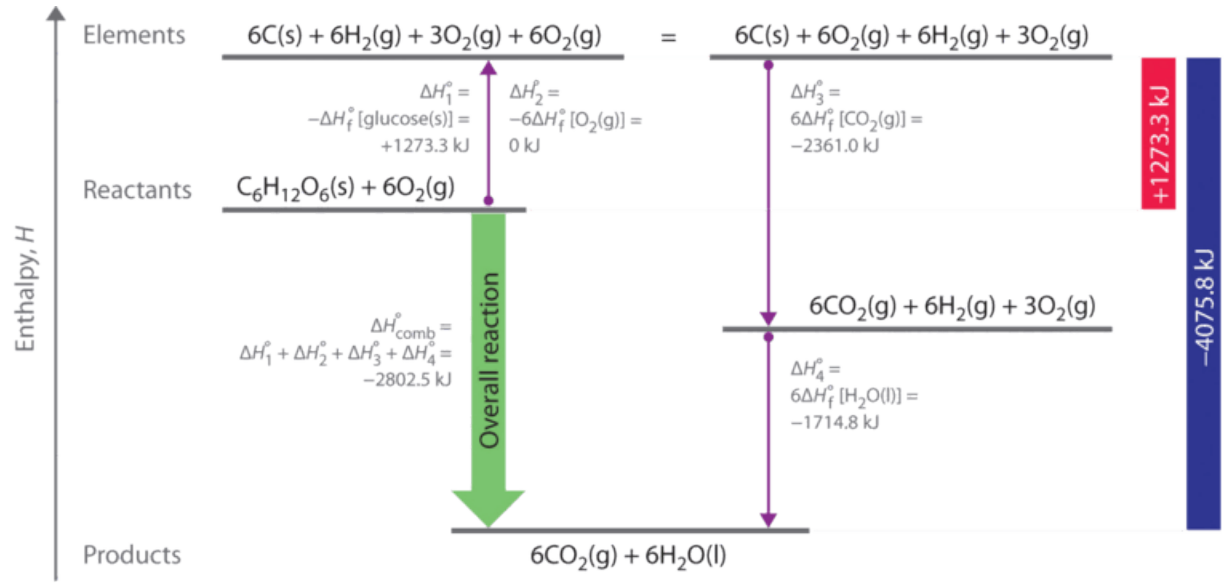


Figure 7.8.1: A Thermochemical Cycle for the Combustion of Glucose. Two hypothetical pathways are shown from the reactants to the products. The green arrow labeled ΔH^o_{comb} indicates the combustion reaction. Alternatively, we could first convert the reactants to the elements via the reverse of the equations that define their standard enthalpies of formation (the upward arrow, labeled ΔH^o_1 and ΔH^o_2). Then we could convert the elements to the products via the equations used to define their standard enthalpies of formation (the downward arrows, labeled ΔH^o_3 and ΔH^o_4). Because enthalpy is a state function, ΔH^o_{comb} is equal to the sum of the enthalpy changes $\Delta H^o_1 + \Delta H^o_2 + \Delta H^o_3 + \Delta H^o_4$.

The reactions that convert the elements to final products (downward purple arrows in Figure 7.8.2) are identical to those used to define the ΔH^o_f values of the products. Consequently, the enthalpy changes (from Table T1) are

$$\Delta H_3^o = \Delta H_f^o\left[CO_2\left(g\right)\right] = 6\ \cancel{mol\ CO_2}\left(\frac{393.5\ kJ}{1\ \cancel{mol\ CO_2}}\right) = -2361.0\ kJ$$
$$\Delta H_4^o = 6\Delta H_f^o\left[H_2O\left(l\right)\right] = 6\ \cancel{mol\ H_2O}\left(\frac{-285.8\ kJ}{1\ \cancel{mol\ H_2O}}\right) = -1714.8\ kJ \tag{7.8.11}$$

The overall enthalpy change for the conversion of the elements to products (6 mol of carbon dioxide and 6 mol of liquid water) is therefore –4075.8 kJ. Because enthalpy is a state function, the difference in enthalpy between an initial state and a final state can be computed using *any* pathway that connects the two. Thus the enthalpy change for the combustion of glucose to carbon dioxide and water is the sum of the enthalpy changes for the conversion of glucose and oxygen to the elements (+1273.3 kJ) and for the conversion of the elements to carbon dioxide and water (–4075.8 kJ):

$$\Delta H_{comb}^o = +1273.3\ kJ + (-4075.8\ kJ) = -2802.5\ kJ \tag{7.8.12}$$

This is the same result we obtained using the "products minus reactants" rule (Equation 7.8.5) and ΔH^0_f values. The two results must be the same because Equation 7.8.12 is just a more compact way of describing the thermochemical cycle shown in Figure 7.8.1.

Example 7.8.2: Heat of Combustion

Long-chain fatty acids such as palmitic acid ($CH_3(CH_2)_{14}CO_2H$) are one of the two major sources of energy in our diet (ΔH_f^o =–891.5 kJ/mol). Use the data in Table T1 to calculate ΔH^0_{comb} for the combustion of palmitic acid. Based on the energy released in combustion *per gram*, which is the better fuel — glucose or palmitic acid?

Given: compound and ΔH_f^o values

Asked for: ΔH_{comb}^o per mole and per gram

Strategy:

A. After writing the balanced chemical equation for the reaction, use Equation 7.8.5 and the values from Table T1 to calculate ΔH_{comb}^o the energy released by the combustion of 1 mol of palmitic acid.
B. Divide this value by the molar mass of palmitic acid to find the energy released from the combustion of 1 g of palmitic acid. Compare this value with the value calculated in Equation 7.8.8 for the combustion of glucose to determine which is the better fuel.

Solution:

A To determine the energy released by the combustion of palmitic acid, we need to calculate its ΔH_f^o. As always, the first requirement is a balanced chemical equation:

$$C_{16}H_{32}O_{2(s)} + 23O_{2(g)} \rightarrow 16CO_{2(g)} + 16H_2O_{(l)}$$

Using Equation 7.8.5 ("products minus reactants") with ΔH^0_f values from Table T1 (and omitting the physical states of the reactants and products to save space) gives

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H_{comb}^o &= \sum m\Delta H_f^o\left(products\right) - \sum n\Delta H_f^o\left(reactants\right)\\ &= \left[16\left(-393.5\ kJ/mol\ CO_2\right) + 16\left(-285.8\ kJ/mol\ H_2O\right)\right]\\ &\quad - \left[-891.5\ kJ/mol\ C_{16}H_{32}O_2 + 23\left(0\ kJ/mol\ O_2\right)\right]\\ &= -9977.3\ kJ/mol\end{aligned}$$

This is the energy released by the combustion of 1 mol of palmitic acid.

B The energy released by the combustion of 1 g of palmitic acid is

$$\Delta H^o_{comb}\ \ per\ \ gram = \left(\frac{9977.3\ kJ}{\cancel{1\ mol}}\right)\left(\frac{\cancel{1\ mol}}{256.42\ g}\right) = -38.910\ \ kJ/g$$

As calculated in Equation 7.8.8, \(ΔH^o_f\) of glucose is –2802.5 kJ/mol. The energy released by the combustion of 1 g of glucose is therefore

$$\Delta H^o_{comb}\ \ per\ \ gram = \left(\frac{-2802.5\ kJ}{\cancel{1\ mol}}\right)\left(\frac{\cancel{1\ mol}}{180.16\ g}\right) = -15.556\ \ kJ/g$$

The combustion of fats such as palmitic acid releases more than twice as much energy per gram as the combustion of sugars such as glucose. This is one reason many people try to minimize the fat content in their diets to lose weight.

Exercise 7.8.2: Water–gas shift reaction

Use Table T1 to calculate ΔH^o_{rxn} for the *water–gas shift reaction*, which is used industrially on an enormous scale to obtain H_2(g):

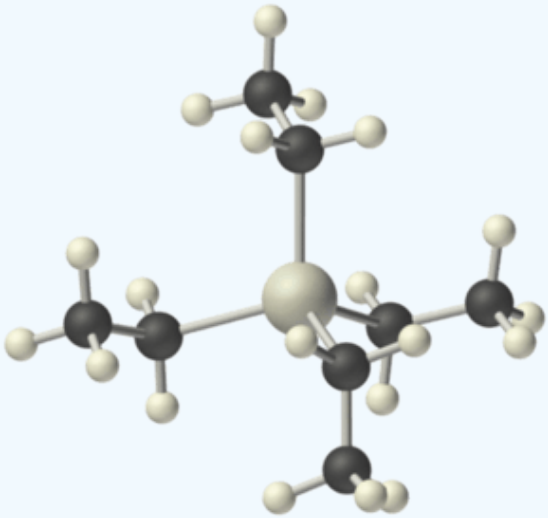
$$\mathrm{CO\ (\ g\ ) + H_2O\ (g\ ) \longrightarrow CO_2\,(g) + H_2\ (\ g\ )}$$

Answer available at the end of this section.

We can also measure the enthalpy change for another reaction, such as a combustion reaction, and then use it to calculate a compound's ΔH^o_f which we cannot obtain otherwise. This procedure is illustrated in Example 7.8.3.

Example 7.8.3: Tetraethyllead

Beginning in 1923, tetraethyllead [$(C_2H_5)_4Pb$] was used as an antiknock additive in gasoline in the United States. Its use was completely phased out in 1986 because of the health risks associated with chronic lead exposure. Tetraethyllead is a highly poisonous, colorless liquid that burns in air to give an orange flame with a green halo. The combustion products are $\mathrm{CO_2\,(g)}$, $\mathrm{H_2O\,(l)}$, and red $\mathrm{PbO\,(s)}$. What is the standard enthalpy of formation of tetraethyllead, given that ΔH^o_f is –19.29 kJ/g for the combustion of tetraethyllead and ΔH^o_f of red PbO(s) is –219.0 kJ/mol?



Tetraethyllead

Given: reactant, products, and ΔH^o_{comb} values

Asked for: ΔH_f^o of the reactants

Strategy:

A. Write the balanced chemical equation for the combustion of tetraethyl lead. Then insert the appropriate quantities into Equation 7.8.5 to get the equation for ΔH^0_f of tetraethyl lead.
B. Convert ΔH_{comb}^o per gram given in the problem to ΔH_{comb}^o per mole by multiplying ΔH_{comb}^o per gram by the molar mass of tetraethyllead.
C. Use Table T1 to obtain values of ΔH_f^o for the other reactants and products. Insert these values into the equation for ΔH_f^o of tetraethyl lead and solve the equation.

Solution:

A The balanced chemical equation for the combustion reaction is as follows:

$$2\,(\mathrm{C_2H_5})_4\mathrm{Pb}\,(\mathrm{l}) + 27\,\mathrm{O_2}\,(\mathrm{g}) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{PbO}\,(\mathrm{s}) + 16\,\mathrm{CO_2}\,(\mathrm{g}) + 20\,\mathrm{H_2O}\,(\mathrm{l})$$

Using Equation 7.8.5 gives

$$\Delta H_{comb}^o = \left[2\Delta H_f^o\,(PbO) + 16\Delta H_f^o\,(CO_2) + 20\Delta H_f^o\,(H_2O)\right] - \left[2\Delta H_f^o\,((C_2H_5)_4\,Pb) + 27\Delta H_f^o\,(O_2)\right]$$

Solving for $\Delta H_f^o[(\mathrm{C_2H_5})_4\mathrm{Pb}]$ gives

$$\Delta H_f^o\,((C_2H_5)_4\,Pb) = \Delta H_f^o\,(PbO) + 8\Delta H_f^o\,(CO_2) + 10\Delta H_f^o\,(H_2O) - \frac{27}{2}\Delta H_f^o\,(O_2) - \frac{\Delta H_{comb}^o}{2}$$

The values of all terms other than $\Delta H_f^o[(\mathrm{C_2H_5})_4\mathrm{Pb}]$ are given in Table T1.

B The magnitude of ΔH_{comb}^o is given in the problem in kilojoules per *gram* of tetraethyl lead. We must therefore multiply this value by the molar mass of tetraethyl lead (323.44 g/mol) to get ΔH_{comb}^o for 1 mol of tetraethyl lead:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H_{comb}^o &= \left(\frac{-19.29\ kJ}{\cancel{g}}\right)\left(\frac{323.44\ \cancel{g}}{mol}\right)\\ &= -6329\ kJ/mol\end{aligned}$$

Because the balanced chemical equation contains 2 mol of tetraethyllead, ΔH_{rxn}^o is

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H_{rxn}^o &= 2\ \cancel{mol\ (C_2H5)_4\,Pb}\left(\frac{-6329\ kJ}{1\ \cancel{mol\ (C_2H5)_4\,Pb}}\right)\\ &= -12,480\ kJ\end{aligned}$$

C Inserting the appropriate values into the equation for $\Delta H_f^o[(\mathrm{C_2H_5})_4\mathrm{Pb}]$ gives

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H_f^o\,[(C_2H_4)_4\,Pb] &= [1\ mol\ PbO\ \times 219.0\ kJ/mol] + [8\ mol\ CO_2 \times (-393.5\ kJ/mol)] + [10\ mol\ H_2O \times (-285.8\ kJ/mol)] + [-27/2\ mol\ O_2) \times 0\ kJ/mol\ O_2]\,[12,480.2\ kJ/mol\ \ (C_2H_5)_4\,Pb]\\ &= -219.0\ kJ - 3148\ kJ - 2858kJ - 0kJ + 6240\ kJ = 15kJ/mol\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 7.8.3

Ammonium sulfate, $(\mathrm{NH_4})_2\mathrm{SO_4}$, is used as a fire retardant and wood preservative; it is prepared industrially by the highly exothermic reaction of gaseous ammonia with sulfuric acid:

$$2\,\mathrm{NH_3}\,(\mathrm{g}) + \mathrm{H_2SO_4}\,(\mathrm{aq}) \ \rightarrow (\mathrm{NH_4})_2\mathrm{SO_4}\,(\mathrm{s})$$

The value of ΔH_{rxn}^o is -179.4 kJ/mole $\mathrm{H_2SO_4}$. Use the data in Table T1 to calculate the standard enthalpy of formation of ammonium sulfate (in kilojoules per mole).

Answer available at the end of this section.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Calculating DH° using DHf°: https://youtu.be/Y3aJJno9W2c

Summary

- The standard state for measuring and reporting enthalpies of formation or reaction is 25 °C and 1 atm.
- The elemental form of each atom is that with the lowest enthalpy in the standard state.
- The standard state heat of formation for the elemental form of each atom is zero.

The **enthalpy of formation** (ΔH_f) is the enthalpy change that accompanies the formation of a compound from its elements. **Standard enthalpies of formation** (ΔH_f^o) are determined under **standard conditions**: a pressure of 1 atm for gases and a concentration of 1 M for species in solution, with all pure substances present in their **standard states** (their most stable forms at 1 atm pressure and the temperature of the measurement). The standard heat of formation of any element in its most stable form is defined to be zero. The **standard enthalpy of reaction** (ΔH_{rxn}^o) can be calculated from the sum of the **standard enthalpies of formation** of the products (each multiplied by its stoichiometric coefficient) minus the sum of the standard enthalpies of formation of the reactants (each multiplied by its stoichiometric coefficient)—the "products minus reactants" rule. The **enthalpy of solution** (ΔH_{soln}) is the heat released or absorbed when a specified amount of a solute dissolves in a certain quantity of solvent at constant pressure.

Contributors and Attributions

- Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

Answers

Example $7.8.1$**: Enthalpy of Formation**

compound formula and phase.

balanced chemical equation for its formation from elements in standard states

Use Table T1 to identify the standard state for each element. Write a chemical equation that describes the formation of the compound from the elements in their standard states and then balance it so that 1 mol of product is made.

To calculate the standard enthalpy of formation of a compound, we must start with the elements in their standard states. The standard state of an element can be identified in Table T1: by a ΔH_f^o value of 0 kJ/mol.

Hydrogen chloride contains one atom of hydrogen and one atom of chlorine. Because the standard states of elemental hydrogen and elemental chlorine are $\mathrm{H_2\,(g)}$ and $\mathrm{Cl_2\,(g)}$, respectively, the unbalanced chemical equation is

$$\mathrm{H_2\,(g) + Cl_2\,(g) \;\rightarrow HCl\,(g)}$$

Fractional coefficients are required in this case because ΔH°_f values are reported for *1 mol* of the product, HCl. Multiplying both $\mathrm{H_2\,(g)}$ and $\mathrm{Cl_2\,(g)}$ by 1/2 balances the equation:

$$\mathrm{\tfrac{1}{2}\,H_2\,(g) + \tfrac{1}{2}\,Cl_2\,(g) \;\rightarrow HCl\,(g)}$$

The standard states of the elements in this compound are $\mathrm{Mg\,(s)}$, $\mathrm{C\,(s,\,graphite)}$, and $\mathrm{O_2\,(g)}$. The unbalanced chemical equation is thus

$$\mathrm{Mg\,(s) + C\,(s,\,graphite) + O_2\,(g) \;\rightarrow MgCO_3\,(s)}$$

This equation can be balanced by inspection to give

$$\mathrm{Mg\,(s) + C\,(s,\,graphite) + \tfrac{3}{2}\,O_2\;(g) \rightarrow MgCO_3\,(s)}$$

Palmitic acid, the major fat in meat and dairy products, contains hydrogen, carbon, and oxygen, so the unbalanced chemical equation for its formation from the elements in their standard states is as follows:

$$\mathrm{C(s, graphite) + H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow CH_3(CH_2)_{14}CO_2H(s)}$$

There are 16 carbon atoms and 32 hydrogen atoms in 1 mol of palmitic acid, so the balanced chemical equation is

$$\mathrm{16\,C(s, graphite) + 16\,H_2(g) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow CH_3(CH_2)_{14}CO_2H(s)}$$

Exercise 7.8.1

$$\mathrm{Na(s) + \tfrac{1}{2}\,Cl_2(g) \rightarrow NaCl(s)}$$

$$\mathrm{H_2(g) + \tfrac{1}{8}\,S_8(s) + 2\,O_2(\ g) \rightarrow H_2\ SO_4(\ l)}$$

$$\mathrm{2\,C(s) + O_2(g) + 2\,H_2(g) \longrightarrow CH_3CO_2H(l)}$$

Exercise 7.8.2**: Water–gas shift reaction**

–41.2 kJ/mol

Exercise 7.8.3

–1181 kJ/mol

This page titled 7.8: Standard Enthalpies of Formation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 7.8: Standard Enthalpies of Formation is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

7.9: Fuels as Sources of Energy

Learning Objectives

- To use thermochemical concepts to solve environmental issues.

Our contemporary society requires the constant expenditure of huge amounts of energy to heat our homes, provide telephone and cable service, transport us from one location to another, provide light when it is dark outside, and run the machinery that manufactures material goods. The United States alone consumes almost 10^6 kJ per person per day, which is about 100 times the normal required energy content of the human diet. This figure is about 30% of the world's total energy usage, although only about 5% of the total population of the world lives in the United States. In contrast, the average energy consumption elsewhere in the world is about 10^5 kJ per person per day, although actual values vary widely depending on a country's level of industrialization. In this section, we describe various sources of energy and their impact on the environment.

Fuels

According to the law of conservation of energy, energy can never actually be "consumed"; it can only be changed from one form to another. What *is* consumed on a huge scale, however, are resources that can be readily converted to a form of energy that is useful for doing work. Energy that is not used to perform work is either stored as potential energy for future use or transferred to the surroundings as heat.

A major reason for the huge consumption of energy by our society is the low *efficiency* of most machines in transforming stored energy into work. Efficiency can be defined as the ratio of useful work accomplished to energy expended. Automobiles, for example, are only about 20% efficient in converting the energy stored in gasoline to mechanical work; the rest of the energy is released as heat, either emitted in the exhaust or produced by friction in bearings and tires. The production of electricity by coal- or oil-powered steam turbines (Figure 7.9.1) is can be more than 50% efficient.

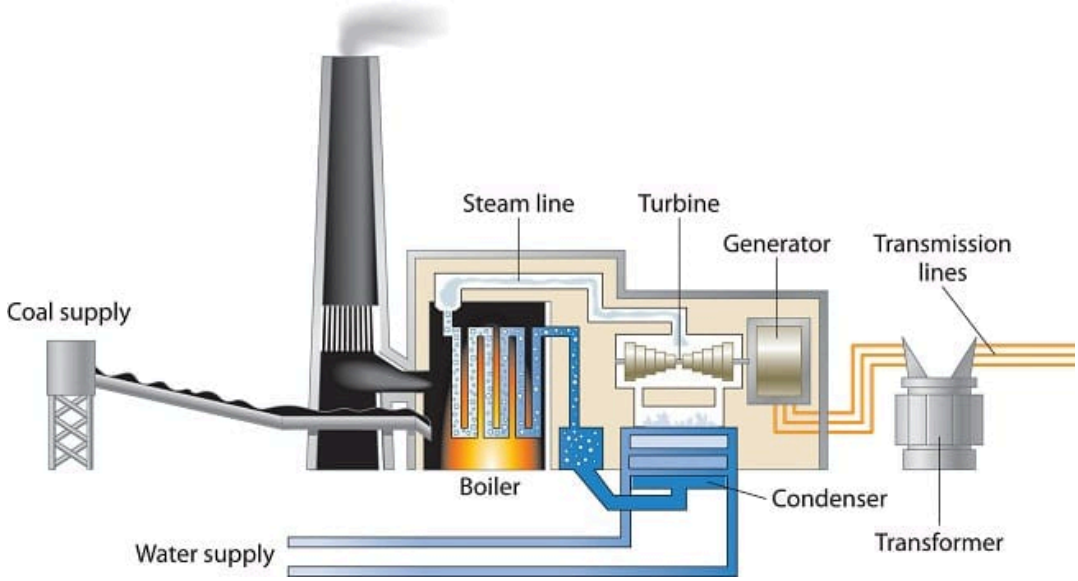


Figure 7.9.1: Electricity from Coal. A coal-powered electric power plant uses the combustion of coal to produce steam, which drives a turbine to produce electricity.

In general, it is more efficient to use primary sources of energy directly (such as natural gas or oil) than to transform them to a secondary source such as electricity prior to their use. For example, if a furnace is well maintained, heating a house with natural gas is about 70% efficient. In contrast, burning the natural gas in a remote power plant, converting it to electricity, transmitting it long distances through wires, and heating the house by electric baseboard heaters have an overall efficiency of less than 35%.

The total expenditure of energy in the world each year is about 3×10^{17} kJ. 80% of this energy is provided by the combustion of fossil fuels: oil, coal, and natural gas (the sources of the energy consumed in the United States in 2019 are shown in Figure 7.9.2). Natural gas and petroleum are the preferred fuels because many of the products derived from them are gases or liquids that are readily transported, stored, and burned. Natural gas and petroleum are derived from the remains of marine creatures that died hundreds of millions of years ago and were buried beneath layers of sediment. As the sediment turned to rock, the tremendous heat and pressure inside Earth transformed the organic components of the buried sea creatures to petroleum and natural gas.

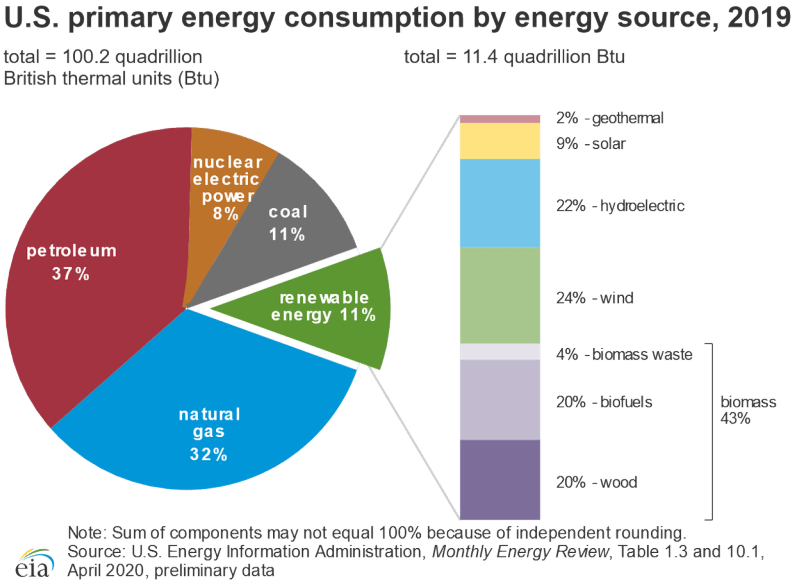


Figure 7.9.2: Energy Consumption in the United States by Source, 2014. More than 75% of the total energy expended is provided by the combustion of fossil fuels, such as oil, coal, and natural gas. (Public Domain; U.S. Energy Information Administration)

Coal

Coal is a complex solid material derived primarily from plants that died and were buried hundreds of millions of years ago and were subsequently subjected to high temperatures and pressures. Because plants contain large amounts of *cellulose*, derived from linked glucose units, the structure of coal is more complex than that of petroleum (Figure 7.9.3). In particular, coal contains a large number of oxygen atoms that link parts of the structure together, in addition to the basic framework of carbon–carbon bonds. It is impossible to draw a single structure for coal; however, because of the prevalence of rings of carbon atoms (due to the original high cellulose content), coal is more similar to an aromatic hydrocarbon than an aliphatic one.

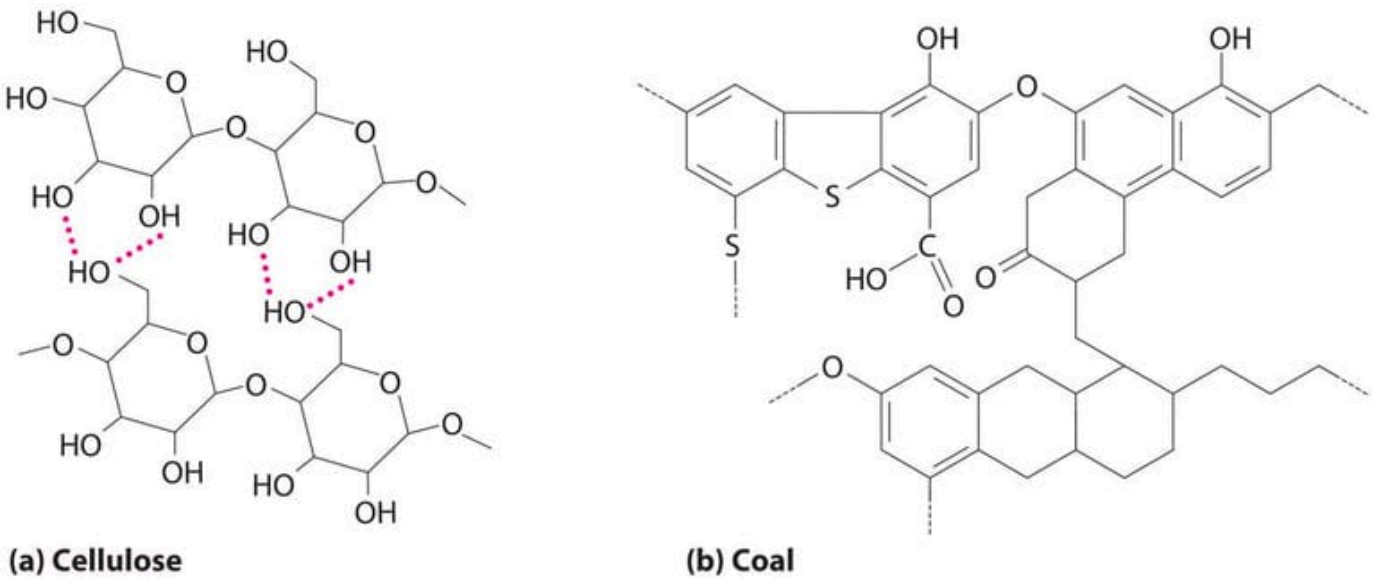


Figure 7.9.3: The Structures of Cellulose and Coal. (a) Cellulose consists of long chains of cyclic glucose molecules linked by hydrogen bonds. (b) When cellulose is subjected to high pressures and temperatures for long periods of time, water is eliminated, and bonds are formed between the rings, eventually producing coal. This drawing shows some of the common structural features of coal; note the presence of many different kinds of ring structures.

Table 7.9.1: Properties of Different Types of Coal

Type	% Carbon	Hydrogen:Carbon Mole Ratio	% Oxygen	% Sulfur	Heat Content	US Deposits
anthracite	92	0.5	3	1	high	Pennsylvania, New York
bituminous	80	0.6	8	5	medium	Appalachia, Midwest, Utah
subbituminous	77	0.9	16	1	medium	Rocky Mountains
lignite	71	1.0	23	1	low	Montana

There are four distinct classes of coal (Table 7.9.1); their hydrogen and oxygen contents depend on the length of time the coal has been buried and the pressures and temperatures to which it has been subjected. Lignite, with a hydrogen:carbon ratio of about 1.0 and a high oxygen content, has the lowest ΔH_{comb}. Anthracite, in contrast, with a hydrogen:carbon ratio of about 0.5 and the lowest oxygen content, has the highest ΔH_{comb} and is the highest grade of coal. The most abundant form in the United States is bituminous coal, which has a high sulfur content because of the presence of small particles of pyrite (FeS_2). The combustion of coal releases the sulfur in FeS_2 as SO_2, which is a major contributor to acid rain. Table 7.9.2 compares the ΔH_{comb} per gram of oil, natural gas, and coal with those of selected organic compounds.

Table 7.9.2: Enthalpies of Combustion of Common Fuels and Selected Organic Compounds

Fuel	ΔH_{comb} (kJ/g)
dry wood	−15
peat	−20.8
bituminous coal	−28.3
charcoal	−35
kerosene	−37
C_6H_6 (benzene)	−41.8
crude oil	−43
natural gas	−50
C_2H_2 (acetylene)	−50.0

Fuel	ΔH_{comb} (kJ/g)
CH_4 (methane)	–55.5
gasoline	–84
hydrogen	–143

Peat, a precursor to coal, is the partially decayed remains of plants that grow in swampy areas. It is removed from the ground in the form of soggy bricks of mud that will not burn until they have been dried. Even though peat is a smoky, poor-burning fuel that gives off relatively little heat, humans have burned it since ancient times (Figure 7.9.4). If a peat bog were buried under many layers of sediment for a few million years, the peat could eventually be compressed and heated enough to become lignite, the lowest grade of coal; given enough time and heat, lignite would eventually become anthracite, a much better fuel.



Figure 7.9.4: A Peat Bog. Peat is a smoky fuel that burns poorly and produces little heat, but it has been used as a fuel since ancient times.

Converting Coal to Gaseous and Liquid Fuels

Oil and natural gas resources are limited. Current estimates suggest that the known reserves of petroleum will be exhausted in about 60 years, and supplies of natural gas are estimated to run out in about 120 years. Coal, on the other hand, is relatively abundant, making up more than 90% of the world's fossil fuel reserves. As a solid, coal is much more difficult to mine and ship than petroleum (a liquid) or natural gas. Consequently, more than 75% of the coal produced each year is simply burned in power plants to produce electricity. A great deal of current research focuses on developing methods to convert coal to gaseous fuels (*coal* gasification) or liquid fuels (coal liquefaction). In the most common approach to coal gasification, coal reacts with steam to produce a mixture of CO and H2 known as synthesis gas, or syngas:Because coal is 70%–90% carbon by mass, it is approximated as C in Equation 7.9.1.

$$\mathrm{C_{(s)} + H_2O_{(g)} \rightarrow CO_{(g)} + H_{2(g)} \quad \Delta H = 131\ kJ} \tag{7.9.1}$$

Converting coal to syngas removes any sulfur present and produces a clean-burning mixture of gases.

Syngas is also used as a reactant to produce methane and methanol. A promising approach is to convert coal directly to methane through a series of reactions:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \mathrm{2C(s) + 2H_2O(g) \rightarrow \cancel{2CO(g)} + \cancel{2H_2(g)}} & \Delta H_1 = 262\ \mathrm{kJ} \\ \mathrm{\cancel{CO(g)} + \cancel{3H_2(g)} \rightarrow CH_4(g) + \cancel{H_2O(g)}} & \Delta H_3 = -206\ \mathrm{kJ} \\ \mathrm{\cancel{CO(g)} + \cancel{H_2O(g)} \rightarrow CO_2(g) + \cancel{H_2(g)}} & \Delta H_2 = -41\ \mathrm{kJ} \\ \hline \mathrm{Overall:\ 2C(s) + 2H_2O(g) \rightarrow CH_4(g) + CO_2(g)} & \Delta H_{comb} = 15\ \mathrm{kJ} \end{array}$$

Burning a small amount of coal or methane provides the energy consumed by these reactions. Unfortunately, methane produced by this process is currently significantly more expensive than natural gas. As supplies of natural gas become depleted, however,

this coal-based process may well become competitive in cost.



Measuring crude oil. The standard industrial unit of measure for crude oil is the 42 gal barrel.

Similarly, the techniques available for converting coal to liquid fuels are not yet economically competitive with the production of liquid fuels from petroleum. Current approaches to coal liquefaction use a catalyst to break the complex network structure of coal into more manageable fragments. The products are then treated with hydrogen (from syngas or other sources) under high pressure to produce a liquid more like petroleum. Subsequent distillation, cracking, and reforming can be used to create products similar to those obtained from petroleum. The total yield of liquid fuels is about 5.5 bbl of crude liquid per ton of coal (1 bbl is 42 gal or 160 L). Although the economics of coal liquefaction are currently even less attractive than for coal gasification, liquid fuels based on coal are likely to become economically competitive as supplies of petroleum are consumed.

Example 7.9.1

If bituminous coal is converted to methane by the process in Equation 7.9.1, what is the ratio of the ΔH_{comb} of the methane produced to the enthalpy of the coal consumed to produce the methane? (Note that 1 mol of CH_4 is produced for every 2 mol of carbon in coal.)

Given: chemical reaction and ΔH_{comb} (Table 7.9.2)

Asked for: ratio of ΔH_{comb} of methane produced to coal consumed

Strategy:

A Write a balanced chemical equation for the conversion of coal to methane. Referring to Table 7.9.2, calculate the ΔH_{comb} of methane and carbon.

B Calculate the ratio of the energy released by combustion of the methane to the energy released by combustion of the carbon.

Solution:

A The balanced chemical equation for the conversion of coal to methane is as follows:

$$2\,C\,(s) + 2\,H_2O\,(g) \longrightarrow CH_4\,(g) + CO_2\,(g)$$

Thus 1 mol of methane is produced for every 2 mol of carbon consumed. The ΔH_{comb} of 1 mol of methane is

$$1\ \text{mol}\ CH_4 \left(\frac{16.043\ g}{1\ \text{mol}\ CH_4}\right)\left(\frac{-55.5\ \text{kJ}}{g}\right) = -890\ \text{kJ}$$

The ΔH_{comb} of 2 mol of carbon (as coal) is

$$2\ \text{mol}\ C \left(\frac{12.011\ g}{1\ \text{mol}\ C}\right)\left(\frac{-28.3\ \text{kJ}}{g}\right) = -680\ \text{kJ}$$

B The ratio of the energy released from the combustion of methane to the energy released from the combustion of carbon is

$$\frac{-890\ \text{kJ}}{-680\ \text{kJ}} = 1.31$$

The energy released from the combustion of the product (methane) is 131% of that of the reactant (coal). The fuel value of coal is actually increased by the process!

How is this possible when the law of conservation of energy states that energy cannot be created? The reaction consumes 2 mol of water ($\Delta H_f^\circ = -285.8\ \text{kJ/mol}$) but produces only 1 mol of CO2 ($\Delta H_f^\circ = -393.5\ \text{kJ/mol}$). Part of the difference in potential energy between the two (approximately 180 kJ/mol) is stored in CH4 and can be released during combustion.

Exercise 7.9.1

Using the data in Table 7.9.2, calculate the mass of hydrogen necessary to provide as much energy during combustion as 1 bbl of crude oil (density approximately 0.75 g/mL).

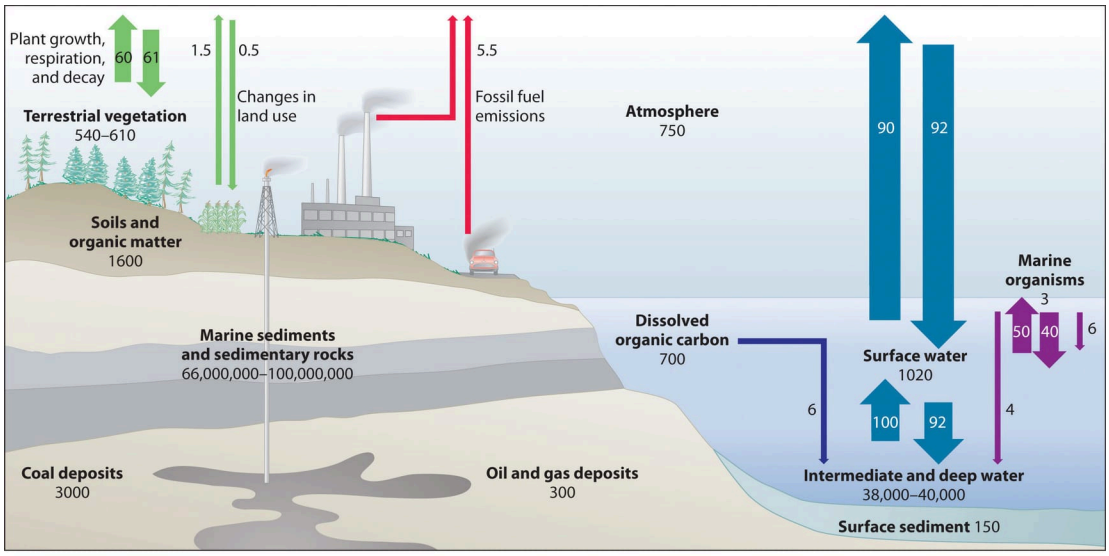
Answer available at the end of this section.

The Carbon Cycle and the Greenhouse Effect

Even if carbon-based fuels could be burned with 100% efficiency, producing only CO_2(g) and H_2O(g), doing so could still potentially damage the environment when carried out on the vast scale required by an industrial society. The amount of CO_2 released is so large and is increasing so rapidly that it is apparently overwhelming the natural ability of the planet to remove CO_2 from the atmosphere. In turn, the elevated levels of CO_2 are thought to be affecting the temperature of the planet through a mechanism known as the greenhouse effect. As you will see, there is little doubt that atmospheric CO_2 levels are increasing, and the major reason for this increase is the combustion of fossil fuels. There is substantially less agreement, however, on whether the increased CO_2 levels are responsible for a significant increase in temperature.

The Global Carbon Cycle

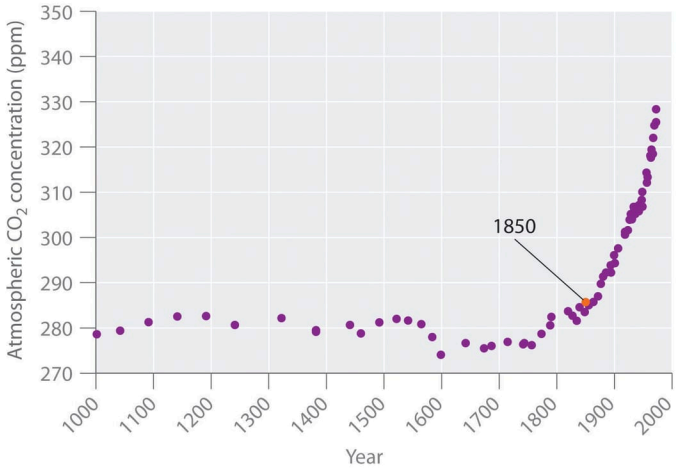
Figure 7.9.5 illustrates the global carbon cycle, the distribution and flow of carbon on Earth. Normally, the fate of atmospheric CO_2 is to either (1) dissolve in the oceans and eventually precipitate as carbonate rocks or (2) be taken up by plants. The rate of uptake of CO_2 by the ocean is limited by its surface area and the rate at which gases dissolve, which are approximately constant. The rate of uptake of CO_2 by plants, representing about 60 billion metric tons of carbon per year, partly depends on how much of Earth's surface is covered by vegetation. Unfortunately, the rapid deforestation for agriculture is reducing the overall amount of vegetation, and about 60 billion metric tons of carbon are released annually as CO_2 from animal respiration and plant decay. The amount of carbon released as CO_2 every year by fossil fuel combustion is estimated to be about 5.5 billion metric tons. The net result is a system that is slightly out of balance, experiencing a slow but steady increase in atmospheric CO_2 levels (Figure 7.9.6). As a result, average CO_2 levels have increased by about 30% since 1850.



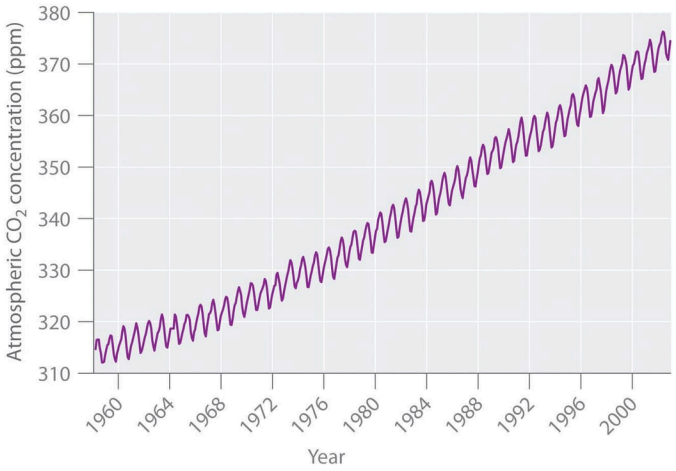
Volumes and exchanges in billions of metric tons

Figure 7.9.5: The Global Carbon Cycle

Most of Earth's carbon is found in the crust, where it is stored as calcium and magnesium carbonate in sedimentary rocks. The oceans also contain a large reservoir of carbon, primarily as the bicarbonate ion (HCO_3^-). Green plants consume about 60 billion metric tons of carbon per year as CO_2 during photosynthesis, and about the same amount of carbon is released as CO_2 annually from animal and plant respiration and decay. The combustion of fossil fuels releases about 5.5 billion metric tons of carbon per year as CO_2.



(a) Records from Antarctic ice cores (1006–1969)



(b) Records from monthly air samples, Mauna Loa Observatory, Hawaii (1958–2002)

Figure 7.9.6: Changes in Atmospheric CO_2 Levels. (a) Average worldwide CO_2 levels have increased by about 30% since 1850. (b) Atmospheric CO_2 concentrations measured at Mauna Loa in Hawaii show seasonal variations caused by the removal of CO_2 from the atmosphere by green plants during the growing season along with a general increase in CO_2 levels.

The Atmospheric Greenhouse Effect

The increasing levels of atmospheric CO_2 are of concern because CO_2 absorbs thermal energy radiated by the Earth, as do other gases such as water vapor, methane, and chlorofluorocarbons. Collectively, these substances are called greenhouse gases; they mimic the effect of a greenhouse by trapping thermal energy in the Earth's atmosphere, a phenomenon known as the greenhouse effect (Figure 7.9.7).

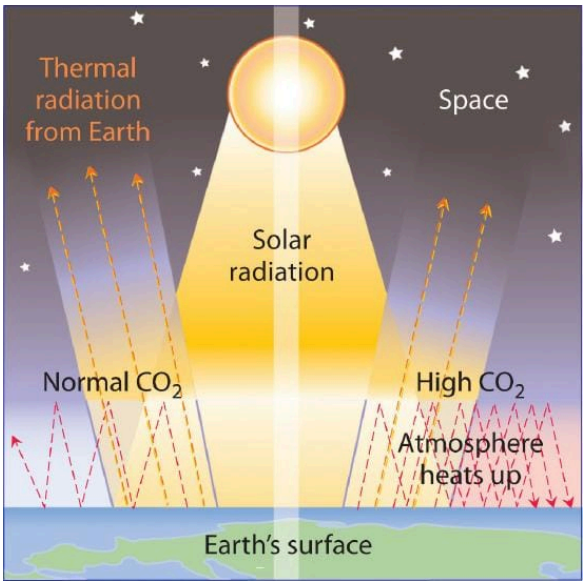


Figure 7.9.7: The Greenhouse Effect. Thermal energy can be trapped in Earth's atmosphere by gases such as CO_2, water vapor, methane, and chlorofluorocarbons before it can be radiated into space—like the effect of a greenhouse. It is not yet clear how large an increase in the temperature of Earth's surface can be attributed to this phenomenon.

Venus is an example of a planet that has a runaway greenhouse effect. The atmosphere of Venus is about 95 times denser than that of Earth and contains about 95% CO_2. Because Venus is closer to the sun, it also receives more solar radiation than Earth does. The result of increased solar radiation and high CO_2 levels is an average surface temperature of about 450°C, which is hot enough to melt lead.

Data such as those in Figure Figure 7.9.6 indicate that atmospheric levels of greenhouse gases have increased dramatically over the past 100 years, and it seems clear that the heavy use of fossil fuels by industry is largely responsible. It is not clear, however, how large an increase in temperature (*global warming*) may result from a continued increase in the levels of these gases. Estimates of the effects of doubling the preindustrial levels of CO_2 range from a 0°C to a 4.5°C increase in the average temperature of Earth's surface, which is currently about 14.4°C. Even small increases, however, could cause major perturbations in our planet's delicately balanced systems. For example, an increase of 5°C in Earth's average surface temperature could cause extensive melting of glaciers and the Antarctic ice cap. It has been suggested that the resulting rise in sea levels could flood highly populated coastal areas, such as New York City, Calcutta, Tokyo, Rio de Janeiro, and Sydney. An analysis conducted in 2009 by leading climate researchers from the US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Switzerland, and France shows that CO_2 in the atmosphere will remain near peak levels far longer than other greenhouse gases, which dissipate more quickly. The study predicts a rise in sea levels of approximately 3 ft by the year 3000, excluding the rise from melting glaciers and polar ice caps. According to the analysis, southwestern North America, the Mediterranean, and southern Africa are projected to face droughts comparable to that of the Dust Bowl of the 1930s as a result of global climate changes.

The increase in CO_2 levels is only one of many trends that can affect Earth's temperature. In fact, geologic evidence shows that the average temperature of Earth has fluctuated significantly over the past 400,000 years, with a series of glacial periods (during which the temperature was 10°C–15°C *lower* than it is now and large glaciers covered much of the globe) interspersed with relatively short, warm interglacial periods (Figure 7.9.8). Although average temperatures appear to have increased by 0.5°C in the last century, the statistical significance of this increase is open to question, as is the existence of a cause-and-effect relationship between the temperature change and CO_2 levels. Despite the lack of incontrovertible scientific evidence, however, many people believe that we should take steps now to limit CO_2 emissions and explore alternative sources of energy, such as solar energy, geothermal energy from volcanic steam, and nuclear energy, to avoid even the possibility of creating major perturbations in Earth's environment. In 2010, international delegates met in Cancún, Mexico, and agreed on a broad array of measures that would advance climate protection. These included the development of low-carbon technologies, providing a framework to reduce deforestation, and aiding countries in assessing their own vulnerabilities. They avoided, however, contentious issues of assigning emissions reductions commitments.

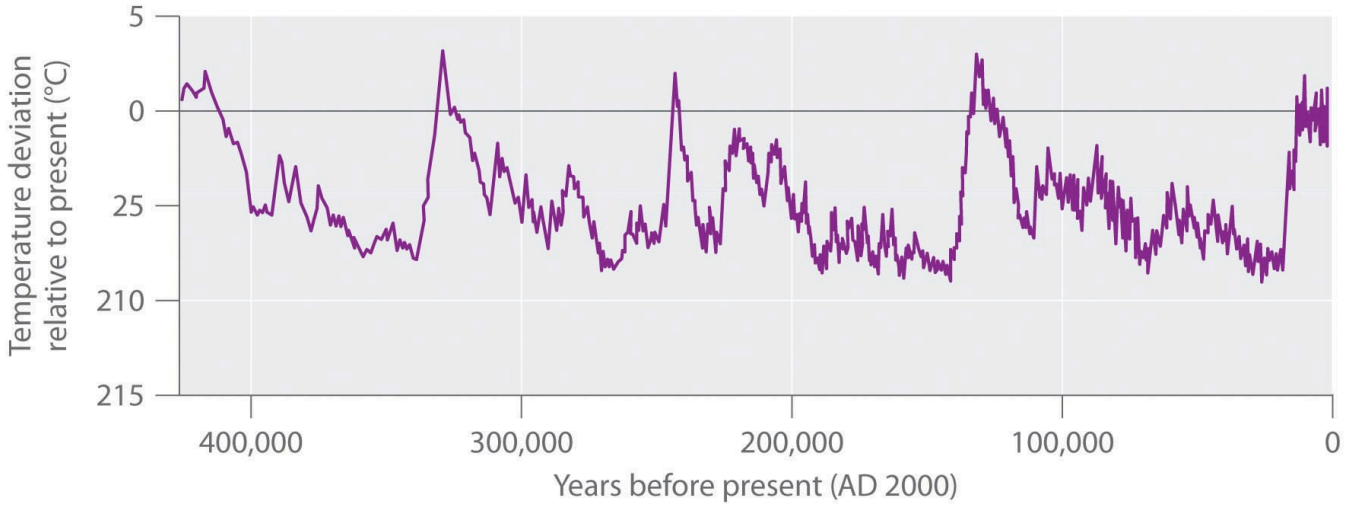


Figure 7.9.8: Average Surface Temperature of Earth over the Past 400,000 Years. The dips correspond to glacial periods, and the peaks correspond to relatively short, warm interglacial periods. Because of these fluctuations, the statistical significance of the 0.5°C increase in average temperatures observed in the last century is open to question.

Example 7.9.2

A student at UCLA decided to fly home to New York for Christmas. The round trip was 4500 air miles, and part of the cost of her ticket went to buy the 100 gal of jet fuel necessary to transport her and her baggage. Assuming that jet fuel is primarily *n*-dodecane ($C_{12}H_{26}$) with a density of 0.75 g/mL, how much energy was expended and how many tons of CO_2 were emitted into the upper atmosphere to get her home and back?

Given: volume and density of reactant in combustion reaction

Asked for: energy expended and mass of CO_2 emitted

Strategy:

A After writing a balanced chemical equation for the reaction, calculate $\Delta H^\circ_{\text{comb}}$

B Determine the number of moles of dodecane in 100 gal by using the density and molar mass of dodecane and the appropriate conversion factors.

C Obtain the amount of energy expended by multiplying $\Delta H^\circ_{\text{comb}}$ by the number of moles of dodecane. Calculate the amount of CO2 emitted in tons by using mole ratios from the balanced chemical equation and the appropriate conversion factors.

Solution

A We first need to write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction:

$$2\,C_{12}H_{26}\,(l) + 37\,O_2\,(g) \longrightarrow 24\,CO_2\,(g) + 26\,H_2O\,(l)$$

We can calculate $\Delta H^\circ_{\text{comb}}$ using the ΔH°_f values corresponding to each substance in the specified phase (phases are not shown for simplicity):

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H^\circ_{\text{comb}} &= \Sigma m\Delta H^\circ_f(\text{products}) - \Sigma n\Delta H^\circ_f(\text{reactants})\\ &= [24\Delta H^\circ_f(CO_2) + 26\Delta H^\circ_f(H_2O)] - [37\Delta H^\circ_f(O_2) + 2\Delta H^\circ_f(C_{12}H_{26})]\\ &= [24(-393.5\text{ kJ/mol }CO_2) + 26(-285.8\text{ kJ/mol }H_2O)]\\ &\quad -[37(0\text{ kJ/mol }O_2) + 2(-350.9\text{ kJ/mol }C_{12}H_{26})]\\ &= -16,173.0\text{ kJ}\end{aligned}$$

According to the balanced chemical equation for the reaction, this value is $\Delta H^\circ_{\text{comb}}$ for the combustion of 2 mol of n-dodecane. So we must divide by 2 to obtain $\Delta H^\circ_{\text{comb}}$ per mole of n-dodecane:

$$\Delta H^\circ_{\text{comb}} = -8,086.5 \text{ kJ/mol } C_{12}H_{26}$$

B The number of moles of dodecane in 100 gal can be calculated as follows, using density, molar mass, and appropriate conversion factors:

$$100 \cancel{\text{ gal}} \left(\frac{3.785 \cancel{\text{ L}}}{1 \cancel{\text{ gal}}}\right)\left(\frac{1000 \cancel{\text{ mL}}}{\cancel{\text{L}}}\right)\left(\frac{0.75 \cancel{\text{ g}}}{\cancel{\text{mL}}}\right)\left(\frac{1 \text{ mol}}{170.34 \cancel{\text{ g}}}\right) = 1.7 \times 10^3 \text{ mol } C_{12}H_{26}$$

C The total energy released is

$$\Delta H^\circ_{\text{comb}} = (-8086.5 \text{ kJ}/\cancel{\text{ mol}})(1.7 \times 10^3 \cancel{\text{ mol}}) = -1.4 \times 10^7 \text{ kJ}$$

From the balanced chemical equation for the reaction, we see that each mole of dodecane forms 12 mol of CO_2 upon combustion. Hence the amount of CO_2 emitted is

$$1.7 \times 10^3 \cancel{\text{ mol } C_{12}H_{26}} \left(\frac{\frac{24}{2} \cancel{\text{ mol } CO_2}}{1 \cancel{\text{ mol } C_{12}H_{26}}}\right)\left(\frac{44.0 \cancel{\text{ g}}}{1 \cancel{\text{ mol } CO_2}}\right)\left(\frac{1 \cancel{\text{ lb}}}{454 \cancel{\text{ g}}}\right)\left(\frac{1 \text{ tn}}{2000 \cancel{\text{ lb}}}\right) = 0.99 \text{ tn}$$

Exercise 7.9.2

Suppose the student in Example 7.9.2 couldn't afford the plane fare, so she decided to drive home instead. Assume that the round-trip distance by road was 5572 miles, her fuel consumption averaged 31 mpg, and her fuel was pure isooctane (C_8H_{18}, density = 0.6919 g/mL). How much energy was expended and how many tons of CO_2 were produced during her trip?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

Thermochemical concepts can be used to calculate the efficiency of various forms of fuel, which can then be applied to environmental issues. More than 80% of the energy used by modern society (about 3×10^{17} kJ/yr) is from the combustion of fossil fuels. Because of their availability, ease of transport, and facile conversion to convenient fuels, natural gas and petroleum are currently the preferred fuels. Supplies of **coal**, a complex solid material derived from plants that lived long ago, are much greater, but the difficulty in transporting and burning a solid makes it less attractive as a fuel. Coal releases the smallest amount of energy per gram of any fossil fuel, and natural gas the greatest amount. The combustion of fossil fuels releases large amounts of CO_2 that upset the balance of the **carbon cycle** and result in a steady increase in atmospheric CO_2 levels. Because CO_2 is a **greenhouse gas**, which absorbs heat before it can be radiated from Earth into space, CO_2 in the atmosphere can result in increased surface temperatures (the **greenhouse effect**). The temperature increases caused by increased CO_2 levels because of human activities are, however, superimposed on much larger variations in Earth's temperature that have produced phenomena such as the ice ages and are still poorly understood.

Answers

Exercise 7.9.1

36 kg

Exercise 7.9.2

2.2×10^7 kJ; 1.6 tons of CO_2 (about twice as much as is released by flying)

This page titled 7.9: Fuels as Sources of Energy is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 7.9: Fuels as Sources of Energy is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

8: ENTROPY AND THE SECOND AND THIRD LAWS OF THERMODYNAMICS

Petrucci: *General Chemistry*
Principles and Modern Applications

Template:HideTOC

- Topic hierarchy

8.1: The Concept of Entropy
8.2: Spontaneity: The Meaning of Spontaneous Change
8.3: Criteria for Spontaneous Change: The Second Law of Thermodynamics
8.4: Evaluating Entropy and Entropy Changes
8.5: Standard Gibbs Energy Change, ΔG°

This page titled 8: Entropy and the Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

8.1: The Concept of Entropy

Learning Objectives

- Define entropy
- Explain the relationship between entropy and the number of microstates
- Predict the sign of the entropy change for chemical and physical processes

The first law of thermodynamics governs changes in the state function we have called internal energy (U). Changes in the internal energy (ΔU) are closely related to changes in the enthalpy (ΔH), which is a measure of the heat flow between a system and its surroundings at constant pressure. You also learned previously that the enthalpy change for a chemical reaction can be calculated using tabulated values of enthalpies of formation. This information, however, does not tell us whether a particular process or reaction will occur spontaneously.

Let's consider a familiar example of spontaneous change. If a hot frying pan that has just been removed from the stove is allowed to come into contact with a cooler object, such as cold water in a sink, heat will flow from the hotter object to the cooler one, in this case usually releasing steam. Eventually both objects will reach the same temperature, at a value between the initial temperatures of the two objects. This transfer of heat from a hot object to a cooler one obeys the first law of thermodynamics: energy is conserved.

Now consider the same process in reverse. Suppose that a hot frying pan in a sink of cold water were to become hotter while the water became cooler. As long as the same amount of thermal energy was gained by the frying pan and lost by the water, the first law of thermodynamics would be satisfied. Yet we all know that such a process cannot occur: heat always flows from a hot object to a cold one, never in the reverse direction. That is, by itself the magnitude of the heat flow associated with a process does not predict whether the process will occur spontaneously.

For many years, chemists and physicists tried to identify a single measurable quantity that would enable them to predict whether a particular process or reaction would occur spontaneously. Initially, many of them focused on enthalpy changes and hypothesized that an exothermic process would always be spontaneous. But although it is true that many, if not most, spontaneous processes are exothermic, there are also many spontaneous processes that are not exothermic. For example, at a pressure of 1 atm, ice melts spontaneously at temperatures greater than 0°C, yet this is an endothermic process because heat is absorbed. Similarly, many salts (such as NH_4NO_3, NaCl, and KBr) dissolve spontaneously in water even though they absorb heat from the surroundings as they dissolve (i.e., $\Delta H_{soln} > 0$). Reactions can also be both spontaneous and highly endothermic, like the reaction of barium hydroxide with ammonium thiocyanate shown in Figure 8.1.1.

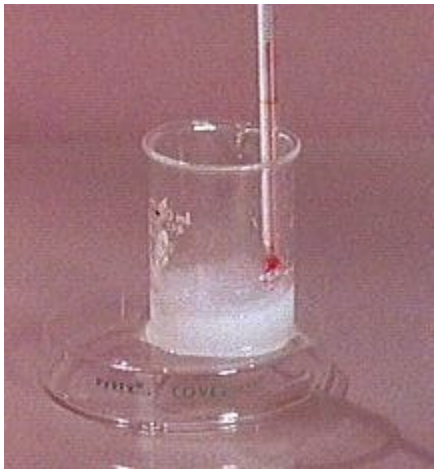


Figure 8.1.1: An Endothermic Reaction. The reaction of barium hydroxide with ammonium thiocyanate is spontaneous but highly endothermic, so water, one product of the reaction, quickly freezes into slush. When water is placed on a block of wood under the flask, the highly endothermic reaction that takes place in the flask freezes water that has been placed under the beaker, so the flask becomes frozen to the wood. For a full video: see https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GQkJI-Nq3Os.

Thus enthalpy is not the only factor that determines whether a process is spontaneous. For example, after a cube of sugar has dissolved in a glass of water so that the sucrose molecules are uniformly dispersed in a dilute solution, they never spontaneously come back together in solution to form a sugar cube. Moreover, the molecules of a gas remain evenly distributed throughout the entire volume of a glass bulb and never spontaneously assemble in only one portion of the available volume. To help explain why these phenomena proceed spontaneously in only one direction requires an additional state function called entropy (S), a thermodynamic property of all substances that is proportional to their degree of disorder. In Chapter 13, we introduced the concept of entropy in relation to solution formation. Here we further explore the nature of this state function and define it mathematically.

Entropy and Microstates

In 1824, at the age of 28, Nicolas Léonard Sadi Carnot (Figure 8.1.2) published the results of an extensive study regarding the efficiency of steam heat engines. In a later review of Carnot's findings, Rudolf Clausius introduced a new thermodynamic property that relates the spontaneous heat flow accompanying a process to the temperature at which the process takes place. This new property was expressed as the ratio of the *reversible* heat (q_{rev}) and the kelvin temperature (T). The term reversible process refers to a process that takes place at such a slow rate that it is always at equilibrium and its direction can be changed (it can be "reversed") by an infinitesimally small change is some condition. Note that the idea of a reversible process is a formalism required to support the development of various thermodynamic concepts; no real processes are truly reversible, rather they are classified as *irreversible*.



Figure 8.1.2: (a) Nicholas Léonard Sadi Carnot's research into steam-powered machinery and (b) Rudolf Clausius's later study of those findings led to groundbreaking discoveries about spontaneous heat flow processes.

Similar to other thermodynamic properties, this new quantity is a state function, and so its change depends only upon the initial and final states of a system. In 1865, Clausius named this property entropy (S) and defined its change for any process as the following:

$$\Delta S = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T} \tag{8.1.1}$$

The entropy change for a real, irreversible process is then equal to that for the theoretical reversible process that involves the same initial and final states.

Following the work of Carnot and Clausius, Ludwig Boltzmann developed a molecular-scale statistical model that related the entropy of a system to the number of *microstates* possible for the system. A microstate (W) is a specific configuration of the locations and energies of the atoms or molecules that comprise a system like the following:

$$S = k \ln W \tag{8.1.2}$$

Here k is the Boltzmann constant and has a value of 1.38×10^{-23} J/K.

As for other state functions, the change in entropy for a process is the difference between its final (S_f) and initial (S_i) values:

$$\Delta S = S_\mathrm{f} - S_\mathrm{i} = k \ln W_\mathrm{f} - k \ln W_\mathrm{i} = k \ln \frac{W_\mathrm{f}}{W_\mathrm{i}} \tag{8.1.3}$$

For processes involving an increase in the number of microstates, $W_\mathrm{f} > W_\mathrm{i}$, the entropy of the system increases, $\Delta S > 0$. Conversely, processes that reduce the number of microstates, $W_\mathrm{f} < W_\mathrm{i}$, yield a decrease in system entropy, $\Delta S < 0$. This molecular-scale interpretation of entropy provides a link to the probability that a process will occur as illustrated in the next paragraphs.

Consider the general case of a system comprised of N particles distributed among n boxes. The number of microstates possible for such a system is n^N. For example, distributing four particles among two boxes will result in $2^4 = 16$ different microstates as illustrated in Figure 8.1.3. Microstates with equivalent particle arrangements (not considering individual particle identities) are grouped together and are called *distributions*. The probability that a system will exist with its components in a given distribution is proportional to the number of microstates within the distribution. Since entropy increases logarithmically with the number of microstates, *the most probable distribution is therefore the one of greatest entropy*.

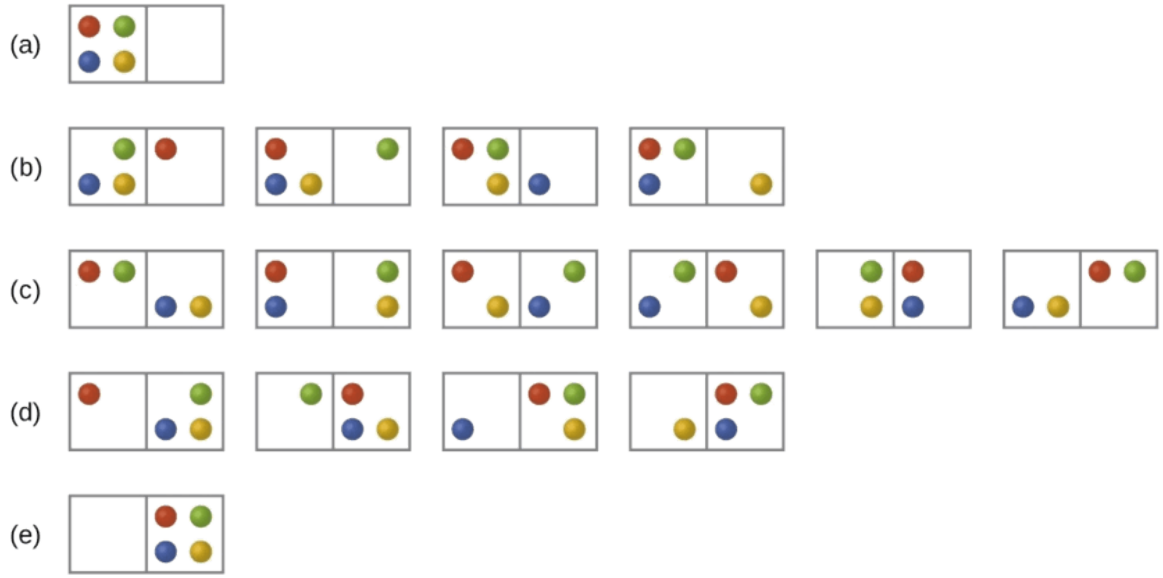


Figure 8.1.3: The sixteen microstates associated with placing four particles in two boxes are shown. The microstates are collected into five distributions—(a), (b), (c), (d), and (e)—based on the numbers of particles in each box.

For this system, the most probable configuration is one of the six microstates associated with distribution (c) where the particles are evenly distributed between the boxes, that is, a configuration of two particles in each box. The probability of finding the system in this configuration is

$$\frac{6}{16} \backslash) or \backslash (\frac{3}{8} \tag{8.1.4}$$

The least probable configuration of the system is one in which all four particles are in one box, corresponding to distributions (a) and (d), each with a probability of

$$\frac{1}{16} \tag{8.1.5}$$

The probability of finding all particles in only one box (either the left box or right box) is then

$$\left(\frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16} \right) = \frac{2}{16} \backslash) or \backslash (\frac{1}{8} \tag{8.1.6}$$

As you add more particles to the system, the number of possible microstates increases exponentially (2^N). A macroscopic (laboratory-sized) system would typically consist of moles of particles ($N \sim 10^{23}$), and the corresponding number of microstates would be staggeringly huge. Regardless of the number of particles in the system, however, the distributions in which roughly equal numbers of particles are found in each box are always the most probable configurations.

The previous description of an ideal gas expanding into a vacuum is a macroscopic example of this particle-in-a-box model.

For this system, the most probable distribution is confirmed to be the one in which the matter is most uniformly dispersed or distributed between the two flasks. The spontaneous process whereby the gas contained initially in one flask expands to fill both flasks equally therefore yields an increase in entropy for the system.

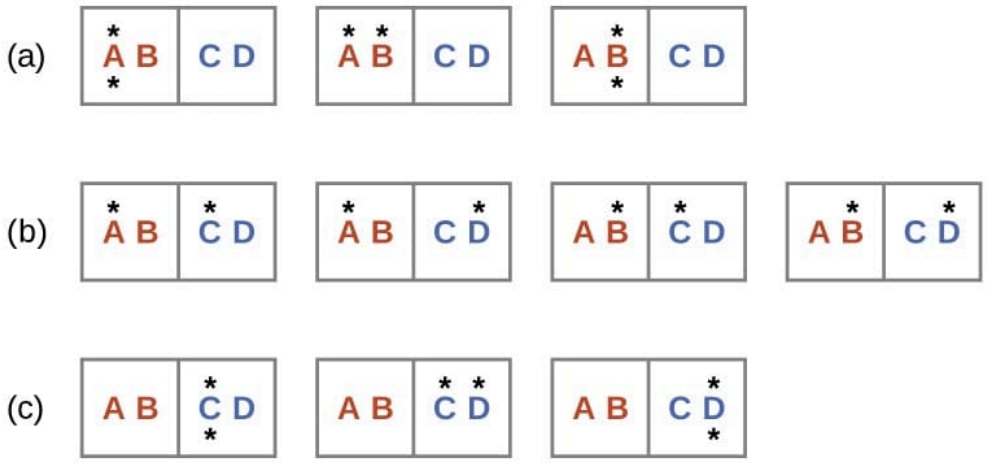
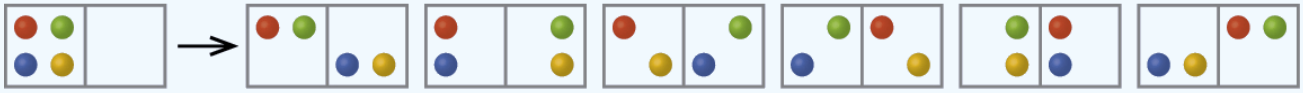


Figure 8.1.4: This shows a microstate model describing the flow of heat from a hot object to a cold object. (a) Before the heat flow occurs, the object comprised of particles **A** and **B** contains both units of energy and as represented by a distribution of three microstates. (b) If the heat flow results in an even dispersal of energy (one energy unit transferred), a distribution of four microstates results. (c) If both energy units are transferred, the resulting distribution has three microstates.

A similar approach may be used to describe the spontaneous flow of heat. Consider a system consisting of two objects, each containing two particles, and two units of energy (represented as "*") in Figure 8.1.4. The hot object is comprised of particles **A** and **B** and initially contains both energy units. The cold object is comprised of particles **C** and **D**, which initially has no energy units. Distribution (a) shows the three microstates possible for the initial state of the system, with both units of energy contained within the hot object. If one of the two energy units is transferred, the result is distribution (b) consisting of four microstates. If both energy units are transferred, the result is distribution (c) consisting of three microstates. And so, we may describe this system by a total of ten microstates. The probability that the heat does not flow when the two objects are brought into contact, that is, that the system remains in distribution (a), is $\frac{3}{10}$. More likely is the flow of heat to yield one of the other two distribution, the combined probability being $\frac{7}{10}$. The most likely result is the flow of heat to yield the uniform dispersal of energy represented by distribution (b), the probability of this configuration being $\frac{4}{10}$. As for the previous example of matter dispersal, extrapolating this treatment to macroscopic collections of particles dramatically increases the probability of the uniform distribution relative to the other distributions. This supports the common observation that placing hot and cold objects in contact results in spontaneous heat flow that ultimately equalizes the objects' temperatures. And, again, this spontaneous process is also characterized by an increase in system entropy.

Consider the system shown here. What is the change in entropy for a process that converts the system from distribution (a) to (c)?



Solution

We are interested in the following change:

The initial number of microstates is one, the final six:

$$\Delta S = k \ln \frac{W_c}{W_a} = 1.38 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{J/K} \times \ln \frac{6}{1} = 2.47 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{J/K} \tag{8.1.7}$$

The sign of this result is consistent with expectation; since there are more microstates possible for the final state than for the initial state, the change in entropy should be positive.

Exercise 8.1.1

Consider the system shown in Figure 8.1.3. What is the change in entropy for the process where *all* the energy is transferred from the hot object (**AB**) to the cold object (**CD**)?

Answer: 0 J/K

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Entropy: https://youtu.be/dkanY87VsjY

Predicting the Sign of ΔS

The relationships between entropy, microstates, and matter/energy dispersal described previously allow us to make generalizations regarding the relative entropies of substances and to predict the sign of entropy changes for chemical and physical processes. Consider the phase changes illustrated in Figure 8.1.5. In the solid phase, the atoms or molecules are restricted to nearly fixed positions with respect to each other and are capable of only modest oscillations about these positions. With essentially fixed locations for the system's component particles, the number of microstates is relatively small. In the liquid phase, the atoms or molecules are free to move over and around each other, though they remain in relatively close proximity to one another. This increased freedom of motion results in a greater variation in possible particle locations, so the number of microstates is correspondingly greater than for the solid. As a result, $S_{liquid} > S_{solid}$ and the process of converting a substance from solid to liquid (melting) is characterized by an increase in entropy, $\Delta S > 0$. By the same logic, the reciprocal process (freezing) exhibits a decrease in entropy, $\Delta S < 0$.

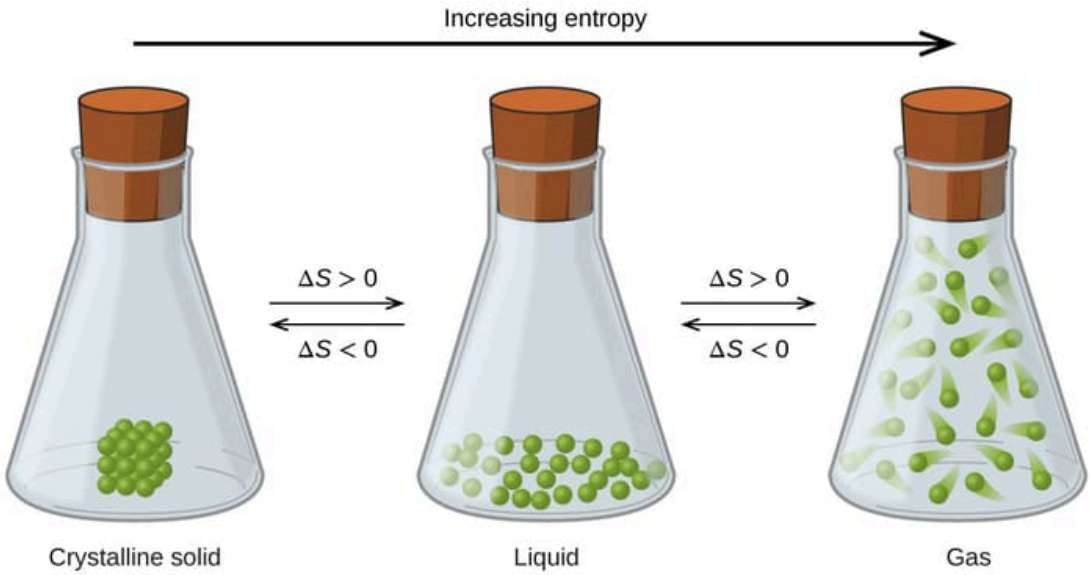


Figure 8.1.5: The entropy of a substance increases ($\Delta S > 0$) as it transforms from a relatively ordered solid, to a less-ordered liquid, and then to a still less-ordered gas. The entropy decreases ($\Delta S < 0$) as the substance transforms from a gas to a liquid and then to a solid.

Now consider the vapor or gas phase. The atoms or molecules occupy a *much* greater volume than in the liquid phase; therefore each atom or molecule can be found in many more locations than in the liquid (or solid) phase. Consequently, for any substance, $S_{gas} > S_{liquid} > S_{solid}$, and the processes of vaporization and sublimation likewise involve increases in entropy, $\Delta S > 0$. Likewise, the reciprocal phase transitions, condensation and deposition, involve decreases in entropy, $\Delta S < 0$.

According to kinetic-molecular theory, the temperature of a substance is proportional to the average kinetic energy of its particles. Raising the temperature of a substance will result in more extensive vibrations of the particles in solids and more rapid translations of the particles in liquids and gases. At higher temperatures, the distribution of kinetic energies among the atoms or molecules of the substance is also broader (more dispersed) than at lower temperatures. Thus, the entropy for any substance increases with temperature (Figure 8.1.6).

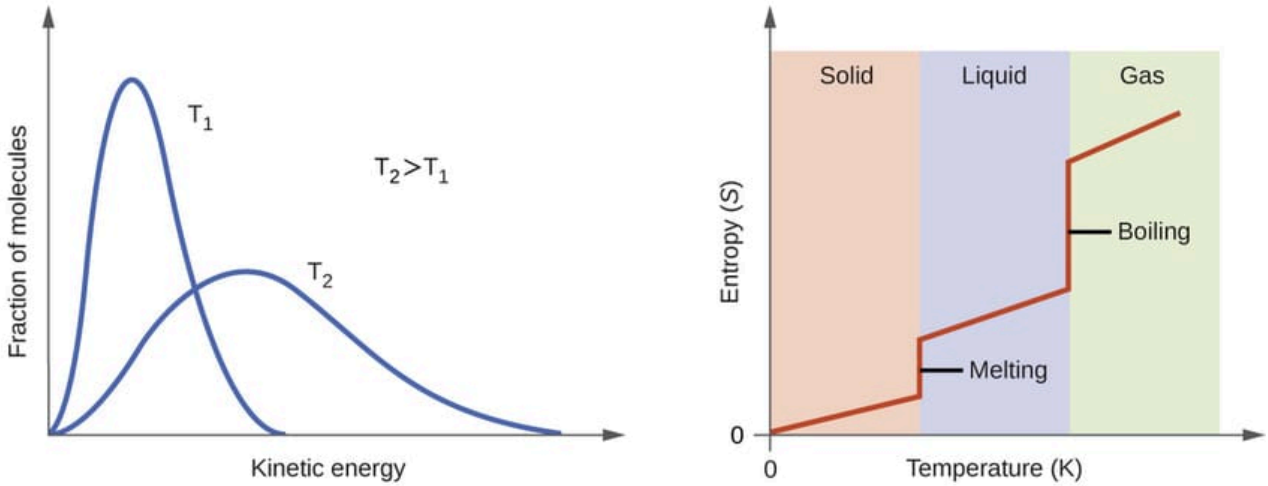


Figure 8.1.6: Entropy increases as the temperature of a substance is raised, which corresponds to the greater spread of kinetic energies. When a substance melts or vaporizes, it experiences a significant increase in entropy.

The entropy of a substance is influenced by structure of the particles (atoms or molecules) that comprise the substance. With regard to atomic substances, heavier atoms possess greater entropy at a given temperature than lighter atoms, which is a consequence of the relation between a particle's mass and the spacing of quantized translational energy levels (which is a topic beyond the scope of our treatment). For molecules, greater numbers of atoms (regardless of their masses) increase the ways in which the molecules can vibrate and thus the number of possible microstates and the system entropy.

Finally, variations in the types of particles affects the entropy of a system. Compared to a pure substance, in which all particles are

identical, the entropy of a mixture of two or more different particle types is greater. This is because of the additional orientations and interactions that are possible in a system comprised of nonidentical components. For example, when a solid dissolves in a liquid, the particles of the solid experience both a greater freedom of motion and additional interactions with the solvent particles. This corresponds to a more uniform dispersal of matter and energy and a greater number of microstates. The process of dissolution therefore involves an increase in entropy, $\Delta S > 0$.

Considering the various factors that affect entropy allows us to make informed predictions of the sign of ΔS for various chemical and physical processes as illustrated in Example .

Predict the sign of the entropy change for the following processes. Indicate the reason for each of your predictions.

a. One mole liquid water at room temperature $\longrightarrow$ one mole liquid water at 50 °C
b. $\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{AgCl}(s)$
c. $\mathrm{C_6H_6}(l) + \frac{15}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 6\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$
d. $\mathrm{NH_3}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NH_3}(l)$

Solution

a. positive, temperature increases
b. negative, reduction in the number of ions (particles) in solution, decreased dispersal of matter
c. negative, net decrease in the amount of gaseous species
d. positive, phase transition from solid to liquid, net increase in dispersal of matter

Exercise 8.1.2

Predict the sign of the enthalpy change for the following processes. Give a reason for your prediction.

a. $\mathrm{NaNO_3}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Na^+}(aq) + \mathrm{NO_3^-}(aq)$
b. the freezing of liquid water
c. $\mathrm{CO_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$
d. $\mathrm{CaCO}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CaO}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$

Answer:

(a) Positive; The solid dissolves to give an increase of mobile ions in solution. (b) Negative; The liquid becomes a more ordered solid. (c) Positive; The relatively ordered solid becomes a gas. (d) Positive; There is a net production of one mole of gas.

Note

Entropy (S) is a thermodynamic property of all substances. The greater the number of possible microstates for a system, the greater the disorder and the higher the entropy.

Experiments show that the magnitude of ΔS_{vap} is 80–90 J/(mol•K) for a wide variety of liquids with different boiling points. However, liquids that have highly ordered structures due to hydrogen bonding or other intermolecular interactions tend to have significantly higher values of ΔS_{vap}. For instance, ΔS_{vap} for water is 102 J/(mol•K). Another process that is accompanied by entropy changes is the formation of a solution. As illustrated in Figure 8.1.4, the formation of a liquid solution from a crystalline solid (the solute) and a liquid solvent is expected to result in an increase in the number of available microstates of the system and hence its entropy. Indeed, dissolving a substance such as NaCl in water disrupts both the ordered crystal lattice of NaCl and the ordered hydrogen-bonded structure of water, leading to an increase in the entropy of the system. At the same time, however, each dissolved Na^+ ion becomes hydrated by an ordered arrangement of at least six water molecules, and the Cl^- ions also cause the water to adopt a particular local structure. Both of these effects increase the order of the system, leading to a decrease in entropy. The overall entropy change for the formation of a solution therefore depends on the relative magnitudes of these opposing factors. In the case of an NaCl solution, disruption of the crystalline NaCl structure and the hydrogen-bonded

interactions in water is quantitatively more important, so $\Delta S_{soln} > 0$.

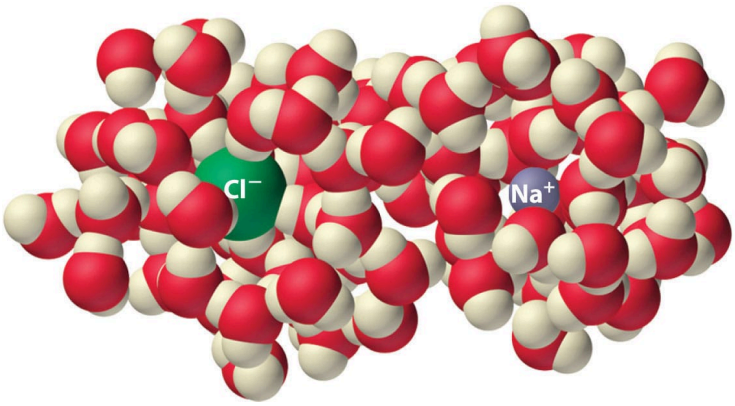


Figure 8.1.7 The Effect of Solution Formation on Entropy

Dissolving NaCl in water results in an increase in the entropy of the system. Each hydrated ion, however, forms an ordered arrangement with water molecules, which decreases the entropy of the system. The magnitude of the increase is greater than the magnitude of the decrease, so the overall entropy change for the formation of an NaCl solution is positive.

Example 8.1.3

Predict which substance in each pair has the higher entropy and justify your answer.

a. 1 mol of $NH_3(g)$ or 1 mol of He(g), both at 25°C
b. 1 mol of Pb(s) at 25°C or 1 mol of Pb(l) at 800°C

Given: amounts of substances and temperature

Asked for: higher entropy

Strategy:

From the number of atoms present and the phase of each substance, predict which has the greater number of available microstates and hence the higher entropy.

Solution:

a. Both substances are gases at 25°C, but one consists of He atoms and the other consists of NH_3 molecules. With four atoms instead of one, the NH_3 molecules have more motions available, leading to a greater number of microstates. Hence we predict that the NH_3 sample will have the higher entropy.
b. The nature of the atomic species is the same in both cases, but the phase is different: one sample is a solid, and one is a liquid. Based on the greater freedom of motion available to atoms in a liquid, we predict that the liquid sample will have the higher entropy.

Exercise 8.1.3

Predict which substance in each pair has the higher entropy and justify your answer.

a. 1 mol of He(g) at 10 K and 1 atm pressure or 1 mol of He(g) at 250°C and 0.2 atm
b. a mixture of 3 mol of $H_2(g)$ and 1 mol of $N_2(g)$ at 25°C and 1 atm or a sample of 2 mol of $NH_3(g)$ at 25°C and 1 atm

Answer

a. 1 mol of He(g) at 250°C and 0.2 atm (higher temperature and lower pressure indicate greater volume and more microstates)
b. a mixture of 3 mol of H_2(g) and 1 mol of N_2(g) at 25°C and 1 atm (more molecules of gas are present)

Video Solution

Reversible and Irreversible Changes

Changes in entropy (ΔS), together with changes in enthalpy (ΔH), enable us to predict in which direction a chemical or physical change will occur spontaneously. Before discussing how to do so, however, we must understand the difference between a reversible process and an irreversible one. In a reversible process, every intermediate state between the extremes is an equilibrium state, regardless of the direction of the change. In contrast, an irreversible process is one in which the intermediate states are not equilibrium states, so change occurs spontaneously in only one direction. As a result, a reversible process can change direction at any time, whereas an irreversible process cannot. When a gas expands reversibly against an external pressure such as a piston, for example, the expansion can be reversed at any time by reversing the motion of the piston; once the gas is compressed, it can be allowed to expand again, and the process can continue indefinitely. In contrast, the expansion of a gas into a vacuum (P_{ext} = 0) is irreversible because the external pressure is measurably less than the internal pressure of the gas. No equilibrium states exist, and the gas expands irreversibly. When gas escapes from a microscopic hole in a balloon into a vacuum, for example, the process is irreversible; the direction of airflow cannot change.

Because work done during the expansion of a gas depends on the opposing external pressure ($w = P_{ext}\Delta V$), work done in a reversible process is always equal to or greater than work done in a corresponding irreversible process: $w_{rev} \geq w_{irrev}$. Whether a process is reversible or irreversible, $\Delta U = q + w$. Because U is a state function, the magnitude of ΔU does not depend on reversibility and is independent of the path taken. So

$$\Delta U = q_{rev} + w_{rev} = q_{irrev} + w_{irrev} \tag{8.1.8}$$

Note

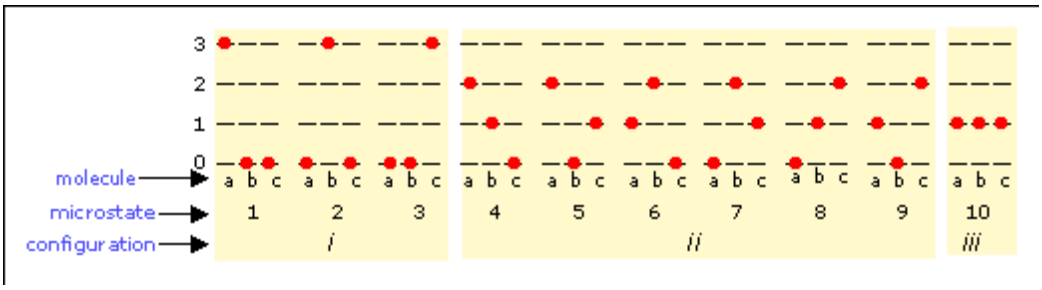
Work done in a reversible process is always equal to or greater than work done in a corresponding irreversible process: $w_{rev} \geq w_{irrev}$.

In other words, ΔU for a process is the same whether that process is carried out in a reversible manner or an irreversible one. We now return to our earlier definition of entropy, using the magnitude of the heat flow for a reversible process (q_{rev}) to define entropy quantitatively.

Quantum states and Energy Spreading

At the atomic and molecular level, all energy is *quantized*; each particle possesses discrete states of kinetic energy and is able to accept thermal energy only in packets whose values correspond to the energies of one or more of these states. Polyatomic molecules can store energy in rotational and vibrational motions, and all molecules (even monatomic ones) will possess translational kinetic energy (thermal energy) at all temperatures above absolute zero. The energy difference between adjacent translational states is so minute that translational kinetic energy can be regarded as *continuous* (non-quantized) for most practical purposes.

The number of ways in which thermal energy can be distributed amongst the allowed states within a collection of molecules is easily calculated from simple statistics, but we will confine ourselves to an example here. Suppose that we have a system consisting of three molecules and three quanta of energy to share among them. We can give all the kinetic energy to any one molecule, leaving the others with none, we can give two units to one molecule and one unit to another, or we can share out the energy equally and give one unit to each molecule. All told, there are ten possible ways of distributing three units of energy among three identical molecules as shown here:



Each of these ten possibilities represents a distinct *microstate* that will describe the system at any instant in time. Those microstates that possess identical distributions of energy among the accessible quantum levels (and differ only in which particular molecules occupy the levels) are known as **configurations**. Because all microstates are equally probable, the probability of any one configuration is proportional to the number of microstates that can produce it. Thus in the system shown above, the configuration labeled *ii* will be observed 60% of the time, while *iii* will occur only 10% of the time.

As the number of molecules and the number of quanta increases, the number of accessible microstates grows explosively; if 1000 quanta of energy are shared by 1000 molecules, the number of available microstates will be around 10^{600}— a number that greatly exceeds the number of atoms in the observable universe! The number of possible configurations (as defined above) also increases, but in such a way as to greatly reduce the probability of all but the most probable configurations. Thus for a sample of a gas large enough to be observable under normal conditions, only a single configuration (energy distribution amongst the quantum states) need be considered; even the second-most-probable configuration can be neglected.

The bottom line: any collection of molecules large enough in numbers to have chemical significance will have its therrmal energy distributed over an unimaginably large number of microstates. The number of microstates increases exponentially as more energy states ("configurations" as defined above) become accessible owing to

- Addition of energy quanta (higher temperature),
- Increase in the number of molecules (resulting from dissociation, for example).
- the volume of the system increases (which decreases the spacing between energy states, allowing more of them to be populated at a given temperature.)

Key Concepts and Summary

- For a given system, the greater the number of microstates, the higher the entropy.
- During a spontaneous process, the entropy of the universe increases.

$$\Delta S = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T} \tag{8.1.9}$$

Entropy (S) is a state function whose value increases with an increase in the number of available microstates. A reversible process is one for which all intermediate states between extremes are equilibrium states; it can change direction at any time. In contrast, an irreversible process occurs in one direction only. The change in entropy of the system or the surroundings is the quantity of heat transferred divided by the temperature. Entropy (S) may be interpreted as a measure of the dispersal or distribution of matter and/or energy in a system, and it is often described as representing the “disorder” of the system.

For a given substance, $S_{\text{solid}} < S_{\text{liquid}} < S_{\text{gas}}$ in a given physical state at a given temperature, entropy is typically greater for heavier atoms or more complex molecules. Entropy increases when a system is heated and when solutions form. Using these guidelines, the sign of entropy changes for some chemical reactions may be reliably predicted.

Key Equations

- $\Delta S = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T}$
- $S = k \ln W$
- $\Delta S = k \ln \frac{W_{\text{f}}}{W_{\text{i}}}$

Glossary

entropy (*S*)
: state function that is a measure of the matter and/or energy dispersal within a system, determined by the number of system microstates often described as a measure of the disorder of the system

microstate (*W*)
: possible configuration or arrangement of matter and energy within a system

reversible process
: process that takes place so slowly as to be capable of reversing direction in response to an infinitesimally small change in conditions; hypothetical construct that can only be approximated by real processes removed

Contributors and Attributions

- {template.ContribLower()}}
- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 8.1: The Concept of Entropy is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 19.2: The Concept of Entropy is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

8.2: Spontaneity: The Meaning of Spontaneous Change

Learning Objectives

- Distinguish between spontaneous and nonspontaneous processes
- Describe the dispersal of matter and energy that accompanies certain spontaneous processes

In this section, consider the differences between two types of changes in a system: Those that occur spontaneously and those that occur only with the continuous input of energy. In doing so, we'll gain an understanding as to why some systems are naturally inclined to change in one direction under certain conditions. We'll also gain insight into how the spontaneity of a process affects the distribution of energy and matter within the system.

Spontaneous and Nonspontaneous Processes

Processes have a natural tendency to occur in one direction under a given set of conditions. Water will naturally flow downhill, but uphill flow requires outside intervention such as the use of a pump. A spontaneous process is one that occurs naturally under certain conditions. A nonspontaneous process, on the other hand, will not take place unless it is "driven" by the continual input of energy from an external source. A process that is spontaneous in one direction under a particular set of conditions is nonspontaneous in the reverse direction. At room temperature and typical atmospheric pressure, for example, ice will spontaneously melt, but water will not spontaneously freeze.

The spontaneity of a process is *not* correlated to the speed of the process. A spontaneous change may be so rapid that it is essentially instantaneous or so slow that it cannot be observed over any practical period of time. To illustrate this concept, consider the decay of radioactive isotopes, a topic more thoroughly treated in the chapter on nuclear chemistry. Radioactive decay is by definition a spontaneous process in which the nuclei of unstable isotopes emit radiation as they are converted to more stable nuclei. All the decay processes occur spontaneously, but the rates at which different isotopes decay vary widely. Technetium-99m is a popular radioisotope for medical imaging studies that undergoes relatively rapid decay and exhibits a half-life of about six hours. Uranium-238 is the most abundant isotope of uranium, and its decay occurs much more slowly, exhibiting a half-life of more than four billion years (Figure 8.2.1).

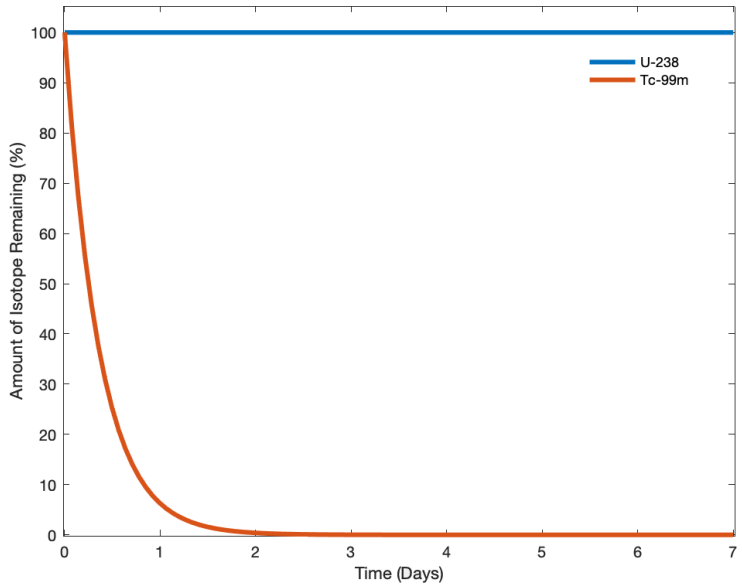


Figure 8.2.1: Both U-238 and Tc-99m undergo spontaneous radioactive decay, but at drastically different rates. Over the course of one week, essentially all of a Tc-99m sample and none of a U-238 sample will have decayed. (CC by 4.0; Morgan Johnson via LibreTexts)

Two curves are shown to represent U-238 and Tc-99m respectively. The vertical axes represents the percentage of isotope remaining and the horizontal axes is the time that has elapsed in days.

As another example, consider the conversion of diamond into graphite (Figure 8.2.2).

$$\mathrm{C\,(s,\,diamond)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{C\,(s,\,graphite)} \tag{8.2.1}$$

The phase diagram for carbon indicates that graphite is the stable form of this element under ambient atmospheric pressure, while diamond is the stable allotrope at very high pressures, such as those present during its geologic formation. Thermodynamic calculations of the sort described in the last section of this chapter indicate that the conversion of diamond to graphite at ambient pressure occurs spontaneously, yet diamonds are observed to exist, and persist, under these conditions. Though the process is spontaneous under typical ambient conditions, its rate is extremely slow, and so for all practical purposes diamonds are indeed "forever." Situations such as these emphasize the important distinction between the thermodynamic and the kinetic aspects of a process. In this particular case, diamonds are said to be *thermodynamically unstable* but *kinetically stable* under ambient conditions.

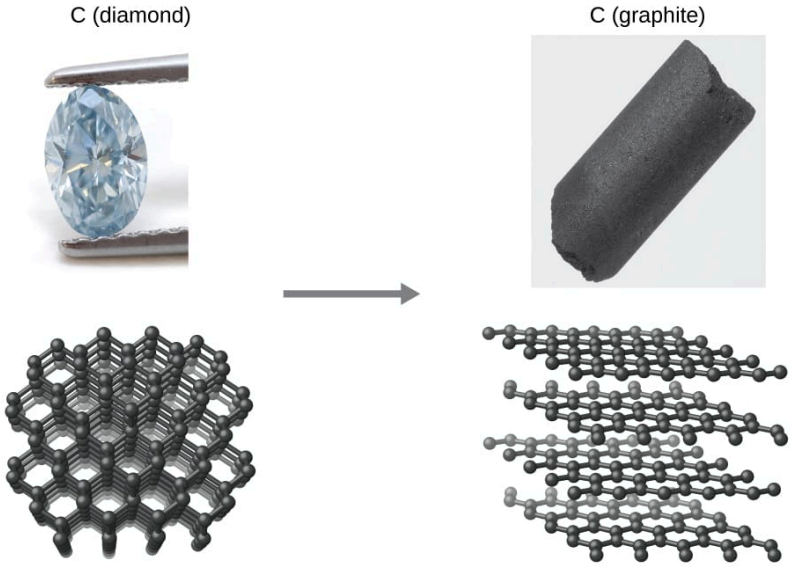


Figure 8.2.2: The conversion of carbon from the diamond allotrope to the graphite allotrope is spontaneous at ambient pressure, but its rate is immeasurably slow at low to moderate temperatures. This process is known as graphitization, and its rate can be increased to easily measurable values at temperatures in the 1000–2000 K range. (credit "diamond" photo: modification of work by "Fancy Diamonds"/Flickr; credit "graphite" photo: modification of work by images-of-elements.com/carbon.php)

Comparison of diamond and graphite shown in its physical form as well as its molecular arrangement respectively.

Dispersal of Matter and Energy

As we extend our discussion of thermodynamic concepts toward the objective of predicting spontaneity, consider now an isolated system consisting of two flasks connected with a closed valve. Initially there is an ideal gas on the left and a vacuum on the right (Figure 8.2.3). When the valve is opened, the gas spontaneously expands to fill both flasks. Recalling the definition of pressure-volume work from the chapter on thermochemistry, note that no work has been done because the pressure in a vacuum is zero.

$$w = -P\Delta V \tag{8.2.2}$$

$$= 0 \;\; (\mathrm{P} = 0 \text{ in a vaccum}) \tag{8.2.3}$$

Note as well that since the system is isolated, no heat has been exchanged with the surroundings (q = 0). The first law of thermodynamics confirms that there has been no change in the system's internal energy as a result of this process.

$$\Delta U = q + w \qquad \text{(First Law of Thermodynamics)}$$

$$= 0 + 0 = 0 \tag{8.2.4}$$

The spontaneity of this process is therefore not a consequence of any change in energy that accompanies the process. Instead, the movement of the gas appears to be related to the greater, more *uniform dispersal of matter* that results when the gas is allowed to expand. Initially, the system was comprised of one flask containing matter and another flask containing nothing. After the spontaneous process took place, the matter was distributed both more widely (occupying twice its original volume) and more

uniformly (present in equal amounts in each flask).

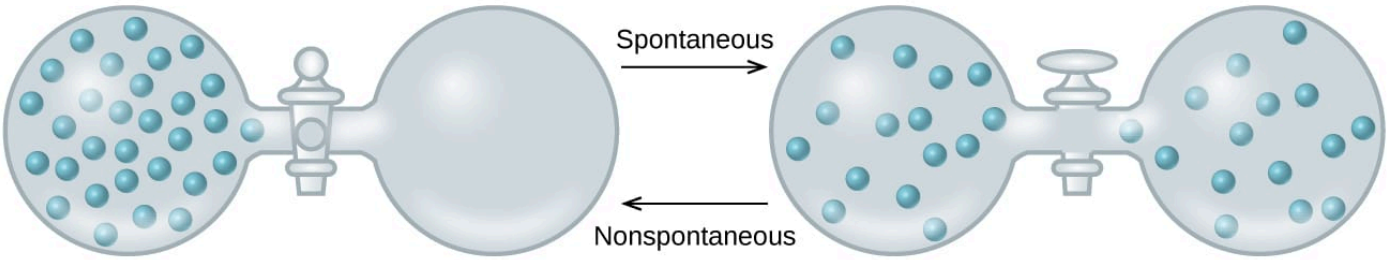


Figure 8.2.3: An isolated system consists of an ideal gas in one flask that is connected by a closed valve to a second flask containing a vacuum. Once the valve is opened, the gas spontaneously becomes evenly distributed between the flasks.

When the valve is closed, all of the gas molecules accumlating only in one side of the flask. The diagram with the open valve shows gas being equally distributed among the two flasks. The dispersion of the gas is labeled as spontaneous while the reverse is labeled as non spontaneous.

Now consider two objects at different temperatures: object X at temperature T_X and object Y at temperature T_Y, with $T_X > T_Y$ (Figure 8.2.4). When these objects come into contact, heat spontaneously flows from the hotter object (X) to the colder one (Y). This corresponds to a loss of thermal energy by X and a gain of thermal energy by Y.

$$q_X < 0 \quad \text{and} \quad q_Y = -q_X > 0 \tag{8.2.5}$$

From the perspective of this two-object system, there was no net gain or loss of thermal energy, rather the available thermal energy was redistributed among the two objects. This spontaneous process resulted in a *more uniform dispersal of energy*.



Figure 8.2.4:When two objects at different temperatures come in contact, heat spontaneously flows from the hotter to the colder object.

Two separated blocks. One is labeled X and the other labeled Y. The diagram next to it shows the two blocks in contact with one another.

As illustrated by the two processes described, an important factor in determining the spontaneity of a process is the extent to which it changes the dispersal or distribution of matter and/or energy. In each case, a spontaneous process took place that resulted in a more uniform distribution of matter or energy.

Example 8.2.1: Redistribution of Matter during a Spontaneous Process

Describe how matter and energy are redistributed when the following spontaneous processes take place:

a. A solid sublimes.
b. A gas condenses.
c. A drop of food coloring added to a glass of water forms a solution with uniform color.

Solution



Figure 8.2.5:(credit a: modification of work by Jenny Downing; credit b: modification of work by “Fuzzy Gerdes”/Flickr; credit c: modification of work by Sahar Atwa)

This figure has three photos labeled, “a,” “b,” and “c.” Photo a shows a glass with dry ice in water. There is a thick vapor coming from the top of the glass. Photo b shows water forming outside of a glass containing cold beverage. Photo c shows a sealed container that holds a red liquid.

a. *Sublimation* is the conversion of a solid (relatively high density) to a gas (much lesser density). This process yields a much greater dispersal of matter, since the molecules will occupy a much greater volume after the solid-to-gas transition. However, an input of energy from the surroundings ss required for the molecules to leave the solid phase and enter the gas phase.
b. *Condensation* is the conversion of a gas (relatively low density) to a liquid (much greater density). This process yields a much lesser dispersal of matter, since the molecules will occupy a much lesser volume after the gas-to-liquid transition. As the gas molecules move together to form the droplets of liquid, they form intermolecular forces and thus release energy to the surroundings.
c. The process in question is *dilution*. The food dye molecules initially occupy a much smaller volume (the drop of dye solution) than they occupy once the process is complete (in the full glass of water). The process therefore entails a greater dispersal of matter. The process may also yield a more uniform dispersal of matter, since the initial state of the system involves two regions of different dye concentrations (high in the drop, zero in the water), and the final state of the system contains a single dye concentration throughout. This process can occur with out a change in energy because the molecules have kinetic energy relative to the temperature of the water, and so will be constantly in motion.

Exercise 8.2.1

Describe how matter and energy are redistributed when you empty a canister of compressed air into a room.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

Chemical and physical processes have a natural tendency to occur in one direction under certain conditions. A spontaneous process occurs without the need for a continual input of energy from some external source, while a nonspontaneous process requires such. Systems undergoing a spontaneous process may or may not experience a gain or loss of energy, but they will experience a change in the way matter and/or energy is distributed within the system. In this section we have only discussed nuclear decay, physical changes of pure substances, and macroscopic events such as water flowing downhill. In the following sections we will discuss mixtures and chemical reactions, situations in which the description of sponteneity becomes more challenging.

Glossary

nonspontaneous process
: process that requires continual input of energy from an external source

spontaneous change
: process that takes place without a continuous input of energy from an external source

Answers

Exercise 8.2.1

This process entails both a greater and more uniform dispersal of matter as the compressed air in the canister is permitted to expand into the lower-pressure air of the room. The process also requires an input of energy to disrupt the intermolecular forces between the closely-spaced gas molecules that are originally compressed into the container. If you were to touch the nozzle of the canister, you would notice that it is cold because the exiting molecules are taking energy away from their surroundings, and the canister is part of the surroundings.

This page titled 8.2: Spontaneity: The Meaning of Spontaneous Change is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- 16.1: Spontaneity by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

8.3: Criteria for Spontaneous Change: The Second Law of Thermodynamics

Learning Objectives

- State and explain the second and third laws of thermodynamics
- Calculate entropy changes for phase transitions and chemical reactions under standard conditions

In the quest to identify a property that may reliably predict the spontaneity of a process, we have identified a very promising candidate: entropy. Processes that involve an increase in entropy *of the system* ($\Delta S > 0$) are very often spontaneous; however, examples to the contrary are plentiful. By expanding consideration of entropy changes to include *the surroundings*, we may reach a significant conclusion regarding the relation between this property and spontaneity. In thermodynamic models, the system and surroundings comprise everything, that is, the universe, and so the following is true:

$$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \Delta S_{\text{surr}} \tag{8.3.1}$$

To illustrate this relation, consider again the process of heat flow between two objects, one identified as the system and the other as the surroundings. There are three possibilities for such a process:

1. The objects are at different temperatures, and heat flows from the hotter to the cooler object. *This is always observed to occur spontaneously.* Designating the hotter object as the system and invoking the definition of entropy yields the following:

$$\Delta S_{\text{sys}} = \frac{-q_{\text{rev}}}{T_{\text{sys}}} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta S_{\text{surr}} = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T_{\text{surr}}} \tag{8.3.2}$$

   The arithmetic signs of q_{rev} denote the loss of heat by the system and the gain of heat by the surroundings. Since $T_{\text{sys}} > T_{\text{surr}}$ in this scenario, the magnitude of the entropy change for the surroundings will be greater than that for the system, and so the sum of ΔS_{sys} and ΔS_{surr} will yield a positive value for ΔS_{univ}. *This process involves an increase in the entropy of the universe.*
2. The objects are at different temperatures, and heat flows from the cooler to the hotter object. *This is never observed to occur spontaneously.* Again designating the hotter object as the system and invoking the definition of entropy yields the following:

$$\Delta S_{\text{sys}} = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T_{\text{sys}}} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta S_{\text{surr}} = \frac{-q_{\text{rev}}}{T_{\text{surr}}} \tag{8.3.3}$$

   The arithmetic signs of q_{rev} denote the gain of heat by the system and the loss of heat by the surroundings. The magnitude of the entropy change for the surroundings will again be greater than that for the system, but in this case, the signs of the heat changes will yield a negative value for ΔS_{univ}. *This process involves a decrease in the entropy of the universe.*
3. The temperature difference between the objects is infinitesimally small, $T_{\text{sys}} \approx T_{\text{surr}}$, and so the heat flow is thermodynamically reversible. See the previous section's discussion). In this case, the system and surroundings experience entropy changes that are equal in magnitude and therefore sum to yield a value of zero for ΔS_{univ}. *This process involves no change in the entropy of the universe.*

These results lead to a profound statement regarding the relation between entropy and spontaneity known as the second law of thermodynamics: *all spontaneous changes cause an increase in the entropy of the universe.* A summary of these three relations is provided in Table 8.3.1.

Table 8.3.1: The Second Law of Thermodynamics

$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} > 0$	spontaneous
$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} < 0$	nonspontaneous (spontaneous in opposite direction)
$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = 0$	reversible (system is at equilibrium)

Definition: The Second Law of Thermodynamics

All spontaneous changes cause an increase in the entropy of the universe.

For many realistic applications, the surroundings are vast in comparison to the system. In such cases, the heat gained or lost by the surroundings as a result of some process represents a very small, nearly infinitesimal, fraction of its total thermal energy. For example, combustion of a fuel in air involves transfer of heat from a system (the fuel and oxygen molecules undergoing reaction) to surroundings that are infinitely more massive (the earth's atmosphere). As a result, q_{surr} is a good approximation of q_{rev}, and the second law may be stated as the following:

$$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \Delta S_{\text{surr}} = \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \frac{q_{\text{surr}}}{T} \tag{8.3.4}$$

We may use this equation to predict the spontaneity of a process as illustrated in Example 8.3.1.

Will Ice Spontaneously Melt?

The entropy change for the process

$$\mathrm{H_2O}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

is 22.1 J/K and requires that the surroundings transfer 6.00 kJ of heat to the system. Is the process spontaneous at –10.00 °C? Is it spontaneous at +10.00 °C?

Solution

We can assess the spontaneity of the process by calculating the entropy change of the universe. If ΔS_{univ} is positive, then the process is spontaneous. At both temperatures, ΔS_{sys} = 22.1 J/K and q_{surr} = –6.00 kJ.

At –10.00 °C (263.15 K), the following is true:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S_{\text{univ}} &= \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \Delta S_{\text{surr}} = \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \frac{q_{\text{surr}}}{T} \\ &= 22.1\ \text{J/K} + \frac{-6.00 \times 10^3\ \text{J}}{263.15\ \text{K}} = -0.7\ \text{J/K}\end{aligned}$$

S_{univ} < 0, so melting is nonspontaneous (*not* spontaneous) at –10.0 °C.

At 10.00 °C (283.15 K), the following is true:

$$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \frac{q_{\text{surr}}}{T}$$

$$= 22.1\ \text{J/K} + \frac{-6.00 \times 10^3\ \text{J}}{283.15\ \text{K}} = +0.9\ \text{J/K}$$

S_{univ} > 0, so melting *is* spontaneous at 10.00 °C.

Exercise 8.3.1

Using this information, determine if liquid water will spontaneously freeze at the same temperatures. What can you say about the values of S_{univ}?

Answer:

Entropy is a state function, and freezing is the opposite of melting. At –10.00 °C spontaneous, +0.7 J/K; at +10.00 °C nonspontaneous, –0.9 J/K.

Gibbs Energy and Changes of Gibbs Energy

One of the challenges of using the second law of thermodynamics to determine if a process is spontaneous is that we must determine the entropy change for the system *and* the entropy change for the surroundings. An alternative approach involving a new thermodynamic property defined in terms of system properties only was introduced in the late nineteenth century by American mathematician Josiah Willard Gibbs. This new property is called the Gibbs free energy change (*G*) (or simply the *free energy*), and it is defined in terms of a system's enthalpy and entropy as the following:

$$G = H - TS \tag{8.3.5}$$

Free energy is a state function, and at constant temperature and pressure, the standard free energy change (ΔG°) may be expressed as the following:

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S \tag{8.3.6}$$

(For simplicity's sake, the subscript "sys" will be omitted henceforth.) We can understand the relationship between this system property and the spontaneity of a process by recalling the previously derived second law expression:

$$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta S + \frac{q_{\text{surr}}}{T} \tag{8.3.7}$$

The first law requires that qsurr = −qsys, and at constant pressure qsys = ΔH, and so this expression may be rewritten as the following:

$$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta S - \frac{\Delta H}{T} \tag{8.3.8}$$

ΔH is the enthalpy change of the system. Multiplying both sides of this equation by −T, and rearranging yields the following:

$$-T\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta H - T\Delta S \tag{8.3.9}$$

Comparing this equation to the previous one for free energy change shows the following relation:

$$\Delta G = -T\Delta S_{\text{univ}} \tag{8.3.10}$$

The free energy change is therefore a reliable indicator of the spontaneity of a process, being directly related to the previously identified spontaneity indicator, ΔS_{univ}. Table $8.3.2$ expands on Table $8.3.2$ and summarizes the relation between the spontaneity of a process and the arithmetic signs of ΔG and ΔS indicators.

Table $8.3.2$: Relation between Process Spontaneity and Signs of Thermodynamic Properties

$\Delta S_{univ} > 0$	$\Delta G < 0$	spontaneous
$\Delta S_{univ} < 0$	$\Delta G > 0$	nonspontaneous
$\Delta S_{univ} = 0$	$\Delta G = 0$	reversible (at equilibrium)

. Willard Gibbs (1839–1903)

Born in Connecticut, Josiah Willard Gibbs attended Yale, as did his father, a professor of sacred literature at Yale, who was involved in the Amistad trial. In 1863, Gibbs was awarded the first engineering doctorate granted in the United States. He was appointed professor of mathematical physics at Yale in 1871, the first such professorship in the United States. His series of papers entitled "On the Equilibrium of Heterogeneous Substances" was the foundation of the field of physical chemistry and is considered one of the great achievements of the 19th century. Gibbs, whose work was translated into French by Le Chatelier, lived with his sister and brother-in-law until his death in 1903, shortly before the inauguration of the Nobel Prizes.

Gibbs energy is a state function, so its value depends only on the conditions of the initial and final states of the system that have undergone some change. A convenient and common approach to the calculation of free energy changes for physical and chemical reactions is by use of widely available compilations of standard state thermodynamic data. One method involves the use of standard enthalpies and entropies to compute standard free energy changes according to the following relation as demonstrated

in Example 8.3.1.

Label '\({8{.}3{.}\eatSpaces{7} \endSpaces}\)' multiply defined

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Definition of Gibbs Free Energy: https://youtu.be/iuWkcHUh-1o

Example 8.3.2: Evaluation of ΔG°

Change from ΔH° and ΔS° Use standard enthalpy and entropy data from Appendix G to calculate the standard free energy change for the vaporization of water at room temperature (298 K). What does the computed value for ΔG° say about the spontaneity of this process?

Solution

The process of interest is the following:

$$\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O}(g)$$

The standard change in free energy may be calculated using the following equation:

$$\Delta G^\circ_{298} = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ$$

From Appendix G, here is the data:

Substance	$\Delta H^\circ_f (k\,\mathrm{J/mol})$	$S^\circ_{298} (\mathrm{J/K{\cdot}mol})$
$H_2O(l)$	−286.83	70.0
$H_2O(g)$	−241.82	188.8

Combining at 298 K:

$$\Delta H^\circ = \Delta H^\circ_{298} = \Delta H^\circ_f(\mathrm{H_2O}(g)) - \Delta H^\circ_f(\mathrm{H_2O}(l))$$
$$= [-241.82\ \mathrm{kJ} - (-285.83)]\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} = 44.01\ \mathrm{kJ/mol}$$

$$\Delta S^\circ = \Delta S^\circ_{298} = S^\circ_{298}(\mathrm{H_2O}(g)) - S^\circ_{298}(\mathrm{H_2O}(l))$$
$$= 188.8\ \mathrm{J/mol \cdot K} - 70.0\ \mathrm{J/K} = 118.8\ \mathrm{J/mol \cdot K}$$

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ$$

Converting everything into kJ and combining at 298 K:

$$\Delta G^\circ_{298} = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ$$

$$= 44.01\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} - (298\ \mathrm{K} \times 118.8\ \mathrm{J/mol \cdot K}) \times \frac{1\ \mathrm{kJ}}{1000\ \mathrm{J}}$$

$$44.01\ \text{kJ/mol} - 35.4\ \text{kJ/mol} = 8.6\ \text{kJ/mol}$$

At 298 K (25 °C) $\Delta G^\circ_{298} > 0$, and so boiling is nonspontaneous (not spontaneous).

Exercise 8.3.2

Use standard enthalpy and entropy data from Appendix G to calculate the standard free energy change for the reaction shown here (298 K). What does the computed value for ΔG° say about the spontaneity of this process?

$$C_2H_6(g) \longrightarrow H_2(g) + C_2H_4(g)$$

Answer:

$\Delta G^\circ_{298} = 102.0\ \text{kJ/mol}$; the reaction is nonspontaneous (not spontaneous) at 25 °C.

Free energy changes may also use the standard free energy of formation (ΔG°_f), for each of the reactants and products involved in the reaction. The standard free energy of formation is the free energy change that accompanies the formation of one mole of a substance from its elements in their standard states. Similar to the standard enthalpies of formation, (ΔG°_f) is by definition zero for elemental substances under standard state conditions. The approach to computing the free energy change for a reaction using this approach is the same as that demonstrated previously for enthalpy and entropy changes. For the reaction

$$mA + nB \longrightarrow xC + yD, \tag{8.3.11}$$

the standard free energy change at room temperature may be calculated as

$$\Delta G^\circ_{298} = \Delta G° = \sum \nu \Delta G^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu \Delta G^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants}) \tag{8.3.12}$$

$$= [x\Delta G^\circ_f(C) + y\Delta G^\circ_f(D)] - [m\Delta G^\circ_f(A) + n\Delta G^\circ_f(B)]. \tag{8.3.13}$$

Example 8.3.3: Calculation of ΔG°_{298}

Consider the decomposition of yellow mercury(II) oxide.

$$HgO(s,\ \text{yellow}) \longrightarrow Hg(l) + \frac{1}{2}O_2(g)$$

Calculate the standard free energy change at room temperature, ΔG°_{298}, using (a) standard free energies of formation and (b) standard enthalpies of formation and standard entropies. Do the results indicate the reaction to be spontaneous or nonspontaneous under standard conditions?

Solution

The required data are available in Appendix G and are shown here.

Compound	ΔG°_f (kJ/mol)	ΔH°_f (kJ/mol)	S°_{298} (J/K·mol)
HgO (s, yellow)	−58.43	−90.46	71.13
Hg(*l*)	0	0	75.9
O_2(*g*)	0	0	205.2

(a) Using free energies of formation:

$$\Delta G^\circ_{298} = \sum \nu G S^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu \Delta G^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants})$$

$$= \left[1\Delta G^\circ_{298}\text{Hg}(l) + \frac{1}{2}\Delta G^\circ_{298}\text{O}_2(g)\right] - 1\Delta G^\circ_{298}\text{HgO}(s,\text{ yellow})$$

$$= \left[1\text{ mol}(0\text{ kJ/mol}) + \frac{1}{2}\text{mol}(0\text{ kJ/mol})\right] - 1\text{ mol}(-58.43\text{ kJ/mol}) = 58.43\text{ kJ/mol}$$

(b) Using enthalpies and entropies of formation:

$$\Delta H^\circ_{298} = \sum \nu \Delta H^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu \Delta H^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants})$$

$$= \left[1\Delta H^\circ_{298}\text{Hg}(l) + \frac{1}{2}\Delta H^\circ_{298}\text{O}_2(g)\right] - 1\Delta H^\circ_{298}\text{HgO}(s,\text{ yellow})$$

$$= [1\text{ mol}(0\text{ kJ/mol}) + \frac{1}{2}\text{mol}(0\text{ kJ/mol})] - 1\text{ mol}(-90.46\text{ kJ/mol}) = 90.46\text{ kJ/mol}$$

$$\Delta S^\circ_{298} = \sum \nu \Delta S^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu \Delta S^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants})$$

$$= \left[1\Delta S^\circ_{298}\text{Hg}(l) + \frac{1}{2}\Delta S^\circ_{298}\text{O}_2(g)\right] - 1\Delta S^\circ_{298}\text{HgO}(s,\text{ yellow})$$

$$= \left[1\text{ mol}(75.9\text{ J/mol K}) + \frac{1}{2}\text{mol}(205.2\text{ J/mol K})\right] - 1\text{ mol}(71.13\text{ J/mol K}) = 107.4\text{ J/mol K}$$

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ = 90.46\text{ kJ} - 298.15\text{ K} \times 107.4\text{ J/K} \cdot \text{mol} \times \frac{1\text{ kJ}}{1000\text{ J}}$$

$$\Delta G^\circ = (90.46 - 32.01)\text{ kJ/mol} = 58.45\text{ kJ/mol}$$

Both ways to calculate the standard free energy change at 25 °C give the same numerical value (to three significant figures), and both predict that the process is nonspontaneous (not spontaneous) at room temperature.

Exercise 8.3.3

Calculate ΔG° using (a) free energies of formation and (b) enthalpies of formation and entropies (Appendix G). Do the results indicate the reaction to be spontaneous or nonspontaneous at 25 °C?

$$\text{C}_2\text{H}_4(g) \longrightarrow \text{H}_2(g) + \text{C}_2\text{H}_2(g)$$

Answer

–141.5 kJ/mol, nonspontaneous

Key Concepts and Summary

The second law of thermodynamics states that a spontaneous process increases the entropy of the universe, $S_{univ} > 0$. If $\Delta S_{univ} < 0$, the process is nonspontaneous, and if $\Delta S_{univ} = 0$, the system is at equilibrium. Gibbs free energy (G) is a state function defined with regard to system quantities only and may be used to predict the spontaneity of a process. A negative value for ΔG indicates a spontaneous process; a positive ΔG indicates a nonspontaneous process; and a ΔG of zero indicates that the system is at equilibrium. A number of approaches to the computation of free energy changes are possible.

Key Equations

- $\Delta S^\circ = \Delta S^\circ_{298} = \sum \nu S^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu S^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants})$

- $\Delta S = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T}$
- $\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \Delta S_{\text{surr}}$
- $\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \Delta S_{\text{surr}} = \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \frac{q_{\text{surr}}}{T}$
- $\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$
- $\Delta G = \Delta G^\circ + RT \ln Q$
- $\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K$

Glossary

Gibbs free energy change (*G*)
: thermodynamic property defined in terms of system enthalpy and entropy; all spontaneous processes involve a decrease in *G*

standard free energy change (ΔG°)
: change in free energy for a process occurring under standard conditions (1 bar pressure for gases, 1 M concentration for solutions)

standard free energy of formation $(\Delta G_{\text{f}}^\circ)$
: change in free energy accompanying the formation of one mole of substance from its elements in their standard states

second law of thermodynamics
: entropy of the universe increases for a spontaneous process

standard entropy (S°)
: entropy for a substance at 1 bar pressure; tabulated values are usually determined at 298.15 K and denoted S_{298}°

standard entropy change (ΔS°)
: change in entropy for a reaction calculated using the standard entropies, usually at room temperature and denoted ΔS_{298}°

Contributors and Attributions

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 8.3: Criteria for Spontaneous Change: The Second Law of Thermodynamics is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 19.4: Criteria for Spontaneous Change: The Second Law of Thermodynamics is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

8.4: Evaluating Entropy and Entropy Changes

Learning Objectives

- To use thermodynamic cycles to calculate changes in entropy.

The atoms, molecules, or ions that compose a chemical system can undergo several types of molecular motion, including translation, rotation, and vibration (Figure 8.4.1). The greater the molecular motion of a system, the greater the number of possible microstates and the higher the entropy. A perfectly ordered system with only a single microstate available to it would have an entropy of zero. The only system that meets this criterion is a perfect crystal at a temperature of absolute zero (0 K), in which each component atom, molecule, or ion is fixed in place within a crystal lattice and exhibits no motion (ignoring quantum effects). Such a state of perfect order (or, conversely, zero disorder) corresponds to zero entropy. In practice, absolute zero is an ideal temperature that is unobtainable, and a perfect single crystal is also an ideal that cannot be achieved. Nonetheless, the combination of these two ideals constitutes the basis for the third law of thermodynamics: the entropy of any perfectly ordered, crystalline substance at absolute zero is zero.

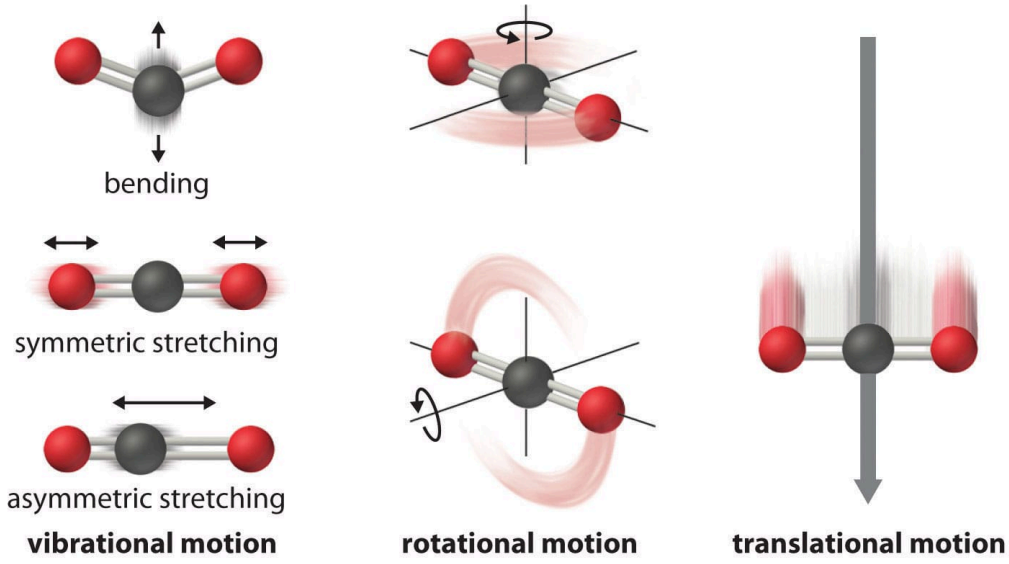


Figure 8.4.1: Molecular Motions. Vibrational, rotational, and translational motions of a carbon dioxide molecule are illustrated here. Only a perfectly ordered, crystalline substance at absolute zero would exhibit no molecular motion and have zero entropy. In practice, this is an unattainable ideal.

Third Law of Thermodynamics

The entropy of any perfectly ordered, crystalline substance at absolute zero is *zero*.

The third law of thermodynamics has two important consequences: it defines the sign of the entropy of any substance at temperatures above absolute zero as positive, and it provides a fixed reference point that allows us to measure the absolute entropy of any substance at any temperature.In practice, chemists determine the absolute entropy of a substance by measuring the molar heat capacity (C_p) as a function of temperature and then plotting the quantity C_p/T versus T. The area under the curve between 0 K and any temperature T is the absolute entropy of the substance at T. In contrast, other thermodynamic properties, such as internal energy and enthalpy, can be evaluated in only relative terms, not absolute terms. In this section, we examine two different ways to calculate ΔS for a reaction or a physical change. The first, based on the definition of absolute entropy provided by the third law of thermodynamics, uses tabulated values of absolute entropies of substances. The second, based on the fact that entropy is a state function, uses a thermodynamic cycle similar to those discussed previously.

Calculating ΔS from Standard Molar Entropy Values

One way of calculating ΔS for a reaction is to use tabulated values of the standard molar entropy (S°), which is the entropy of 1 mol of a substance at a standard temperature of 298 K; the units of S° are J/(mol•K). Unlike enthalpy or internal energy, it is possible to obtain absolute entropy values by measuring the entropy change that occurs between the reference point of 0 K [corresponding to S = 0 J/(mol•K)] and 298 K.

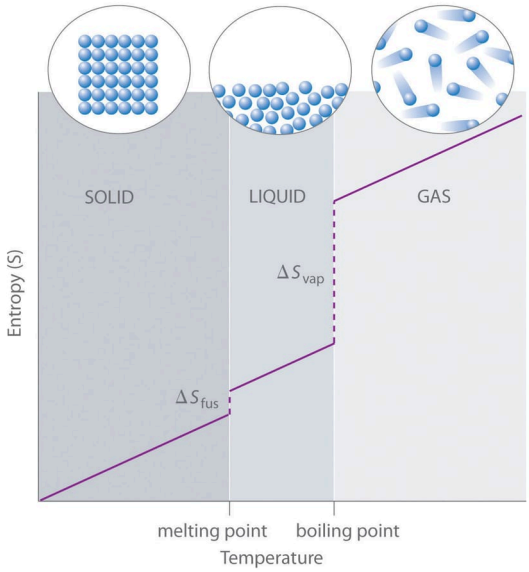


Figure 8.4.2: A Generalized Plot of Entropy versus Temperature for a Single Substance. Absolute entropy increases steadily with increasing temperature until the melting point is reached, where it jumps suddenly as the substance undergoes a phase change from a highly ordered solid to a disordered liquid (ΔS_{fus}). The entropy again increases steadily with increasing temperature until the boiling point is reached, where it jumps suddenly as the liquid undergoes a phase change to a highly disordered gas (ΔS_{vap}).

As shown in Table 8.4.1, for substances with approximately the same molar mass and number of atoms, S° values fall in the order S°(gas) > S°(liquid) > S°(solid). For instance, S° for liquid water is 70.0 J/(mol•K), whereas S° for water vapor is 188.8 J/(mol•K). Likewise, S° is 260.7 J/(mol•K) for gaseous I_2 and 116.1 J/(mol•K) for solid I2. This order makes qualitative sense based on the kinds and extents of motion available to atoms and molecules in the three phases. The correlation between physical state and absolute entropy is illustrated in Figure 8.4.2, which is a generalized plot of the entropy of a substance versus temperature.

Table 8.4.1: Standard Molar Entropy Values of Selected Substances at 25°C

Gases		**Liquids**		**Solids**	
Substance	*S° [J/(mol•K)]*	*Substance*	*S° [J/(mol•K)]*	*Substance*	*S° [J/(mol•K)]*
He	126.2	H_2O	70.0	C (diamond)	2.4
H_2	130.7	CH_3OH	126.8	C (graphite)	5.7
Ne	146.3	Br_2	152.2	LiF	35.7
Ar	154.8	CH_3CH_2OH	160.7	SiO_2 (quartz)	41.5
Kr	164.1	C_6H_6	173.4	Ca	41.6
Xe	169.7	CH_3COCl	200.8	Na	51.3
H_2O	188.8	C_6H_{12} (cyclohexane)	204.4	MgF_2	57.2
N_2	191.6	C_8H_{18} (isooctane)	329.3	K	64.7
O_2	205.2			NaCl	72.1
CO_2	213.8			KCl	82.6

I_2	260.7			I_2	116.1

Note

Entropy increases with softer, less rigid solids, solids that contain larger atoms, and solids with complex molecular structures.

A closer examination of Table 8.4.1 also reveals that substances with similar molecular structures tend to have similar S° values. Among crystalline materials, those with the lowest entropies tend to be rigid crystals composed of small atoms linked by strong, highly directional bonds, such as diamond [S° = 2.4 J/(mol•K)]. In contrast, graphite, the softer, less rigid allotrope of carbon, has a higher S° [5.7 J/(mol•K)] due to more disorder in the crystal. Soft crystalline substances and those with larger atoms tend to have higher entropies because of increased molecular motion and disorder. Similarly, the absolute entropy of a substance tends to increase with increasing molecular complexity because the number of available microstates increases with molecular complexity. For example, compare the S° values for $CH_3OH(l)$ and $CH_3CH_2OH(l)$. Finally, substances with strong hydrogen bonds have lower values of S°, which reflects a more ordered structure.

Note

ΔS° for a reaction can be calculated from absolute entropy values using the same "products minus reactants" rule used to calculate ΔH°.

To calculate ΔS° for a chemical reaction from standard molar entropies, we use the familiar "products minus reactants" rule, in which the absolute entropy of each reactant and product is multiplied by its stoichiometric coefficient in the balanced chemical equation. Example 8.4.1 illustrates this procedure for the combustion of the liquid hydrocarbon isooctane (C_8H_{18}; 2,2,4-trimethylpentane).

Example 8.4.1

Use the data in Table 8.4.1 to calculate ΔS° for the reaction of liquid isooctane with $O_2(g)$ to give $CO_2(g)$ and $H_2O(g)$ at 298 K.

Given: standard molar entropies, reactants, and products

Asked for: ΔS°

Strategy:

Write the balanced chemical equation for the reaction and identify the appropriate quantities in Table 8.4.1. Subtract the sum of the absolute entropies of the reactants from the sum of the absolute entropies of the products, each multiplied by their appropriate stoichiometric coefficients, to obtain ΔS° for the reaction.

Solution:

The balanced chemical equation for the complete combustion of isooctane (C_8H_{18}) is as follows:

$$C_8H_{18}(l) + \frac{25}{2}O_2(g) \rightarrow 8CO_2(g) + 9H_2O(g)$$

We calculate ΔS° for the reaction using the "products minus reactants" rule, where m and n are the stoichiometric coefficients of each product and each reactant:

$$\Delta S^\circ_{\text{rxn}} = \sum mS^\circ(\text{products}) - \sum nS^\circ(\text{reactants}) \tag{8.4.1}$$

$$= [8S^\circ(CO_2) + 9S^\circ(H_2O)] - [S^\circ(C_8H_{18}) + \frac{25}{2}S^\circ(O_2)] \tag{8.4.2}$$

$$= \{[8 \text{ mol } CO_2 \times 213.8 \text{ J/(mol} \cdot \text{K)}] + [9 \text{ mol } H_2O \times 188.8 \text{ J/(mol} \cdot \text{K)}]\} \tag{8.4.3}$$

$$- \left\{[1 \text{ mol } C_8H_{18} \times 329.3 \text{ J/(mol} \cdot \text{K)}] + \left[\frac{25}{2} \text{ mol } O_2 \times 205.2 \text{ J/(mol} \cdot \text{K)}\right]\right\} \tag{8.4.4}$$

$$= 515.3 \text{ J/K} \tag{8.4.5}$$

ΔS° is positive, as expected for a combustion reaction in which one large hydrocarbon molecule is converted to many molecules of gaseous products.

Exercise 8.4.1

Use the data in Table 8.4.1 to calculate ΔS° for the reaction of H_2(g) with liquid benzene (C_6H_6) to give cyclohexane (C_6H_{12}).

Answer: −361.1 J/K

Calculating ΔS from Thermodynamic Cycles

We can also calculate a change in entropy using a thermodynamic cycle. As you learned previously, the molar heat capacity (C_p) is the amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of 1 mol of a substance by 1°C at constant pressure. Similarly, C_v is the amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of 1 mol of a substance by 1°C at constant volume. The increase in entropy with increasing temperature in Figure 8.4.2 is approximately proportional to the heat capacity of the substance.

Recall that the entropy change (ΔS) is related to heat flow (q_{rev}) by $\Delta S = q_{rev}/T$. Because $q_{rev} = nC_p\Delta T$ at constant pressure or $nC_v\Delta T$ at constant volume, where n is the number of moles of substance present, the change in entropy for a substance whose temperature changes from T_1 to T_2 is as follows:

$$\Delta S = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T} = nC_{\text{p}}\frac{\Delta T}{T} \quad (\text{constant pressure}) \tag{8.4.6}$$

As you will discover in more advanced math courses than is required here, it can be shown that this is equal to the following:For a review of natural logarithms, see Essential Skills 6 in Chapter 11.

$$\Delta S = nC_{\text{p}} \ln \frac{T_2}{T_1} \quad (\text{constant pressure}) \tag{8.4.7}$$

Similarly,

$$\Delta S = nC_{\text{v}} \ln \frac{T_2}{T_1} \quad (\text{constant volume}) \tag{8.4.8}$$

Thus we can use a combination of heat capacity measurements (Equation 18.20 or Equation 18.21) and experimentally measured values of enthalpies of fusion or vaporization if a phase change is involved (Equation 18.18) to calculate the entropy change corresponding to a change in the temperature of a sample.

We can use a thermodynamic cycle to calculate the entropy change when the phase change for a substance such as sulfur cannot be measured directly. As noted in the exercise in Example 6, elemental sulfur exists in two forms (part (a) in Figure 8.4.3): an orthorhombic form with a highly ordered structure (S_α) and a less-ordered monoclinic form (S_β). The orthorhombic (α) form is more stable at room temperature but undergoes a phase transition to the monoclinic (β) form at temperatures greater than 95.3°C (368.5 K). The transition from S_α to S_β can be described by the thermodynamic cycle shown in part (b) in Figure 8.4.3, in which liquid sulfur is an intermediate. The change in entropy that accompanies the conversion of liquid sulfur to S_β ($-\Delta S_{fus(\beta)} = \Delta S_3$ in the cycle) cannot be measured directly. Because entropy is a state function, however, ΔS_3 can be calculated from the overall entropy change (ΔS_t) for the S_α–S_β transition, which equals the sum of the ΔS values for the steps in the thermodynamic cycle, using Equation 18.20 and tabulated thermodynamic parameters (the heat capacities of S_α and S_β, $\Delta H_{fus(\alpha)}$, and the melting point of S_α.)

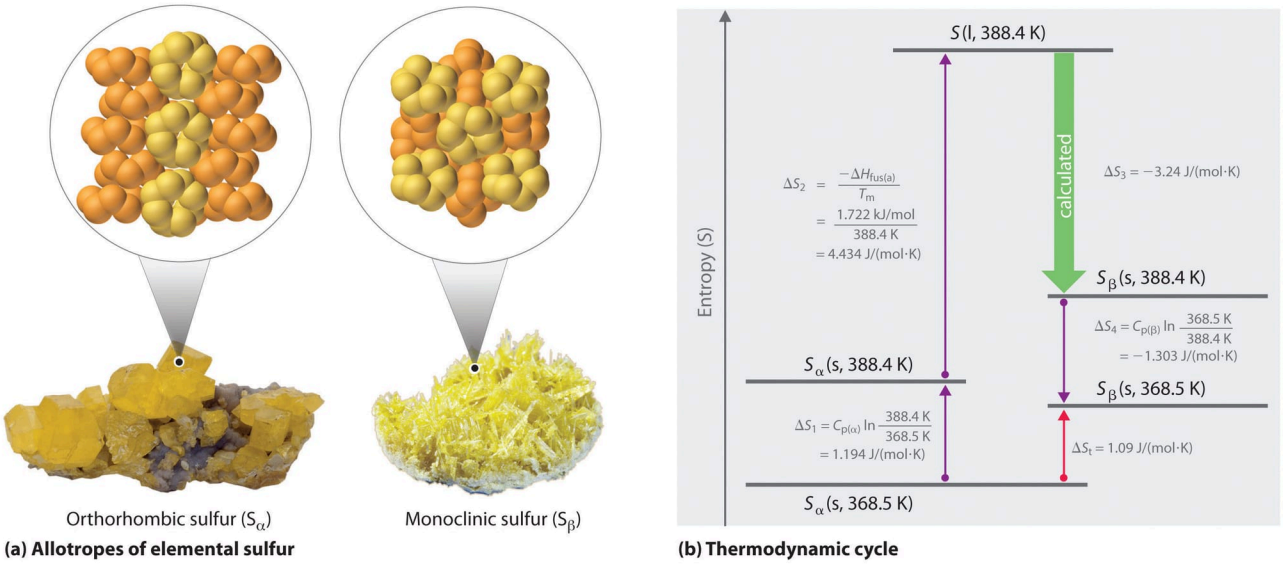


Figure 8.4.3: Two Forms of Elemental Sulfur and a Thermodynamic Cycle Showing the Transition from One to the Other(a) Orthorhombic sulfur (S_α) has a highly ordered structure in which the S_8 rings are stacked in a "crankshaft" arrangement. Monoclinic sulfur (S_β) is also composed of S_8 rings but has a less-ordered structure. (b) At 368.5 K, S_α undergoes a phase transition to S_β. Although ΔS_3 cannot be measured directly, it can be calculated using the values shown in this thermodynamic cycle.

If we know the melting point of S_α (T_m = 115.2°C = 388.4 K) and ΔS_t for the overall phase transition [calculated to be 1.09 J/(mol•K) in the exercise in Example 6], we can calculate ΔS_3 from the values given in part (b) in Figure 8.4.3 where $C_{p(\alpha)}$ = 22.70 J/mol•K and $C_{p(\beta)}$ = 24.77 J/mol•K (subscripts on ΔS refer to steps in the cycle):

$$\Delta S_t = \Delta S_1 + \Delta S_2 + \Delta S_3 + \Delta S_4 \tag{8.4.9}$$

$$1.09\ \text{J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)} = C_{p(\alpha)} \ln\left(\frac{T_2}{T_1}\right) + \frac{\Delta H_{fus}}{T_m} + \Delta S_3 + C_{p(\beta)} \ln\left(\frac{T_4}{T_3}\right) \tag{8.4.10}$$

$$= 22.70\ \text{J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)} \ln\left(\frac{388.4}{368.5}\right) + \left(\frac{1.722\ \text{kJ/mol}}{388.4\ \text{K}} \times 1000\ \text{J/kJ}\right) \tag{8.4.11}$$

$$+ \Delta S_3 + 24.77\ \text{J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)} \ln\left(\frac{368.5}{388.4}\right) \tag{8.4.12}$$

$$= [1.194\ \text{J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)}] + [4.434\ \text{J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)}] + \Delta S_3 + [-1.303\ \text{J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)}] \tag{8.4.13}$$

Solving for ΔS_3 gives a value of –3.24 J/(mol•K). As expected for the conversion of a less ordered state (a liquid) to a more ordered one (a crystal), ΔS_3 is negative.

How are Entropies Measured

The *absolute entropy* of a substance at any temperature above 0 K must be determined by calculating the increments of heat *q* required to bring the substance from 0 K to the temperature of interest, and then summing the ratios *q*/*T*. Two kinds of experimental measurements are needed:

1. The enthalpies associated with any **phase changes** the substance may undergo within the temperature range of interest. Melting of a solid and vaporization of a liquid correspond to sizeable increases in the number of microstates available to accept thermal energy, so as these processes occur, energy will flow into a system, filling these new microstates to the extent required to maintain a constant temperature (the freezing or boiling point); these inflows of thermal energy correspond to the heats of fusion and vaporization. The entropy increase associated with melting, for example, is just $\Delta H_{fusion}/T_m$.
2. The **heat capacity** *C* of a phase expresses the quantity of heat required to change the temperature by a small amount ΔT, or more precisely, by an infinitesimal amount dT. Thus the entropy increase brought about by warming a substance over a range of temperatures that does not encompass a phase transition is given by the sum of the quantities $C\ dT/T$ for each increment of temperature dT. This is of course just the integral

$$S_{0\rightarrow T^o} = \int_0^{T^o} \frac{C_p}{T} dt \tag{8.4.14}$$

Because the heat capacity is itself slightly temperature dependent, the most precise determinations of absolute entropies require that the functional dependence of C on T be used in the above integral in place of a constant C.

$$S_{0\rightarrow T^o} = \int_0^{T^o} \frac{C_p(T)}{T} dt \tag{8.4.15}$$

When this is not known, one can take a series of heat capacity measurements over narrow temperature increments ΔT and measure the area under each section of the curve.

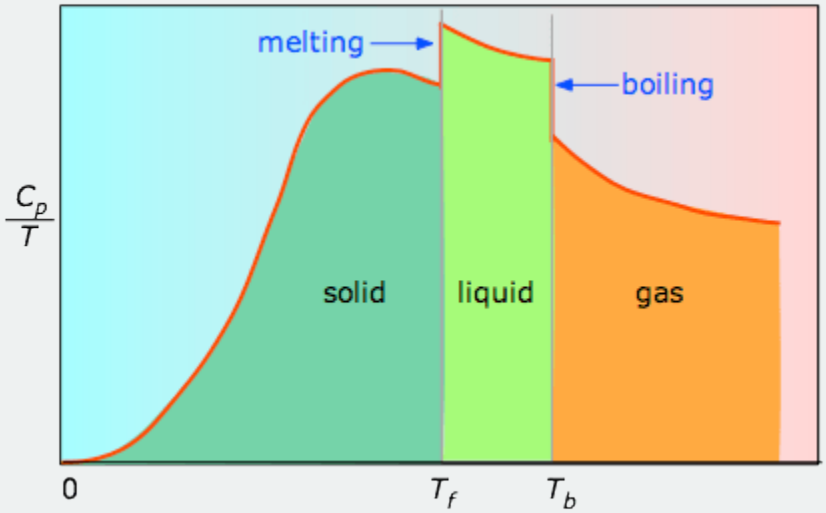


Figure 8.4.4: Heat capitity/temperature as a function of temperature

The area under each section of the plot represents the entropy change associated with heating the substance through an interval ΔT. To this must be added the enthalpies of melting, vaporization, and of any solid-solid phase changes. Values of C_p for temperatures near zero are not measured directly, but can be estimated from quantum theory.

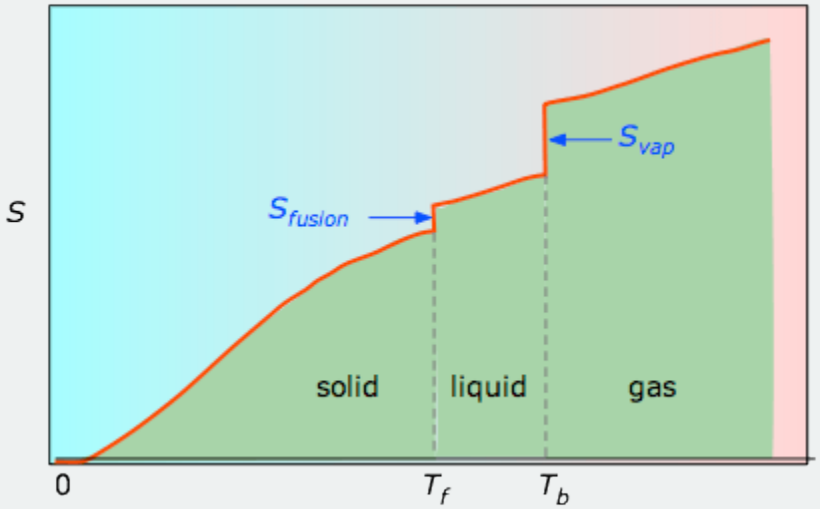


Figure 8.4.5: Molar entropy as a function of temperature

The cumulative areas from 0 K to any given temperature (taken from the experimental plot on the left) are then plotted as a function of T, and any phase-change entropies such as $S_{vap} = H_{vap} / T_b$ are added to obtain the absolute entropy at temperature T.

Summary

- Entropy changes can be calculated using the “products minus reactants” rule or from a combination of heat capacity measurements and measured values of enthalpies of fusion or vaporization.

The third law of thermodynamics states that the entropy of any perfectly ordered, crystalline substance at absolute zero is zero. At temperatures greater than absolute zero, entropy has a positive value, which allows us to measure the absolute entropy of a substance. Measurements of the heat capacity of a substance and the enthalpies of fusion or vaporization can be used to calculate the changes in entropy that accompany a physical change. The entropy of 1 mol of a substance at a standard temperature of 298 K is its standard molar entropy ($S°$). We can use the “products minus reactants” rule to calculate the standard entropy change ($\Delta S°$) for a reaction using tabulated values of $S°$ for the reactants and the products.

This page titled 8.4: Evaluating Entropy and Entropy Changes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 19.3: Evaluating Entropy and Entropy Changes is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

8.5: Standard Gibbs Energy Change, ΔG°

Learning Objectives

- Define Gibbs free energy, and describe its relation to spontaneity
- Calculate free energy change for a process using free energies of formation for its reactants and products
- Calculate free energy change for a process using enthalpies of formation and the entropies for its reactants and products

The Gibbs free energy (G), often called simply free energy, was named in honor of J. Willard Gibbs (1838–1903), an American physicist who first developed the concept. It is defined in terms of three other state functions with which you are already familiar: enthalpy, temperature, and entropy:

$$G = H - TS \tag{8.5.1}$$

Because it is a combination of state functions, G is also a state function.

The criterion for predicting spontaneity is based on Δ*G*, the change in *G*, at constant temperature and pressure. Although very few chemical reactions actually occur under conditions of constant temperature and pressure, most systems can be brought back to the initial temperature and pressure without significantly affecting the value of thermodynamic state functions such as *G*. At constant temperature and pressure,

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S \tag{8.5.2}$$

where all thermodynamic quantities are those of the *system*. Under standad conditions Equation 8.5.2 is then expressed at

$$\Delta G^o = \Delta H^o - T\Delta S^o \tag{8.5.3}$$

Since G is a state function, ΔG^o can be obtained from the *standard free-energy of formation* values in Table T1 (or T2) via the similar relationship used to calculate other state functions like ΔH^o and ΔS^o:

$$\Delta G^o = \sum n\Delta G_f^o\,(products) - \sum m\Delta G_f^o\,(reactants) \tag{8.5.4}$$

Example 8.5.1: Calculation of ΔG°_{298}

Consider the decomposition of yellow mercury(II) oxide.

$$\mathrm{HgO}(s,\text{ yellow}) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hg}(l) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g)$$

Calculate the standard free energy change at room temperature, ΔG°_{298}, using (a) standard free energies of formation and (b) standard enthalpies of formation and standard entropies. Do the results indicate the reaction to be spontaneous or nonspontaneous under standard conditions? The required data are available in Table T1 .

Solution

The required data are available in Table T1 and are shown here.

Compound	ΔG_f° (kJ/mol)	ΔH_f° (kJ/mol)	S°_{298} (J/K·mol)
HgO (s, yellow)	−58.43	−90.46	71.13
Hg(*l*)	0	0	75.9
O_2(*g*)	0	0	205.2

(a) Using free energies of formation:

$$\Delta G^\circ_{298} = \sum \nu G S^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu \Delta G^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants})$$

$$= \left[1\Delta G^\circ_{298}\text{Hg}(l) + \frac{1}{2}\Delta G^\circ_{298}\text{O}_2(g)\right] - 1\Delta G^\circ_{298}\text{HgO}(s,\text{ yellow})$$

$$= \left[1\text{ mol}(0\text{ kJ/mol}) + \frac{1}{2}\text{mol}(0\text{ kJ/mol})\right] - 1\text{ mol}(-58.43\text{ kJ/mol}) = 58.43\text{ kJ/mol}$$

(b) Using enthalpies and entropies of formation:

$$\Delta H^\circ_{298} = \sum \nu \Delta H^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu \Delta H^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants})$$

$$= \left[1\Delta H^\circ_{298}\text{Hg}(l) + \frac{1}{2}\Delta H^\circ_{298}\text{O}_2(g)\right] - 1\Delta H^\circ_{298}\text{HgO}(s,\text{ yellow})$$

$$= [1\text{ mol}(0\text{ kJ/mol}) + \frac{1}{2}\text{mol}(0\text{ kJ/mol})] - 1\text{ mol}(-90.46\text{ kJ/mol}) = 90.46\text{ kJ/mol}$$

$$\Delta S^\circ_{298} = \sum \nu \Delta S^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu \Delta S^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants})$$

$$= \left[1\Delta S^\circ_{298}\text{Hg}(l) + \frac{1}{2}\Delta S^\circ_{298}\text{O}_2(g)\right] - 1\Delta S^\circ_{298}\text{HgO}(s,\text{ yellow})$$

$$= \left[1\text{ mol}(75.9\text{ J/mol K}) + \frac{1}{2}\text{mol}(205.2\text{ J/mol K})\right] - 1\text{ mol}(71.13\text{ J/mol K}) = 107.4\text{ J/mol K}$$

Now use these values in Equation 8.5.3 to get ΔG^o:

$$\Delta G° = \Delta H° - T\Delta S° = 90.46\text{ kJ} - 298.15\text{ K} \times 107.4\text{ J/K} \cdot \text{mol} \times \frac{1\text{ kJ}}{1000\text{ J}}$$

$$\Delta G° = (90.46 - 32.01)\text{ kJ/mol} = 58.45\text{ kJ/mol}$$

Both ways to calculate the standard free energy change at 25 °C give the same numerical value (to three significant figures), and both predict that the process is nonspontaneous (not spontaneous) at room temperature (since $\Delta G^o > 0$.

Exercise 8.5.1

Calculate ΔG° using (a) free energies of formation and (b) enthalpies of formation and entropies (Appendix G). Do the results indicate the reaction to be spontaneous or nonspontaneous at 25 °C?

$$\text{C}_2\text{H}_4(g) \longrightarrow \text{H}_2(g) + \text{C}_2\text{H}_2(g)$$

Answer

–141.5 kJ/mol, nonspontaneous

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Calculating Gibbs Free Energy (Grxn) for a Reaction: https://youtu.be/wmreE6zeFQo

This page titled 8.5: Standard Gibbs Energy Change, ΔG° is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 19.5: Standard Gibbs Energy Change, ΔG° is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

9: CHEMICAL EQUILIBRIUM

Petrucci: *General Chemistry*
Principles and Modern Applications

Template:HideTOC

- Topic hierarchy

9.1: Dynamic Equilibrium
9.2: The Equilibrium Constant Expression
9.3: The Reaction Quotient, Q: Predicting The Direction of Net Change
9.4: Gibbs Energy Change and Equilibrium
9.5: ΔG° and K as Functions of Temperature
9.6: Coupled Reactions
9.7: Solubility Product Constant, Ksp
9.8: Relationship Between Solubility and Ksp
9.9: Common-Ion Effect in Solubility Equilibria

This page titled 9: Chemical Equilibrium is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

9.1: Dynamic Equilibrium

Learning Objectives

- To understand what is meant by chemical equilibrium.

In the last chapter, we discussed the principles of chemical kinetics, which deal with the *rate of change*, or how quickly a given chemical reaction occurs. We now turn our attention to the *extent* to which a reaction occurs and how reaction conditions affect the final concentrations of reactants and products. For most of the reactions that we have discussed so far, you may have assumed that once reactants are converted to products, they are likely to remain that way. In fact, however, virtually all chemical reactions are *reversible* to some extent. That is, an opposing reaction occurs in which the products react, to a greater or lesser degree, to re-form the reactants. Eventually, the forward and reverse reaction rates become the same, and the system reaches **chemical equilibrium,** the point at which the composition of the system no longer changes with time.



Figure 9.1.1: Dinitrogen tetroxide is a powerful oxidizer that reacts spontaneously upon contact with various forms of hydrazine, which makes the pair a popular propellant combination for rockets. Nitrogen dioxide at −196 °C, 0 °C, 23 °C, 35 °C, and 50 °C. (NO_2) converts to the colorless dinitrogen tetroxide (N_2O_4) at low temperatures, and reverts to NO_2 at higher temperatures. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Eframgoldberg).

Chemical equilibrium is a dynamic process that consists of a forward reaction, in which reactants are converted to products, and a reverse reaction, in which products are converted to reactants. At equilibrium, the forward and reverse reactions proceed at equal rates. Consider, for example, a simple system that contains only one reactant and one product, the reversible dissociation of dinitrogen tetroxide ($\mathrm{N_2O_4}$) to nitrogen dioxide ($\mathrm{NO_2}$). You may recall that $\mathrm{NO_2}$ is responsible for the brown color we associate with smog. When a sealed tube containing solid $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ (mp = −9.3°C; bp = 21.2°C) is heated from −78.4°C to 25°C, the red-brown color of $\mathrm{NO_2}$ appears (Figure 9.1.1). The reaction can be followed visually because the product ($\mathrm{NO_2}$) is colored, whereas the reactant ($\mathrm{N_2O_4}$) is colorless:

$$\underset{colorless}{\mathrm{N_2O_4\,(g)}} \underset{\mathrm{k}_r}{\overset{\mathrm{k}_f}{\rightleftharpoons}} \underset{red-brown}{\mathrm{2\,NO_2\,(g)}} \tag{9.1.1}$$

The double arrow indicates that both the forward reaction

$$\mathrm{N_2O_4\,(g)} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{k}_f} \mathrm{2\,NO_2\,(g)} \tag{9.1.2}$$

and reverse reaction

$$\mathrm{2\,NO_2\,(g)} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{k}_r} \mathrm{N_2O_4\,(g)} \tag{9.1.3}$$

occurring simultaneously (i.e, the reaction is reversible). However, this does not necessarily mean the system is equilibrium as the following chapter demonstrates.

Figure 9.1.2 shows how the composition of this system would vary as a function of time at a constant temperature. If the initial concentration of NO_2 were zero, then it increases as the concentration of N_2O_4 decreases. Eventually the composition of the system stops changing with time, and chemical equilibrium is achieved. Conversely, if we start with a sample that contains no N_2O_4 but an initial NO_2 concentration twice the initial concentration of N_2O_4 (Figure 9.1.2a), in accordance with the stoichiometry of the reaction, we reach exactly the same equilibrium composition (Figure 9.1.2b). Thus equilibrium can be approached from either direction in a chemical reaction.

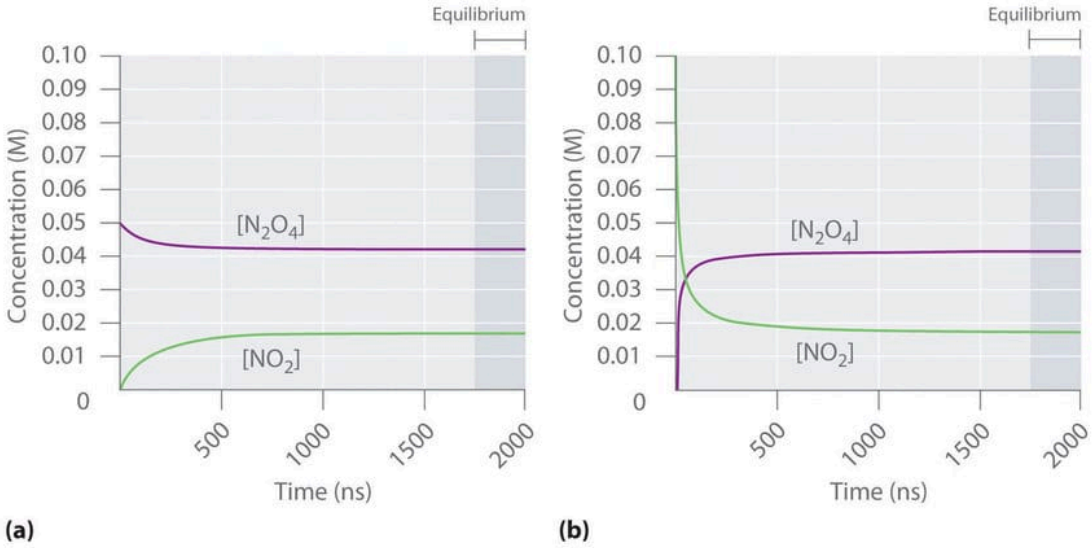


Figure 9.1.2: The Composition of N_2O_4/NO_2 Mixtures as a Function of Time at Room Temperature. (a) Initially, this idealized system contains 0.0500 M gaseous N_2O_4 and no gaseous NO_2. The concentration of N_2O_4 decreases with time as the concentration of NO_2 increases. (b) Initially, this system contains 0.1000 M NO_2 and no N_2O_4. The concentration of NO_2 decreases with time as the concentration of N_2O_4 increases. In both cases, the final concentrations of the substances are the same: [N_2O_4] = 0.0422 M and [NO_2] = 0.0156 M at equilibrium. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

Figure 9.1.3 shows the forward and reverse reaction rates for a sample that initially contains pure NO_2. Because the initial concentration of N_2O_4 is zero, the forward reaction rate (dissociation of N_2O_4) is initially zero as well. In contrast, the reverse reaction rate (dimerization of NO_2) is initially very high ($2.0 \times 10^6\ M/s$), but it decreases rapidly as the concentration of NO_2 decreases. As the concentration of N_2O_4 increases, the rate of dissociation of N_2O_4 increases—but more slowly than the dimerization of NO_2—because the reaction is only first order in N_2O_4 (rate = $k_f[N_2O_4]$, where k_f is the rate constant for the forward reaction in Equations 9.1.1 and 9.1.2). Eventually, the forward and reverse reaction rates become identical, $k_f = k_r$, and the system has reached chemical equilibrium. If the forward and reverse reactions occur at different rates, then the system is not at equilibrium.

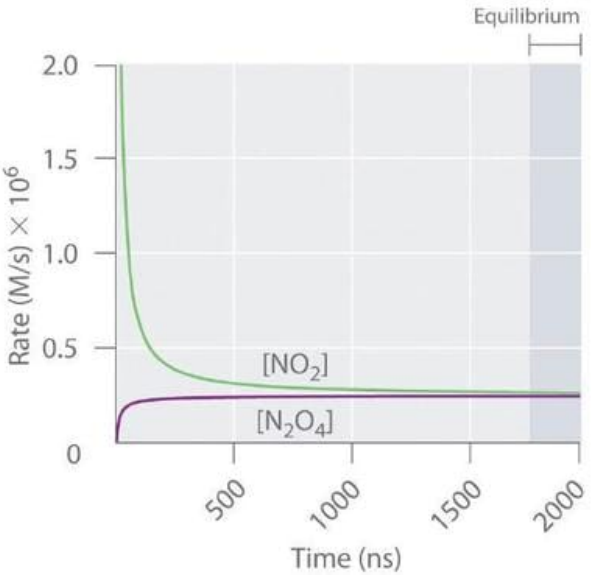


Figure 9.1.3: The Forward and Reverse Reaction Rates as a Function of Time for the $N_2O_{4(g)} \diamondsuit 2NO_{2(g)}$ System Shown in Part (b) in Figure 9.1.2. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

The rate of dimerization of $\mathrm{NO_2}$ (reverse reaction) decreases rapidly with time, as expected for a second-order reaction. Because the initial concentration of $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ is zero, the rate of the dissociation reaction (forward reaction) at $t = 0$ is also zero. As the dimerization reaction proceeds, the $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ concentration increases, and its rate of dissociation also increases. Eventually the rates of the two reactions are equal: chemical equilibrium has been reached, and the concentrations of $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ and $\mathrm{NO_2}$ no longer change.

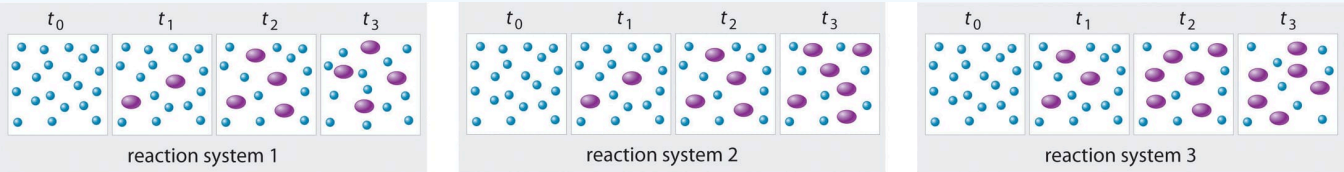
At equilibrium, the forward reaction rate is equal to the reverse reaction rate.

Example 9.1.1

The three reaction systems (1, 2, and 3) depicted in the accompanying illustration can all be described by the equation:

$$2A \rightleftharpoons B$$

where the blue circles are A and the purple ovals are B. Each set of panels shows the changing composition of one of the three reaction mixtures as a function of time. Which system took the longest to reach chemical equilibrium?



In reaction system 1 theree are four purple ovals at t3. In reaction system 2 there are size purple ovals at t3. In reaction system systems there are six ovals at t2 and t3.

Given: three reaction systems

Asked for: relative time to reach chemical equilibrium

Strategy:

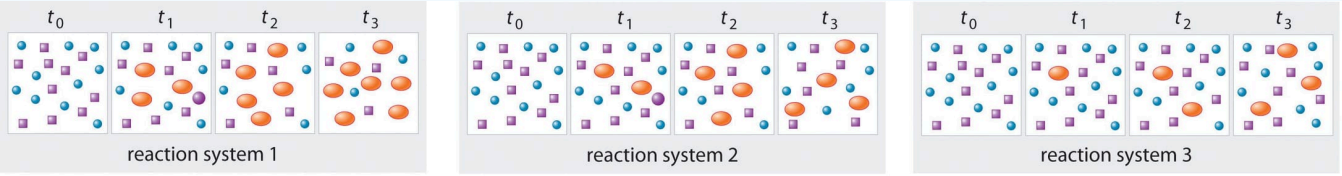
Compare the concentrations of A and B at different times. The system whose composition takes the longest to stabilize took the longest to reach chemical equilibrium.

Solution:

In systems 1 and 3, the concentration of A decreases from t_0 through t_2 but is the same at both t_2 and t_3. Thus systems 1 and 3 are at equilibrium by t_3. In system 2, the concentrations of A and B are still changing between t_2 and t_3, so system 2 may not yet have reached equilibrium by t_3. Thus system 2 took the longest to reach chemical equilibrium.

Exercise 9.1.1

In the following illustration, A is represented by blue circles, B by purple squares, and C by orange ovals; the equation for the reaction is A + B ⇌ C. The sets of panels represent the compositions of three reaction mixtures as a function of time. Which, if any, of the systems shown has reached equilibrium?



In reaction system 1 there are seven orange ovals at t3. In reaction system two there are four orange ovals at t3. In reaction system three there are three orange ovals at t3.

Answer available at the end of this section.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

A Video Introduction to Dynamic Equilibrium: Introduction to Dynamic Equilibrium(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

At equilibrium, the forward and reverse reactions of a system proceed at equal rates. Chemical equilibrium is a dynamic process consisting of forward and reverse reactions that proceed at equal rates. At equilibrium, the composition of the system no longer changes with time. The composition of an equilibrium mixture is independent of the direction from which equilibrium is approached.

Answers

Exercise 9.1.1

system 2

This page titled 9.1: Dynamic Equilibrium is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 15.1: The Concept of Equilibrium is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

9.2: The Equilibrium Constant Expression

Learning Objectives

- To know the relationship between the equilibrium constant and the rate constants for the forward and reverse reactions.
- To write an equilibrium constant expression for any reaction.

Because an equilibrium state is achieved when the forward reaction rate equals the reverse reaction rate, under a given set of conditions there must be a relationship between the composition of the system at equilibrium and the kinetics of a reaction (represented by rate constants). We can show this relationship using the system described in Equation 9.2.1, the decomposition of N_2O_4 to NO_2. Both the forward and reverse reactions for this system consist of a single elementary reaction, so the reaction rates are as follows:

$$\text{forward rate} = k_f[N_2O_4] \tag{9.2.1}$$

and

$$\text{reverse rate} = k_r[NO_2]^2 \tag{9.2.2}$$

At equilibrium, the forward rate equals the reverse rate (definition of equilibrium):

$$k_f[N_2O_4] = k_r[NO_2]^2 \tag{9.2.3}$$

so

$$\frac{k_f}{k_r} = \frac{[NO_2]^2}{[N_2O_4]} \tag{9.2.4}$$

The ratio of the rate constants gives us a new constant, the equilibrium constant (K), which is defined as follows:

$$K = \frac{k_f}{k_r} \tag{9.2.5}$$

Hence there is a fundamental relationship between chemical kinetics and chemical equilibrium: under a given set of conditions, the composition of the equilibrium mixture is determined by the magnitudes of the rate constants for the forward and the reverse reactions.

> The equilibrium constant is equal to the rate constant for the forward reaction divided by the rate constant for the reverse reaction.

Table 9.2.1 lists the initial and equilibrium concentrations from five different experiments using the reaction system described by Equation ???. At equilibrium the magnitude of the quantity $[NO_2]^2/[N_2O_4]$ is essentially the same for all five experiments. In fact, no matter what the initial concentrations of NO_2 and N_2O_4 are, at equilibrium the quantity $[NO_2]^2/[N_2O_4]$ will always be $6.53 \pm 0.03 \times 10^{-3}$ at 25°C, which corresponds to the ratio of the rate constants for the forward and reverse reactions. That is, at a given temperature, the equilibrium constant for a reaction always has the same value, even though the specific concentrations of the reactants and products vary depending on their initial concentrations.

Table 9.2.1: Initial and Equilibrium Concentrations for $NO_2 : N_2O_4$ Mixtures at 25°C

	Initial Concentrations		Concentrations at Equilibrium		
Experiment	**[N_2O_4] (M)**	**[NO_2] (M)**	**[N_2O_4] (M)**	**[NO_2] (M)**	$K = [NO_2]^2/[N_2O_4]$
1	0.0500	0.0000	0.0417	0.0165	6.54×10^{-3}
2	0.0000	0.1000	0.0417	0.0165	6.54×10^{-3}

	Initial Concentrations		Concentrations at Equilibrium		
Experiment	$[N_2O_4]$ (M)	$[NO_2]$ (M)	$[N_2O_4]$ (M)	$[NO_2]$ (M)	$K = [NO_2]^2/[N_2O_4]$
3	0.0750	0.0000	0.0647	0.0206	6.56×10^{-3}
4	0.0000	0.0750	0.0304	0.0141	6.54×10^{-3}
5	0.0250	0.0750	0.0532	0.0186	6.50×10^{-3}

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Introduction to Dynamic Equilibrium: https://youtu.be/4AJbFuzW2cs

Developing an Equilibrium Constant Expression

In 1864, the Norwegian chemists Cato Guldberg (1836–1902) and Peter Waage (1833–1900) carefully measured the compositions of many reaction systems at equilibrium. They discovered that for any reversible reaction of the general form

$$aA + bB \rightleftharpoons cC + dD \tag{9.2.6}$$

where A and B are reactants, C and D are products, and a, b, c, and d are the stoichiometric coefficients in the balanced chemical equation for the reaction, the ratio of the product of the equilibrium concentrations of the products (raised to their coefficients in the balanced chemical equation) to the product of the equilibrium concentrations of the reactants (raised to their coefficients in the balanced chemical equation) is always a constant under a given set of conditions. This relationship is known as the law of mass action and can be stated as follows:

$$K = \frac{[C]^c[D]^d}{[A]^a[B]^b} \tag{9.2.7}$$

where K is the equilibrium constant for the reaction. Equation 9.2.6 is called the equilibrium equation, and the right side of Equation 9.2.7 is called the equilibrium constant expression. The relationship shown in Equation 9.2.7 is true for any pair of opposing reactions regardless of the mechanism of the reaction or the number of steps in the mechanism.

The equilibrium constant can vary over a wide range of values. The values of K shown in Table 9.2.2, for example, vary by 60 orders of magnitude. Because products are in the numerator of the equilibrium constant expression and reactants are in the denominator, values of K greater than 10^3 indicate a strong tendency for reactants to form products. In this case, chemists say that equilibrium lies to the right as written, favoring the formation of products. An example is the reaction between H_2 and Cl_2 to produce HCl, which has an equilibrium constant of 1.6×10^{33} at 300 K. Because H_2 is a good reductant and Cl_2 is a good oxidant, the reaction proceeds essentially to completion. In contrast, values of K less than 10^{-3} indicate that the ratio of products to reactants at equilibrium is very small. That is, reactants do not tend to form products readily, and the equilibrium lies to the left as written, favoring the formation of reactants.

*Table 9.2.2: Equilibrium Constants for Selected Reactions**

Reaction	Temperature (K)	Equilibrium Constant (K)
$\mathrm{S(s) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons SO_2(g)}$	300	4.4×10^{53}
$\mathrm{2\,H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,H_2O(g)}$	500	2.4×10^{47}
***Equilibrium constants vary with temperature. The K values shown are for systems at the indicated temperatures.**		

Reaction	Temperature (K)	Equilibrium Constant (K)
$H_2(g) + Cl_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,HCl(g)$	300	1.6×10^{33}
$H_2(g) + Br_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,HBr(g)$	300	4.1×10^{18}
$2\,NO(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)$	300	4.2×10^{13}
$3\,H_2(g) + N_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)$	300	2.7×10^{8}
$H_2(g) + D_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,HD(g)$	100	1.92
$H_2(g) + I_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,HI(g)$	300	2.9×10^{-1}
$I_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,I(g)$	800	$4.6 \times^{10-7}$
$Br_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,Br(g)$	1000	4.0×10^{-7}
$Cl_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,Cl(g)$	1000	1.8×10^{-9}
$F_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,F(g)$	500	7.4×10^{-13}
***Equilibrium constants vary with temperature. The K values shown are for systems at the indicated temperatures.**		

You will also notice in Table 9.2.2 that equilibrium constants have no units, even though Equation 9.2.7 suggests that the units of concentration might not always cancel because the exponents may vary. **In fact, equilibrium constants are calculated using "effective concentrations," or activities, of reactants and products, which are the ratios of the measured concentrations to a standard state of 1 M.** As shown in Equation 9.2.8, the units of concentration cancel, which makes K unitless as well:

$$\frac{[A]_{measured}}{[A]_{standard\ state}} = \frac{\cancel{M}}{\cancel{M}} = \frac{\frac{\cancel{mol}}{\cancel{L}}}{\frac{\cancel{mol}}{\cancel{L}}} \tag{9.2.8}$$

Many reactions have equilibrium constants between 1000 and 0.001 ($10^3 \geq K \geq 10^{-3}$), neither very large nor very small. At equilibrium, these systems tend to contain significant amounts of both products and reactants, indicating that there is not a strong tendency to form either products from reactants or reactants from products. An example of this type of system is the reaction of gaseous hydrogen and deuterium, a component of high-stability fiber-optic light sources used in ocean studies, to form HD:

$$H_{2(g)} + D_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2HD_{(g)} \tag{9.2.9}$$

The equilibrium constant expression for this reaction is

$$K = \frac{[HD]^2}{[H_2][D_2]} \tag{9.2.10}$$

with K varying between 1.9 and 4 over a wide temperature range (100–1000 K). Thus an equilibrium mixture of H_2, D_2, and HD contains significant concentrations of both product and reactants.

Figure 9.2.3 summarizes the relationship between the magnitude of K and the relative concentrations of reactants and products at equilibrium for a general reaction, written as

$$\text{reactants} \rightleftharpoons \text{products}. \tag{9.2.11}$$

Because there is a direct relationship between the kinetics of a reaction and the equilibrium concentrations of products and reactants (Equations 9.2.8 and 9.2.7), when $k_f \gg k_r$, K is a **large** number, and the concentration of products at equilibrium predominate. This corresponds to an essentially irreversible reaction. Conversely, when $k_f \ll k_r$, K is a very **small** number, and the reaction produces almost no products as written. Systems for which $k_f \approx k_r$ have significant concentrations of both reactants and products at equilibrium.

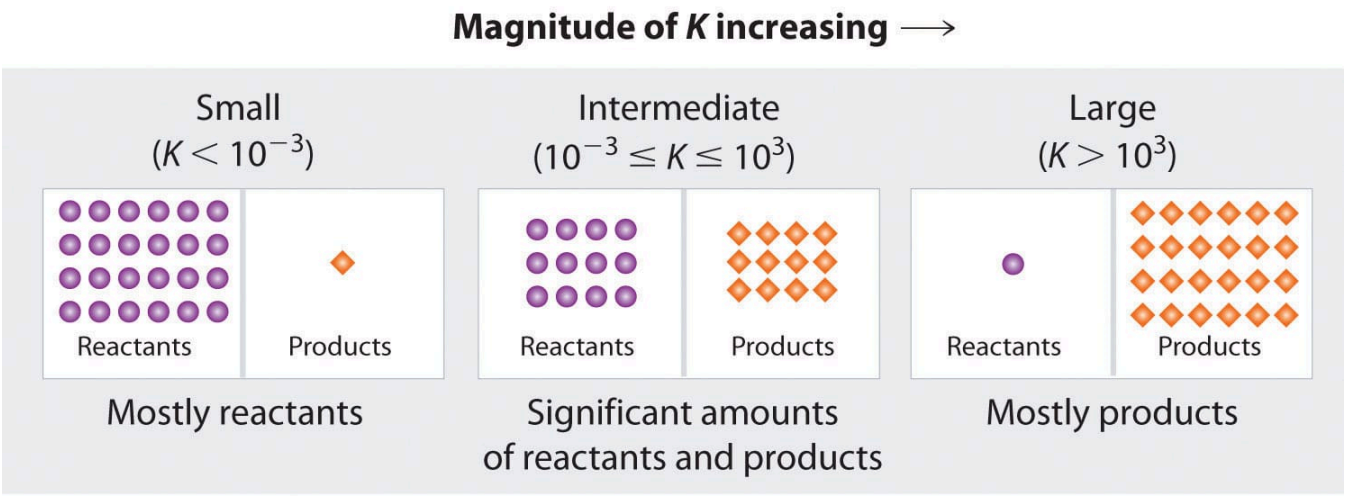


Figure 9.2.3: The Relationship between the Composition of the Mixture at Equilibrium and the Magnitude of the Equilibrium Constant. The larger the K, the farther the reaction proceeds to the right before equilibrium is reached, and the greater the ratio of products to reactants at equilibrium.

A large value of the equilibrium constant K means that products predominate at equilibrium; a small value means that reactants predominate at equilibrium.

Example 9.2.1

Write the equilibrium constant expression for each reaction.

- $N_{2(g)} + 3H_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2NH_{3(g)}$
- $CO_{(g)} + \frac{1}{2}O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons CO_{2(g)}$
- $2CO_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2CO_{(g)} + O_{2(g)}$

Given: balanced chemical equations

Asked for: equilibrium constant expressions

Strategy:

Refer to Equation 9.2.7. Place the arithmetic product of the concentrations of the products (raised to their stoichiometric coefficients) in the numerator and the product of the concentrations of the reactants (raised to their stoichiometric coefficients) in the denominator.

Solution:

The only product is ammonia, which has a coefficient of 2. For the reactants, N_2 has a coefficient of 1 and H2 has a coefficient of 3. The equilibrium constant expression is as follows:

$$\frac{[NH_3]^2}{[N_2][H_2]^3} \tag{9.2.12}$$

The only product is carbon dioxide, which has a coefficient of 1. The reactants are CO, with a coefficient of 1, and O_2, with a coefficient of $\frac{1}{2}$. Thus the equilibrium constant expression is as follows:

$$\frac{[CO_2]}{[CO][O_2]^{1/2}} \tag{9.2.13}$$

This reaction is the reverse of the reaction in part b, with all coefficients multiplied by 2 to remove the fractional coefficient for O_2. The equilibrium constant expression is therefore the inverse of the expression in part b, with all exponents multiplied by 2:

$$\frac{[CO]^2[O_2]}{[CO_2]^2} \tag{9.2.14}$$

Exercise 9.2.1

Write the equilibrium constant expression for each reaction.

a. $N_2O_{(g)} \rightleftharpoons N_{2(g)} + \frac{1}{2}O_{2(g)}$
b. $2C_8H_{18(g)} + 25O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 16CO_{2(g)} + 18H_2O_{(g)}$
c. $H_{2(g)} + I_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2HI_{(g)}$

Answer:

a. $K = \dfrac{[N_2][O_2]^{1/2}}{[N_2O]}$
b. $K = \dfrac{[CO_2]^{16}[H_2O]^{18}}{[C_8H_{18}]^2[O_2]^{25}}$
c. $K = \dfrac{[HI]^2}{[H_2][I_2]}$

Example 9.2.2

Predict which systems at equilibrium will (a) contain essentially only products, (b) contain essentially only reactants, and (c) contain appreciable amounts of both products and reactants.

a. $H_{2(g)} + I_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2HI_{(g)} \qquad K_{(700K)} = 54$
b. $2CO_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2CO_{(g)} + O_{2(g)} \qquad K_{(1200K)} = 3.1 \times 10^{-18}$
c. $PCl_{5(g)} \rightleftharpoons PCl_{3(g)} + Cl_{2(g)} \qquad K_{(613K)} = 97$
d. $2O_{3(g)} \rightleftharpoons 3O_{2(g)} \qquad K_{(298K)} = 5.9 \times 10^{55}$

Given: systems and values of K

Asked for: composition of systems at equilibrium

Strategy:

Use the value of the equilibrium constant to determine whether the equilibrium mixture will contain essentially only products, essentially only reactants, or significant amounts of both.

Solution:

a. Only system 4 has $K \gg 10^3$, so at equilibrium it will consist of essentially only products.
b. System 2 has $K \ll 10^{-3}$, so the reactants have little tendency to form products under the conditions specified; thus, at equilibrium the system will contain essentially only reactants.
c. Both systems 1 and 3 have equilibrium constants in the range $10^3 \geq K \geq 10^{-3}$, indicating that the equilibrium mixtures will contain appreciable amounts of both products and reactants.

Exercise 9.2.2

Hydrogen and nitrogen react to form ammonia according to the following balanced chemical equation:

$$3H_{2(g)} + N_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2NH_{3(g)} \tag{9.2.15}$$

Values of the equilibrium constant at various temperatures were reported as

- $K_{25°C} = 3.3 \times 10^8$,
- $K_{177°C} = 2.6 \times 10^3$, and
- $K_{327°C} = 4.1$.

At which temperature would you expect to find the highest proportion of H_2 and N_2 in the equilibrium mixture?

Assuming that the reaction rates are fast enough so that equilibrium is reached quickly, at what temperature would you design a commercial reactor to operate to maximize the yield of ammonia?

Answer:

a. 327°C, where K is smallest
b. 25°C

Variations in the Form of the Equilibrium Constant Expression

Because equilibrium can be approached from either direction in a chemical reaction, the equilibrium constant expression and thus the magnitude of the equilibrium constant depend on the form in which the chemical reaction is written. For example, if we write the reaction described in Equation 15.2.6 in reverse, we obtain the following:

$$cC + dD \rightleftharpoons aA + bB \tag{9.2.16}$$

The corresponding equilibrium constant K' is as follows:

$$K' = \frac{[A]^a[B]^b}{[C]^c[D]^d} \tag{9.2.17}$$

This expression is the inverse of the expression for the original equilibrium constant, so $K' = 1/K$. That is, when we write a reaction in the reverse direction, the equilibrium constant expression is inverted. For instance, the equilibrium constant for the reaction N_2O_4 \rightleftharpoons 2NO_2\) is as follows:

$$K = \frac{[NO_2]^2}{[N_2O_4]} \tag{9.2.18}$$

but for the opposite reaction, $2NO_2 \rightleftharpoons N_2O_4$, the equilibrium constant K′ is given by the inverse expression:

$$K' = \frac{[N_2O_4]}{[NO_2]^2} \tag{9.2.19}$$

Consider another example, the formation of water: $2H_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2H_2O_{(g)}$. Because H_2 is a good reductant and O_2 is a good oxidant, this reaction has a very large equilibrium constant ($K = 2.4 \times 10^{47}$ at 500 K). Consequently, the equilibrium constant for the reverse reaction, the decomposition of water to form O_2 and H_2, is very small: $K' = 1/K = 1/(2.4 \times 10^{47}) = 4.2 \times 10^{-48}$. As suggested by the very small equilibrium constant, and fortunately for life as we know it, a substantial amount of energy is indeed needed to dissociate water into H_2 and O_2.

> The equilibrium constant for a reaction written in reverse is the *inverse* of the equilibrium constant for the reaction as written originally.

Writing an equation in different but chemically equivalent forms also causes both the equilibrium constant expression and the magnitude of the equilibrium constant to be different. For example, we could write the equation for the reaction

$$2NO_2 \rightleftharpoons N_2O_4 \tag{9.2.20}$$

as

$$NO_2 \rightleftharpoons \frac{1}{2}N_2O_4 \tag{9.2.21}$$

with the equilibrium constant K″ is as follows:

$$K'' = \frac{[N_2O_4]^{1/2}}{[NO_2]} \tag{9.2.22}$$

The values for K′ (Equation 9.2.19) and K″ are related as follows:

$$K'' = (K')^{1/2} = \sqrt{K'} \tag{9.2.23}$$

In general, if all the coefficients in a balanced chemical equation were subsequently multiplied by n, then the new equilibrium constant is the original equilibrium constant raised to the nth power.

Example 9.2.3: The Haber Process

At 745 K, K is 0.118 for the following reaction:

$$\mathrm{N_2\,(g) + 3\,H_2\,(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3\,(g)}$$

What is the equilibrium constant for each related reaction at 745 K?

a. $2NH_{3(g)} \rightleftharpoons N2(g) + 3H_{2(g)}$
b. $\frac{1}{2}N_{2(g)} + \frac{3}{2}H_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons NH_{3(g)}$

Given: balanced equilibrium equation, K at a given temperature, and equations of related reactions

Asked for: values of K for related reactions

Strategy:

Write the equilibrium constant expression for the given reaction and for each related reaction. From these expressions, calculate K for each reaction.

Solution:

The equilibrium constant expression for the given reaction of $N_{2(g)}$ with $H_{2(g)}$ to produce $NH_{3(g)}$ at 745 K is as follows:

$$K = \frac{[NH_3]^2}{[N_2][H_2]^3} = 0.118 \tag{9.2.24}$$

This reaction is the reverse of the one given, so its equilibrium constant expression is as follows:

$$K' = \frac{1}{K} = \frac{[N_2][H_2]^3}{[NH_3]^2} = \frac{1}{0.118} = 8.47 \tag{9.2.25}$$

In this reaction, the stoichiometric coefficients of the given reaction are divided by 2, so the equilibrium constant is calculated as follows:

$$K'' = \frac{[NH_3]}{[N_2]^{1/2}[H_2]^{3/2}} = K^{1/2} = \sqrt{K} = \sqrt{0.118} = 0.344 \tag{9.2.26}$$

Exercise 9.2.3

At 527°C, the equilibrium constant for the reaction

$$2SO_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2SO_{3(g)} \tag{9.2.27}$$

is 7.9×10^4. Calculate the equilibrium constant for the following reaction at the same temperature:

$$SO_{3(g)} \rightleftharpoons SO_{2(g)} + \frac{1}{2}O_{2(g)} \tag{9.2.28}$$

Answer: 3.6×10^{-3}

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Determining the Equilibrium Expression: https://youtu.be/ZK9cMIWFerY

Summary

- The law of mass action describes a system at equilibrium in terms of the concentrations of the products and the reactants.
- For a system involving one or more gases, either the molar concentrations of the gases or their partial pressures can be used.
- Definition of equilibrium constant in terms of forward and reverse rate constants:

$$K = \frac{k_f}{k_r}$$

- Equilibrium constant expression (law of mass action):

$$K = \frac{[C]^c[D]^d}{[A]^a[B]^b}$$

- Equilibrium constant expression for reactions involving gases using partial pressures:

$$K_p = \frac{(P_C)^c(P_D)^d}{(P_A)^a(P_B)^b}$$

- Relationship between K_p and K:

$$K_p = K(RT)^{\Delta n}$$

The ratio of the rate constants for the forward and reverse reactions at equilibrium is the equilibrium constant (K), a unitless quantity. The composition of the equilibrium mixture is therefore determined by the magnitudes of the forward and reverse rate constants at equilibrium. Under a given set of conditions, a reaction will always have the same K. For a system at equilibrium, the law of mass action relates K to the ratio of the equilibrium concentrations of the products to the concentrations of the reactants raised to their respective powers to match the coefficients in the equilibrium equation. The ratio is called the equilibrium constant expression. When a reaction is written in the reverse direction, K and the equilibrium constant expression are inverted. For gases, the equilibrium constant expression can be written as the ratio of the partial pressures of the products to the partial pressures of the reactants, each raised to a power matching its coefficient in the chemical equation. An equilibrium constant calculated from partial pressures (K_p) is related to K by the ideal gas constant (R), the temperature (T), and the change in the number of moles of gas during the reaction. An equilibrium system that contains products and reactants in a single phase is a homogeneous equilibrium; a system whose reactants, products, or both are in more than one phase is a heterogeneous equilibrium. When a reaction can be expressed as the sum of two or more reactions, its equilibrium constant is equal to the product of the equilibrium constants for the individual reactions.

This page titled 9.2: The Equilibrium Constant Expression is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 15.2: The Equilibrium Constant Expression is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

9.3: The Reaction Quotient, Q: Predicting The Direction of Net Change

Learning Objectives

- To predict in which direction a reaction will proceed.

We previously saw that knowing the magnitude of the equilibrium constant under a given set of conditions allows chemists to predict the extent of a reaction. Often, however, chemists must decide whether a system has reached equilibrium or if the composition of the mixture will continue to change with time. In this section, we describe how to quantitatively analyze the composition of a reaction mixture to make this determination.

The Reaction Quotient

To determine whether a system has reached equilibrium, chemists use a Quantity called the reaction Quotient (Q). The expression for the reaction Quotient has precisely the same form as the equilibrium constant expression, except that Q may be derived from a set of values measured at any time during the reaction of any mixture of the reactants and the products, regardless of whether the system is at equilibrium. Therefore, for the following general reaction:

$$aA + bB \rightleftharpoons cC + dD$$

the reaction quotient is defined as follows:

$$Q = \frac{[C]^c[D]^d}{[A]^a[B]^b} \tag{9.3.1}$$

To understand how information is obtained using a reaction Quotient, consider the dissociation of dinitrogen tetroxide to nitrogen dioxide,

$$\mathrm{N_2O_4\,(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2\,(g)}$$

for which $K = 4.65 \times 10^{-3}$ at 298 K. We can write Q for this reaction as follows:

$$Q = \frac{[\mathrm{NO_2}^2]}{[\mathrm{N_2O_4}]} \tag{9.3.2}$$

The following table lists data from three experiments in which samples of the reaction mixture were obtained and analyzed at equivalent time intervals, and the corresponding values of Q were calculated for each. Each experiment begins with different proportions of product and reactant:

Table 9.3.1: Equilibrium Experiment data

Experiment	$[\mathrm{NO_2}]$ (M)	$[\mathrm{N_2O_4}]$ (M)	$Q = \frac{[\mathrm{NO_2}^2]}{[\mathrm{N_2O_4}]}$
1	0	0.0400	$\frac{0^2}{0.0400} = 0$
2	0.0600	0	$\frac{(0.0600)^2}{0} = \text{undefined}$
3	0.0200	0.0600	$\frac{(0.0200)^2}{0.0600} = 6.67 \times 10^{-3}$

As these calculations demonstrate, Q can have any numerical value between 0 and infinity (undefined); that is, Q can be greater than, less than, or equal to K.

Comparing the magnitudes of Q and K enables us to determine whether a reaction mixture is already at equilibrium and, if it is not, predict how its composition will change with time to reach equilibrium (i.e., whether the reaction will proceed to the right or to the left as written). All you need to remember is that the composition of a system not at equilibrium will change in a way that makes Q approach K:

- If $Q = K$, for example, then the system is already at equilibrium, and **no further change** in the composition of the system will occur unless the conditions are changed.
- If $Q < K$, then the ratio of the concentrations of products to the concentrations of reactants is less than the ratio at equilibrium. Therefore, the reaction will proceed to the **right** as written, forming products at the expense of reactants.
- If $Q > K$, then the ratio of the concentrations of products to the concentrations of reactants is greater than at equilibrium, so the reaction will proceed to the **left** as written, forming reactants at the expense of products.

These points are illustrated graphically in Figure $9.3.1$.

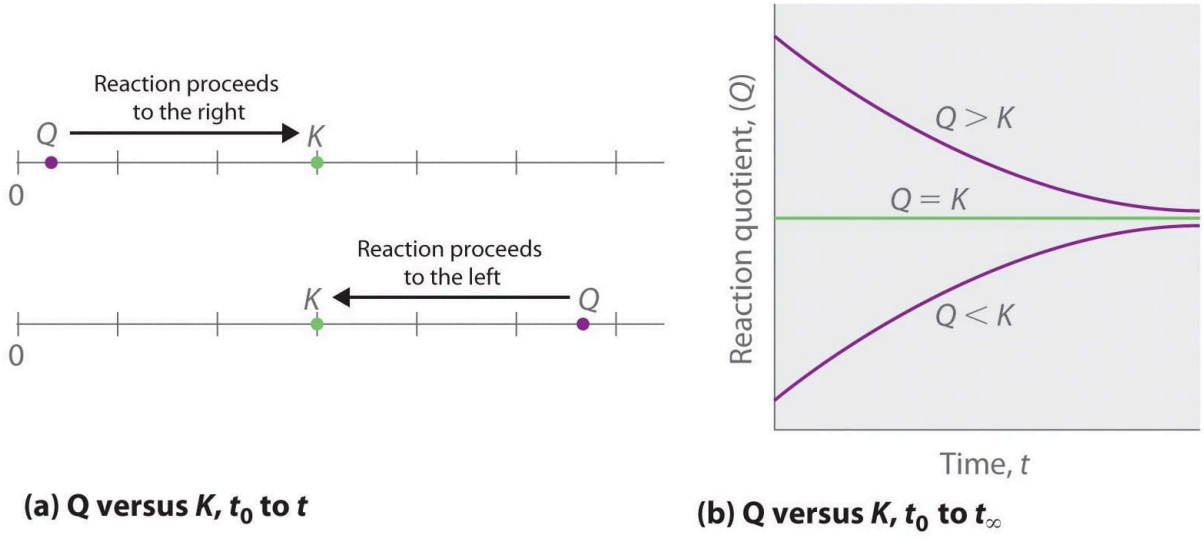


Figure $9.3.1$: Two Different Ways of Illustrating How the Composition of a System Will Change Depending on the Relative Values of Q and K.(a) Both Q and K are plotted as points along a number line: the system will always react in the way that causes Q to approach K. (b) The change in the composition of a system with time is illustrated for systems with initial values of $Q > K$, $Q < K$, and $Q = K$.

One way is used two number lines. The second way is to use a graph of reaction quotient against time.

If $Q < K$, the reaction will proceed to the right as written. If $Q > K$, the reaction will proceed to the left as written. If $Q = K$, then the system is at equilibrium.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

A Video Discussing Using the Reaction Quotient (Q): Using the Reaction Quotient (Q) (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Example $9.3.1$

At elevated temperatures, methane (CH_4) reacts with water to produce hydrogen and carbon monoxide in what is known as a steam-reforming reaction:

$$\mathrm{CH_4\,(g) + H_2O\,(g) \rightleftharpoons CO\,(g) + 3\,H_2\,(g)}$$

$K = 2.4 \times 10^{-4}$ at 900 K. Huge amounts of hydrogen are produced from natural gas in this way and are then used for the industrial synthesis of ammonia. If 1.2×10^{-2} mol of CH_4, 8.0 × 10^{-3} mol of H_2O, 1.6×10^{-2} mol of CO, and 6.0×10^{-3} mol of H_2 are placed in a 2.0 L steel reactor and heated to 900 K, will the reaction be at equilibrium or will it proceed to the right to produce CO and $\mathrm{H_2}$ or to the left to form $\mathrm{CH_4}$ and $\mathrm{H_2O}$?

Given: balanced chemical equation, K, amounts of reactants and products, and volume

Asked for: direction of reaction

Strategy:

A. Calculate the molar concentrations of the reactants and the products.
B. Use Equation 9.3.1 to determine Q. Compare Q and K to determine in which direction the reaction will proceed.

Solution:

A We must first find the initial concentrations of the substances present. For example, we have $1.2 \times 10^{-2} mol$ of $\mathrm{CH_4}$ in a 2.0 L container, so

$$[\mathrm{CH_4}] = \frac{1.2 \times 10^{-2}\,\mathrm{mol}}{2.0\,\mathrm{L}} = 6.0 \times 10^{-3} M$$

We can calculate the other concentrations in a similar way:

- $[\mathrm{H_2O}] = 4.0 \times 10^{-3} M$,
- $[\mathrm{CO}] = 8.0 \times 10^{-3} M$, and
- $[\mathrm{H_2}] = 3.0 \times 10^{-3} M$.

B We now compute Q and compare it with K:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \frac{[\mathrm{CO}][\mathrm{H_2}]^3}{[\mathrm{CH_4}][\mathrm{H_2O}]} \\ &= \frac{(8.0 \times 10^{-3})(3.0 \times 10^{-3})^3}{(6.0 \times 10^{-3})(4.0 \times 10^{-3})} \\ &= 9.0 \times 10^{-6} \end{aligned}$$

Because $K = 2.4 \times 10^{-4}$, we see that $Q < K$. Thus the ratio of the concentrations of products to the concentrations of reactants is less than the ratio for an equilibrium mixture. The reaction will therefore proceed to the right as written, forming $\mathrm{H_2}$ and CO at the expense of $\mathrm{H_2O}$ and $\mathrm{CH_4}$.

Exercise 9.3.2

In the water–gas shift reaction introduced in Example 9.3.1, carbon monoxide produced by steam-reforming reaction of methane reacts with steam at elevated temperatures to produce more hydrogen:

$$\mathrm{CO\,(g) + H_2O\,(g) \rightleftharpoons CO_2\,(g) + H_2\,(g)}$$

$K = 0.64$ at 900 K. If 0.010 mol of both CO and $\mathrm{H_2O}$, 0.0080 mol of $\mathrm{CO_2}$, and 0.012 mol of $\mathrm{H_2}$ are injected into a 4.0 L reactor and heated to 900 K, will the reaction proceed to the left or to the right as written?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Predicting the Direction of a Reaction with a Graph

By graphing a few equilibrium concentrations for a system at a given temperature and pressure, we can readily see the range of reactant and product concentrations that correspond to equilibrium conditions, for which $Q = K$. Such a graph allows us to predict what will happen to a reaction when conditions change so that Q no longer equals K, such as when a reactant concentration or a product concentration is increased or decreased.

Reaction 1

Lead carbonate decomposes to lead oxide and carbon dioxide according to the following equation:

$$\mathrm{PbCO_3\,(s) \rightleftharpoons PbO\,(s) + CO_2\,(g)} \tag{9.3.3}$$

Because $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ and PbO are solids, the equilibrium constant is simply

$$K = [\mathrm{CO_2}].$$

At a given temperature, therefore, any system that contains solid $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ and solid PbO will have exactly the same concentration of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ at equilibrium, regardless of the ratio or the amounts of the solids present. This situation is represented in Figure 9.3.3, which shows a plot of $[\mathrm{CO_2}]$ versus the amount of $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ added. Initially, the added $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ decomposes completely to $\mathrm{CO_2}$ because the amount of $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ is not sufficient to give a $\mathrm{CO_2}$ concentration equal to K. Thus the left portion of the graph represents a system that is not at equilibrium because it contains only $\mathrm{CO_2\,(g)}$ and $\mathrm{PbO\,(s)}$. In contrast, when just enough $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ has been added to give $[CO_2] = K$, the system has reached equilibrium, and adding more $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ has no effect on the $\mathrm{CO_2}$ concentration: the graph is a horizontal line.

Thus any $\mathrm{CO_2}$ concentration that is not on the horizontal line represents a nonequilibrium state, and the system will adjust its composition to achieve equilibrium, provided enough $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ and PbO are present. For example, the point labeled **A** in Figure 9.3.2 lies above the horizontal line, so it corresponds to a $[\mathrm{CO_2}]$ that is greater than the equilibrium concentration of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ (i.e., $Q > K$). To reach equilibrium, the system must decrease $[\mathrm{CO_2}]$, which it can do only by reacting $\mathrm{CO_2}$ with solid PbO to form solid $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$. Thus the reaction in Equation 9.3.3 will proceed to the left as written, until $[\mathrm{CO_2}] = K$. Conversely, the point labeled **B** in Figure 9.3.2 lies below the horizontal line, so it corresponds to a $[\mathrm{CO_2}]$ that is less than the equilibrium concentration of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ (i.e., $Q < K$). To reach equilibrium, the system must increase $[\mathrm{CO_2}]$, which it can do only by decomposing solid $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ to form $\mathrm{CO_2}$ and solid PbO. The reaction in Equation 9.3.3 will therefore proceed to the right as written, until $[\mathrm{CO_2}] = K$.

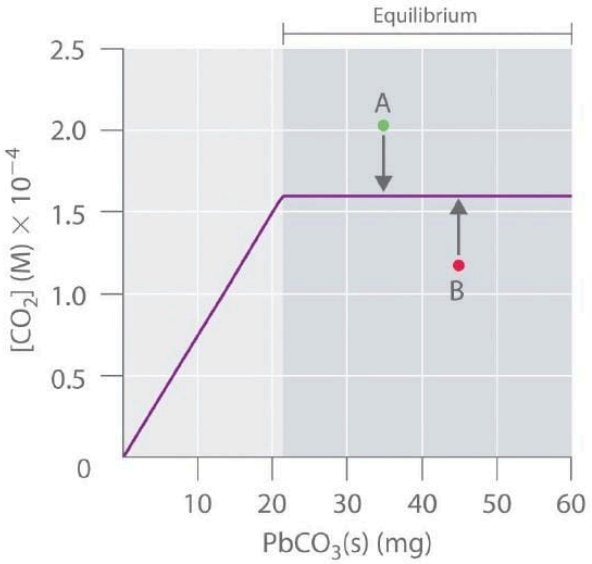


Figure 9.3.2: The Concentration of Gaseous $\mathrm{CO_2}$ in a Closed System at Equilibrium as a Function of the Amount of Solid $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ Added. Initially the concentration of CO2(g) increases linearly with the amount of solid $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ added, as $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ decomposes to $\mathrm{CO_2\,(g)}$ and solid PbO . Once the $\mathrm{CO_2}$ concentration reaches the value that corresponds to the equilibrium concentration, however, adding more solid $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ has no effect on $[\mathrm{CO_2}]$, as long as the temperature remains constant.

Reaction 2

In contrast, the reduction of cadmium oxide by hydrogen gives metallic cadmium and water vapor:

$$\mathrm{CdO\,(s) + H_2\,(g) \rightleftharpoons Cd\,(s) + H_2O\,(g)} \tag{9.3.4}$$

and the equilibrium constant is

$$K = \frac{[\mathrm{H_2O}]}{[\mathrm{H_2}]}.$$

If $[\mathrm{H_2O}]$ is doubled at equilibrium, then $[\mathrm{H_2}]$ must also be doubled for the system to remain at equilibrium. A plot of $[\mathrm{H_2O}]$ versus $[\mathrm{H_2}]$ at equilibrium is a straight line with a slope of K (Figure 9.3.3). Again, only those pairs of concentrations of $\mathrm{H_2O}$ and $\mathrm{H_2}$ that lie on the line correspond to equilibrium states. Any point representing a pair of concentrations that does not lie on the line corresponds to a nonequilibrium state. In such cases, the reaction in Equation 9.3.4 will proceed in whichever direction causes the composition of the system to move toward the equilibrium line. For example, point **A** in Figure 9.3.3 lies below the line, indicating that the $[\mathrm{H_2O}]/[\mathrm{H_2}]$ ratio is less than the ratio of an equilibrium mixture (i.e., $Q < K$). Thus the reaction in Equation 9.3.4 will proceed to the right as written, consuming $\mathrm{H_2}$ and producing $\mathrm{H_2O}$, which causes the concentration ratio to move up and to the left toward the equilibrium line. Conversely, point **B** in Figure 9.3.3 lies above the line, indicating that the $[\mathrm{H_2O}]/[\mathrm{H_2}]$ ratio is greater than the ratio of an equilibrium mixture ($Q > K$). Thus the reaction in Equation 9.3.4 will proceed to the left as written, consuming $\mathrm{H_2O}$ and producing $\mathrm{H_2}$, which causes the concentration ratio to move down and to the right toward the equilibrium line.

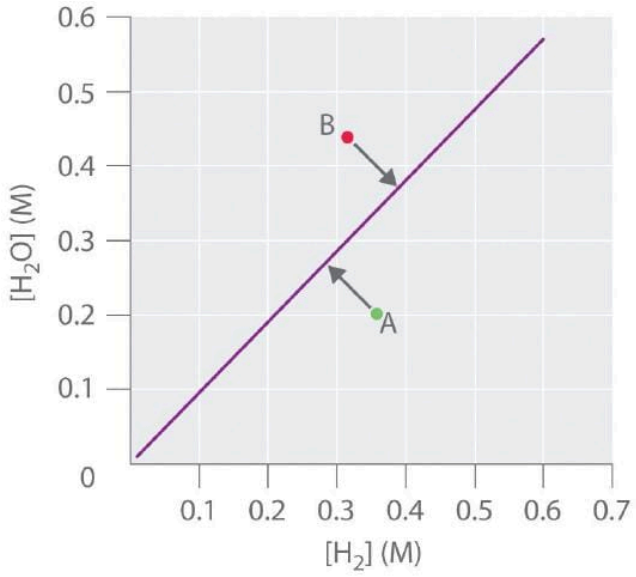


Figure 9.3.3: The Concentration of Water Vapor versus the Concentration of Hydrogen for the $CdO_{(s)} + H_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons Cd_{(s)} + H_2O_{(g)}$ System at Equilibrium. For any equilibrium concentration of $H_2O_{(g)}$, there is only one equilibrium concentration of $H_{2(g)}$. Because the magnitudes of the two concentrations are directly proportional, a large $[H_2O]$ at equilibrium requires a large $[H_2]$ and vice versa. In this case, the slope of the line is equal to K.

Reaction 3

In another example, solid ammonium iodide dissociates to gaseous ammonia and hydrogen iodide at elevated temperatures:

$$\mathrm{NH_4I\,(s) \rightleftharpoons NH_3\,(g) + HI\,(g)} \tag{9.3.5}$$

For this system, K is equal to the product of the concentrations of the two products:

$$K = [\mathrm{NH_3}][\mathrm{HI}].$$

If we double the concentration of $\mathrm{NH_3}$, the concentration of HI must decrease by approximately a factor of 2 to maintain equilibrium, as shown in Figure 9.3.4. As a result, for a given concentration of either HI or $\mathrm{NH_3}$, only a single equilibrium composition that contains equal concentrations of both $\mathrm{NH_3}$ and HI is possible, for which

$$[\mathrm{NH_3}] = [\mathrm{HI}] = \sqrt{K}.$$

Any point that lies below and to the left of the equilibrium curve (such as point **A** in Figure 9.3.4) corresponds to $Q < K$, and the reaction in Equation 9.3.5 will therefore proceed to the right as written, causing the composition of the system to move toward the equilibrium line. Conversely, any point that lies above and to the right of the equilibrium curve (such as point **B** in Figure 9.3.5) corresponds to $Q > K$, and the reaction in Equation 9.3.5 will therefore proceed to the left as written, again causing the composition of the system to move toward the equilibrium line. By graphing equilibrium concentrations for a given system at a given temperature and pressure, we can predict the direction of reaction of that mixture when the system is not at equilibrium.

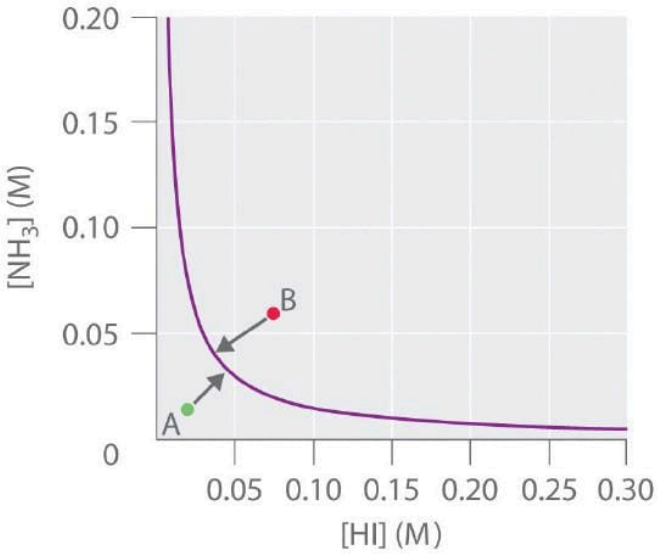


Figure 9.3.4: The Concentration of $NH_{3(g)}$ versus the Concentration of $HI_{(g)}$ for system in Reaction 9.3.5 at Equilibrium. Only one equilibrium concentration of $\mathrm{NH_3\,(g)}$ is possible for any given equilibrium concentration of $\mathrm{HI\,(g)}$. In this case, the two are inversely proportional. Thus a large $[\mathrm{HI}]$ at equilibrium requires a small $[\mathrm{NH_3}]$ at equilibrium and vice versa.

Summary

The reaction Quotient (Q) is used to determine whether a system is at equilibrium and if it is not, to predict the direction of reaction. The reaction Quotient (Q or Q_p) has the same form as the equilibrium constant expression, but it is derived from concentrations obtained at any time. When a reaction system is at equilibrium, $Q = K$. Graphs derived by plotting a few equilibrium concentrations for a system at a given temperature and pressure can be used to predict the direction in which a reaction will proceed. Points that do not lie on the line or curve represent nonequilibrium states, and the system will adjust, if it can, to achieve equilibrium.

Answers

Exercise 9.3.2

$Q = 0.96$. Since (Q > K), so the reaction will proceed to the left, and CO and H_2O will form.

This page titled 9.3: The Reaction Quotient, Q: Predicting The Direction of Net Change is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 15.6: Applications of Equilibrium Constants is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

9.4: Gibbs Energy Change and Equilibrium

Learning Objectives

- To know the relationship between free energy and the equilibrium constant.
- The sign of the standard free energy change $\Delta G°$ of a chemical reaction determines whether the reaction will tend to proceed in the forward or reverse direction.
- Similarly, the relative signs of $\Delta G°$ and $\Delta S°$ determine whether the spontaniety of a chemical reaction will be affected by the temperature, and if so, in what way.

ΔG is meaningful only for changes in which the temperature and pressure remain constant. These are the conditions under which most reactions are carried out in the laboratory; the system is usually open to the atmosphere (constant pressure) and we begin and end the process at room temperature (after any heat we have added or which is liberated by the reaction has dissipated.) The importance of the Gibbs function can hardly be over-stated: **it serves as the single master variable that determines whether a given chemical change is thermodynamically possible.** Thus if the free energy of the reactants is greater than that of the products, the entropy of the world will increase when the reaction takes place as written, and so the reaction will tend to take place spontaneously. Conversely, if the free energy of the products exceeds that of the reactants, then the reaction will not take place in the direction written, but it will tend to proceed in the reverse direction.

Temperature Dependence to ΔG

In a spontaneous change, Gibbs energy always decreases and never increases. This of course reflects the fact that the entropy of the world behaves in the exact opposite way (owing to the negative sign in the $T\Delta S$ term).

$$H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow H_2O_{(s)} \tag{9.4.1}$$

water below its freezing point undergoes a decrease in its entropy, but the heat released into the surroundings more than compensates for this, so the entropy of the world increases, the free energy of the H_2O diminishes, and the process proceeds spontaneously.

Note

In a spontaneous change, Gibbs energy **always** decreases and never increases.

An important consequence of the one-way downward path of the free energy is that once it reaches its minimum possible value, all net change comes to a halt. This, of course, represents the state of chemical equilibrium. These relations are nicely summarized as follows:

- $\Delta G < 0$: reaction can spontaneously proceed to the right:

$$A \rightarrow B \tag{9.4.2}$$

- $\Delta G > 0$: reaction can spontaneously proceed to the left:

$$A \leftarrow B \tag{9.4.3}$$

- $\Delta G = 0$: the reaction is at equilibrium; the quantities of [A] and [B] will not change

Recall the condition for spontaneous change

$$\Delta G = \Delta H – T\Delta S < 0 \tag{9.4.4}$$

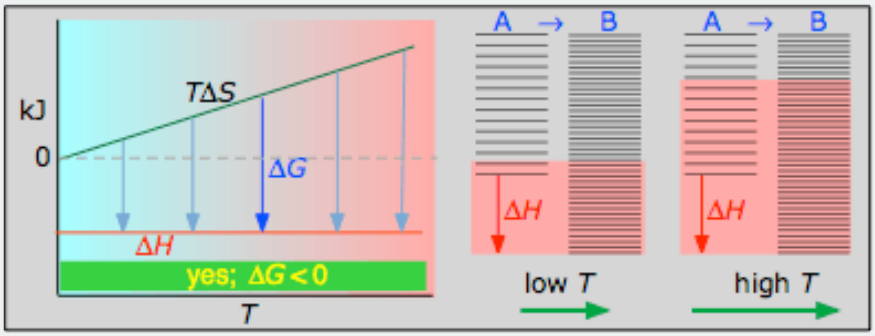
it is apparent that the temperature dependence of ΔG depends almost entirely on the entropy change associated with the process. (We say "almost" because the values of ΔH and ΔS are themselves slightly temperature dependent; both gradually increase with temperature). In particular, notice that in the above equation **the sign of the entropy change determines whether**

the reaction becomes more or less spontaneous as the temperature is raised. For any given reaction, the sign of ΔH can also be positive or negative. This means that there are four possibilities for the influence that temperature can have on the spontaneity of a process.

The following cases generalizes these relations for the four sign-combinations of ΔH and ΔS. (Note that use of the standard $\Delta H°$ and $\Delta S°$ values in the example reactions is not strictly correct here, and can yield misleading results when used generally.)

> 0

Under these conditions, both the ΔH and $T\Delta S$ terms will be negative, so ΔG will be negative regardless of the temperature. An exothermic reaction whose entropy increases will be spontaneous at all temperatures.



Example Reaction

$$C_{(graphite)} + O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons CO_{2(g)} \tag{9.4.5}$$

- $\Delta H°$ = –393 kJ
- $\Delta S°$ = +2.9 J K^{-1}
- $\Delta G°$ = –394 kJ at 298 K

The positive entropy change is due mainly to the greater mass of CO_2 molecules compared to those of O_2.

< 0

If the reaction is sufficiently exothermic it can force ΔG negative only at temperatures below which $|T\Delta S| < |\Delta H|$. This means that there is a temperature $T = \Delta H / \Delta S$ at which the reaction is at equilibrium; the reaction will only proceed spontaneously *below* this temperature. The freezing of a liquid or the condensation of a gas are the most common examples of this condition.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Example reaction:

$$3H_2 + N_2 \rightleftharpoons 2NH_{3(g)} \tag{9.4.6}$$

- ΔH° = –46.2 kJ
- ΔS° = –389 J K–1
- ΔG° = –16.4 kJ at 298 K

The decrease in moles of gas in the **Haber ammonia synthesis** drives the entropy change negative, making the reaction **spontaneous only at low temperatures**. Thus higher T, which speeds up the reaction, also reduces its extent.

> 0

This is the reverse of the previous case; the entropy increase must overcome the handicap of an endothermic process so that TΔS > ΔH. Since the effect of the temperature is to "magnify" the influence of a positive ΔS, the process will be spontaneous at temperatures above T = ΔH / ΔS. (Think of melting and boiling.)

Answer available at the end of this section.

Example reaction:

$$N_2O_{4(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2NO_{2(g)} \tag{9.4.7}$$

- Δ*H*° = 55.3 kJ
- ΔS° = +176 J K^{-1}
- Δ*G*° = +2.8 kJ at 298 K

Dissociation reactions are typically endothermic with positive entropy change, and are therefore **spontaneous at high temperatures**.Ultimately, all molecules decompose to their atoms at sufficiently high temperatures.

< 0

With both Δ*H and* ΔS working against it, this kind of process will not proceed spontaneously at any temperature. Substance A always has a greater number of accessible energy states, and is therefore always the preferred form.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Example reaction:

$$½N_2 + O_2 \rightleftharpoons NO_{2(g)} \tag{9.4.8}$$

- Δ*H*° = 33.2 kJ
- ΔS° = –249 J $K^{-}1$
- Δ*G*° = +51.3 kJ at 298 K

This reaction is **not spontaneous at any temperature**, meaning that *its reverse is always spontaneous*. But because the reverse reaction is kinetically inhibited, NO_2 can exist indefinitely at ordinary temperatures even though it is thermodynamically unstable.

The above cases and associated plots are the important ones; do not try to memorize them, but make sure you understand and can explain or reproduce them for a given set of Δ*H* and Δ*S*.

- Their most important differentiating features are the position of the Δ*H* line (above or below the is *T*ΔS line), and the slope of the latter, which of course depends on the sign of ΔS.
- The reaction A → B will occur spontaneously only when Δ*G* is negative (blue arrows pointing down.)
- Owing to the slight temperature dependence of Δ*S,* the *T*Δ*S* plots are not quite straight lines as shown here. Similarly, the lines representing Δ*H* are even more curved.

The other two plots on each diagram are only for the chemistry-committed.

- Each pair of energy-level diagrams depicts the relative spacing of the microscopic energy levels in the reactants and products as reflected by the value of ΔS°. (The greater the entropy, the more closely-spaced are the quantized microstates.)
- The red shading indicates the range of energy levels that are accessible to the system at each temperature. The spontaneous direction of the reaction will always be in the direction in which the red shading overlaps the greater number of energy levels, resulting in the maximum dispersal of thermal energy.
- Note that the vertical offsets correspond to Δ*H*° for the reaction.
- Never forget that it is the ability of thermal energy to spread into as many of these states as possible that determines the tendency of the process to take place. None of this is to scale, of course!

Liquid-Vapor Equilibrium

To further understand how the various components of ΔG dictate whether a process occurs spontaneously, we now look at a simple and familiar physical change: the conversion of liquid water to water vapor. If this process is carried out at 1 atm and the normal boiling point of 100.00°C (373.15 K), we can calculate ΔG from the experimentally measured value of ΔH_{vap} (40.657 kJ/mol). For vaporizing 1 mol of water, $\Delta H = 40,657; J$, so the process is highly endothermic. From the definition of ΔS, we know that for 1 mol of water,

$$\Delta S_{\text{vap}} = \frac{\Delta H_{\text{vap}}}{T_{\text{b}}} = \frac{40{,}657 \text{ J}}{373.15 \text{ K}} = 108.96 \text{ J/K}$$

Hence there is an increase in the disorder of the system. At the normal boiling point of water,

$$\Delta G_{100^\circ\text{C}} = \Delta H_{100^\circ\text{C}} - T\Delta S_{100^\circ\text{C}} = 40{,}657 \text{ J} - [(373.15 \text{ K})(108.96 \text{ J/K})] = 0 \text{ J} \tag{9.4.9}$$

The energy required for vaporization offsets the increase in disorder of the system. Thus ΔG = 0, and the liquid and vapor are in equilibrium, as is true of any liquid at its boiling point under standard conditions.

Now suppose we were to superheat 1 mol of liquid water to 110°C. The value of ΔG for the vaporization of 1 mol of water at 110°C, assuming that ΔH and ΔS do not change significantly with temperature, becomes

$$\Delta G_{110^\circ\text{C}} = \Delta H - T\Delta S = 40{,}657 \text{ J} - [(383.15 \text{ K})(108.96 \text{ J/K})] = -1091 \text{ J} \tag{9.4.10}$$

At 110°C, ΔG < 0, and vaporization is predicted to occur spontaneously and irreversibly.

We can also calculate ΔG for the vaporization of 1 mol of water at a temperature below its normal boiling point—for example, 90°C—making the same assumptions:

$$\Delta G_{90^\circ\text{C}} = \Delta H - T\Delta S = 40{,}657 \text{ J} - [(363.15 \text{ K})(108.96 \text{ J/K})] = 1088 \text{ J} \tag{9.4.11}$$

At 90°C, ΔG > 0, and water does not spontaneously convert to water vapor. When using all the digits in the calculator display in carrying out our calculations, $\Delta G_{110^\circ\text{C}}$ = 1090 J = $-\Delta G_{90^\circ\text{C}}$, as we would predict.

We can also calculate the temperature at which liquid water is in equilibrium with water vapor. Inserting the values of ΔH and ΔS into the definition of ΔG (Equation 9.4.4), setting ΔG = 0, and solving for T,

$$0 \text{ J} = 40{,}657 \text{ J} - \text{T}(108.96 \text{ J/K})$$
$$\text{T} = 373.15 \text{ K}$$

Thus ΔG = 0 at T = 373.15 K and 1 atm, which indicates that liquid water and water vapor are in equilibrium; this temperature is called the normal boiling point of water. At temperatures greater than 373.15 K, ΔG is negative, and water evaporates spontaneously and irreversibly. Below 373.15 K, ΔG is positive, and water does not evaporate spontaneously. Instead, water vapor at a temperature less than 373.15 K and 1 atm will spontaneously and irreversibly condense to liquid water. Figure 9.4.1 shows how the ΔH and TΔS terms vary with temperature for the vaporization of water. When the two lines cross, ΔG = 0, and ΔH = TΔS.

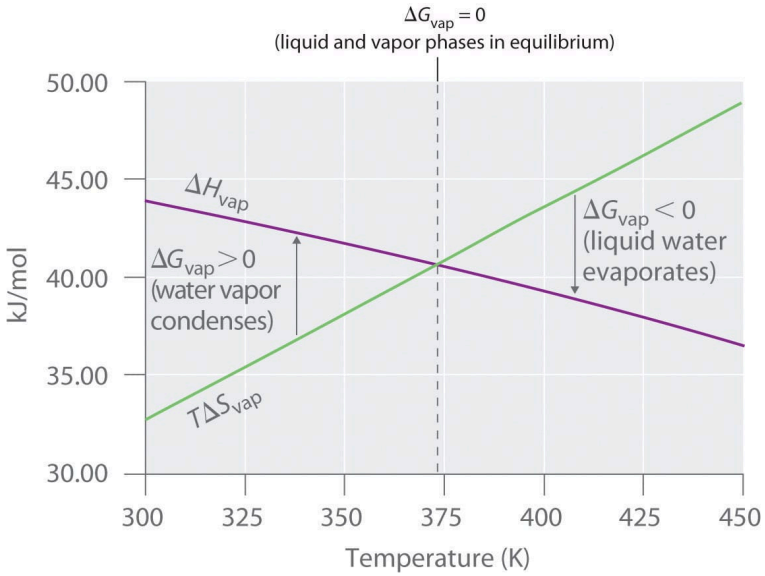


Figure 9.4.1: Temperature Dependence of ΔH and TΔS for the Vaporization of Water. Both ΔH and TΔS are temperature dependent, but the lines have opposite slopes and cross at 373.15 K at 1 atm, where ΔH = TΔS. Because ΔG = ΔH – TΔS, at this temperature ΔG = 0, indicating that the liquid and vapor phases are in equilibrium. The normal boiling point of water is therefore 373.15 K. Above the normal boiling point, the TΔS term is greater than ΔH, making ΔG < 0; hence, liquid water evaporates spontaneously. Below the normal boiling point, the ΔH term is greater than TΔS, making ΔG > 0. Thus liquid water does not evaporate spontaneously, but water vapor spontaneously condenses to liquid.

A similar situation arises in the conversion of liquid egg white to a solid when an egg is boiled. The major component of egg white is a protein called albumin, which is held in a compact, ordered structure by a large number of hydrogen bonds. Breaking them requires an input of energy (ΔH > 0), which converts the albumin to a highly disordered structure in which the molecules aggregate as a disorganized solid (ΔS > 0). At temperatures greater than 373 K, the TΔS term dominates, and ΔG < 0, so the conversion of a raw egg to a hard-boiled egg is an irreversible and spontaneous process above 373 K.

Free Energy and the Equilibrium Constant

Δ*G* is key in determining whether or not a reaction will take place in a given direction. It turns out, however, that it is almost never necessary to explicitly evaluate Δ*G*. It is far more convenient to work with the equilibrium constant of a reaction, within which Δ*G* is "hidden". This is just as well, because for most reactions (those that take place in solutions or gas mixtures) the value of Δ*G* depends on the *proportions* of the various reaction components in the mixture; it is not a simple sum of the "products minus reactants" type, as is the case with Δ*H*.

Because ΔH° and ΔS° determine the magnitude of ΔG° and because K is a measure of the ratio of the concentrations of products to the concentrations of reactants, we should be able to express K in terms of ΔG° and vice versa. ΔG is equal to the maximum amount of work a system can perform on its surroundings while undergoing a spontaneous change. For a reversible process that does not involve external work, we can express the change in free energy in terms of volume, pressure, entropy, and temperature, thereby eliminating ΔH from the equation for ΔG. The general relationship can be shown as follow (derivation not shown):

$$\Delta G = V\Delta P - S\Delta T \tag{9.4.12}$$

If a reaction is carried out at constant temperature (ΔT = 0), then Equation 9.4.12 simplifies to

$$\Delta G = V\Delta P \tag{9.4.13}$$

Under normal conditions, the pressure dependence of free energy is not important for solids and liquids because of their small molar volumes. For reactions that involve gases, however, the effect of pressure on free energy is very important.

Assuming ideal gas behavior, we can replace the V in Equation 9.4.13 by nRT/P (where n is the number of moles of gas and R is the ideal gas constant) and express ΔG in terms of the initial and final pressures (P_i and P_f, respectively):

$$\Delta G = \left(\frac{nRT}{P}\right)\Delta P = nRT\frac{\Delta P}{P} = nRT\ln\left(\frac{P_\mathrm{f}}{P_\mathrm{i}}\right) \tag{9.4.14}$$

If the initial state is the standard state with P_i = 1 atm, then the change in free energy of a substance when going from the standard state to any other state with a pressure P can be written as follows:

$$G - G^\circ = nRT \ln P \tag{9.4.15}$$

This can be rearranged as follows:

$$G = G^\circ + nRT \ln P \tag{9.4.16}$$

As you will soon discover, Equation 9.4.16 allows us to relate ΔG° and K_p. Any relationship that is true for K_p must also be true for K because K_p and K are simply different ways of expressing the equilibrium constant using different units.

Let's consider the following hypothetical reaction, in which all the reactants and the products are ideal gases and the lowercase letters correspond to the stoichiometric coefficients for the various species:

$$aA + bB \rightleftharpoons cC + dD \tag{9.4.17}$$

Because the free-energy change for a reaction is the difference between the sum of the free energies of the products and the reactants, we can write the following expression for ΔG:

$$\delta G = \sum_m G_{products} - \sum_n G_{reactants} = (cG_C + dG_D) - (aG_A + bG_B) \tag{9.4.18}$$

Substituting Equation 9.4.16 for each term into Equation 9.4.18,

$$\Delta G = [(cG_C^o + cRT \ln P_C) + (dG_D^o + dRT \ln P_D)] - [(aG_A^o + aRT \ln P_A) + (bG_B^o + bRT \ln P_B)] \tag{9.4.19}$$

Combining terms gives the following relationship between ΔG and the reaction quotient Q:

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^\circ + RT \ln \left(\frac{P_C^c P_D^d}{P_A^a P_B^b} \right) = \Delta G^\circ + RT \ln Q \tag{9.4.20}$$

where ΔG° indicates that all reactants and products are in their standard states. For gases at equilibrium ($Q = K_p$), and as you've learned in this chapter, ΔG = 0 for a system at equilibrium. Therefore, we can describe the relationship between ΔG° and K_p for gases as follows:

$$0 = \Delta G^\circ + RT \ln K_p \tag{9.4.21}$$

$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K_p \tag{9.4.22}$$

If the products and reactants are in their standard states and ΔG° < 0, then K_p > 1, and products are favored over reactants. Conversely, if ΔG° > 0, then K_p < 1, and reactants are favored over products. If ΔG° = 0, then $K_p = 1$, and neither reactants nor products are favored: the system is at equilibrium.

Note

For a spontaneous process under standard conditions, K_{eq} and K_p are greater than 1.

Example 9.4.1

We previosuly calculated that ΔG° = −32.7 kJ/mol of N_2 for the reaction

$$N_{2(g)} + 3H_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2NH_{3(g)}$$

This calculation was for the reaction under standard conditions—that is, with all gases present at a partial pressure of 1 atm and a temperature of 25°C. Calculate ΔG for the same reaction under the following nonstandard conditions:

- P_{N_2} = 2.00 atm,

- P_{H_2} = 7.00 atm,
- P_{NH_3} = 0.021 atm,
- and T = 100°C.

Does the reaction favor products or reactants?

Given: balanced chemical equation, partial pressure of each species, temperature, and ΔG°

Asked for: whether products or reactants are favored

Strategy:

A. Using the values given and Equation 9.4.20, calculate Q.
B. Substitute the values of ΔG° and Q into Equation 9.4.20 to obtain ΔG for the reaction under nonstandard conditions.

Solution:

A The relationship between ΔG° and ΔG under nonstandard conditions is given in Equation 9.4.20. Substituting the partial pressures given, we can calculate Q:

$$Q = \frac{P_{NH_3}^2}{P_{N_2}P_{H_2}^3} = \frac{(0.021)^2}{(2.00)(7.00)^3} = 6.4 \times 10^{-7}$$

B Substituting the values of ΔG° and Q into Equation 9.4.20,

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G = \Delta G^\circ + RT\ln Q &= -32.7\text{ kJ} + \left[(8.314\text{ J/K})(373\text{ K})\left(\frac{1\text{ kJ}}{1000\text{ J}}\right)\ln(6.4\times10^{-7})\right] \\ &= -32.7\text{ kJ} + (-44\text{ kJ}) \\ &= -77\text{ kJ/mol of } N_2\end{aligned}$$

Because ΔG < 0 and Q < 1.0, the reaction is spontaneous to the right as written, so products are favored over reactants.

Exercise 9.4.1

Calculate ΔG for the reaction of nitric oxide with oxygen to give nitrogen dioxide under these conditions: T = 50°C, P_{NO} = 0.0100 atm, P_{O_2} = 0.200 atm, and P_{NO_2} = 1.00 × 10^{-4} atm. The value of ΔG° for this reaction is –72.5 kJ/mol of O_2. Are products or reactants favored?

Answer: –92.9 kJ/mol of O_2; the reaction is spontaneous to the right as written, so products are favored.

Example 9.4.2

Calculate K_p for the reaction of H_2 with N_2 to give NH_3 at 25°C. As calculated in Example 10, ΔG° for this reaction is –32.7 kJ/mol of N_2.

Given: balanced chemical equation from Example 10, ΔG°, and temperature

Asked for: K_p

Strategy:

Substitute values for ΔG° and T (in kelvins) into Equation ??? to calculate K_p, the equilibrium constant for the formation of ammonia.

Solution

In Example 10, we used tabulated values of ΔG°_f to calculate ΔG° for this reaction (–32.7 kJ/mol of N_2). For equilibrium conditions, rearranging Equation 9.4.22,

$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K_\text{p}$$
$$\frac{-\Delta G^\circ}{RT} = \ln K_\text{p}$$

Inserting the value of ΔG° and the temperature (25°C = 298 K) into this equation,

$$\ln K_\text{p} = -\frac{(-32.7 \text{ kJ})(1000 \text{ J/kJ})}{(8.314 \text{ J/K})(298 \text{ K})} = 13.2$$
$$K_\text{p} = 5.4 \times 10^5$$

Thus the equilibrium constant for the formation of ammonia at room temperature is favorable. However, the rate at which the reaction occurs at room temperature is too slow to be useful.

Exercise 9.4.2

Calculate K_p for the reaction of NO with O_2 to give NO_2 at 25°C. As calculated in the exercise in Example 10, ΔG° for this reaction is –70.5 kJ/mol of O_2.

Answer: 2.2×10^{12}

Although K_p is defined in terms of the partial pressures of the reactants and the products, the equilibrium constant K is defined in terms of the concentrations of the reactants and the products. We described the relationship between the numerical magnitude of K_p and K in Chapter 15 and showed that they are related:

$$K_p = K(RT)^{\Delta n} \tag{9.4.23}$$

where Δn is the number of moles of gaseous product minus the number of moles of gaseous reactant. For reactions that involve only solutions, liquids, and solids, Δn = 0, so K_p = K. For all reactions that do not involve a change in the number of moles of gas present, the relationship in Equation 9.4.22 can be written in a more general form:

$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K \tag{9.4.24}$$

Only when a reaction results in a net production or consumption of gases is it necessary to correct Equation 9.4.24 for the difference between K_p and K. Although we typically use concentrations or pressures in our equilibrium calculations, recall that equilibrium constants are generally expressed as unitless numbers because of the use of **activities** or **fugacities** in precise thermodynamic work. Systems that contain gases at high pressures or concentrated solutions that deviate substantially from ideal behavior require the use of fugacities or activities, respectively.

Combining Equations 9.4.24 with $\Delta G^o = \Delta H^o - T\Delta S^o$ provides insight into how the components of ΔG° influence the magnitude of the equilibrium constant:

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ = -RT \ln K \tag{9.4.25}$$

Equation 9.4.25 is quite powerful and connected the nature of the system under equilibrium K to the condition of the system under standard conditions ΔG^o.; that is quite powerful. Notice that K becomes larger as ΔS° becomes more positive, indicating that the magnitude of the equilibrium constant is directly influenced by the tendency of a system to move toward maximum disorder. Moreover, K increases as ΔH° decreases. Thus the magnitude of the equilibrium constant is also directly influenced by the tendency of a system to seek the lowest energy state possible.

Note

The magnitude of the equilibrium constant is directly influenced by the tendency of a system to move toward maximum entropy and seek the lowest energy state possible.

To further illustrate the relation between these two essential thermodynamic concepts, consider the observation that reactions spontaneously proceed in a direction that ultimately establishes equilibrium. As may be shown by plotting the free energy change versus the extent of the reaction (for example, as reflected in the value of Q), equilibrium is established when the system's free energy is minimized (Figure 9.4.2). If a system is present with reactants and products present in nonequilibrium amounts ($Q \neq K$), the reaction will proceed spontaneously in the direction necessary to establish equilibrium.

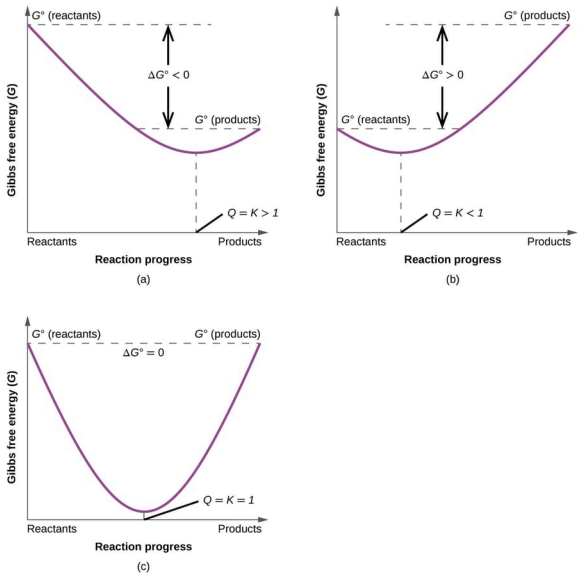


Figure 9.4.2: These plots show the free energy versus reaction progress for systems whose standard free changes are (a) negative, (b) positive, and (c) zero. Nonequilibrium systems will proceed spontaneously in whatever direction is necessary to minimize free energy and establish equilibrium.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Relating Grxn and Kp: https://youtu.be/T-OYNTYN__4

ΔG° and ΔG: Predicting the Direction of Chemical Change

We have seen that there is no way to measure absolute enthalpies, although we can measure changes in enthalpy (ΔH) during a chemical reaction. Because enthalpy is one of the components of Gibbs free energy, we are consequently unable to measure absolute free energies; we can measure only changes in free energy. The standard free-energy change (ΔG°) is the change in free energy when one substance or a set of substances in their standard states is converted to one or more other substances, also in their standard states. The standard free-energy change can be calculated from the definition of free energy, if the standard enthalpy and entropy changes are known, using Equation 9.4.26:

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \tag{9.4.26}$$

If ΔS° and ΔH° for a reaction have the same sign, then the sign of ΔG° depends on the relative magnitudes of the ΔH° and TΔS° terms. It is important to recognize that a positive value of ΔG° for a reaction does not mean that no products will form if the reactants in their standard states are mixed; it means only that at equilibrium the concentrations of the products will be less than the concentrations of the reactants.

Note

A positive ΔG° means that the equilibrium constant is less than 1.

Example 9.4.3

Calculate the standard free-energy change (ΔG°) at 25°C for the reaction

$$H_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons H_2O_{2(l)}$$

At 25°C, the standard enthalpy change (ΔH°) is –187.78 kJ/mol, and the absolute entropies of the products and reactants are:

- S°(H_2O_2) = 109.6 J/(mol•K),
- S°(O_2) = 205.2 J/(mol•K), and
- S°(H_2) = 130.7 J/(mol•K).

Is the reaction spontaneous as written?

Given: balanced chemical equation, ΔH° and S° for reactants and products

Asked for: spontaneity of reaction as written

Strategy:

A. Calculate ΔS° from the absolute molar entropy values given.
B. Use Equation 9.4.26, the calculated value of ΔS°, and other data given to calculate ΔG° for the reaction. Use the value of ΔG° to determine whether the reaction is spontaneous as written.

Solution

A To calculate ΔG° for the reaction, we need to know ΔH°, ΔS°, and T. We are given ΔH°, and we know that T = 298.15 K. We can calculate ΔS° from the absolute molar entropy values provided using the “products minus reactants” rule:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S^\circ &= S^\circ(\mathrm{H_2O_2}) - [S^\circ(\mathrm{O_2}) + S^\circ(\mathrm{H_2})] \\ &= [1\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2O_2} \times 109.6\ \mathrm{J/(mol \cdot K)}] \\ &\quad - \{[1\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2} \times 130.7\ \mathrm{J/(mol \cdot K)}] + [1\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2} \times 205.2\ \mathrm{J/(mol \cdot K)}]\} \\ &= -226.3\ \mathrm{J/K\ (per\ mole\ of\ H_2O_2)}\end{aligned} \tag{9.4.27}$$

As we might expect for a reaction in which 2 mol of gas is converted to 1 mol of a much more ordered liquid, ΔS° is very negative for this reaction.

B Substituting the appropriate quantities into Equation 9.4.26,

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ &= -187.78\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} - (298.15\ \mathrm{K})[-226.3\ \mathrm{J/(mol \cdot K)} \times 1\ \mathrm{kJ}/1000\ \mathrm{J}] \\ &= -187.78\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} + 67.47\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} = -120.31\ \mathrm{kJ/mol}\end{aligned}$$

The negative value of ΔG° indicates that the reaction is spontaneous as written. Because ΔS° and ΔH° for this reaction have the same sign, the sign of ΔG° depends on the relative magnitudes of the ΔH° and TΔS° terms. In this particular case, the enthalpy term dominates, indicating that the strength of the bonds formed in the product more than compensates for the unfavorable ΔS° term and for the energy needed to break bonds in the reactants.

Exercise 9.4.3

Calculate the standard free-energy change (ΔG°) at 25°C for the reaction

$$2H_2(g) + N_2(g) \rightleftharpoons N_2H_4(l)$$

. At 25°C, the standard enthalpy change (ΔH°) is 50.6 kJ/mol, and the absolute entropies of the products and reactants are S°(N_2H_4) = 121.2 J/(mol•K), S°(N_2) = 191.6 J/(mol•K), and S°(H_2) = 130.7 J/(mol•K). Is the reaction spontaneous as written?

Answer:

Video Solution

149.5 kJ/mol; no

Tabulated values of standard free energies of formation allow chemists to calculate the values of ΔG° for a wide variety of chemical reactions rather than having to measure them in the laboratory. The standard free energy of formation (ΔG_f°)of a compound is the change in free energy that occurs when 1 mol of a substance in its standard state is formed from the component elements in their standard states. By definition, the standard free energy of formation of an element in its standard state is zero at 298.15 K. One mole of Cl_2 gas at 298.15 K, for example, has $\Delta G_f^\circ = 0$. The standard free energy of formation of a compound can be calculated from the standard enthalpy of formation (ΔH°_f) and the standard entropy of formation (ΔS°_f) using the definition of free energy:

$$\Delta_f^o = \Delta H_f^o - T\Delta S_f^o \tag{9.4.28}$$

Using standard free energies of formation to calculate the standard free energy of a reaction is analogous to calculating standard enthalpy changes from standard enthalpies of formation using the familiar “products minus reactants” rule:

$$\Delta G_{rxn}^o = \sum m\Delta G_f^o(products) - \sum n\Delta_f^o(reactants) \tag{9.4.29}$$

where m and n are the stoichiometric coefficients of each product and reactant in the balanced chemical equation. A very large negative ΔG° indicates a strong tendency for products to form spontaneously from reactants; it does not, however, necessarily indicate that the reaction will occur rapidly. To make this determination, we need to evaluate the kinetics of the reaction.

Example 9.4.4

Calculate ΔG° for the reaction of isooctane with oxygen gas to give carbon dioxide and water (described in Example 7). Use the following data:

- ΔG°_f(isooctane) = –353.2 kJ/mol,
- $\Delta G^\circ_f(CO_2)$ = –394.4 kJ/mol, and
- $\Delta G^\circ_f(H_2O)$ = –237.1 kJ/mol. Is the reaction spontaneous as written?

Given: balanced chemical equation and values of ΔG°_f for isooctane, CO_2, and H_2O

Asked for: spontaneity of reaction as written

Strategy:

Use the “products minus reactants” rule to obtain ΔG°_{rxn}, remembering that ΔG°_f for an element in its standard state is zero. From the calculated value, determine whether the reaction is spontaneous as written.

Solution

The balanced chemical equation for the reaction is as follows:

$$C_8H_{18}(l) + \frac{25}{2}O_2(g) \rightarrow 8CO_2(g) + 9H_2O(l)$$

We are given ΔG°_f values for all the products and reactants except $O_2(g)$. Because oxygen gas is an element in its standard state, ΔG°_f (O_2) is zero. Using the "products minus reactants" rule,

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G^\circ &= [8\Delta G^\circ_f(CO_2) + 9\Delta G^\circ_f(H_2O)] - \left[1\Delta G^\circ_f(C_8H_{18}) + \frac{25}{2}\Delta G^\circ_f(O_2)\right] \\ &= [(8\text{ mol})(-394.4\text{ kJ/mol}) + (9\text{ mol})(-237.1\text{ kJ/mol})] \\ &\quad - \left[(1\text{ mol})(-353.2\text{ kJ/mol}) + \left(\frac{25}{2}\text{ mol}\right)(0\text{ kJ/mol})\right] \\ &= -4935.9\text{ kJ (per mol of } C_8H_{18})\end{aligned}$$

Because ΔG° is a large negative number, there is a strong tendency for the spontaneous formation of products from reactants (though not necessarily at a rapid rate). Also notice that the magnitude of ΔG° is largely determined by the ΔG°_f of the stable products: water and carbon dioxide.

Exercise 9.4.4

Calculate ΔG° for the reaction of benzene with hydrogen gas to give cyclohexane using the following data

- ΔG°_f(benzene) = 124.5 kJ/mol
- ΔG°_f (cyclohexane) = 217.3 kJ/mol.

Is the reaction spontaneous as written?

Answer:

- 92.8 kJ; no

Video Solution

Calculated values of ΔG° are extremely useful in predicting whether a reaction will occur spontaneously if the reactants and products are mixed under standard conditions. We should note, however, that very few reactions are actually carried out under standard conditions, and calculated values of ΔG° may not tell us whether a given reaction will occur spontaneously under nonstandard conditions. What determines whether a reaction will occur spontaneously is the free-energy change (ΔG) under the actual experimental conditions, which are usually different from ΔG°. If the ΔH and TΔS terms for a reaction have the same sign, for example, then it may be possible to reverse the sign of ΔG by changing the temperature, thereby converting a reaction that is not thermodynamically spontaneous, having $K_{eq} < 1$, to one that is, having a $K_{eq} > 1$, or vice versa. Because ΔH and ΔS usually do not vary greatly with temperature in the absence of a phase change, we can use tabulated values of ΔH° and ΔS° to calculate ΔG° at various temperatures, as long as no phase change occurs over the temperature range being considered.

Note

In the absence of a phase change, neither ΔH nor ΔS vary greatly with temperature.

Example 9.4.5

Calculate (a) ΔG° and (b) $\Delta G_{300^\circ C}$ for the reaction $N_2(g)+3H_2(g)\diamondsuit 2NH_3(g)$, assuming that ΔH and ΔS do not change between 25°C and 300°C. Use these data:

- $S^\circ(N_2)$ = 191.6 J/(mol•K),
- $S^\circ(H_2)$ = 130.7 J/(mol•K),

- $S°(NH_3)$ = 192.8 J/(mol•K), and
- $\Delta H^\circ_f\ (NH_3)$ = −45.9 kJ/mol.

Given: balanced chemical equation, temperatures, S° values, and ΔH°_f for NH_3

Asked for: ΔG° and ΔG at 300°C

Strategy:

A. Convert each temperature to kelvins. Then calculate ΔS° for the reaction. Calculate ΔH° for the reaction, recalling that ΔH°_f for any element in its standard state is zero.
B. Substitute the appropriate values into Equation 9.4.26 to obtain ΔG° for the reaction.
C. Assuming that ΔH and ΔS are independent of temperature, substitute values into Equation ??? to obtain ΔG for the reaction at 300°C.

Solution

A To calculate ΔG° for the reaction using Equation 9.4.26, we must know the temperature as well as the values of ΔS° and ΔH°. At standard conditions, the temperature is 25°C, or 298 K. We can calculate ΔS° for the reaction from the absolute molar entropy values given for the reactants and the products using the "products minus reactants" rule:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S^\circ_{\text{rxn}} &= 2S^\circ(\text{NH}_3) - [S^\circ(\text{N}_2) + 3S^\circ(\text{H}_2)] \\ &= [2\text{ mol NH}_3 \times 192.8\text{ J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)}] \\ &\quad - \{[1\text{ mol N}_2 \times 191.6\text{ J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)}] + [3\text{ mol H}_2 \times 130.7\text{ J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)}]\} \\ &= -198.1\text{ J/K (per mole of N}_2\text{)}\end{aligned} \tag{9.4.30}$$

We can also calculate ΔH° for the reaction using the "products minus reactants" rule. The value of $\Delta H^\circ_f\ (NH_3)$ is given, and ΔH°_f is zero for both N_2 and H_2:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H^\circ_{\text{rxn}} &= 2\Delta H^\circ_f(\text{NH}_3) - [\Delta H^\circ_f(\text{N}_2) + 3\Delta H^\circ_f(\text{H}_2)] \\ &= [2 \times (-45.9\text{ kJ/mol})] - [(1 \times 0\text{ kJ/mol}) + (3 \times 0\text{ kJ/mol})] \\ &= -91.8\text{ kJ(per mole of N}_2\text{)}\end{aligned}$$

B Inserting the appropriate values into Equation 9.4.26

$$\Delta G^\circ_{\text{rxn}} = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ = (-91.8\text{ kJ}) - (298\text{ K})(-198.1\text{ J/K})(1\text{ kJ}/1000\text{ J}) = -32.7\text{ kJ (per mole of N}_2\text{)}$$

C To calculate ΔG for this reaction at 300°C, we assume that ΔH and ΔS are independent of temperature (i.e., $\Delta H_{300^\circ C} = H°$ and $\Delta S_{300^\circ C} = \Delta S°$) and insert the appropriate temperature (573 K) into Equation ???:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G_{300^\circ\text{C}} &= \Delta H_{300^\circ\text{C}} - (573\text{ K})(\Delta S_{300^\circ\text{C}}) = \Delta H^\circ - (573\text{ K})\Delta S^\circ \\ &= (-91.8\text{ kJ}) - (573\text{ K})(-198.1\text{ J/K})(1\text{ kJ}/1000\text{ J}) = 21.7\text{ kJ (per mole of N}_2\text{)}\end{aligned}$$

In this example, changing the temperature has a major effect on the thermodynamic spontaneity of the reaction. Under standard conditions, the reaction of nitrogen and hydrogen gas to produce ammonia is thermodynamically spontaneous, but in practice, it is too slow to be useful industrially. Increasing the temperature in an attempt to make this reaction occur more rapidly also changes the thermodynamics by causing the −TΔS° term to dominate, and the reaction is no longer spontaneous at high temperatures; that is, its K_{eq} is less than one. This is a classic example of the conflict encountered in real systems between thermodynamics and kinetics, which is often unavoidable.

Exercise 9.4.5

Calculate

a. ΔG° and
b. $\Delta G_{750^\circ C}$

for the following reaction

$$2NO_{(g)} + O_{2\ (g)} \rightleftharpoons 2NO_{2\ (g)}$$

which is important in the formation of urban smog. Assume that ΔH and ΔS do not change between 25.0°C and 750°C and use these data:

- S°(NO) = 210.8 J/(mol•K),
- S°(O_2) = 205.2 J/(mol•K),
- S°(NO_2) = 240.1 J/(mol•K),
- ΔH°_f(NO_2) = 33.2 kJ/mol, and
- ΔH°_f (NO) = 91.3 kJ/mol.

Answer

a. –72.5 kJ/mol of O_2
b. 33.8 kJ/mol of O_2

Video Solution

The effect of temperature on the spontaneity of a reaction, which is an important factor in the design of an experiment or an industrial process, depends on the sign and magnitude of both ΔH° and ΔS°. The temperature at which a given reaction is at equilibrium can be calculated by setting ΔG° = 0 in Equation 9.4.26, as illustrated in Example 9.4.4.

Example 9.4.6

The reaction of nitrogen and hydrogen gas to produce ammonia is one in which ΔH° and ΔS° are both negative. Such reactions are predicted to be thermodynamically spontaneous at low temperatures but nonspontaneous at high temperatures. Use the data in Example 9.4.3 to calculate the temperature at which this reaction changes from spontaneous to nonspontaneous, assuming that ΔH° and ΔS° are independent of temperature.

Given: ΔH° and ΔS°

Asked for: temperature at which reaction changes from spontaneous to nonspontaneous

Strategy:

Set ΔG° equal to zero in Equation 9.4.26 and solve for T, the temperature at which the reaction becomes nonspontaneous.

Solution

In Example 9.4.3, we calculated that ΔH° is –91.8 kJ/mol of N_2 and ΔS° is –198.1 J/K per mole of N_2, corresponding to ΔG° = –32.7 kJ/mol of N_2 at 25°C. Thus the reaction is indeed spontaneous at low temperatures, as expected based on the signs of ΔH° and ΔS°. The temperature at which the reaction becomes nonspontaneous is found by setting ΔG° equal to zero and rearranging Equation 9.4.26 to solve for T:

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ = 0 \tag{9.4.31}$$

$$\Delta H^\circ = T\Delta S^\circ \tag{9.4.32}$$

$$T = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{\Delta S^\circ} = \frac{(-91.8\ \text{kJ})(1000\ \text{J/kJ})}{-198.1\ \text{J/K}} = 463\ \text{K} \tag{9.4.33}$$

This is a case in which a chemical engineer is severely limited by thermodynamics. Any attempt to increase the rate of reaction of nitrogen with hydrogen by increasing the temperature will cause reactants to be favored over products above 463 K.

Exercise 9.4.6

ΔH° and ΔS° are both negative for the reaction of nitric oxide and oxygen to form nitrogen dioxide. Use those data to calculate the temperature at which this reaction changes from spontaneous to nonspontaneous.

Answer: 792.6 K

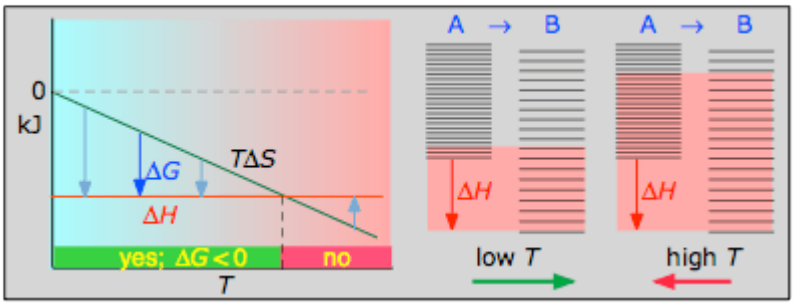
Summary

- The change in Gibbs free energy, which is based solely on changes in state functions, is the criterion for predicting the spontaneity of a reaction.

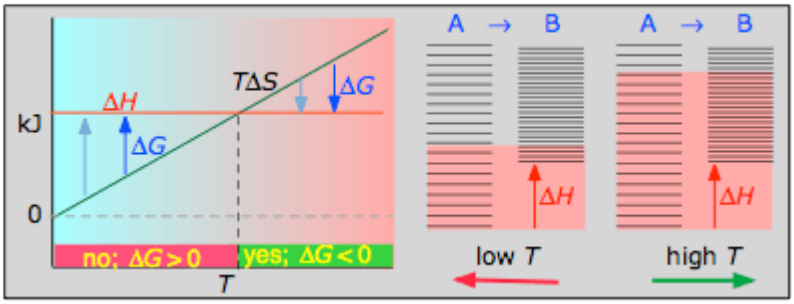
We can predict whether a reaction will occur spontaneously by combining the entropy, enthalpy, and temperature of a system in a new state function called Gibbs free energy (G). The change in free energy (ΔG) is the difference between the heat released during a process and the heat released for the same process occurring in a reversible manner. If a system is at equilibrium, ΔG = 0. If the process is spontaneous, ΔG < 0. If the process is not spontaneous as written but is spontaneous in the reverse direction, ΔG > 0. At constant temperature and pressure, ΔG is equal to the maximum amount of work a system can perform on its surroundings while undergoing a spontaneous change. The standard free-energy change (ΔG°) is the change in free energy when one substance or a set of substances in their standard states is converted to one or more other substances, also in their standard states. The standard free energy of formation (ΔG°_f), is the change in free energy that occurs when 1 mol of a substance in its standard state is formed from the component elements in their standard states. Tabulated values of standard free energies of formation are used to calculate ΔG° for a reaction.

Answers

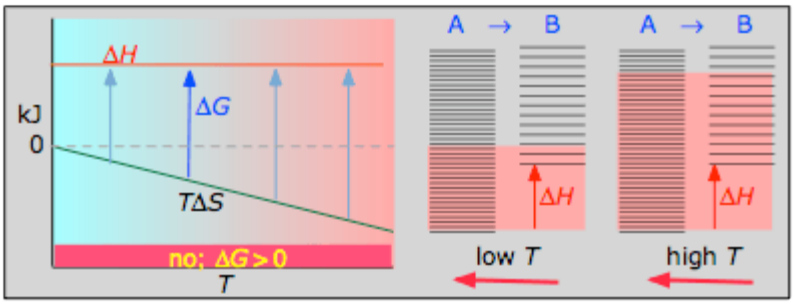
> 0



> 0



> 0



This page titled 9.4: Gibbs Energy Change and Equilibrium is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 19.6: Gibbs Energy Change and Equilibrium is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

9.5: ΔG° and K as Functions of Temperature

Learning Objectives

- To know the relationship between free energy and the equilibrium constant.

As was previously demonstrated, the spontaneity of a process may depend upon the temperature of the system. Phase transitions, for example, will proceed spontaneously in one direction or the other depending upon the temperature of the substance in question. Likewise, some chemical reactions can also exhibit temperature dependent spontaneities. To illustrate this concept, the equation relating free energy change to the enthalpy and entropy changes for the process is considered:

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S \tag{9.5.1}$$

The spontaneity of a process, as reflected in the arithmetic sign of its free energy change, is then determined by the signs of the enthalpy and entropy changes and, in some cases, the absolute temperature. Since T is the absolute (kelvin) temperature, it can only have positive values. Four possibilities therefore exist with regard to the signs of the enthalpy and entropy changes:

1. **Both Δ*H* and Δ*S* are positive.** This condition describes an endothermic process that involves an increase in system entropy. In this case, Δ*G* will be negative if the magnitude of the *T*Δ*S* term is greater than Δ*H*. If the *T*Δ*S* term is less than Δ*H*, the free energy change will be positive. Such a process is *spontaneous at high temperatures and nonspontaneous at low temperatures*.
2. **Both Δ*H* and Δ*S* are negative.** This condition describes an exothermic process that involves a decrease in system entropy. In this case, Δ*G* will be negative if the magnitude of the *T*Δ*S* term is less than Δ*H*. If the *T*Δ*S* term's magnitude is greater than Δ*H*, the free energy change will be positive. Such a process is *spontaneous at low temperatures and nonspontaneous at high temperatures*.
3. **Δ*H* is positive and Δ*S* is negative.** This condition describes an endothermic process that involves a decrease in system entropy. In this case, Δ*G* will be positive regardless of the temperature. Such a process is *nonspontaneous at all temperatures*.
4. **Δ*H* is negative and Δ*S* is positive.** This condition describes an exothermic process that involves an increase in system entropy. In this case, Δ*G* will be negative regardless of the temperature. Such a process is *spontaneous at all temperatures*.

These four scenarios are summarized in Figure 9.5.1.

Summary of the Four Scenarios for Enthalpy and Entropy Changes

	ΔH > 0 (endothermic)	**ΔH < 0 (exothermic)**
ΔS > 0 (increase in entropy)	ΔG < 0 at high temperature ΔG > 0 at low temperature Process is spontaneous at high temperature	ΔG < 0 at any temperature Process is spontaneous at any temperature
ΔS < 0 (decrease in entropy)	ΔG > 0 at any temperature Process is nonspontaneous at any temperature	ΔG < 0 at low temperature ΔG > 0 at high temperature Process is spontaneous at low temperature

Figure 9.5.1: There are four possibilities regarding the signs of enthalpy and entropy changes.

Predicting the Temperature Dependence of Spontaneity

The incomplete combustion of carbon is described by the following equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{C}(s)+\mathrm{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{CO}(g)$$

How does the spontaneity of this process depend upon temperature?

Solution

Combustion processes are exothermic ($\Delta H < 0$). This particular reaction involves an increase in entropy due to the accompanying increase in the amount of gaseous species (net gain of one mole of gas, $\Delta S > 0$). The reaction is therefore spontaneous ($\Delta G < 0$) at all temperatures.

Exercise 9.5.3

Popular chemical hand warmers generate heat by the air-oxidation of iron:

$$4\,\mathrm{Fe}(s)+3\,\mathrm{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Fe}_2\mathrm{O}_3(s)$$

How does the spontaneity of this process depend upon temperature?

Answer

ΔH and ΔS are negative; the reaction is spontaneous at low temperatures.

When considering the conclusions drawn regarding the temperature dependence of spontaneity, it is important to keep in mind what the terms “high” and “low” mean. Since these terms are adjectives, the temperatures in question are deemed high or low relative to some reference temperature. A process that is nonspontaneous at one temperature but spontaneous at another will necessarily undergo a change in “spontaneity” (as reflected by its ΔG) as temperature varies. This is clearly illustrated by a graphical presentation of the free energy change equation, in which ΔG is plotted on the *y* axis versus *T* on the *x* axis:

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S \tag{9.5.2}$$

$$y = b + mx \tag{9.5.3}$$

Such a plot is shown in Figure 9.5.2. A process whose enthalpy and entropy changes are of the same arithmetic sign will exhibit a temperature-dependent spontaneity as depicted by the two yellow lines in the plot. Each line crosses from one spontaneity domain (positive or negative ΔG) to the other at a temperature that is characteristic of the process in question. This temperature is represented by the *x*-intercept of the line, that is, the value of *T* for which ΔG is zero:

$$\Delta G = 0 = \Delta H - T\Delta S \tag{9.5.4}$$

$$T = \frac{\Delta H}{\Delta S} \tag{9.5.5}$$

And so, saying a process is spontaneous at “high” or “low” temperatures means the temperature is above or below, respectively, that temperature at which ΔG for the process is zero. As noted earlier, this condition describes a system at equilibrium.

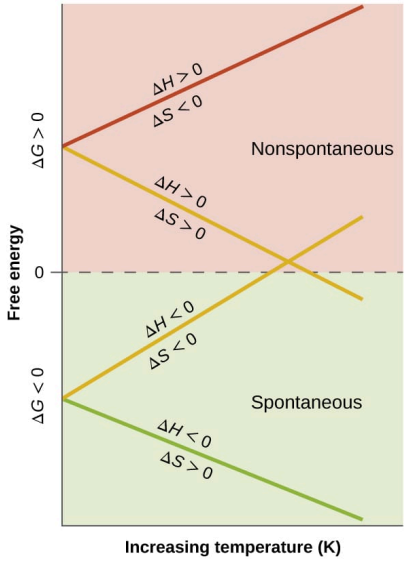


Figure 9.5.2: These plots show the variation in ΔG with temperature for the four possible combinations of arithmetic sign for ΔH and ΔS.

Equilibrium Temperature for a Phase Transition

As defined in the chapter on liquids and solids, the boiling point of a liquid is the temperature at which its solid and liquid phases are in equilibrium (that is, when vaporization and condensation occur at equal rates). Use the information in Appendix G to estimate the boiling point of water.

Solution

The process of interest is the following phase change:

$$\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O}(g)$$

When this process is at equilibrium, $\Delta G = 0$, so the following is true:

$$0 = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \qquad \text{or} \qquad T = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{\Delta S^\circ}$$

Using the standard thermodynamic data from Appendix G,

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H^\circ &= \Delta H_\mathrm{f}^\circ(\mathrm{H_2O}(g)) - \Delta H_\mathrm{f}^\circ(\mathrm{H_2O}(l)) \\ &= -241.82\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} - (-285.83\ \mathrm{kJ/mol}) = 44.01\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} \\ \Delta S^\circ &= \Delta S_{298}^\circ(\mathrm{H_2O}(g)) - \Delta S_{298}^\circ(\mathrm{H_2O}(l)) \\ &= 188.8\ \mathrm{J/K \cdot mol} - 70.0\ \mathrm{J/K \cdot mol} = 118.8\ \mathrm{J/K \cdot mol}\end{aligned}$$

$$T = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{\Delta S^\circ} = \frac{44.01 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{J/mol}}{118.8\ \mathrm{J/K \cdot mol}} = 370.5\ \mathrm{K} = 97.3\ ^\circ\mathrm{C}$$

The accepted value for water's normal boiling point is 373.2 K (100.0 °C), and so this calculation is in reasonable agreement. Note that the values for enthalpy and entropy changes data used were derived from standard data at 298 K (Appendix G). If desired, you could obtain more accurate results by using enthalpy and entropy changes determined at (or at least closer to) the actual boiling point.

Exercise 9.5.4

Use the information in Appendix G to estimate the boiling point of CS_2.

Answer

313 K (accepted value 319 K)

Temperature Dependence of the Equilibrium Constant

The fact that ΔG° and K are related provides us with another explanation of why equilibrium constants are temperature dependent. This relationship can be expressed as follows:

$$\ln K = -\frac{\Delta H^\circ}{RT} + \frac{\Delta S^\circ}{R} \tag{9.5.6}$$

Assuming ΔH° and ΔS° are **temperature independent,** for an exothermic reaction (ΔH° < 0), the magnitude of K decreases with increasing temperature, whereas for an endothermic reaction (ΔH° > 0), the magnitude of K increases with increasing temperature. The quantitative relationship expressed in Equation 9.5.6 agrees with the qualitative predictions made by applying Le Chatelier's principle. Because heat is produced in an exothermic reaction, adding heat (by increasing the temperature) will shift the equilibrium to the left, favoring the reactants and decreasing the magnitude of K. Conversely, because heat is consumed in an endothermic reaction, adding heat will shift the equilibrium to the right, favoring the products and increasing the magnitude of K. Equation 9.5.6 also shows that the magnitude of ΔH° dictates how rapidly K changes as a function of temperature. In contrast, the magnitude and sign of ΔS° affect the magnitude of K but not its temperature dependence.

If we know the value of K at a given temperature and the value of ΔH° for a reaction, we can estimate the value of K at any other temperature, even in the absence of information on ΔS°. Suppose, for example, that K_1 and K_2 are the equilibrium constants for a reaction at temperatures T_1 and T_2, respectively. Applying Equation 9.5.6 gives the following relationship at each temperature:

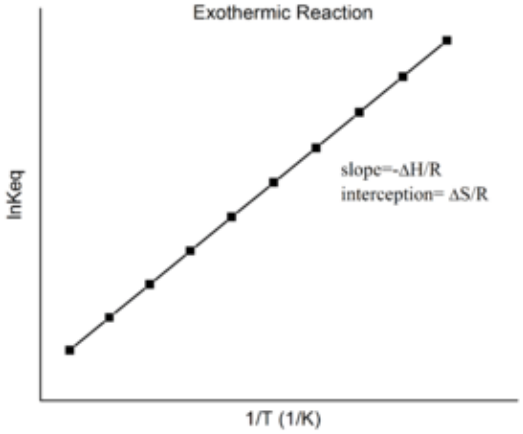
$$\ln K_1 = \frac{-\Delta H^\circ}{RT_1} + \frac{\Delta S^\circ}{R} \tag{9.5.7}$$

$$\ln K_2 = \frac{-\Delta H^\circ}{RT_2} + \frac{\Delta S^\circ}{R} \tag{9.5.8}$$

Subtracting $\ln K_1$ from $\ln K_2$,

$$\ln K_2 - \ln K_1 = \ln \frac{K_2}{K_1} = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right) \tag{9.5.9}$$

Thus calculating ΔH° from tabulated enthalpies of formation and measuring the equilibrium constant at one temperature (K_1) allow us to calculate the value of the equilibrium constant at any other temperature (K_2), assuming that ΔH° and ΔS° are independent of temperature. The linear relation between $\ln K$ and the standard enthalpies and entropies in Equation 9.5.9 is known as the van't Hoff equation. It shows that a plot of $\ln K$ vs. $1/T$ should be a line with slope $-\Delta_r H^o/R$ and intercept $\Delta_r S^o/R$.



Figures used with permission of Wikipedia

Hence, these thermodynamic enthalpy and entropy changes for a reversible reaction can be determined from plotting $\ln K$ vs. $1/T$ data without the aid of calorimetry. Of course, the main assumption here is that $\Delta_r H^o$ and $\Delta_r S^o$ are only very weakly dependent on T, which is usually valid over a narrow temperature range.

Example 9.5.4

The equilibrium constant for the formation of NH_3 from H_2 and N_2 at 25°C is $K_p = 5.4 \times 10^5$. What is K_p at 500°C? (Use the data from Example 10.)

Given: balanced chemical equation, ΔH°, initial and final T, and K_p at 25°C

Asked for: K_p at 500°C

Strategy:

Convert the initial and final temperatures to kelvins. Then substitute appropriate values into Equation 9.5.9 to obtain K_2, the equilibrium constant at the final temperature.

Solution:

The value of ΔH° for the reaction obtained using Hess's law is −91.8 kJ/mol of N_2. If we set T_1 = 25°C = 298.K and T_2 = 500°C = 773 K, then from Equation 9.5.9 we obtain the following:

$$\ln \frac{K_2}{K_1} = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right) \tag{9.5.10}$$

$$= \frac{(-91.8\ \text{kJ})(1000\ \text{J/kJ})}{8.314\ \text{J/K}}\left(\frac{1}{298\ \text{K}} - \frac{1}{773\ \text{K}}\right) = -22.8 \tag{9.5.11}$$

$$\frac{K_2}{K_1} = 1.3 \times 10^{-10} \tag{9.5.12}$$

$$K_2 = (5.4 \times 10^5)(1.3 \times 10^{-10}) = 7.0 \times 10^{-5} \tag{9.5.13}$$

Thus at 500°C, the equilibrium strongly favors the reactants over the products.

Exercise 9.5.4

In the exercise in Example 9.5.3, you calculated $K_p = 2.2 \times 10^{12}$ for the reaction of NO with O_2 to give NO_2 at 25°C. Use the ΔH°_f values in the exercise in Example 10 to calculate K_p for this reaction at 1000°C.

Answer: 5.6×10^{-4}

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Van't Hoff Equation: https://youtu.be/4vk6idAXp_A

Summary

For a reversible process that does not involve external work, we can express the change in free energy in terms of volume, pressure, entropy, and temperature. If we assume ideal gas behavior, the ideal gas law allows us to express ΔG in terms of the partial pressures of the reactants and products, which gives us a relationship between ΔG and K_p, the equilibrium constant of a reaction involving gases, or K, the equilibrium constant expressed in terms of concentrations. If $\Delta G° < 0$, then K or $K_p > 1$, and products are favored over reactants. If $\Delta G° > 0$, then K or $K_p < 1$, and reactants are favored over products. If $\Delta G° = 0$, then K or $K_p = 1$, and the system is at equilibrium. We can use the measured equilibrium constant K at one temperature and $\Delta H°$ to estimate the equilibrium constant for a reaction at any other temperature.

Contributors and Attributions

- Mike Blaber (Florida State University)
- Anonymous

This page titled 9.5: ΔG° and K as Functions of Temperature is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 19.7: ΔG° and K as Functions of Temperature is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

9.6: Coupled Reactions

Learning Objectives

Endergonic reactions can also be pushed by coupling them to another reaction, which is strongly exergonic, often through shared intermediates.

Many chemicals' reactions are *endergonic* (i.e., not spontaneous ($\Delta G > 0$)) and require energy to be externally applied to occur. However, these reaction can be *coupled* to a separate, *exergonic* (thermodynamically favorable $\Delta G < 0$) reactions that 'drive' the thermodynamically unfavorable one by coupling or 'mechanistically joining' the two reactions often via a share intermediate. Since Gibbs Energy is a state function, the ΔG values for each half-reaction may be summed, to yield the combined ΔG of the coupled reaction.

One simple example of the coupling of reaction is the decomposition of calcium carbonate:

$$CaCO_{3(s)} \rightleftharpoons CaO_{(s)} + CO_{2(g)} \qquad \Delta G^o = 130.40\ kJ/mol \tag{9.6.1}$$

The strongly positive ΔG for this reaction is reactant-favored. If the temperature is raised above 837 °C, this reaction becomes spontaneous and favors the products. Now, let's consider a second and completely different reaction that can be coupled ot this reaction. The combustion of coal released by burning the coal $\Delta G^o = -394.36\ \ kJ/mol$ is greater than the energy required to decompose calcium carbonate ($\Delta G^o = 130.40\ \ kJ/mo$).

$$C_{(s)} + O_2 \rightleftharpoons CO_{2(g)} \qquad \Delta G^o = -394.36\ kJ/mol \tag{9.6.2}$$

If reactions 9.6.1 and 9.6.2 were added

$$CaCO_{3(s)} + C_{(s)} + O_2 \rightleftharpoons CaO_{(s)} + 2CO_[2(g) \quad \Delta G^o = -263.96\ kJ/mol \tag{9.6.3}$$

and then Hess's Law were applied, the combined reaction (Equation 9.6.3) is product-favored with $\Delta G^o = -263.96\ \ kJ/mol$. This is because the reactant-favored reaction (Equation 9.6.2) is linked to a strong spontaneous reaction so that both reactions yield products. Notice that the ΔG for the coupled reaction is the sum of the constituent reactions; this is a consequence of Gibbs energy being a state function:

$$\Delta G^o = 130.40\ kJ/mol + -394.36\ kJ/mol = -263.96\ kJ/mol \tag{9.6.4}$$

Coupled Reactions in Biology

This is a common feature in biological systems where some enzyme-catalyzed reactions are interpretable as two coupled half-reactions, one spontaneous and the other non-spontaneous. Organisms often the hydrolysis of **ATP** (adenosine triphosphate) to generate **ADP** (adenosine diphosphate) as the spontaneous coupling reaction (Figure 9.6.1).

$$ATP + H_2O \rightleftharpoons ADP + P_i \tag{9.6.5}$$

- P_i is inorganic phosphate ion

The phosphoanhydride bonds formed by ejecting water between two phosphate group of ATP exhibit a large negative $-\Delta G$ of hydrolysis and are thus often termed "high energy" bonds. However, as with all bonds, energy is requires to break these bonds, but the thermodynamic Gibbs energy difference is strongly "energy releasing" when including the solvation thermodynamics of the phosphate ions; ΔG for this reaction is - 31 kJ/mol.

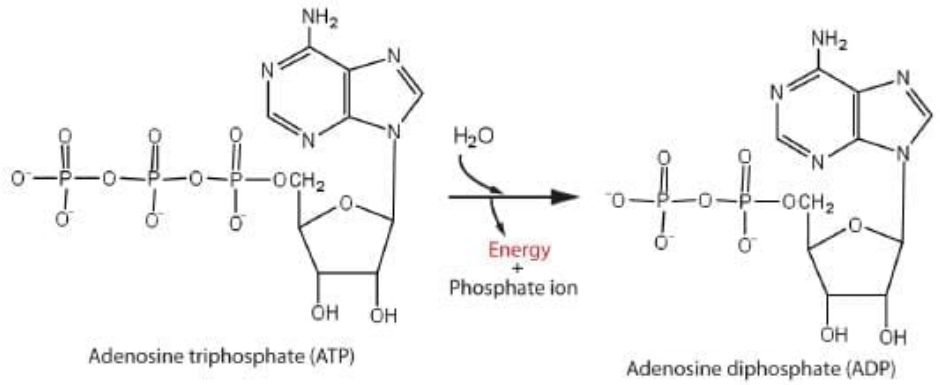


Figure 9.6.1**:** *Hydrolysis of ATP to Form ADP*

ATP is the major 'energy' molecule produced by metabolism, and it serves as a sort of 'energy source' in cell: ATP is dispatched to wherever a non-spontaneous reaction needs to occurs so that the two reactions are coupled so that the overall reaction is thermodynamically favored.

Example 9.6.1: Phosphorylating Carboxylic Acids

Aldehydes $RCHO$ are organic compounds that can be oxidized to generate carboxylic acids and nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) is a coenzyme found in all living cells and in the reduced form, NAD^+, it acts as an oxidizing agent that can accept electrons from other molecules.

The NAD$^+$-linked oxidation of an aldehyde is practically irreversible with an equilibrium that strongly favors the products ($\Delta G >> 0$:

$$RCHO + NAD^+ + H_2O \rightleftharpoons RCOOH + NADH + H^+ \tag{9.6.6}$$

The position of equilibrium for phosphorylating carboxylic acids lies very much to the left:

$$RCOOH + P_i \rightleftharpoons RC(=O)(O-P_i) + H_2O \tag{9.6.7}$$

- (P_i\) is inorganic phosphate ion.

The non-spontaneous formation of a phosphorylated carboxylic acid can be driven by coupling it to the (spontaneous) NAD$^+$-linked oxidation of an aldehyde?

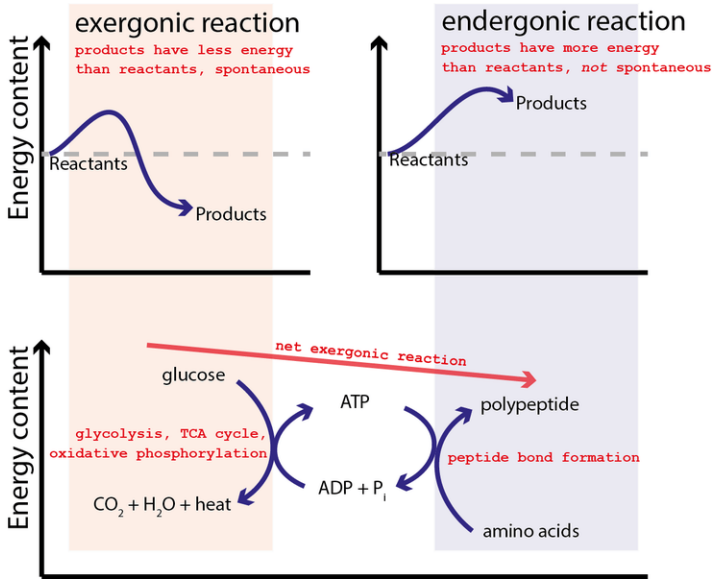


Figure 9.6.2**:** A reaction will not proceed spontaneously unless the products of the reaction have lower energy than the reactants. This is called an exergonic reactions. A reaction where the products have higher energy than the reactions (energonic reaction) can only proceed when there is an input of energy. Exergonic reactions like burning of glucose drives ATP synthesis. The ATP molecules are used to power other endergonic reactions like protein synthesis. from Wikipedia (Muessig).

Similarly, ATP hydrolysis can be used to combine amino acids together to generate polypeptides (and proteins) as graphically illustrated by Figure 9.6.2. In this case, the reverse of Equation 9.6.5 is initially coupled to the oxidizing glucose by oxygen

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 \rightarrow 6CO_2 + 6H_2O \tag{9.6.8}$$

Reaction 9.6.8 is strongly spontaneous with $\Delta G = -2880\ \ kJ/mol$ or close to 100x greater energy capability than the hydrolysis of ATP in Equation 9.6.5. Hence, the equilibrium for this reaction so strongly favors the products that a single arrow is typically used in the chemical equation as it is essential irreversible. It may not be surpising that glucose and all sugars are very energetic moleculess since they are the primary energy source for life.

References

1. Damitio , J., Smith , G., Meany , J. E., Pocker, Y. (1992). A comparative study of the enolization of pyruvate and the reversible dehydration of pyruvate hydrate *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **114**, 3081–3087
2. Pocker, Y., Meany, J. E., Nist, B. J., & Zadorojny, C. (1969) The Reversible Hydration of Pyruvic Acid. I. Equilibrium Studies. *J. Phys. Chem.* **76**, 2879 – 2882.
3. Wasih, C. (1979) *Enzymatic Reaction Mechanisms*. W.H. Freeman & Co.

Summary

Two (or more) reactions may be combined such that a spontaneous reaction may be made 'drive' an nonspontaneous one. Such reactions may be considered *coupled*. Changes in Gibbs energy of the coupled reactions are additive.

Contributors and Attributions

- Stackexcahnge (TomD)

This page titled 9.6: Coupled Reactions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 19.8: Coupled Reactions is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

9.7: Solubility Product Constant, Ksp

Learning Objectives

- To calculate the solubility of an ionic compound from its K_{sp}

We begin our discussion of solubility and complexation equilibria—those associated with the formation of complex ions—by developing quantitative methods for describing dissolution and precipitation reactions of ionic compounds in aqueous solution. Just as with acid–base equilibria, we can describe the concentrations of ions in equilibrium with an ionic solid using an equilibrium constant expression.

The Solubility Product

When a slightly soluble ionic compound is added to water, some of it dissolves to form a solution, establishing an equilibrium between the pure solid and a solution of its ions. For the dissolution of calcium phosphate, one of the two main components of kidney stones, the equilibrium can be written as follows, with the solid salt on the left:

$$\mathrm{Ca_3(PO_4)_2\,(s) \rightleftharpoons 3\,Ca^{2+}\,(aq) + 2\,PO_4^{3-}\,(aq)} \tag{9.7.1}$$

As you will discover in Section 17.4 and in more advanced chemistry courses, basic anions, such as S^{2-}, PO_4^{3-}, and CO_3^{2-}, react with water to produce OH^- and the corresponding protonated anion. Consequently, their calculated molarities, assuming no protonation in aqueous solution, are only approximate.

The equilibrium constant for the dissolution of a sparingly soluble salt is the **solubility product (K_{sp})** of the salt. Because the concentration of a pure solid such as $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ is a constant, it does not appear explicitly in the equilibrium constant expression. The equilibrium constant expression for the dissolution of calcium phosphate is therefore

$$K = \frac{[\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}]^3[\mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}]^2}{[\mathrm{Ca_3(PO_4)_2}]} \tag{9.7.2}$$

$$[\mathrm{Ca_3(PO_4)_2}]K = K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}]^3[\mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}]^2 \tag{9.7.3}$$

At 25°C and pH 7.00, Ksp for calcium phosphate is 2.07×10^{-33}, indicating that the concentrations of Ca^{2+} and PO_4^{3-} ions in solution that are in equilibrium with solid calcium phosphate are very low. The values of K_{sp} for some common salts are listed in Table 9.7.1, which shows that the magnitude of K_{sp} varies dramatically for different compounds. Although K_{sp} is not a function of pH in Equations 9.7.2 and 9.7.3, changes in pH can affect the solubility of a compound as discussed later.

Note

As with K, the concentration of a pure solid does not appear explicitly in K_{sp}.

Table 9.7.1: Solubility Products for Selected Ionic Substances at 25°C

Solid	Color	K_{sp}		Solid	Color	K_{sp}
Acetates				**Iodides**		
$Ca(O_2CCH_3)_2{\cdot}3H_2O$	white	4×10^{-3}		Hg_2I_2*	yellow	5.2×10^{-29}
Bromides				PbI_2	yellow	9.8×10^{-9}
***These contain the Hg_2^{2+} ion.**						

Solid	Color	K_{sp}		Solid	Color	K_{sp}
AgBr	off-white	5.35×10^{-13}		**Oxalates**		
Hg_2Br_2*	yellow	6.40×10^{-23}		$Ag_2C_2O_4$	white	5.40×10^{-12}
Carbonates				$MgC_2O_4 \cdot 2H_2O$	white	4.83×10^{-6}
$CaCO_3$	white	3.36×10^{-9}		PbC_2O_4	white	4.8×10^{-10}
$PbCO_3$	white	7.40×10^{-14}		**Phosphates**		
Chlorides				Ag_3PO_4	white	8.89×10^{-17}
AgCl	white	1.77×10^{-10}		$Sr_3(PO_4)_2$	white	4.0×10^{-28}
Hg_2Cl_2*	white	1.43×10^{-18}		$FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$	pink	9.91×10^{-16}
$PbCl_2$	white	1.70×10^{-5}		**Sulfates**		
Chromates				Ag_2SO_4	white	1.20×10^{-5}
$CaCrO_4$	yellow	7.1×10^{-4}		$BaSO_4$	white	1.08×10^{-10}
$PbCrO_4$	yellow	2.8×10^{-13}		$PbSO_4$	white	2.53×10^{-8}
Fluorides				**Sulfides**		
BaF_2	white	1.84×10^{-7}		Ag_2S	black	6.3×10^{-50}
PbF_2	white	3.3×10^{-8}		CdS	yellow	8.0×10^{-27}
Hydroxides				PbS	black	8.0×10^{-28}
$Ca(OH)_2$	white	5.02×10^{-6}		ZnS	white	1.6×10^{-24}
$Cu(OH)_2$	pale blue	1×10^{-14}				
$Mn(OH)_2$	light pink	1.9×10^{-13}				
$Cr(OH)_3$	gray-green	6.3×10^{-31}				
$Fe(OH)_3$	rust red	2.79×10^{-39}				

***These contain the Hg_2^{2+} ion.**

Solubility products are determined experimentally by directly measuring either the concentration of one of the component ions or the solubility of the compound in a given amount of water. However, whereas solubility is usually expressed in terms of mass of solute per 100 mL of solvent, K_{sp}, like K, is defined in terms of the molar concentrations of the component ions.

Example 9.7.1

Calcium oxalate monohydrate [$Ca(O_2CCO_2) \cdot H_2O$, also written as $CaC_2O_4 \cdot H_2O$] is a sparingly soluble salt that is the other major component of kidney stones [along with $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$]. Its solubility in water at 25°C is 7.36×10^{-4} g/100 mL. Calculate its K_{sp}.



A color photograph of a kidney stone, 8 mm in length. Kidney stones form from sparingly soluble calcium salts and are largely composed of $Ca(O_2CCO_2)\cdot H_2O$ and $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$. (Public Doman; Robert R. Wal via Wikipedia).

Given: solubility in g/100 mL

Asked for: K_{sp}

Strategy:

A. Write the balanced dissolution equilibrium and the corresponding solubility product expression.
B. Convert the solubility of the salt to moles per liter. From the balanced dissolution equilibrium, determine the equilibrium concentrations of the dissolved solute ions. Substitute these values into the solubility product expression to calculate K_{sp}.

Solution

A We need to write the solubility product expression in terms of the concentrations of the component ions. For calcium oxalate monohydrate, the balanced dissolution equilibrium and the solubility product expression (abbreviating oxalate as ox^{2-}) are as follows:

$$Ca(O_2CCO_2)\cdot H_2O(s) \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+}(aq) + {}^{-}O_2CCO_2^{-}(aq) + H_2O(l) \qquad K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}][ox^{2-}]$$

Neither solid calcium oxalate monohydrate nor water appears in the solubility product expression because their concentrations are essentially constant.

B Next we need to determine $[Ca^{2+}]$ and $[ox^{2-}]$ at equilibrium. We can use the mass of calcium oxalate monohydrate that dissolves in 100 mL of water to calculate the number of moles that dissolve in 100 mL of water. From this we can determine the number of moles that dissolve in 1.00 L of water. For dilute solutions, the density of the solution is nearly the same as that of water, so dissolving the salt in 1.00 L of water gives essentially 1.00 L of solution. Because each 1 mol of dissolved calcium oxalate monohydrate dissociates to produce 1 mol of calcium ions and 1 mol of oxalate ions, we can obtain the equilibrium concentrations that must be inserted into the solubility product expression. The number of moles of calcium oxalate monohydrate that dissolve in 100 mL of water is as follows:

$$\frac{7.36 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{g}}{146.1\ \text{g/mol}} = 5.04 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol}\ Ca(O_2CCO_2)\cdot H_2O$$

The number of moles of calcium oxalate monohydrate that dissolve in 1.00 L of the saturated solution is as follows:

$$\left(\frac{5.04 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol}\ Ca(O_2CCO_2\cdot)H_2O}{100\ \text{mL}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ \text{mL}}{1.00\ \text{L}}\right) = 5.04 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{mol/L} = 5.04 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{M}$$

Because of the stoichiometry of the reaction, the concentration of Ca^{2+} and ox^{2-} ions are both 5.04×10^{-5} M. Inserting these values into the solubility product expression,

$$\begin{aligned} K_{sp} &= [Ca^{2+}][ox^{2-}] \\ &= (5.04 \times 10^{-5})(5.04 \times 10^{-5}) \\ &= 2.54 \times 10^{-9} \end{aligned}$$

In our calculation, we have ignored the reaction of the weakly basic anion with water, which tends to make the actual solubility of many salts greater than the calculated value.

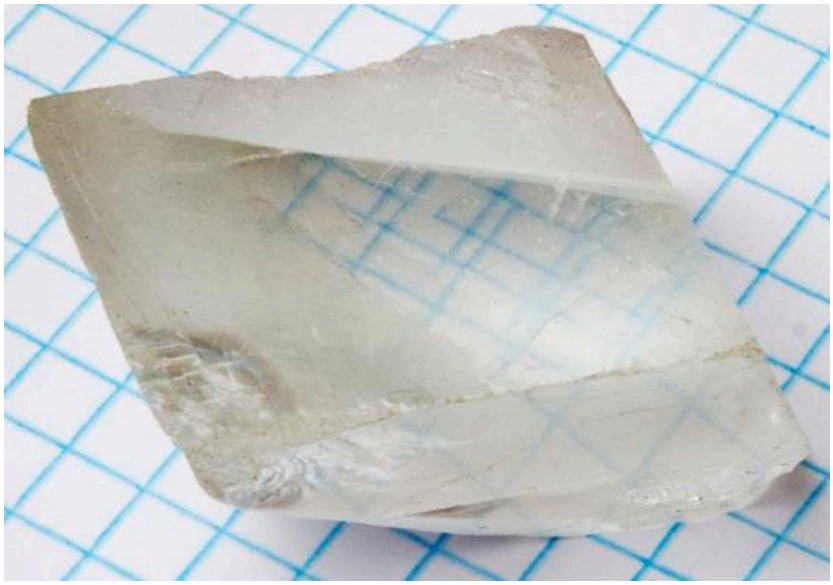
Exercise 9.7.1

One crystalline form of calcium carbonate ($\mathrm{CaCO_3}$) is the mineral sold as "calcite" in mineral and gem shops. The solubility of calcite in water is 0.67 mg/100 mL. Calculate its K_{sp}.

Answer available at the end of this section.

The reaction of weakly basic anions with H_2O tends to make the actual solubility of many salts higher than predicted.

Calcite, a structural material for many organisms, is found in the teeth of sea urchins. The urchins create depressions in limestone that they can settle in by grinding the rock with their teeth. Limestone, however, also consists of calcite, so how can the urchins grind the rock without also grinding their teeth? Researchers have discovered that the teeth are shaped like needles and plates and contain magnesium. The concentration of magnesium increases toward the tip, which contributes to the hardness. Moreover, each tooth is composed of two blocks of the polycrystalline calcite matrix that are interleaved near the tip. This creates a corrugated surface that presumably increases grinding efficiency. Toolmakers are particularly interested in this approach to grinding.



A crystal of calcite ($\mathrm{CaCO_3}$), illustrating the phenomenon of double refraction. When a transparent crystal of calcite is placed over a page, we see two images of the letters. (Cc BY-SA 3.0 Unported; APN MJM via Wikipedia).

Tabulated values of K_{sp} can also be used to estimate the solubility of a salt with a procedure that is essentially the reverse of the one used in Example 9.7.1. In this case, we treat the problem as a typical equilibrium problem and set up a table of initial concentrations, changes in concentration, and final concentrations (ICE Tables), remembering that the concentration of the pure solid is essentially constant.

Example 9.7.2

We saw that the K_{sp} for $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ is 2.07×10^{-33} at 25°C. Calculate the aqueous solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in terms of the following:

a. the molarity of ions produced in solution
b. the mass of salt that dissolves in 100 mL of water at 25°C

Given: K_{sp}

Asked for: molar concentration and mass of salt that dissolves in 100 mL of water

Strategy:

A. Write the balanced equilibrium equation for the dissolution reaction and construct a table showing the concentrations of the species produced in solution. Insert the appropriate values into the solubility product expression and calculate the molar solubility at 25°C.
B. Calculate the mass of solute in 100 mL of solution from the molar solubility of the salt. Assume that the volume of the solution is the same as the volume of the solvent.

Solution:

A. The dissolution equilibrium for $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ (Equation 9.7.2) is shown in the following ICE table. Because we are starting with distilled water, the initial concentration of both calcium and phosphate ions is zero. For every 1 mol of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ that dissolves, 3 mol of Ca^{2+} and 2 mol of PO_4^{3-} ions are produced in solution. If we let x equal the solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in moles per liter, then the change in $[Ca^{2+}]$ will be $+3x$, and the change in $[PO_4^{3-}]$ will be $+2x$. We can insert these values into the table.

$$\mathbf{Ca_3(PO_4)_2(s) \rightleftharpoons 3Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2PO_4^{3-}(aq)}$$

	$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$	$[Ca^{2+}]$	$[PO_4^{3-}]$
initial	pure solid	0	0
change	—	$+3x$	$+2x$
final	pure solid	$3x$	$2x$

Although the amount of solid $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ changes as some of it dissolves, its molar concentration does not change. We now insert the expressions for the equilibrium concentrations of the ions into the solubility product expression:

$$K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}]^3[PO_4^{3-}]^2 = (3x)^3(2x)^2$$
$$2.07 \times 10^{-33} = 108x^5$$
$$1.92 \times 10^{-35} = x^5$$
$$1.14 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{M} = x$$

This is the molar solubility of calcium phosphate at 25°C. However, the molarity of the ions is $2x$ and $3x$, which means that $[PO_4^{3-}] = 2.28 \times 10^{-7}$ and $[Ca^{2+}] = 3.42 \times 10^{-7}$.

b. To find the mass of solute in 100 mL of solution, we assume that the density of this dilute solution is the same as the density of water because of the low solubility of the salt, so that 100 mL of water gives 100 mL of solution. We can then determine the amount of salt that dissolves in 100 mL of water:

$$\left(\frac{1.14 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{mol}}{1\ \text{L}}\right) 100\ \text{mL} \left(\frac{1\ \text{L}}{1000\ \text{mL}}\right) \left(\frac{310.18\ \text{g}\ Ca_3(PO_4)_2}{1\ \text{mol}}\right) = 3.54 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{g}\ Ca_3(PO_4)_2$$

Exercise 9.7.2

The solubility product of silver carbonate (Ag_2CO_3) is 8.46×10^{-12} at 25°C. Calculate the following:

a. the molarity of a saturated solution
b. the mass of silver carbonate that will dissolve in 100 mL of water at this temperature

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Ion Product

The **ion product (Q)** of a salt is the product of the concentrations of the ions in solution raised to the same powers as in the solubility product expression. It is analogous to the reaction quotient (Q) discussed for gaseous equilibria. Whereas K_{sp} describes equilibrium concentrations, the ion product describes concentrations that are not necessarily equilibrium concentrations.

> The ion product Q is analogous to the reaction quotient Q for gaseous equilibria.

As summarized in Figure 9.7.1, there are three possible conditions for an aqueous solution of an ionic solid:

- $Q < K_{sp}$. The solution is unsaturated, and more of the ionic solid, if available, will dissolve.
- $Q = K_{sp}$. The solution is saturated and at equilibrium.
- $Q > K_{sp}$. The solution is supersaturated, and ionic solid will precipitate.

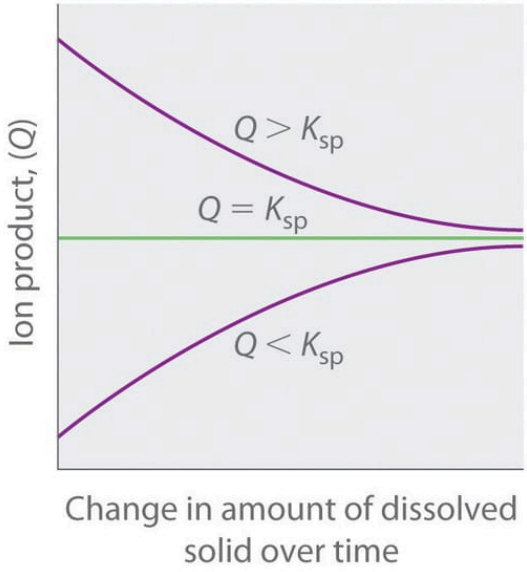


Figure 9.7.1: The Relationship between Q and K_{sp}. If Q is less than K_{sp}, the solution is unsaturated and more solid will dissolve until the system reaches equilibrium ($Q = K_{sp}$). If Q is greater than K_{sp}, the solution is supersaturated and solid will precipitate until $Q = K_{sp}$. If $Q = K_{sp}$, the rate of dissolution is equal to the rate of precipitation; the solution is saturated, and no net change in the amount of dissolved solid will occur.

The process of calculating the value of the ion product and comparing it with the magnitude of the solubility product is a straightforward way to determine whether a solution is unsaturated, saturated, or supersaturated. More important, the ion product tells chemists whether a precipitate will form when solutions of two soluble salts are mixed.

Example 9.7.3

We mentioned that barium sulfate is used in medical imaging of the gastrointestinal tract. Its solubility product is 1.08 × 10^{-10} at 25°C, so it is ideally suited for this purpose because of its low solubility when a "barium milkshake" is consumed by a patient. The pathway of the sparingly soluble salt can be easily monitored by x-rays. Will barium sulfate precipitate if 10.0 mL of 0.0020 M Na_2SO_4 is added to 100 mL of 3.2 × 10^{-4} M $BaCl_2$? Recall that NaCl is highly soluble in water.

Given: K_{sp} and volumes and concentrations of reactants

Asked for: whether precipitate will form

Strategy:

A. Write the balanced equilibrium equation for the precipitation reaction and the expression for K_{sp}.
B. Determine the concentrations of all ions in solution when the solutions are mixed and use them to calculate the ion product (Q).
C. Compare the values of Q and K_{sp} to decide whether a precipitate will form.

Solution

A The only slightly soluble salt that can be formed when these two solutions are mixed is $BaSO_4$ because NaCl is highly soluble. The equation for the precipitation of $BaSO_4$ is as follows:

$$BaSO_{4(s)} \rightleftharpoons Ba^{2+}_{(aq)} + SO^{2-}_{4(aq)}$$

The solubility product expression is as follows:

$$K_{sp} = [Ba^{2+}][SO_4{}^{2-}] = 1.08\times10^{-10}$$

B To solve this problem, we must first calculate the ion product—$Q = [Ba^{2+}][SO_4{}^{2-}]$—using the concentrations of the ions that are present after the solutions are mixed and before any reaction occurs. The concentration of Ba^{2+} when the solutions are mixed is the total number of moles of Ba^{2+} in the original 100 mL of $BaCl_2$ solution divided by the final volume (100 mL + 10.0 mL = 110 mL):

$$\text{moles } Ba^{2+} = 100 \text{ mL}\left(\frac{1 \text{ L}}{1000 \text{ mL}}\right)\left(\frac{3.2 \times 10^{-4} \text{ mol}}{1 \text{ L}}\right) = 3.2 \times 10^{-5} \text{ mol } Ba^{2+}$$

$$[Ba^{2+}] = \left(\frac{3.2 \times 10^{-5} \text{ mol } Ba^{2+}}{110 \text{ mL}}\right)\left(\frac{1000 \text{ mL}}{1 \text{ L}}\right) = 2.9 \times 10^{-4} \text{ M } Ba^{2+}$$

Similarly, the concentration of $SO_4{}^{2-}$ after mixing is the total number of moles of $SO_4{}^{2-}$ in the original 10.0 mL of Na_2SO_4 solution divided by the final volume (110 mL):

$$\text{moles } SO_4^{2-} = 10.0 \text{ mL}\left(\frac{1 \text{ L}}{1000 \text{ mL}}\right)\left(\frac{0.0020 \text{ mol}}{1 \text{ L}}\right) = 2.0 \times 10^{-5} \text{ mol } SO_4^{2-}$$

$$[SO_4^{2-}] = \left(\frac{2.0 \times 10^{-5} \text{ mol } SO_4^{2-}}{110 \text{ mL}}\right)\left(\frac{1000 \text{ mL}}{1 \text{ L}}\right) = 1.8 \times 10^{-4} \text{ M } SO_4^{2-}$$

We can now calculate Q:

$$Q = [Ba^{2+}][SO_4{}^{2-}] = (2.9\times10^{-4})(1.8\times10^{-4}) = 5.2\times10^{-8}$$

C We now compare Q with the K_{sp}. If $Q > K_{sp}$, then $BaSO_4$ will precipitate, but if $Q < K_{sp}$, it will not. Because $Q > K_{sp}$, we predict that $BaSO_4$ will precipitate when the two solutions are mixed. In fact, $BaSO_4$ will continue to precipitate until the system reaches equilibrium, which occurs when $[Ba^{2+}][SO_4{}^{2-}] = K_{sp} = 1.08 \times 10^{-10}$.

Exercise 9.7.3

The solubility product of calcium fluoride (CaF_2) is 3.45×10^{-11}. If 2.0 mL of a 0.10 M solution of NaF is added to 128 mL of a 2.0×10^{-5}M solution of $Ca(NO_3)_2$, will CaF_2 precipitate?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

The solubility product (K_{sp}) is used to calculate equilibrium concentrations of the ions in solution, whereas the ion product (Q) describes concentrations that are not necessarily at equilibrium. The equilibrium constant for a dissolution reaction, called the solubility product (K_{sp}), is a measure of the solubility of a compound. Whereas solubility is usually expressed in terms of mass of solute per 100 mL of solvent, K_{sp} is defined in terms of the molar concentrations of the component ions. In contrast, the ion product (Q) describes concentrations that are not necessarily equilibrium concentrations. Comparing Q and K_{sp} enables us to determine whether a precipitate will form when solutions of two soluble salts are mixed.

Answers

Exercise 9.7.1

4.5×10^{-5}

Exercise 9.7.2

a. 1.28×10^{-4} M
b. 3.54 mg

Exercise 9.7.3

yes ($Q = 4.7 \times 10^{-11} > K_{sp}$)

This page titled 9.7: Solubility Product Constant, Ksp is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 18.1: Solubility Product Constant, Ksp is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

9.8: Relationship Between Solubility and Ksp

Learning Objectives

- Quantitatively related K_{sp} to solubility

Considering the relation between solubility and K_{sp} is important when describing the solubility of slightly ionic compounds. However, this article discusses ionic compounds that are difficult to dissolve; they are considered "slightly soluble" or "almost insoluble." Solubility product constants (K_{sq}) are given to those solutes, and these constants can be used to find the molar solubility of the compounds that make the solute. This relationship also facilitates finding the K_{sq} of a slightly soluble solute from its solubility.

Introduction

Recall that the definition of *solubility* is the maximum possible concentration of a solute in a solution at a given temperature and pressure. We can determine the solubility product of a slightly soluble solid from that measure of its solubility at a given temperature and pressure, provided that the only significant reaction that occurs when the solid dissolves is its dissociation into solvated ions, that is, the only equilibrium involved is:

$$\mathrm{M}_p\mathrm{X}_q(s) \rightleftharpoons p\mathrm{M}^{\mathrm{m}+}(aq) + q\mathrm{X}^{\mathrm{n}-}(aq) \tag{9.8.1}$$

In this case, we calculate the solubility product by taking the solid's solubility expressed in units of moles per liter (mol/L), known as its **molar solubility**.

Calculation of K_{sp} from Equilibrium Concentrations

We began the chapter with an informal discussion of how the mineral fluorite is formed. Fluorite, $\mathrm{CaF_2}$, is a slightly soluble solid that dissolves according to the equation:

$$\mathrm{CaF_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \blacksquare(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{F^-}(aq)$$

The concentration of Ca^{2+} in a saturated solution of CaF_2 is 2.1×10^{-4} *M*; therefore, that of F^- is 4.2×10^{-4} *M*, that is, twice the concentration of $\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}$. What is the solubility product of fluorite?

Solution

First, write out the K_{sp} expression, then substitute in concentrations and solve for K_{sp}:

$$\mathrm{CaF_2\,(s) \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+}\,(aq) + 2\,F^-\,(aq)}$$

A saturated solution is a solution at equilibrium with the solid. Thus:

$$\begin{aligned} K_{\mathrm{sp}} &= [\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}][\mathrm{F^-}]^2 \\ &= (2.1 \times 10^{-4})(4.2 \times 10^{-4})^2 \\ &= 3.7 \times 10^{-11} \end{aligned}$$

As with other equilibrium constants, we do not include units with K_{sp}.

Exercise 9.8.1

In a saturated solution that is in contact with solid $Mg(OH)_2$, the concentration of Mg^{2+} is 3.7×10^{-5} *M*. What is the solubility product for $Mg(OH)_2$?

$$\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Mg^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Determination of Molar Solubility from K_{sp}

The K_{sp} of copper(I) bromide, CuBr, is 6.3×10^{-9}. Calculate the molar solubility of copper bromide.

Solution

The solubility product constant of copper(I) bromide is 6.3×10^{-9}.

The reaction is:

$$\mathrm{CuBr}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Cu^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Br^-}(aq)$$

First, write out the solubility product equilibrium constant expression:

$$K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Cu^+}][\mathrm{Br^-}]$$

Create an ICE table (as introduced in the chapter on fundamental equilibrium concepts), leaving the CuBr column empty as it is a solid and does not contribute to the K_{sp}:

	CuBr ⇌	Cu^+	+ Br^-
Initial concentration (*M*)		0	0
Change (*M*)		*x*	*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)		0 + *x* = *x*	0 + *x* = *x*

At equilibrium:

$$\begin{aligned} K_{sp} &= [\mathrm{Cu^+}][\mathrm{Br^-}] \\ 6.3 \times 10^{-9} &= (x)(x) = x^2 \\ x &= \sqrt{(6.3 \times 10^{-9})} = 7.9 \times 10^{-5} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the molar solubility of CuBr is 7.9×10^{-5} *M*.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Finding the Solubility of a Salt: https://youtu.be/98BuldrICXM

Summary

Solubility is defined as the maximum amount of solute that can be dissolved in a solvent at equilibrium. Equilibrium is the state at which the concentrations of products and reactant are constant after the reaction has taken place. The solubility product constant (K_{sp}) describes the equilibrium between a solid and its constituent ions in a solution. The value of the constant identifies the degree to which the compound can dissociate in water. The higher the K_{sp}, the more soluble the compound is. K_{sq} is defined in terms of activity rather than concentration because it is a measure of a concentration that depends on certain conditions such as temperature, pressure, and composition. It is influenced by surroundings. K_{sp} is used to describe the saturated solution of ionic compounds. (A saturated solution is in a state of equilibrium between the dissolved, dissociated, undissolved solid, and the ionic compound.)

Contributors and Attributions

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

Answers

Exercise 9.8.1

2.0×10^{-13}

This page titled 9.8: Relationship Between Solubility and Ksp is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 18.2: Relationship Between Solubility and Ksp by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.9: Common-Ion Effect in Solubility Equilibria

Learning Objectives

- Recognize common ions from various salts, acids, and bases.
- Calculate concentrations involving common ions.
- Calculate ion concentrations involving chemical equilibrium.

The common-ion effect is used to describe the effect on an equilibrium involving a substance that adds an ion that is a part of the equilibrium.

Introduction

The solubility products K_{sp}'s are equilibrium constants in hetergeneous equilibria (i.e., between two different phases). If several salts are present in a system, they all ionize in the solution. If the salts contain a common cation or anion, these salts contribute to the concentration of the common ion. Contributions from all salts must be included in the calculation of concentration of the common ion. For example, a solution containing sodium chloride and potassium chloride will have the following relationship:

$$[\mathrm{Na}^+] + [\mathrm{K}^+] = [\mathrm{Cl}^-] \tag{9.9.1}$$

Consideration of *charge balance* or *mass balance* or both leads to the same conclusion. The solubility product expression tells us that the equilibrium concentrations of the cation and the anion are inversely related. That is, as the concentration of the anion increases, the maximum concentration of the cation needed for precipitation to occur decreases—and vice versa—so that K_{sp} is constant. Consequently, the solubility of an ionic compound depends on the concentrations of other salts that contain the same ions. Adding a common cation or anion shifts a solubility equilibrium in the direction predicted by Le Chatelier's principle. As a result, the solubility of any sparingly soluble salt is almost always decreased by the presence of a soluble salt that contains a common ion. The exceptions generally involve the formation of complex ions, which is discussed later.

Common Ions

When NaCl and KCl are dissolved in the same solution, the Cl^- ions are *common* to both salts. In a system containing NaCl and KCl, the Cl^- ions are common ions.

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{NaCl} &\rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Na}^+ + \mathrm{Cl}^- \\
\mathrm{KCl} &\rightleftharpoons \mathrm{K}^+ + \mathrm{Cl}^- \\
\mathrm{CaCl_2} &\rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ca}^{2+} + 2\mathrm{Cl}^- \\
\mathrm{AlCl_3} &\rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Al}^{3+} + 3\mathrm{Cl}^- \\
\mathrm{AgCl} &\rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag}^+ + \mathrm{Cl}^-
\end{aligned}$$

For example, when AgCl is dissolved into a solution already containing NaCl (actually Na^+ and Cl^- ions), the Cl^- ions come from the ionization of both AgCl and NaCl. Thus, $[\mathrm{Cl}^-]$ differs from $[\mathrm{Ag}^+]$. The following examples show how the concentration of the common ion is calculated.

Example 9.9.1

What are $[\mathrm{Na}^+]$, $[\mathrm{Cl}^-]$, $[\mathrm{Ca}^{2+}]$, and $[\mathrm{H}^+]$ in a solution containing 0.10 M each of NaCl, $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$, and HCl?

Solution

Due to the conservation of ions, we have

$$[\mathrm{Na}^+] = [\mathrm{Ca}^{2+}] = [\mathrm{H}^+] = 0.10\ \mathrm{M}.$$

but

$$\begin{aligned}[\mathrm{Cl}^-] = &\ 0.10\ (\text{due to NaCl}) \\ &+ 0.20\ (\text{due to } \mathrm{CaCl_2}) \\ &+ 0.10\ (\text{due to HCl}) \\ = &\ 0.40\ \mathrm{M}\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 9.9.1

John poured 10.0 mL of 0.10 M NaCl, 10.0 mL of 0.10 M KOH, and 5.0 mL of 0.20 M HCl solutions together and then he made the total volume to be 100.0 mL. What is $[\mathrm{Cl}^-]$ in the final solution?

$$[\mathrm{Cl}^-] = \frac{0.1\ \mathrm{M} \times 10\ \mathrm{mL} + 0.2\ \mathrm{M} \times 5.0\ \mathrm{mL}}{100.0\ \mathrm{mL}} = 0.020\ \mathrm{M}$$

Le Châtelier's Principle states that if an equilibrium becomes unbalanced, the reaction will shift to restore the balance. If a common ion is added to a weak acid or weak base equilibrium, then the equilibrium will shift towards the reactants, in this case the weak acid or base.

Example 9.9.2

Consider the lead(II) ion concentration in this *saturated* solution of $PbCl_2$. The balanced reaction is

$$PbCl_{2(s)} \rightleftharpoons Pb^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2Cl^-_{(aq)}$$

Defining s as the concentration of dissolved lead(II) chloride, then:

$$[Pb^{2+}] = s$$

$$[Cl^-] = 2s$$

These values can be substituted into the solubility product expression, which can be solved for s:

$$\begin{aligned}K_{sp} &= [Pb^{2+}][Cl^-]^2 \\ &= s \times (2s)^2 \\ 1.7 \times 10^{-5} &= 4s^3 \\ s^3 &= \frac{1.7 \times 10^{-5}}{4} \\ &= 4.25 \times 10^{-6} \\ s &= \sqrt[3]{4.25 \times 10^{-6}} \\ &= 1.62 \times 10^{-2}\ mol\ dm^{-3}\end{aligned}$$

The concentration of lead(II) ions in the solution is 1.62 x 10^{-2} M. Consider what happens if sodium chloride is added to this saturated solution. Sodium chloride shares an ion with lead(II) chloride. The chloride ion is **common** to both of them; this is the origin of the term "common ion effect".

Look at the original equilibrium expression again:

$$PbCl_2\ (s) \rightleftharpoons Pb^{2+}\ (aq) + 2Cl^-\ (aq)$$

What happens to that equilibrium if extra chloride ions are added? According to *Le Châtelier*, the position of equilibrium will shift to counter the change, in this case, by removing the chloride ions by making extra solid lead(II) chloride.

Of course, the concentration of lead(II) ions in the solution is so small that only a tiny proportion of the extra chloride ions can be converted into solid lead(II) chloride. The lead(II) chloride becomes even *less soluble*, and the concentration of lead(II) ions in the solution *decreases*. This type of response occurs with any sparingly soluble substance: it is less soluble in a solution which contains any ion which it has in common. This is the common ion effect.

A Simple Example

If an attempt is made to dissolve some lead(II) chloride in some 0.100 M sodium chloride solution instead of in water, what is the equilibrium concentration of the lead(II) ions this time? As before, define s to be the concentration of the lead(II) ions.

$$[Pb^{2+}] = s \tag{9.9.2}$$

The calculations are different from before. This time the concentration of the chloride ions is governed by the concentration of the sodium chloride solution. The number of ions coming from the lead(II) chloride is going to be tiny compared with the 0.100 M coming from the sodium chloride solution. In calculations like this, it can be assumed that the concentration of the common ion is entirely due to the other solution. This simplifies the calculation.

So we assume:

$$[Cl^{-}] = 0.100\ M \tag{9.9.3}$$

The rest of the mathematics looks like this:

$$\begin{aligned} K_{sp} &= [Pb^{2+}][Cl^{-}]^2 \\ &= s \times (0.100)^2 \\ 1.7 \times 10^{-5} &= s \times 0.00100 \end{aligned} \tag{9.9.4}$$

therefore:

$$\begin{aligned} s &= \frac{1.7 \times 10^{-5}}{0.0100} \\ &= 1.7 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{M} \end{aligned} \tag{9.9.5}$$

Finally, compare that value with the simple saturated solution:

Original solution:

$$[Pb^{2+}] = 0.0162\ M \tag{9.9.6}$$

Solution in 0.100 M NaCl solution:

$$[Pb^{2+}] = 0.0017\ M \tag{9.9.7}$$

The concentration of the lead(II) ions has decreased by a factor of about 10. If more concentrated solutions of sodium chloride are used, the solubility decreases further.

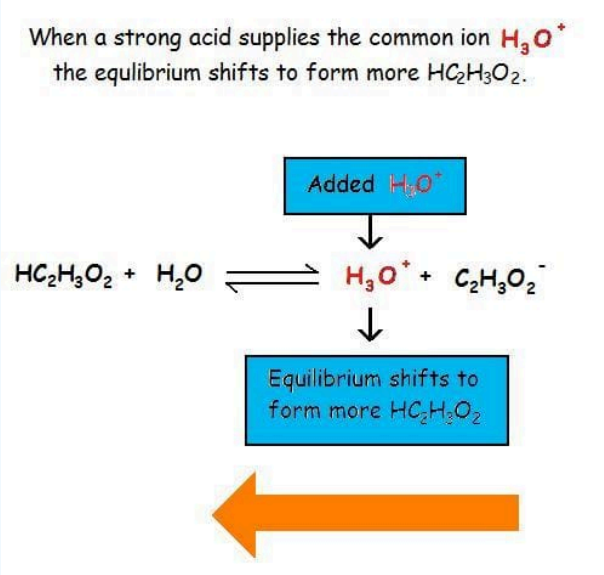
Adding a common ion to a system at equilibrium affects the equilibrium composition, but **not** the ionization constant.

Common Ion Effect with Weak Acids and Bases

Adding a common ion prevents the weak acid or weak base from ionizing as much as it would without the added common ion. The common ion effect suppresses the ionization of a weak acid by adding more of an ion that is a product of this equilibrium.

Example 9.9.3

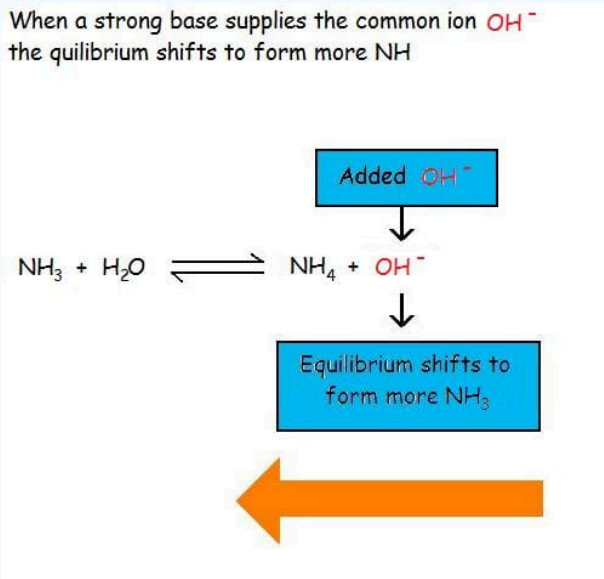
The common ion effect of H_3O^+ on the ionization of acetic acid



The common ion effect suppresses the ionization of a weak base by adding more of an ion that is a product of this equilibrium.

Example 9.9.4

Consider the common ion effect of OH^- on the ionization of ammonia



Adding the common ion of hydroxide shifts the reaction towards the left to decrease the stress (in accordance with Le Châtelier's Principle), forming more reactants. This decreases the reaction quotient, because the reaction is being pushed towards the left to reach equilibrium. The equilibrium constant, $K_b = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$, does not change. The reaction is put out of balance, or equilibrium.

$$Q_a = \frac{[NH_4^+][OH^-]}{[NH_3]}$$

At first, when more hydroxide is added, the quotient is greater than the equilibrium constant. The reaction then shifts right, causing the denominator to increase, decreasing the reaction quotient and pulling towards equilibrium and causing Q to decrease towards K.

Common Ion Effect on Solubility

Consider, for example, the effect of adding a soluble salt, such as $CaCl_2$, to a saturated solution of calcium phosphate [$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$].

$$\mathrm{Ca_3(PO_4)_2\,(s) \rightleftharpoons 3\,Ca^{2+}\,(aq) + 2\,PO_4^{3-}\,(aq)} \tag{9.9.8}$$

We have seen that the solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in water at 25°C is 1.14 × 10^{-7} M (K_{sp} = 2.07 × 10^{-33}). Thus a saturated solution of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in water contains

$$3 \times (1.14 \times 10^{-7}\,M) = 3.42 \times 10^{-7}\,M \tag{9.9.9}$$

and

$$2 \times (1.14 \times 10^{-7}\,M) = 2.28 \times 10^{-7}\,M\,{}_4\mathrm{PO}^{3-} \tag{9.9.10}$$

according to the stoichiometry shown in Equation 9.9.8 (neglecting hydrolysis to form HPO_4^{2-}). If $CaCl_2$ is added to a saturated solution of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, the Ca^{2+} ion concentration will increase such that [Ca^{2+}] > 3.42 × 10^{-7} M, making $Q > K_{sp}$. The only way the system can return to equilibrium is for the reaction in Equation 9.9.8 to proceed to the left, resulting in precipitation of $\mathrm{Ca_3(PO_4)_2}$. This will decrease the concentration of both Ca^{2+} and PO_4^{3-} until $Q = K_{sp}$.

> Adding a common ion decreases solubility, as the reaction shifts toward the left to relieve the stress of the excess product. Adding a common ion to a dissociation reaction causes the equilibrium to shift left, toward the reactants, causing precipitation.

Example 9.9.5

Consider the reaction:

$$PbCl_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Pb^{2+}(aq) + 2Cl^-(aq)$$

What happens to the solubility of $PbCl_2$(s) when 0.1 M NaCl is added?

Solution

$$K_{sp} = 1.7 \times 10^{-5}$$

$$Q_{sp} = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

Identify the common ion: Cl^-

Notice: $Q_{sp} > K_{sp}$ The addition of NaCl has caused the reaction to shift out of equilibrium because there are more dissociated ions. Typically, solving for the molarities requires the assumption that the solubility of $PbCl_2$ is equivalent to the concentration of Pb^{2+} produced because they are in a 1:1 ratio.

Because K_{sp} for the reaction is 1.7×10^{-5}, the overall reaction would be (s)(2s)^2= 1.7×10^{-5}. Solving the equation for s gives s= 1.62×10^{-2} M. The coefficient on Cl^- is 2, so it is assumed that twice as much Cl^- is produced as Pb^{2+}, hence the '2s.' The solubility equilibrium constant can be used to solve for the molarities of the ions at equilibrium.

The molarity of Cl^- added would be 0.1 M because Na^+ and Cl^- are in a 1:1 ration in the ionic salt, NaCl. Therefore, the overall molarity of Cl^- would be 2s + 0.1, with 2s referring to the contribution of the chloride ion from the dissociation of lead chloride.

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{sp} &= [Pb^{2+}][Cl^-]^2 \\ 1.8 \times 10^{-5} &= (s)(2s + 0.1)^2 \end{aligned} \tag{9.9.11}$$

$$\begin{aligned} s &= [Pb^{2+}] \\ &= 1.8 \times 10^{-3} M \\ 2s &= [Cl^-] \\ &\approx 0.1 M \end{aligned} \tag{9.9.12}$$

Notice that the molarity of Pb^{2+} is lower when NaCl is added. The equilibrium constant remains the same because of the increased concentration of the chloride ion. To simplify the reaction, it can be assumed that $[Cl^-]$ is approximately 0.1M since the formation of the chloride ion from the dissociation of lead chloride is so small. The reaction quotient for $PbCl_2$ is greater than the equilibrium constant because of the added Cl^-. This therefore shift the reaction left towards equilibrium, causing precipitation and lowering the current solubility of the reaction. Overall, the solubility of the reaction decreases with the added sodium chloride.

The common ion effect usually decreases the solubility of a sparingly soluble salt.

Example 9.9.6

Calculate the solubility of calcium phosphate [$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$] in 0.20 M $CaCl_2$.

Given: concentration of $CaCl_2$ solution

Asked for: solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in $CaCl_2$ solution

Strategy:

A. Write the balanced equilibrium equation for the dissolution of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$. Tabulate the concentrations of all species produced in solution.
B. Substitute the appropriate values into the expression for the solubility product and calculate the solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$.

Solution

A The balanced equilibrium equation is given in the following table. If we let *x* equal the solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in moles per liter, then the change in $[Ca^{2+}]$ is once again +3*x*, and the change in $[PO_4^{3-}]$ is +2*x*. We can insert these values into the ICE table.

$$Ca_3(PO_4)_{2(s)} \rightleftharpoons 3Ca^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2PO^{3-}_{4(aq)} \tag{9.9.13}$$

	$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$	$[Ca^{2+}]$	$[PO_4^{3-}]$
initial	pure solid	0.20	0
change	—	+3*x*	+2*x*
final	pure solid	0.20 + 3*x*	2*x*

B The K_{sp} expression is as follows:

$$K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}]^3[PO_4^{3-}]^2 = (0.20 + 3x)^3(2x)^2 = 2.07\times10^{-33}$$

Because $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ is a sparingly soluble salt, we can reasonably expect that $x << 0.20$. Thus $(0.20 + 3x)$ M is approximately 0.20 M, which simplifies the K_{sp} expression as follows:

$$K_{sp} = (0.20)^3(2x)^2 = 2.07 \times 10^{-33}$$
$$x^2 = 6.5 \times 10^{-32}$$
$$x = 2.5 \times 10^{-16}\ \text{M}$$

This value is the solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in 0.20 M $CaCl_2$ at 25°C. It is approximately nine orders of magnitude less than its solubility in pure water, as we would expect based on Le Chatelier's principle. With one exception, this example is identical to Example 9.9.2—here the initial $[Ca^{2+}]$ was 0.20 M rather than 0.

Exercise 9.9.4

Calculate the solubility of silver carbonate in a 0.25 M solution of sodium carbonate. The solubility of silver carbonate in pure water is 8.45×10^{-12} at 25°C.

Answer available at the end of this section.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Common Ion Effect in Solubility Products: https://youtu.be/_P3wozLs0Tc

Summary

Adding a common cation or common anion to a solution of a sparingly soluble salt shifts the solubility equilibrium in the direction predicted by Le Chatelier's principle. The solubility of the salt is almost always **decreased** by the presence of a common ion.

Contributors and Attributions

- Emmellin Tung and Mahtab Danai (UCD)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)
- Chung (Peter) Chieh (Professor Emeritus, Chemistry @ University of Waterloo)

Answers

Exercise 9.9.4

2.9×10^{-6} M (versus 1.3×10^{-4} M in pure water)

This page titled 9.9: Common-Ion Effect in Solubility Equilibria is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 18.3: Common-Ion Effect in Solubility Equilibria is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

10: CHEMICAL KINETICS

Petrucci: *General Chemistry*
Principles and Modern Applications

Template:HideTOC

- Topic hierarchy

10.1: The Rate of a Chemical Reaction
10.2: Measuring Reaction Rates
10.3: Effect of Concentration on Reaction Rates: The Rate Law
10.4: Zero-Order Reactions
10.5: First-Order Reactions
10.6: Second-Order Reactions
10.7: Reaction Kinetics: A Summary
10.8: Theoretical Models for Chemical Kinetics
10.9: The Effect of Temperature on Reaction Rates
10.10: Reaction Mechanisms
10.11: Catalysis

This page titled 10: Chemical Kinetics is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.1: The Rate of a Chemical Reaction

Learning Objectives

- To determine the reaction rate of a reaction.

Reaction rates are usually expressed as the concentration of reactant consumed or the concentration of product formed per unit time. The units are thus moles per liter per unit time, written as M/s, M/min, or M/h. To measure reaction rates, chemists initiate the reaction, measure the concentration of the reactant or product at different times as the reaction progresses, perhaps plot the concentration as a function of time on a graph, and then calculate the change in the concentration per unit time.

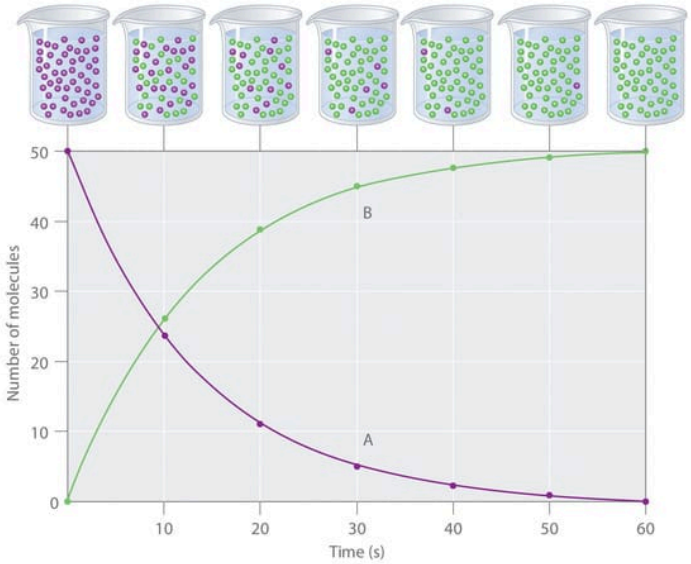


Figure 10.1.1: The Progress of a Simple Reaction (A → B). The mixture initially contains only A molecules (purple). Over time, the number of A molecules decreases and more B molecules (green) are formed (top). The graph shows the change in the number of A and B molecules in the reaction as a function of time over a 1 min period (bottom).

The progress of a simple reaction (A → B) is shown in Figure 10.1.1; the beakers are snapshots of the composition of the solution at 10 s intervals. The number of molecules of reactant (A) and product (B) are plotted as a function of time in the graph. Each point in the graph corresponds to one beaker in Figure 10.1.1. The reaction rate is the change in the concentration of either the reactant or the product over a period of time. The concentration of A decreases with time, while the concentration of B increases with time.

$$\text{rate} = \frac{\Delta[\text{B}]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} \tag{10.1.1}$$

Square brackets indicate molar concentrations, and the capital Greek delta (Δ) means “change in.” Because chemists follow the convention of expressing all reaction rates as positive numbers, however, a negative sign is inserted in front of Δ[A]/Δt to convert that expression to a positive number. The reaction rate calculated for the reaction A → B using Equation 10.1.1 is different for each interval (this is not true for every reaction, as shown below). A greater change occurs in [A] and [B] during the first 10 s interval, for example, than during the last, meaning that the reaction rate is greatest at first.

Reaction rates generally decrease with time as reactant concentrations decrease.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

A Video Discussing Average Reaction Rates. Video Link: Introduction to Chemical Reaction Kinetics(opens in new window) [youtu.be] (opens in new window)

Determining the Reaction Rate of Hydrolysis of Aspirin

We can use Equation 10.1.1 to determine the reaction rate of hydrolysis of aspirin, probably the most commonly used drug in the world (more than 25,000,000 kg are produced annually worldwide). Aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid) reacts with water (such as water in body fluids) to give salicylic acid and acetic acid, as shown in Figure 10.1.2.

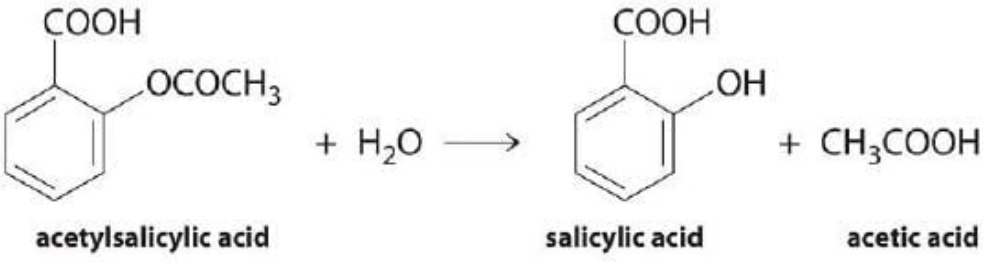


Figure 10.1.2: Hydrolysis of Aspirin reaction.

Because salicylic acid is the actual substance that relieves pain and reduces fever and inflammation, a great deal of research has focused on understanding this reaction and the factors that affect its rate. Data for the hydrolysis of a sample of aspirin are in Table 10.1.1 and are shown in the graph in Figure 10.1.3.

*Table 10.1.1: Data for Aspirin Hydrolysis in Aqueous Solution at pH 7.0 and 37°C**

Time (h)	[Aspirin] (M)	[Salicylic Acid] (M)
0	5.55×10^{-3}	0
2.0	5.51×10^{-3}	0.040×10^{-3}
5.0	5.45×10^{-3}	0.10×10^{-3}
10	5.35×10^{-3}	0.20×10^{-3}
20	5.15×10^{-3}	0.40×10^{-3}
30	4.96×10^{-3}	0.59×10^{-3}
40	4.78×10^{-3}	0.77×10^{-3}
50	4.61×10^{-3}	0.94×10^{-3}
100	3.83×10^{-3}	1.72×10^{-3}
200	2.64×10^{-3}	2.91×10^{-3}
***The reaction at pH 7.0 is very slow. It is much faster under acidic conditions, such as those found in the stomach.**		

Time (h)	[Aspirin] (M)	[Salicylic Acid] (M)
300	1.82×10^{-3}	3.73×10^{-3}
***The reaction at pH 7.0 is very slow. It is much faster under acidic conditions, such as those found in the stomach.**		

The data in Table 10.1.1 were obtained by removing samples of the reaction mixture at the indicated times and analyzing them for the concentrations of the reactant (aspirin) and one of the products (salicylic acid).

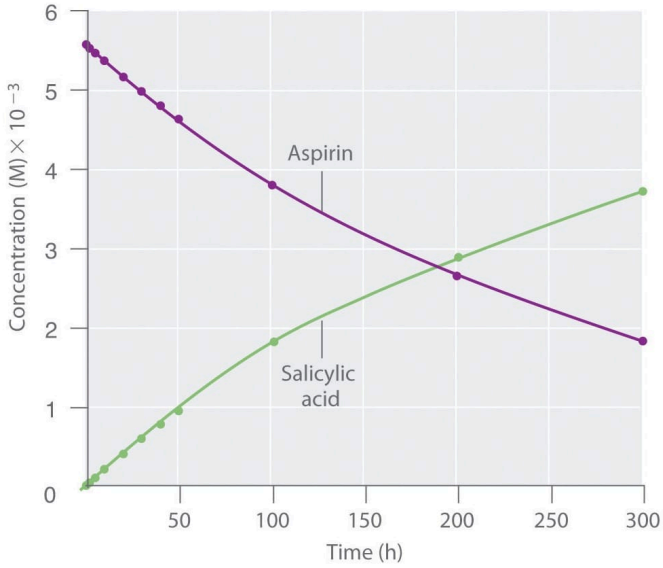


Figure 10.1.3: The Hydrolysis of Aspirin. This graph shows the concentrations of aspirin and salicylic acid as a function of time, based on the hydrolysis data in Table 14.1. The time dependence of the concentration of the other product, acetate, is not shown, but based on the stoichiometry of the reaction, it is identical to the data for salicylic acid.

Graph of concentration against time in hours. The purple line is aspirin. The green line is salicylic acid.

The **average reaction rate** for a given time interval can be calculated from the concentrations of either the reactant or one of the products at the beginning of the interval (time = t_0) and at the end of the interval (t_1). Using salicylic acid, the reaction rate for the interval between t = 0 h and t = 2.0 h (recall that change is always calculated as final minus initial) is calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{rate}_{(t=0-2.0\text{ h})} &= \frac{[\text{salicyclic acid}]_2 - [\text{salicyclic acid}]_0}{2.0\text{ h} - 0\text{ h}} \\ &= \frac{0.040 \times 10^{-3}\text{ M} - 0\text{ M}}{2.0\text{ h}} = 2.0 \times 10^{-5}\text{ M/h}\end{aligned}$$

The reaction rate can also be calculated from the concentrations of aspirin at the beginning and the end of the same interval, remembering to insert a negative sign, because its concentration decreases:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{rate}_{(t=0-2.0\text{ h})} &= -\frac{[\text{aspirin}]_2 - [\text{aspirin}]_0}{2.0\text{ h} - 0\text{ h}} \\ &= -\frac{(5.51 \times 10^{-3}\text{ M}) - (5.55 \times 10^{-3}\text{ M})}{2.0\text{ h}} \\ &= 2 \times 10^{-5}\text{ M/h}\end{aligned}$$

If the reaction rate is calculated during the last interval given in Table 10.1.1(the interval between 200 h and 300 h after the start of the reaction), the reaction rate is significantly slower than it was during the first interval (t = 0–2.0 h):

$$\begin{aligned}\text{rate}_{(t=200-300\text{h})} &= \frac{[\text{salicyclic acid}]_{300} - [\text{salicyclic acid}]_{200}}{300\text{ h} - 200\text{ h}} \\ &= -\frac{(3.73 \times 10^{-3}\text{ M}) - (2.91 \times 10^{-3}\text{ M})}{100\text{ h}} \\ &= 8.2 \times 10^{-6}\text{ M/h}\end{aligned}$$

Calculating the Reaction Rate of Fermentation of Sucrose

In the preceding example, the stoichiometric coefficients in the balanced chemical equation are the same for all reactants and products; that is, the reactants and products all have the coefficient 1. Consider a reaction in which the coefficients are not all the same, the fermentation of sucrose to ethanol and carbon dioxide:

$$\underset{\text{sucrose}}{\mathrm{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}(aq)}} + \mathrm{H_2O(l)} \rightarrow 4\mathrm{C_2H_5OH(aq)} + 4\mathrm{CO_2(g)} \tag{10.1.2}$$

The coefficients indicate that the reaction produces four molecules of ethanol and four molecules of carbon dioxide for every one molecule of sucrose consumed. As before, the reaction rate can be found from the change in the concentration of any reactant or product. In this particular case, however, a chemist would probably use the concentration of either sucrose or ethanol because gases are usually measured as volumes and, as explained in Chapter 10, the volume of CO_2 gas formed depends on the total volume of the solution being studied and the solubility of the gas in the solution, not just the concentration of sucrose. The coefficients in the balanced chemical equation tell us that the reaction rate at which ethanol is formed is always four times faster than the reaction rate at which sucrose is consumed:

$$\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{C_2H_5OH}]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{4\Delta[\text{sucrose}]}{\Delta t} \tag{10.1.3}$$

The concentration of the reactant—in this case sucrose—*decreases* with time, so the value of Δ[sucrose] is negative. Consequently, a minus sign is inserted in front of Δ[sucrose] in Equation 10.1.3 so the rate of change of the sucrose concentration is expressed as a positive value. Conversely, the ethanol concentration *increases* with time, so its rate of change is automatically expressed as a positive value.

Often the reaction rate is expressed in terms of the reactant or product with the smallest coefficient in the balanced chemical equation. The smallest coefficient in the sucrose fermentation reaction (Equation 10.1.2) corresponds to sucrose, so the reaction rate is generally defined as follows:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{sucrose}]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{C_2H_5OH}]}{\Delta t}\right) \tag{10.1.4}$$

Example 10.1.1: Decomposition Reaction I

Consider the thermal decomposition of gaseous N_2O_5 to NO_2 and O_2 via the following equation:

$$2\mathrm{N_2O_5(g)} \xrightarrow{\Delta} 4\mathrm{NO_2(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)}$$

Write expressions for the reaction rate in terms of the rates of change in the concentrations of the reactant and each product with time.

Given: balanced chemical equation

Asked for: reaction rate expressions

Strategy:

A. Choose the species in the equation that has the smallest coefficient. Then write an expression for the rate of change of that species with time.
B. For the remaining species in the equation, use molar ratios to obtain equivalent expressions for the reaction rate.

Solution

A Because O_2 has the smallest coefficient in the balanced chemical equation for the reaction, define the reaction rate as the rate of change in the concentration of O_2 and write that expression.

B The balanced chemical equation shows that 2 mol of N_2O_5 must decompose for each 1 mol of O_2 produced and that 4 mol of NO_2 are produced for every 1 mol of O_2 produced. The molar ratios of O_2 to N_2O_5 and to NO_2 are thus 1:2 and 1:4, respectively. This means that the rate of change of $[N_2O_5]$ and $[NO_2]$ must be divided by its stoichiometric coefficient to obtain equivalent expressions for the reaction rate. For example, because NO_2 is produced at four times the rate of O_2, the rate of production of NO_2 is divided by 4. The reaction rate expressions are as follows:

$$\text{rate} = \frac{\Delta[\text{O}_2]}{\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta[\text{NO}_2]}{4\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{N}_2\text{O}_5]}{2\Delta t}$$

Exercise 10.1.1: Contact Process I

The contact process is used in the manufacture of sulfuric acid. A key step in this process is the reaction of SO_2 with O_2 to produce SO_3.

$$2SO_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)} \rightarrow 2SO_{3(g)}$$

Write expressions for the reaction rate in terms of the rate of change of the concentration of each species.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Instantaneous Rates of Reaction

The **instantaneous rate** of a reaction is the reaction rate at any given point in time. As the period of time used to calculate an average rate of a reaction becomes shorter and shorter, the average rate approaches the instantaneous rate. Comparing this to calculus, the instantaneous rate of a reaction at a given time corresponds to the slope of a line tangent to the concentration-versus-time curve at that point—that is, the derivative of concentration with respect to time.

The distinction between the instantaneous and average rates of a reaction is similar to the distinction between the actual speed of a car at any given time on a trip and the average speed of the car for the entire trip. Although the car may travel for an extended period at 65 mph on an interstate highway during a long trip, there may be times when it travels only 25 mph in construction zones or 0 mph if you stop for meals or gas. The average speed on the trip may be only 50 mph, whereas the instantaneous speed on the interstate at a given moment may be 65 mph. Whether the car can be stopped in time to avoid an accident depends on its instantaneous speed, not its average speed. There are important differences between the speed of a car during a trip and the speed of a chemical reaction, however. The speed of a car may vary unpredictably over the length of a trip, and the initial part of a trip is often one of the slowest. In a chemical reaction, the initial interval typically has the fastest rate (though this is not always the case), and the reaction rate generally changes smoothly over time.

> Chemical kinetics generally focuses on one particular instantaneous rate, which is the initial reaction rate, t = 0. Initial rates are determined by measuring the reaction rate at various times and then extrapolating a plot of rate versus time to t = 0.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Example 10.1.2: Decomposition Reaction II

Using the reaction shown in Example 10.1.1, calculate the reaction rate from the following data taken at 56°C:

$$2N_2O_{5(g)} \rightarrow 4NO_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)}$$

calculate the reaction rate from the following data taken at 56°C:

Time (s)	$[N_2O_5]$ (M)	$[NO_2]$ (M)	$[O_2]$ (M)
240	0.0388	0.0314	0.00792
600	0.0197	0.0699	0.0175

Given: balanced chemical equation and concentrations at specific times

Asked for: reaction rate

Strategy:

A. Using the equations in Example 10.1.1, subtract the initial concentration of a species from its final concentration and substitute that value into the equation for that species.
B. Substitute the value for the time interval into the equation. Make sure your units are consistent.

Solution

A Calculate the reaction rate in the interval between t_1 = 240 s and t_2 = 600 s. From Example 10.1.1, the reaction rate can be evaluated using any of three expressions:

$$\text{rate} = \frac{\Delta[\text{O}_2]}{\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta[\text{NO}_2]}{4\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{N}_2\text{O}_5]}{2\Delta t}$$

Subtracting the initial concentration from the final concentration of N_2O_5 and inserting the corresponding time interval into the rate expression for N_2O_5,

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{N}_2\text{O}_5]}{2\Delta t} = -\frac{[\text{N}_2\text{O}_5]_{600} - [\text{N}_2\text{O}_5]_{240}}{2(600\ \text{s} - 240\ \text{s})}$$

B Substituting actual values into the expression,

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{0.0197\ \text{M} - 0.0388\ \text{M}}{2(360\ \text{s})} = 2.65 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{M/s}$$

Similarly, NO_2 can be used to calculate the reaction rate:

$$\text{rate} = \frac{\Delta[\text{NO}_2]}{4\Delta t} = \frac{[\text{NO}_2]_{600} - [\text{NO}_2]_{240}}{4(600\ \text{s} - 240\ \text{s})} = \frac{0.0699\ \text{M} - 0.0314\ \text{M}}{4(360\ \text{s})} = 2.67 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{M/s}$$

Allowing for experimental error, this is the same rate obtained using the data for N_2O_5. The data for O_2 can also be used:

$$\text{rate} = \frac{\Delta[\text{O}_2]}{\Delta t} = \frac{[\text{O}_2]_{600} - [\text{O}_2]_{240}}{600\ \text{s} - 240\ \text{s}} = \frac{0.0175\ \text{M} - 0.00792\ \text{M}}{360\ \text{s}} = 2.66 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{M/s}$$

Again, this is the same value obtained from the N_2O_5 and NO_2 data. Thus, the reaction rate does not depend on which reactant or product is used to measure it.

Exercise 10.1.2: Contact Process II

Using the data in the following table, calculate the reaction rate of $SO_2(g)$ with $O_2(g)$ to give $SO_3(g)$.

$$2SO_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)} \rightarrow 2SO_{3(g)}$$

calculate the reaction rate of $SO_2(g)$ with $O_2(g)$ to give $SO_3(g)$.

Time (s)	[SO_2] (M)	[O_2] (M)	[SO_3] (M)
300	0.0270	0.0500	0.0072
720	0.0194	0.0462	0.0148

Answer: available at the end of this section.

Summary

In this Module, the quantitative determination of a reaction rate is demonstrated. Reaction rates can be determined over particular time intervals or at a given point in time. A rate law describes the relationship between reactant rates and reactant concentrations. Reaction rates are reported as either the average rate over a period of time or as the instantaneous rate at a single time. Reaction rates can be determined over particular time intervals or at a given point in time.

- General definition of rate for A → B:

$$\text{rate} = \frac{\Delta[\text{B}]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t}$$

Answers

Exercise 10.1.1**: Contact Process I**

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{O}_2]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{SO}_2]}{2\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta[\text{SO}_3]}{2\Delta t}$$

Exercise 10.1.2**: Contact Process II**

9.0×10^{-6} M/s

This page titled 10.1: The Rate of a Chemical Reaction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 14.2: Reaction Rates is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

10.2: Measuring Reaction Rates

The method for determining a reaction rate is relatively straightforward. Since a reaction rate is based on change over time, it must be determined from tabulated values or found experimentally. With the obtained data, it is possible to calculate the reaction rate either algebraically or graphically. What follows is general guidance and examples of measuring the rates of a reaction. Measuring time change is easy; a stopwatch or any other time device is sufficient. However, determining the change in concentration of the reactants or products involves more complicated processes. The change of concentration in a system can generally be acquired in two ways:

1. By monitoring the depletion of reactant over time, or
2. By monitoring the formation of product over time

It does not matter whether an experimenter monitors the reagents or products because there is no effect on the overall reaction. However, since reagents decrease during reaction, and products increase, there is a sign difference between the two rates. Reagent concentration decreases as the reaction proceeds, giving a negative number for the change in concentration. The products, on the other hand, increase concentration with time, giving a positive number. Since the convention is to express the rate of reaction as a positive number, to solve a problem, set the overall rate of the reaction equal to the negative of a reagent's disappearing rate. The overall rate also depends on stoichiometric coefficients.

It is worth noting that the process of measuring the concentration can be greatly simplified by taking advantage of the different physical or chemical properties (ie: phase difference, reduction potential, etc.) of the reagents or products involved in the reaction by using the above methods. We have emphasized the importance of taking the sign of the reaction into account to get a positive reaction rate. Now, we will turn our attention to the importance of stoichiometric coefficients.

A reaction rate can be reported quite differently depending on which product or reagent selected to be monitored.

Given a reaction:

$$aA + bB \rightarrow cC + dD \tag{10.2.1}$$

the general rate for this reaction is defined as

$$rate = -\frac{1}{a}\frac{\Delta[A]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{1}{b}\frac{\Delta[B]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{c}\frac{\Delta[C]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{d}\frac{\Delta[D]}{\Delta t} \tag{10.2.2}$$

Equation 10.2.2 can also be written as:

rate of reaction = $-\frac{1}{a}$ (rate of disappearance of A)

= $-\frac{1}{b}$ (rate of disappearance of B)

= $\frac{1}{c}$ (rate of formation of C)

= $\frac{1}{d}$ (rate of formation of D)

Even though the concentrations of A, B, C and D may all change at different rates, there is only one average rate of reaction. To get this unique rate, choose any one rate and divide it by the stoichiometric coefficient. When the reaction has the formula:

$$C_{R1}R_1 + \cdots + C_{Rn}R_n \rightarrow C_{P1}P_1 + \cdots + C_{Pn}P_n \tag{10.2.3}$$

The general case of the unique average rate of reaction has the form:

$$\text{rate of reaction} = -\frac{1}{C_{R1}}\frac{\Delta[R_1]}{\Delta t} = \cdots = -\frac{1}{C_{Rn}}\frac{\Delta[R_n]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{C_{P1}}\frac{\Delta[P_1]}{\Delta t} = \cdots = \frac{1}{C_{Pn}}\frac{\Delta[P_n]}{\Delta t}$$

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Average Reaction Rates: https://youtu.be/jc6jntB7GHk

Following the Course of a Reaction

Rather than performing a whole set of initial rate experiments, one can gather information about orders of reaction by following a particular reaction from start to finish. There are two different ways this can be accomplished.

1. Samples of the mixture can be collected at intervals and titrated to determine how the concentration of one of the reagents is changing.
2. A physical property of the reaction which changes as the reaction continues can be measured: for example, the volume of gas produced.

These approaches must be considered separately.

Consider that bromoethane reacts with sodium hydroxide solution as follows:

$$CH_3CH_2Br + OH^- \rightarrow CH_3CH_2OH + Br^- \tag{10.2.4}$$

During the course of the reaction, both bromoethane and sodium hydroxide are consumed. However, it is relatively easy to measure the concentration of sodium hydroxide at any one time by performing a titration with a standard acid: for example, with hydrochloric acid of a known concentration.

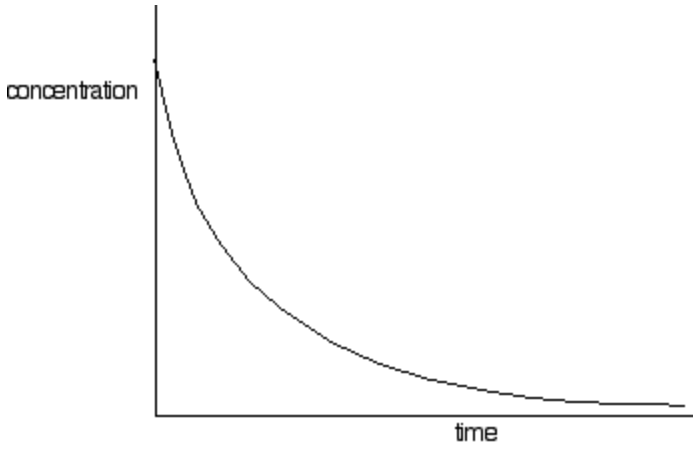
The process starts with known concentrations of sodium hydroxide and bromoethane, and it is often convenient for them to be equal. Because the reaction is 1:1, if the concentrations are equal at the start, they remain equal throughout the reaction. Samples are taken with a pipette at regular intervals during the reaction, and titrated with standard hydrochloric acid in the presence of a suitable indicator. The problem with this approach is that the reaction is still proceeding in the time required for the titration. In addition, only one titration attempt is possible, because by the time another sample is taken, the concentrations have changed.

There are two ways around this problem:

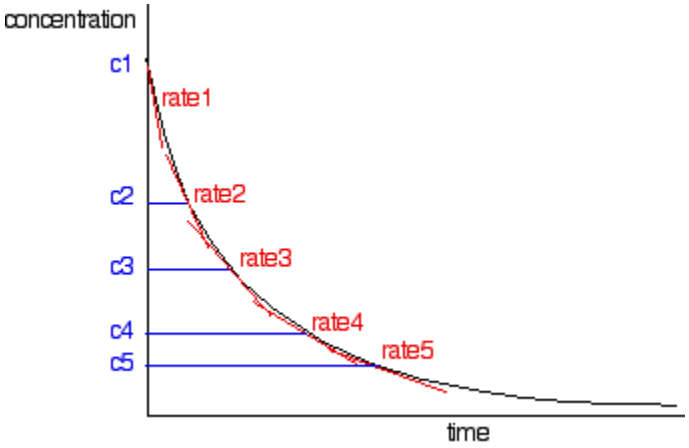
1. The reaction can be slowed by diluting it, adding the sample to a larger volume of cold water before the titration. Then the titration is performed as quickly as possible. This is most effective if the reaction is carried out above room temperature. Cooling it as well as diluting it slows it down even more.
2. If possible (and it is possible in this case) it is better to stop the reaction completely before titrating. In this case, this can be accomplished by adding the sample to a known, excess volume of standard hydrochloric acid. This consumes all the sodium hydroxide in the mixture, stopping the reaction.

At this point the resulting solution is titrated with standard sodium hydroxide solution to determine how much hydrochloric acid is left over in the mixture. This allows one to calculate how much acid was used, and thus how much sodium hydroxide must have been present in the original reaction mixture. This technique is known as a **back titration**.

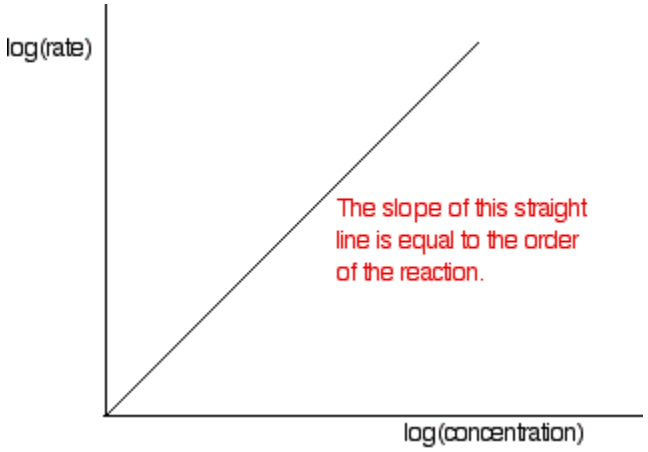
This process generates a set of values for concentration of (in this example) sodium hydroxide over time. The concentrations of bromoethane are, of course, the same as those obtained if the same concentrations of each reagent were used. These values are plotted to give a concentration-time graph, such as that below:



The rates of reaction at a number of points on the graph must be calculated; this is done by drawing tangents to the graph and measuring their slopes.



These values are then tabulated. The quickest way to proceed from here is to plot a log graph as described further up the page. All rates are converted to log(rate), and all the concentrations to log(concentration). Then, log(rate) is plotted against log(concentration). The slope of the graph is equal to the order of reaction.



In the example of the reaction between bromoethane and sodium hydroxide solution, the order is calculated to be 2. Notice that this is the overall order of the reaction, not just the order with respect to the reagent whose concentration was measured. The rate of reaction decreases because the concentrations of both of the reactants decrease.

Example 10.2.1: The course of the reaction

A familiar example is the catalytic decomposition of hydrogen peroxide (used above as an example of an initial rate experiment).

$$2H_2O_{2(aq)} \xrightarrow{MnO_{2(s)}} 2H_2O_{(l)} + O_{2(g)}$$

This time, measure the oxygen given off using a gas syringe, recording the volume of oxygen collected at regular intervals.

The practical side of this experiment is straightforward, but the calculation is not. The problem is that the volume of the product is measured, whereas the concentration of the reactants is used to find the reaction order. This means that the concentration of hydrogen peroxide remaining in the solution must be determined for each volume of oxygen recorded. This requires ideal gas law and stoichiometric calculations.

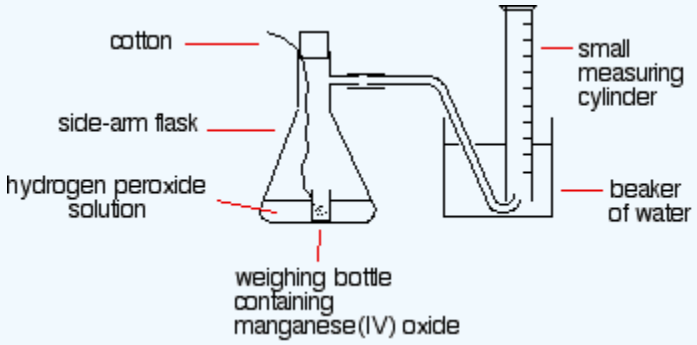
The table of concentrations and times is processed as described above.

Example 10.2.2: The catalytic decomposition of hydrogen peroxide

This is an example of measuring the initial rate of a reaction producing a gas.

$$2H_2O_{2(aq)} \xrightarrow{MnO_{2(s)}} 2H_2O_{(l)} + O_{2(g)}$$

A simple set-up for this process is given below:



The reason for the weighing bottle containing the catalyst is to avoid introducing errors at the beginning of the experiment. The catalyst must be added to the hydrogen peroxide solution without changing the volume of gas collected. If it is added to the flask using a spatula before replacing the bung, some gas might leak out before the bung is replaced. Alternatively, air might be forced into the measuring cylinder. Either would render results meaningless.

To start the reaction, the flask is shaken until the weighing bottle falls over, and then shaken further to make sure the catalyst mixes evenly with the solution. Alternatively, a special flask with a divided bottom could be used, with the catalyst in one side and the hydrogen peroxide solution in the other. The two are easily mixed by tipping the flask. Using a 100 cm^3 measuring cylinder, initially full of water, the time taken to collect a small fixed volume of gas can be accurately recorded. A small gas syringe could also be used.

To study the effect of the concentration of hydrogen peroxide on the rate, the concentration of hydrogen peroxide must be changed and everything else held constant—the temperature, the total volume of the solution, and the mass of manganese(IV) oxide. The manganese(IV) oxide must also always come from the same bottle so that its state of division is always the same.

The same apparatus can be used to determine the effects of varying the temperature, catalyst mass, or state of division due to the catalyst

Example 10.2.3: The thiosulphate-acid reaction

Mixing dilute hydrochloric acid with sodium thiosulphate solution causes the slow formation of a pale yellow precipitate of sulfur.

$$Na_2S_2O_{2(aq)} + 2HCl_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2NaCl_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} + S_{(s)} + SO_{2(g)} \tag{10.2.5}$$

A very simple, but very effective, way of measuring the time taken for a small fixed amount of precipitate to form is to stand the flask on a piece of paper with a cross drawn on it, and then look down through the solution until the cross disappears.

A known volume of sodium thiosulphate solution is placed in a flask. Then a small known volume of dilute hydrochloric acid is added, a timer is started, the flask is swirled to mix the reagents, and the flask is placed on the paper with the cross. The timer is used to determine the time for the cross to disappear. The process is repeated using a smaller volume of sodium thiosulphate, but topped up to the same original volume with water. Everything else is exactly as before.

The actual concentration of the sodium thiosulphate does not need to be known. In each case the relative concentration could be recorded. The solution with 40 cm^3 of sodium thiosulphate solution plus 10 cm^3 of water has a concentration which is 80% of the original, for example. The one with 10 cm^3 of sodium thiosulphate solution plus 40 cm^3 of water has a concentration 20% of the original.

The quantity 1/t can again be plotted as a measure of the rate, and the volume of sodium thiosulphate solution as a measure of concentration. Alternatively, relative concentrations could be plotted. In either case, the shape of the graph is the same.

The effect of temperature on this reaction can be measured by warming the sodium thiosulphate solution before adding the acid. The temperature must be measured after adding the acid, because the cold acid cools the solution slightly.This time, the temperature is changed between experiments, keeping everything else constant. To get reasonable times, a diluted version of the sodium thiosulphate solution must be used. Using the full strength, hot solution produces enough precipitate to hide the cross almost instantly.

Example 10.2.4: The Iodine Clock Reactions

There are several reactions bearing the name "iodine clock." Each produces iodine as one of the products. This is the simplest of them, because it involves the most familiar reagents.

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The reaction below is the oxidation of iodide ions by hydrogen peroxide under acidic conditions:

$$H_2O_{2(aq)} + 2I^-_{(aq)} + 2H^+ \rightarrow I_{2(aq)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} \tag{10.2.6}$$

The iodine is formed first as a pale yellow solution, darkening to orange and then dark red before dark gray solid iodine is precipitated.

Iodine reacts with starch solution to give a deep blue solution. If starch solution is added to the reaction above, as soon as the first trace of iodine is formed, the solution turns blue. This gives no useful information. However, iodine also reacts with sodium thiosulphate solution:

$$2S_2O^{2-}_{3(aq)} + I_{2(aq)} \rightarrow S_2O^{2-}_{6(aq)} + 2I^-_{(aq)} \tag{10.2.7}$$

If a very small amount of sodium thiosulphate solution is added to the reaction mixture (including the starch solution), it reacts with the iodine that is initially produced, so the iodine does not affect the starch, and there is no blue color. However, when that small amount of sodium thiosulphate is consumed, nothing inhibits further iodine produced from reacting with the starch. The mixture turns blue.

Average vs. Instantaneous Reaction Rates

Reaction rates have the general form of (change of concentration / change of time). There are two types of reaction rates. One is called the average rate of reaction, often denoted by (Δ[conc.] / Δt), while the other is referred to as the instantaneous rate of reaction, denoted as either:

$$\lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta[concentration]}{\Delta t} \tag{10.2.8}$$

or

$$\frac{d[concentration]}{dt} \tag{10.2.9}$$

The average rate of reaction, as the name suggests, is an average rate, obtained by taking the change in concentration over a time period, for example: -0.3 M / 15 minutes. This is an approximation of the reaction rate in the interval; it does not necessarily mean that the reaction has this specific rate throughout the time interval or even at any instant during that time. The instantaneous rate of reaction, on the other hand, depicts a more accurate value. The instantaneous rate of reaction is defined as the change in concentration of an infinitely small time interval, expressed as the limit or derivative expression above. Instantaneous rate can be obtained from the experimental data by first graphing the concentration of a system as function of time, and then finding the slope of the tangent line at a specific point which corresponds to a time of interest. Alternatively, experimenters can measure the change in concentration over a very small time period two or more times to get an average rate close to that of the instantaneous rate. The reaction rate for that time is determined from the slope of the tangent lines.

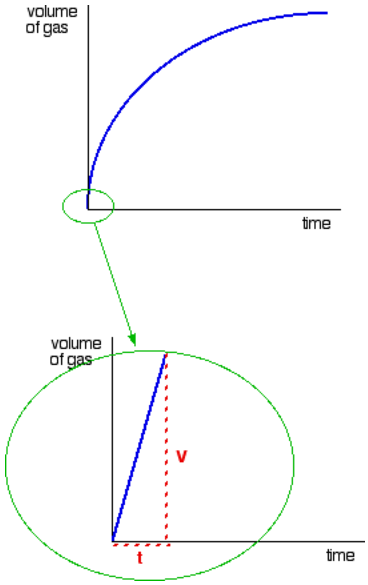
Initial Rate of Reaction

The initial rate of reaction is the rate at which the reagents are first brought together. Like the instantaneous rate mentioned above, the initial rate can be obtained either experimentally or graphically. To experimentally determine the initial rate, an experimenter must bring the reagents together and measure the reaction rate as quickly as possible. If this is not possible, the experimenter can find the initial rate graphically. To do this, he must simply find the slope of the line tangent to the reaction curve when t=0.

The simplest initial rate experiments involve measuring the time taken for some recognizable event to happen early in a reaction. This could be the time required for 5 cm^3 of gas to be produced, for a small, measurable amount of precipitate to form, or for a dramatic color change to occur. Examples of these three indicators are discussed below.

The concentration of one of the components of the reaction could be changed, holding everything else constant: the concentrations of other reactants, the total volume of the solution and the temperature. The time required for the event to occur is then measured. This process is repeated for a range of concentrations of the substance of interest. A reasonably wide range of concentrations must be measured.This process could be repeated by altering a different property.

Consider a simple example of an initial rate experiment in which a gas is produced. This might be a reaction between a metal and an acid, for example, or the catalytic decomposition of hydrogen peroxide. If volume of gas evolved is plotted against time, the first graph below results.



A measure of the rate of the reaction at any point is found by measuring the slope of the graph. The steeper the slope, the faster the rate. Because the initial rate is important, the slope at the beginning is used. In the second graph, an enlarged image of the very beginning of the first curve, the curve is approximately straight. This is only a reasonable approximation when considering an early stage in the reaction. As the reaction progresses, the curvature of the graph increases. Suppose the experiment is repeated with a different (lower) concentration of the reagent. Again, the time it takes for the same volume of gas to evolve is measured, and the initial stage of the reaction is studied.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Instantaneous Rates: https://youtu.be/GGOdoIzxvAo

Example 10.2.2

Determine the initial rate of the reaction using the table below.

Time	[A]
100	1.55
200	0.99
300	0.67
400	0.45
500	0.34
600	0.24

Solution

initial rate of reaction = $\frac{-(0-2.5)M}{(195-0)sec}$ = 0.0125 M per sec

Use the points [A]=2.43 M, t= 0 and [A]=1.55, t=100

initial rate of reaction = $-\frac{\Delta[A]}{\Delta t} = \frac{-(1.55-2.43)M}{(100-0)sec}$ = 0.0088 M per sec

References

1. Petrucci et al. General Chemistry: Principles & Modern Applications, 9th Edition. New Jersey: Prentice-Hall Inc., 2007.
2. Atkins et al. Chemical Principles: the Quest for Insight, 3rd Edition. NewYork: W.H. Freeman and Company, 2005.
3. Denisov et al. Chemical Kinetics: Fundamentals and New Developments. Amsterdam, The Netherlands: Elsevier science B.V., 2003

Contributors and Attributions

- Jessica Lin, Brenda Mai, Elizabeth Sproat, Nyssa Spector, Joslyn Wood
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

This page titled 10.2: Measuring Reaction Rates is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 14.2: Measuring Reaction Rates is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

10.3: Effect of Concentration on Reaction Rates: The Rate Law

The factors that affect the reaction rate of a chemical reaction, which may determine whether a desired product is formed. In this section, we will show you how to quantitatively determine the reaction rate.

Rate Laws

Typically, reaction rates decrease with time because reactant concentrations decrease as reactants are converted to products. Reaction rates generally increase when reactant concentrations are increased. This section examines mathematical expressions called **rate laws**, which describe the relationships between reactant rates and reactant concentrations. Rate laws are mathematical descriptions of experimentally verifiable data.

Rate laws may be written from either of two different but related perspectives. A **differential rate law** expresses the reaction rate in terms of changes in the concentration of one or more reactants (Δ[R]) over a specific time interval (Δt). In contrast, an **integrated rate law** describes the reaction rate in terms of the initial concentration ($[R]_0$) and the measured concentration of one or more reactants ([R]) after a given amount of time (t); integrated rate laws are discussed in more detail later. The integrated rate law is derived by using calculus to integrate the differential rate law. Whether using a differential rate law or integrated rate law, always make sure that the rate law gives the proper units for the reaction rate, usually moles per liter per second (M/s).

Reaction Orders

For a reaction with the general equation:

$$aA + bB \rightarrow cC + dD \tag{10.3.1}$$

the experimentally determined rate law usually has the following form:

$$\text{rate} = k[A]^m[B]^n \tag{10.3.2}$$

The proportionality constant (*k*) is called the **rate constant**, and its value is characteristic of the reaction and the reaction conditions. A given reaction has a particular rate constant value under a given set of conditions, such as temperature, pressure, and solvent; varying the temperature or the solvent usually changes the value of the rate constant. The numerical value of *k*, however, does not change as the reaction progresses under a given set of conditions.

The reaction rate thus depends on the rate constant for the given set of reaction conditions and the concentration of A and B raised to the powers *m* and *n*, respectively. The values of *m* and *n* are derived from experimental measurements of the changes in reactant concentrations over time and indicate the **reaction order**, the degree to which the reaction rate depends on the concentration of each reactant; *m* and *n* need not be integers. For example, Equation 10.3.2 tells us that Equation 10.3.1 is *m*th order in reactant A and *n*th order in reactant B. It is important to remember that *n* and *m* are not related to the stoichiometric coefficients *a* and *b* in the balanced chemical equation and must be determined experimentally. The overall reaction order is the sum of all the exponents in the rate law: *m* + *n*.

Note

Under a given set of conditions, the value of the rate constant does not change as the reaction progresses.

Although differential rate laws are generally used to describe what is occurring on a molecular level during a reaction, integrated rate laws are used to determine the reaction order and the value of the rate constant from experimental measurements. (Click the link for a presentation of the general forms for integrated rate laws.)

To illustrate how chemists interpret a differential rate law, consider the experimentally derived rate law for the hydrolysis of *t*-butyl bromide in 70% aqueous acetone. This reaction produces *t*-butanol according to the following equation:

$$(CH_3)_3CBr_{(soln)} + H_2O_{(soln)} \rightarrow (CH_3)_3COH_{(soln)} + HBr_{(soln)} \tag{10.3.3}$$

Combining the rate expression in Equation 10.3.2 with the definition of average reaction rate

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} \tag{10.3.4}$$

gives a general expression for the differential rate law:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} = k[\text{A}]^m[\text{B}]^n \tag{10.3.5}$$

Inserting the identities of the reactants into Equation 10.3.5 gives the following expression for the differential rate law for the reaction:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CBr}]}{\Delta t} = k[(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CBr}]^m[\text{H}_2\text{O}]^n \tag{10.3.6}$$

Experiments to determine the rate law for the hydrolysis of *t*-butyl bromide show that the reaction rate is directly proportional to the concentration of $(CH_3)_3CBr$ but is independent of the concentration of water. Therefore, m and n in Equation 10.3.5 are 1 and 0, respectively, and,

$$\text{rate} = k[(CH_3)_3CBr]^1[H_2O]^0 = k[(CH_3)_3CBr] \tag{10.3.7}$$

Because the exponent for the reactant is 1, the reaction is first order in $(CH_3)_3CBr$. It is zeroth order in water because the exponent for $[H_2O]$ is 0. (Recall that anything raised to the zeroth power equals 1.) Thus, the overall reaction order is 1 + 0 = 1. The reaction orders state in practical terms that doubling the concentration of $(CH_3)_3CBr$ doubles the reaction rate of the hydrolysis reaction, halving the concentration of $(CH_3)_3CBr$ halves the reaction rate, and so on. Conversely, increasing or decreasing the concentration of water has no effect on the reaction rate. (Again, when working with rate laws, there is no simple correlation between the stoichiometry of the reaction and the rate law. The values of *k*, *m*, and *n* in the rate law must be determined experimentally.) Experimental data show that *k* has the value 5.15×10^{-4} s^{-1} at 25°C. The rate constant has units of reciprocal seconds (s^{-1}) because the reaction rate is defined in units of concentration per unit time (M/s). The units of a rate constant depend on the rate law for a particular reaction.

Under conditions identical to those for the *t*-butyl bromide reaction, the experimentally derived differential rate law for the hydrolysis of methyl bromide (CH_3Br) is as follows:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{CH}_3\text{Br}]}{\Delta t} = k'[\text{CH}_3\text{Br}] \tag{10.3.8}$$

This reaction also has an overall reaction order of 1, but the rate constant in Equation 10.3.8 is approximately 10^6 times smaller than that for *t*-butyl bromide. Thus, methyl bromide hydrolyzes about 1 million times more slowly than *t*-butyl bromide, and this information tells chemists how the reactions differ on a molecular level.

Frequently, changes in reaction conditions also produce changes in a rate law. In fact, chemists often alter reaction conditions to study the mechanics of a reaction. For example, when *t*-butyl bromide is hydrolyzed in an aqueous acetone solution containing OH^- ions rather than in aqueous acetone alone, the differential rate law for the hydrolysis reaction does not change. For methyl bromide, in contrast, the differential rate law becomes rate $= k''[CH_3Br][OH^-]$, with an overall reaction order of 2. Although the two reactions proceed similarly in neutral solution, they proceed very differently in the presence of a base, providing clues as to how the reactions differ on a molecular level.

Note

Differential rate laws are generally used to describe what is occurring on a molecular level during a reaction, whereas integrated rate laws are used for determining the reaction order and the value of the rate constant from experimental measurements.

Example 10.3.1

Below are three reactions and their experimentally determined differential rate laws. For each reaction, give the units of the rate constant, give the reaction order with respect to each reactant, give the overall reaction order, and predict what happens to the reaction rate when the concentration of the first species in each chemical equation is doubled.

1. $2\mathrm{HI(g)} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Pt}} \mathrm{H_2(g)} + \mathrm{I_2(g)}\ \text{rate} = -\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{HI}]}{\Delta t}\right) = k[\mathrm{HI}]^2$
2. $2\mathrm{N_2O(g)} \xrightarrow{\Delta} 2\mathrm{N_2(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)}\ \text{rate} = -\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{N_2O}]}{\Delta t}\right) = k$
3. $\text{cyclopropane(g)} \rightarrow \text{propane(g)}\ \text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{cyclopropane}]}{\Delta t} = k[\text{cyclopropane}]$

Given: balanced chemical equations and differential rate laws

Asked for: units of rate constant, reaction orders, and effect of doubling reactant concentration

Strategy:

A. Express the reaction rate as moles per liter per second [mol/(L·s), or M/s]. Then determine the units of each chemical species in the rate law. Divide the units for the reaction rate by the units for all species in the rate law to obtain the units for the rate constant.
B. Identify the exponent of each species in the rate law to determine the reaction order with respect to that species. Add all exponents to obtain the overall reaction order.
C. Use the mathematical relationships as expressed in the rate law to determine the effect of doubling the concentration of a single species on the reaction rate.

Solution

1. **A** $[\mathrm{HI}]^2$ will give units of (moles per liter)^2. For the reaction rate to have units of moles per liter per second, the rate constant must have reciprocal units [1/(M·s)]:

$$k\mathrm{M}^2 = \frac{\mathrm{M}}{\mathrm{s}}k = \frac{\mathrm{M/s}}{\mathrm{M}^2} = \frac{1}{\mathrm{M}\cdot\mathrm{s}} = \mathrm{M}^{-1}\cdot\mathrm{s}^{-1}$$

B The exponent in the rate law is 2, so the reaction is second order in HI. Because HI is the only reactant and the only species that appears in the rate law, the reaction is also second order overall.

C If the concentration of HI is doubled, the reaction rate will increase from $k[\mathrm{HI}]_0^2$ to $k(2[\mathrm{HI}])_0^2 = 4k[\mathrm{HI}]_0^2$. The reaction rate will therefore quadruple.

2. **A** Because no concentration term appears in the rate law, the rate constant must have M/s units for the reaction rate to have M/s units.

B The rate law tells us that the reaction rate is constant and independent of the N_2O concentration. That is, the reaction is zeroth order in N_2O and zeroth order overall.

C Because the reaction rate is independent of the N_2O concentration, doubling the concentration will have no effect on the reaction rate.

3. **A** The rate law contains only one concentration term raised to the first power. Hence the rate constant must have units of reciprocal seconds (s^{-1}) to have units of moles per liter per second for the reaction rate: $M\cdot s^{-1} = M/s$.

B The only concentration in the rate law is that of cyclopropane, and its exponent is 1. This means that the reaction is first order in cyclopropane. Cyclopropane is the only species that appears in the rate law, so the reaction is also first order overall.

C Doubling the initial cyclopropane concentration will increase the reaction rate from k[cyclopropane]$_0$ to $2k$[cyclopropane]$_0$. This doubles the reaction rate.

Exercise 10.3.1

Given the following two reactions and their experimentally determined differential rate laws: determine the units of the rate constant if time is in seconds, determine the reaction order with respect to each reactant, give the overall reaction order, and predict what will happen to the reaction rate when the concentration of the first species in each equation is doubled.

a.

$$\mathrm{CH_3N{=}NCH_3(g) \rightarrow C_2H_6(g) + N_2(g)} \tag{10.3.9}$$

with

$$\mathrm{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{CH_3N{=}NCH_3}]}{\Delta t} = k[\mathrm{CH_3N{=}NCH_3}] \tag{10.3.10}$$

b.

$$\mathrm{2NO_2(g) + F_2(g) \rightarrow 2NO_2F(g)} \tag{10.3.11}$$

with

$$\mathrm{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{F_2}]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{NO_2}]}{\Delta t}\right) = k[\mathrm{NO_2}][\mathrm{F_2}] \tag{10.3.12}$$

Answer

a. s^{-1}; first order in $CH_3N{=}NCH_3$; first order overall; doubling [$CH_3N{=}NCH_3$] will double the reaction rate.

b. $M^{-1}{\cdot}s^{-1}$; first order in NO_2, first order in F_2; second order overall; doubling [NO_2] will double the reaction rate.

Methods of Initial Rates

The number of fundamentally different mechanisms (sets of steps in a reaction) is actually rather small compared to the large number of chemical reactions that can occur. Thus understanding **reaction mechanisms** can simplify what might seem to be a confusing variety of chemical reactions. The first step in discovering the reaction mechanism is to determine the reaction's rate law. This can be done by designing experiments that measure the concentration(s) of one or more reactants or products as a function of time. For the reaction $A + B \rightarrow products$, for example, we need to determine k and the exponents m and n in the following equation:

$$\mathrm{rate} = k[A]^m[B]^n \tag{10.3.13}$$

To do this, we might keep the initial concentration of B constant while varying the initial concentration of A and calculating the initial reaction rate. This information would permit us to deduce the reaction order with respect to A. Similarly, we could determine the reaction order with respect to B by studying the initial reaction rate when the initial concentration of A is kept constant while the initial concentration of B is varied. In earlier examples, we determined the reaction order with respect to a given reactant by comparing the different rates obtained when only the concentration of the reactant in question was changed. An alternative way of determining reaction orders is to set up a proportion using the rate laws for two different experiments. Rate data for a hypothetical reaction of the type $A + B \rightarrow products$ are given in Table 10.3.1.

Table 10.3.1*: Rate Data for a Hypothetical Reaction of the Form* $A + B \rightarrow products$

Experiment	[A] (M)	[B] (M)	Initial Rate (M/min)
1	0.50	0.50	8.5×10^{-3}
2	0.75	0.50	19×10^{-3}
3	1.00	0.50	34×10^{-3}
4	0.50	0.75	8.5×10^{-3}
5	0.50	1.00	8.5×10^{-3}

The general rate law for the reaction is given in Equation 10.3.13. We can obtain *m* or *n* directly by using a proportion of the rate laws for two experiments in which the concentration of one reactant is the same, such as Experiments 1 and 3 in Table 10.3.1.

$$\frac{\text{rate}_1}{\text{rate}_3} = \frac{k[\text{A}_1]^m[\text{B}_1]^n}{k[\text{A}_3]^m[\text{B}_3]^n} \tag{10.3.14}$$

Inserting the appropriate values from Table 10.3.1,

$$\frac{8.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M/min}}{34 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M/min}} = \frac{k[0.50\ \text{M}]^m[0.50\ \text{M}]^n}{k[1.00\ \text{M}]^m[0.50\ \text{M}]^n} \tag{10.3.15}$$

Because 1.00 to any power is 1, $[1.00\ \text{M}]^m = 1.00\ \text{M}$. We can cancel like terms to give $0.25 = [0.50]^m$, which can also be written as $1/4 = [1/2]^m$. Thus we can conclude that $m = 2$ and that the reaction is second order in A. By selecting two experiments in which the concentration of B is the same, we were able to solve for *m*.

Conversely, by selecting two experiments in which the concentration of A is the same (e.g., Experiments 5 and 1), we can solve for *n*.

$$\frac{\text{rate}_1}{\text{rate}_5} = \frac{k[\text{A}_1]^m[\text{B}_1]^n}{k[\text{A}_5]^m[\text{B}_5]^n}$$

Substituting the appropriate values from Table 10.3.1,

$$\frac{8.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M/min}}{8.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M/min}} = \frac{k[0.50\ \text{M}]^m[0.50\ \text{M}]^n}{k[0.50\ \text{M}]^m[1.00\ \text{M}]^n} \tag{10.3.16}$$

Canceling leaves $1.0 = [0.50]^n$, which gives $n = 0$; that is, the reaction is zeroth order in B. The experimentally determined rate law is therefore

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{A}]^2[\text{B}]^0 = k[\text{A}]^2$$

We can now calculate the rate constant by inserting the data from any row of Table 10.3.1 into the experimentally determined rate law and solving for k. Using Experiment 2, we obtain

$$19 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M/min} = k(0.75\ \text{M})^2$$

$$3.4 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{M}^{-1}\cdot\text{min}^{-1} = \text{k}$$

You should verify that using data from any other row of ***Table*** 10.3.1 gives the same rate constant. This must be true as long as the experimental conditions, such as temperature and solvent, are the same.

Example 10.3.2

Nitric oxide is produced in the body by several different enzymes and acts as a signal that controls blood pressure, long-term memory, and other critical functions. The major route for removing NO from biological fluids is via reaction with O_2 to give NO_2, which then reacts rapidly with water to give nitrous acid and nitric acid:

$$2NO + O_2 \longrightarrow 2NO_2 \xrightarrow{H_2O} HNO_2 + HNO_3$$

These reactions are important in maintaining steady levels of NO. The following table lists kinetics data for the reaction of NO with O_2 at 25°C:

$$2NO(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2NO_2(g) \tag{10.3.17}$$

Determine the rate law for the reaction and calculate the rate constant.

Experiment	$[NO]_0$ (M)	$[O_2]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/s)
1	0.0235	0.0125	7.98×10^{-3}
2	0.0235	0.0250	15.9×10^{-3}
3	0.0470	0.0125	32.0×10^{-3}
4	0.0470	0.0250	63.5×10^{-3}

Given: balanced chemical equation, initial concentrations, and initial rates

Asked for: rate law and rate constant

Strategy:

A. Compare the changes in initial concentrations with the corresponding changes in rates of reaction to determine the reaction order for each species. Write the rate law for the reaction.
B. Using data from any experiment, substitute appropriate values into the rate law. Solve the rate equation for *k*.

Solution

A Comparing Experiments 1 and 2 shows that as $[O_2]$ is doubled at a constant value of $[NO_2]$, the reaction rate approximately doubles. Thus the reaction rate is proportional to $[O_2]^1$, so the reaction is first order in O_2. Comparing Experiments 1 and 3 shows that the reaction rate essentially quadruples when [NO] is doubled and $[O_2]$ is held constant. That is, the reaction rate is proportional to $[NO]^2$, which indicates that the reaction is second order in NO. Using these relationships, we can write the rate law for the reaction:

$$\text{rate} = k[NO]^2[O_2]$$

B The data in any row can be used to calculate the rate constant. Using Experiment 1, for example, gives

$$k = \frac{\text{rate}}{[NO]^2[O_2]} = \frac{7.98 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M/s}}{(0.0235\ \text{M})^2(0.0125\ \text{M})} = 1.16 \times 10^3\ \text{M}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \tag{10.3.18}$$

Alternatively, using Experiment 2 gives

$$k = \frac{\text{rate}}{[NO]^2[O_2]} = \frac{15.9 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M/s}}{(0.0235\ \text{M})^2(0.0250\ \text{M})} = 1.15 \times 10^3\ \text{M}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \tag{10.3.19}$$

The difference is minor and associated with significant digits and likely experimental error in making the table.

The overall reaction order $(m + n) = 3$, so this is a third-order reaction whose rate is determined by three reactants. The units of the rate constant become more complex as the overall reaction order increases.

Exercise 10.3.2

The peroxydisulfate ion ($S_2O_8^{2-}$) is a potent oxidizing agent that reacts rapidly with iodide ion in water:

$$S_2O^{2-}_{8(aq)} + 3I^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2SO^{2-}_{4(aq)} + I^-_{3(aq)} \tag{10.3.20}$$

The following table lists kinetics data for this reaction at 25°C. Determine the rate law and calculate the rate constant.

Experiment	$[S_2O_8^{2-}]_0$ (M)	$[I^-]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/s)
1	0.27	0.38	2.05
2	0.40	0.38	3.06
3	0.40	0.22	1.76

Answer rate = $k[S_2O_8^{2-}][I^-]$; $k = 20\ M^{-1}{\cdot}s^{-1}$

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Initial Rates and Rate Law Expressions: https://youtu.be/VZl5dipsCEQ

Summary

The rate law for a reaction is a mathematical relationship between the reaction rate and the concentrations of species in solution. Rate laws can be expressed either as a differential rate law, describing the change in reactant or product concentrations as a function of time, or as an integrated rate law, describing the actual concentrations of reactants or products as a function of time. The rate constant (k) of a rate law is a constant of proportionality between the reaction rate and the reactant concentration. The exponent to which a concentration is raised in a rate law indicates the reaction order, the degree to which the reaction rate depends on the concentration of a particular reactant.

This page titled 10.3: Effect of Concentration on Reaction Rates: The Rate Law is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

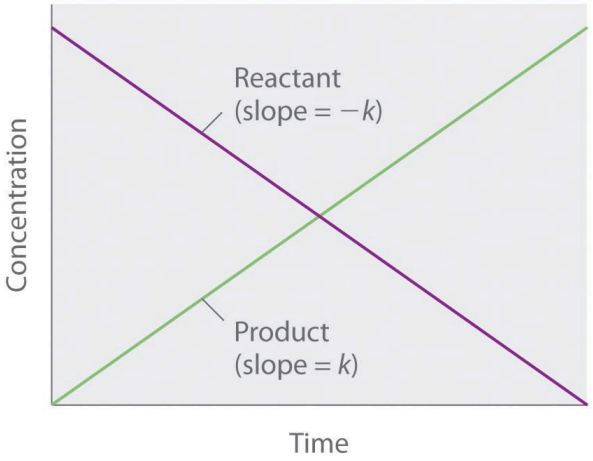
- 14.3: Effect of Concentration on Reaction Rates: The Rate Law is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

10.4: Zero-Order Reactions

A **zeroth-order reaction** is one whose rate is independent of concentration; its differential rate law is rate = *k*. We refer to these reactions as zeroth order because we could also write their rate in a form such that the exponent of the reactant in the rate law is 0:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} = k[\text{reactant}]^0 = k(1) = k \tag{10.4.1}$$

Because rate is independent of reactant concentration, a graph of the concentration of any reactant as a function of time is a straight line with a slope of –*k*. The value of *k* is negative because the concentration of the reactant decreases with time. Conversely, a graph of the concentration of any product as a function of time is a straight line with a slope of *k*, a positive value.



The graph of a zeroth-order reaction. The change in concentration of reactant and product with time produces a straight line.

The integrated rate law for a zeroth-order reaction also produces a straight line and has the general form

$$[A] = [A]_0 - kt \tag{10.4.2}$$

where $[A]_0$ is the initial concentration of reactant A. Equation 10.4.2 has the form of the algebraic equation for a straight line, *y* = *mx* + *b*, with *y* = [A], *mx* = –*kt*, and *b* = $[A]_0$.) In a zeroth-order reaction, the rate constant must have the same units as the reaction rate, typically moles per liter per second.

Although it may seem counterintuitive for the reaction rate to be independent of the reactant concentration(s), such reactions are rather common. They occur most often when the reaction rate is determined by available surface area. An example is the decomposition of N_2O on a platinum (Pt) surface to produce N_2 and O_2, which occurs at temperatures ranging from 200°C to 400°C:

$$2\text{N}_2\text{O(g)} \xrightarrow{\text{Pt}} 2\text{N}_2\text{(g)} + \text{O}_2\text{(g)} \tag{10.4.3}$$

Without a platinum surface, the reaction requires temperatures greater than 700°C, but between 200°C and 400°C, the only factor that determines how rapidly N_2O decomposes is the amount of Pt surface available (not the amount of Pt). As long as there is enough N_2O to react with the entire Pt surface, doubling or quadrupling the N_2O concentration will have no effect on the reaction rate. At very low concentrations of N_2O, where there are not enough molecules present to occupy the entire available Pt surface, the reaction rate is dependent on the N_2O concentration. The reaction rate is as follows:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\Delta[\text{N}_2\text{O}]}{\Delta t}\right) = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\Delta[\text{N}_2]}{\Delta t}\right) = \frac{\Delta[\text{O}_2]}{\Delta t} = k[\text{N}_2\text{O}]^0 = k \tag{10.4.4}$$

Thus the rate at which N_2O is consumed and the rates at which N_2 and O_2 are produced are independent of concentration. As shown in Figure 10.4.1, the change in the concentrations of all species with time is linear. Most important, the exponent (0)

corresponding to the N_2O concentration in the experimentally derived rate law is not the same as the reactant's stoichiometric coefficient in the balanced chemical equation (2). For this reaction, as for all others, the rate law must be determined experimentally.

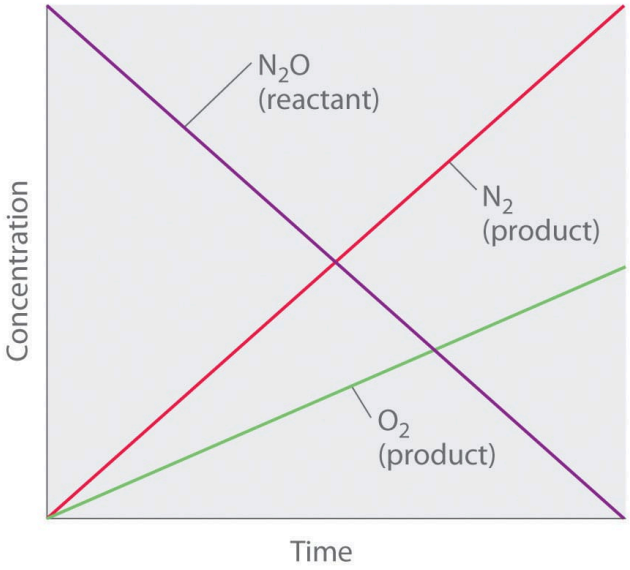


Figure 10.4.1**:** *A Zeroth-Order Reaction. This graph shows the concentrations of reactants and products versus time for the zeroth-order catalyzed decomposition of N_2O to N_2 and O_2 on a Pt surface. The change in the concentrations of all species with time is linear.*

A zeroth-order reaction that takes place in the human liver is the oxidation of ethanol (from alcoholic beverages) to acetaldehyde, catalyzed by the **enzyme** alcohol dehydrogenase. At high ethanol concentrations, this reaction is also a zeroth-order reaction. The overall reaction equation is

$$CH_3CH_2OH + NAD^+ \xrightarrow{\text{alcohol dehydrogenase}} CH_3\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}H + NADH + H^+$$

Figure 10.4.2

where NAD^+ (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide) and NADH (reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide) are the oxidized and reduced forms, respectively, of a species used by all organisms to transport electrons. When an alcoholic beverage is consumed, the ethanol is rapidly absorbed into the blood. Its concentration then decreases at a constant rate until it reaches zero (part (a) in Figure 10.4.3). An average 70 kg person typically takes about 2.5 h to oxidize the 15 mL of ethanol contained in a single 12 oz can of beer, a 5 oz glass of wine, or a shot of distilled spirits (such as whiskey or brandy). The actual rate, however, varies a great deal from person to person, depending on body size and the amount of alcohol dehydrogenase in the liver. The reaction rate does not increase if a greater quantity of alcohol is consumed over the same period of time because the reaction rate is determined only by the amount of enzyme present in the liver. Contrary to popular belief, the caffeine in coffee is ineffective at catalyzing the oxidation of ethanol. When the ethanol has been completely oxidized and its concentration drops to essentially zero, the rate of oxidation also drops rapidly (part (b) in Figure 10.4.3).

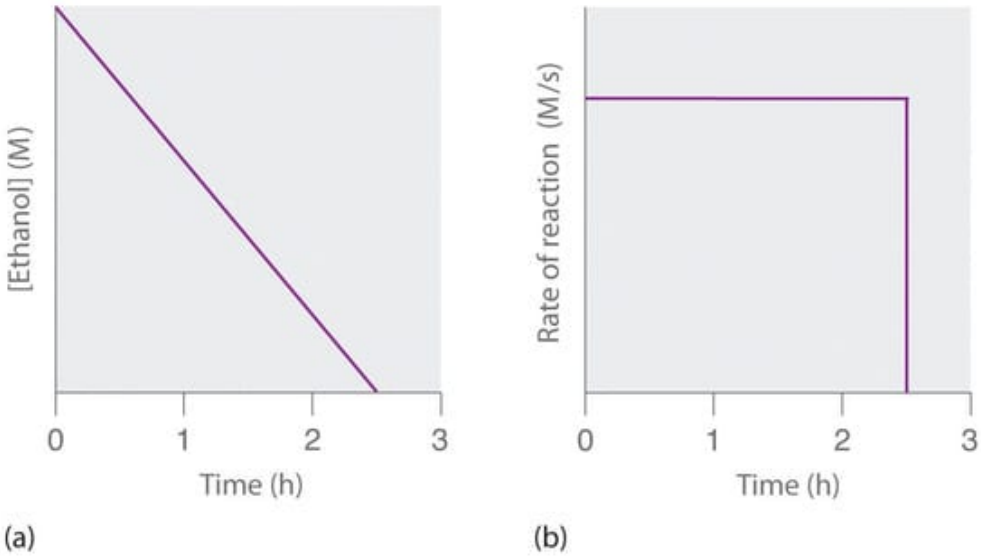


Figure 10.4.3: The Catalyzed Oxidation of Ethanol *(a) The concentration of ethanol in human blood decreases linearly with time, which is typical of a zeroth-order reaction. (b) The rate at which ethanol is oxidized is constant until the ethanol concentration reaches essentially zero, at which point the reaction rate drops to zero.*

These examples illustrate two important points:

1. *In a zeroth-order reaction, the reaction rate does not depend on the reactant concentration.*
2. *A linear change in concentration with time is a clear indication of a zeroth-order reaction.*

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Zero-Order Reactions: https://youtu.be/64i7uYsVsSs

This page titled 10.4: Zero-Order Reactions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 14.4: Zero-Order Reactions is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

10.5: First-Order Reactions

In a **first-order reaction**, the reaction rate is directly proportional to the concentration of one of the reactants. First-order reactions often have the general form A → products. The differential rate for a first-order reaction is as follows:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} = k[\text{A}] \tag{10.5.1}$$

If the concentration of A is doubled, the reaction rate doubles; if the concentration of A is increased by a factor of 10, the reaction rate increases by a factor of 10, and so forth. Because the units of the reaction rate are always moles per liter per second, the units of a first-order rate constant are reciprocal seconds (s^{-1}).

The integrated rate law for a first-order reaction can be written in two different ways: one using exponents and one using logarithms. The exponential form is as follows:

$$[A] = [A]_0 e^{-kt} \tag{10.5.2}$$

where $[A]_0$ is the initial concentration of reactant A at $t = 0$; k is the rate constant; and e is the base of the natural logarithms, which has the value 2.718 to three decimal places. Recall that an integrated rate law gives the relationship between reactant concentration and time. Equation 10.5.2 predicts that the concentration of A will decrease in a smooth exponential curve over time. By taking the natural logarithm of each side of Equation 10.5.2 and rearranging, we obtain an alternative logarithmic expression of the relationship between the concentration of A and t:

$$\ln[A] = \ln [A]_0 - kt \tag{10.5.3}$$

Because Equation 10.5.3 has the form of the algebraic equation for a straight line, $y = mx + b$, with $y = \ln[A]$ and $b = \ln[A]_0$, a plot of $\ln[A]$ versus t for a first-order reaction should give a straight line with a slope of $-k$ and an intercept of $\ln[A]_0$. Either the differential rate law (Equation 10.5.1) or the integrated rate law (Equation 10.5.3) can be used to determine whether a particular reaction is first order.

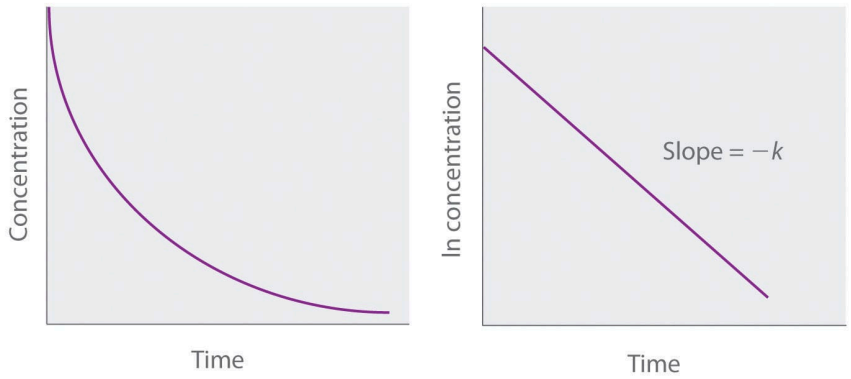
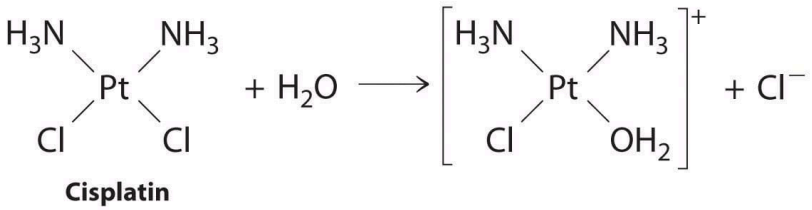


Figure 10.5.1: Graphs of a first-order reaction. The expected shapes of the curves for plots of reactant concentration versus time (top) and the natural logarithm of reactant concentration versus time (bottom) for a first-order reaction.

First-order reactions are very common. We have already encountered two examples of first-order reactions: the hydrolysis of aspirin and the reaction of *t*-butyl bromide with water to give *t*-butanol. Another reaction that exhibits apparent first-order kinetics is the hydrolysis of the anticancer drug cisplatin.

Cisplatin, the first “inorganic” anticancer drug to be discovered, is unique in its ability to cause complete remission of the relatively rare, but deadly cancers of the reproductive organs in young adults. The structures of cisplatin and its hydrolysis product are as follows:



Cisplatin

Figure 10.5.2

Both platinum compounds have four groups arranged in a square plane around a Pt(II) ion. The reaction shown in Figure 10.5.1 is important because cisplatin, the form in which the drug is administered, is not the form in which the drug is active. Instead, at least one chloride ion must be replaced by water to produce a species that reacts with deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) to prevent cell division and tumor growth. Consequently, the kinetics of the reaction in Figure 10.5.1 have been studied extensively to find ways of maximizing the concentration of the active species.

Note

If a plot of reactant concentration versus time is not linear but a plot of the natural logarithm of reactant concentration versus time is linear, then the reaction is first order.

The rate law and reaction order of the hydrolysis of cisplatin are determined from experimental data, such as those displayed in Table 10.5.1. The table lists initial rate data for four experiments in which the reaction was run at pH 7.0 and 25°C but with different initial concentrations of cisplatin. Because the reaction rate increases with increasing cisplatin concentration, we know this cannot be a zeroth-order reaction. Comparing Experiments 1 and 2 in Table 10.5.1 shows that the reaction rate doubles [$(1.8 \times 10^{-5}$ M/min) ÷ $(9.0 \times 10^{-6}$ M/min) = 2.0] when the concentration of cisplatin is doubled (from 0.0060 M to 0.012 M). Similarly, comparing Experiments 1 and 4 shows that the reaction rate increases by a factor of 5 [$(4.5 \times 10^{-5}$ M/min) ÷ $(9.0 \times 10^{-6}$ M/min) = 5.0] when the concentration of cisplatin is increased by a factor of 5 (from 0.0060 M to 0.030 M). Because the reaction rate is directly proportional to the concentration of the reactant, the exponent of the cisplatin concentration in the rate law must be 1, so the rate law is rate = k[cisplatin]^1. Thus the reaction is first order. Knowing this, we can calculate the rate constant using the differential rate law for a first-order reaction and the data in any row of Table 10.5.1. For example, substituting the values for Experiment 3 into Equation 10.5.1,

$$3.6 \times 10^{-5} \text{ M/min} = k(0.024 \text{ M})$$

$$1.5 \times 10^{-3} \text{ min}^{-1} = k$$

Table 10.5.1: Rates of Hydrolysis of Cisplatin as a Function of Concentration at pH 7.0 and 25°C

Experiment	$[\text{Cisplatin}]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/min)
1	0.0060	9.0×10^{-6}
2	0.012	1.8×10^{-5}
3	0.024	3.6×10^{-5}
4	0.030	4.5×10^{-5}

Knowing the rate constant for the hydrolysis of cisplatin and the rate constants for subsequent reactions that produce species that are highly toxic enables hospital pharmacists to provide patients with solutions that contain only the desired form of the drug.

Example 10.5.1

At high temperatures, ethyl chloride produces HCl and ethylene by the following reaction:

$$CH_3CH_2Cl(g) \xrightarrow{\Delta} HCl(g) + C_2H_4(g)$$

Using the rate data for the reaction at 650°C presented in the following table, calculate the reaction order with respect to the concentration of ethyl chloride and determine the rate constant for the reaction.

Experiment	$[CH_3CH_2Cl]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/s)
1	0.010	1.6×10^{-8}
2	0.015	2.4×10^{-8}
3	0.030	4.8×10^{-8}
4	0.040	6.4×10^{-8}

Given: balanced chemical equation, initial concentrations of reactant, and initial rates of reaction

Asked for: reaction order and rate constant

Strategy:

A. Compare the data from two experiments to determine the effect on the reaction rate of changing the concentration of a species.

B. Compare the observed effect with behaviors characteristic of zeroth- and first-order reactions to determine the reaction order. Write the rate law for the reaction.

C Use measured concentrations and rate data from any of the experiments to find the rate constant.

Solution

The reaction order with respect to ethyl chloride is determined by examining the effect of changes in the ethyl chloride concentration on the reaction rate.

A Comparing Experiments 2 and 3 shows that doubling the concentration doubles the reaction rate, so the reaction rate is proportional to $[CH_3CH_2Cl]$. Similarly, comparing Experiments 1 and 4 shows that quadrupling the concentration quadruples the reaction rate, again indicating that the reaction rate is directly proportional to $[CH_3CH_2Cl]$.

B This behavior is characteristic of a first-order reaction, for which the rate law is rate = $k[CH_3CH_2Cl]$.

C We can calculate the rate constant (k) using any row in the table. Selecting Experiment 1 gives the following:

$$1.60 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{M/s} = k(0.010\ \text{M})$$

$$1.6 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{s}^{-1} = k$$

Exercise 10.5.1

Sulfuryl chloride (SO_2Cl_2) decomposes to SO_2 and Cl_2 by the following reaction:

$$SO_2Cl_2(g) \rightarrow SO_2(g) + Cl_2(g)$$

Data for the reaction at 320°C are listed in the following table. Calculate the reaction order with regard to sulfuryl chloride and determine the rate constant for the reaction.

Experiment	$[SO_2Cl_2]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/s)

1	0.0050	1.10×10^{-7}
2	0.0075	1.65×10^{-7}
3	0.0100	2.20×10^{-7}
4	0.0125	2.75×10^{-7}

Answer first order; $k = 2.2 \times 10^{-5}\ s^{-1}$

We can also use the integrated rate law to determine the reaction rate for the hydrolysis of cisplatin. To do this, we examine the change in the concentration of the reactant or the product as a function of time at a single initial cisplatin concentration. Part (a) in Figure 10.5.3 shows plots for a solution that originally contained 0.0100 M cisplatin and was maintained at pH 7 and 25°C.

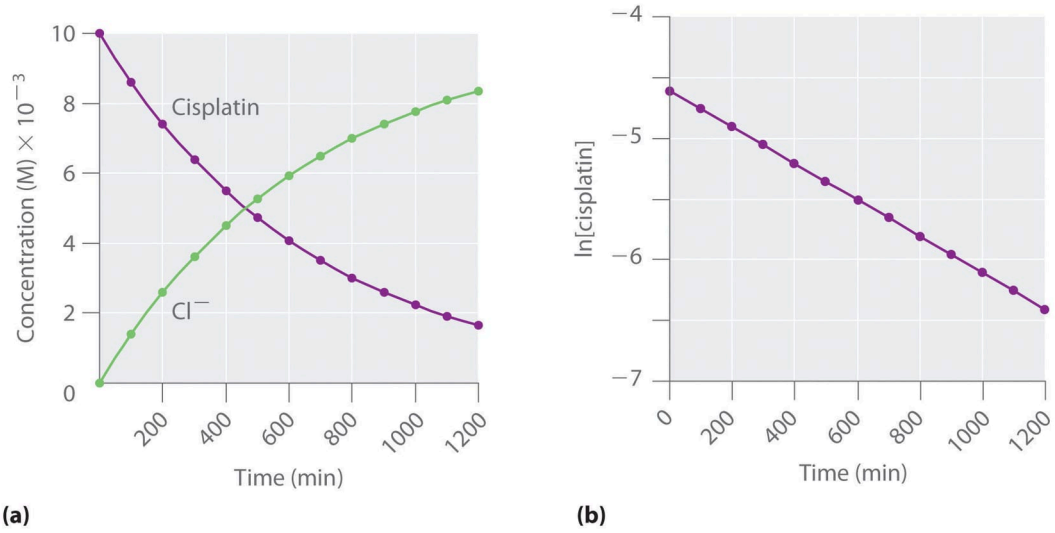


Figure 10.5.3: *The Hydrolysis of Cisplatin, a First-Order Reaction. These plots show hydrolysis of cisplatin at pH 7.0 and 25°C as (a) the experimentally determined concentrations of cisplatin and chloride ions versus time and (b) the natural logarithm of the cisplatin concentration versus time. The straight line in (b) is expected for a first-order reaction.*

The concentration of cisplatin decreases smoothly with time, and the concentration of chloride ion increases in a similar way. When we plot the natural logarithm of the concentration of cisplatin versus time, we obtain the plot shown in part (b) in Figure 10.5.3. The straight line is consistent with the behavior of a system that obeys a first-order rate law. We can use any two points on the line to calculate the slope of the line, which gives us the rate constant for the reaction. Thus taking the points from part (a) in Figure 10.5.3 for t = 100 min ([cisplatin] = 0.0086 M) and t = 1000 min ([cisplatin] = 0.0022 M),

$$\text{slope} = \frac{\ln [\text{cisplatin}]_{1000} - \ln [\text{cisplatin}]_{100}}{1000\ \text{min} - 100\ \text{min}} \tag{10.5.4}$$

$$-k = \frac{\ln 0.0022 - \ln 0.0086}{1000\ \text{min} - 100\ \text{min}} = \frac{-6.12 - (-4.76)}{900\ \text{min}} = -1.51 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{min}^{-1} \tag{10.5.5}$$

$$k = 1.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{min}^{-1} \tag{10.5.6}$$

The slope is negative because we are calculating the rate of disappearance of cisplatin. Also, the rate constant has units of min^{-1} because the times plotted on the horizontal axes in parts (a) and (b) in Figure 10.5.3 are in minutes rather than seconds.

The reaction order and the magnitude of the rate constant we obtain using the integrated rate law are exactly the same as those we calculated earlier using the differential rate law. This must be true if the experiments were carried out under the same conditions.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The First-Order Integrated Rate Law Equation: https://youtu.be/_JskhfxBAMI

Example 10.5.2

If a sample of ethyl chloride with an initial concentration of 0.0200 M is heated at 650°C, what is the concentration of ethyl chloride after 10 h? How many hours at 650°C must elapse for the concentration to decrease to 0.0050 M (k = 1.6 × 10^{-6} s^{-1}) ?

Given: initial concentration, rate constant, and time interval

Asked for: concentration at specified time and time required to obtain particular concentration

Strategy:

A. Substitute values for the initial concentration ($[A]_0$) and the calculated rate constant for the reaction (k) into the integrated rate law for a first-order reaction. Calculate the concentration ([A]) at the given time t.
B. Given a concentration [A], solve the integrated rate law for time t.

Solution

The exponential form of the integrated rate law for a first-order reaction (Equation 10.5.2) is $[A] = [A]_0e^{-kt}$.

A Having been given the initial concentration of ethyl chloride ($[A]_0$) and having the rate constant of k = 1.6 × 10^{-6} s^{-1}, we can use the rate law to calculate the concentration of the reactant at a given time t. Substituting the known values into the integrated rate law,

$$[CH_3CH_2Cl]_{10\ h} = [CH_3CH_2Cl]_0e^{-kt} \tag{10.5.7}$$
$$= 0.0200\ M(e^{-(1.6\times10^{-6}\ s^{-1})[(10\ h)(60\ min/h)(60\ s/min)]}) \tag{10.5.8}$$
$$= 0.0189\ M \tag{10.5.9}$$

We could also have used the logarithmic form of the integrated rate law (Equation 10.5.3):

$$\ln[CH_3CH_2Cl]_{10\ h} = \ln[CH_3CH_2Cl]_0 - kt \tag{10.5.10}$$
$$= \ln 0.0200 - (1.6\times10^{-6}\ s^{-1})[(10\ h)(60\ min/h)(60\ s/min)] \tag{10.5.11}$$
$$= -3.912 - 0.0576 = -3.970 \tag{10.5.12}$$
$$[CH_3CH_2Cl]_{10\ h} = e^{-3.970}\ M \tag{10.5.13}$$
$$= 0.0189\ M \tag{10.5.14}$$

B To calculate the amount of time required to reach a given concentration, we must solve the integrated rate law for t. Equation 10.5.3 gives the following:

$$\ln [CH_3CH_2Cl]_t = \ln [CH_3CH_2Cl]_0 - kt \tag{10.5.15}$$

$$kt = \ln [CH_3CH_2Cl]_0 - \ln [CH_3CH_2Cl]_t = \ln \frac{[CH_3CH_2Cl]_0}{[CH_3CH_2Cl]_t} \tag{10.5.16}$$

$$t = \frac{1}{k}\left(\ln \frac{[CH_3CH_2Cl]_0}{[CH_3CH_2Cl]_t}\right) = \frac{1}{1.6 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{s}^{-1}}\left(\ln \frac{0.0200\ \text{M}}{0.0050\ \text{M}}\right) \tag{10.5.17}$$

$$= \frac{\ln 4.0}{1.6 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{s}^{-1}} = 8.7 \times 10^5\ \text{s} = 240\ \text{h} = 2.4 \times 10^2\ \text{h} \tag{10.5.18}$$

Exercise 10.5.2

In the exercise above, you found that the decomposition of sulfuryl chloride (SO_2Cl_2) is first order, and you calculated the rate constant at 320°C. Use the form(s) of the integrated rate law to find the amount of SO_2Cl_2 that remains after 20 h if a sample with an original concentration of 0.123 M is heated at 320°C. How long would it take for 90% of the SO_2Cl_2 to decompose?

Answer 0.0252 M; 29 h

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Example Using the First-Order Integrated Rate Law Equation:

https://youtu.be/fLY6MtNl9-g

This page titled 10.5: First-Order Reactions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 14.5: First-Order Reactions is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

10.6: Second-Order Reactions

The simplest kind of **second-order reaction** is one whose rate is proportional to the square of the concentration of one reactant. These generally have the form 2A → products. A second kind of second-order reaction has a reaction rate that is proportional to the product of the concentrations of two reactants. Such reactions generally have the form A + B → products. An example of the former is a dimerization reaction, in which two smaller molecules, each called a monomer, combine to form a larger molecule (a dimer).

The differential rate law for the simplest second-order reaction in which 2A → products is as follows:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{2\Delta t} = k[\text{A}]^2 \tag{10.6.1}$$

Consequently, doubling the concentration of A quadruples the reaction rate. For the units of the reaction rate to be moles per liter per second (M/s), the units of a second-order rate constant must be the inverse ($M^{-1}{\cdot}s^{-1}$). Because the units of molarity are expressed as mol/L, the unit of the rate constant can also be written as L(mol·s).

For the reaction 2A → products, the following integrated rate law describes the concentration of the reactant at a given time:

$$\frac{1}{[\text{A}]} = \frac{1}{[\text{A}]_0} + kt \tag{10.6.2}$$

Because Equation 10.6.2 has the form of an algebraic equation for a straight line, $y = mx + b$, with $y = 1/[\text{A}]$ and $b = 1/[\text{A}]_0$, a plot of 1/[A] versus t for a simple second-order reaction is a straight line with a slope of k and an intercept of $1/[\text{A}]_0$.

Note

Second-order reactions generally have the form 2A → products or A + B → products.

Simple second-order reactions are common. In addition to dimerization reactions, two other examples are the decomposition of NO_2 to NO and O_2 and the decomposition of HI to I_2 and H_2. Most examples involve simple inorganic molecules, but there are organic examples as well. We can follow the progress of the reaction described in the following paragraph by monitoring the decrease in the intensity of the red color of the reaction mixture.

Many cyclic organic compounds that contain two carbon–carbon double bonds undergo a dimerization reaction to give complex structures. One example is as follows:

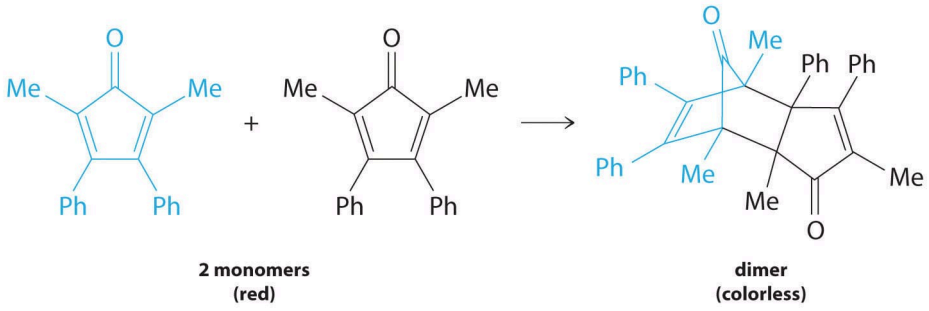


Figure 10.6.1

For simplicity, we will refer to this reactant and product as “monomer” and “dimer,” respectively. The systematic name of the monomer is 2,5-dimethyl-3,4-diphenylcyclopentadienone. The systematic name of the dimer is the name of the monomer followed by “dimer.” Because the monomers are the same, the general equation for this reaction is 2A → product. This reaction represents an important class of organic reactions used in the pharmaceutical industry to prepare complex carbon skeletons for the synthesis of drugs. Like the first-order reactions studied previously, it can be analyzed using either the differential rate law

(Equation 10.6.1) or the integrated rate law (Equation 10.6.2).

Table 10.6.1: Rates of Reaction as a Function of Monomer Concentration for an Initial Monomer Concentration of 0.0054 M

Time (min)	[Monomer] (M)	Instantaneous Rate (M/min)
10	0.0044	8.0×10^{-5}
26	0.0034	5.0×10^{-5}
44	0.0027	3.1×10^{-5}
70	0.0020	1.8×10^{-5}
120	0.0014	8.0×10^{-6}

To determine the differential rate law for the reaction, we need data on how the reaction rate varies as a function of monomer concentrations, which are provided in Table 10.6.1. From the data, we see that the reaction rate is not independent of the monomer concentration, so this is not a zeroth-order reaction. We also see that the reaction rate is not proportional to the monomer concentration, so the reaction is not first order. Comparing the data in the second and fourth rows shows that the reaction rate decreases by a factor of 2.8 when the monomer concentration decreases by a factor of 1.7:

$$\frac{5.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{M/min}}{1.8 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{M/min}} = 2.8 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{3.4 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M}}{2.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M}} = 1.7 \tag{10.6.3}$$

Because $(1.7)^2 = 2.9 \approx 2.8$, the reaction rate is approximately proportional to the square of the monomer concentration.

$$\text{rate} \propto [\text{monomer}]^2$$

This means that the reaction is second order in the monomer. Using Equation 10.6.1 and the data from any row in Table 10.6.1, we can calculate the rate constant. Substituting values at time 10 min, for example, gives the following:

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{A}]^2 \tag{10.6.4}$$

$$8.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{M/min} = k(4.4 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M})^2 \tag{10.6.5}$$

$$4.1\ \text{M}^{-1} \cdot \text{min}^{-1} = k \tag{10.6.6}$$

We can also determine the reaction order using the integrated rate law. To do so, we use the decrease in the concentration of the monomer as a function of time for a single reaction, plotted in part (a) in Figure 10.6.2. The measurements show that the concentration of the monomer (initially 5.4×10^{-3} M) decreases with increasing time. This graph also shows that the reaction rate decreases smoothly with increasing time. According to the integrated rate law for a second-order reaction, a plot of 1/[monomer] versus *t* should be a straight line, as shown in part (b) in Figure 10.6.7. Any pair of points on the line can be used to calculate the slope, which is the second-order rate constant. In this example, $k = 4.1\ \text{M}^{-1}\cdot\text{min}^{-1}$, which is consistent with the result obtained using the differential rate equation. Although in this example the stoichiometric coefficient is the same as the reaction order, this is not always the case. The reaction order must always be determined experimentally.

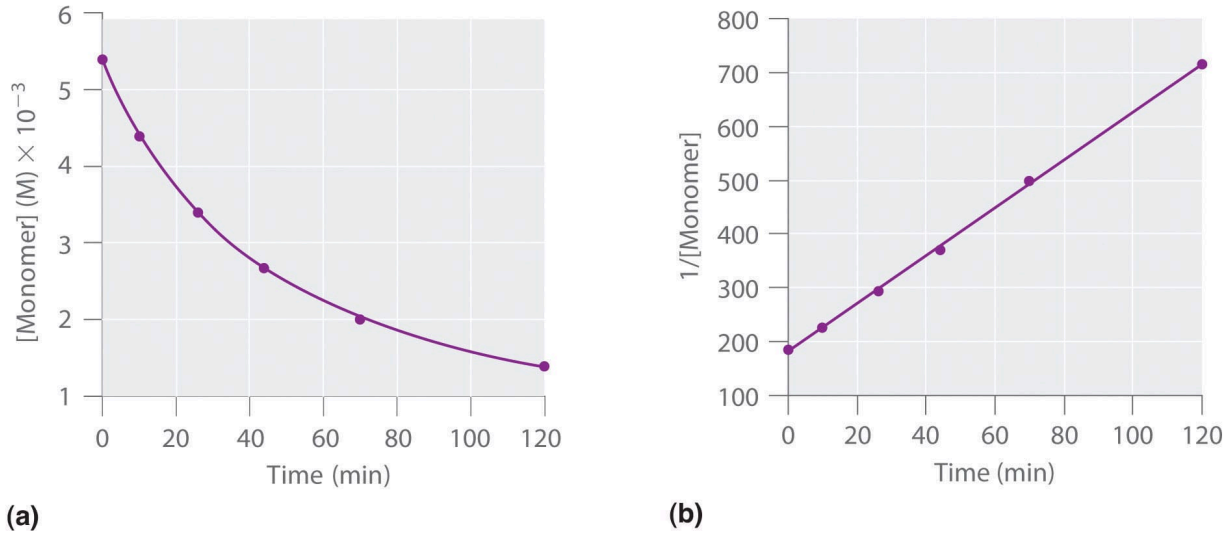


Figure 10.6.2: Dimerization of a Monomeric Compound, a Second-Order Reaction. These plots correspond to dimerization of the monomer in Figure 10.6.6 as (a) the experimentally determined concentration of monomer versus time and (b) 1/[monomer] versus time. The straight line in (b) is expected for a simple second-order reaction.

For two or more reactions of the same order, the reaction with the largest rate constant is the fastest. Because the units of the rate constants for zeroth-, first-, and second-order reactions are different, however, we cannot compare the magnitudes of rate constants for reactions that have different orders.

Example 10.6.1

At high temperatures, nitrogen dioxide decomposes to nitric oxide and oxygen.

$$2NO_2(g) \xrightarrow{\Delta} 2NO(g) + O_2(g) \tag{10.6.7}$$

Experimental data for the reaction at 300°C and four initial concentrations of NO_2 are listed in the following table:

Experiment	$[NO_2]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/s)
1	0.015	1.22×10^{-4}
2	0.010	5.40×10^{-5}
3	0.0080	3.46×10^{-5}
4	0.0050	1.35×10^{-5}

Determine the reaction order and the rate constant.

Given: balanced chemical equation, initial concentrations, and initial rates

Asked for: reaction order and rate constant

Strategy:

A. From the experiments, compare the changes in the initial reaction rates with the corresponding changes in the initial concentrations. Determine whether the changes are characteristic of zeroth-, first-, or second-order reactions.
B. Determine the appropriate rate law. Using this rate law and data from any experiment, solve for the rate constant (k).

Solution

A We can determine the reaction order with respect to nitrogen dioxide by comparing the changes in NO_2 concentrations with the corresponding reaction rates. Comparing Experiments 2 and 4, for example, shows that doubling the concentration quadruples the reaction rate [$(5.40 \times 10^{-5}) \div (1.35 \times 10^{-5}) = 4.0$], which means that the reaction rate is proportional to $[NO_2]^2$. Similarly, comparing Experiments 1 and 4 shows that tripling the concentration increases the reaction rate by a factor of 9, again indicating that the reaction rate is proportional to $[NO_2]^2$. This behavior is characteristic of a second-order reaction.

B We have rate = $k[NO_2]^2$. We can calculate the rate constant (k) using data from any experiment in the table. Selecting Experiment 2, for example, gives the following:

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{NO}_2]^2 \tag{10.6.8}$$

$$5.40 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{M/s} = k(0.010\ \text{M})^2 \tag{10.6.9}$$

$$0.54\ \text{M}^{-1} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} = k \tag{10.6.10}$$

Exercise 10.6.1

When the highly reactive species HO_2 forms in the atmosphere, one important reaction that then removes it from the atmosphere is as follows:

$$2HO_{2(g)} \rightarrow H_2O_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)}$$

The kinetics of this reaction have been studied in the laboratory, and some initial rate data at 25°C are listed in the following table:

Experiment	$[HO_2]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/s)
1	1.1×10^{-8}	1.7×10^{-7}
2	2.5×10^{-8}	8.8×10^{-7}
3	3.4×10^{-8}	1.6×10^{-6}
4	5.0×10^{-8}	3.5×10^{-6}

Determine the reaction order and the rate constant.

Answer second order in HO_2; $k = 1.4 \times 10^9\ M^{-1} \cdot s^{-1}$

Note

If a plot of reactant concentration versus time is **not** linear, but a plot of 1/reaction concentration versus time is linear, then the reaction is second order.

Example 10.6.2

If a flask that initially contains 0.056 M NO_2 is heated at 300°C, what will be the concentration of NO_2 after 1.0 h? How long will it take for the concentration of NO_2 to decrease to 10% of the initial concentration? Use the integrated rate law for a second-order reaction (Equation 10.6.2) and the rate constant calculated above.

Given: balanced chemical equation, rate constant, time interval, and initial concentration

Asked for: final concentration and time required to reach specified concentration

Strategy:

A. Given k, t, and $[A]_0$, use the integrated rate law for a second-order reaction to calculate [A].
B. Setting [A] equal to 1/10 of $[A]_0$, use the same equation to solve for t.

Solution

A We know k and $[NO_2]_0$, and we are asked to determine $[NO_2]$ at t = 1 h (3600 s). Substituting the appropriate values into Equation 14.4.9,

$$\frac{1}{[NO_2]_{3600}} = \frac{1}{[NO_2]_0} + kt = \frac{1}{0.056\ \text{M}} + [(0.54\ \text{M}^{-1}\cdot\text{s}^{-1})(3600\ \text{s})] \tag{10.6.11}$$

$$= 2.0 \times 10^3\ \text{M}^{-1} \tag{10.6.12}$$

Thus $[NO_2]_{3600}$ = 5.1 × 10^{-4} M.

B In this case, we know k and $[NO_2]_0$, and we are asked to calculate at what time $[NO_2] = 0.1[NO_2]_0 = 0.1(0.056\ \text{M}) = 0.0056$ M. To do this, we solve Equation 10.6.2 for t, using the concentrations given.

$$t = \frac{(1/[NO_2]) - (1/[NO_2]_0)}{k} = \frac{(1/0.0056\ \text{M}) - (1/0.056\ \text{M})}{0.54\ \text{M}^{-1}\cdot\text{s}^{-1}} = 3.0 \times 10^2\ \text{s} = 5.0\ \text{min}$$

NO_2 decomposes very rapidly; under these conditions, the reaction is 90% complete in only 5.0 min.

Exercise 10.6.2

In the previous exercise, you calculated the rate constant for the decomposition of HO_2 as k = 1.4 × 10^9 $M^{-1}\cdot s^{-1}$. This high rate constant means that HO_2 decomposes rapidly under the reaction conditions given in the problem. In fact, the HO_2 molecule is so reactive that it is virtually impossible to obtain in high concentrations. Given a 0.0010 M sample of HO_2, calculate the concentration of HO_2 that remains after 1.0 h at 25°C. How long will it take for 90% of the HO_2 to decompose? Use the integrated rate law for a second-order reaction (Equation 10.6.2) and the rate constant calculated in the exercise in Example 10.6.3.

Answer 2.0 × 10^{-13} M; 6.4 × 10^{-6} s

In addition to the simple second-order reaction and rate law we have just described, another very common second-order reaction has the general form $A + B \rightarrow products$, in which the reaction is first order in A and first order in B. The differential rate law for this reaction is as follows:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[A]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[B]}{\Delta t} = k[A][B] \tag{10.6.13}$$

Because the reaction is first order both in A and in B, it has an overall reaction order of 2. (The integrated rate law for this reaction is rather complex, so we will not describe it.) We can recognize second-order reactions of this sort because the reaction rate is proportional to the concentrations of each reactant.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Second-Order Integrated Rate Law Equation: https://youtu.be/hMSgk2Rm2xA

This page titled 10.6: Second-Order Reactions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 14.6: Second-Order Reactions is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

10.7: Reaction Kinetics: A Summary

Learning Objectives

- To use graphs to analyze the kinetics of a reaction.

You learned that the integrated rate law for each common type of reaction (zeroth, first, or second order in a single reactant) can be plotted as a straight line. Using these plots offers an alternative to the methods described for showing how reactant concentration changes with time and determining reaction order.

We will illustrate the use of these graphs by considering the thermal decomposition of NO_2 gas at elevated temperatures, which occurs according to the following reaction:

$$(2NO_2(g) \xrightarrow{\Delta} 2NO(g) + O_2(g) \tag{10.7.1}$$

Experimental data for this reaction at 330°C are listed in Table 10.7.1; they are provided as [NO_2], ln[NO_2], and 1/[NO_2] versus time to correspond to the integrated rate laws for zeroth-, first-, and second-order reactions, respectively. The actual concentrations of NO_2 are plotted versus time in part (a) in Figure 10.7.1.

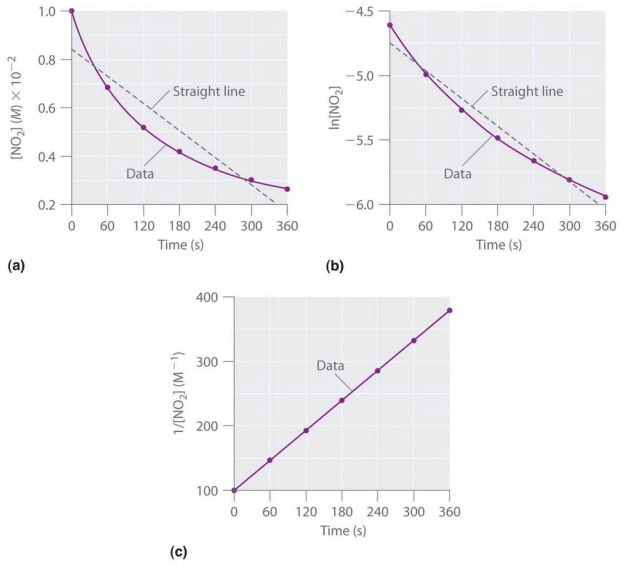


Figure 10.7.1: The Decomposition of NO_2. These plots show the decomposition of a sample of NO_2 at 330°C as (a) the concentration of NO_2 versus t, (b) the natural logarithm of [NO_2] versus t, and (c) 1/[NO_2] versus t.

Because the plot of [NO_2] versus *t* is not a straight line, we know the reaction is not zeroth order in NO_2. A plot of ln[NO_2] versus *t* (part (b) in Figure 10.7.1) shows us that the reaction is not first order in NO_2 because a first-order reaction would give a straight line. Having eliminated zeroth-order and first-order behavior, we construct a plot of 1/[NO_2] versus *t* (part (c) in Figure 10.7.1). This plot is a straight line, indicating that the reaction is second order in NO_2.

Table 10.7.1: Concentration of NO_2 as a Function of Time at 330°C

Time (s)	[NO_2] (M)	ln[NO_2]	1/[NO_2] (M^{-1})
0	1.00×10^{-2}	−4.605	100
60	6.83×10^{-3}	−4.986	146
120	5.18×10^{-3}	−5.263	193

Time (s)	$[NO_2]$ (M)	$\ln[NO_2]$	$1/[NO_2]$ (M^{-1})
180	4.18×10^{-3}	−5.477	239
240	3.50×10^{-3}	−5.655	286
300	3.01×10^{-3}	−5.806	332
360	2.64×10^{-3}	−5.937	379

We have just determined the reaction order using data from a single experiment by plotting the concentration of the reactant as a function of time. Because of the characteristic shapes of the lines shown in Figure 10.7.2, the graphs can be used to determine the reaction order of an unknown reaction. In contrast, the method of initial rates required multiple experiments at different NO_2 concentrations as well as accurate initial rates of reaction, which can be difficult to obtain for rapid reactions.

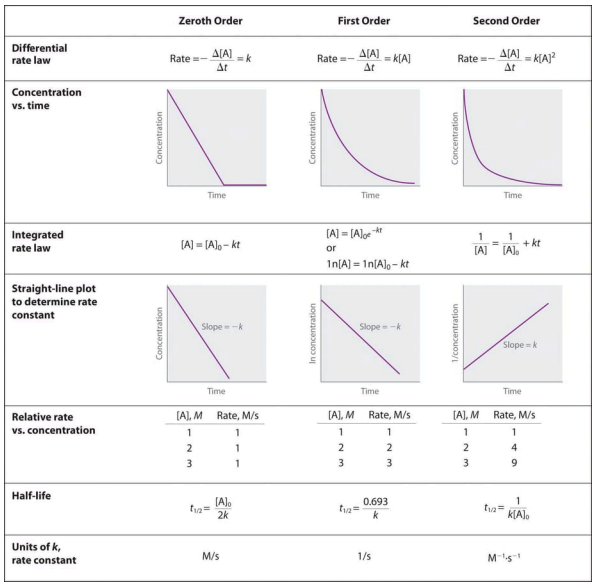


Figure 10.7.2: Properties of Reactions That Obey Zeroth-, First-, and Second-Order Rate Laws

Example 10.7.1

Dinitrogen pentoxide (N_2O_5) decomposes to NO_2 and O_2 at relatively low temperatures in the following reaction:

$$2N_2O_5(soln) \rightarrow 4NO_2(soln) + O_2(g)$$

This reaction is carried out in a CCl_4 solution at 45°C. The concentrations of N_2O_5 as a function of time are listed in the following table, together with the natural logarithms and reciprocal N_2O_5 concentrations. Plot a graph of the concentration versus *t*, ln concentration versus *t*, and 1/concentration versus *t* and then determine the rate law and calculate the rate constant.

Time (s)	$[N_2O_5]$ (M)	$\ln[N_2O_5]$	$1/[N_2O_5]$ (M^{-1})
0	0.0365	−3.310	27.4
600	0.0274	−3.597	36.5
1200	0.0206	−3.882	48.5
1800	0.0157	−4.154	63.7
2400	0.0117	−4.448	85.5

3000	0.00860	−4.756	116
3600	0.00640	−5.051	156

Given: balanced chemical equation, reaction times, and concentrations

Asked for: graph of data, rate law, and rate constant

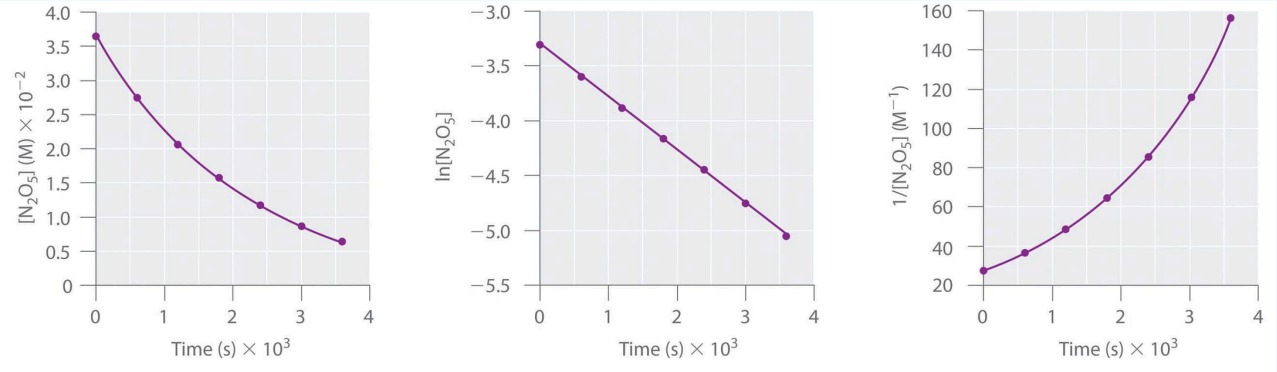
Strategy:

A Use the data in the table to separately plot concentration, the natural logarithm of the concentration, and the reciprocal of the concentration (the vertical axis) versus time (the horizontal axis). Compare the graphs with those in Figure 10.7.1 to determine the reaction order.

B Write the rate law for the reaction. Using the appropriate data from the table and the linear graph corresponding to the rate law for the reaction, calculate the slope of the plotted line to obtain the rate constant for the reaction.

Solution

A Here are plots of $[N_2O_5]$ versus t, $\ln[N_2O_5]$ versus t, and $1/[N_2O_5]$ versus t:



The plot of $\ln[N_2O_5]$ versus t gives a straight line, whereas the plots of $[N_2O_5]$ versus t and $1/[N_2O_5]$ versus t do not. This means that the decomposition of N_2O_5 is first order in $[N_2O_5]$.

B The rate law for the reaction is therefore

$$\text{rate} = k[N_2O_5]$$

Calculating the rate constant is straightforward because we know that the slope of the plot of ln[A] versus t for a first-order reaction is $-k$. We can calculate the slope using any two points that lie on the line in the plot of $\ln[N_2O_5]$ versus t. Using the points for t = 0 and 3000 s,

$$\text{slope} = \frac{\ln[N_2O_5]_{3000} - \ln[N_2O_5]_0}{3000\ \text{s} - 0\ \text{s}} = \frac{(-4.756) - (-3.310)}{3000\ \text{s}} = -4.820 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{s}^{-1} \tag{10.7.2}$$

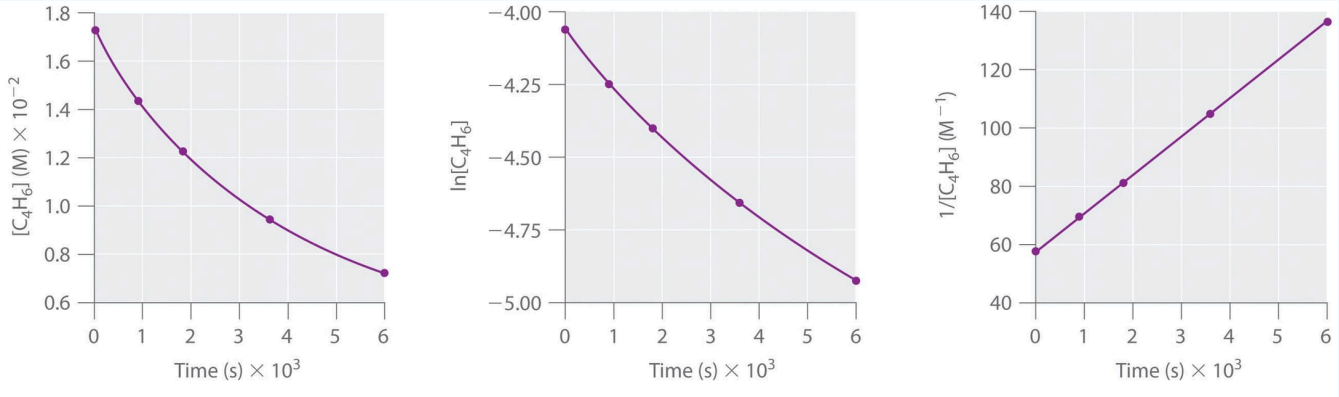
Thus $k = 4.820 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{s}^{-1}$.

Exercise 10.7.1

1,3-Butadiene (CH_2=CH—CH=CH_2; C_4H_6) is a volatile and reactive organic molecule used in the production of rubber. Above room temperature, it reacts slowly to form products. Concentrations of C_4H_6 as a function of time at 326°C are listed in the following table along with ln[C_4H_6] and the reciprocal concentrations. Graph the data as concentration versus *t*, ln concentration versus *t*, and 1/concentration versus *t*. Then determine the reaction order in C_4H_6, the rate law, and the rate constant for the reaction.

Time (s)	[C_4H_6] (M)	ln[C_4H_6]	1/[C_4H_6] (M^{-1})
0	1.72×10^{-2}	−4.063	58.1
900	1.43×10^{-2}	−4.247	69.9
1800	1.23×10^{-2}	−4.398	81.3
3600	9.52×10^{-3}	−4.654	105
6000	7.30×10^{-3}	−4.920	137

Answer



second order in C_4H_6; rate = $k[C_4H_6]^2$; $k = 1.3 \times 10^{-2}\ M^{-1}{\cdot}s^{-1}$

Summary

For a zeroth-order reaction, a plot of the concentration of any reactant versus time is a straight line with a slope of –*k*. For a first-order reaction, a plot of the natural logarithm of the concentration of a reactant versus time is a straight line with a slope of –*k*. For a second-order reaction, a plot of the inverse of the concentration of a reactant versus time is a straight line with a slope of *k*.

Key Takeaway

- Plotting the concentration of a reactant as a function of time produces a graph with a characteristic shape that can be used to identify the reaction order in that reactant.

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous

This page titled 10.7: Reaction Kinetics: A Summary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 14.7: Reaction Kinetics: A Summary is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

10.8: Theoretical Models for Chemical Kinetics

This page titled 10.8: Theoretical Models for Chemical Kinetics is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.9: The Effect of Temperature on Reaction Rates

Learning Objectives

- To understand why and how chemical reactions occur.

It is possible to use kinetics studies of a chemical system, such as the effect of changes in reactant concentrations, to deduce events that occur on a microscopic scale, such as collisions between individual particles. Such studies have led to the collision model of chemical kinetics, which is a useful tool for understanding the behavior of reacting chemical species. The collision model explains why chemical reactions often occur more rapidly at higher temperatures. For example, the reaction rates of many reactions that occur at room temperature approximately double with a temperature increase of only 10°C. In this section, we will use the collision model to analyze this relationship between temperature and reaction rates. Before delving into the relationship between temperature and reaction rate, we must discuss three microscopic factors that influence the observed macroscopic reaction rates.

Microscopic Factor 1: Collisional Frequency

Central to collision model is that a chemical reaction can occur only when the reactant molecules, atoms, or ions collide. Hence, the observed rate is influence by the frequency of collisions between the reactants. The **collisional frequency** is the average rate in which two reactants collide for a given system and is used to express the average number of collisions per unit of time in a defined system. While deriving the collisional frequency (Z_{AB}) between two species in a gas is straightforward, it is beyond the scope of this text and the equation for collisional frequency of A and B is the following:

$$Z_{AB} = N_A N_B \left(r_A + r_B\right)^2 \sqrt{\frac{8\pi k_B T}{\mu_{AB}}} \tag{10.9.1}$$

with

- N_A and N_B are the numbers of A and B molecules in the system, respectively
- r_a and r_b are the radii of molecule A and B, respectively
- k_B is the Boltzmann constant k_B = 1.380 x 10^{-23} Joules Kelvin
- T is the temperature in Kelvin
- μ_{AB} is calculated via $\mu_{AB} = \frac{m_A m_B}{m_A + m_B}$

The specifics of Equation 10.9.1 are not important for this conversation, but it is important to identify that Z_{AB} increases with increasing density (i.e., increasing N_A and N_B), with increasing reactant size (r_a and r_b), with increasing velocities (predicted via Kinetic Molecular Theory), and with increasing temperature (although weakly because of the square root function).

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

A Video Discussing Collision Theory of Kinetics: Collusion Theory of Kinetics (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Microscopic Factor 2: Activation Energy

Previously, we discussed the kinetic molecular theory of gases, which showed that the average kinetic energy of the particles of a gas increases with increasing temperature. Because the speed of a particle is proportional to the square root of its kinetic energy, increasing the temperature will also increase the number of collisions between molecules per unit time. What the kinetic molecular theory of gases does not explain is why the reaction rate of most reactions approximately doubles with a 10°C temperature increase. This result is surprisingly large considering that a 10°C increase in the temperature of a gas from 300 K to 310 K increases the kinetic energy of the particles by only about 4%, leading to an increase in molecular speed of only about 2% and a correspondingly small increase in the number of bimolecular collisions per unit time.

The collision model of chemical kinetics explains this behavior by introducing the concept of **activation energy** (E_a). We will define this concept using the reaction of NO with ozone, which plays an important role in the depletion of ozone in the ozone layer:

$$\mathrm{NO\,(g) + O_3\,(g) \ \rightarrow NO_2\,(g) + O_2\,(g)}$$

Increasing the temperature from 200 K to 350 K causes the rate constant for this particular reaction to increase by a factor of more than 10, whereas the increase in the frequency of bimolecular collisions over this temperature range is only 30%. Thus something other than an increase in the collision rate must be affecting the reaction rate.

Experimental rate law for this reaction is

$$\mathrm{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO}][\mathrm{O_3}]$$

and is used to identify how the reaction rate (not the rate constant) vares with concentration. The rate constant, however, does vary with temperature. Figure $10.9.1$ shows a plot of the rate constant of the reaction of NO with $\mathrm{O_3}$ at various temperatures. The relationship is not linear but instead resembles the relationships seen in graphs of vapor pressure versus temperature (e.g, the Clausius-Claperyon equation). In all three cases, the shape of the plots results from a distribution of kinetic energy over a population of particles (electrons in the case of conductivity; molecules in the case of vapor pressure; and molecules, atoms, or ions in the case of reaction rates). Only a fraction of the particles have sufficient energy to overcome an energy barrier.

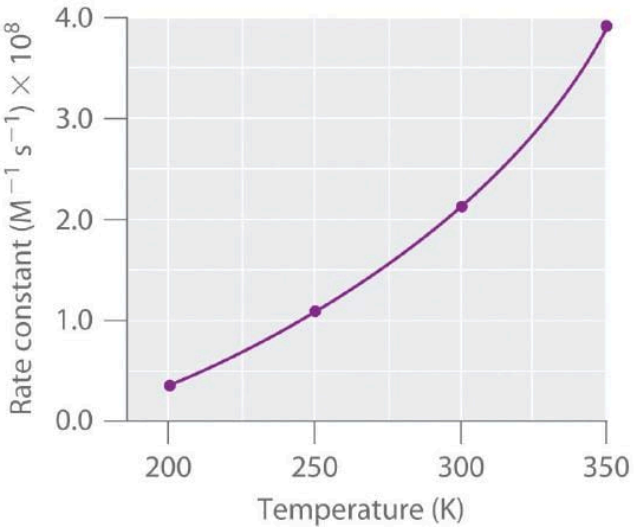


Figure $10.9.1$: Rate Constant versus Temperature for the Reaction of NO with $\mathrm{O_3}$The nonlinear shape of the curve is caused by a distribution of kinetic energy over a population of molecules. Only a fraction of the particles have enough energy to overcome an energy barrier, but as the temperature is increased, the size of that fraction increases. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

In the case of vapor pressure, particles must overcome an energy barrier to escape from the liquid phase to the gas phase. This barrier corresponds to the energy of the intermolecular forces that hold the molecules together in the liquid. In conductivity, the barrier is the energy gap between the filled and empty bands. In chemical reactions, the energy barrier corresponds to the amount of energy the particles must have to react when they collide. This energy threshold, called the **activation energy**, was first postulated in 1888 by the Swedish chemist Svante Arrhenius (1859–1927; Nobel Prize in Chemistry 1903). It is the minimum amount of energy needed for a reaction to occur. Reacting molecules must have enough energy to overcome electrostatic

repulsion, and a minimum amount of energy is required to break chemical bonds so that new ones may be formed. Molecules that collide with less than the threshold energy bounce off one another chemically unchanged, with only their direction of travel and their speed altered by the collision. Molecules that are able to overcome the energy barrier are able to react and form an arrangement of atoms called the **activated complex** or the **transition state** of the reaction. The activated complex is not a reaction intermediate; it does not last long enough to be detected readily.

> Any phenomenon that depends on the distribution of thermal energy in a population of particles has a nonlinear temperature dependence.

We can graph the energy of a reaction by plotting the potential energy of the system as the reaction progresses. Figure $10.9.2$ shows a plot for the $NO–O_3$ system, in which the vertical axis is potential energy and the horizontal axis is the reaction coordinate, which indicates the progress of the reaction with time. The activated complex is shown in brackets with an asterisk. The overall change in potential energy for the reaction (ΔE) is negative, which means that the reaction releases energy. (In this case, ΔE is –200.8 kJ/mol.) To react, however, the molecules must overcome the energy barrier to reaction (E_a is 9.6 kJ/mol). That is, 9.6 kJ/mol must be put into the system as the activation energy. Below this threshold, the particles do not have enough energy for the reaction to occur.

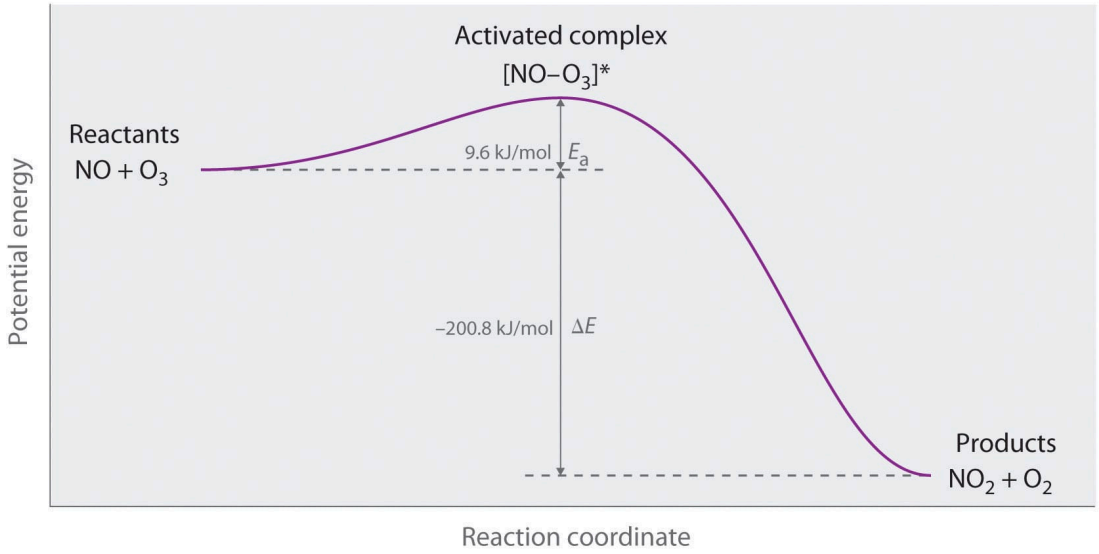


Figure $10.9.2$: Energy of the Activated Complex for the $NO–O_3$ System. The diagram shows how the energy of this system varies as the reaction proceeds from reactants to products. Note the initial increase in energy required to form the activated complex. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Figure $10.9.3a$ illustrates the general situation in which the products have a lower potential energy than the reactants. In contrast, Figure $10.9.3b$ illustrates the case in which the products have a higher potential energy than the reactants, so the overall reaction requires an input of energy; that is, it is energetically uphill, and \(\Delta E > 0\). Although the energy changes that result from a reaction can be positive, negative, or even zero, in most cases an energy barrier must be overcome before a reaction can occur. This means that the activation energy is almost always positive; there is a class of reactions called barrierless reactions, but those are discussed elsewhere.

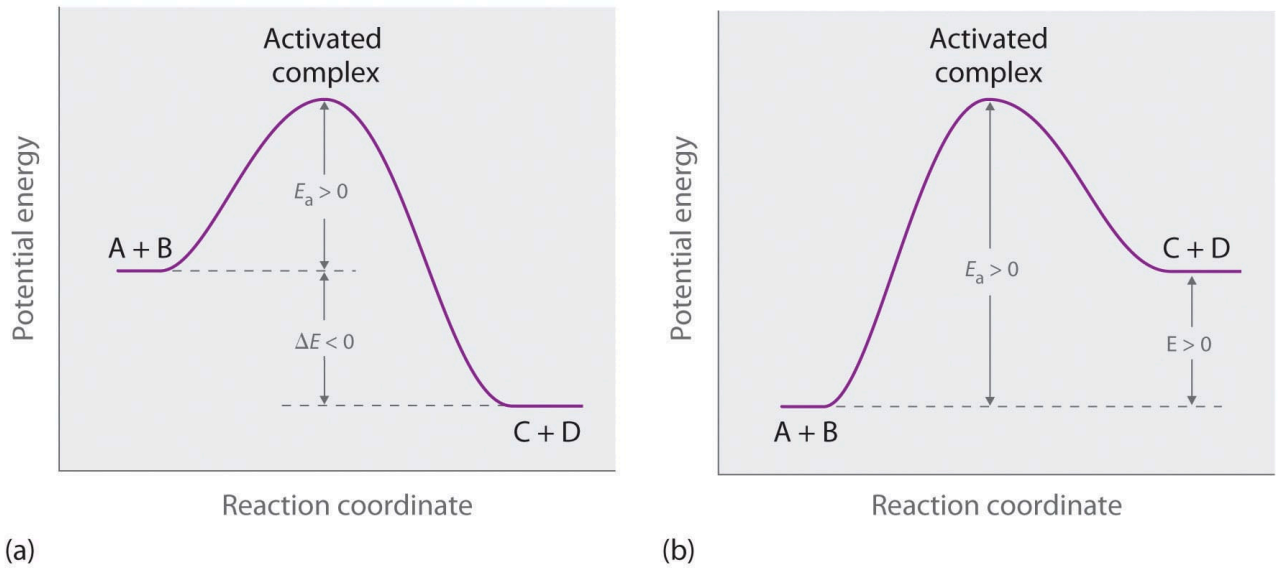


Figure 10.9.3: Differentiating between E_a and ΔE. The potential energy diagrams for a reaction with (a) ΔE < 0 and (b) ΔE > 0 illustrate the change in the potential energy of the system as reactants are converted to products. In both cases, E_a is positive. For a reaction such as the one shown in (b), E_a must be greater than ΔE. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

For similar reactions under comparable conditions, the one with the smallest E_a will occur most rapidly.

Whereas ΔE is related to the tendency of a reaction to occur spontaneously, E_a gives us information about the reaction rate and how rapidly the reaction rate changes with temperature. For two similar reactions under comparable conditions, the reaction with the smallest E_a will occur more rapidly.

Figure 10.9.4 shows both the kinetic energy distributions and a potential energy diagram for a reaction. The shaded areas show that at the lower temperature (300 K), only a small fraction of molecules collide with kinetic energy greater than E_a; however, at the higher temperature (500 K) a much larger fraction of molecules collide with kinetic energy greater than E_a. Consequently, the reaction rate is much slower at the lower temperature because only a relatively few molecules collide with enough energy to overcome the potential energy barrier.

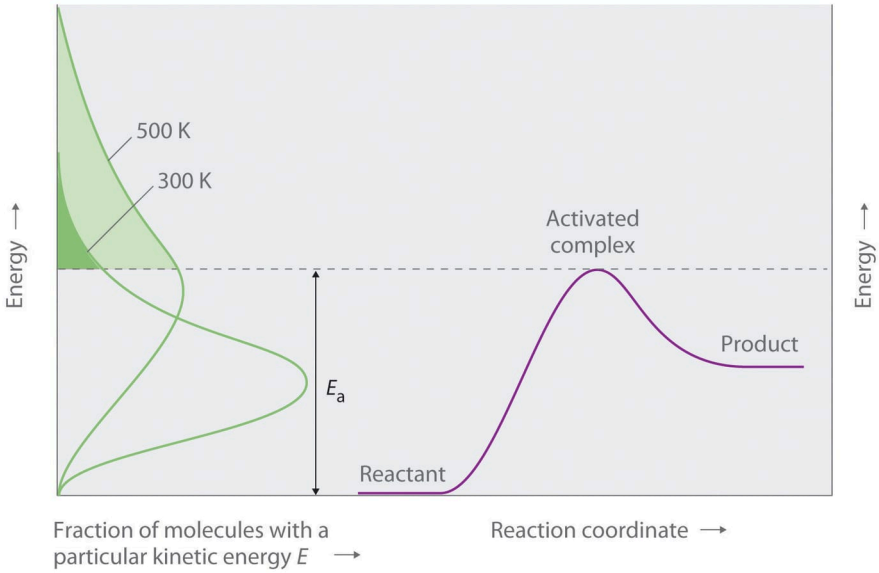


Figure $10.9.4$: Surmounting the Energy Barrier to a Reaction. This chart juxtaposes the energy distributions of lower-temperature (300 K) and higher-temperature (500 K) samples of a gas against the potential energy diagram for a reaction. Only those molecules in the shaded region of the energy distribution curve have E > E_a and are therefore able to cross the energy barrier separating reactants and products. The fraction of molecules with $E > E_a$ is much greater at 500 K than at 300 K, so the reaction will occur much more rapidly at 500 K. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Energy is on the y axis while reaction coordinate and fraction of molecules with a particular kinetic energy E are on the x axis.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video Discussing Transition State Theory: Transition State Theory(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Microscopic Factor 3: Sterics

Even when the energy of collisions between two reactant species is greater than E_a, most collisions do not produce a reaction. The probability of a reaction occurring depends not only on the collision energy but also on the spatial orientation of the molecules when they collide. For NO and $\mathrm{O_3}$ to produce $\mathrm{NO_2}$ and $\mathrm{O_2}$, a terminal oxygen atom of $\mathrm{O_3}$ must collide with the nitrogen atom of NO at an angle that allows $\mathrm{O_3}$ to transfer an oxygen atom to NO to produce $\mathrm{NO_2}$ (Figure $10.9.4$). All other collisions produce no reaction. Because fewer than 1% of all possible orientations of NO and $\mathrm{O_3}$ result in a reaction at kinetic energies greater than E_a , most collisions of NO and $\mathrm{O_3}$ are unproductive. The fraction of orientations that result in a reaction is called the **steric factor** (ρ) and its value can range from $\rho = 0$ (no orientations of molecules result in reaction) to $\rho = 1$ (all orientations result in reaction).

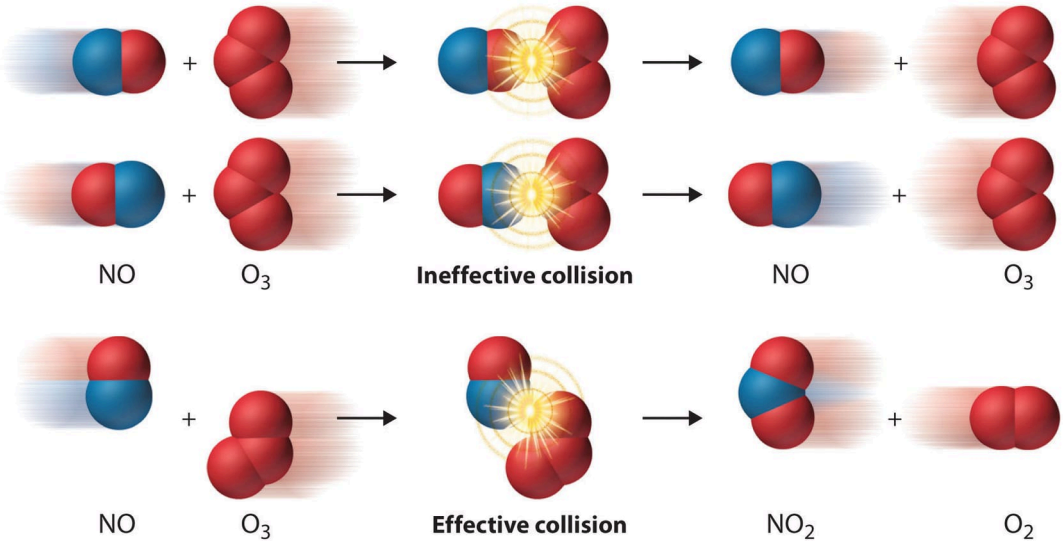


Figure 10.9.4: The Effect of Molecular Orientation on the Reaction of NO and $\mathrm{O_3}$. Most collisions of NO and $\mathrm{O_3}$ molecules occur with an incorrect orientation for a reaction to occur. Only those collisions in which the N atom of NO collides with one of the terminal O atoms of $\mathrm{O_3}$ are likely to produce $\mathrm{NO_2}$ and $\mathrm{O_2}$, even if the molecules collide with $E > E_a$. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Macroscopic Behavior: The Arrhenius Equation

The collision model explains why most collisions between molecules do not result in a chemical reaction. For example, nitrogen and oxygen molecules in a single liter of air at room temperature and 1 atm of pressure collide about 10^{30} times per second. If every collision produced two molecules of NO, the atmosphere would have been converted to NO and then $\mathrm{NO_2}$ a long time ago. Instead, in most collisions, the molecules simply bounce off one another without reacting, much as marbles bounce off each other when they collide.

For an $A + B$ elementary reaction, all three microscopic factors discussed above that affect the reaction rate can be summarized in a single relationship:

$$\text{rate} = (\text{collision frequency}) \times (\text{steric factor}) \times (\text{fraction of collisions with } E > E_a)$$

where

$$\text{rate} = k[A][B] \tag{10.9.2}$$

Arrhenius used these relationships to arrive at an equation that relates the magnitude of the rate constant for a reaction to the temperature, the activation energy, and the constant, A, called the **frequency factor**:

$$k = Ae^{-E_a/RT} \tag{10.9.3}$$

The frequency factor is used to convert concentrations to collisions per second (scaled by the steric factor). Because the frequency of collisions depends on the temperature, A is actually not constant (Equation 10.9.1). Instead, A increases slightly with temperature as the increased kinetic energy of molecules at higher temperatures causes them to move slightly faster and thus undergo more collisions per unit time.

Equation 10.9.3 is known as the **Arrhenius equation** and summarizes the collision model of chemical kinetics, where T is the absolute temperature (in K) and R is the ideal gas constant [8.314 J/(K·mol)]. E_a indicates the sensitivity of the reaction to changes in temperature. The reaction rate with a large E_a increases rapidly with increasing temperature, whereas the reaction rate with a smaller E_a increases much more slowly with increasing temperature.

If we know the reaction rate at various temperatures, we can use the Arrhenius equation to calculate the activation energy. Taking the natural logarithm of both sides of Equation 10.9.3,

$$\ln k = \ln A + \left(-\frac{E_a}{RT}\right) \tag{10.9.4}$$

$$= \ln A + \left[\left(-\frac{E_a}{R}\right)\left(\frac{1}{T}\right)\right] \tag{10.9.5}$$

Equation 10.9.5 is the equation of a straight line,

$$y = mx + b$$

where $y = \ln k$ and $x = 1/T$. This means that a plot of $\ln k$ versus $1/T$ is a straight line with a slope of $-E_a/R$ and an intercept of $\ln A$. In fact, we need to measure the reaction rate at only two temperatures to estimate E_a.

Knowing the E_a at one temperature allows us to predict the reaction rate at other temperatures. This is important in cooking and food preservation, for example, as well as in controlling industrial reactions to prevent potential disasters. The procedure for determining E_a from reaction rates measured at several temperatures is illustrated in Example 10.9.1.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

A Video Discussing The Arrhenius Equation: The Arrhenius Equation(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Example 10.9.1: Chirping Tree Crickets

Many people believe that the rate of a tree cricket's chirping is related to temperature. To see whether this is true, biologists have carried out accurate measurements of the rate of tree cricket chirping (f) as a function of temperature (T). Use the data in the following table, along with the graph of ln[chirping rate] versus $1/T$ to calculate E_a for the biochemical reaction that controls cricket chirping. Then predict the chirping rate on a very hot evening, when the temperature is 308 K (35°C, or 95°F).

Chirping Tree Crickets Frequency Table

Frequency (f; chirps/min)	ln f	T (K)	1/T (K)
200	5.30	299	3.34×10^{-3}
179	5.19	298	3.36×10^{-3}
158	5.06	296	3.38×10^{-3}
141	4.95	294	3.40×10^{-3}
126	4.84	293	3.41×10^{-3}
112	4.72	292	3.42×10^{-3}
100	4.61	290	3.45×10^{-3}
89	4.49	289	3.46×10^{-3}
79	4.37	287	3.48×10^{-3}

Given: chirping rate at various temperatures

Asked for: activation energy and chirping rate at specified temperature

Strategy:

A. From the plot of $\ln f$ versus $1/T$, calculate the slope of the line ($-E_a/R$) and then solve for the activation energy.
B. Express Equation 10.9.5 in terms of k_1 and T_1 and then in terms of k_2 and T_2.
C. Subtract the two equations; rearrange the result to describe k_2/k_1 in terms of T_2 and T_1.
D. Using measured data from the table, solve the equation to obtain the ratio k_2/k_1. Using the value listed in the table for k_1, solve for k_2.

Solution

A If cricket chirping is controlled by a reaction that obeys the Arrhenius equation, then a plot of $\ln f$ versus $1/T$ should give a straight line (Figure 10.9.6).

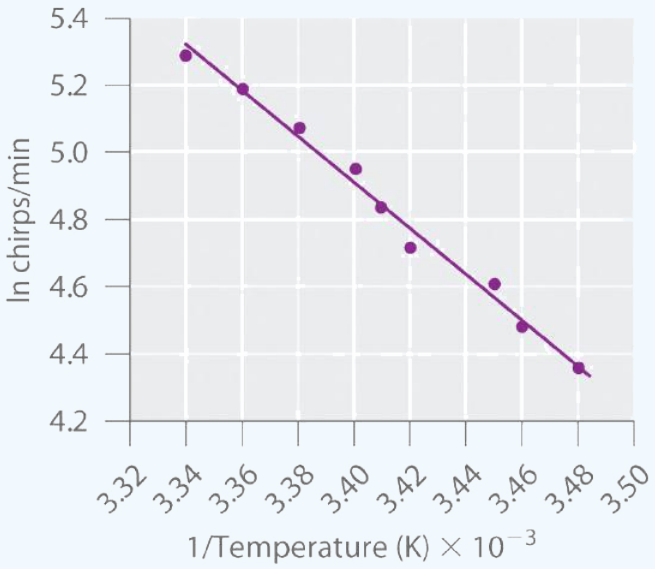


Figure 10.9.6: Graphical Determination of E_a for Tree Cricket Chirping. When the natural logarithm of the rate of tree cricket chirping is plotted versus 1/T, a straight line results. The slope of the line suggests that the chirping rate is controlled by a single reaction with an E_a of 55 kJ/mol. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Also, the slope of the plot of $\ln f$ versus $1/T$ should be equal to $-E_a/R$. We can use the two endpoints in Figure 10.9.6 to estimate the slope:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{slope} &= \frac{\Delta \ln f}{\Delta(1/T)} \\ &= \frac{5.30 - 4.37}{3.34 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{K}^{-1} - 3.48 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{K}^{-1}} \\ &= \frac{0.93}{-0.14 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{K}^{-1}} \\ &= -6.6 \times 10^{3}\ \text{K}\end{aligned}$$

A computer best-fit line through all the points has a slope of –6.67 × 10^3 K, so our estimate is very close. We now use it to solve for the activation energy:

$$\begin{aligned}E_\text{a} &= -(\text{slope})(R) \\ &= -(-6.6 \times 10^{3}\ \text{K})\left(\frac{8.314\ \text{J}}{\text{K} \cdot \text{mol}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \text{KJ}}{1000\ \text{J}}\right) \\ &= \frac{55\ \text{kJ}}{\text{mol}}\end{aligned}$$

B If the activation energy of a reaction and the rate constant at one temperature are known, then we can calculate the reaction rate at any other temperature. We can use Equation 10.9.5 to express the known rate constant (k_1) at the first temperature (T_1) as follows:

$$\ln k_1 = \ln A - \frac{E_a}{RT_1}$$

Similarly, we can express the unknown rate constant (k_2) at the second temperature (T_2) as follows:

$$\ln k_2 = \ln A - \frac{E_a}{RT_2}$$

C These two equations contain four known quantities (E_a, T_1, T_2, and k_1) and two unknowns (A and k_2). We can eliminate A by subtracting the first equation from the second:

$$\begin{aligned} \ln k_2 - \ln k_1 &= \left(\ln A - \frac{E_a}{RT_2}\right) - \left(\ln A - \frac{E_a}{RT_1}\right) \\ &= -\frac{E_a}{RT_2} + \frac{E_a}{RT_1} \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\ln \frac{k_2}{k_1} = \frac{E_a}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right)$$

D To obtain the best prediction of chirping rate at 308 K (T_2), we try to choose for T_1 and k_1 the measured rate constant and corresponding temperature in the data table that is closest to the best-fit line in the graph. Choosing data for T_1 = 296 K, where f = 158, and using the E_a calculated previously,

$$\begin{aligned} \ln \frac{k_{T_2}}{k_{T_1}} &= \frac{E_a}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right) \\ &= \frac{55\ \text{kJ/mol}}{8.314\ \text{J/(K}\cdot\text{mol)}}\left(\frac{1000\ \text{J}}{1\ \text{kJ}}\right)\left(\frac{1}{296\ \text{K}} - \frac{1}{308\ \text{K}}\right) \\ &= 0.87 \end{aligned}$$

Thus k_{308}/k_{296} = 2.4 and k_{308} = (2.4)(158) = 380, and the chirping rate on a night when the temperature is 308 K is predicted to be 380 chirps per minute.

Exercise 10.9.1A

The equation for the decomposition of NO_2 to NO and O_2 is second order in NO_2:

$$2\,NO_2\,(g) \longrightarrow 2\,NO\,(g) + O_2\,(g)$$

Data for the reaction rate as a function of temperature are listed in the following table. Calculate E_a for the reaction and the rate constant at 700 K.

Data for the reaction rate as a function of temperature

T (K)	k ($M^{-1}\cdot s^{-1}$)
592	522
603	755
627	1700
652	4020
656	5030

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise $10.9.1B$

What E_a results in a doubling of the reaction rate with a 10°C increase in temperature from 20° to 30°C?

Answer available at the end of this section.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

A Video Discussing Graphing Using the Arrhenius Equation: Graphing Using the Arrhenius Equation (opens in new window) [youtu.be] (opens in new window)

Summary

For a chemical reaction to occur, an energy threshold must be overcome, and the reacting species must also have the correct spatial orientation. The Arrhenius equation is $k = Ae^{-E_a/RT}$. A minimum energy (activation energy,vE_a) is required for a collision between molecules to result in a chemical reaction. Plots of potential energy for a system versus the reaction coordinate show an energy barrier that must be overcome for the reaction to occur. The arrangement of atoms at the highest point of this barrier is the activated complex, or transition state, of the reaction. At a given temperature, the higher the E_a, the slower the reaction. The fraction of orientations that result in a reaction is the steric factor. The frequency factor, steric factor, and activation energy are related to the rate constant in the Arrhenius equation: $k = Ae^{-E_a/RT}$. A plot of the natural logarithm of k versus $1/T$ is a straight line with a slope of $-E_a/R$.

Answers

Exercise $10.9.1A$

E_a = 114 kJ/mol; k_{700}= 18,600 $M^{-1}{\cdot}s^{-1}$ = 1.86 × 10^4 $M^{-1}{\cdot}s^{-1}$.

Exercise $10.9.1B$

about 51 kJ/mol

This page titled 10.9: The Effect of Temperature on Reaction Rates is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 14.5: Temperature and Rate is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

10.10: Reaction Mechanisms

Learning Objectives

- To determine the individual steps of a simple reaction.

One of the major reasons for studying chemical kinetics is to use measurements of the macroscopic properties of a system, such as the rate of change in the concentration of reactants or products with time, to discover the sequence of events that occur at the molecular level during a reaction. This molecular description is the mechanism of the reaction; it describes how individual atoms, ions, or molecules interact to form particular products. The stepwise changes are collectively called the reaction mechanism.

In an internal combustion engine, for example, isooctane reacts with oxygen to give carbon dioxide and water:

$$2\,C_8H_{18}\,(l) + 25\,O_2\,(g) \longrightarrow 16\,CO_2\,(g) + 18\,H_2O\,(g) \tag{10.10.1}$$

For this reaction to occur in a single step, 25 dioxygen molecules and 2 isooctane molecules would have to collide simultaneously and be converted to 34 molecules of product, which is very unlikely. It is more likely that a complex series of reactions takes place in a stepwise fashion. Each individual reaction, which is called an **elementary reaction**, involves one, two, or (rarely) three atoms, molecules, or ions. The overall sequence of elementary reactions is the **mechanism** of the reaction. The sum of the individual steps, or elementary reactions, in the mechanism must give the balanced chemical equation for the overall reaction.

> The overall sequence of elementary reactions is the mechanism of the reaction.

Molecularity and the Rate-Determining Step

To demonstrate how the analysis of elementary reactions helps us determine the overall reaction mechanism, we will examine the much simpler reaction of carbon monoxide with nitrogen dioxide.

$$NO_2\,(g) + CO\,(g) \longrightarrow NO\,(g) + CO_2\,(g) \tag{10.10.2}$$

From the balanced chemical equation, one might expect the reaction to occur via a collision of one molecule of NO_2 with a molecule of CO that results in the transfer of an oxygen atom from nitrogen to carbon. The experimentally determined rate law for the reaction, however, is as follows:

$$rate = k[{NO_2}^2] \tag{10.10.3}$$

The fact that the reaction is second order in $[NO_2]$ and independent of $[CO]$ tells us that it does not occur by the simple collision model outlined previously. If it did, its predicted rate law would be

$$rate = k[NO_2][CO].$$

The following two-step mechanism is consistent with the rate law if step 1 is much slower than step 2:

two-step mechanism

step 1	$NO_2 + NO_2 \xrightarrow{\text{slow}} NO_3 + NO$	elementary reaction
step 2	$\underline{NO_3 + CO \rightarrow NO_2 + CO_2}$	elementary reaction
sum	$NO_2 + CO \rightarrow NO + CO_2$	overall reaction

According to this mechanism, the overall reaction occurs in two steps, or elementary reactions. Summing steps 1 and 2 and canceling on both sides of the equation gives the overall balanced chemical equation for the reaction. The NO_3 molecule is an **intermediate** in the reaction, a species that does not appear in the balanced chemical equation for the overall reaction. It is formed as a product of the first step but is consumed in the second step.

The sum of the elementary reactions in a reaction mechanism **must** give the overall balanced chemical equation of the reaction.

Using Molecularity to Describe a Rate Law

The **molecularity** of an elementary reaction is the number of molecules that collide during that step in the mechanism. If there is only a single reactant molecule in an elementary reaction, that step is designated as **unimolecular**; if there are two reactant molecules, it is **bimolecular**; and if there are three reactant molecules (a relatively rare situation), it is **termolecular**. Elementary reactions that involve the simultaneous collision of more than three molecules are highly improbable and have never been observed experimentally. (To understand why, try to make three or more marbles or pool balls collide with one another simultaneously!)

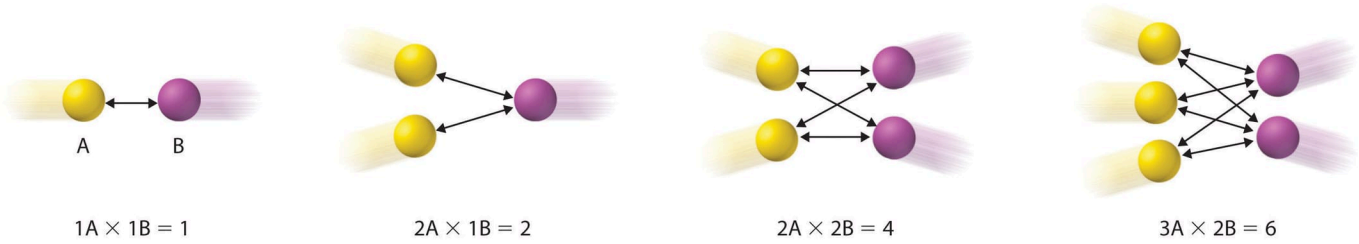


Figure 10.10.1: The Basis for Writing Rate Laws of Elementary Reactions. This diagram illustrates how the number of possible collisions per unit time between two reactant species, A and B, depends on the number of A and B particles present. The number of collisions between A and B particles increases as the product of the number of particles, not as the sum. This is why the rate law for an elementary reaction depends on the product of the concentrations of the species that collide in that step. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

Writing the rate law for an elementary reaction is straightforward because we know how many molecules must collide simultaneously for the elementary reaction to occur; hence the order of the elementary reaction is the same as its molecularity (Table 10.10.1). In contrast, the rate law for the reaction cannot be determined from the balanced chemical equation for the overall reaction. The general rate law for a unimolecular elementary reaction (A → products) is

$$rate = k[A].$$

For bimolecular reactions, the reaction rate depends on the number of collisions per unit time, which is proportional to the product of the concentrations of the reactants, as shown in Figure 10.10.1. For a bimolecular elementary reaction of the form A + B → products, the general rate law is

$$rate = k[A][B].$$

Table 10.10.1: Common Types of Elementary Reactions and Their Rate Laws

Elementary Reaction	Molecularity	Rate Law	Reaction Order
A → products	unimolecular	rate = k[A]	first
2A → products	bimolecular	rate = k[A]^2	second
A + B → products	bimolecular	rate = k[A][B]	second
2A + B → products	termolecular	rate = k[A]^2[B]	third
A + B + C → products	termolecular	rate = k[A][B][C]	third

For elementary reactions, the order of the elementary reaction is the same as its molecularity. In contrast, the rate law **cannot** be determined from the balanced chemical equation for the overall reaction (unless it is a single step mechanism and is therefore also an elementary step).

Identifying the Rate-Determining Step

Note the important difference between writing rate laws for elementary reactions and the balanced chemical equation of the overall reaction. Because the balanced chemical equation does not necessarily reveal the individual elementary reactions by

which the reaction occurs, we cannot obtain the rate law for a reaction from the overall balanced chemical equation alone. In fact, it is the rate law for the slowest overall reaction, which is the same as the rate law for the slowest step in the reaction mechanism, the **rate-determining step**, that must give the experimentally determined rate law for the overall reaction.This statement is true if one step is substantially slower than all the others, typically by a factor of 10 or more. If two or more slow steps have comparable rates, the experimentally determined rate laws can become complex. Our discussion is limited to reactions in which one step can be identified as being substantially slower than any other. The reason for this is that any process that occurs through a sequence of steps can take place no faster than the slowest step in the sequence. In an automotive assembly line, for example, a component cannot be used faster than it is produced. Similarly, blood pressure is regulated by the flow of blood through the smallest passages, the capillaries. Because movement through capillaries constitutes the rate-determining step in blood flow, blood pressure can be regulated by medications that cause the capillaries to contract or dilate. A chemical reaction that occurs via a series of elementary reactions can take place no faster than the slowest step in the series of reactions.



Rate-determining step. The phenomenon of a rate-determining step can be compared to a succession of funnels. The smallest-diameter funnel controls the rate at which the bottle is filled, whether it is the first or the last in the series. Pouring liquid into the first funnel faster than it can drain through the smallest results in an overflow. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

Look at the rate laws for each elementary reaction in our example as well as for the overall reaction.

rate laws for each elementary reaction in our example as well as for the overall reaction.

step 1	$\mathrm{NO_2 + NO_2 \xrightarrow{k_1} NO_3 + NO}$	$\mathrm{rate} = k_1[\mathrm{NO_2}]^2 \ \mathrm{(predicted)}$
step 2	$\underline{\mathrm{NO_3 + CO \xrightarrow{k_2} NO_2 + CO_2}}$	$\mathrm{rate} = k_2[\mathrm{NO_3}][\mathrm{CO}] \ \mathrm{(predicted)}$
sum	$\mathrm{NO_2 + CO \xrightarrow{k} NO + CO_2}$	$\mathrm{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO_2}]^2 \ \mathrm{(observed)}$

The experimentally determined rate law for the reaction of NO_2 with CO is the same as the predicted rate law for step 1. This tells us that the first elementary reaction is the rate-determining step, so k for the overall reaction must equal k_1. That is, NO_3 is formed slowly in step 1, but once it is formed, it reacts very rapidly with CO in step 2.

Sometimes chemists are able to propose two or more mechanisms that are consistent with the available data. If a proposed mechanism predicts the wrong experimental rate law, however, the mechanism must be incorrect.

Example 10.10.1: A Reaction with an Intermediate

In an alternative mechanism for the reaction of $\mathrm{NO_2}$ with CO with $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ appearing as an intermediate.

alternative mechanism for the reaction of NO_2 with CO with N_2O_4 appearing as an intermediate.

step 1	$NO_2 + NO_2 \xrightarrow{k_1} N_2O_4$
step 2	$\underline{N_2O_4 + CO \xrightarrow{k_2} NO + NO_2 + CO_2}$
sum	$NO_2 + CO \rightarrow NO + CO_2$

Write the rate law for each elementary reaction. Is this mechanism consistent with the experimentally determined rate law (rate = $k[NO_2]^2$)?

Given: elementary reactions

Asked for: rate law for each elementary reaction and overall rate law

Strategy:

A. Determine the rate law for each elementary reaction in the reaction.
B. Determine which rate law corresponds to the experimentally determined rate law for the reaction. This rate law is the one for the rate-determining step.

Solution

A The rate law for step 1 is rate = $k_1[NO_2]^2$; for step 2, it is rate = $k_2[N_2O_4][CO]$.

B If step 1 is slow (and therefore the rate-determining step), then the overall rate law for the reaction will be the same: rate = $k_1[NO_2]^2$. This is the same as the experimentally determined rate law. Hence this mechanism, with N_2O_4 as an intermediate, and the one described previously, with NO_3 as an intermediate, are kinetically indistinguishable. In this case, further experiments are needed to distinguish between them. For example, the researcher could try to detect the proposed intermediates, NO_3 and N_2O_4, directly.

Exercise 10.10.1

Iodine monochloride (ICl) reacts with H_2 as follows:

$$2\,ICl\,(l) + H_2\,(g) \rightarrow 2\,HCl\,(g) + I_2\,(s)$$

The experimentally determined rate law is $rate = k[ICl][H_2]$. Write a two-step mechanism for this reaction using only bimolecular elementary reactions and show that it is consistent with the experimental rate law. (Hint: HI is an intermediate.)

Answer

Solutions to Exercise 14.6.1

step 1	$ICl + H_2 \xrightarrow{k_1} HCl + HI$	$\text{rate} = k_1[ICl][H_2]$ (slow)
step 2	$\underline{HI + ICl \xrightarrow{k_2} HCl + I_2}$	$\text{rate} = k_2[HI][ICl]$ (fast)
sum	$2ICl + H_2 \rightarrow 2HCl + I_2$	

This mechanism is consistent with the experimental rate law if the first step is the rate-determining step.

Example 10.10.2 : Nitrogen Oxide Reacting with Molecular Hydrogen

Assume the reaction between NO and H_2 occurs via a three-step process:

the reaction between NO and H_2 occurs via a three-step process

step 1	$NO + NO \xrightarrow{k_1} N_2O_2$	(fast)
step 2	$N_2O_2 + H_2 \xrightarrow{k_2} N_2O + H_2O$	(slow)
step 3	$N_2O + H_2 \xrightarrow{k_3} N_2 + H_2O$	(fast)

Write the rate law for each elementary reaction, write the balanced chemical equation for the overall reaction, and identify the rate-determining step. Is the rate law for the rate-determining step consistent with the experimentally derived rate law for the overall reaction:

$$\text{rate} = k[NO]^2[H_2]? \qquad \text{(observed)}$$

Answer

- Step 1: $rate = k_1[NO]^2$
- Step 2: $rate = k_2[N_2O_2][H_2]$
- Step 3: $rate = k_3[N_2O][H_2]$

The overall reaction is then

$$2\,NO\,(g) + 2\,H_2\,(g) \longrightarrow N_2\,(g) + 2\,H_2O\,(g)$$

- Rate Determining Step : #2
- Yes, because the rate of formation of $[N_2O_2] = k_1[NO]^2$. Substituting $k_1[NO]^2$ for $[N_2O_2]$ in the rate law for step 2 gives the experimentally derived rate law for the overall chemical reaction, where $k = k_1k_2$.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Reaction Mechanism (Slow step followed by fast step): Reaction Mechanism (Slow step Followed by Fast Step)(opens in new window) [youtu.be] (opens in new window)

Summary

A balanced chemical reaction does not necessarily reveal either the individual elementary reactions by which a reaction occurs or its rate law. A reaction mechanism is the microscopic path by which reactants are transformed into products. Each step is an elementary reaction. Species that are formed in one step and consumed in another are intermediates. Each elementary reaction can be described in terms of its *molecularity*, the number of molecules that collide in that step. The slowest step in a reaction mechanism is the rate-determining step.

This page titled 10.10: Reaction Mechanisms is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 14.6: Reaction Mechanisms by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

10.11: Catalysis

Learning Objectives

- To understand how catalysts increase the reaction rate and the selectivity of chemical reactions.

Catalysts are substances that increase the reaction rate of a chemical reaction without being consumed in the process. A catalyst, therefore, does not appear in the overall stoichiometry of the reaction it catalyzes, but it must appear in at least one of the elementary reactions in the mechanism for the catalyzed reaction. The catalyzed pathway has a lower E_a, but the net change in energy that results from the reaction (the difference between the energy of the reactants and the energy of the products) is not affected by the presence of a catalyst (Figure 10.11.1). Nevertheless, because of its lower E_a, the reaction rate of a catalyzed reaction is faster than the reaction rate of the uncatalyzed reaction at the same temperature. Because a catalyst decreases the height of the energy barrier, its presence increases the reaction rates of both the forward and the reverse reactions by the same amount. In this section, we will examine the three major classes of catalysts: heterogeneous catalysts, homogeneous catalysts, and enzymes.

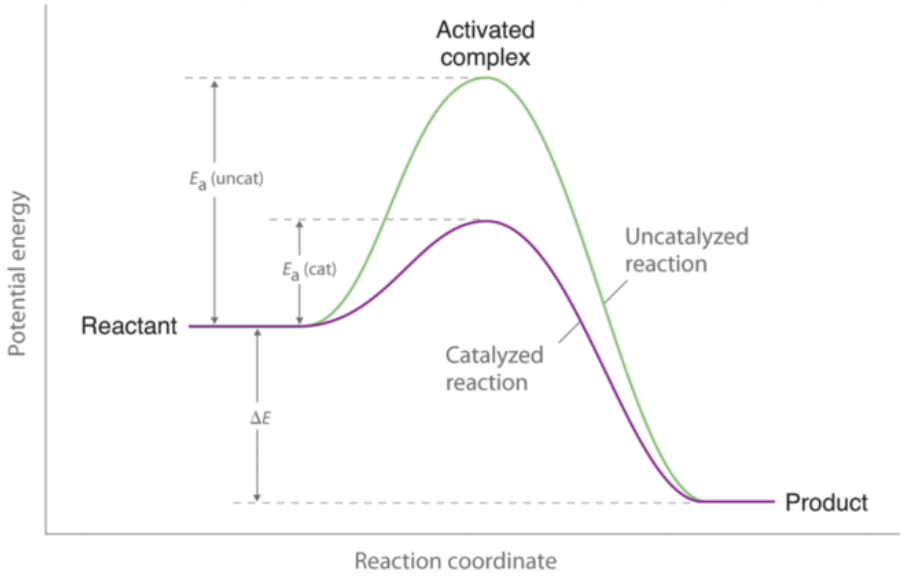


Figure 10.11.1: Lowering the Activation Energy of a Reaction by a Catalyst. This graph compares potential energy diagrams for a single-step reaction in the presence and absence of a catalyst. The only effect of the catalyst is to lower the activation energy of the reaction. The catalyst does not affect the energy of the reactants or products (and thus does not affect ΔE). (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

The green line represents the uncatalyzed reaction. The purple line represent the catalyzed reaction .

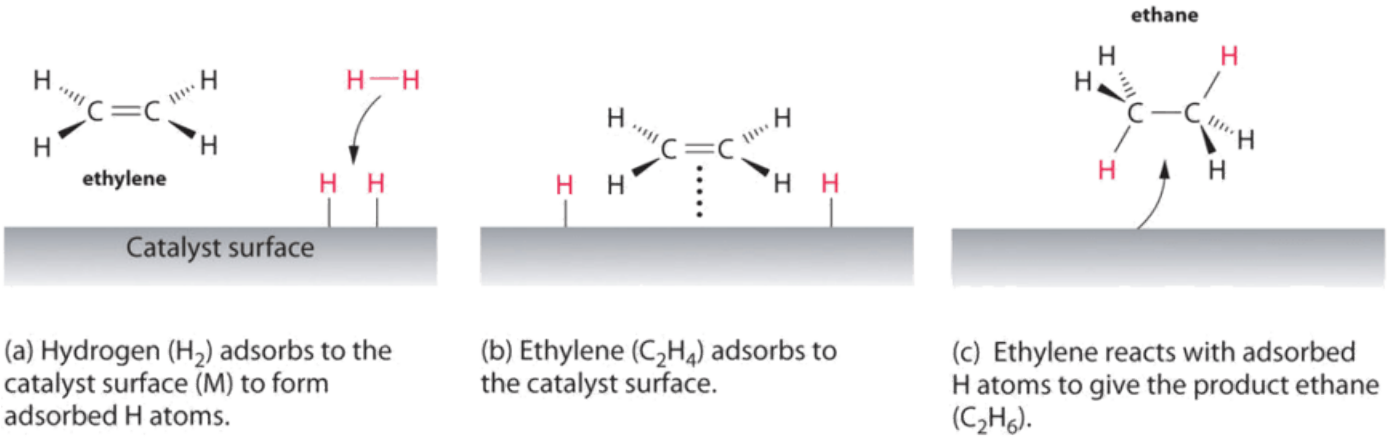
A catalyst affects E_a, not ΔE.

Heterogeneous Catalysis

In **heterogeneous catalysis**, the catalyst is in a different phase from the reactants. At least one of the reactants interacts with the solid surface in a physical process called adsorption in such a way that a chemical bond in the reactant becomes weak and then breaks. Poisons are substances that bind irreversibly to catalysts, preventing reactants from adsorbing and thus reducing or destroying the catalyst's efficiency.

An example of heterogeneous catalysis is the interaction of hydrogen gas with the surface of a metal, such as Ni, Pd, or Pt. As shown in part (a) in Figure 10.11.2, the hydrogen–hydrogen bonds break and produce individual adsorbed hydrogen atoms on the surface of the metal. Because the adsorbed atoms can move around on the surface, two hydrogen atoms can collide and form a molecule of hydrogen gas that can then leave the surface in the reverse process, called desorption. Adsorbed H atoms on a metal surface are substantially more reactive than a hydrogen molecule. Because the relatively strong H–H bond (dissociation energy =

432 kJ/mol) has already been broken, the energy barrier for most reactions of H_2 is substantially lower on the catalyst surface.



(a) Hydrogen (H_2) adsorbs to the catalyst surface (M) to form adsorbed H atoms.

(b) Ethylene (C_2H_4) adsorbs to the catalyst surface.

(c) Ethylene reacts with adsorbed H atoms to give the product ethane (C_2H_6).

Figure 10.11.2: Hydrogenation of Ethylene on a Heterogeneous Catalyst. When a molecule of hydrogen adsorbs to the catalyst surface, the H–H bond breaks, and new M–H bonds are formed. The individual H atoms are more reactive than gaseous H_2. When a molecule of ethylene interacts with the catalyst surface, it reacts with the H atoms in a stepwise process to eventually produce ethane, which is released. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

Figure 10.11.2 shows a process called *hydrogenation*, in which hydrogen atoms are added to the double bond of an alkene, such as ethylene, to give a product that contains C–C single bonds, in this case ethane. Hydrogenation is used in the food industry to convert vegetable oils, which consist of long chains of alkenes, to more commercially valuable solid derivatives that contain alkyl chains. Hydrogenation of some of the double bonds in polyunsaturated vegetable oils, for example, produces margarine, a product with a melting point, texture, and other physical properties similar to those of butter.

Several important examples of industrial heterogeneous catalytic reactions are in Table 10.11.1. Although the mechanisms of these reactions are considerably more complex than the simple hydrogenation reaction described here, they all involve adsorption of the reactants onto a solid catalytic surface, chemical reaction of the adsorbed species (sometimes via a number of intermediate species), and finally desorption of the products from the surface.

Table 10.11.1: Some Commercially Important Reactions that Employ Heterogeneous Catalysts

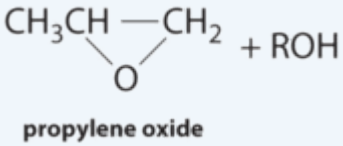
Commercial Process	Catalyst	Initial Reaction	Final Commercial Product
contact process	V_2O_5 or Pt	$2SO_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2SO_3$	H_2SO_4
Haber process	Fe, K_2O, Al_2O_3	$N_2 + 3H_2 \rightarrow 2NH_3$	NH_3
Ostwald process	Pt and Rh	$4NH_3 + 5O_2 \rightarrow 4NO + 6H_2O$	HNO_3
water–gas shift reaction	Fe, Cr_2O_3, or Cu	$CO + H_2O \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2$	H_2 for NH_3, CH_3OH, and other fuels
steam reforming	Ni	$CH_4 + H_2O \rightarrow CO + 3H_2$	H_2
methanol synthesis	ZnO and Cr_2O_3	$CO + 2H_2 \rightarrow CH_3OH$	CH_3OH
Sohio process	bismuth phosphomolybdate	$CH_2{=}CHCH_3 + NH_3 + \frac{3}{2}O_2 \rightarrow CH_2{=}CHCN + 3H_2O$	$CH_2{=}CHCN$ acrylonitrile
catalytic hydrogenation	Ni, Pd, or Pt	RCH=CHR′ + H2 → RCH_2—CH_2R'	partially hydrogenated oils for margarine, and so forth

Homogeneous Catalysis

In **homogeneous catalysis**, the catalyst is in the same phase as the reactant(s). The number of collisions between reactants and catalyst is at a maximum because the catalyst is uniformly dispersed throughout the reaction mixture. Many homogeneous

catalysts in industry are transition metal compounds (Table 10.11.2), but recovering these expensive catalysts from solution has been a major challenge. As an added barrier to their widespread commercial use, many homogeneous catalysts can be used only at relatively low temperatures, and even then they tend to decompose slowly in solution. Despite these problems, a number of commercially viable processes have been developed in recent years. High-density polyethylene and polypropylene are produced by homogeneous catalysis.

Table 10.11.2: Some Commercially Important Reactions that Employ Homogeneous Catalysts

Commercial Process	Catalyst	Reactants	Final Product
Union Carbide	$[Rh(CO)_2I_2]^-$	$CO + CH_3OH$	CH_3CO_2H
hydroperoxide process	Mo(VI) complexes	$CH_3CH{=}CH_2 + R{-}O{-}O{-}H$	 propylene oxide
hydroformylation	Rh/PR_3 complexes	$RCH{=}CH_2 + CO + H_2$	RCH_2CH_2CHO
adiponitrile process	Ni/PR_3complexes	$2HCN + CH_2{=}CHCH{=}CH_2$	$NCCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CN$ used to synthesize nylon
olefin polymerization	$(RC_5H_5)_2ZrCl_2$	$CH_2{=}CH_2$	$-(CH_2CH_2-)_n$: high-density polyethylene

Enzymes

Enzymes, catalysts that occur naturally in living organisms, are almost all protein molecules with typical molecular masses of 20,000–100,000 amu. Some are homogeneous catalysts that react in aqueous solution within a cellular compartment of an organism. Others are heterogeneous catalysts embedded within the membranes that separate cells and cellular compartments from their surroundings. The reactant in an enzyme-catalyzed reaction is called a **substrate**.

Because enzymes can increase reaction rates by enormous factors (up to 10^{17} times the uncatalyzed rate) and tend to be very specific, typically producing only a single product in quantitative yield, they are the focus of active research. At the same time, enzymes are usually expensive to obtain, they often cease functioning at temperatures greater than 37 °C, have limited stability in solution, and have such high specificity that they are confined to turning one particular set of reactants into one particular product. This means that separate processes using different enzymes must be developed for chemically similar reactions, which is time-consuming and expensive. Thus far, enzymes have found only limited industrial applications, although they are used as ingredients in laundry detergents, contact lens cleaners, and meat tenderizers. The enzymes in these applications tend to be proteases, which are able to cleave the amide bonds that hold amino acids together in proteins. Meat tenderizers, for example, contain a protease called papain, which is isolated from papaya juice. It cleaves some of the long, fibrous protein molecules that make inexpensive cuts of beef tough, producing a piece of meat that is more tender. Some insects, like the bombadier beetle, carry an enzyme capable of catalyzing the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide to water (Figure 10.11.3).



Figure 10.11.3: A Catalytic Defense Mechanism. The scalding, foul-smelling spray emitted by this bombardier beetle is produced by the catalytic decomposition of H_2O_2.

Enzyme inhibitors cause a decrease in the reaction rate of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction by binding to a specific portion of an enzyme and thus slowing or preventing a reaction from occurring. Irreversible inhibitors are therefore the equivalent of poisons in heterogeneous catalysis. One of the oldest and most widely used commercial enzyme inhibitors is aspirin, which selectively inhibits one of the enzymes involved in the synthesis of molecules that trigger inflammation. The design and synthesis of related molecules that are more effective, more selective, and less toxic than aspirin are important objectives of biomedical research.

Summary

Catalysts participate in a chemical reaction and increase its rate. They do not appear in the reaction's net equation and are not consumed during the reaction. Catalysts allow a reaction to proceed via a pathway that has a lower activation energy than the uncatalyzed reaction. In heterogeneous catalysis, catalysts provide a surface to which reactants bind in a process of adsorption. In homogeneous catalysis, catalysts are in the same phase as the reactants. Enzymes are biological catalysts that produce large increases in reaction rates and tend to be specific for certain reactants and products. The reactant in an enzyme-catalyzed reaction is called a substrate. Enzyme inhibitors cause a decrease in the reaction rate of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction.

This page titled 10.11: Catalysis is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 14.7: Catalysis is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

11: ELECTROCHEMISTRY

Petrucci: *General Chemistry*
Principles and Modern Applications

Template:HideTOC

- Topic hierarchy

11.1: Electrode Potentials and their Measurement
11.2: Standard Electrode Potentials
11.3: Ecell, ΔG, and K
11.4: Ecell as a Function of Concentrations
11.5: Electrolysis: Causing Nonspontaneous Reactions to Occur
11.6: Industrial Electrolysis Processes
11.7: Batteries: Producing Electricity Through Chemical Reactions

This page titled 11: Electrochemistry is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.1: Electrode Potentials and their Measurement

Learning Objectives

- To distinguish between galvanic and electrolytic cells.

In any electrochemical process, electrons flow from one chemical substance to another, driven by an oxidation–reduction (redox) reaction. A redox reaction occurs when electrons are transferred from a substance that is oxidized to one that is being reduced. The **reductant** is the substance that loses electrons and is oxidized in the process; the **oxidant** is the species that gains electrons and is reduced in the process. The associated potential energy is determined by the potential difference between the valence electrons in atoms of different elements.

Because it is impossible to have a reduction without an oxidation and vice versa, a redox reaction can be described as two **half-reactions**, one representing the oxidation process and one the reduction process. For the reaction of zinc with bromine, the overall chemical reaction is as follows:

$$Zn_{(s)} + Br_{2(aq)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2Br^{-}_{(aq)} \tag{11.1.1}$$

The half-reactions are as follows:

reduction half-reaction:

$$Br_{2(aq)} + 2e^{-} \rightarrow 2Br^{-}_{(aq)} \tag{11.1.2}$$

oxidation half-reaction:

$$Zn_{(s)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2e^{-} \tag{11.1.3}$$

Each half-reaction is written to show what is actually occurring in the system; Zn is the reductant in this reaction (it loses electrons), and Br_2 is the oxidant (it gains electrons). Adding the two half-reactions gives the overall chemical reaction (Equation 11.1.1). A redox reaction is balanced when the number of electrons lost by the reductant equals the number of electrons gained by the oxidant. Like any balanced chemical equation, the overall process is electrically neutral; that is, the net charge is the same on both sides of the equation.

Note

In any redox reaction, the number of electrons lost by the reductant equals the number of electrons gained by the oxidant.

In most of our discussions of chemical reactions, we have assumed that the reactants are in intimate physical contact with one another. Acid–base reactions, for example, are usually carried out with the acid and the base dispersed in a single phase, such as a liquid solution. With redox reactions, however, it is possible to physically separate the oxidation and reduction half-reactions in space, as long as there is a complete circuit, including an external electrical connection, such as a wire, between the two half-reactions. As the reaction progresses, the electrons flow from the reductant to the oxidant over this electrical connection, producing an electric current that can be used to do work. An apparatus that is used to generate electricity from a spontaneous redox reaction or, conversely, that uses electricity to drive a nonspontaneous redox reaction is called an **electrochemical cell**.

There are two types of electrochemical cells: galvanic cells and electrolytic cells. Galvanic cells are named for the Italian physicist and physician Luigi Galvani (1737–1798), who observed that dissected frog leg muscles twitched when a small electric shock was applied, demonstrating the electrical nature of nerve impulses. A **galvanic (voltaic) cell** uses the energy released during a spontaneous redox reaction ($\Delta G < 0$) to generate electricity. This type of electrochemical cell is often called a voltaic cell after its inventor, the Italian physicist Alessandro Volta (1745–1827). In contrast, an **electrolytic cell** consumes electrical energy from an external source, using it to cause a nonspontaneous redox reaction to occur ($\Delta G > 0$). Both types contain two **electrodes**, which are solid metals connected to an external circuit that provides an electrical connection between the two parts of the system

(Figure 11.1.1). The oxidation half-reaction occurs at one electrode (the **anode**), and the reduction half-reaction occurs at the other (the **cathode**). When the circuit is closed, electrons flow from the anode to the cathode. The electrodes are also connected by an electrolyte, an ionic substance or solution that allows ions to transfer between the electrode compartments, thereby maintaining the system's electrical neutrality. In this section, we focus on reactions that occur in galvanic cells.

Figure 11.1.1: Electrochemical Cells. A galvanic cell (left) transforms the energy released by a spontaneous redox reaction into electrical energy that can be used to perform work. The oxidative and reductive half-reactions usually occur in separate compartments that are connected by an external electrical circuit; in addition, a second connection that allows ions to flow between the compartments (shown here as a vertical dashed line to represent a porous barrier) is necessary to maintain electrical neutrality. The potential difference between the electrodes (voltage) causes electrons to flow from the reductant to the oxidant through the external circuit, generating an electric current. In an electrolytic cell (right), an external source of electrical energy is used to generate a potential difference between the electrodes that forces electrons to flow, driving a nonspontaneous redox reaction; only a single compartment is employed in most applications. In both kinds of electrochemical cells, the anode is the electrode at which the oxidation half-reaction occurs, and the cathode is the electrode at which the reduction half-reaction occurs.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Electrochemical Cells: https://youtu.be/nyS1BQ2ZVIg

Galvanic (Voltaic) Cells

To illustrate the basic principles of a galvanic cell, let's consider the reaction of metallic zinc with cupric ion (Cu^{2+}) to give copper metal and Zn^{2+} ion. The balanced chemical equation is as follows:

$$Zn_{(s)} + Cu^{2+}_{(aq)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} + Cu_{(s)} \tag{11.1.4}$$

We can cause this reaction to occur by inserting a zinc rod into an aqueous solution of copper(II) sulfate. As the reaction proceeds, the zinc rod dissolves, and a mass of metallic copper forms. These changes occur spontaneously, but all the energy released is in the form of heat rather than in a form that can be used to do work.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Figure 11.1.2: The Reaction of Metallic Zinc with Aqueous Copper(II) Ions in a Single Compartment. When a zinc rod is inserted into a beaker that contains an aqueous solution of copper(II) sulfate, a spontaneous redox reaction occurs: the zinc electrode dissolves to give Zn^{2+}(aq) ions, while Cu^{2+}(aq) ions are simultaneously reduced to metallic copper. The reaction occurs so rapidly that the copper is deposited as very fine particles that appear black, rather than the usual reddish color of copper.

This same reaction can be carried out using the galvanic cell illustrated in part (a) in Figure 11.1.3. To assemble the cell, a copper strip is inserted into a beaker that contains a 1 M solution of Cu^{2+} ions, and a zinc strip is inserted into a different beaker that contains a 1 M solution of Zn^{2+} ions. The two metal strips, which serve as electrodes, are connected by a wire, and the

compartments are connected by a **salt bridge**, a U-shaped tube inserted into both solutions that contains a concentrated liquid or gelled electrolyte. The ions in the salt bridge are selected so that they do not interfere with the electrochemical reaction by being oxidized or reduced themselves or by forming a precipitate or complex; commonly used cations and anions are Na^+ or K^+ and NO_3^- or SO_4^{2-}, respectively. (The ions in the salt bridge do not have to be the same as those in the redox couple in either compartment.) When the circuit is closed, a spontaneous reaction occurs: zinc metal is oxidized to Zn^{2+} ions at the zinc electrode (the anode), and Cu^{2+} ions are reduced to Cu metal at the copper electrode (the cathode). As the reaction progresses, the zinc strip dissolves, and the concentration of Zn^{2+} ions in the Zn^{2+} solution increases; simultaneously, the copper strip gains mass, and the concentration of Cu^{2+} ions in the Cu^{2+} solution decreases (part (b) in Figure 11.1.3). Thus we have carried out the same reaction as we did using a single beaker, but this time the oxidative and reductive half-reactions are physically separated from each other. The electrons that are released at the anode flow through the wire, producing an electric current. Galvanic cells therefore transform chemical energy into electrical energy that can then be used to do work.

Figure 11.1.2: The Reaction of Metallic Zinc with Aqueous Copper(II) Ions in a Galvanic Cell. (a) A galvanic cell can be constructed by inserting a copper strip into a beaker that contains an aqueous 1 M solution of Cu^{2+} ions and a zinc strip into a different beaker that contains an aqueous 1 M solution of Zn^{2+} ions. The two metal strips are connected by a wire that allows electricity to flow, and the beakers are connected by a salt bridge. When the switch is closed to complete the circuit, the zinc electrode (the anode) is spontaneously oxidized to Zn^{2+} ions in the left compartment, while Cu^{2+} ions are simultaneously reduced to copper metal at the copper electrode (the cathode). (b) As the reaction progresses, the Zn anode loses mass as it dissolves to give Zn^{2+}(aq) ions, while the Cu cathode gains mass as Cu^{2+}(aq) ions are reduced to copper metal that is deposited on the cathode.

The electrolyte in the salt bridge serves two purposes: it completes the circuit by carrying electrical charge and maintains electrical neutrality in both solutions by allowing ions to migrate between them. The identity of the salt in a salt bridge is unimportant, as long as the component ions do not react or undergo a redox reaction under the operating conditions of the cell. Without such a connection, the total positive charge in the Zn^{2+} solution would increase as the zinc metal dissolves, and the total positive charge in the Cu^{2+} solution would decrease. The salt bridge allows charges to be neutralized by a flow of anions into the Zn^{2+} solution and a flow of cations into the Cu^{2+} solution. In the absence of a salt bridge or some other similar connection, the reaction would rapidly cease because electrical neutrality could not be maintained.

A galvanic cell. *This galvanic cell illustrates the use of a salt bridge to connect two solutions.*

A voltmeter can be used to measure the difference in electrical potential between the two compartments. Opening the switch that connects the wires to the anode and the cathode prevents a current from flowing, so no chemical reaction occurs. With the switch closed, however, the external circuit is closed, and an electric current can flow from the anode to the cathode. The **potential (E_{cell})** of the cell, measured in volts, is the difference in electrical potential between the two half-reactions and is related to the energy needed to move a charged particle in an electric field. In the cell we have described, the voltmeter indicates a potential of 1.10 V (part (a) in Figure 11.1.3). Because electrons from the oxidation half-reaction are released at the anode, the anode in a galvanic cell is negatively charged. The cathode, which attracts electrons, is positively charged.

Note

A galvanic (voltaic) cell converts the energy released by a spontaneous chemical reaction to electrical energy. An electrolytic cell consumes electrical energy from an external source to drive a nonspontaneous chemical reaction.

Not all electrodes undergo a chemical transformation during a redox reaction. The electrode can be made from an inert, highly conducting metal such as platinum to prevent it from reacting during a redox process, where it does not appear in the overall electrochemical reaction. This phenomenon is illustrated in Example 11.1.1.

Example 11.1.1

A chemist has constructed a galvanic cell consisting of two beakers. One beaker contains a strip of tin immersed in aqueous sulfuric acid, and the other contains a platinum electrode immersed in aqueous nitric acid. The two solutions are connected by a salt bridge, and the electrodes are connected by a wire. Current begins to flow, and bubbles of a gas appear at the platinum electrode. The spontaneous redox reaction that occurs is described by the following balanced chemical equation:

$$3Sn_{(s)} + 2NO^{-}_{3(aq)} + 8H^{+}_{(aq)} \rightarrow 3Sn^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2NO_{(g)} + 4H_2O_{(l)} \tag{11.1.5}$$

For this galvanic cell,

a. write the half-reaction that occurs at each electrode.
b. indicate which electrode is the cathode and which is the anode.
c. indicate which electrode is the positive electrode and which is the negative electrode.

Given: galvanic cell and redox reaction

Asked for: half-reactions, identity of anode and cathode, and electrode assignment as positive or negative

Strategy:

A. Identify the oxidation half-reaction and the reduction half-reaction. Then identify the anode and cathode from the half-reaction that occurs at each electrode.
B. From the direction of electron flow, assign each electrode as either positive or negative.

Solution:

a. **A** In the reduction half-reaction, nitrate is reduced to nitric oxide. (The nitric oxide would then react with oxygen in the air to form NO_2, with its characteristic red-brown color.) In the oxidation half-reaction, metallic tin is oxidized. The half-reactions corresponding to the actual reactions that occur in the system are as follows:

$$\text{reduction: } NO_3^-(aq) + 4H^+(aq) + 3e^- \rightarrow NO(g) + 2H_2O(l)$$

$$\text{oxidation: } Sn(s) \rightarrow Sn^{2+}(aq) + 2e^-$$

Thus nitrate is reduced to NO, while the tin electrode is oxidized to Sn^{2+}.

b. Because the reduction reaction occurs at the Pt electrode, it is the cathode. Conversely, the oxidation reaction occurs at the tin electrode, so it is the anode.
c. **B** Electrons flow from the tin electrode through the wire to the platinum electrode, where they transfer to nitrate. The electric circuit is completed by the salt bridge, which permits the diffusion of cations toward the cathode and anions toward the anode. Because electrons flow from the tin electrode, it must be electrically negative. In contrast, electrons flow toward the Pt electrode, so that electrode must be electrically positive.

Exercise 11.1.1

Consider a simple galvanic cell consisting of two beakers connected by a salt bridge. One beaker contains a solution of MnO_4^- in dilute sulfuric acid and has a Pt electrode. The other beaker contains a solution of Sn^{2+} in dilute sulfuric acid, also with a Pt electrode. When the two electrodes are connected by a wire, current flows and a spontaneous reaction occurs that is described by the following balanced chemical equation:

$$2MnO^{-}_{4(aq)} + 5Sn^{2+}_{(aq)} + 16H^{+}_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2Mn^{2+}_{(aq)} + 5Sn^{4+}_{(aq)} + 8H_2O_{(l)} \tag{11.1.6}$$

For this galvanic cell,

a. write the half-reaction that occurs at each electrode.
b. indicate which electrode is the cathode and which is the anode.
c. indicate which electrode is positive and which is negative.

Answer

a. $MnO_4^-(aq) + 8H^+(aq) + 5e^- \rightarrow Mn^{2+}(aq) + 4H_2O(l)$; $Sn^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Sn^{4+}(aq) + 2e^-$
b. The Pt electrode in the permanganate solution is the cathode; the one in the tin solution is the anode.
c. The cathode (electrode in beaker that contains the permanganate solution) is positive, and the anode (electrode in beaker that contains the tin solution) is negative.

Constructing Cell Diagrams

Because it is somewhat cumbersome to describe any given galvanic cell in words, a more convenient notation has been developed. In this line notation, called a cell diagram, the identity of the electrodes and the chemical contents of the compartments are indicated by their chemical formulas, with the anode written on the far left and the cathode on the far right. Phase boundaries are shown by single vertical lines, and the salt bridge, which has two phase boundaries, by a double vertical line. Thus the cell diagram for the Zn/Cu cell shown in part (a) in Figure 11.1.3 is written as follows:

Figure 11.1.3.

A cell diagram includes solution concentrations when they are provided.

Galvanic cells can have arrangements other than the examples we have seen so far. For example, the voltage produced by a redox reaction can be measured more accurately using two electrodes immersed in a single beaker containing an electrolyte that completes the circuit. This arrangement reduces errors caused by resistance to the flow of charge at a boundary, called the **junction potential**. One example of this type of galvanic cell is as follows:

$$Pt_{(s)} \,|\, H_{2(g)} | HCl_{(aq)} \,|\, AgCl_{(s)}\, Ag_{(s)} \tag{11.1.7}$$

This cell diagram does not include a double vertical line representing a salt bridge because there is no salt bridge providing a junction between two dissimilar solutions. Moreover, solution concentrations have not been specified, so they are not included in the cell diagram. The half-reactions and the overall reaction for this cell are as follows:

cathode reaction:

$$AgCl_{(s)} + e^- \rightarrow Ag_{(s)} + Cl^-_{(aq)} \tag{11.1.8}$$

anode reaction:

$$\frac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{H_{2(g)}} \rightarrow \mathrm{H^+_{(aq)}} + \mathrm{e^-} \tag{11.1.9}$$

overall:

$$\mathrm{AgCl_{(s)}} + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{H_{2(g)}} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ag_{(s)}} + \mathrm{Cl^-_{(aq)}} + \mathrm{H^+_{(aq)}} \tag{11.1.10}$$

A single-compartment galvanic cell will initially exhibit the same voltage as a galvanic cell constructed using separate compartments, but it will discharge rapidly because of the direct reaction of the reactant at the anode with the oxidized member of the cathodic redox couple. Consequently, cells of this type are not particularly useful for producing electricity.

Example 11.1.2

Draw a cell diagram for the galvanic cell described in Example 1. The balanced chemical reaction is as follows:

$$3Sn_{(s)} + 2NO^-_{3(aq)} + 8H^+_{(aq)} \rightarrow 3Sn^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2NO_{(g)} + 4H_2O_{(l)} \tag{11.1.11}$$

Given: galvanic cell and redox reaction

Asked for: cell diagram

Strategy:

Using the symbols described, write the cell diagram beginning with the oxidation half-reaction on the left.

Solution

The anode is the tin strip, and the cathode is the Pt electrode. Beginning on the left with the anode, we indicate the phase boundary between the electrode and the tin solution by a vertical bar. The anode compartment is thus Sn(s)|Sn^{2+}(aq). We could include H_2SO_4(aq) with the contents of the anode compartment, but the sulfate ion (as HSO_4^-) does not participate in the overall reaction, so it does not need to be specifically indicated. The cathode compartment contains aqueous nitric acid, which does participate in the overall reaction, together with the product of the reaction (NO) and the Pt electrode. These are written as HNO_3(aq)|NO(g)|Pt(s), with single vertical bars indicating the phase boundaries. Combining the two compartments and using a double vertical bar to indicate the salt bridge,

$$Sn_{(s)} \,|\, Sn^{2+}_{(aq)} \,||\, HNO_{3(aq)} \,|\, NO_{(g)} \,|\, Pt_{(s)} \tag{11.1.12}$$

The solution concentrations were not specified, so they are not included in this cell diagram.

Exercise 11.1.2

Draw the cell diagram for the following reaction, assuming the concentration of Ag^+ and Mg^{2+} are each 1 M:

$$Mg_{(s)} + 2Ag^+_{(aq)} \rightarrow Mg^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2Ag_{(s)} \tag{11.1.13}$$

Answer

$$Mg(s) \,|\, Mg^{2+}(aq, 1M \,||\, Ag^+(aq, 1M) \,|\, Ag(s) \tag{11.1.14}$$

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Cell Diagrams: https://youtu.be/IKqOAfivem8

Summary

- A galvanic (voltaic) cell uses the energy released during a spontaneous redox reaction to generate electricity, whereas an electrolytic cell consumes electrical energy from an external source to force a reaction to occur.

Electrochemistry is the study of the relationship between electricity and chemical reactions. The oxidation–reduction reaction that occurs during an electrochemical process consists of two half-reactions, one representing the oxidation process and one the reduction process. The sum of the half-reactions gives the overall chemical reaction. The overall redox reaction is balanced when the number of electrons lost by the reductant equals the number of electrons gained by the oxidant. An electric current is produced from the flow of electrons from the reductant to the oxidant. An electrochemical cell can either generate electricity from a spontaneous redox reaction or consume electricity to drive a nonspontaneous reaction. In a galvanic (voltaic) cell, the

energy from a spontaneous reaction generates electricity, whereas in an electrolytic cell, electrical energy is consumed to drive a nonspontaneous redox reaction. Both types of cells use two electrodes that provide an electrical connection between systems that are separated in space. The oxidative half-reaction occurs at the anode, and the reductive half-reaction occurs at the cathode. A salt bridge connects the separated solutions, allowing ions to migrate to either solution to ensure the system's electrical neutrality. A voltmeter is a device that measures the flow of electric current between two half-reactions. The potential of a cell, measured in volts, is the energy needed to move a charged particle in an electric field. An electrochemical cell can be described using line notation called a cell diagram, in which vertical lines indicate phase boundaries and the location of the salt bridge. Resistance to the flow of charge at a boundary is called the junction potential.

This page titled 11.1: Electrode Potentials and their Measurement is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 20.1: Electrode Potentials and their Measurement is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

11.2: Standard Electrode Potentials

Learning Objectives

- To use redox potentials to predict whether a reaction is spontaneous.
- To balance redox reactions using half-reactions.

In a galvanic cell, current is produced when electrons flow externally through the circuit from the anode to the cathode because of a difference in potential energy between the two electrodes in the electrochemical cell. In the Zn/Cu system, the valence electrons in zinc have a substantially higher potential energy than the valence electrons in copper because of shielding of the s electrons of zinc by the electrons in filled d orbitals. Hence electrons flow spontaneously from zinc to copper(II) ions, forming zinc(II) ions and metallic copper. Just like water flowing spontaneously downhill, which can be made to do work by forcing a waterwheel, the flow of electrons from a higher potential energy to a lower one can also be harnessed to perform work.

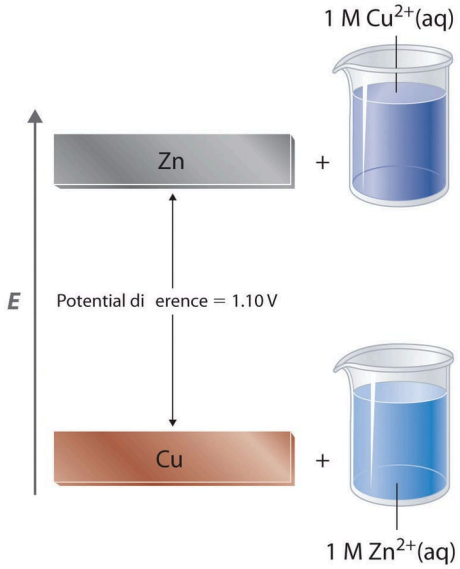


Figure 11.2.1: Potential Energy Difference in the Zn/Cu System. The potential energy of a system consisting of metallic Zn and aqueous Cu^{2+} ions is greater than the potential energy of a system consisting of metallic Cu and aqueous Zn^{2+} ions. Much of this potential energy difference is because the valence electrons of metallic Zn are higher in energy than the valence electrons of metallic Cu. Because the Zn(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq) system is higher in energy by 1.10 V than the Cu(s) + Zn^{2+}(aq) system, energy is released when electrons are transferred from Zn to Cu^{2+} to form Cu and Zn^{2+}.

Because the potential energy of valence electrons differs greatly from one substance to another, the voltage of a galvanic cell depends partly on the identity of the reacting substances. If we construct a galvanic cell similar to the one in part (a) in Figure 19.3 but instead of copper use a strip of cobalt metal and 1 M Co^{2+} in the cathode compartment, the measured voltage is not 1.10 V but 0.51 V. Thus we can conclude that the difference in potential energy between the valence electrons of cobalt and zinc is less than the difference between the valence electrons of copper and zinc by 0.59 V.

The measured potential of a cell also depends strongly on the concentrations of the reacting species and the temperature of the system. To develop a scale of relative potentials that will allow us to predict the direction of an electrochemical reaction and the magnitude of the driving force for the reaction, the potentials for oxidations and reductions of different substances must be measured under comparable conditions. To do this, chemists use the **standard cell potential** ($E°_{cell}$), defined as the potential of a cell measured under standard conditions—that is, with all species in their standard states (1 M for solutions,Concentrated solutions of salts (about 1 M) generally do not exhibit ideal behavior, and the actual standard state corresponds to an activity of 1 rather than a concentration of 1 M. Corrections for nonideal behavior are important for precise quantitative work but not for the more qualitative approach that we are taking here. 1 atm for gases, pure solids or pure liquids for other substances) and at a fixed

temperature, usually 25°C.

> **Note**
>
> Measured redox potentials depend on the potential energy of valence electrons, the concentrations of the species in the reaction, and the temperature of the system.

Measuring Standard Electrode Potentials

It is physically impossible to measure the potential of a single electrode: only the difference between the potentials of two electrodes can be measured. (This is analogous to measuring absolute enthalpies or free energies. Recall that only differences in enthalpy and free energy can be measured.) We can, however, compare the standard cell potentials for two different galvanic cells that have one kind of electrode in common. This allows us to measure the potential difference between two dissimilar electrodes. For example, the measured standard cell potential (E°) for the Zn/Cu system is 1.10 V, whereas E° for the corresponding Zn/Co system is 0.51 V. This implies that the potential difference between the Co and Cu electrodes is 1.10 V – 0.51 V = 0.59 V. In fact, that is exactly the potential measured under standard conditions if a cell is constructed with the following cell diagram:

$$Co_{(s)} \mid Co^{2+}(aq, 1M) \parallel Cu^{2+}(aq, 1M) \mid Cu(s) \qquad E°= 0.59\ V \tag{11.2.1}$$

This cell diagram corresponds to the oxidation of a cobalt anode and the reduction of Cu^{2+} in solution at the copper cathode.

All tabulated values of standard electrode potentials by convention are listed for a reaction written as a reduction, not as an oxidation, to be able to compare standard potentials for different substances (Table P1). The standard cell potential ($E°_{cell}$) is therefore the difference between the tabulated reduction potentials of the two half-reactions, not their sum:

$$E°_{cell} = E°_{cathode} - E°_{anode} \tag{11.2.2}$$

In contrast, recall that half-reactions are written to show the reduction and oxidation reactions that actually occur in the cell, so the overall cell reaction is written as the sum of the two half-reactions. According to Equation 11.2.2, when we know the standard potential for any single half-reaction, we can obtain the value of the standard potential of many other half-reactions by measuring the standard potential of the corresponding cell.

> **Note**
>
> The overall cell reaction is the sum of the two half-reactions, but the cell potential is the difference between the reduction potentials:
>
> $$E°_{cell} = E°_{cathode} - E°_{anode} \tag{11.2.3}$$

Although it is impossible to measure the potential of any electrode directly, we can choose a reference electrode whose potential is defined as 0 V under standard conditions. The **standard hydrogen electrode (SHE)** is universally used for this purpose and is assigned a standard potential of 0 V. It consists of a strip of platinum wire in contact with an aqueous solution containing 1 M H^+. The $[H^+]$ in solution is in equilibrium with H_2 gas at a pressure of 1 atm at the Pt-solution interface (Figure 11.2.2). Protons are reduced or hydrogen molecules are oxidized at the Pt surface according to the following equation:

$$2H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons H_{2(g)} \tag{11.2.4}$$

One especially attractive feature of the SHE is that the Pt metal electrode is not consumed during the reaction.

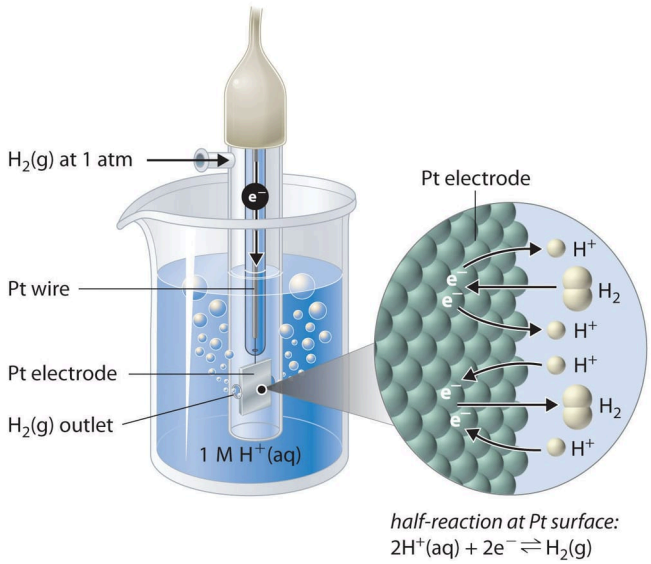


Figure 11.2.2: The Standard Hydrogen Electrode. The SHE consists of platinum wire that is connected to a Pt surface in contact with an aqueous solution containing 1 M H^+ in equilibrium with H_2 gas at a pressure of 1 atm. In the molecular view, the Pt surface catalyzes the oxidation of hydrogen molecules to protons or the reduction of protons to hydrogen gas. (Water is omitted for clarity.) The standard potential of the SHE is arbitrarily assigned a value of 0 V.

Figure 11.2.3 shows a galvanic cell that consists of a SHE in one beaker and a Zn strip in another beaker containing a solution of Zn^{2+} ions. When the circuit is closed, the voltmeter indicates a potential of 0.76 V. The zinc electrode begins to dissolve to form Zn^{2+}, and H^+ ions are reduced to H_2 in the other compartment. Thus the hydrogen electrode is the cathode, and the zinc electrode is the anode. The diagram for this galvanic cell is as follows:

$$Zn_{(s)} \mid Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} \parallel H^+(aq, 1M) \mid H_2(g, 1atm) \mid Pt_{(s)} \tag{11.2.5}$$

The half-reactions that actually occur in the cell and their corresponding electrode potentials are as follows:

- cathode:

$$2H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^- \rightarrow H_{2(g)} \qquad E°_{cathode} = 0V \tag{11.2.6}$$

- anode:

$$Zn_{(s)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2e^- \qquad E°_{anode} = -0.76\ V \tag{11.2.7}$$

- overall:

$$Zn_{(s)} + 2H^+_{(aq)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} + H_{2(g)} \tag{11.2.8}$$

$$E°_{cell} = E°_{cathode} - E°_{anode} = 0.76\ V \tag{11.2.9}$$

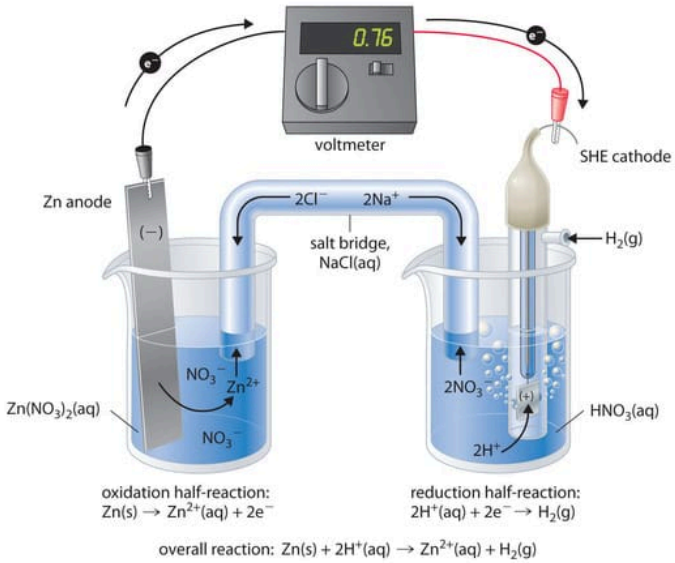


Figure 11.2.3: Determining a Standard Electrode Potential Using a Standard Hydrogen Electrode. The voltmeter shows that the standard cell potential of a galvanic cell consisting of a SHE and a Zn/Zn^{2+} couple is $E°_{cell}$ = 0.76 V. Because the zinc electrode in this cell dissolves spontaneously to form $Zn^{2+}(aq)$ ions while $H^+(aq)$ ions are reduced to H_2 at the platinum surface, the standard electrode potential of the Zn^{2+}/Zn couple is −0.76 V.

Although the reaction at the anode is an oxidation, by convention its tabulated E° value is reported as a reduction potential. The potential of a half-reaction measured against the SHE under standard conditions is called the **standard electrode potential** for that half-reaction.In this example, the standard reduction potential for $Zn^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Zn(s)$ is −0.76 V, which means that the standard electrode potential for the reaction that occurs at the anode, the oxidation of Zn to Zn^{2+}, often called the Zn/Zn^{2+} redox couple, or the Zn/Zn^{2+} couple, is −(−0.76 V) = 0.76 V. We must therefore subtract $E°_{anode}$ from $E°_{cathode}$ to obtain $E°_{cell}$: 0 − (−0.76 V) = 0.76 V.

Because electrical potential is the energy needed to move a charged particle in an electric field, standard electrode potentials for half-reactions are intensive properties and do not depend on the amount of substance involved. Consequently, E° values are independent of the stoichiometric coefficients for the half-reaction, and, most important, the coefficients used to produce a balanced overall reaction do not affect the value of the cell potential.

Note

E° values do **NOT** depend on the stoichiometric coefficients for a half-reaction, because it is an *intensive* property.

Standard Electrode Potentials

To measure the potential of the Cu/Cu^{2+} couple, we can construct a galvanic cell analogous to the one shown in Figure 11.2.3 but containing a Cu/Cu^{2+} couple in the sample compartment instead of Zn/Zn^{2+}. When we close the circuit this time, the measured potential for the cell is negative (−0.34 V) rather than positive. The negative value of $E°_{cell}$ indicates that the direction of spontaneous electron flow is the opposite of that for the Zn/Zn^{2+} couple. Hence the reactions that occur spontaneously, indicated by a positive $E°_{cell}$, are the reduction of Cu^{2+} to Cu at the copper electrode. The copper electrode gains mass as the reaction proceeds, and H_2 is oxidized to H^+ at the platinum electrode. In this cell, the copper strip is the cathode, and the hydrogen electrode is the anode. The cell diagram therefore is written with the SHE on the left and the Cu^{2+}/Cu couple on the right:

$$Pt_{(s)} \mid H_2(g, 1atm) \mid H^+(aq, 1\ M) \parallel Cu^{2+}(aq, 1M) \mid Cu_{(s)} \tag{11.2.10}$$

The half-cell reactions and potentials of the spontaneous reaction are as follows:

- Cathode:

$$Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Cu_{(g)} \quad E°_{cathode} = 0.34\ V \tag{11.2.11}$$

- Anode:

$$H_{2(g)} \rightarrow 2H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^- \quad E°_{anode} = 0\ V \tag{11.2.12}$$

- Overall:

$$H_{2(g)} + Cu^{2+}_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2H^+_{(aq)} + Cu_{(s)} \tag{11.2.13}$$

$$E°_{cell} = E°_{cathode} - E°_{anode} = 0.34\ V \tag{11.2.14}$$

Thus the standard electrode potential for the Cu^{2+}/Cu couple is 0.34 V.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Electrode Potentials and ECell: https://youtu.be/zeeAXleT1c0

Balancing Redox Reactions Using the Half-Reaction Method

Previously, we described a method for balancing redox reactions using oxidation numbers. Oxidation numbers were assigned to each atom in a redox reaction to identify any changes in the oxidation states. Here we present an alternative approach to balancing redox reactions, the half-reaction method, in which the overall redox reaction is divided into an oxidation half-reaction and a reduction half-reaction, each balanced for mass and charge. This method more closely reflects the events that take place in an electrochemical cell, where the two half-reactions may be physically separated from each other.

We can illustrate how to balance a redox reaction using half-reactions with the reaction that occurs when Drano, a commercial solid drain cleaner, is poured into a clogged drain. Drano contains a mixture of sodium hydroxide and powdered aluminum, which in solution reacts to produce hydrogen gas:

$$Al_{(s)} + OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + H_{2(g)} \tag{11.2.15}$$

In this reaction, $Al_{(s)}$ is oxidized to Al^{3+}, and H^+ in water is reduced to H_2 gas, which bubbles through the solution, agitating it and breaking up the clogs.

The overall redox reaction is composed of a reduction half-reaction and an oxidation half-reaction. From the standard electrode potentials listed Table P1, we find the corresponding half-reactions that describe the reduction of H^+ ions in water to $H_2$and the oxidation of Al to Al^{3+} in basic solution:

- reduction:

$$2H_2O_{(l)} + 2e^- \rightarrow 2OH^-_{(aq)} + H_{2(g)} \tag{11.2.16}$$

- oxidation:

$$Al_{(s)} + 4OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + 3e^- \tag{11.2.17}$$

The half-reactions chosen must exactly reflect the reaction conditions, such as the basic conditions shown here. Moreover, the physical states of the reactants and the products must be identical to those given in the overall reaction, whether gaseous, liquid, solid, or in solution.

In Equation 11.2.16, two H^+ ions gain one electron each in the reduction; in Equation 11.2.17, the aluminum atom loses three electrons in the oxidation. The charges are balanced by multiplying the reduction half-reaction (Equation 11.2.16) by 3 and the oxidation half-reaction (Equation 11.2.17) by 2 to give the same number of electrons in both half-reactions:

- Adding the two half-reactions,

$$6H_2O_{(l)} + 2Al_{(s)} + 8OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2Al(OH)^-4(aq) + 3H_{2(g)} + 6OH^-_{(aq)} \tag{11.2.18}$$

Simplifying by canceling substances that appear on both sides of the equation,

$$6H_2O_{(l)} + 2Al_{(s)} + 2OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + 3H_{2(g)} \tag{11.2.19}$$

We have a –2 charge on the left side of the equation and a –2 charge on the right side. Thus the charges are balanced, but we must also check that atoms are balanced:

$$2Al + 8O + 14H = 2Al + 8O + 14H \tag{11.2.20}$$

The atoms also balance, so Equation 11.2.19 is a balanced chemical equation for the redox reaction depicted in Equation 11.2.15.

Note

The half-reaction method requires that half-reactions exactly reflect reaction conditions, and the physical states of the reactants and the products must be identical to those in the overall reaction.

We can also balance a redox reaction by first balancing the atoms in each half-reaction and then balancing the charges. With this alternative method, we do not need to use the half-reactions listed in Table P1 but instead focus on the atoms whose oxidation states change, as illustrated in the following steps:

Step 1: Write the reduction half-reaction and the oxidation half-reaction.

For the reaction shown in Equation 11.2.15, hydrogen is reduced from H^+ in OH^- to H_2, and aluminum is oxidized from Al° to Al^{3+}:

- **Step 2:** Balance the atoms by balancing elements other than O and H. Then balance O atoms by adding H_2O and balance H atoms by adding H^+.

  Elements other than O and H in the previous two equations are balanced as written, so we proceed with balancing the O atoms. We can do this by adding water to the appropriate side of each half-reaction:

  - Balancing H atoms by adding H^+, we obtain the following:
    - We have now balanced the atoms in each half-reaction, but the charges are not balanced.

      Step 3: Balance the charges in each half-reaction by adding electrons.

      Two electrons are gained in the reduction of H^+ ions to H_2, and three electrons are lost during the oxidation of Al° to Al^{3+}:

      - **Step 4:** Multiply the reductive and oxidative half-reactions by appropriate integers to obtain the same number of electrons in both half-reactions.

        In this case, we multiply Equation ??? (the reductive half-reaction) by 3 and Equation ??? (the oxidative half-reaction) by 2 to obtain the same number of electrons in both half-reactions:

        - **Step 5:** Add the two half-reactions and cancel substances that appear on both sides of the equation.

Adding and, in this case, canceling $8H^+$, $3H_2O$, and $6e^-$,

$$2Al_{(s)} + 5H_2O_{(l)} + 3OH^-_{(aq)} + H^+_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + 3H_{2(g)} \tag{11.2.21}$$

We have three OH^- and one H^+ on the left side. Neutralizing the H^+ gives us a total of $5H_2O + H_2O = 6H_2O$ and leaves $2OH^-$ on the left side:

$$2Al_{(s)} + 6H_2O_{(l)} + 2OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + 3H_{2(g)} \tag{11.2.22}$$

Step 6: Check to make sure that all atoms and charges are balanced.

Equation 11.2.22 is identical to Equation 11.2.19, obtained using the first method, so the charges and numbers of atoms on each side of the equation balance.

Example 11.2.1

In acidic solution, the redox reaction of dichromate ion ($Cr_2O^{2-}_7$) and iodide (I^-) can be monitored visually. The yellow dichromate solution reacts with the colorless iodide solution to produce a solution that is deep amber due to the presence of a green $Cr^{3+}_{(aq)}$ complex and brown I_2(aq) ions (Figure 11.2.4):

$$Cr_2O^{2-}_{7(aq)} + I^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow Cr^{3+}_{(aq)} + I_{2(aq)} \tag{11.2.23}$$

Balance this equation using half-reactions.

Given: redox reaction and Table P1

Asked for: balanced chemical equation using half-reactions

Strategy:

Follow the steps to balance the redox reaction using the half-reaction method.

Solution

From the standard electrode potentials listed in Table P1 we find the half-reactions corresponding to the overall reaction:

- reduction:

$$Cr_2O^{2-}_{7(aq)} + 14H^+_{(aq)} + 6e^- \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}(_{(aq)} + 7H_2O_{(l)} \tag{11.2.24}$$

- oxidation:

$$2I^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow I_{2(aq)} + 2e^- \tag{11.2.25}$$

Balancing the number of electrons by multiplying the oxidation reaction by 3,

- oxidation:

$$6I^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow 3I_{2(aq)} + 6e^- \tag{11.2.26}$$

Adding the two half-reactions and canceling electrons,

$$Cr_2O^{2-}_{7(aq)} + 14H^+_{(aq)} + 6I^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}_{(aq)} + 7H_2O_{(l)} + 3I_{2(aq)} \tag{11.2.27}$$

We must now check to make sure the charges and atoms on each side of the equation balance:

(−2) + 14 + (−6) = +6
+6 = +6

2Cr + 7O+ 14H+ 6I = 2Cr + 7O + 14H + 6I

The charges and atoms balance, so our equation is balanced.

We can also use the alternative procedure, which does not require the half-reactions listed in Table P1.

Step 1: Chromium is reduced from Cr^{6+} in $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ to Cr^{3+}, and I^- ions are oxidized to I_2. Dividing the reaction into two half-reactions,

- reduction:

$$Cr_2O_{7(aq)}^{2-} \rightarrow Cr_{(aq)}^{3+} \tag{11.2.28}$$

- oxidation:

$$I_{(aq)}^{-} \rightarrow I_{2(aq)} \tag{11.2.29}$$

Step 2: Balancing the atoms other than oxygen and hydrogen,

- reduction:

$$Cr_2O_{7(aq)}^{2-} \rightarrow 2Cr_{(aq)}^{3+} \tag{11.2.30}$$

- oxidation:

$$2I_{(aq)}^{-} \rightarrow I_{2(aq)} \tag{11.2.31}$$

We now balance the O atoms by adding H_2O—in this case, to the right side of the reduction half-reaction. Because the oxidation half-reaction does not contain oxygen, it can be ignored in this step.

- reduction:

$$Cr_2O_{7(aq)}^{2-} \rightarrow 2Cr_{(aq)}^{3+} + 7H_2O_{(l)} \tag{11.2.32}$$

Next we balance the H atoms by adding H^+ to the left side of the reduction half-reaction. Again, we can ignore the oxidation half-reaction.

- reduction:

$$Cr_2O_{7(aq)}^{2-} + 14H_{(aq)}^{+} \rightarrow 2Cr_{(aq)}^{3+} + 7H_2O_{(l)} \tag{11.2.33}$$

Step 3: We must now add electrons to balance the charges. The reduction half-reaction ($2Cr^{+6}$ to $2Cr^{+3}$) has a +12 charge on the left and a +6 charge on the right, so six electrons are needed to balance the charge. The oxidation half-reaction ($2I^-$ to I_2) has a –2 charge on the left side and a 0 charge on the right, so it needs two electrons to balance the charge:

- reduction: $Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 14H^+(aq) + 6e^- \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}(aq) + 7H_2O(l)$
- oxidation: $2I^-(aq) \rightarrow I_2(aq) + 2e^-$

Step 4: To have the same number of electrons in both half-reactions, we must multiply the oxidation half-reaction by 3:

- oxidation: $6I^-(aq) \rightarrow 3I_2(s) + 6e^-$

Step 5: Adding the two half-reactions and canceling substances that appear in both reactions,

- $Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 14H^+(aq) + 6I^-(aq) \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}(aq) + 7H_2O(l) + 3I_2(aq)$

Step 6: This is the same equation we obtained using the first method. Thus the charges and atoms on each side of the equation balance.

Exercise 11.2.1

Copper is found as the mineral covellite (CuS). The first step in extracting the copper is to dissolve the mineral in nitric acid (HNO_3), which oxidizes sulfide to sulfate and reduces nitric acid to NO:

$$CuS_{(s)} + HNO_{3(aq)} \rightarrow NO_{(g)} + CuSO_{4(aq)} \tag{11.2.34}$$

Balance this equation using the half-reaction method.



Figure by Didier Descouens. Image used by permission of Wikipedia

Answer

$$3CuS_{(s)} + 8HNO3(aq) \rightarrow 8NO_{(g)} + 3CuSO_{4(aq)} + 4H_2O_{(l)} \tag{11.2.35}$$

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Balancing a Redox Reaction in Acidic Conditions: https://youtu.be/IB-fWLsI0lc

Calculating Standard Cell Potentials

The standard cell potential for a redox reaction ($E°_{cell}$) is a measure of the tendency of reactants in their standard states to form products in their standard states; consequently, it is a measure of the driving force for the reaction, which earlier we called voltage. We can use the two standard electrode potentials we found earlier to calculate the standard potential for the Zn/Cu cell represented by the following cell diagram:

$$Zn(s) \mid Zn^{2+}(aq, 1M) \parallel Cu^{2+}(aq, 1M) \mid Cu_{(s)} \tag{11.2.36}$$

We know the values of $E°_{anode}$ for the reduction of Zn^{2+} and $E°_{cathode}$ for the reduction of Cu^{2+}, so we can calculate $E°_{cell}$:

$$E^\circ_{cell} = E^\circ_{cathode} - E^\circ_{anode} = 1.10\ V \tag{11.2.37}$$

This is the same value that is observed experimentally. If the value of $E°_{cell}$ is positive, the reaction will occur spontaneously as written. If the value of $E°_{cell}$ is negative, then the reaction is not spontaneous, and it will not occur as written under standard conditions; it will, however, proceed spontaneously in the opposite direction. As we shall see, this does not mean that the reaction cannot be made to occur at all under standard conditions. With a sufficient input of electrical energy, virtually any reaction can be forced to occur. Example 4 and its corresponding exercise illustrate how we can use measured cell potentials to calculate standard potentials for redox couples.

Note

A positive $E°_{cell}$ means that the reaction will occur spontaneously as written. A negative $E°_{cell}$ means that the reaction will proceed spontaneously in the opposite direction.

Example 11.2.2

A galvanic cell with a measured standard cell potential of 0.27 V is constructed using two beakers connected by a salt bridge. One beaker contains a strip of gallium metal immersed in a 1 M solution of $GaCl_3$, and the other contains a piece of nickel immersed in a 1 M solution of $NiCl_2$. The half-reactions that occur when the compartments are connected are as follows:

$$\text{cathode: } Ni^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Ni(s)$$

$$\text{anode: } Ga(s) \rightarrow Ga^{3+}(aq) + 3e^-$$

If the potential for the oxidation of Ga to Ga^{3+} is 0.55 V under standard conditions, what is the potential for the oxidation of Ni to Ni^{2+}?

Given: galvanic cell, half-reactions, standard cell potential, and potential for the oxidation half-reaction under standard conditions

Asked for: standard electrode potential of reaction occurring at the cathode

Strategy:

A. Write the equation for the half-reaction that occurs at the anode along with the value of the standard electrode potential for the half-reaction.
B. Use Equation 11.2.2 to calculate the standard electrode potential for the half-reaction that occurs at the cathode. Then reverse the sign to obtain the potential for the corresponding oxidation half-reaction under standard conditions.

Solution

A We have been given the potential for the oxidation of Ga to Ga^{3+} under standard conditions, but to report the standard electrode potential, we must reverse the sign. For the reduction reaction $Ga^{3+}(aq) + 3e^- \rightarrow Ga(s)$, $E°_{anode} = -0.55$ V.

B Using the value given for $E°_{cell}$ and the calculated value of $E°_{anode}$, we can calculate the standard potential for the reduction of Ni^{2+} to Ni from Equation 11.2.2:

$$E°_{cell} = E°_{cathode} - E°_{anode}$$
$$0.27\ V = E°_{cathode} - (-0.55\ V)$$
$$E°_{cathode} = -0.28\ V$$

This is the standard electrode potential for the reaction $Ni^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Ni(s)$. Because we are asked for the potential for the oxidation of Ni to Ni^{2+} under standard conditions, we must reverse the sign of $E°_{cathode}$. Thus E° = –(–0.28 V) = 0.28 V for the oxidation. With three electrons consumed in the reduction and two produced in the oxidation, the overall reaction is not balanced. Recall, however, that standard potentials are independent of stoichiometry.

Exercise 11.2.2

A galvanic cell is constructed with one compartment that contains a mercury electrode immersed in a 1 M aqueous solution of mercuric acetate $Hg(CH_3CO_2)_2$ and one compartment that contains a strip of magnesium immersed in a 1 M aqueous solution of $MgCl_2$. When the compartments are connected, a potential of 3.22 V is measured and the following half-reactions occur:

- cathode: $Hg^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Hg(l)$
- anode: $Mg(s) \rightarrow Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2e^-$

If the potential for the oxidation of Mg to Mg^{2+} is 2.37 V under standard conditions, what is the standard electrode potential for the reaction that occurs at the anode?

Answer 0.85 V

We can use this procedure described to measure the standard potentials for a wide variety of chemical substances, some of which are listed in Table P2. These data allow us to compare the oxidative and reductive strengths of a variety of substances. The half-reaction for the standard hydrogen electrode (SHE) lies more than halfway down the list in Table 11.2.1. All reactants that lie below the SHE in the table are stronger oxidants than H^+, and all those that lie above the SHE are weaker. The strongest oxidant in the table is F_2, with a standard electrode potential of 2.87 V. This high value is consistent with the high electronegativity of fluorine and tells us that fluorine has a stronger tendency to accept electrons (it is a stronger oxidant) than any other element.

Table 11.2.1: Standard Potentials for Selected Reduction Half-Reactions at 25°C

Half-Reaction
$Li^+(aq) + e^- \rightleftharpoons Li(s)$
$Be^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons Be(s)$
$Al^{3+}(aq) + 3e^- \rightleftharpoons Al(s)$
$Zn^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons Zn(s)$
$Ag_2S(s) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons 2Ag(s) + S^{2-}(aq)$
$Fe^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons Fe(s)$
$Cr^{3+}(aq) + e^- \rightleftharpoons Cr^{2+}(aq)$
$Cd^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons Cd(s)$
$PbSO_4(s) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons Pb(s) + SO_4{}^{2-}(aq)$
$Ni^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons Ni(s)$
$2SO_4{}^{2-}(aq) + 4H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons S_2O_6{}^{2-}(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$
$Sn^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons Sn(s)$
$2H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons H_2(g)$
$Sn^{4+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons Sn^{2+}(aq)$

Half-Reaction
$Cu^{2+}(aq) + e^- \rightleftharpoons Cu^+(aq)$
$AgCl(s) + e^- \rightleftharpoons Ag(s) + Cl^-(aq)$
$Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons Cu(s)$
$O_2(g) + 2H_2O(l) + 4e^- \rightleftharpoons 4OH^-(aq)$
$H_2SO_3(aq) + 4H^+(aq) + 4e^- \rightleftharpoons S(s) + 3H_2O(l)$
$I_2(s) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons 2I^-(aq)$
$MnO_4^{2-}(aq) + 2H_2O(l) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons MnO_2(s) + 4OH^-(aq)$
$O_2(g) + 2H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons H_2O_2(aq)$
$H_2SeO_3(aq) + 4H^+ + 4e^- \rightleftharpoons Se(s) + 3H_2O(l)$
$Fe^{3+}(aq) + e^- \rightleftharpoons Fe^{2+}(aq)$
$Ag^+(aq) + e^- \rightleftharpoons Ag(s)$
$NO_3^-(aq) + 3H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons HNO_2(aq) + H_2O(l)$
$Br_2(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons 2Br^-(aq)$
$MnO_2(s) + 4H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons Mn^{2+}(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$
$O_2(g) + 4H^+(aq) + 4e^- \rightleftharpoons 2H_2O(l)$
$Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 14H^+(aq) + 6e^- \rightleftharpoons 2Cr^{3+}(aq) + 7H_2O(l)$
$Cl_2(g) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons 2Cl^-(aq)$
$Ce^{4+}(aq) + e^- \rightleftharpoons Ce^{3+}(aq)$ (11.2.38)
$PbO_2(s) + HSO_4^-(aq) + 3H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons PbSO_4(s) + 2H_2O(l)$
$H_2O_2(aq) + 2H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons 2H_2O(l)$
$F_2(g) + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons 2F^-(aq)$

Similarly, all species in Table 11.2.1 that lie above H_2 are stronger reductants than H_2, and those that lie below H_2 are weaker. The strongest reductant in the table is thus metallic lithium, with a standard electrode potential of –3.04 V. This fact might be surprising because cesium, not lithium, is the least electronegative element. The apparent anomaly can be explained by the fact that electrode potentials are measured in aqueous solution, where intermolecular interactions are important, whereas ionization potentials and electron affinities are measured in the gas phase. Due to its small size, the Li^+ ion is stabilized in aqueous solution by strong electrostatic interactions with the negative dipole end of water molecules. These interactions result in a significantly greater $\Delta H_{hydration}$ for Li^+ compared with Cs^+. Lithium metal is therefore the strongest reductant (most easily oxidized) of the alkali metals in aqueous solution.

Note

Species in Talbe Table 11.2.1 (or Table P2) that lie above H_2 are stronger reducing agents (more easily oxidized) than H_2. Species that lie below H_2 are stronger oxidizing agents.

Because the half-reactions shown in Table 11.2.1 are arranged in order of their E° values, we can use the table to quickly predict the relative strengths of various oxidants and reductants. Any species on the left side of a half-reaction will spontaneously oxidize any species on the right side of another half-reaction that lies below it in the table. Conversely, any species on the right side of a half-reaction will spontaneously reduce any species on the left side of another half-reaction that lies above it in the table. We can use these generalizations to predict the spontaneity of a wide variety of redox reactions ($E°_{cell} > 0$), as illustrated below.

Example 11.2.3

The black tarnish that forms on silver objects is primarily Ag_2S. The half-reaction for reversing the tarnishing process is as follows:

$$Ag_2S(s)+2e^- \rightarrow 2Ag(s)+S^{2-}(aq) \quad E°=-0.69\ V$$

a. Referring to Table 11.2.1, predict which species—$H_2O_2(aq)$, $Zn(s)$, $I^-(aq)$, $Sn^{2+}(aq)$—can reduce Ag_2S to Ag under standard conditions.

b. Of these species—$H_2O_2(aq)$, $Zn(s)$, $I^-(aq)$, $Sn^{2+}(aq)$, identify which is the strongest reducing agent in aqueous solution and thus the best candidate for a commercial product.

c. From the data in Table 11.2.1, suggest an alternative reducing agent that is readily available, inexpensive, and possibly more effective at removing tarnish.



Given: reduction half-reaction, standard electrode potential, and list of possible reductants

Asked for: reductants for Ag_2S, strongest reductant, and potential reducing agent for removing tarnish

Strategy:

A From their positions inTable 11.2.1, decide which species can reduce Ag_2S. Determine which species is the strongest reductant.

B Use Table 11.2.1 to identify a reductant for Ag_2S that is a common household product.

Solution

We can solve the problem in one of two ways: (1) compare the relative positions of the four possible reductants with that of the Ag_2S/Ag couple in Table 11.2.1 or (2) compare E° for each species with E° for the Ag_2S/Ag couple (−0.69 V).

a. **A** The species in Table 11.2.1 are arranged from top to bottom in order of increasing reducing strength. Of the four species given in the problem, $I^-(aq)$, $Sn^{2+}(aq)$, and $H_2O_2(aq)$ lie above Ag_2S, and one [Zn(s)] lies below it. We can therefore conclude that Zn(s) can reduce $Ag_2S(s)$ under standard conditions, whereas $I^-(aq)$, $Sn^{2+}(aq)$, and $H_2O_2(aq)$ cannot. $Sn^{2+}(aq)$ and $H_2O_2(aq)$ appear twice in the table: on the left side (oxidant) in one half-reaction and on the right side (reductant) in another.

b. The strongest reductant is Zn(s), the species on the right side of the half-reaction that lies closer to the bottom of Table 11.2.1 than the half-reactions involving $I^-(aq)$, $Sn^{2+}(aq)$, and $H_2O_2(aq)$. (Commercial products that use a piece of zinc are often marketed as a "miracle product" for removing tarnish from silver. All that is required is to add warm water and salt for electrical conductivity.)

c. **B** Of the reductants that lie below Zn(s) in Table 11.2.1, and therefore are stronger reductants, only one is commonly available in household products: Al(s), which is sold as aluminum foil for wrapping foods.

Example 11.2.4

Use the data in Table 11.2.1 to determine whether each reaction is likely to occur spontaneously under standard conditions:

a. $Sn(s) + Be^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Sn^{2+}(aq) + Be(s)$

b. $MnO_2(s) + H_2O_2(aq) + 2H^+(aq) \rightarrow O_2(g) + Mn^{2+}(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$

Given: redox reaction and list of standard electrode potentials (Table P2)

Asked for: reaction spontaneity

Strategy:

A. Identify the half-reactions in each equation. Using Table 11.2.1, determine the standard potentials for the half-reactions in the appropriate direction.

B. Use Equation 11.2.2 to calculate the standard cell potential for the overall reaction. From this value, determine whether the overall reaction is spontaneous.

Solution

a. **A** Metallic tin is oxidized to $Sn^{2+}(aq)$, and $Be^{2+}(aq)$ is reduced to elemental beryllium. We can find the standard electrode potentials for the latter (reduction) half-reaction (−1.85 V) and for the former (oxidation) half-reaction (−0.14 V) directly from Table 11.2.1.

B Adding the two half-reactions gives the overall reaction:

$\text{cathode: } Be^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Be(s)$ $\text{anode: } Sn(s) \rightarrow Sn^{2+}(s) + 2e^-$ $\text{total: } Sn(s) + Be^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Sn^{2+}(aq) + Be(s)$	$E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = -1.99\text{ V}\ E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = -0.14\text{ V}\ E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} - E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = -1.85\text{ V}$

The standard cell potential is quite negative, so the reaction will not occur spontaneously as written. That is, metallic tin cannot reduce Be^{2+} to beryllium metal under standard conditions. Instead, the reverse process, the reduction of stannous ions (Sn^{2+}) by metallic beryllium, which has a positive value of $E°_{cell}$, will occur spontaneously.

b. **A** MnO_2 is the oxidant (Mn^{4+} is reduced to Mn^{2+}), while H_2O_2 is the reductant (O^{2-} is oxidized to O_2). We can obtain the standard electrode potentials for the reduction and oxidation half-reactions directly from Table 11.2.1.

B The two half-reactions and their corresponding potentials are as follows

$\text{cathode:} MnO_2(s) + 4H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Mn^{2+}(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$ $\text{anode:} H_2O_2(aq) \rightarrow O_2(g) + 2H^+(aq) + 2e^-$ $\text{overall:} MnO_2(s) + H_2O_2(aq) + 2H^+(aq) \rightarrow O_2(g) + Mn^{2+}(aq) + 2H_2O(l)$	$E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = 1.22\ \text{V}\ E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = 0.70\ \text{V}\ E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} - E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = -0.53\ \text{V}$

The standard potential for the reaction is positive, indicating that under standard conditions, it will occur spontaneously as written. Hydrogen peroxide will reduce MnO_2, and oxygen gas will evolve from the solution.

Exercise 11.2.4

Use the data in Table 11.2.1 to determine whether each reaction is likely to occur spontaneously under standard conditions:

1. $2Ce^{4+}(aq) + 2Cl^-(aq) \rightarrow 2Ce^{3+}(aq) + Cl_2(g)$
2. $4MnO_2(s) + 3O_2(g) + 4OH^-(aq) \rightarrow 4MnO_4^-(aq) + 2H_2O$

Answer

1. spontaneous ($E°_{cell}$ = 0.36 V)
2. nonspontaneous ($E°_{cell}$ = −0.20 V)

Although the sign of $E°_{cell}$ tells us whether a particular redox reaction will occur spontaneously under standard conditions, it does not tell us to what extent the reaction proceeds, and it does not tell us what will happen under nonstandard conditions. To answer these questions requires a more quantitative understanding of the relationship between electrochemical cell potential and chemical thermodynamics.

Reference Electrodes and Measuring Concentrations

When using a galvanic cell to measure the concentration of a substance, we are generally interested in the potential of only one of the electrodes of the cell, the so-called **indicator electrode**, whose potential is related to the concentration of the substance being measured. To ensure that any change in the measured potential of the cell is due to only the substance being analyzed, the potential of the other electrode, the **reference electrode**, must be constant. You are already familiar with one example of a reference electrode: the SHE. The potential of a reference electrode must be unaffected by the properties of the solution, and if possible, it should be physically isolated from the solution of interest. To measure the potential of a solution, we select a reference electrode and an appropriate indicator electrode. Whether reduction or oxidation of the substance being analyzed occurs depends on the potential of the half-reaction for the substance of interest (the sample) and the potential of the reference electrode.

Note

The potential of any reference electrode should **not** be affected by the properties of the solution to be analyzed, and it should also be physically isolated.

There are many possible choices of reference electrode other than the SHE. The SHE requires a constant flow of highly flammable hydrogen gas, which makes it inconvenient to use. Consequently, two other electrodes are commonly chosen as reference electrodes. One is the **silver–silver chloride electrode**, which consists of a silver wire coated with a very thin layer of AgCl that is dipped into a chloride ion solution with a fixed concentration. The cell diagram and reduction half-reaction are as follows:

$$Cl^-_{(aq)} \mid AgCl_{(s)} \mid Ag_{(s)} \tag{11.2.39}$$

$$AgCl_{(s)} + e^- \rightarrow Ag_{(s)} + Cl^-_{(aq)} \tag{11.2.40}$$

If a saturated solution of KCl is used as the chloride solution, the potential of the silver–silver chloride electrode is 0.197 V versus the SHE. That is, 0.197 V must be subtracted from the measured value to obtain the standard electrode potential measured against the SHE.

A second common reference electrode is the **saturated calomel electrode (SCE)**, which has the same general form as the silver–silver chloride electrode. The SCE consists of a platinum wire inserted into a moist paste of liquid mercury (Hg_2Cl_2; called calomel in the old chemical literature) and KCl. This interior cell is surrounded by an aqueous KCl solution, which acts as a salt bridge between the interior cell and the exterior solution (part (a) in Figure 11.2.4). Although it sounds and looks complex, this cell is actually easy to prepare and maintain, and its potential is highly reproducible. The SCE cell diagram and corresponding half-reaction are as follows:

$$Pt_{(s)} \mid Hg_2Cl_{2(s)} \mid KCl_{(aq,sat)} \tag{11.2.41}$$

$$Hg_2Cl_{2(s)} + 2e^- \rightarrow 2Hg_{(l)} + 2Cl^-(aq) \tag{11.2.42}$$

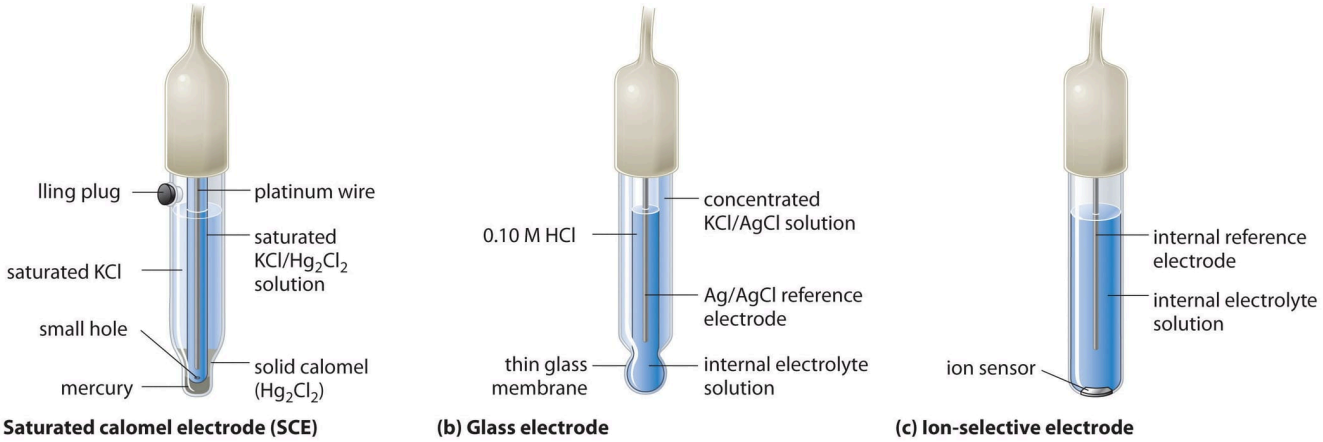


Figure 11.2.4: Three Common Types of Electrodes. (a) The SCE is a reference electrode that consists of a platinum wire inserted into a moist paste of liquid mercury (calomel; Hg_2Cl_2) and KCl. The interior cell is surrounded by an aqueous KCl solution, which acts as a salt bridge between the interior cell and the exterior solution. (b) In a glass electrode, an internal Ag/AgCl electrode is immersed in a 1 M HCl solution that is separated from the sample solution by a very thin glass membrane. The potential of the electrode depends on the H^+ ion concentration of the sample. (c) The potential of an ion-selective electrode depends on the concentration of only a single ionic species in solution.

At 25°C, the potential of the SCE is 0.2415 V versus the SHE, which means that 0.2415 V must be subtracted from the potential versus an SCE to obtain the standard electrode potential.

One of the most common uses of electrochemistry is to measure the H^+ ion concentration of a solution. A **glass electrode** is generally used for this purpose, in which an internal Ag/AgCl electrode is immersed in a 0.10 M HCl solution that is separated from the solution by a very thin glass membrane (part (b) in Figure 11.2.5). The glass membrane absorbs protons, which affects the measured potential. The extent of the adsorption on the inner side is fixed because [H^+] is fixed inside the electrode, but the adsorption of protons on the outer surface depends on the pH of the solution. The potential of the glass electrode depends on [H^+] as follows (recall that pH = –log[H^+]:

$$E_{glass} = E' + (0.0591\ V \times \log[H^+]) = E' - 0.0591\ V \times pH \tag{11.2.43}$$

The voltage E′ is a constant that depends on the exact construction of the electrode. Although it can be measured, in practice, a glass electrode is calibrated; that is, it is inserted into a solution of known pH, and the display on the pH meter is adjusted to the known value. Once the electrode is properly calibrated, it can be placed in a solution and used to determine an unknown pH.

Ion-selective electrodes are used to measure the concentration of a particular species in solution; they are designed so that their potential depends on only the concentration of the desired species (part (c) in Figure 11.2.5). These electrodes usually contain an internal reference electrode that is connected by a solution of an electrolyte to a crystalline inorganic material or a membrane, which acts as the sensor. For example, one type of ion-selective electrode uses a single crystal of Eu-doped LaF_3 as the inorganic material. When fluoride ions in solution diffuse to the surface of the solid, the potential of the electrode changes, resulting in a so-called fluoride electrode. Similar electrodes are used to measure the concentrations of other species in solution. Some of the species whose concentrations can be determined in aqueous solution using ion-selective electrodes and similar devices are listed in Table 11.2.2.

Table 11.2.2: Some Species Whose Aqueous Concentrations Can Be Measured Using Electrochemical Methods

Species	Type of Sample
H^+	laboratory samples, blood, soil, and ground and surface water
NH_3/NH_4^+	wastewater and runoff water
K^+	blood, wine, and soil
CO_2/HCO_3^-	blood and groundwater
F^-	groundwater, drinking water, and soil
Br^-	grains and plant extracts
I^-	milk and pharmaceuticals
NO_3^-	groundwater, drinking water, soil, and fertilizer

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Standard Hydrogen Electrode (SHE): https://youtu.be/GS-SE7IDDtY

Summary

The flow of electrons in an electrochemical cell depends on the identity of the reacting substances, the difference in the potential energy of their valence electrons, and their concentrations. The potential of the cell under standard conditions (1 M for solutions, 1 atm for gases, pure solids or liquids for other substances) and at a fixed temperature (25°C) is called the standard cell potential ($E°_{cell}$). Only the difference between the potentials of two electrodes can be measured. By convention, all tabulated values of standard electrode potentials are listed as standard reduction potentials. The overall cell potential is the reduction potential of the reductive half-reaction minus the reduction potential of the oxidative half-reaction ($E°_{cell} = E°_{cathode} - E°_{anode}$). The potential of the standard hydrogen electrode (SHE) is defined as 0 V under standard conditions. The potential of a half-reaction measured against the SHE under standard conditions is called its standard electrode potential. The standard cell potential is a measure of the driving force for a given redox reaction. All E° values are independent of the stoichiometric coefficients for the half-reaction. Redox reactions can be balanced using the half-reaction method, in which the overall redox reaction is divided into an oxidation half-reaction and a reduction half-reaction, each balanced for mass and charge. The half-reactions selected from tabulated lists must exactly reflect reaction conditions. In an alternative method, the atoms in each half-reaction are balanced, and then the charges are balanced. Whenever a half-reaction is reversed, the sign of E° corresponding to that reaction must also be reversed.

The oxidative and reductive strengths of a variety of substances can be compared using standard electrode potentials. Apparent anomalies can be explained by the fact that electrode potentials are measured in aqueous solution, which allows for strong intermolecular electrostatic interactions, and not in the gas phase.

If $E°_{cell}$ is positive, the reaction will occur spontaneously under standard conditions. If $E°_{cell}$ is negative, then the reaction is not spontaneous under standard conditions, although it will proceed spontaneously in the opposite direction. The potential of an indicator electrode is related to the concentration of the substance being measured, whereas the potential of the reference electrode is held constant. Whether reduction or oxidation occurs depends on the potential of the sample versus the potential of the reference electrode. In addition to the SHE, other reference electrodes are the silver–silver chloride electrode; the saturated calomel electrode (SCE); the glass electrode, which is commonly used to measure pH; and ion-selective electrodes, which depend on the concentration of a single ionic species in solution. Differences in potential between the SHE and other reference electrodes

must be included when calculating values for E°.

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous

- cathode:

$$Cu^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2e^- \rightarrow Cu_{(s)} \qquad E°_{cathode} = 0.34\ V \tag{11.2.44}$$

- anode:

$$Zn_{(s)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq, 1M) + 2e^- \qquad E°_{anode} = -0.76\ V \tag{11.2.45}$$

- overall:

$$Zn_{(s)} + Cu^{2+}_{(aq)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} + Cu_{(s)} \tag{11.2.46}$$

- Redox reactions can be balanced using the half-reaction method.
- The standard cell potential is a measure of the driving force for the reaction.
- The relative strengths of various oxidants and reductants can be predicted using E° values.

This page titled 11.2: Standard Electrode Potentials is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 20.2: Standard Electrode Potentials is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

11.3: Ecell, ΔG, and K

Learning Objectives

- To understand the relationship between cell potential and the equilibrium constant.
- To use cell potentials to calculate solution concentrations.

Changes in reaction conditions can have a tremendous effect on the course of a redox reaction. For example, under standard conditions, the reaction of $\mathrm{Co(s)}$ with $\mathrm{Ni^{2+}(aq)}$ to form $\mathrm{Ni(s)}$ and $\mathrm{Co^{2+}(aq)}$ occurs spontaneously, but if we reduce the concentration of $\mathrm{Ni^{2+}}$ by a factor of 100, so that $[\mathrm{Ni^{2+}}]$ is 0.01 M, then the reverse reaction occurs spontaneously instead. The relationship between voltage and concentration is one of the factors that must be understood to predict whether a reaction will be spontaneous.

The Relationship between Cell Potential & Gibbs Energy

Electrochemical cells convert chemical energy to electrical energy and vice versa. The total amount of energy produced by an electrochemical cell, and thus the amount of energy available to do electrical work, depends on both the cell potential and the total number of electrons that are transferred from the reductant to the oxidant during the course of a reaction.

The resulting electric current involves the movement of an electric charge measured in coulombs (C), an SI unit that has been defined, since 2019, to give an electron a charge of exactly $1.602176634\times10^{-19}$ C. This means that a coulomb is the electric charge carried by about $6.241\,509 \times 10^{18}$ electrons. Electric current is measured in **amperes (A)**; 1 A is defined as the flow of 1 C/s past a given point (1 C = 1 A·s). Voltage is the potential difference required to move a charge through a circuit. By definition a coulomb of charge flowing through a potential difference of 1 V will require a 1J of energy

$$\frac{1\ J}{1\ V} = 1\ C$$

In chemical reactions, however, we need to relate the coulomb to the charge on a mole of electrons. Multiplying the charge on the electron by Avogadro's number gives us the charge on 1 mol of electrons, which is called the **faraday (F)**, named after the English physicist and chemist Michael Faraday (1791–1867):

$$\begin{aligned} F &= (1.60218 \times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C}) \left(\frac{6.02214 \times 10^{23}\ J}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ e^-}} \right) \\ &= 9.64833212 \times 10^{4}\ \mathrm{C/mol\ e^-} \\ &\simeq 96,485\, C/(\mathrm{mol\ e^-}) \end{aligned}$$

The total charge transferred from the reductant to the oxidant is therefore nF, where n is the number of moles of electrons.

Michael Faraday (1791–1867)

Faraday was a British physicist and chemist who was arguably one of the greatest experimental scientists in history. The son of a blacksmith, Faraday was self-educated and became an apprentice bookbinder at age 14 before turning to science. His experiments in electricity and magnetism made electricity a routine tool in science and led to both the electric motor and the electric generator. He discovered the phenomenon of electrolysis and laid the foundations of electrochemistry. In fact, most of the specialized terms introduced in this chapter (electrode, anode, cathode, and so forth) are due to Faraday. In addition, he discovered benzene and invented the system of oxidation state numbers that we use today. Faraday is probably best known for "The Chemical History of a Candle," a series of public lectures on the chemistry and physics of flames.

The maximum amount of work that can be produced by an electrochemical cell (w_{max}) is equal to the product of the cell potential (E°_{cell}) and the total charge transferred during the reaction (nF):

$$w_{max} = nFE_{cell}$$

Work is expressed as a negative number because work is being done by a system (an electrochemical cell with a positive potential) on its surroundings.

The change in free energy (ΔG) is also a measure of the maximum amount of work that can be performed during a chemical process ($\Delta G = w_{max}$). Consequently, there must be a relationship between the potential of an electrochemical cell and ΔG; this relationship is as follows:

$$\Delta G = -nFE_{cell}$$

A spontaneous redox reaction is therefore characterized by a negative value of ΔG and a positive value of E°_{cell}, consistent with our earlier discussions. When both reactants and products are in their standard states, the relationship between ΔG° and E°_{cell} is as follows:

$$\Delta G^\circ = -nFE^\circ_{cell} \tag{11.3.1}$$

A spontaneous redox reaction is characterized by a negative value of ΔG°, which corresponds to a positive value of $E°_{cell}$.

Example 11.3.1

Suppose you want to prepare elemental bromine from bromide using the dichromate ion as an oxidant. Using the data in Table P2, calculate the free-energy change (ΔG°) for this redox reaction under standard conditions. Is the reaction spontaneous?

Given: redox reaction

Asked for: ΔG^o for the reaction and spontaneity

Strategy:

A. From the relevant half-reactions and the corresponding values of E^o, write the overall reaction and calculate E°_{cell}.
B. Determine the number of electrons transferred in the overall reaction. Then use Equation 11.3.1 to calculate ΔG^o. If ΔG^o is negative, then the reaction is spontaneous.

Solution

A

As always, the first step is to write the relevant half-reactions and use them to obtain the overall reaction and the magnitude of E^o. From Table P2, we can find the reduction and oxidation half-reactions and corresponding E^o values:

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{cathode:} & \mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 14H^+(aq) + 6e^- \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}(aq) + 7H_2O(l)} & E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = 1.36\ \text{V} \\ \text{anode:} & \mathrm{2Br^-(aq) \rightarrow Br_2(aq) + 2e^-} & E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = 1.09\ \text{V} \end{array}$$

To obtain the overall balanced chemical equation, we must multiply both sides of the oxidation half-reaction by 3 to obtain the same number of electrons as in the reduction half-reaction, remembering that the magnitude of E^o is not affected:

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{cathode:} & \mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 14H^+(aq) + 6e^- \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}(aq) + 7H_2O(l)} & E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = 1.36\ \text{V} \\ \text{anode:} & \mathrm{6Br^-(aq) \rightarrow 3Br_2(aq) + 6e^-} & E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = 1.09\ \text{V} \\ \text{overall:} & \mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 6Br^-(aq) + 14H^+(aq) \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}(aq) + 3Br_2(aq) + 7H_2O(l)} & E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = 0.27\ \text{V} \end{array}$$

B

We can now calculate ΔG° using Equation 11.3.1. Because six electrons are transferred in the overall reaction, the value of n is 6:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G^\circ &= -(n)(F)(E^\circ_{\text{cell}}) \\ &= -(6\text{ mole})[96,485\text{ J/(V}\cdot\text{mol})(0.27\text{ V})] \\ &= -15.6\times 10^4\text{ J} \\ &= -156\text{ kJ/mol }\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}}\end{aligned}$$

Thus ΔG^o is –168 kJ/mol for the reaction as written, and the reaction is spontaneous.

Exercise 11.3.1

Use the data in Table P2 to calculate ΔG^o for the reduction of ferric ion by iodide:

$$2\,\mathrm{Fe^{3+}(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{I^-(aq)} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Fe^{2+}(aq)} + \mathrm{I_2(s)}$$

Is the reaction spontaneous?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Potentials for the Sums of Half-Reactions

Although Table P2 list several half-reactions, many more are known. When the standard potential for a half-reaction is not available, we can use relationships between standard potentials and free energy to obtain the potential of any other half-reaction that can be written as the sum of two or more half-reactions whose standard potentials are available. For example, the potential for the reduction of $\mathrm{Fe^{3+}(aq)}$ to $\mathrm{Fe(s)}$ is not listed in the table, but two related reductions are given:

$$\mathrm{Fe^{3+}(aq) + e^- \longrightarrow Fe^{2+}(aq)} \quad E^\circ = +0.77V$$

$$\mathrm{Fe^{2+}(aq) + 2\,e^- \longrightarrow Fe(s)} \quad E^\circ = -0.45V$$

Although the sum of these two half-reactions gives the desired half-reaction, we cannot simply add the potentials of two reductive half-reactions to obtain the potential of a third reductive half-reaction because E^o is not a state function. However, because ΔG^o is a state function, the sum of the ΔG^o values for the individual reactions gives us ΔG^o for the overall reaction, which is proportional to both the potential and the number of electrons (n) transferred. To obtain the value of E^o for the overall half-reaction, we first must add the values of $\Delta G^o(=-nFE^o)$ for each individual half-reaction to obtain ΔG^o for the overall half-reaction:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{Fe^{3+}(aq) + e^- \rightarrow Fe^{2+}(aq)} \qquad & \Delta G^\circ = -(1)(F)(0.77\text{ V}) \\ \mathrm{Fe^{2+}(aq) + 2\,e^- \rightarrow Fe(s)} \qquad & \Delta G^\circ = -(2)(F)(-0.45\text{ V}) \\ \mathrm{Fe^{3+}(aq) + 3\,e^- \rightarrow Fe(s)} \qquad & \Delta G^\circ = [-(1)(F)(0.77\text{ V})] + [-(2)(F)(-0.45\text{ V})]\end{aligned}$$

Solving the last expression for ΔG° for the overall half-reaction,

$$\Delta G^\circ = F\,[(-0.77V) + (-2)(-0.45V)] = F(0.13V)$$

Three electrons ($n = 3$) are transferred in the overall reaction, so substituting into Equation 11.3.1 and solving for E^o gives the following:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G^\circ &= -nFE^\circ_{\text{cell}} \\ F(0.13\text{ V}) &= -(3)(F)(E^\circ_{\text{cell}}) \\ E^\circ &= -\frac{0.13\text{ V}}{3} = -0.043\text{ V}\end{aligned}$$

This value of E^o is very different from the value that is obtained by simply adding the potentials for the two half-reactions (0.32 V) and even has the opposite sign.

> Values of E^o for half-reactions cannot be added to give E^o for the sum of the half-reactions; only values of $\Delta G^o = -nFE^\circ_{cell}$ for half-reactions can be added.

The Relationship between Cell Potential & the Equilibrium Constant

We can use the relationship between ΔG° and the equilibrium constant K, to obtain a relationship between E°_{cell} and K. Recall that for a general reaction of the type $aA + bB \rightarrow cC + dD$, the standard free-energy change and the equilibrium constant are related by the following equation:

$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K$$

Given the relationship between the standard free-energy change and the standard cell potential (Equation 11.3.1), we can write

$$-nFE^\circ_{cell} = -RT \ln K$$

Rearranging this equation,

$$E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = \left(\frac{RT}{nF}\right) \ln K \tag{11.3.2}$$

For $T = 298\ K$, Equation 11.3.2 can be simplified as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} E^\circ_{\text{cell}} &= \left(\frac{RT}{nF}\right) \ln K \\ &= \left[\frac{[8.314\ \text{J/(mol} \cdot \text{K)(298 K)}]}{n[96,485\ \text{J/(V} \cdot \text{mol)}]}\right] 2.303 \log K \\ &= \left(\frac{0.0592\ \text{V}}{n}\right) \log K \end{aligned} \tag{11.3.3}$$

Thus E°_{cell} is directly proportional to the logarithm of the equilibrium constant. This means that large equilibrium constants correspond to large positive values of E°_{cell} and vice versa.

Example 11.3.2

Use the data in Table P2 to calculate the equilibrium constant for the reaction of metallic lead with PbO_2 in the presence of sulfate ions to give $PbSO_4$ under standard conditions. (This reaction occurs when a car battery is discharged.) Report your answer to two significant figures.

Given: redox reaction

Asked for: K

Strategy:

A. Write the relevant half-reactions and potentials. From these, obtain the overall reaction and E^o_{cell}.
B. Determine the number of electrons transferred in the overall reaction. Use Equation 11.3.3 to solve for $\log K$ and then K.

Solution

A The relevant half-reactions and potentials from Table P2 are as follows:

cathode:	$\text{PbO}_2(\text{s}) + \text{SO}_4^{2-}(\text{aq}) + 4\text{H}^+(\text{aq}) + 2\text{e}^- \rightarrow \text{PbSO}_4(\text{s}) + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}(\text{l})$	$E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = 1.69\ \text{V}$
anode:	$\text{Pb}(\text{s}) + \text{SO}_4^{2-}(\text{aq}) \rightarrow \text{PbSO}_4(\text{s}) + 2\text{e}^-$	$E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = -0.36\ \text{V}$
overall:	$\text{Pb}(\text{s}) + \text{PbO}_2(\text{s}) + 2\text{SO}_4^{2-}(\text{aq}) + 4\text{H}^+(\text{aq}) \rightarrow 2\text{PbSO}_4(\text{s}) + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}(\text{l})$	$E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = 2.05\ \text{V}$

B Two electrons are transferred in the overall reaction, so $n = 2$. Solving Equation 11.3.3 for log K and inserting the values of n and E^o,

$$\log K = \frac{nE^\circ}{0.0591\ \text{V}} = \frac{2(2.05\ \text{V})}{0.0591\ \text{V}} = 69.37$$

$$K = 2.3 \times 10^{69}$$

Thus the equilibrium lies far to the right, favoring a discharged battery (as anyone who has ever tried unsuccessfully to start a car after letting it sit for a long time will know).

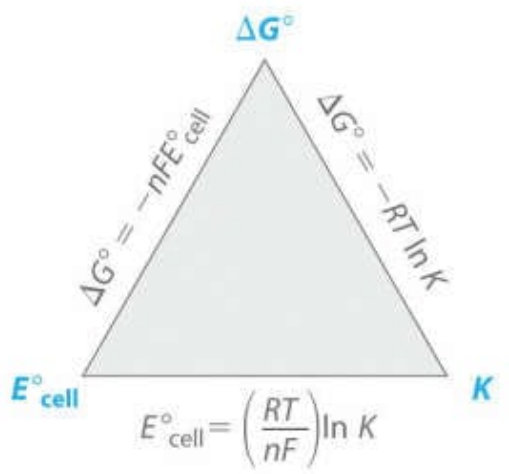
Exercise 11.3.2

Use the data in Table P2 to calculate the equilibrium constant for the reaction of $\text{Sn}^{2+}\,(\text{aq})$ with oxygen to produce $\text{Sn}^{4+}\,(\text{aq})$ and water under standard conditions. Report your answer to two significant figures. The reaction is as follows:

$$2\,\text{Sn}^{2+}\,(\text{aq}) + \text{O}_2\,(\text{g}) + 4\,\text{H}^+\,(\text{aq}) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\text{Sn}^{4+}\,(\text{aq}) + 2\,\text{H}_2\text{O}\,(\text{l})$$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Figure 11.3.1 summarizes the relationships that we have developed based on properties of the system—that is, based on the equilibrium constant, standard free-energy change, and standard cell potential—and the criteria for spontaneity ($\Delta G^\circ < 0$). Unfortunately, these criteria apply only to systems in which all reactants and products are present in their standard states, a situation that is seldom encountered in the real world. A more generally useful relationship between cell potential and reactant and product concentrations, as we are about to see, uses the relationship between ΔG and the reaction quotient Q.



ΔG°	E°_{cell}	K	Direction of Reaction
< 0	> 0	> 1	spontaneous in forward direction
> 0	< 0	< 1	spontaneous in reverse direction
0	0	1	no net reaction: system at equilibrium

Figure 11.3.1: The Relationships among Criteria for Thermodynamic Spontaneity. The three properties of a system that can be used to predict the spontaneity of a redox reaction under standard conditions are K, ΔG°, and $E°_{cell}$. If we know the value of one of these quantities, then these relationships enable us to calculate the value of the other two. The signs of ΔG° and $E°_{cell}$ and the magnitude of K determine the direction of spontaneous reaction under standard conditions. (CC BY-NC-SA; Anonymous by request)

If ΔG is less than zero, E^o is greater than zero and K is greater than 1 then the direction of the reaction is spontaneous in forward direction. If ΔG is greater than zero, E^o is less than zero and K is less than one then the direction of reaction is spontaneous in reverse direction. If ΔG is zero, E is zero and K is one that there is no net reaction and the system is at equilibrium .

Summary

A coulomb (C) relates electrical potential, expressed in volts, and energy, expressed in joules. The current generated from a redox reaction is measured in amperes (A), where 1 A is defined as the flow of 1 C/s past a given point. The faraday (F) is Avogadro's number multiplied by the charge on an electron and corresponds to the charge on 1 mol of electrons. The product of the cell potential and the total charge is the maximum amount of energy available to do work, which is related to the change in free energy that occurs during the chemical process. Adding together the ΔG values for the half-reactions gives ΔG for the overall reaction, which is proportional to both the potential and the number of electrons (n) transferred. Spontaneous redox reactions have a negative ΔG and therefore a positive E_{cell}. Because the equilibrium constant K is related to ΔG, $E°_{cell}$ and K are also

related. Large equilibrium constants correspond to large positive values of E°.

Answers

Exercise 11.3.1

−44 kJ/mol I_2; yes

Exercise 11.3.2

5.7×10^{72}

This page titled 11.3: Ecell, ΔG, and K is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 20.5: Gibbs Energy and Redox Reactions is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

11.4: Ecell as a Function of Concentrations

Learning Objectives

- Relate cell potentials to Gibbs energy changes
- Use the Nernst equation to determine cell potentials at nonstandard conditions
- Perform calculations that involve converting between cell potentials, free energy changes, and equilibrium constants

The *Nernst Equation* enables the determination of cell potential under non-standard conditions. It relates the measured cell potential to the reaction quotient and allows the accurate determination of equilibrium constants (including solubility constants).

The Effect of Concentration on Cell Potential: The Nernst Equation

Recall that the actual free-energy change for a reaction under nonstandard conditions, ΔG, is given as follows:

$$\Delta G = \Delta G° + RT \ln Q \tag{11.4.1}$$

We also know that $\Delta G = -nFE_{cell}$ (under non-standard conditions) and $\Delta G^o = -nFE^o_{cell}$ (under standard conditions). Substituting these expressions into Equation 11.4.1, we obtain

$$-nFE_{cell} = -nFE^o_{cell} + RT \ln Q \tag{11.4.2}$$

Dividing both sides of this equation by $-nF$,

$$E_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{RT}{nF}\right) \ln Q \tag{11.4.3}$$

Equation 11.4.3 is called the **Nernst equation**, after the German physicist and chemist Walter Nernst (1864–1941), who first derived it. The Nernst equation is arguably the most important relationship in electrochemistry. When a redox reaction is at equilibrium ($\Delta G = 0$), then Equation 11.4.3 reduces to Equation 11.4.4 and 11.4.5 because $Q = K$, and there is no net transfer of electrons (i.e., $E_{cell} = 0$).

$$E_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{RT}{nF}\right) \ln K = 0 \tag{11.4.4}$$

since

$$E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = \left(\frac{RT}{nF}\right) \ln K \tag{11.4.5}$$

Substituting the values of the constants into Equation 11.4.3 with $T = 298\ K$ and converting to base-10 logarithms give the relationship of the actual cell potential (E_{cell}), the standard cell potential ($E°_{cell}$), and the reactant and product concentrations at room temperature (contained in Q):

$$E_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{n}\right) \log Q \tag{11.4.6}$$

The Power of the Nernst Equation

The Nernst Equation (11.4.3) can be used to determine the value of E_{cell}, and thus the direction of spontaneous reaction, for any redox reaction under any conditions.

Equation 11.4.6 allows us to calculate the potential associated with any electrochemical cell at 298 K for any combination of reactant and product concentrations under any conditions. We can therefore determine the spontaneous direction of any redox

reaction under any conditions, as long as we have tabulated values for the relevant standard electrode potentials. Notice in Equation 11.4.6 that the cell potential changes by 0.0591/n V for each 10-fold change in the value of Q because log 10 = 1.

Example 11.4.1

The following reaction proceeds spontaneously under standard conditions because E°$_{cell}$ > 0 (which means that ΔG° < 0):

$$2\,Ce^{4+}\,(aq) + 2\,Cl^{-}\,(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,Ce^{3+}\,(aq) + Cl_2\,(g) \qquad E^{\circ}_{cell} = 0.25\,V$$

Calculate E_{cell} for this reaction under the following nonstandard conditions and determine whether it will occur spontaneously: [Ce^{4+}] = 0.013 M, [Ce^{3+}] = 0.60 M, [Cl^-] = 0.0030 M, P_{Cl_2} = 1.0 atm, and T = 25°C.

Given: balanced redox reaction, standard cell potential, and nonstandard conditions

Asked for: cell potential

Strategy:

Determine the number of electrons transferred during the redox process. Then use the Nernst equation to find the cell potential under the nonstandard conditions.

Solution

We can use the information given and the Nernst equation to calculate E_{cell}. Moreover, because the temperature is 25°C (298 K), we can use Equation 11.4.6 instead of Equation 11.4.3. The overall reaction involves the net transfer of two electrons:

$$2Ce^{4+}_{(aq)} + 2e^{-} \rightarrow 2Ce^{3+}_{(aq)}$$

$$2Cl^{-}_{(aq)} \rightarrow Cl_{2(g)} + 2e^{-}$$

so n = 2. Substituting the concentrations given in the problem, the partial pressure of Cl_2, and the value of E°$_{cell}$ into Equation 11.4.6,

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{cell}} &= E^{\circ}_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{n}\right)\log Q \\ &= 0.25\ \text{V} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{2}\right)\log\left(\frac{[\text{Ce}^{3+}]^2 P_{\text{Cl}_2}}{[\text{Ce}^{4+}]^2[\text{Cl}^-]^2}\right) \\ &= 0.25\ \text{V} - [(0.0296\ \text{V})(8.37)] = 0.00\ \text{V} \end{aligned}$$

Thus the reaction will not occur spontaneously under these conditions (because E = 0 V and ΔG = 0). The composition specified is that of an equilibrium mixture

Exercise 11.4.1

Molecular oxygen will not oxidize MnO_2 to permanganate via the reaction

$$4\,\text{MnO}_2\,(s) + 3\,\text{O}_2\,(g) + 4\,\text{OH}^-\,(aq) \longrightarrow 4\,\text{MnO}_4^-\,(aq) + 2\,\text{H}_2\text{O}\,(l) \quad E^{\circ}_{cell} = -0.20\,V$$

Calculate E_{cell} for the reaction under the following nonstandard conditions and decide whether the reaction will occur spontaneously: pH 10, P_{O_2}= 0.20 atm, [MNO_4^-] = 1.0 × 10^{-4} M, and T = 25°C.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Applying the Nernst equation to a simple electrochemical cell such as the Zn/Cu cell allows us to see how the cell voltage varies as the reaction progresses and the concentrations of the dissolved ions change. Recall that the overall reaction for this cell is as follows:

$$Zn(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + Cu(s) \quad E°cell = 1.10V \tag{11.4.7}$$

The reaction quotient is therefore $Q = [Zn^{2+}]/[Cu^{2+}]$. Suppose that the cell initially contains 1.0 M Cu^{2+} and 1.0 × 10^{-6} M Zn^{2+}. The initial voltage measured when the cell is connected can then be calculated from Equation 11.4.6:

$$E_{\text{cell}} = E^{\circ}_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{n}\right) \log \frac{[\text{Zn}^{2+}]}{[\text{Cu}^{2+}]} \tag{11.4.8}$$

$$= 1.10\ \text{V} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{2}\right) \log \left(\frac{1.0 \times 10^{-6}}{1.0}\right) = 1.28\ \text{V} \tag{11.4.9}$$

Thus the initial voltage is greater than E° because $Q < 1$. As the reaction proceeds, [Zn^{2+}] in the anode compartment increases as the zinc electrode dissolves, while [Cu^{2+}] in the cathode compartment decreases as metallic copper is deposited on the electrode. During this process, the ratio Q = [Zn^{2+}]/[Cu^{2+}] steadily increases, and the cell voltage therefore steadily decreases. Eventually, [Zn^{2+}] = [Cu^{2+}], so Q = 1 and E_{cell} = E°$_{cell}$. Beyond this point, [Zn^{2+}] will continue to increase in the anode compartment, and [Cu^{2+}] will continue to decrease in the cathode compartment. Thus the value of Q will increase further, leading to a further decrease in E_{cell}. When the concentrations in the two compartments are the opposite of the initial concentrations (i.e., 1.0 M Zn^{2+} and 1.0 × 10^{-6} M Cu^{2+}), Q = 1.0 × 10^{6}, and the cell potential will be reduced to 0.92 V.

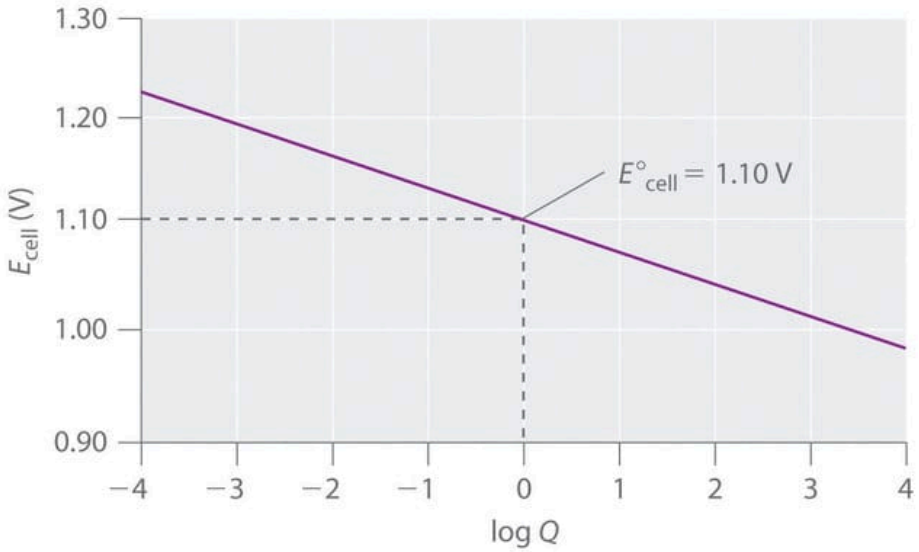


Figure 11.4.1: The Variation of E_{cell} with Log Q for a Zn/Cu Cell. Initially, log Q < 0, and the voltage of the cell is greater than E°$_{cell}$. As the reaction progresses, log Q increases, and E_{cell} decreases. When [Zn^{2+}] = [Cu^{2+}], log Q = 0 and E_{cell} = E°$_{cell}$ = 1.10 V. As long as the electrical circuit remains intact, the reaction will continue, and log Q will increase until Q = K and the cell voltage reaches zero. At this point, the system will have reached equilibrium.

The variation of E_{cell} with $\log Q$ over this range is linear with a slope of −0.0591/n, as illustrated in Figure 11.4.1. As the reaction proceeds still further, Q continues to increase, and E_{cell} continues to decrease. If neither of the electrodes dissolves completely, thereby breaking the electrical circuit, the cell voltage will eventually reach zero. This is the situation that occurs when a battery is "dead." The value of Q when E_{cell} = 0 is calculated as follows:

$$E_{\text{cell}} = E^{\circ}_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{n}\right) \log Q = 0 \tag{11.4.10}$$

$$E^{\circ} = \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{n}\right) \log Q \tag{11.4.11}$$

$$\log Q = \frac{E^{\circ} n}{0.0591\ \text{V}} = \frac{(1.10\ \text{V})(2)}{0.0591\ \text{V}} = 37.23 \tag{11.4.12}$$

$$Q = 10^{37.23} = 1.7 \times 10^{37} \tag{11.4.13}$$

Recall that at equilibrium, $Q = K$. Thus the equilibrium constant for the reaction of Zn metal with Cu^{2+} to give Cu metal and Zn^{2+}

is 1.7 × 10^{37} at 25°C.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Nernst Equation: The Nernst Equation (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Concentration Cells

A voltage can also be generated by constructing an electrochemical cell in which each compartment contains the same redox active solution but at different concentrations. The voltage is produced as the concentrations equilibrate. Suppose, for example, we have a cell with 0.010 M $AgNO_3$ in one compartment and 1.0 M $AgNO_3$ in the other. The cell diagram and corresponding half-reactions are as follows:

$$\mathrm{Ag(s)\,|\,Ag^+}(aq, 0.010\ M)\,||\,\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq, 1.0\ M)\,|\,\mathrm{Ag\,(s)} \tag{11.4.14}$$

cathode:

$$\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq, 1.0\ M) + \mathrm{e^-} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ag\,(s)} \tag{11.4.15}$$

anode:

$$\mathrm{Ag\,(s)} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ag^+}(aq, 0.010\ M) + \mathrm{e^-} \tag{11.4.16}$$

Overall

$$\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq, 1.0\ M) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ag^+}(aq, 0.010\ M) \tag{11.4.17}$$

As the reaction progresses, the concentration of Ag^+ will increase in the left (oxidation) compartment as the silver electrode dissolves, while the Ag^+ concentration in the right (reduction) compartment decreases as the electrode in that compartment gains mass. The total mass of $Ag(s)$ in the cell will remain constant, however. We can calculate the potential of the cell using the Nernst equation, inserting 0 for $E°_{cell}$ because $E°_{cathode} = -E°_{anode}$:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{cell}} &= E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{n}\right)\log Q \\ &= 0 - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{1}\right)\log\left(\frac{0.010}{1.0}\right) \\ &= 0.12\ \text{V} \end{aligned}$$

An electrochemical cell of this type, in which the anode and cathode compartments are identical except for the concentration of a reactant, is called a **concentration cell**. As the reaction proceeds, the difference between the concentrations of Ag^+ in the two compartments will decrease, as will E_{cell}. Finally, when the concentration of Ag^+ is the same in both compartments, equilibrium will have been reached, and the measured potential difference between the two compartments will be zero (E_{cell} = 0).

Example 11.4.2

Calculate the voltage in a galvanic cell that contains a manganese electrode immersed in a 2.0 M solution of $MnCl_2$ as the cathode, and a manganese electrode immersed in a 5.2 × 10^{-2} M solution of $MnSO_4$ as the anode (T = 25°C).

Given: galvanic cell, identities of the electrodes, and solution concentrations

Asked for: voltage

Strategy:

A. Write the overall reaction that occurs in the cell.
B. Determine the number of electrons transferred. Substitute this value into the Nernst equation to calculate the voltage.

Solution

A This is a concentration cell, in which the electrode compartments contain the same redox active substance but at different concentrations. The anions (Cl^- and SO_4^{2-}) do not participate in the reaction, so their identity is not important. The overall reaction is as follows:

$$[redacted](aq, 2.0\ M) \rightarrow [redacted](aq, 5.2 \times 10^{-2}\ M)$$

B For the reduction of Mn^{2+}(aq) to Mn(s), n = 2. We substitute this value and the given Mn^{2+} concentrations into Equation 11.4.6:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{cell}} &= E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{n}\right) \log Q \\ &= 0\ \text{V} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{2}\right) \log \left(\frac{5.2 \times 10^{-2}}{2.0}\right) \\ &= 0.047\ \text{V} \end{aligned}$$

Thus manganese will dissolve from the electrode in the compartment that contains the more dilute solution and will be deposited on the electrode in the compartment that contains the more concentrated solution.

Exercise 11.4.2

Suppose we construct a galvanic cell by placing two identical platinum electrodes in two beakers that are connected by a salt bridge. One beaker contains 1.0 M HCl, and the other a 0.010 M solution of Na_2SO_4 at pH 7.00. Both cells are in contact with the atmosphere, with P_{O_2} = 0.20 atm. If the relevant electrochemical reaction in both compartments is the four-electron reduction of oxygen to water:

$$\mathrm{O_2\,(g) + 4\,H^+\,(aq) + 4\,e^- \rightarrow 2\,H_2O\,(l)}$$

What will be the potential when the circuit is closed?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Using Cell Potentials to Measure Solubility Products

Because voltages are relatively easy to measure accurately using a voltmeter, electrochemical methods provide a convenient way to determine the concentrations of very dilute solutions and the solubility products (K_{sp}) of sparingly soluble substances. As you learned previously, solubility products can be very small, with values of less than or equal to 10^{-30}. Equilibrium constants of this magnitude are virtually impossible to measure accurately by direct methods, so we must use alternative methods that are more sensitive, such as electrochemical methods.

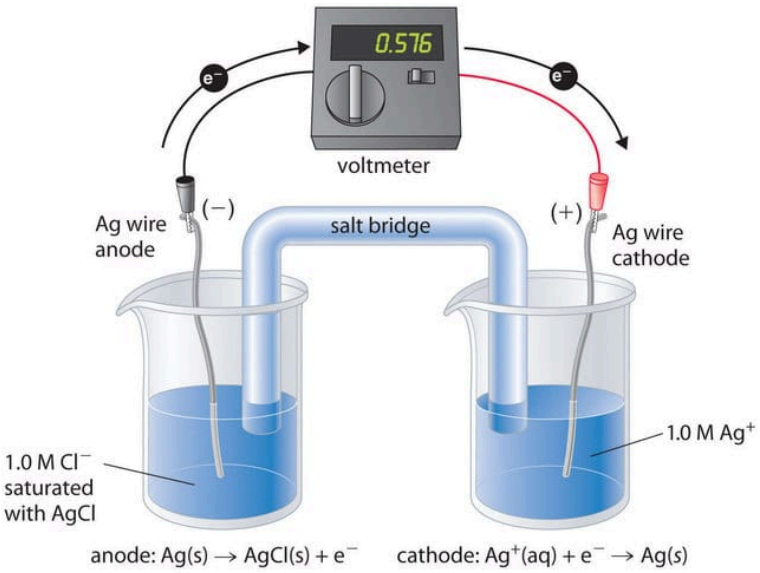


Figure 11.4.1: A Galvanic ("Concentration") Cell for Measuring the Solubility Product of AgCl. One compartment contains a silver wire inserted into a 1.0 M solution of Ag^+, and the other compartment contains a silver wire inserted into a 1.0 M Cl^- solution saturated with AgCl. The potential due to the difference in [Ag^+] between the two cells can be used to determine K_{sp}. (CC BY-NC-SA; Anonymous by request)

To understand how an electrochemical cell is used to measure a solubility product, consider the cell shown in Figure 11.4.1, which is designed to measure the solubility product of silver chloride:

$$K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ag^+}][\mathrm{Cl^-}].$$

In one compartment, the cell contains a silver wire inserted into a 1.0 M solution of Ag^+; the other compartment contains a silver wire inserted into a 1.0 M Cl^- solution saturated with AgCl. In this system, the Ag^+ ion concentration in the first compartment equals K_{sp}. We can see this by dividing both sides of the equation for K_{sp} by [Cl^-] and substituting:

$$\begin{aligned}[\mathrm{Ag^+}] &= \frac{K_{sp}}{[\mathrm{Cl^-}]} \\ &= \frac{K_{sp}}{1.0} = K_{sp}.\end{aligned}$$

The overall cell reaction is as follows:

$$Ag^+(aq, \text{concentrated}) \rightarrow Ag^+(aq, \text{dilute})$$

Thus the voltage of the concentration cell due to the difference in [Ag^+] between the two cells is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}E_{\text{cell}} &= 0\ \text{V} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{1}\right) \log\left(\frac{[\mathrm{Ag^+}]_{\text{dilute}}}{[\mathrm{Ag^+}]_{\text{concentrated}}}\right) \\ &= -0.0591\ \text{V}\ \log\left(\frac{K_{\text{sp}}}{1.0}\right) \\ &= -0.0591\ \text{V}\ \log K_{\text{sp}} \qquad (11.4.18)\end{aligned}$$

By closing the circuit, we can measure the potential caused by the difference in [Ag+] in the two cells. In this case, the experimentally measured voltage of the concentration cell at 25°C is 0.580 V. Solving Equation 11.4.18 for K_{sp},

$$\begin{aligned}\log K_{\text{sp}} &= \frac{-E_{\text{cell}}}{0.0591\ \text{V}} = \frac{-0.580\ \text{V}}{0.0591\ \text{V}} = -9.81 \\ K_{\text{sp}} &= 1.5 \times 10^{-10}\end{aligned}$$

Thus a single potential measurement can provide the information we need to determine the value of the solubility product of a

sparingly soluble salt.

Example 11.4.3: Solubility of lead(II) sulfate

To measure the solubility product of lead(II) sulfate ($PbSO_4$) at 25°C, you construct a galvanic cell like the one shown in Figure 11.4.1, which contains a 1.0 M solution of a very soluble Pb^{2+} salt [lead(II) acetate trihydrate] in one compartment that is connected by a salt bridge to a 1.0 M solution of Na_2SO_4 saturated with $PbSO_4$ in the other. You then insert a Pb electrode into each compartment and close the circuit. Your voltmeter shows a voltage of 230 mV. What is K_{sp} for $PbSO_4$? Report your answer to two significant figures.

Given: galvanic cell, solution concentrations, electrodes, and voltage

Asked for: K_{sp}

Strategy:

A. From the information given, write the equation for K_{sp}. Express this equation in terms of the concentration of Pb^{2+}.
B. Determine the number of electrons transferred in the electrochemical reaction. Substitute the appropriate values into Equation ??? and solve for K_{sp}.

Solution

A You have constructed a concentration cell, with one compartment containing a 1.0 M solution of Pb^{2+} and the other containing a dilute solution of Pb^{2+} in 1.0 M Na_2SO_4. As for any concentration cell, the voltage between the two compartments can be calculated using the Nernst equation. The first step is to relate the concentration of Pb^{2+} in the dilute solution to K_{sp}:

$$[Pb^{2+}][SO_4^{2-}] = K_{sp}$$
$$[Pb^{2+}] = \frac{K_{sp}}{[SO_4^{2-}]} = \frac{K_{sp}}{1.0\ M} = K_{sp}$$

B The reduction of Pb^{2+} to Pb is a two-electron process and proceeds according to the following reaction:

$$Pb^{2+}(aq, concentrated) \rightarrow Pb^{2+}(aq, dilute)$$

so

$$E_{cell} = E^\circ_{cell} - \left(\frac{0.0591}{n}\right) \log Q$$
$$0.230\ V = 0\ V - \left(\frac{0.0591\ V}{2}\right) \log \left(\frac{[Pb^{2+}]_{dilute}}{[Pb^{2+}]_{concentrated}}\right) = -0.0296\ V \log\left(\frac{K_{sp}}{1.0}\right)$$
$$-7.77 = \log K_{sp}$$
$$1.7 \times 10^{-8} = K_{sp}$$

Exercise 11.4.3

A concentration cell similar to the one described in Example 11.4.3 contains a 1.0 M solution of lanthanum nitrate [$La(NO_3)_3$] in one compartment and a 1.0 M solution of sodium fluoride saturated with LaF_3 in the other. A metallic La strip is inserted into each compartment, and the circuit is closed. The measured potential is 0.32 V. What is the K_{sp} for LaF_3? Report your answer to two significant figures.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Using Cell Potentials to Measure Concentrations

Another use for the Nernst equation is to calculate the concentration of a species given a measured potential and the concentrations of all the other species. We saw an example of this in Example 11.4.3, in which the experimental conditions were defined in such a way that the concentration of the metal ion was equal to K_{sp}. Potential measurements can be used to obtain the concentrations of dissolved species under other conditions as well, which explains the widespread use of electrochemical cells in many analytical devices. Perhaps the most common application is in the determination of $[H^+]$ using a pH meter, as illustrated below.

Example 11.4.4: Measuring pH

Suppose a galvanic cell is constructed with a standard Zn/Zn^{2+} couple in one compartment and a modified hydrogen electrode in the second compartment. The pressure of hydrogen gas is 1.0 atm, but $[H^+]$ in the second compartment is unknown. The cell diagram is as follows:

$$\mathrm{Zn\,(s)|Zn^{2+}}(aq, 1.0\,M)||\mathrm{H^+}(aq, ?\,M)|\mathrm{H_2}(g, 1.0\,atm)|Pt(s)$$

What is the pH of the solution in the second compartment if the measured potential in the cell is 0.26 V at 25°C?

Given: galvanic cell, cell diagram, and cell potential

Asked for: pH of the solution

Strategy:

A. Write the overall cell reaction.
B. Substitute appropriate values into the Nernst equation and solve for $-\log[H^+]$ to obtain the pH.

Solution

A Under standard conditions, the overall reaction that occurs is the reduction of protons by zinc to give H_2 (note that Zn lies below H_2 in Table P2):

$$Zn(s) + 2H^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + H_2(g) \quad E°=0.76\ V$$

B By substituting the given values into the simplified Nernst equation (Equation 11.4.6), we can calculate $[H^+]$ under nonstandard conditions:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{cell}} &= E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{n}\right)\log\left(\frac{[\mathrm{Zn^{2+}}]P_{\mathrm{H_2}}}{[\mathrm{H^+}]^2}\right) \\ 0.26\ \text{V} &= 0.76\ \text{V} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{2}\right)\log\left(\frac{(1.0)(1.0)}{[\mathrm{H^+}]^2}\right) \\ 16.9 &= \log\left(\frac{1}{[\mathrm{H^+}]^2}\right) = \log\,[\mathrm{H^+}]^{-2} = (-2)\log[\mathrm{H^+}] \\ 8.46 &= -\log[\mathrm{H^+}] \\ 8.5 &= \mathrm{pH} \end{aligned}$$

Thus the potential of a galvanic cell can be used to measure the pH of a solution.

Exercise 11.4.4

Suppose you work for an environmental laboratory and you want to use an electrochemical method to measure the concentration of Pb^{2+} in groundwater. You construct a galvanic cell using a standard oxygen electrode in one compartment ($E°_{cathode}$ = 1.23 V). The other compartment contains a strip of lead in a sample of groundwater to which you have added sufficient acetic acid, a weak organic acid, to ensure electrical conductivity. The cell diagram is as follows:

$$Pb_{(s)} \mid Pb^{2+}(aq, ?M) \parallel H^{+}(aq), 1.0M \mid O_2(g, 1.0atm) \mid Pt_{(s)}$$

When the circuit is closed, the cell has a measured potential of 1.62 V. Use Table P2 to determine the concentration of Pb^{2+} in the groundwater.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

The Nernst equation can be used to determine the direction of spontaneous reaction for any redox reaction in aqueous solution. The Nernst equation allows us to determine the spontaneous direction of any redox reaction under any reaction conditions from values of the relevant standard electrode potentials. Concentration cells consist of anode and cathode compartments that are identical except for the concentrations of the reactant. Because $\Delta G = 0$ at equilibrium, the measured potential of a concentration cell is zero at equilibrium (the concentrations are equal). A galvanic cell can also be used to measure the solubility product of a sparingly soluble substance and calculate the concentration of a species given a measured potential and the concentrations of all the other species.

Answers

Exercise 11.4.1

E_{cell} = −0.22 V; the reaction will not occur spontaneously.

Exercise 11.4.2

0.41 V

Exercise 11.4.3

5.7×10^{-17}

Exercise 11.4.4

$1.2 \times 10^{-9}\ M$

This page titled 11.4: Ecell as a Function of Concentrations is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 20.6: Cell Potential Under Nonstandard Conditions is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

11.5: Electrolysis: Causing Nonspontaneous Reactions to Occur

Learning Objectives

- To understand electrolysis and describe it quantitatively.

In this chapter, we have described various galvanic cells in which a spontaneous chemical reaction is used to generate electrical energy. In an electrolytic cell, however, the opposite process, called **electrolysis**, occurs: an external voltage is applied to drive a nonspontaneous reaction. In this section, we look at how electrolytic cells are constructed and explore some of their many commercial applications.

Electrolytic Cells

If we construct an electrochemical cell in which one electrode is copper metal immersed in a 1 M Cu^{2+} solution and the other electrode is cadmium metal immersed in a $1\ M\ Cd^{2+}$ solution and then close the circuit, the potential difference between the two compartments will be 0.74 V. The cadmium electrode will begin to dissolve (Cd is oxidized to Cd^{2+}) and is the anode, while metallic copper will be deposited on the copper electrode (Cu^{2+} is reduced to Cu), which is the cathode (Figure $11.5.1a$).

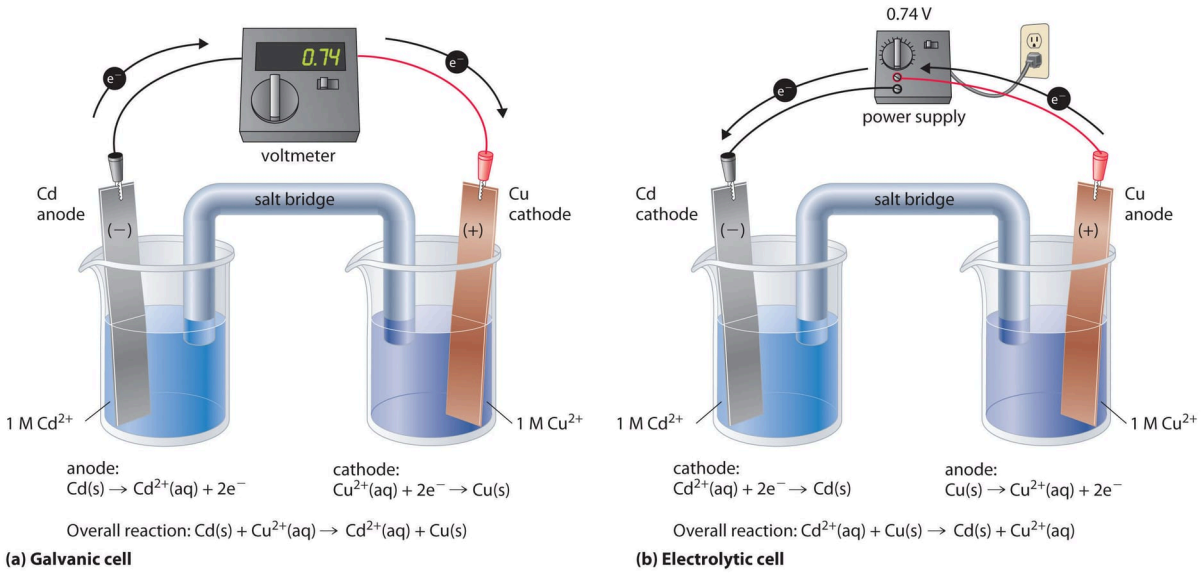


Figure $11.5.1$: An Applied Voltage Can Reverse the Flow of Electrons in a Galvanic Cd/Cu Cell. (a) When compartments that contain a Cd electrode immersed in 1 M Cd^{2+}(aq) and a Cu electrode immersed in 1 M Cu^{2+}(aq) are connected to create a galvanic cell, Cd(s) is spontaneously oxidized to Cd^{2+}(aq) at the anode, and Cu^{2+}(aq) is spontaneously reduced to Cu(s) at the cathode. The potential of the galvanic cell is 0.74 V. (b) Applying an external potential greater than 0.74 V in the reverse direction forces electrons to flow from the Cu electrode [which is now the anode, at which metallic Cu(s) is oxidized to Cu^{2+}(aq)] and into the Cd electrode [which is now the cathode, at which Cd^{2+}(aq) is reduced to Cd(s)]. The anode in an electrolytic cell is positive because electrons are flowing from it, whereas the cathode is negative because electrons are flowing into it. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

The overall reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{Cd\,(s) + Cu^{2+}\,(aq)\ \rightarrow Cd^{2+}\,(aq) + Cu\,(s)}$$

with $E^\circ_{cell} = 0.74\ V$

This reaction is thermodynamically spontaneous as written ($\Delta G^o < 0$):

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G^\circ &= -nFE^\circ_{\text{cell}} \\ &= -(2\text{ mol e}^-)[96,485\text{ J/(V}\cdot\text{mol)}](0.74\text{ V}) \\ &= -140\text{ kJ (per mole Cd)}\end{aligned}$$

In this direction, the system is acting as a galvanic cell.

In an electrolytic cell, an external voltage is applied to drive a *nonspontaneous* reaction.

The reverse reaction, the reduction of Cd^{2+} by Cu, is thermodynamically nonspontaneous and will occur only with an input of 140 kJ. We can force the reaction to proceed in the reverse direction by applying an electrical potential greater than 0.74 V from an external power supply. The applied voltage forces electrons through the circuit in the reverse direction, converting a galvanic cell to an electrolytic cell. Thus the copper electrode is now the anode (Cu is oxidized), and the cadmium electrode is now the cathode (Cd^{2+} is reduced) (Figure $11.5.1b$). The signs of the cathode and the anode have switched to reflect the flow of electrons in the circuit. The half-reactions that occur at the cathode and the anode are as follows:

- half-reaction at the cathode:

$$\text{Cd}^{2+}\,(\text{aq}) + 2\,\text{e}^- \rightarrow \text{Cd}\,(\text{s}) \tag{11.5.1}$$

with $E^\circ_{cathode} = -0.40\ V$

- half-reaction at the anode:

$$\text{Cu}\,(\text{s}) \rightarrow \text{Cu}^{2+}\,(\text{aq}) + 2\,\text{e}^- \tag{11.5.2}$$

with $E^\circ_{anode} = 0.34\ V$

- Overall Reaction:

$$\text{Cd}^{2+}\,(\text{aq}) + \text{Cu}\,(\text{s}) \rightarrow \text{Cd}\,(\text{s}) + \text{Cu}^{2+}\,(\text{aq}) \tag{11.5.3}$$

with $E^\circ_{cell} = -0.74\ V$

Because $E^\circ_{cell} < 0$, the overall reaction—the reduction of Cd^{2+} by Cu—clearly **cannot** occur spontaneously and proceeds only when sufficient electrical energy is applied. The differences between galvanic and electrolytic cells are summarized in Table $11.5.1$.

Table $11.5.1$: Comparison of Galvanic and Electrolytic Cells

Property	Galvanic Cell	Electrolytic Cell
ΔG	< 0	> 0
E_{cell}	> 0	< 0
Electrode Process		
anode	oxidation	oxidation
cathode	reduction	reduction
Sign of Electrode		
anode	–	+
cathode	+	–

Electrolytic Reactions

At sufficiently high temperatures, ionic solids melt to form liquids that conduct electricity extremely well due to the high concentrations of ions. If two inert electrodes are inserted into molten NaCl, for example, and an electrical potential is applied,

Cl^- is oxidized at the anode, and Na^+ is reduced at the cathode. The overall reaction is as follows:

$$2\,NaCl\,(l) \rightarrow 2\,Na\,(l) + Cl_2\,(g) \tag{11.5.4}$$

This is the reverse of the formation of $NaCl$ from its elements. The product of the reduction reaction is liquid sodium because the melting point of sodium metal is 97.8°C, well below that of $NaCl$ (801°C). Approximately 20,000 tons of sodium metal are produced commercially in the United States each year by the electrolysis of molten $NaCl$ in a Downs cell (Figure 11.5.2). In this specialized cell, $CaCl_2$ (melting point = 772°C) is first added to the $NaCl$ to lower the melting point of the mixture to about 600°C, thereby lowering operating costs.

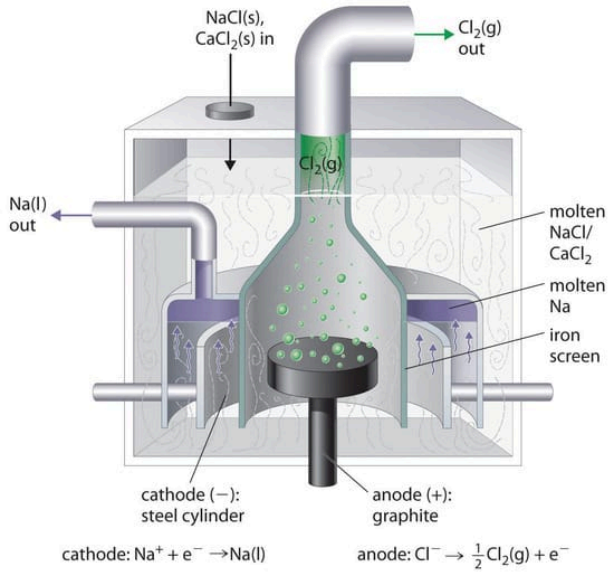


Figure 11.5.2: A Downs Cell for the Electrolysis of Molten NaCl. The electrolysis of a molten mixture of NaCl and $CaCl_2$ results in the formation of elemental sodium and chlorine gas. Because sodium is a liquid under these conditions and liquid sodium is less dense than molten sodium chloride, the sodium floats to the top of the melt and is collected in concentric capped iron cylinders surrounding the cathode. Gaseous chlorine collects in the inverted cone over the anode. An iron screen separating the cathode and anode compartments ensures that the molten sodium and gaseous chlorine do not come into contact. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Similarly, in the Hall–Heroult process used to produce aluminum commercially, a molten mixture of about 5% aluminum oxide (Al_2O_3; melting point = 2054°C) and 95% cryolite (Na_3AlF_6; melting point = 1012°C) is electrolyzed at about 1000°C, producing molten aluminum at the cathode and CO_2 gas at the carbon anode. The overall reaction is as follows:

$$2\,Al_2O_3\,(l) + 3\,C\,(s) \longrightarrow 4\,Al\,(l) + 3\,CO_2\,(g) \tag{11.5.5}$$

Oxide ions react with oxidized carbon at the anode, producing CO_2(g).

There are two important points to make about these two commercial processes and about the electrolysis of molten salts in general.

1. The electrode potentials for molten salts are likely to be very different from the standard cell potentials listed in Table P2, which are compiled for the reduction of the hydrated ions in aqueous solutions under standard conditions.
2. Using a mixed salt system means there is a possibility of competition between different electrolytic reactions. When a mixture of NaCl and $CaCl_2$ is electrolyzed, Cl^- is oxidized because it is the only anion present, but either Na^+ or Ca^{2+} can be reduced. Conversely, in the Hall–Heroult process, only one cation is present that can be reduced (Al^{3+}), but there are three species that can be oxidized: C, O^{2-}, and F^-.

In the Hall–Heroult process, C is oxidized instead of O^{2-} or F^- because oxygen and fluorine are more electronegative than carbon, which means that C is a weaker oxidant than either O_2 or F_2. Similarly, in the Downs cell, we might expect electrolysis of a NaCl/$CaCl_2$ mixture to produce calcium rather than sodium because Na is slightly less electronegative than Ca (χ = 0.93 versus 1.00, respectively), making Na easier to oxidize and, conversely, Na^+ more difficult to reduce. In fact, the reduction of Na^+ to Na is the observed reaction. In cases where the electronegativities of two species are similar, other factors, such as the formation of

complex ions, become important and may determine the outcome.

Example 11.5.1

If a molten mixture of $MgCl_2$ and KBr is electrolyzed, what products will form at the cathode and the anode, respectively?

Given: identity of salts

Asked for: electrolysis products

Strategy:

A. List all the possible reduction and oxidation products. Based on the electronegativity values shown in Figure 7.5, determine which species will be reduced and which species will be oxidized.
B. Identify the products that will form at each electrode.

Solution

A The possible reduction products are Mg and K, and the possible oxidation products are Cl_2 and Br_2. Because Mg is more electronegative than K (χ = 1.31 versus 0.82), it is likely that Mg will be reduced rather than K. Because Cl is more electronegative than Br (3.16 versus 2.96), Cl_2 is a stronger oxidant than Br_2.

B Electrolysis will therefore produce Br_2 at the anode and Mg at the cathode.

Exercise 11.5.1

Predict the products if a molten mixture of $AlBr_3$ and LiF is electrolyzed.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Electrolysis can also be used to drive the thermodynamically nonspontaneous decomposition of water into its constituent elements: H_2 and O_2. However, because pure water is a very poor electrical conductor, a small amount of an ionic solute (such as H_2SO_4 or Na_2SO_4) must first be added to increase its electrical conductivity. Inserting inert electrodes into the solution and applying a voltage between them will result in the rapid evolution of bubbles of H_2 and O_2 (Figure 11.5.3).

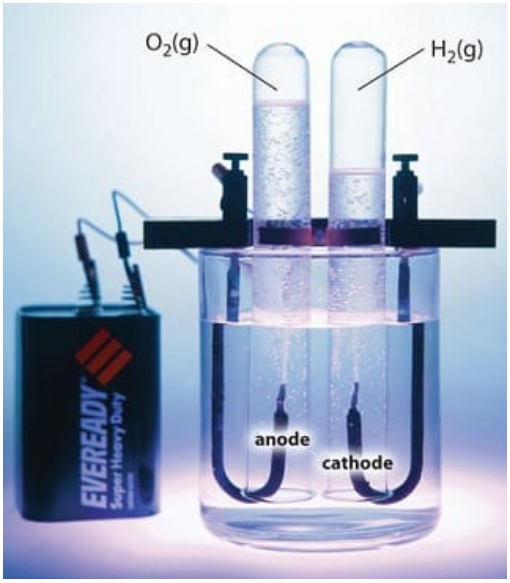


Figure 11.5.3: The Electrolysis of Water. Applying an external potential of about 1.7–1.9 V to two inert electrodes immersed in an aqueous solution of an electrolyte such as H_2SO_4 or Na_2SO_4 drives the thermodynamically nonspontaneous decomposition of water into H_2 at the cathode and O_2 at the anode. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

The reactions that occur are as follows:

- cathode:

$$2H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^- \rightarrow H_{2(g)} \qquad E^\circ_{cathode} = 0V \tag{11.5.6}$$

- anode:

$$2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow O_{2(g)} + 4H^+_{(aq)} + 4e^- \qquad E^\circ_{anode} = 1.23\ V \tag{11.5.7}$$

- overall:

$$2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow O_{2(g)} + 2H_{2(g)} \qquad E^\circ_{cell} = -1.23\ V \tag{11.5.8}$$

For a system that contains an electrolyte such as Na_2SO_4, which has a negligible effect on the ionization equilibrium of liquid water, the pH of the solution will be 7.00 and $[H^+] = [OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-7}$. Assuming that $P_{O_2} = P_{H_2} = 1$ atm, we can use the standard potentials to calculate E for the overall reaction:

$$E_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{n}\right)\log(P_{O_2}P^2_{H_2}) \tag{11.5.9}$$

$$= -1.23\ \text{V} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{4}\right)\log(1) = -1.23\ \text{V} \tag{11.5.10}$$

Thus E_{cell} is –1.23 V, which is the value of $E°_{cell}$ if the reaction is carried out in the presence of 1 M H^+ rather than at pH 7.0.

In practice, a voltage about 0.4–0.6 V greater than the calculated value is needed to electrolyze water. This added voltage, called an **overvoltage**, represents the additional driving force required to overcome barriers such as the large activation energy for the formation of a gas at a metal surface. Overvoltages are needed in all electrolytic processes, which explain why, for example, approximately 14 V must be applied to recharge the 12 V battery in your car.

In general, any metal that does not react readily with water to produce hydrogen can be produced by the electrolytic reduction of an aqueous solution that contains the metal cation. The p-block metals and most of the transition metals are in this category, but metals in high oxidation states, which form oxoanions, cannot be reduced to the metal by simple electrolysis. Active metals, such as aluminum and those of groups 1 and 2, react so readily with water that they can be prepared only by the electrolysis of molten salts. Similarly, any nonmetallic element that does not readily oxidize water to O_2 can be prepared by the electrolytic oxidation of an aqueous solution that contains an appropriate anion. In practice, among the nonmetals, only F_2 cannot be prepared using this method. Oxoanions of nonmetals in their highest oxidation states, such as NO_3^-, SO_4^{2-}, PO_4^{3-}, are usually difficult to reduce electrochemically and usually behave like spectator ions that remain in solution during electrolysis.

In general, any metal that does not react readily with water to produce hydrogen can be produced by the electrolytic reduction of an aqueous solution that contains the metal cation.

Electroplating

In a process called **electroplating**, a layer of a second metal is deposited on the metal electrode that acts as the cathode during electrolysis. Electroplating is used to enhance the appearance of metal objects and protect them from corrosion. Examples of electroplating include the chromium layer found on many bathroom fixtures or (in earlier days) on the bumpers and hubcaps of cars, as well as the thin layer of precious metal that coats silver-plated dinnerware or jewelry. In all cases, the basic concept is the same. A schematic view of an apparatus for electroplating silverware and a photograph of a commercial electroplating cell are shown in Figure 11.5.4.

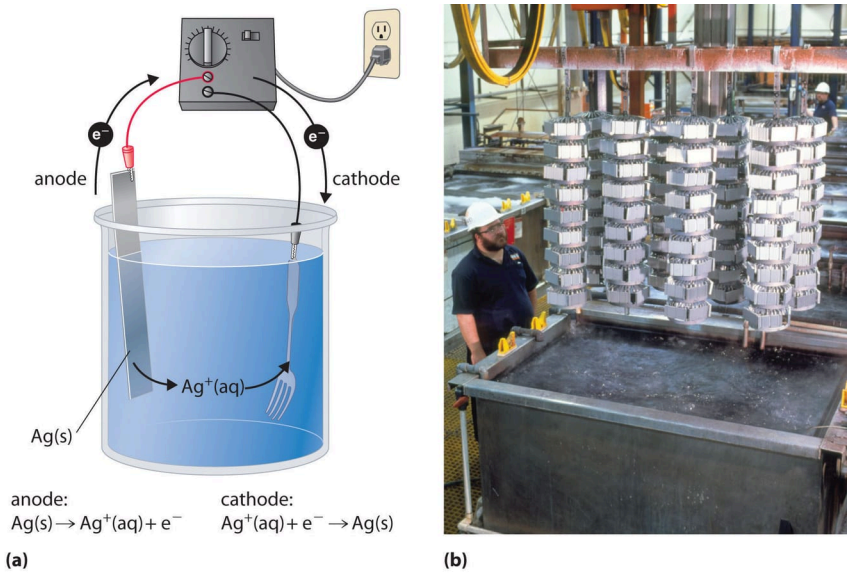


Figure 11.5.3: Electroplating. (a) Electroplating uses an electrolytic cell in which the object to be plated, such as a fork, is immersed in a solution of the metal to be deposited. The object being plated acts as the cathode, on which the desired metal is deposited in a thin layer, while the anode usually consists of the metal that is being deposited (in this case, silver) that maintains the solution concentration as it dissolves. (b) In this commercial electroplating apparatus, a large number of objects can be plated simultaneously by lowering the rack into the Ag^+ solution and applying the correct potential. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

The half-reactions in electroplating a fork, for example, with silver are as follows:

- cathode (fork):

$$\mathrm{Ag^+(aq) + e^- \longrightarrow Ag(s)} \qquad E°_{cathode} = 0.80V$$

- anode (silver bar):

$$\mathrm{Ag(s) \longrightarrow Ag^+(aq) + e^-} \qquad E°_{anode} = 0.80V$$

The overall reaction is the transfer of silver metal from one electrode (a silver bar acting as the anode) to another (a fork acting as the cathode). Because $E^o_{cell} = 0\ V$, it takes only a small applied voltage to drive the electroplating process. In practice, various other substances may be added to the plating solution to control its electrical conductivity and regulate the concentration of free metal ions, thus ensuring a smooth, even coating.

Quantitative Considerations

If we know the stoichiometry of an electrolysis reaction, the amount of current passed, and the length of time, we can calculate the amount of material consumed or produced in a reaction. Conversely, we can use stoichiometry to determine the combination of current and time needed to produce a given amount of material.

The quantity of material that is oxidized or reduced at an electrode during an electrochemical reaction is determined by the

stoichiometry of the reaction and the amount of charge that is transferred. For example, in the reaction

$$\mathrm{Ag^+(aq) + e^- \longrightarrow Ag(s)}$$

1 mol of electrons reduces 1 mol of $\mathrm{Ag^+}$ to Ag metal. In contrast, in the reaction

$$\mathrm{Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2\,e^- \longrightarrow Cu(s)}$$

1 mol of electrons reduces only 0.5 mol of $\mathrm{Cu^{2+}}$ to Cu metal. Recall that the charge on 1 mol of electrons is 1 faraday (1 F), which is equal to 96,485 C. We can therefore calculate the number of moles of electrons transferred when a known current is passed through a cell for a given period of time. The total charge (q in coulombs) transferred is the product of the current (I in amperes) and the time (t, in seconds):

$$q = I \times t \tag{11.5.11}$$

The stoichiometry of the reaction and the total charge transferred enable us to calculate the amount of product formed during an electrolysis reaction or the amount of metal deposited in an electroplating process.

For example, if a current of 0.60 A passes through an aqueous solution of $\mathrm{CuSO_4}$ for 6.0 min, the total number of coulombs of charge that passes through the cell is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} q &= (0.60\ \mathrm{A})(6.0\ \mathrm{min})(60\ \mathrm{s/min}) \\ &= 220\ \mathrm{A \cdot s} \\ &= 220\ \mathrm{C} \end{aligned}$$

The number of moles of electrons transferred to $\mathrm{Cu^{2+}}$ is therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{moles\ e^-} &= \frac{220\ \mathrm{C}}{96{,}485\ \mathrm{C/mol}} \\ &= 2.3 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{mol\ e^-} \end{aligned}$$

Because two electrons are required to reduce a single $\mathrm{Cu^{2+}}$ ion, the total number of moles of Cu produced is half the number of moles of electrons transferred, or 1.2×10^{-3} mol. This corresponds to 76 mg of Cu. In commercial electrorefining processes, much higher currents (greater than or equal to 50,000 A) are used, corresponding to approximately 0.5 F/s, and reaction times are on the order of 3–4 weeks.

Example 11.5.2

A silver-plated spoon typically contains about 2.00 g of Ag. If 12.0 h are required to achieve the desired thickness of the Ag coating, what is the average current per spoon that must flow during the electroplating process, assuming an efficiency of 100%?

Given: mass of metal, time, and efficiency

Asked for: current required

Strategy:

A. Calculate the number of moles of metal corresponding to the given mass transferred.
B. Write the reaction and determine the number of moles of electrons required for the electroplating process.
C. Use the definition of the faraday to calculate the number of coulombs required. Then convert coulombs to current in amperes.

Solution

A We must first determine the number of moles of Ag corresponding to 2.00 g of Ag:

$$\text{moles Ag} = \frac{2.00\ \text{g}}{107.868\ \text{g/mol}} = 1.85 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{mol Ag}$$

B The reduction reaction is $Ag^+(aq) + e^- \rightarrow Ag(s)$, so 1 mol of electrons produces 1 mol of silver.

C Using the definition of the faraday,

$$\text{coulombs} = (1.85 \times 10^{-2}\text{mol } e^-)(96{,}485\ \text{C/mol } e^-) = 1.78 \times 10^3\ \text{C / mole}$$

The current in amperes needed to deliver this amount of charge in 12.0 h is therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\text{amperes} &= \frac{1.78 \times 10^3\ \text{C}}{(12.0\ \text{h})(60\ \text{min/h})(60\ \text{s/min})} \\ &= 4.12 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{C/s} = 4.12 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{A}\end{aligned}$$

Because the electroplating process is usually much less than 100% efficient (typical values are closer to 30%), the actual current necessary is greater than 0.1 A.

Exercise 11.5.2

A typical aluminum soft-drink can weighs about 29 g. How much time is needed to produce this amount of Al(s) in the Hall–Heroult process, using a current of 15 A to reduce a molten Al_2O_3/Na_3AlF_6 mixture?

Answer available at the end of this section.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Electroplating: Electroplating(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

In electrolysis, an external voltage is applied to drive a **nonspontaneous** reaction. The quantity of material oxidized or reduced can be calculated from the stoichiometry of the reaction and the amount of charge transferred. Relationship of charge, current and time:

$$q = I \times t$$

In electrolysis, an external voltage is applied to drive a nonspontaneous reaction. Electrolysis can also be used to produce H_2 and O_2 from water. In practice, an additional voltage, called an overvoltage, must be applied to overcome factors such as a large activation energy and a junction potential. Electroplating is the process by which a second metal is deposited on a metal surface, thereby enhancing an object's appearance or providing protection from corrosion. The amount of material consumed or produced in a reaction can be calculated from the stoichiometry of an electrolysis reaction, the amount of current passed, and the duration of the electrolytic reaction.

Answers

Exercise 11.5.1

Br_2 and Al

Exercise 11.5.2

5.8 h

This page titled 11.5: Electrolysis: Causing Nonspontaneous Reactions to Occur is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 20.9: Electrolysis is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

11.6: Industrial Electrolysis Processes

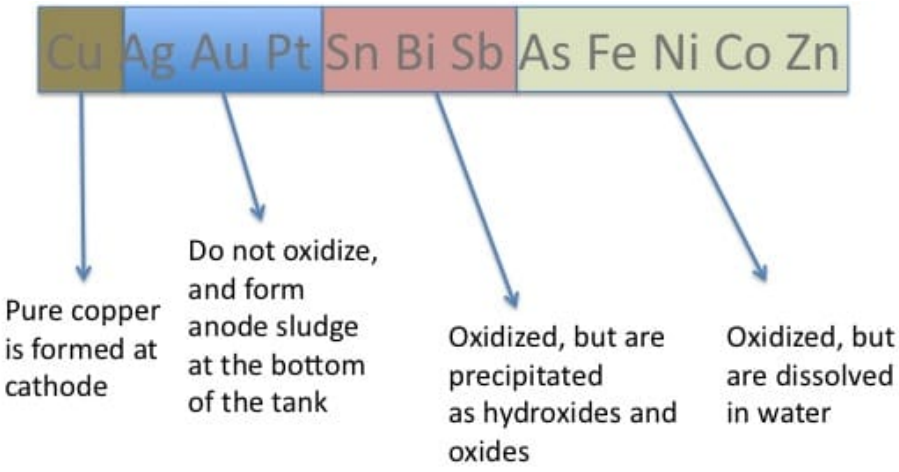
Learning Objectives

- Define Electrorefining and electrosynthesis
- Explain the basics of the industrial electrolysis of salt water to generate chlorine gas.

Electrolysis reactions are the basic foundations of today's modern industry. There are various elements, chemical compounds, and organic compounds that are only produced by electrolysis including aluminum, chlorine, and NaOH. Electrolysis is the process by which an electric current spurs an otherwise non-spontaneous reaction.

Electrorefining

The electrorefining process refines metals or compounds at a high purity for a low cost. The pure metal can coat an otherwise worthless object. Let's consider the electrorefining process of copper: At the anode, there is an impure piece of copper that has other metals such as Ag, Au, Pt, Sn, Bi, Sb, As, Fe, Ni, Co, and Zn. The copper in this impure ore is oxidized to form Cu^{2+} at the anode, and moves through an aqueous sulfuric acid-Copper (II) sulfate solution into the cathode. When it reaches the cathode, the Cu^{2+} is reduced to Cu. This whole process takes place at a fairly low voltage (about .15 to .30 V), so Ag, Au, and Pt are not oxidized at the anode, as their standard oxidation electrode potentials are -.800, -1.36 and -1.20 respectively; these unoxidized impurities turn into a mixture called anode mud, a sludge at the bottom of the tank. This sludge can be recovered and used in different processes. Unlike Ag, Au and Pt, the impurities of Sb, Bi and Sn in the ore are indeed oxidized at the anode, but they are precipitated as they form hydroxides and oxides. Finally, Fe, Ni, Co and Zn are oxidized as well, but they are dissolved in water. Therefore, the only solid we are left with is the pure solid copper plate at the cathode, which has a purity level of about 99.999%. The image below gives an outline about the fate of the main components of an impure iron ore.



Electrosynthesis

Electrosynthesis is the method of producing substances through electrolysis reactions. This is useful when reaction conditions must be carefully controlled. One example of electrosynthesis is that of MnO_2, Manganese dioxide. MnO_2 occurs naturally in the form of the mineral pyrolusite, but this mineral is not easily used due to the nature of its size and lattice structure. However, MnO_2 can be obtained a different way, through the electrolysis of $MnSO_4$ in a sulfuric acid solution.

$$\text{Oxidation:} \quad \mathrm{Mn^{2+} + 2H_2O \rightarrow MnO_2 + 4H^+ + 2e^-} \qquad \mathrm{E^0_{MnO_2/H_2} = -1.23} \tag{11.6.1}$$

$$\text{Reduction:} \quad \mathrm{2e^- + 2H^+ \rightarrow H_2} \qquad \mathrm{-E^0_{H^+/H_2} = -0} \tag{11.6.2}$$

$$\text{Overall:} \quad \mathrm{Mn^{2+} + 2H_2O \rightarrow MnO_2 + 2H^+ + H_2} \qquad \mathrm{E^0_{MnO_2/H_2} - E^0_{H^+/H_2} = -1.23 - 0 = -1.23} \tag{11.6.3}$$

The commercial process for organic chemicals that is currently practiced on a scale comparable to that of inorganic chemicals and metals is the electrohydrodimerization of acrylonitrile to adiponitrile.

$$\text{Anode:} \quad \mathrm{H_2O \rightarrow 2H^+ + \frac{1}{2}O_2 + 2e^-} \tag{11.6.4}$$

$$\text{Cathode:} \quad \mathrm{2\,CH_2{=}CHCN + 2\,H_2O + 2\,e^- \rightarrow NC(CH_2)CN + 2\,OH^-} \tag{11.6.5}$$

$$\text{Overall:} \quad \underset{\text{acrylonitrile}}{\mathrm{2\,CH_2{=}CHCN}} + H_2O \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}O_2 + \underset{\text{adiponitrile}}{\mathrm{NC(CH_2)_4CN}} \tag{11.6.6}$$

The importance of adiponitrile is that it can be readily converted to other useful compounds.

The Chlor-Alkali Process

This process is the electrolysis of sodium chloride (NaCl) at an industrial level. We will begin by discussing the equation for the chlor-alkali process, followed by discussing three different types of the process: the diaphragm cell, the mercury cell and the membrane cell. We will begin the explanation of the chlor-alkali process by determining the reactions that occur during the electrolysis of NaCl. Because NaCl is in an aqueous solution, we also have to consider the electrolysis of water at both the anode and the cathode. Therefore, there are two possible reduction equations and two possible oxidation reactions.

Reduction:

$$\mathrm{Na^+_{(aq)} + 2e^- \rightarrow Na_{(s)}} \qquad \mathrm{E^0_{Na^+/Na} = -2.71\ V} \tag{11.6.7}$$

$$\mathrm{2H_2O_{(l)} + 2e^- \rightarrow H_{2(g)} + 2OH^-_{(aq)}} \qquad \mathrm{E^0_{H_2O/H_2} = -0.83\ V} \tag{11.6.8}$$

Oxidation:

$$\mathrm{2Cl^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow Cl_2 + 2e^-} \qquad \mathrm{-E^0_{Cl_2/Cl^-} = -1.36\ V} \tag{11.6.9}$$

$$\mathrm{2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow O_2 + 4H^+ + 4e^-} \qquad \mathrm{-E^0_{O_2/H_2O} = -1.23\ V} \tag{11.6.10}$$

As we can see, due to the very much more negative electrode potential, the reduction of sodium ions is much less likely to occur than the reduction of water, so we can assume that in the electrolysis of NaCl, the reduction that occurs is Equation 11.6.8. Therefore, we should try to determine what the oxidation reaction that occurs is.

Let's say we have Equation 11.6.8 as the reduction and Equation 11.6.9 as the oxidation. We would get:

$$\text{Reduction:} \quad \mathrm{2H_2O_{(l)} + 2e^- \rightarrow H_{2(g)} + 2OH^-_{(aq)}} \qquad \mathrm{E^0_{H_20/H_2} = -0.83\ V} \tag{11.6.11}$$

$$\text{Oxidation:} \quad \mathrm{2Cl^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow Cl_2 + 2e^-} \qquad \mathrm{-E^0_{Cl_2/Cl^-} = -(1.36\ V)} \tag{11.6.12}$$

$$\text{Overall:} \quad \mathrm{2H_2O_{(l)} + 2Cl^-_{(aq)}} \qquad \mathrm{E^0_{H_20/H_2} - E^0_{Cl_2/Cl^-}} \tag{11.6.13}$$

$$\mathrm{\rightarrow H_{2(g)} + 2OH^-_{(aq)} + Cl_2} \qquad \mathrm{= -0.83 + (-1.36) = -2.19} \tag{11.6.14}$$

Alternatively, we could also have Equation 11.6.8 with 11.6.10

$$\text{Reduction:} \quad \mathrm{2\,[2H_2O_{(l)} + 2e^- \rightarrow H_{2(g)} + 2OH^-_{(aq)}]} \qquad \mathrm{E_{H_2O/H_2O} = -.83\ V} \tag{11.6.15}$$

$$\text{Oxidation:} \quad \mathrm{2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow O_2 + 4H^+ + 4e^-} \qquad \mathrm{-E^0_{O_2/H_20} = -(1.23\ V)} \tag{11.6.16}$$

$$\text{Overall:} \quad \mathrm{2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow 2H_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)}} \qquad \mathrm{E^0_{H_2O/H_2} - E^0_{O_2/H_20}} \tag{11.6.17}$$

$$\mathrm{= -0.83\ V - (1.23\ V) = -2.06} \tag{11.6.18}$$

At first glance it would appear as though Equation 11.6.17 would occur due to the smaller (less negative) electrode potential. However, O_2 actually has a fairly large overpotential, so instead Cl_2 is more likely to form, making Equation 11.6.13 the most probable outcome for the electrolysis of NaCl.

Chlor-Alkali Process in a Diaphragm Cell

Depending on the method used, there can be several different products produced through the chlor-alkali process. The value of these products is what makes the chlor-alkali process so important. The name comes from the two main products of the process, chlorine and the alkali, sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Therefore, one of the main uses of the chlor-alkali process is the production of NaOH. As described earlier, the equation for the chlor-alkali process, that is, the electrolysis of NaCl, is as follows:

$$\text{Reduction:} \quad 2H_2O_{(l)} + 2e^- \rightarrow H_{2(g)} + 2OH^-_{(aq)} \qquad E_{H_2O/H_2O} = -0.83\ V \tag{11.6.19}$$

$$\text{Oxidation:} \quad 2Cl^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow Cl_2 + 2e^- \qquad E^0_{Cl_2/Cl^-} = -1.36\ V \tag{11.6.20}$$

$$\text{Overall:} \quad 2Cl^- + 2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow 2OH^- + H_{2(g)} + Cl_{2(g)} \qquad E^0_{H_2O/H_2} - E^0_{Cl/Cl_2^-} \tag{11.6.21}$$

$$= -0.83\ V - (-1.36\ V) = -2.19\ V \tag{11.6.22}$$

**The chlor-alkali process often occurs in an apparatus called a diaphragm cell, which is illustrated in Figure 11.6.1.

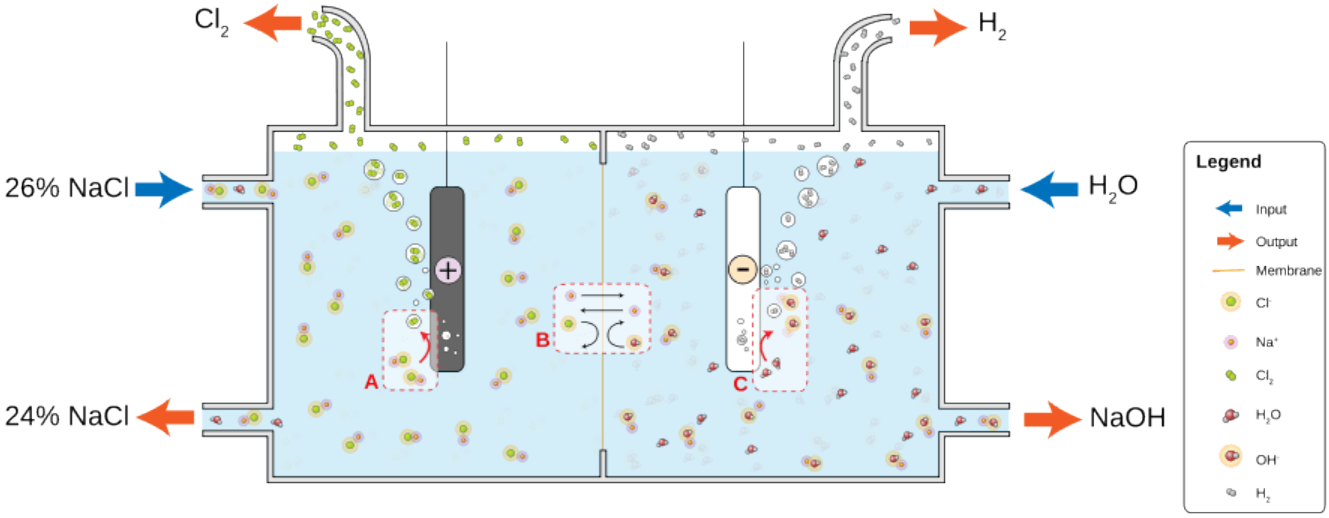


Figure 11.6.1***:*** *Basic membrane cell used in the electrolysis of brine. At the anode (**A**), chloride (Cl^-) is oxidized to chlorine. The ion-selective membrane (**B**) allows the counterion Na+ to freely flow across, but prevents anions such as hydroxide (OH^-) and chloride from diffusing across. At the cathode (**C**), water is reduced to hydroxide and hydrogen gas. The net process is the electrolysis of an aqueous solution of NaCl into industrially useful products sodium hydroxide (NaOH) and chlorine gas. of Wikipedia (Jkwchui)*

Note the following aspects of the Diagram cell:

Anode

- The sodium chloride is put into the anode compartment, in aqueous form.
- The actual physical anode is made of either graphite or titanium.
- In the anode compartment, Cl_2 gas is produced as Cl^- is oxidized.

Cathode

- On the cathode side, OH^- (aq) and H_2 gas are formed as water is reduced.
- You may wonder, why are there sodium and chloride ions of the cathode side if we put the sodium chloride into the anode compartment? To answer this question, we can consider the difference in solution levels between the anode and cathode. This causes the gradual flow of NaCl into the cathode, and prevents the backflow of NaOH into the anode. If Cl_2 and NaOH come into contact, Cl_2 turns into ClO^-, ClO_3^-, Cl^- ions. The water level difference prevents this contact and also encourages the flow of NaCl to the cathode side, so NaOH (aq) can form.
- Now, you may notice that the solution with NaOH in the cathode will also have aqueous NaCl mixed with it due to the flow of NaCl from the anode to the cathode. Therefore, if we want very pure NaOH for uses such as rayon manufacture, we need to

somehow purify the salt out of the NaOH. In general, before purification, the solution is about 14-16% NaCl (aq) and 10-12% NaOH (aq). However, the NaOH (aq) can be concentrated and the NaCl (s) can be crystallized to form a solution with 50% NaOH (aq) and about 1% NaCl (aq).

Note

If chlorine comes into contact with hydrogen, it produces a mixture which will explode violently on exposure to sunlight or heat. Hydrogen chloride gas would be produced. Obviously, the two gases need to be kept apart.

Chlor-Alkali Process in Mercury Cell

To even further improve the purity of NaOH, a mercury cell can be used for the location of electrolysis, opposed to a diaphragm cell. In the mercury-cell process, also known as the Castner–Kellner process, a saturated brine solution floats on top of a thin layer of mercury. The mercury is the cathode, where sodium is produced and forms a sodium-mercury amalgam with the mercury. The amalgam is continuously drawn out of the cell and reacted with water which decomposes the amalgam into sodium hydroxide and mercury. The mercury is recycled into the electrolytic cell. Chlorine is produced at the anode and evaporates out of the cell. Mercury cells are being phased out due to concerns about mercury poisoning from mercury cell pollution

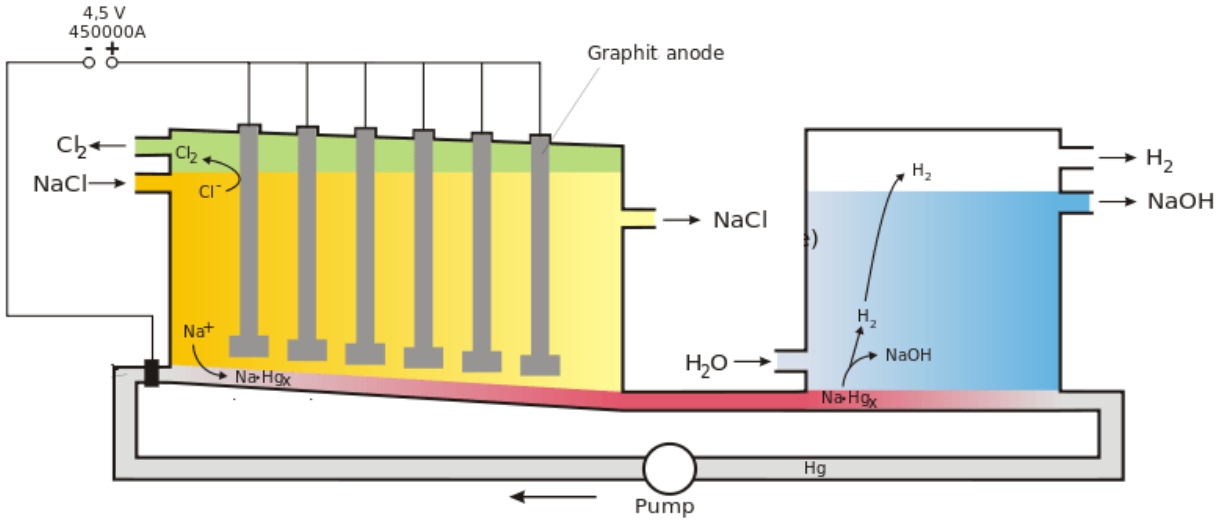


Figure 11.6.2: Mercury cell of the chloralkali process. Image is Public Domain

Anode Side

- The anodes are placed in the aqueous NaCl solution, above the liquid mercury.
- The reduction of Cl^- occurs to produce chlorine gas, Cl_2 (g).

Cathode Side

- A layer of Hg (l) at the bottom of the tank serves as the cathode.
- With a mercury cathode, the reaction of H_2O (l) to H_2 has a fairly high over potential, so the reduction of Na^+ to Na occurs instead. The Na is soluble in Hg (l) and the two combine to form the Na-Hg alloy amalgam. This amalgam can be removed and then mixed with water to cause the following reaction:
  - $2\,\mathrm{Na\,(in\ \ Hg)} + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Na^+} + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-} + \mathrm{H_{2(g)}} + \mathrm{Hg_{(l)}}$
- The Hg (l) that forms is recycled back into the liquid at the bottom of the tank that acts as a cathode.
- H_2 gas is released.
- NaOH is left in a very pure, aqueous form.

****Some of the main problems with the mercury cell are as follows:**

- The reaction needs a higher voltage than the diaphragm cell: 4.5 V in the mercury cell compared to 3.5 in a diaphragm cell.
- Requires quite a bit of electrical energy, as it needs 3400 kWh/ton Cl_2 opposed to 2500 in a diaphragm cell.
- Potential damage to the environment due to mercury deposits. Luckily deposits were as large as 200 g mercury per ton chlorine gas, but now, they never exceed 0.25 g per ton chlorine gas.

Membrane Cell Process

A third way to make even more pure NaOH is to use a membrane cell. It is preferred over the diaphragm cell or mercury cell method because it uses the least amount of electric energy and produces the highest quality NaOH. For instance, it can produce NaOH with a degree of chlorine ion contamination of only 50 ppm. An ion-permeable membrane is used to separate the anode and cathode.

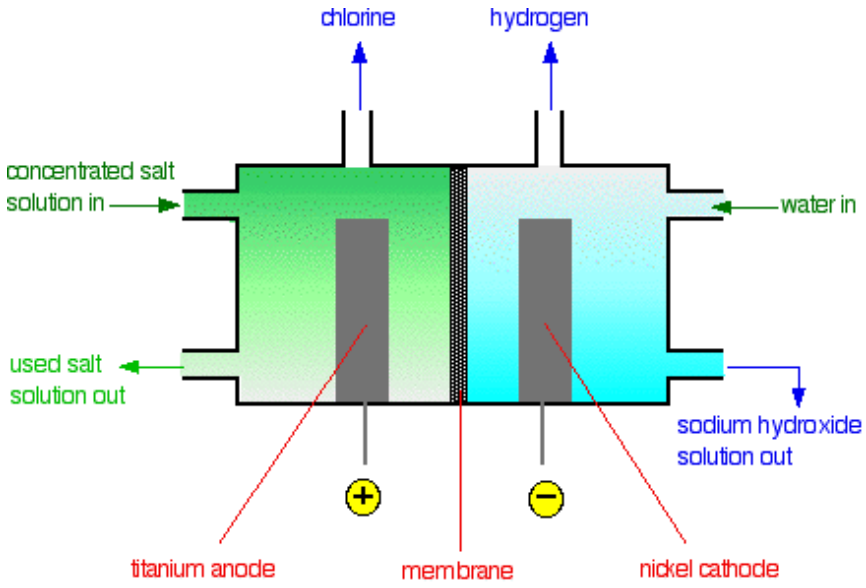


Figure 11.6.3: This is a simplification of a real cell to show the main features. You will find other diagrams with the inlets and outlets in different places or in more detail.

Anode

Saturated brine is fed to the compartment. Current passed through the cell splits the sodium chloride into its constituent components, Na^+ and Cl^-. Chloride ions are oxidized to chlorine gas at the anode.

$$2Cl^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2e^- + Cl_{2(g)} \tag{11.6.23}$$

The chlorine is purified by liquifying it under pressure. The oxygen stays as a gas when it is compressed at ordinary temperatures. The membrane passes Na^+ ions to the cathode compartment.

Cathode

The hydrogen is produced at the nickel cathode:

$$2H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^- \rightarrow H_{2(g)} \tag{11.6.24}$$

- H_2O is reduced to form OH^- and H_2 gas.
  - $2\,H_2O \rightarrow H_2 + 2\,OH^-$
- Na^+ ions that had flowed over and OH^- produced through the reduction of water react to form aqueous NaOH.
- H_2 gas also is produced as a byproduct.

The membrane is made from a polymer which only allows positive ions to pass through it. That means that the only the sodium ions from the sodium chloride solution can pass through the membrane - and not the chloride ions. The advantage of this is that

the sodium hydroxide solution being formed in the right-hand compartment never gets contaminated with any sodium chloride solution. The sodium chloride solution being used has to be pure. If it contained any other metal ions, these would also pass through the membrane and so contaminate the sodium hydroxide solution.

References

- General Chemistry, Principles & modern Applications, Petrucci, 2007, 2002, 1997

Contributors and Attributions

- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)
- Wikipedia

This page titled 11.6: Industrial Electrolysis Processes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 20.8: Industrial Electrolysis Processes is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

11.7: Batteries: Producing Electricity Through Chemical Reactions

Because galvanic cells can be self-contained and portable, they can be used as batteries and fuel cells. A **battery (storage cell)** is a galvanic cell (or a series of galvanic cells) that contains all the reactants needed to produce electricity. In contrast, a **fuel cell** is a galvanic cell that requires a constant external supply of one or more reactants to generate electricity. In this section, we describe the chemistry behind some of the more common types of batteries and fuel cells.

Batteries

There are two basic kinds of batteries: disposable, or primary, batteries, in which the electrode reactions are effectively irreversible and which cannot be recharged; and rechargeable, or secondary, batteries, which form an insoluble product that adheres to the electrodes. These batteries can be recharged by applying an electrical potential in the reverse direction. The recharging process temporarily converts a rechargeable battery from a galvanic cell to an electrolytic cell.

Batteries are cleverly engineered devices that are based on the same fundamental laws as galvanic cells. The major difference between batteries and the galvanic cells we have previously described is that commercial batteries use solids or pastes rather than solutions as reactants to maximize the electrical output per unit mass. The use of highly concentrated or solid reactants has another beneficial effect: the concentrations of the reactants and the products do not change greatly as the battery is discharged; consequently, the output voltage remains remarkably constant during the discharge process. This behavior is in contrast to that of the Zn/Cu cell, whose output decreases logarithmically as the reaction proceeds (Figure 11.7.1). When a battery consists of more than one galvanic cell, the cells are usually connected in series—that is, with the positive (+) terminal of one cell connected to the negative (–) terminal of the next, and so forth. The overall voltage of the battery is therefore the sum of the voltages of the individual cells.

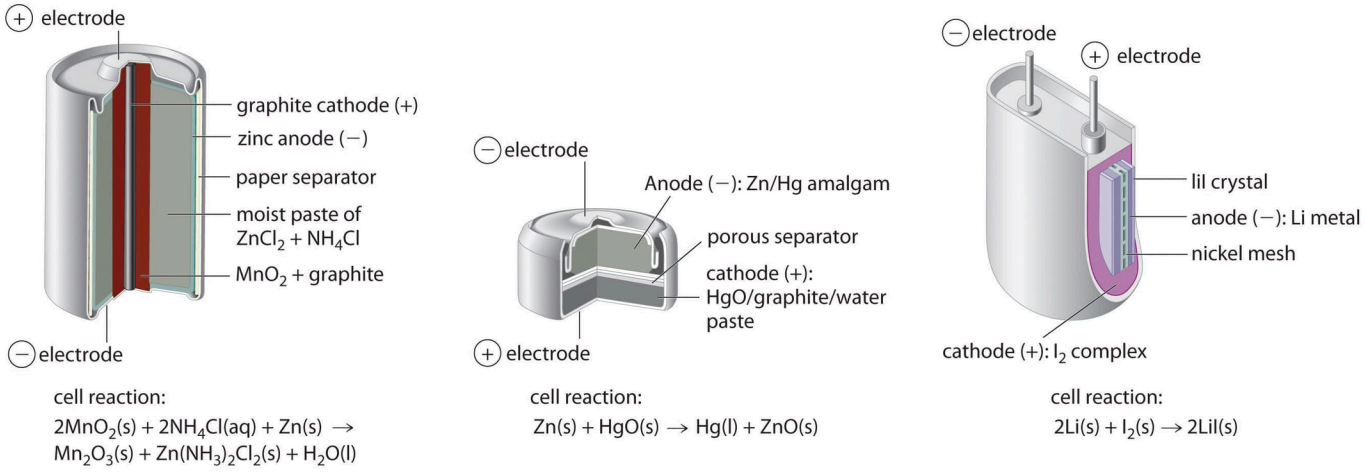


Figure 11.7.1: Three Kinds of Primary (Nonrechargeable) Batteries. (a) A Leclanché dry cell is actually a "wet cell," in which the electrolyte is an acidic water-based paste containing MnO_2, NH_4Cl, $ZnCl_2$, graphite, and starch. Though inexpensive to manufacture, the cell is not very efficient in producing electrical energy and has a limited shelf life. (b) In a button battery, the anode is a zinc–mercury amalgam, and the cathode can be either HgO (shown here) or Ag_2O as the oxidant. Button batteries are reliable and have a high output-to-mass ratio, which allows them to be used in applications such as calculators and watches, where their small size is crucial. (c) A lithium–iodine battery consists of two cells separated by a metallic nickel mesh that collects charge from the anodes. The anode is lithium metal, and the cathode is a solid complex of I_2. The electrolyte is a layer of solid LiI that allows Li^+ ions to diffuse from the cathode to the anode. Although this type of battery produces only a relatively small current, it is highly reliable and long-lived.

The major difference between batteries and the galvanic cells is that commercial typically batteries use solids or pastes rather than solutions as reactants to maximize the electrical output per unit mass. An obvious exception is the standard car battery which used solution phase chemistry.

Leclanché Dry Cell

The dry cell, by far the most common type of battery, is used in flashlights, electronic devices such as the Walkman and Game Boy, and many other devices. Although the dry cell was patented in 1866 by the French chemist Georges Leclanché and more than 5 billion such cells are sold every year, the details of its electrode chemistry are still not completely understood. In spite of its name, the **Leclanché dry cell** is actually a "wet cell": the electrolyte is an acidic water-based paste containing MnO_2, NH_4Cl, $ZnCl_2$, graphite, and starch (part (a) in Figure 11.7.1). The half-reactions at the anode and the cathode can be summarized as follows:

- cathode (reduction):

$$2\,\mathrm{MnO_2\,(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{NH_4^+\,(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn_2O_3\,(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{NH_3\,(aq)} + \mathrm{H_2O\,(l)}$$

- anode (oxidation):

$$\mathrm{Zn\,(s)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Zn^{2+}\,(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-}$$

The $\mathrm{Zn^{2+}}$ ions formed by the oxidation of $\mathrm{Zn\,(s)}$ at the anode react with $\mathrm{NH_3}$ formed at the cathode and $\mathrm{Cl^-}$ ions present in solution, so the overall cell reaction is as follows:

- overall reaction:

$$2\,\mathrm{MnO_2\,(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{NH_4Cl\,(aq)} + \mathrm{Zn\,(s)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn_2O_3\,(s)} + \mathrm{Zn(NH_3)_2Cl_2\,(s)} + \mathrm{H_2O\,(l)} \tag{11.7.1}$$

The dry cell produces about 1.55 V and is inexpensive to manufacture. It is not, however, very efficient in producing electrical energy because only the relatively small fraction of the $\mathrm{MnO_2}$ that is near the cathode is actually reduced and only a small fraction of the zinc cathode is actually consumed as the cell discharges. In addition, dry cells have a limited shelf life because the Zn anode reacts spontaneously with $\mathrm{NH_4Cl}$ in the electrolyte, causing the case to corrode and allowing the contents to leak out.

Close up of a hand holding one double <span class=
AA
battery" style="width: 287px; height: 215px;" width="287px" height="215px" data-cke-saved-src="/@api/deki/files/16647/battery.jpg" src="/@api/deki/files/16647/battery.jpg" data-quail-id="34">

Source: Photo courtesy of Mitchclanky2008, www.flickr.com/photos/25597837@N05/2422765479/.

The **alkaline battery** is essentially a Leclanché cell adapted to operate under alkaline, or basic, conditions. The half-reactions that occur in an alkaline battery are as follows:

- cathode (reduction)

$$2\,\mathrm{MnO_2\,(s)} + \mathrm{H_2O\,(l)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn_2O_3\,(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-\,(aq)}$$

- anode (oxidation):

$$\mathrm{Zn\,(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-\,(aq)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZnO\,(s)} + \mathrm{H_2O\,(l)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-}$$

- overall reaction:

$$\mathrm{Zn\,(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{MnO_2\,(s)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZnO\,(s)} + \mathrm{Mn_2O_3\,(s)}$$

This battery also produces about 1.5 V, but it has a longer shelf life and more constant output voltage as the cell is discharged than the Leclanché dry cell. Although the alkaline battery is more expensive to produce than the Leclanché dry cell, the improved performance makes this battery more cost-effective.

Button Batteries

Although some of the small button batteries used to power watches, calculators, and cameras are miniature alkaline cells, most are based on a completely different chemistry. In these "button" batteries, the anode is a zinc–mercury amalgam rather than pure zinc, and the cathode uses either HgO or $\mathrm{Ag_2O}$ as the oxidant rather than $\mathrm{MnO_2}$ in Figure $11.7.1b$).



Button batteries. (Gerhard H Wrodnigg via Wikipedia)

The cathode, anode and overall reactions and cell output for these two types of button batteries are as follows (two half-reactions occur at the anode, but the overall oxidation half-reaction is shown):

- cathode (mercury battery):

$$\mathrm{HgO\,(s) + H_2O\,(l) + 2\,e^- \longrightarrow Hg\,(l) + 2\,OH^-\,(aq)}$$

- Anode (mercury battery):

$$\mathrm{Zn + 2\,OH^- \longrightarrow ZnO + H_2O + 2\,e^-}$$

- overall reaction (mercury battery):

$$\mathrm{Zn\,(s) + 2\,HgO\,(s) \longrightarrow 2\,Hg\,(l) + ZnO\,(s)}$$

  with $E_{cell} = 1.35\ V$.
- cathode reaction (silver battery):

$$\mathrm{Ag_2O\,(s) + H_2O\,(l) + 2\,e^- \longrightarrow 2\,Ag\,(s) + 2\,OH^-\,(aq)}$$

- anode (silver battery):

$$\mathrm{Zn + 2\,OH^- \longrightarrow ZnO + H_2O + 2\,e^-}$$

- Overall reaction (silver battery):

$$\mathrm{Zn\,(s) + 2\,Ag_2O\,(s) \longrightarrow 2\,Ag\,(s) + ZnO\,(s)}$$

  with $E_{cell} = 1.6\ V$.

The major advantages of the mercury and silver cells are their reliability and their high output-to-mass ratio. These factors make them ideal for applications where small size is crucial, as in cameras and hearing aids. The disadvantages are the expense and the environmental problems caused by the disposal of heavy metals, such as Hg and Ag.

Lithium–Iodine Battery

None of the batteries described above is actually “dry.” They all contain small amounts of liquid water, which adds significant mass and causes potential corrosion problems. Consequently, substantial effort has been expended to develop water-free batteries. One of the few commercially successful water-free batteries is the **lithium–iodine battery**. The anode is lithium metal, and the cathode is a solid complex of I_2. Separating them is a layer of solid LiI, which acts as the electrolyte by allowing the

diffusion of Li^+ ions. The electrode reactions are as follows:

- cathode (reduction):

$$I_{2(s)} + 2e^- \rightarrow 2I^-{}_{(LiI)} \tag{11.7.2}$$

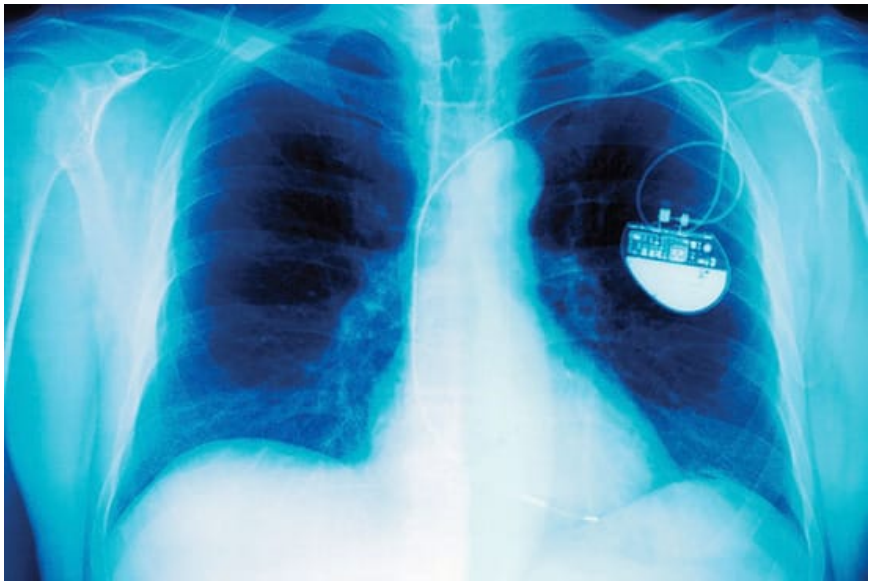
- anode (oxidation):

$$2Li_{(s)} \rightarrow 2Li^+_{(LiI)} + 2e^- \tag{11.7.3}$$

- overall:

$$2Li_{(s)} + I_{2(s)} \rightarrow 2LiI_{(s)} \tag{11.7.4}$$

with $E_{cell} = 3.5\ V$



Cardiac pacemaker: An x-ray of a patient showing the location and size of a pacemaker powered by a lithium–iodine battery.

As shown in part (c) in Figure $11.7.1$, a typical lithium–iodine battery consists of two cells separated by a nickel metal mesh that collects charge from the anode. Because of the high internal resistance caused by the solid electrolyte, only a low current can be drawn. Nonetheless, such batteries have proven to be long-lived (up to 10 yr) and reliable. They are therefore used in applications where frequent replacement is difficult or undesirable, such as in cardiac pacemakers and other medical implants and in computers for memory protection. These batteries are also used in security transmitters and smoke alarms. Other batteries based on lithium anodes and solid electrolytes are under development, using TiS_2, for example, for the cathode.

Dry cells, button batteries, and lithium–iodine batteries are disposable and cannot be recharged once they are discharged. Rechargeable batteries, in contrast, offer significant economic and environmental advantages because they can be recharged and discharged numerous times. As a result, manufacturing and disposal costs drop dramatically for a given number of hours of battery usage. Two common rechargeable batteries are the nickel–cadmium battery and the lead–acid battery, which we describe next.

Nickel–Cadmium (NiCad) Battery

The **nickel–cadmium**, or NiCad, battery is used in small electrical appliances and devices like drills, portable vacuum cleaners, and AM/FM digital tuners. It is a water-based cell with a cadmium anode and a highly oxidized nickel cathode that is usually described as the nickel(III) oxo-hydroxide, NiO(OH). As shown in Figure $11.7.2$, the design maximizes the surface area of the electrodes and minimizes the distance between them, which decreases internal resistance and makes a rather high discharge current possible.

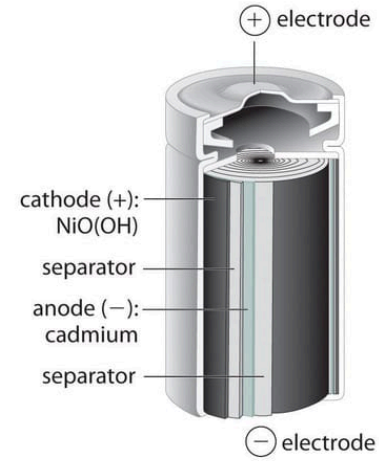


Figure 11.7.2: The Nickel–Cadmium (NiCad) Battery, a Rechargeable Battery. NiCad batteries contain a cadmium anode and a highly oxidized nickel cathode. This design maximizes the surface area of the electrodes and minimizes the distance between them, which gives the battery both a high discharge current and a high capacity.

The electrode reactions during the discharge of a $NiCad$ battery are as follows:

- cathode (reduction):

$$2NiO(OH)_{(s)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} + 2e^- \rightarrow 2Ni(OH)_{2(s)} + 2OH^-_{(aq)} \tag{11.7.5}$$

- anode (oxidation):

$$Cd_{(s)} + 2OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow Cd(OH)_{2(s)} + 2e^- \tag{11.7.6}$$

- overall:

$$Cd_{(s)} + 2NiO(OH)_{(s)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow Cd(OH)_{2(s)} + 2Ni(OH)_{2(s)} \tag{11.7.7}$$

$$E_{cell} = 1.4V$$

Because the products of the discharge half-reactions are solids that adhere to the electrodes [$Cd(OH)_2$ and $2Ni(OH)_2$], the overall reaction is readily reversed when the cell is recharged. Although NiCad cells are lightweight, rechargeable, and high capacity, they have certain disadvantages. For example, they tend to lose capacity quickly if not allowed to discharge fully before recharging, they do not store well for long periods when fully charged, and they present significant environmental and disposal problems because of the toxicity of cadmium.

A variation on the NiCad battery is the nickel–metal hydride battery (NiMH) used in hybrid automobiles, wireless communication devices, and mobile computing. The overall chemical equation for this type of battery is as follows:

\[NiO(OH)_{(s)} + MH \rightarrow Ni(OH)_{2(s)} + M_{(s)} \label{Eq16} \]

The NiMH battery has a 30%–40% improvement in capacity over the NiCad battery; it is more environmentally friendly so storage, transportation, and disposal are not subject to environmental control; and it is not as sensitive to recharging memory. It is, however, subject to a 50% greater self-discharge rate, a limited service life, and higher maintenance, and it is more expensive than the NiCad battery.

> Directive 2006/66/EC of the European Union prohibits the placing on the market of portable batteries that contain more than 0.002% of cadmium by weight. The aim of this directive was to improve "the environmental performance of batteries and accumulators"

Lead–Acid (Lead Storage) Battery

The **lead–acid battery** is used to provide the starting power in virtually every automobile and marine engine on the market. Marine and car batteries typically consist of multiple cells connected in series. The total voltage generated by the battery is the potential per cell ($E°_{cell}$) times the number of cells.

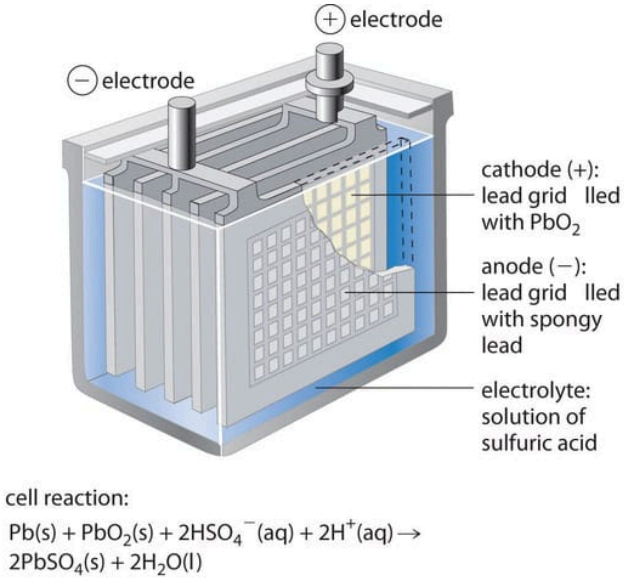


Figure 11.7.3: One Cell of a Lead–Acid Battery. The anodes in each cell of a rechargeable battery are plates or grids of lead containing spongy lead metal, while the cathodes are similar grids containing powdered lead dioxide (PbO_2). The electrolyte is an aqueous solution of sulfuric acid. The value of E° for such a cell is about 2 V. Connecting three such cells in series produces a 6 V battery, whereas a typical 12 V car battery contains six cells in series. When treated properly, this type of high-capacity battery can be discharged and recharged many times over.

As shown in Figure 11.7.3, the anode of each cell in a lead storage battery is a plate or grid of spongy lead metal, and the cathode is a similar grid containing powdered lead dioxide (PbO_2). The electrolyte is usually an approximately 37% solution (by mass) of sulfuric acid in water, with a density of 1.28 g/mL (about 4.5 M H_2SO_4). Because the redox active species are solids, there is no need to separate the electrodes. The electrode reactions in each cell during discharge are as follows:

- cathode (reduction):

\[PbO_{2(s)} + HSO^–_{4(aq)} + 3H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^– \rightarrow PbSO_{4(s)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} \label{Eq17} \]

with $E^\circ_{cathode} = 1.685\ V$

- anode (oxidation):

$$Pb_{(s)} + HSO^-_{4(aq)} \rightarrow PbSO_{4(s)} + H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^- \tag{11.7.8}$$

with $E^\circ_{anode} = -0.356\ V$

- overall:

$$Pb_{(s)} + PbO_{2(s)} + 2HSO^-_{4(aq)} + 2H^+_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2PbSO_{4(s)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} \tag{11.7.9}$$

and $E^\circ_{cell} = 2.041\ V$

As the cell is discharged, a powder of $PbSO_4$ forms on the electrodes. Moreover, sulfuric acid is consumed and water is produced, decreasing the density of the electrolyte and providing a convenient way of monitoring the status of a battery by simply measuring the density of the electrolyte. This is often done with the use of a hydrometer.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

A hydrometer can be used to test the specific gravity of each cell as a measure of its state of charge (www.youtube.com/watch?v=SRcOqfL6GqQ).

When an external voltage in excess of 2.04 V per cell is applied to a lead–acid battery, the electrode reactions reverse, and $PbSO_4$ is converted back to metallic lead and PbO_2. If the battery is recharged too vigorously, however, electrolysis of water can occur:

$$2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow 2H_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)} \tag{11.7.10}$$

This results in the evolution of potentially explosive hydrogen gas. The gas bubbles formed in this way can dislodge some of the $PbSO_4$ or PbO_2 particles from the grids, allowing them to fall to the bottom of the cell, where they can build up and cause an internal short circuit. Thus the recharging process must be carefully monitored to optimize the life of the battery. With proper care, however, a lead–acid battery can be discharged and recharged thousands of times. In automobiles, the alternator supplies the electric current that causes the discharge reaction to reverse.

Fuel Cells

A fuel cell is a galvanic cell that requires a constant external supply of reactants because the products of the reaction are continuously removed. Unlike a battery, it does not store chemical or electrical energy; a fuel cell allows electrical energy to be extracted directly from a chemical reaction. In principle, this should be a more efficient process than, for example, burning the fuel to drive an internal combustion engine that turns a generator, which is typically less than 40% efficient, and in fact, the efficiency of a fuel cell is generally between 40% and 60%. Unfortunately, significant cost and reliability problems have hindered the wide-scale adoption of fuel cells. In practice, their use has been restricted to applications in which mass may be a significant cost factor, such as US manned space vehicles.

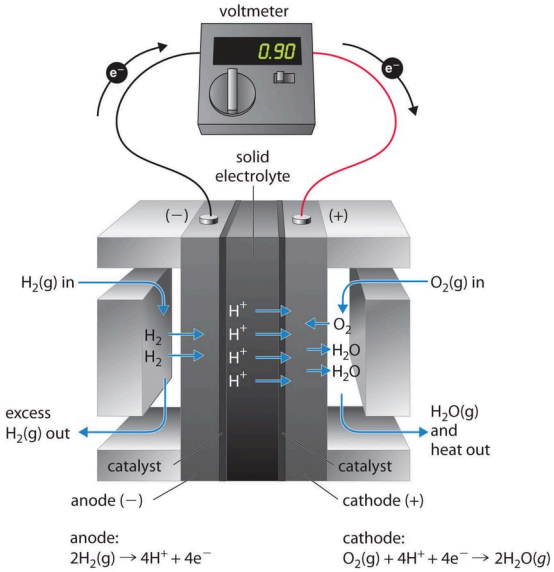


Figure 11.7.4: A Hydrogen Fuel Cell Produces Electrical Energy Directly from a Chemical Reaction. Hydrogen is oxidized to protons at the anode, and the electrons are transferred through an external circuit to the cathode, where oxygen is reduced and combines with H^+ to form water. A solid electrolyte allows the protons to diffuse from the anode to the cathode. Although fuel cells are an essentially pollution-free means of obtaining electrical energy, their expense and technological complexity have thus far limited their applications.

These space vehicles use a hydrogen/oxygen fuel cell that requires a continuous input of $H_2(g)$ and $O_2(g)$, as illustrated in Figure 11.7.4. The electrode reactions are as follows:

- cathode (reduction):

$$O_{2(g)} + 4H^+ + 4e^- \rightarrow 2H_2O_{(g)} \tag{11.7.11}$$

- anode (oxidation):

$$2H_{2(g)} \rightarrow 4H^+ + 4e^- \tag{11.7.12}$$

- overall:

$$2H_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)} \rightarrow 2H_2O_{(g)} \tag{11.7.13}$$

The overall reaction represents an essentially pollution-free conversion of hydrogen and oxygen to water, which in space vehicles is then collected and used. Although this type of fuel cell should produce 1.23 V under standard conditions, in practice the device achieves only about 0.9 V. One of the major barriers to achieving greater efficiency is the fact that the four-electron reduction of $O_2(g)$ at the cathode is intrinsically rather slow, which limits current that can be achieved. All major automobile manufacturers have major research programs involving fuel cells: one of the most important goals is the development of a better catalyst for the reduction of $O_2(g)$.

Summary

Commercial batteries are galvanic cells that use solids or pastes as reactants to maximize the electrical output per unit mass. A battery is a contained unit that produces electricity, whereas a fuel cell is a galvanic cell that requires a constant external supply of one or more reactants to generate electricity. One type of battery is the Leclanché dry cell, which contains an electrolyte in an acidic water-based paste. This battery is called an alkaline battery when adapted to operate under alkaline conditions. Button batteries have a high output-to-mass ratio; lithium–iodine batteries consist of a solid electrolyte; the nickel–cadmium (NiCad) battery is rechargeable; and the lead–acid battery, which is also rechargeable, does not require the electrodes to be in separate compartments. A fuel cell requires an external supply of reactants as the products of the reaction are continuously removed. In a fuel cell, energy is not stored; electrical energy is provided by a chemical reaction.

This page titled 11.7: Batteries: Producing Electricity Through Chemical Reactions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 20.7: Batteries and Fuel Cells is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

INDEX

A

addition polymer
- *5.6: Addition Polymers*
- *5.7: Addition Polymers*

C

condensation polymer
- *5.4: Condensation Polymers*
- *5.5: Condensation Polymers*

E

equilibrium constant
- *9.2: The Equilibrium Constant Expression*

H

Heats of Reactions
- *7.6: Heats of Reactions - ΔU and ΔH*

Hess's law
- *7.7: Indirect Determination of ΔH - Hess's Law*

P

Polyurethane
- *5.10: Cross-Linking*

S

Standard Enthalpies of Reaction
- *7.8: Standard Enthalpies of Formation*

standard enthalpy of formation
- *7.8: Standard Enthalpies of Formation*

This page titled Index is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

GLOSSARY

S

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

This page titled Glossary is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

DETAILED LICENSING

Overview

Title: UBC CHEM 154: Chemistry for Engineering

Webpages: 105

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 92.4% (97 pages)
- Undeclared: 6.7% (7 pages)
- CC BY 4.0: 1% (1 page)

By Page

- UBC CHEM 154: Chemistry for Engineering - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: High School Review - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.1: The Nuclear Atom - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.2: Chemical Elements - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.3: Atomic Mass - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 2: The Periodic Table and Atomic Structure - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.1: The Bohr Atom - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.2: Multielectron Atoms - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.3: Electron Configurations - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.4: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.5: Classifying the Elements: The Periodic Law and the Periodic Table - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.6: Sizes of Atoms and Ions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.7: Ionization Energy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.8: Electron Affinity - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.9: Periodic Properties of the Elements - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 3: Chemical Bonding and Molecular Structure - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.1: Covalent Bonding: An Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.2: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electrostatic Potential Maps - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.3: Bond Energies - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.4: Bond Order and Bond Lengths - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.5: Lewis Theory: An Overview - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.6: Writing Lewis Structures - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.7: Exceptions to the Octet Rule - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.8: Resonance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.9: Shapes of Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 4: Intermolecular Interactions and Phases of Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.1: Intermolecular Forces - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.2: Phase Diagrams - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.3: Some Properties of Liquids - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.4: Phase Diagrams - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 5: Polymers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.1: Drawing Chemical Structures - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.2: Polymer Fundamentals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.3: Writing Formulas for Polymers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.4: Condensation Polymers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.5: Condensation Polymers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.6: Addition Polymers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.7: Addition Polymers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.8: The Polymerization of Ethene - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.9: Properties of Polymers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.10: Cross-Linking - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 6: Gases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.1: Properties of Gases: Gas Pressure - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.2: The Simple Gas Laws - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.3: Combining the Gas Laws: The Ideal Gas Equation and the General Gas Equation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.4: Mixtures of Gases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.5: Kinetic-Molecular Theory of Gases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 6.6: Non-ideal (Real) Gases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.7: Applications of the Ideal Gas Equation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.8: Gases in Chemical Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 7: Energy and Chemistry - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.1: Getting Started: Some Terminology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.2: Heat - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.3: Heats of Reactions and Calorimetry - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.4: Work - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.5: The First Law of Thermodynamics - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.6: Heats of Reactions - ΔU and ΔH - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.7: Indirect Determination of ΔH - Hess's Law - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.8: Standard Enthalpies of Formation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.9: Fuels as Sources of Energy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 8: Entropy and the Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.1: The Concept of Entropy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.2: Spontaneity: The Meaning of Spontaneous Change - *CC BY 4.0*
- 8.3: Criteria for Spontaneous Change: The Second Law of Thermodynamics - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.4: Evaluating Entropy and Entropy Changes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.5: Standard Gibbs Energy Change, ΔG° - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 9: Chemical Equilibrium - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.1: Dynamic Equilibrium - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.2: The Equilibrium Constant Expression - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.3: The Reaction Quotient, Q: Predicting The Direction of Net Change - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.4: Gibbs Energy Change and Equilibrium - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.5: ΔG° and K as Functions of Temperature - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.6: Coupled Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.7: Solubility Product Constant, Ksp - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.8: Relationship Between Solubility and Ksp - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.9: Common-Ion Effect in Solubility Equilibria - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 10: Chemical Kinetics - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.1: The Rate of a Chemical Reaction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.2: Measuring Reaction Rates - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.3: Effect of Concentration on Reaction Rates: The Rate Law - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.4: Zero-Order Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.5: First-Order Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.6: Second-Order Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.7: Reaction Kinetics: A Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.8: Theoretical Models for Chemical Kinetics - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.9: The Effect of Temperature on Reaction Rates - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.10: Reaction Mechanisms - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.11: Catalysis - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 11: Electrochemistry - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.1: Electrode Potentials and their Measurement - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.2: Standard Electrode Potentials - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.3: Ecell, ΔG, and K - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.4: Ecell as a Function of Concentrations - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.5: Electrolysis: Causing Nonspontaneous Reactions to Occur - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.6: Industrial Electrolysis Processes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.7: Batteries: Producing Electricity Through Chemical Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ Back Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Index - *Undeclared*
- Glossary - *Undeclared*
- Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*

This page titled UBC CHEM 154: Chemistry for Engineering is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.